

Japinder Gill

Vocabulary Advantage

for the CAT, GRE, GMAT and
Other Examinations

VOCABULARY ADVANTAGE

for

GRE/CAT/GMAT and Other Examinations

Japinder Gill

PEARSON

Chandigarh • Delhi • Chennai

The aim of this publication is to supply information taken from sources believed to be valid and reliable. This is not an attempt to render any type of professional advice or analysis, nor is it to be treated as such. While much care has been taken to ensure the veracity and currency of the information presented within, neither the publisher nor its authors bear any responsibility for any damage arising from inadvertent omissions, negligence or inaccuracies (typographical or factual) that may have found their way into this book.

Copyright © 2012 Dorling Kindersley (India) Pvt. Ltd

Licensees of Pearson Education in South Asia

No part of this eBook may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without the publisher's prior written consent.

This eBook may or may not include all assets that were part of the print version. The publisher reserves the right to remove any material present in this eBook at any time.

ISBN 9788131759219

eISBN 9789332506718

Head Office: A-8(A), Sector 62, Knowledge Boulevard, 7th Floor, NOIDA 201 309, India

Registered Office: 11 Local Shopping Centre, Panchsheel Park, New Delhi 110 017, India

Contents

<i>Abbreviations</i>	<i>iv</i>
<i>Preface</i>	<i>v</i>
<i>Acknowledgements</i>	<i>vi</i>
<i>About the book</i>	<i>vii</i>
Chapter 1 God and his creations	3
Chapter 2 Birth of man	24
Chapter 3 All that is new Becomes old; all that is born must die	46
Chapter 4 Matters of the head and the heart	71
Chapter 5 Knowledge and wisdom	72
Chapter 6 I see!	107
Chapter 7 I speak!	120
Chapter 8 Hands, feet, ears and back	147
Chapter 9 Touch and sensitivity	157
Chapter 10 Roti, kapda aur Makaan	171
Chapter 11 All work and no play	188
Chapter 12 Moving about	205
Chapter 13 To move up, after or to the side	234
Chapter 14 Postures	244
Chapter 15 Strength and the use of strength	258
Chapter 16 Stretch, spread and close	283
Chapter 17 The good and the bad	295
Chapter 18 Light and dark	305
Chapter 19 Oneself and the others	318
Chapter 20 People and their governments	331
Chapter 21 On Cutting and joining	345
Chapter 22 Quantities and values	363
Chapter 23 Miscellany	386
Bibliography	411
Index	413

Abbreviations

Abbreviations and Symbols Used In The Book

L.	Latin
Fr.	French
Gk.	Greek
Skt.	Sanskrit
Gmc	Germanic
Sp.	Spanish
Eng.	English
N	Noun
V	Verb
Adj	Adjective
Adv	Adverb
=>	Development of meaning from given root words
->	Development of a second root word from first. For example, L <i>opus</i> -> Fr. <i>oeuvre</i>

Preface

This book will be a valuable resource for students preparing for competitive exams like the GRE, SAT, GMAT and CAT. It is a great treasury of the English words derived from Latin and Greek roots. A unique feature of the book is that it also lists, wherever applicable, the Hindi words which come from the same ancestor root as the English words being discussed. These Hindi-English relations will often make you go “wow!”

The book is divided into 23 chapters. Each chapter has a particular theme. All the roots which are related to a chapter's theme are discussed in it. For example, the subject of Chapter 1 is ‘God and his creations.’ So the roots discussed in this chapter include the Latin and Greek words for God, star, earth, mountain, stone, water, man, woman and different animals.

Every difficult word is written in bold and its meaning is usually given as a footnote on the same page. If you see a word in bold that does not have a footnote, please go to the index at the end of the book. The index will give you the page number where the word has been defined.

You will also find many stories in each chapter. Each story incorporates some difficult words. The idea is to make learning new words a fun experience for you. Moreover, words learnt through stories stick in the mind.

You can study the book in any order that you want. Each root is an independent discussion unit. Likewise, the practice tests for each chapter too are arranged as per the roots. So, you can do a small cluster of roots and then test yourself on them. I strongly suggest that you take the practice tests soon after doing the words. The tests will clarify your knowledge of the words just studied.

Why the root-based approach to learning English words works

The remarkable feature of English is that it has borrowed greatly from other languages. More than 60 per cent of the English words currently in use are derived from Latin or Greek sources. This book has documented many of them. By learning a single root, you can often learn a whole cluster of English words. And, you will frequently discover that a word that has been giving you nightmares is actually related to a very common word. For example, ‘occlusion’ comes from the same root as ‘close.’ Just reading this makes us attentive to the ‘clus’ part of ‘occlusion’ and the next time we see the word, we remember that the word has something to do with ‘closing.’

This book lists not only the commonly used English relatives of the difficult words that you find in the GRE, GMAT, CAT or the SAT, but also their Hindi relatives. Are you surprised?

Most of the languages of Europe, Northern and Western India, Pakistan, Afghanistan and Iran have a common mother language—the Indo European language. The Indo European people lived around 7000 years ago and migrated in waves to different lands, taking their language along. For example, some Indo Europeans came to India. Their language evolved as Sanskrit. Similarly, the language of Indo Europeans in other regions evolved independently as Iranian, Greek, Latin and Germanic. So, we can say that Sanskrit, Iranian, Greek, Latin and Germanic are sister languages. Each of them further branched into child languages. For example, English is a child language of Germanic. Similarly, Hindi, Punjabi, Gujarati, Bengali and Marathi are all child languages of Sanskrit. Thus, English and Hindi are linguistic cousins.

This discovery of the origin of words and how they and their meaning changed with time and the other words they are related with is fascinating and fun-filled! I hope that it will also help you get good command over the vocabulary you need to ace the different competitive examinations.

Enjoy this voyage of words!

Acknowledgements

This book is dedicated with gratitude to my family, who showed me the sky and let me soar.

And dear Vikram Seth, I feel glad of this chance to acknowledge your influence in print. You are my literary inspiration and aspiration. Your rich vocabulary, the way you play with words, your sunny writing style, your maverick career choices, all are my models for emulation.

I would also like to thank my friends who have, over the years, been my support and strength. Kaminee, Simran, Jas, Kanchan, Nitin, Shivani, Smriti, Shambhawi, Jaspreet Bindra, Varun Verma, Swedha and the rest of the MM gang, Shalini Sharma, Jyoti, Samik and Saurabh, you all are the greatest of friends!

Dilraj, Twinkle, Harsh and Manraj, I would not have been able to work with undivided attention on this book, had it not been for your cooperation and support. Thanks!

I am grateful to Showick Thorpe, Asad Shabir, Akanksha Joseph and the editorial staff at Pearson Education who have transformed my manuscript into this beautiful book. And specially to Showick, for the enthusiasm that you showed for my work when I was still only half way through meant a lot to me for as a first-time author I was. It sustained me till the completion of the project. Thank you!

About the book

This book is intended to be a comprehensive database of the English words derived from Latin and Greek roots. It will therefore be a valuable resource for the students preparing for competitive exams like the GRE, SAT, GMAT and CAT.

The book is divided into 23 chapters. Each chapter has a particular theme. All the roots which are related to that theme are discussed in that chapter.

The meaning of every difficult word is given as a footnote on the same page. If you see a word in bold which does not have a footnote, please go to the index at the end of the book. The index will give you the page number where the word has been defined.

You can study the book in any order that you want. Each root is an independent discussion unit. Likewise, the practice tests on the associated website too are arranged as per the roots. So, you can do any number of roots from any number of chapters, and then go to the website and test yourself on those particular roots.

I strongly suggest that you take the practice tests soon after doing the words. The tests will make sure that you don't just read this book but study it. The practice will also make the words stick in your mind.

The theoretical basis of the book

Most of the languages of Europe, those of Northern and Western India, Pakistan, Afghanistan and Iran have a common mother language- the Indo European language. The Indo European people lived around 7000 years ago and migrated in waves to different lands, taking their language along. For example, some Indo Europeans came to India. Their language evolved as Sanskrit. Similarly, the languages of Indo Europeans in other regions evolved independently as Iranian, Greek, Latin and Germanic. Each of these languages further branched into child languages of their own. For example, Punjabi, Gujarati, Hindi, Bengali, Marathi are all child languages of Sanskrit. Similarly, English is a child language of Germanic. Thus, English and Hindi are linguistic cousins.

The remarkable feature of English is that it has borrowed greatly from other languages. More than 60% of the English words currently in use are derived from Latin or Greek sources! This book has documented many of those roots. Further, and this is a unique feature of this book, the Sanskrit and Hindi cousins of the English words have also been discussed wherever applicable.

I hope that you will gain a greater understanding of the words by studying their roots and development of meaning. Enjoy this voyage of words!

This page is intentionally left blank.

GOD AND HIS CREATIONS

Greek *theos* god

It had never happened to the *qawwal* before. He was singing devotional *qawwalis* with his group, like in any of the three thousand performances he had given till now. The last hour of the programme was about to begin. A *qawwali* was ending. The beats of the tabla and the claps of the junior *qawwals* were getting faster and louder. Something came over him. He got up and started dancing on stage. His eyes were closed, his face towards the sky and he kept chanting “Allah hoo!” He danced with a wild joy. Every member of the audience felt a divine energy coming out of him. They watched his **corybantic**¹ dance with a **reverent**² silence. They felt in the presence of God!

After a few minutes, he slowed down. The music **ebbed**³ correspondingly. Then, he **flopped**⁴ down on the stage. There was pin drop silence. After he had regained his breath, he took the mike, and tried to say something about his dance in **trance**⁵. He could not find words. With tears in his eyes, he bent down and kissed the ground again and again, then looked at the audience and tried to speak. Broken sentences were all his emotion could manage. “This....this was the day for which....Allah blessed my art today....Allah entered me....Allah entered me! My art...all those years...that hard work....was blessed...the **pinnacle**⁶ of my art!”

¹ **Corybantic:** (adj) wild, uncontrolled.

Phrygia was a kingdom that arose in the 8th century BC. It was located in what is now Turkey. The main goddess whom the Phrygians **revered** was Cybele. The priests of Cybele were called Corybants. They worshipped her through wild, **ecstatic** dances done to the fast beats of drums. Therefore, a performance which is as unrestrained as that of the Corybants is called **corybantic**.

² **Reverent:** (adj) deeply respectful. Noun form: **reverence**. Verb form: **revere**

The people of every religion are **reverent** towards their holy books.

This sentence could also be written as:

The people of every religion treat their holy books with **reverence**.

The people of every religion **revere** their books.

³ **Ebb:** (v) to decline, fade away or fall back; (n) a decline, fading away or falling back.

When somebody's business is at a low **ebb**, it is in a state of decline.

⁴ **Flop:** (v) to fall down suddenly or to drop suddenly with a thud.

The boy **flopped** his bag on the bed and **flopped** down on the sofa.

What do you call a movie that falls down at the box office? **A flop!**

⁵ **Trance:** (n) a semi-conscious state, like between sleeping and waking.

Origin: Latin prefix *trans-*, across + *ire*, ‘to go’ => *transire*, ‘to go across’. *Transire* became **trance** in English. So, **trance** is that state when you ‘go across’ from consciousness towards unconsciousness.

Drugs can put you in a **trance**.

⁶ **Pinnacle:** (n) peak, the highest point.

What would be the word for the *qawwal's* state when he felt that Allah was in him? Enthusiasm. Surprised? Enthusiasm comes from the Greek *entheos*, meaning 'with a god inside' (Greek *en-*, in). Later on, the word started being used whenever someone was as wildly excited as that *qawwal*, whatever the cause of his excitement may be.



If you are sitting tongue-tied with somebody, ask him the greatest conversation-starter on earth—'Do you believe in God?' Then disagree with his answer. The sun will fall down, the stars will fly up and vice versa, but you two will still be debating.

A man who believes in God is called a 'theist', and the one who does not is an **atheist**⁷. Worship of one God is called **monotheism**⁸. On the other hand is **pantheism**⁹. The song *Zarre zarre mein usi ka noor hai* from the movie Delhi-6 (lyrics: Prasoon Joshi) neatly explains the **pantheistic** philosophy.

The remaining *theos* words are: **pantheon**¹⁰, **theology**¹¹, **theocracy**¹², **apotheosis**¹³

Latin *sacer* **holy**

The most common word from this root is 'sacred'. Next, we have the word 'sacrifice'. Sacrifice is built from *sacer* + *facere*, to make. So, it means 'to make sacred.' And, how can you make an ordinary animal or human sacred? By offering him to god!

⁷ **Atheist:** (n) one who denies the existence of god or gods.

Origin: Gk *a-*, without + *theos*.

❑ Prince Prahlad believed in god. His **atheist** father, Hiranyakashipur, tried many things to make him change his belief but all failed.

⁸ **Monotheism:** (n) the belief that there is only one God.

Origin: Gk *monos*, alone + *theos*+ *-ism*, belief => 'belief in one god alone'

⁹ **Pantheism:** (n) the belief that God does not have any personality; rather, he is present in everything. God is in all, and so, all is God.

Origin: Gk *pan-*, all + *theos*+ *-ism* => 'belief that all is god'

¹⁰ **Pantheon:** (n) a temple dedicated to all the gods; all the gods of a religion considered collectively.

Origin: Gk *pan-*, all + *theos* => 'all gods'

❑ Indra is the king of the Hindu **pantheon**.

¹¹ **Theology:** (n) study of religion.

Origin: Gk *theos* + *-logy*, study

¹² **Theocracy:** (n) a state ruled by religious leaders and in which the religious law is dominant over civil law.

Origin: Gk *theos* + *-cracy*, rule.

The suffix *-cracy* is also found in democracy. Gk. *demos* means people. So, democracy=> 'rule of people'

¹³ **Apotheosis:** (n) elevation to godhood; the ideal example of something.

Origin: Gk *apo-*, change + *theos* + *-osis*, action => 'action of changing into god.'

❑ "The central fact of Hinduism is cow protection... Why the cow was selected for **apotheosis** is obvious to me. The cow was in India the best companion. She was the giver of plenty. Not only did she give milk, but she also made agriculture possible (through the bull)..." Mahatma Gandhi on 'Gau-mata'. In fact, calling the politician M.K. Gandhi a 'Mahatma' is itself an example of **apotheosis**.

❑ Amar Akbar Anthony is the **apotheosis** of the masala Hindi films.

To make something sacred is called **consecration**¹⁴. Its opposite is **desecration**¹⁵ or **sacrilege**¹⁶. Almost everyone **execrates**¹⁷ the evil guy who commits **sacrilege**. If that guy is found out, they beat him black and blue. “You did such an **execrable**¹⁸ deed. Now suffer!” they say and kick him some more.

Try speaking *sacer* through the nose. You will speak something like *sa-n-cr*. This leads us to the nasalised version of the root, *sancire*, which means ‘to make holy’. The words built on this root are:

Sacred Sancire-1: saint, **sanctify**¹⁹, **sanction**²⁰

¹⁴ **Consecration**: (n) the act of making sacred, setting apart as sacred or devoting oneself to something.

Origin: L *con-*, *com-*, intensive prefix+ *sacer* +-*ate* => ‘to make sacred’

❑ He **consecrated** his life to music.

❑ Sohni still loved her dead husband. Like a child, she treasured every **trifle** which had been **consecrated** by his touch.

Trifle: (n) a thing of very little value. See **trivial**.

¹⁵ **Desecration**: (n) the act of violating the sacredness of.

Origin: L *de-*, remove+ *sacer*+ *-ate* => ‘to remove the sacredness of’

❑ The **sanctity** of the temple was **desecrated** by its own priest when he raped a minor girl there.

❑ Trisha Oberoi, the famous Bollywood heroine, was charged with **desecrating** the national flag when she posed for a magazine wearing nothing but just a smaller version of the tricolor draped suggestively around her body.

¹⁶ **Sacrilege**: (n) the act of violating the sacredness of.

Origin: L *sacer*+ *legere*, to pick up => ‘to pick up something sacred’ => ‘to steal something that was **consecrated** to god’ => ‘to not treat the things **consecrated** to god with respect’

❑ There was tension at Madgarh’s masjid after a man threw away the Holy Quran during the afternoon prayers. The **infuriated** worshippers immediately gathered around him to beat him to pulp for his **sacrilege** but the Imam of the masjid asked them to spare the man because he was **deranged**.

¹⁷ **Execrate**: (v) to hate someone or something so much that you curse him or it.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *sacer* => ‘to throw out of the sacred things’ => ‘to throw out of the things blessed by God’ => ‘to curse’

The act of **execrating** is called an **execration**. The curse that is given is also called an **execration**.

❑ All of us have some secrets which we tell no one, or the entire black truth of which we tell no one, because we know how everyone would **execrate** us if we did.

¹⁸ **Execrable**: (adj) very bad, deserving to be hated or cursed.

Origin: *execrate*+ *-able*

❑ John took Saisha to a five star hotel to celebrate her gold medal. “How’s the food?” he asked her during the dinner. “Good,” she smiled and privately thought that the food was expensive and **execrable**.

❑ *Billo ke badan ki aag* was an **execrable** C-grade movie.

❑ Please note that **execrate**, **execration** and **execrable** are not related with excrete, excretion and excreta.

¹⁹ **Sanctify**: (v) to make holy, consecrate; to impart religious **sanction** to.

Origin: L *sanctus*, holy + *facere*, to make => ‘to make holy’

❑ Sachin felt that the **serene** and saintly presence of his mother **sanctified** their troubled home.

❑ The priest **sanctified** the marriage.

Serene: (adj) calm, peaceful. (n): **serenity**

²⁰ **Sanction**: (n) official approval, permission; a punishment, especially for violating a moral principle or an international law.

Origin: L *sancire*, to make sacred => ‘an order that makes something sacred’ => ‘an authoritative order’

❑ Rhea’s father refused to **sanction** her modeling ambitions. Even when she bagged her first ramp show, he did not attend it.

❑ The United States imposed economic **sanctions** on India in the **wake** of the Pokhraan nuclear tests.

Wake: (n) the visible track of disturbance left by something moving through water, and by extension, the consequences of something that has itself passed. We can talk about the **wake** of a ship or of an aeroplane or of a war. This wake is of course different from the wake in ‘wake up early.’

*Sacred Sancire-2: sanctuary*²¹, *sacrosanct*²²

(The similarity between the English word 'saint' and the Hindi 'sant' is accidental.)



Swaran Singh came back to India after twenty years for a short visit. He found that his mother had aged and his younger brother, Charan, who was a **rakish**²³ bachelor when he had left, was now a pot-bellied father of three kids! There was so much to catch-up, he exclaimed, as he hugged his dear, dear brother tightly.

The next day, Swaran, Charan and their mother were sitting together in her room, talking, joking, laughing and **basking**²⁴ in the warmth of **maternal**, **fraternal**²⁵ and **filial**²⁶ love. Charan's eldest child, seventeen-year old Raju walked in.

"Papa," he said with a **drooping**²⁷ face, "I am sorry."

"Why *beta*?" The boy's surprised father and grandmother asked.

Raju did not look up. Charan pulled him closer and gently asked him once again.

²¹ **Sanctuary:** (n) a sacred place; a safe place.

Origin: L *sanctus*, holy

- ❑ The underside of his bed was little Rafi's **sanctuary** which sheltered him from all the ugly quarrels between his parents.
- ❑ A wild-life **sanctuary** is called so because it offers a safe **haven** to the wild animals.

Haven: (n) a place of shelter and safety.

²² **Sacrosanct:** (adj) extremely sacred, inviolable.

Origin: *sacer*, holy + *sanctus*, holy => 'very, very holy'

- ❑ Treating the deadline as **sacrosanct** is the only way of achieving it.
- ❑ The followers of every religion regard their holy books as **sacrosanct**.

²³ **Rakish:** (adj) smart, dashing, stylish, sporty; marked by a devil-may-care attitude.

²⁴ **Bask:** (v) to enjoy the warmth or sunshine.

Origin: Old English *bath*+ *-ask*, suffix => 'to bathe oneself'.

²⁵ **Fraternal:** (adj) brotherly.

Origin: L *frater*, brother.

- ❑ In fact, the L *frater*, the English *brother* and the Sanskrit *bhrata* are all Indo-European cousins (the 'f' sound of Latin= 'ph' in Greek= 'bh' in Sanskrit= 'b' in English).
- ❑ Sanskrit *bhratra*-> *biraadri*; Latin *frater* -> **fraternity**. Both *biraadri* and **fraternity** mean 'brotherhood'.

Fratricide: (n) killing one's brother.

Origin: L *frater*+ *-cide*, to kill

- ❑ Mahabharata is the story of the **fratricidal** war between the Kauravas and the Pandavas.
- ❑ The old lady **lamented** that the Indo-Pak war was **fratricidal**. She said: "They are the sons of the same soil, can't they see that?"

²⁶ **Filial:** (adj) of, relating to, or befitting a son or daughter.

Origin: L *filius*, son

- ❑ **Filial** duties are the duties of a child towards his parents; **filial** respect is the respect a child must show to his parents.
- ❑ Sravan Kumar, the young man who died by accident while serving his blind parents, is a **paragon** of **filial** devotion.

Another word from the root *filius* is 'affiliate'.

Affiliate: (v) to adopt as a member or branch; to become closely associated.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *filius* => 'towards being a son' => 'to adopt'

- ❑ The school **affiliated** itself to the CBSE. The CBSE acts like a mother organization to which many small, independent child organizations attach themselves.
- ❑ Sanskrit is **affiliated** with the Indo-European family of languages.

²⁷ **Droop:** (v) bend or fall downwards; lose heart.

Origin: Droop is related with 'drop'. Droop means to drop down.

- ❑ The little girl said many angry words to the flower she had grown in her balcony. The poor flower **drooped**.

“Papa, hadn’t you once told me that expecting gains from our loved ones violates the **sanctity**²⁸ of love?” He seemed on the **verge**²⁹ of crying.

“Why do you ask *beta*?”

Raju was ashamed. He spoke slowly. “Papa, I thought that I could ask Swaran uncle to get me a motorcycle. Uncle, I am sorry, I didn’t mean it. I really didn’t. I am sorry papa.”

Everyone was touched.

“I am proud of you, my son,” Charan said. “It was only a **peccadillo**. Don’t worry so much about it. Now smile and go and teach Deepu and Soni.”

Swaran was impressed. In today’s world of **turpitude**³⁰, where did one see such honest boys? “I *will* buy you a motorcycle *beta*,” he promised within himself. “You deserve it.”

“See!” Charan remarked when Raju left. “On the one hand is Raju, and on the other, Deepu and Soni. They are a disappointment! They never **heed**³¹ my words.”

That evening, Swaran saw Deepu sitting in the garden with a book and walked to him. When they started talking, he found that Deepu was quite an intelligent young man with **articulate**³² thoughts. He wondered why Charan was disappointed by him. Quite happy at the discovery that his younger nephew was not ‘a disappointment’, that he too could bring laurels to the family, he patted Deepu’s head and said affectionately, “Take guidance from your elder brother, my son, learn from him. If you can be even half like him, you would be a great man.”

“Uncle, please not you too!” Deepu exclaimed. “I *do not* want to be like him! I *hate* him. Don’t you see? I don’t understand why everyone fails to see through his **wiles**³³. He is faking it, for heaven’s sake! He acts and talks as if he is a god sent on earth because he *knows* it will impress everybody. Uncle, you too seem to be taken in by his **sanctimony**³⁴.”

²⁸ **Sanctity:** (n) sacredness, purity.

Origin: L *sanctus*, holy

See the sentence for ‘desecration.’

²⁹ **Verge:** (n) edge, brink, borderline.; (v) to be on the edge of

❑ His determination to succeed **verged** on madness.

Brink: the upper edge of a sharp slope; any edge.

❑ The nation is on the **brink** of a financial crisis.

³⁰ **Turpitude:** (n) sin

❑ The woman had a lively discussion with her much younger sister on whether a live-in relationship was **turpitude** or not.

❑ A doctor, who makes his patients undergo needless surgeries and tests just so that he can mint money, is guilty of moral **turpitude**.

³¹ **Heed:** (v) pay attention to.

Heedful: (adj) paying attention; **Heedless:** (adj) not attentive, without regard.

❑ **Heedless** of the angry **glares** of the whole audience, she kept talking on the phone while the play was going on.

³² **Articulate:** (adj) clear and distinct. (v) to make clear, to speak clearly and distinctly

Origin: From ‘article’. An article is an individual thing or object. **Articulate** means ‘to divide something big into many smaller, distinct articles.’

❑ An **articulate** speaker is one who can express himself clearly. He breaks down his complex idea into smaller points and then talks about one point at a time. He uses language with ease and facility. Thus, he is able to get his idea across.

❑ She couldn’t **articulate** her emotions. This means, she couldn’t express them in clear words.

Inarticulate: (adj) not clear; unable to speak clearly.

❑ An **inarticulate** speaker cannot express himself clearly. He is either not fluent in the language or has a speech defect or does not know how to present his idea in a way that the audience will understand.

❑ **Inarticulate** pain is unexpressed pain. ‘**Inarticulate** with pain’ means ‘so much in pain that he could not even speak.’

³³ **Wile:** (n) a trick meant to fool or trap; (adj): **wily**, means ‘full of tricks on how to fool others.’

³⁴ **Sanctimony:** (n) making a false show of righteousness or religious devotion. The man who does this *paakhand* is called **sanctimonious**.

Because yesterday, he was **bragging**³⁵ before me that he had made sure you would buy him a motorcycle. Mama and papa and *daadi* are already puppets in his hands. He gets them to do anything that he wants, and the funny thing is, they do not even realize they are being manipulated! Soni and I suffer because we do not like doing such tricks. He has **subtly**³⁶ turned everybody against us. Mama, papa, *daadi*, they all believe that we are both good-for-nothing time wasters and who better to reform us than Raju? When we tell him we don't need his lectures, he **embroiders**³⁷ our words on his own and gives the most damaging report to them, which further corrodes their impression of us. Uncle you don't know how miserable Soni and I are. We cannot even protest because it's always Raju's word against ours. You don't know how we pray for that Raju be sent away somewhere from where he cannot return for at least 10 years!"

The words of both the boys seemed genuine to Swaran but one was clearly lying. Who? Swaran was **flummoxed**³⁸.

Latin *humus* earth

We are called humans because we belong to the *humus* (the earth), as opposed to the gods and **demons**³⁹, who live either in the skies or under the ground. The Bible followed the same logic. In Hebrew (the language in which the first Biblical records were written), ground is called *adamah*. So, the first man was called Adam. The word *aadmi* that we use so often is also derived from *adamah* and has reached us via Arabic.

Everybody is a human, but only he can be called **humane**⁴⁰ who has the feelings that befit a man.

Origin: L. *sanctus*, holy+ *-mony*, a state => 'a state of being holy'. So, the word initially meant 'holiness'. Slowly, however, it started being used for 'pretended holiness.'

- ❑ Meeta Ganguli was making a film on the **plight** of the widows living in the temples of Vrindavan. However, a group of Hindu fundamentalists came to know and they **vandalized** her sets, saying that they would not allow her to make a film that **affronted** the Hindu culture. When journalists asked her for her response, she said: "These people are **sanctimonious**. They allow all the wrong things to happen in their 'Hindu culture' but cannot bear if anyone talks about those things; discussion becomes an insult to their culture. I will not be **intimidated** by such two-faced people."

Vandalize: (v) to damage public or private property in order to show anger or frustration, or to harm someone.

A person who vandalizes is called a **vandal**. So, we can say that:

- ❑ Deepa Ganguli refused to be **intimidated** by the **vandals**.

³⁵ **Brag:** (v) boast.

Braggart: (n) a man who brags.

Braggadocio: (n) bragging; a man who brags.

- ❑ Some people read books to enjoy them; others, to **brag** about them.
- ❑ **Braggarts** are often insecure people. They desperately try to convince others that they do amount to something.
- ❑ **Braggadocio** is often a sign of insecurity. **Braggadocios** desperately try to convince others that they do amount to something.

³⁶ **Subtle:** (adj) very thin or delicate; so delicate that it is hard to detect or understand; that which can be understood by only a very sharp mind; sharp-minded.

- ❑ The words 'collect' and 'gather' are often used interchangeably but there is a **subtle** difference in their meanings. 'Collect' may imply a careful selection based on some property or rule but 'gather' means only accumulation.
- ❑ The writer wore a white *kurta* with **subtle embellishments**.
- ❑ The king was killed by a **subtle** poison. The royal **apothecary** had given him a ring to wear at all times, saying that it would keep all diseases away. That ring was poisoned on the interior. The poison slowly passed into the king's body. He died a week later.

Apothecary: (n) one who prepares and sells medicines, pharmacist.

Another form of the word **subtle** is **subtile**.

Subtile: subtle

³⁷ **Embroider:** (v) to decorate cloth with needlework; to exaggerate or add fictitious details.

³⁸ **Flummox:** (v) make totally confused.

³⁹ **Demon:** (n) devil. The related adjective form is **demonic**.

- ❑ The **demonic** teacher struck terror in the young children—they called him Raavan—and they could never forget the swiftness and force with which he delivered a slap.
- ❑ In Hindi movies, the villain is usually the guy with a **demonic** laughter.

⁴⁰ **Humane:** (adj) kind-hearted, sympathetic.

The Latin word *homo* means man (the *homo* found in homosexual is a different one. It is a Greek prefix which means 'same'.) It is found in:

Homage⁴¹, **bonhomie**⁴² and **homicide**⁴³.



The shepherds in the mountains are **nomads**⁴⁴. In the summer, they move with their herds to the upper regions of the mountains in search of **pastures**⁴⁵. When winter sets in, they return to the forests and plains where their cattle will still be able to **forage**⁴⁶ for food. This annual to-and-fro movement is called **transhumance**⁴⁷.

Origin: A variant of 'human'. Human and humane were used interchangeably till the 18th century. Then, humane slowly became a distinct word meaning 'with human qualities.'

- ❑ Some people think that capital punishment is more **humane** than life imprisonment, because it kills instantly whereas life imprisonment kills painfully, in slow degrees. A few say that both are equally **inhumane** because both take away from a man his right to life.

Inhumane: (adj) not humane, inhuman. Human and **humane** have different meanings but inhuman and **inhumane** mean the same.

⁴¹ **Homage:** (n) public expression of respect or honour.

Origin: L *homo*, man => 'respect shown to a man'

- ❑ The Prime Minister paid **homage** to the soldiers who died during the Kargil war.

⁴² **Bonhomie:** (n) good-natured manner, friendliness.

Origin: L *bon*, good+ *homo* => French *bonhomme* 'good-natured man' => English bonhomie.

- ❑ Everybody was pleasantly surprised by the **bonhomie** between the two biggest stars of Bollywood. Hridya Rolan and Aafiz Khan were invited at the celebrity chat show 'Tea for free' and they were seen telling jokes to each other and pulling each other's leg.

⁴³ **Homicide:** (n) killing of one human by another. Intentional homicide is called murder, and unintentional, manslaughter.

Origin: L *homo*+ *-cide*, to kill.

- ❑ A top actress was found dead in her bungalow, with an empty bottle of sleeping pills by her side. "Is this suicide?" The mediapersons fell over each other to ask the Superintendent of Police. "It may be," he said, "but it may be **homicide** too. We are investigating the matter."

⁴⁴ **Nomad:** (n) a member of a tribe which has no fixed home and moves with the seasons from place to place.

⁴⁵ **Pasture:** (n) an area covered with grass or other plants on which the animals can graze.

Origin: L *pascere*, to feed.

Pastoral: (adj) related to pastures or shepherds; rural (because the pastures are found in rural areas)

- ❑ Most of the paintings of the painter were in **pastoral** greens and vibrant reds and yellows.
- ❑ As opposed to the speed and tension of the cities, **pastoral** life moves in a relaxed slow motion.

Another word which has -past- in it is **repast**.

Repast: (n) a meal.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *pascere*, to feed => 'to feed again' => 'to feed regularly' => 'the meal that is fed.'

- ❑ We ended our **repast** with hot *gulab jamuns*.
- ❑ A **repast** befitting the kings was laid out to welcome the son-in-law of the house.

⁴⁶ **Forage:** (n) food for horses and cattle; (v) to make a search for food etc.

- ❑ The conversion of forests into agricultural land seriously decreases the availability of **forage**.
- ❑ The poor child had to **forage** the garbage dumps for food. The rag-pickers **foraged** it for plastics, metals and broken glass.

A related word is **foray**.

Foray: (n) a quick attack; an initial attempt in a new area (v) to make such an attack.

Origin: Foray is related with forage.

- ❑ The dacoits made a **foray** on the king's tent in the jungle.
- ❑ Amitabh Bachchan's **foray** into politics was not successful.

As we did above, **forage** means the food for horses and cattle. The word **fodder** too has a similar meaning. Let's see what is the difference between the two.

Fodder: (n) food for cattle, horses and other domesticated animals. Fodder refers particularly to food *given* to the animals. The food which they **forage** for themselves is not called fodder.

Origin: Fodder is related with food.

⁴⁷ **Transhumance:** (n) the seasonal migration of **livestock** and the people who look after them, from one grazing ground to another.

Origin: L *trans-*, across+ *humus* => 'to move across the ground'

Livestock: (n) domestic animals, such as cattle, sheep and horses, which are kept for use or profit.

Origin: *live*, alive+ *stock*, goods of a trade => 'living goods'

When one of those shepherds dies, if he is a Muslim or a Christian, a priest is called to perform the dead man's **inhumation**⁴⁸. The buried dead body slowly decomposes into the earth and is called **humus**⁴⁹, thereafter. If somebody later on raises suspicions about the death and suggests to the police that it could be a case of **homicide**, the police may **exhume**⁵⁰ the dead body to investigate the truth.

Shuza Aahat died as a poor and poorly known writer. His last novel was on a shepherd who dies under mysterious circumstances. It was published **posthumously**⁵¹ and became a bestseller. Poor Shuza! All his life, he tried to catch a glimpse of Success. And all the while, she was hiding behind Death's **posterior**.



The Latin *humilis* means 'close to the ground, lowly'. Someone who shows **humility**⁵² stays close to the ground. You would describe such a person as 'down to earth.' You would say, '*uske paon dharti pe hain.*' On the other hand, when you 'humiliate' someone, you try to throw him down on the earth from the high skies that he seems to be flying in.

IE *ster-* **star**

The English 'star', Latin *sidus* and *stella*, Greek *astrum* and the Sanskrit *sitaara* (simplified into *taara*) have all arisen from the same Indo-European root, *ster-*.

The star-like symbol * is called an 'asterisk'. And, the study of stars is called 'astronomy'. Astronomy was born out of our fascination with the **stellar**⁵³ bodies we saw at night.

Twinkle, twinkle little star, How I wonder what you are! Up above the world so high, like a diamond in the sky.

-
- ❑ The Vann Gujjars are a **pastoral nomadic** community. They live in the Shivalik hills and practice **transhumance**. In summer, they move to the upper Himalayas so that their buffaloes can graze in the **pastures** there and return to the plains when the winter starts.

⁴⁸ **Inhume:** (v) to bury

Origin: L *in-*, in + *humus* => 'into the earth'

- ❑ Rehmat Bi was **inhumed** next to her husband.

⁴⁹ **Humus:** (n) the nutrient-rich soil material formed by decaying vegetable and animal matter.

Origin: L *humus*

- ❑ The earthworms feed on the **humus** produced by fallen leaves.
- ❑ Most of the trees of the hill forest were destroyed in a forest fire. So, when the monsoons came, there was nothing to hold back the **humus**, which had taken hundreds of years to form, in the top soil. The **humus** got washed away. This made it difficult for vegetation to **regenerate** in the destroyed forest.

⁵⁰ **Exhume:** (v) to take out from the earth.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *humus* => 'out of the earth'

⁵¹ **Posthumous:** (adj) taking place after one's death.

Origin: L *post-*, after + *humus* => 'after the man has met the ground' => 'after the man's burial'

- ❑ Captain Shaurya Handa was **conferred** the Vir Chakra **posthumously** for successfully repulsing an attack on an army post in Kashmir.
- ❑ A **posthumous** child is one who was born after the death of his father, or was taken from the dead body of his mother.

⁵² **Humility:** (n) absence of pride and arrogance. The guy who shows humility is called **humble**.

Origin: L *humus* => 'on the ground'

- ❑ Hridya Rolan's friends were touched by his **humility**. Even after he became the hottest star of Bollywood, he did not put on any airs but remained the same with them, giving them the same respect, showing the same concern for them as before.

⁵³ **Stellar:** (adj) related to the stars; like a star.

Origin: L *stella*, star

- ❑ The dancer's **stellar** performance made the whole audience go "wow!"

As we looked at the stars, we imagined groups of them making shapes that were familiar to us. We called such groups, constellations (meaning ‘stars together’; Latin *en-* means ‘together’). Now, if those groups were there, they must do something too. So, we decided that those **sidereal**⁵⁴ groups regulated our life.

When you say you will ‘consider’, the etymology tells us that you want to ‘consult the stars’ before you make your decision. You are doing that probably because you have been told that ‘disaster’ happens when one’s ‘stars are turned away’ from one (Latin *dis-*, apart).

Of course, Astronomy has left these **dubious**⁵⁵ interpretations of **astral**⁵⁶ positions far behind. It is today a logic-driven scientific study of stars and their arrangement in the universe.

The whole universe is the playfield of astronomy, and so the distances are measured in light years. One light year equals, huh, an **astronomical**⁵⁷ 9.5 trillion km!

Latin *petros* **stone**

Notice how similar *petros* is to the Hindi *pathar!*

‘Petroleum’ literally means ‘oil from the stones.’



⁵⁴ **Sidereal:** (adj) related to the stars.

Origin: L *sidus*, star

- ❑ The **sidereal** rotation period of Venus is 243 earth days. This means that Venus takes 243 earth days (1 earth day= 24 hours) to rotate around a star. The star in this case is the Sun. Can you guess how much time would Pluto take to complete one **sidereal** rotation? 248.6 years!
- ❑ We think that our Earth is big and the Sun, bigger still. But the **sidereal** universe is so huge that in it, all our planets and even our Sun look like mere **specks**.
- ❑ **Speck:** (n) a small spot, a bit.

⁵⁵ **Dubious:** (adj) arousing doubt, questionable, undecided.

Dubiety: (n) a feeling of doubt; a matter of doubt.

Origin: L *duo*, two => ‘in two minds, undecided about something.’

- ❑ Mrs Shrivastava was **dubious** about her daughter marrying Taab. “Don’t ask me why- I will not be able to explain my **dubiety**- but I do not feel sure about Taab. Yes, I agree he is a nice guy and all but...how do I explain? Umm...well, let’s say that his love seems rather **dubious** to me,” she said, to the great astonishment of her madly-in-love-with-Taab daughter.

⁵⁶ **Astral:** (adj) of the stars, related to the stars, from the stars or like the stars.

Origin: Gk *astrum*, star.

- ❑ Most Indians believe that their destiny is predetermined by **astral** forces beyond their control.

⁵⁷ **Astronomical:** (adj) related to astronomy; extremely large (because the astronomical bodies and distances are extremely large).

Origin: Gk *astrum*, star + *nomos*, law => ‘a system of laws governing the stars’

The rioters came and **ransacked**⁵⁸ the whole house. One of them found Amu and Sahib crouching under the bed. They **yanked**⁵⁹ out the **cowering**⁶⁰ children, took them out in the courtyard, **doused**⁶¹ them with petroleum and set them afire.

Their grandfather, who had rushed back home as soon as he heard of the riots, was **petrified**⁶² when he saw the **charred**⁶³ bodies.

He did not even cry. What could tears have done when, in one **ruthless**⁶⁴ stroke, Fate had taken away his everything? *They were his world! His darling little Amu...naughty Sahib...* Neighbours came. He did not even register their presence...*how much pain they must have felt...they would have called out to him...if only he had taken them along to the shop...* After the neighbours had tried hard enough to shake him into consciousness, they picked up the children's bodies and took them to the site of mass burial. They found him dead the next morning, at the same spot, in the same pose.

Greek *lithos* stone

The 'Lithosphere' is the solid Earth, as distinguished from the atmosphere and the hydrosphere.

The Kailasa temple in the Ellora caves is reputed as the largest **monolith**⁶⁵ of the world. Carved out of a single rock, this three-storey high temple is believed to have taken 7,000 labourers and 150 years to complete.

⁵⁸ **Ransack:** (v) to turn a place upside down, usually in search of something.

- ❑ After two police constables **pelted** stones on the protesting students, the angry students **ransacked** the administrative office of the university.

Pelt: (v) to throw, to attack

⁵⁹ **Yank:** (v) to pull or remove abruptly and vigorously.

- ❑ She **yanked** open the door.
- ❑ It hurts much more to pull off a band-aid one hair at a time than to **yank** it in one go.
- ❑ Savita Sharma was having her morning walk in her street. Suddenly, a young man passing by her on a motorcycle slowed down and **yanked** off her necklace. She caught hold of his arm and started shouting. He tried to speed away but she did not release his arm. She was dragged along with the motorcycle for some metres before the neighbours gathered and caught hold of the chain-snatcher.

⁶⁰ **Cower:** (v) to shrink or curl up, as in fear or shame. Unrelated to 'coward'.

- ❑ "We will not **cower** before these terrorists, do whatever they might!" The Home Minister thundered before the TV cameras after serial bomb blasts in New Delhi.

⁶¹ **Douse:** (v) to wet thoroughly; to extinguish.

- ❑ 61 fire tenders rushed to **douse** the fire at the hotel.
- ❑ The famous film director Raj Kapoor often showed his heroines **dousing** themselves under a waterfall.

⁶² **Petrify:** (v) turn into stone. Mnemonic: *Pathar-ified*.

- ❑ The hungry beggar munched the **petrified** two-day old *roti* that the housewife gave him.

⁶³ **Char:** (v) make or become black as a result of burning; to reduce to charcoal by incomplete combustion.

Origin: back formation from *charcoal* => 'to turn to charcoal'

⁶⁴ **Ruthless:** (adj) without pity, cruel, merciless.

Origin: ruth+ less => 'without ruth'

- ❑ The don was **ruthless**. His enemy begged him to spare his son and take his life instead. The don agreed and killed the man. Then, he directed the gun at the son and shot him too.

Ruth: (n) pity for another; sorrow or grief over one's own flaws or misdeeds.

Origin: Middle English *reuthe*= *rue*+ *-th*.

Rue: (v) to feel sorry.

Thus, to sum up, the word 'rue' is the grandmother. It produced the word 'ruth', which in turn, produced 'ruthless'. **Rue** means 'to feel sorry'. **Ruth** means 'the state of feeling sorry for somebody or yourself'. And, the guy who never feels sorry—for anybody or his own actions—is called **ruthless**.

Just like rue-ruth, we have true-truth.

- ❑ When her only son threw her out of the house, the old woman **rued** the day she had transferred all the property to his name.

⁶⁵ **Monolith:** (n) something made from a single large block of stone; something as uniform and imposing as a large block of stone

Johan August Arfwedson, a Swedish mineralogist, discovered an element in 1818. Its chemical analysis showed that, like Sodium and Potassium, it belonged to Group I of the periodic table. The latter two had been discovered from plant sources. To emphasize that this one had come from a mineral, it was named Lithium.

Latin *mons* **mountain**

The word 'mount' is used both as a noun and a verb. As a noun, it means 'a mountain', and as a verb, 'to go up, ascend'. The words having a mount in them are **surmount**⁶⁶, **insurmountable**⁶⁷, **paramount**⁶⁸ and **mountebank**⁶⁹.

Now, close your eyes and imagine a mountain. What you see is a great mass of land rising above and towering over the entire area. A mountain is a natural projection in the earth's surface. This is why, the root *minere*, closely related with *mons*, means 'to project, jut'. The words from this root are:

Origin: Gk *monos*, single + *lithos*, stone => 'made of one stone'

Monolithic: (adj) acting as a single, often rigid, uniform whole.

- ❑ The colonists splitted every colony into competing groups so that the **natives** could never unite and present a **monolithic** front.

⁶⁶ **Surmount:** (v) overcome, to be above or on top of.

Origin: L *sur-* is a variant of the prefix *sub-*. *Sub-*, beyond + *mount*, to go up => 'to go up and beyond (the challenges)'

- ❑ The lovers were confident that their love would **surmount** all challenges and emerge victorious.

⁶⁷ **Insurmountable:** (adj) that which cannot be overcome

- ❑ The song *hum honge kaamyab ek din* gives us the confidence that the roadblocks on our way are not **insurmountable** and that we shall, indeed, build a peaceful world someday.

In this sentence, we could also have used the word **insuperable** instead of **insurmountable**.

Insuperable: (adj) that which cannot be overcome.

Origin: L *in-* + *super*, above + *-able* => 'that above which you cannot rise.'

⁶⁸ **Paramount:** (adj) supreme, of the highest rank or importance.

Origin: *par-* is a variant of the Latin prefix *per-*. *Per*, through + *ad-*, to + *mount*, 'go up' => 'to go up throughout' => 'at the very top'

- ❑ The will of the people is **paramount** in a democracy.

⁶⁹ **Mountebank:** (n) a person who sells **quack** medicines.

Origin: Italian *montimbanco* which is built from: L *mount*+ *-im-*, variant of *in-* meaning 'on' + *banco*, bench => 'a man who climbs on a bench' => 'a man who climbs on a bench in the market to attract a crowd and then boasts of his **infallible** medicines and cures'

Quack: (n) a person who pretends to have medical skills which he actually does not have.

Origin: shortened form of *quacksalver*. *Quacksalver:* *quack*, a duck's cry + *salve*, something that soothes pain + *-er* => 'a man who goes quack-quack like a duck about his ability to soothe pain.' => 'a man who boasts about his medicinal skills' => 'a man who falsely boasts about his medicinal skills'

The Hindi word for a **mountebank** or **quack** is *neem-haqeem*. Another word which means the same is **charlatan**. The words **mountebank**, **quack** and **charlatan** can be used interchangeably.

- ❑ The health care system in rural India is **abysmal**. Most often, when a patient goes to the government hospital or primary health centre, he finds it empty. The government doctors do not come to the hospitals. And, most of the private doctors are **quacks**. They do not know much about medicine and give random medicines—some are even known to give saline injections for malaria—just so that the patient is convinced that he has been treated by a doctor and pays the fees.
- ❑ Most of the ladies at the kitty party gushed about Dr Kanti Shah's weight-reduction pills and called him the Diet Guru. A few, however, dismissed his prescriptions as mere **nostrums** of a **mountebank**.

Nostrum: (n) **quack** medicine; a medicine sold with false or exaggerated claims and with no proven effectiveness.

Origin: L *noster*, our => 'a **quack** selling a medicine saying "our" special medicine does this and this and that.'

Minere-1: **Prominent**⁷⁰, **promontory**⁷¹, **promenade**⁷²

Minere-2: **eminent**⁷³, **preeminent**⁷⁴, **imminent**⁷⁵

Minere-3: **menace**⁷⁶, **minatory**⁷⁷, **amenable**⁷⁸, **demean**⁷⁹

Latin *unda* water

This *unda* is from an IE root. It had a Sanskrit **cognate** which is today found in a very common Hindi word. Can you guess which Hindi word that is? No, it is not *andaa*, the egg. Hint: that word will be related with water.

⁷⁰ **Prominent:** (adj) standing out, distinguished, well known.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *minere* => 'projected forward' => 'standing out of the rest'

❑ The *dharna* of the students received support from **prominent** citizens of the city.

⁷¹ **Promontory:** (n) a point of land, usually high and with a sharp drop, extending out into the sea beyond the line of the coast.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *minere* => 'projected forward' => 'a piece of land that is projected forward'

❑ The fort stood on a **promontory** and overlooked a scenic lake.

⁷² **Promenade:** (n) a leisurely walk; a place used for such walking. (v) to go on a leisurely walk.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *minare*, projecting points, threaten => 'to use threats to drive forward' => 'to drive animals forward with shouts' => 'walking'

❑ The whole family went to take a **promenade** on the lake.

❑ The orchard seemed to be a favourite **promenade** for the aged women of the neighbourhood.

⁷³ **Eminent:** (adj) famous, standing out among all others.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *minare* => 'to jut out'

❑ Eminent surgeon, eminent peaks

⁷⁴ **Preeminent:** (adj) number one in eminence; the most eminent; greatest in importance or achievement, outstanding.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *e-* + *minare* => 'to stand out before all others.'

❑ The IIM Ahmedabad is a **preeminent** business school of India.

⁷⁵ **Imminent:** (adj) about to occur, going to happen any moment.

Origin: L *in-*, into + *minere* => 'to jut out into' => 'overhanging, hovering threateningly around one's head.'

❑ The Intelligence reports warned the state government that a terrorist attack on the chief minister was **imminent**.

❑ A cyclist coming along the road had to run offtrack to avoid an **imminent** collision with the speeding car.

⁷⁶ **Menace:** (n) threat, danger. (v) to threaten, put in danger

Origin: L *minare*, to threaten

❑ The **menace** of terrorism must be fought bravely.

❑ The terrorists **menaced** the security of the country.

⁷⁷ **Minatory:** (adj) threatening.

Origin: L *minare*, to threaten.

⁷⁸ **Amenable:** (adj) answerable, open to an idea or advice.

Origin: L *minare*, to threaten -> to drive (cattle etc.) with shouts -> *mener*, to lead; L *ad*, to, towards + *mener* = *amener*, to lead towards (the law) => answerable to the law.

❑ The American ambassador to India is not **amenable** to the Indian laws.

❑ The villagers were more **amenable** to the suggestion of saving trees after social workers explained to them that their children's life tomorrow would be very tough if they continued to cut trees today.

⁷⁹ **Demean:** (v) to behave in the proper manner in society. This behaviour towards the others is called one's 'demeanour'.

Origin: L *de-*, no meaning here + *mener*, to drive a herd of cattle => 'the way one drives a herd' => the way one behaves in the herd of society.

❑ Ravinder always lost his temper whenever things did not go his way. He disliked this tendency of his but seemed unable to change it. How he wished he had his mother's cool **demeanour!** He had seen her face every challenge, no matter how big, without a frown on her forehead.

Do not confuse this *demean* with the other one, which means 'to lower in social dignity'.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *mean*, low in status or value => 'to bring down to low status or value.' This word is modelled on the word '**debase**'.

❑ "I have no right, by anything I do or say, to **demean** a human being in his own eyes. What matters is not what I think of him; it is what he thinks of himself. To **undermine** a man's self-respect is a sin."

—Antoine de Saint-Exupéry

Meanwhile, let me list the English words derived from the Latin *unda*:

Inundate⁸⁰, **abound**⁸¹, **redundant**⁸², **undulate**⁸³

Did you get to the Hindi word? It is *samundar*, sea. *Samundar* is a simplification of the Sanskrit word *samudra*. The Sanskrit cousin of the Latin *unda* is *udra*.

Greek *aner* **man**

Did the root strike a bell? The Persian and Sanskrit *nar* also means ‘man’. The Hindi word *sundar* is made of *su-*, good (the Sanskrit prefix *su-* and the Greek prefix *eu-* both mean ‘good’), and *nar*.

The name Andrew simply means ‘man’ just like the Hindi name Maanav.

A woman who loved her man dearly was called a ‘philanderer’ (Greek *philos*, loving). Down the line, however, someone **misconstrued**⁸⁴ the word as ‘a loving man’ instead of ‘man loving’. That mistaken sense stuck with the word and totally washed out its actual meaning. So, today, the word **philanderer**⁸⁵ is used for ‘a loving man’ who is so full of love that one woman is not enough for him. He goes about distributing his love to a **bevy**⁸⁶ of beauties, without being serious about any of them and without letting any of them know about the simultaneous existence of the others.



⁸⁰ **Inundate:** (v) to flood

Origin: L *in-*, in + *unda*, water => ‘water rushing in’

- ❑ The plain was **inundated** by the overflowing river.
- ❑ The market was **inundated** by Chinese goods.

⁸¹ **Abound:** (v) to be rich in, to have in great numbers.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *unda* => ‘water flowing away’ => ‘so much water is there that it is flowing away from all sides’ => ‘to overflow’

- ❑ The New Delhi-Chandigarh National Highway **abounds** in roadside *dhabas*.
- ❑ The soils of north India **abound** in nutrients.

The adjective forms of the word are ‘abounding’ and the more common ‘**abundant**’. Both mean ‘overflowing’.

- ❑ The soils of north India are **abundant** in nutrients.
- ❑ The soils of north India have **abundant** nutrients.

⁸² **Redundant:** (adj) more than what is needed; needlessly repetitive.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *unda* => ‘more water than is needed’

- ❑ The company management decided to sack the **redundant** employees.
- ❑ A question in the test asked the students to write a 200-word opinion piece on the topic ‘A dog is a man’s only true friend.’ Here is a sample of what a student wrote: ‘I do not agree with this statement. It goes against my beliefs. I believe that man is a man’s best friend. Yes, dogs are very faithful and loyal to their masters. But only a man can be a man’s best friend. Only a man can...’

And so the student continued. You can easily see that the poor guy didn’t have much to say and was only trying to fill up space because he had heard that many examiners award marks by measuring the width and not the content of the answer. In the five lines you’ve read of his, line number 2 and 5 are **redundant**. When you have already said that you don’t agree with a statement, it is obvious that is because the statement is against your beliefs.

⁸³ **Undulate:** (v) to move with a wave-like motion, to have a surface that looks like a wave.

Origin: L *unda*, water => ‘a wave of water.’

- ❑ **Undulant** fever is a type of fever caused by the bacteria *Brucella*. It is called so because it rises up, falls down, rises up and falls down.
- ❑ The sun rose from behind the **undulating** hills.

⁸⁴ **Misconstrue:** (v) misunderstand.

Origin: L *mis-*, mistaken + *construen*, to construct => ‘to pile together wrongly’. ‘Construe’ and ‘construct’ are brothers.

⁸⁵ **Philanderer:** (n) a man who has affairs and sex with many women; a womanizer.

- ❑ The 34-year-old businessman was a **philanderer**. If some friend advised him to be faithful to his wife, he would brush it off saying, “*ek se mera kya hoga?*” (“How will I be satisfied with one?”)

⁸⁶ **Bevy:** (n) a group of birds or people.

The Greek word *ops* means ‘eye’. When we combine *aner* and *ops*, we get *anthropos* which means ‘man with an eye.’ Since all men have eyes, *anthropos* simply means ‘a man.’

The study of mankind is called **anthropology**⁸⁷. A lover of mankind is a **philanthropist**⁸⁸ and a hater of mankind is a **misanthrope**⁸⁹.

In our childhood, we studied the story of the hare and the tortoise. Did it ever strike you that in this, and in almost every animal story we’ve ever read, the animals talk, think, behave and emote exactly like humans? These animals are **anthropomorphic**⁹⁰.

Then, there are **anthropoid**⁹¹ animals, like the guerilla, which actually are quite similar to us.

Latin **vir** **man**

Were you startled upon seeing *vir*? Hindi too has the word *vir*, and the Hindi *vir* too means man. Yes, the two words are related. They are from the same IE root.

The English words from the Latin *vir* are:

⁸⁷ **Anthropology:** (n) study of mankind, that is, study of how the civilizations and cultures developed.

Origin: *anthropos*, man + *-ology*, study.

⁸⁸ **Philanthropist:** (n) a man who loves mankind. He tries to help everybody he can.

Origin: Gk *philos*, loving + *anthropos*, man, mankind

- ❑ Bill Gates and his wife are **philanthropists**. They started ‘The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation’ which is doing great work in battling with AIDS in Africa.
- ❑ The Nobel laureate scientist said that he was the son of poor parents and could get the best education only because of the scholarships that first his school and later his college and university had provided him. “I owe my career to the people who set up those scholarships. They had the goodness to give their money to educate someone they would never meet. And see what a difference their **philanthropy** made to my life!”

⁸⁹ **Misanthrope:** (n) one who hates mankind. He, therefore, stays away from all people or worse, engages in anti-social activities. He thinks that no man is good or trustworthy.

Origin: Gk *miso-*, hating + *anthropos*.

- ❑ His **misanthropy** was clearly shown when he said this to his son, “Do not ever trust anybody in this world, not even your shadow, leave alone me or your brothers or sisters or your friends. This world is selfish. No one does anything for anyone here for free; if someone is being good to you, think what could be the **ulterior** motive. There will always be an **ulterior** motive, I am telling you. Every single person in this world is a rascal, ready to eat the flesh off your body, ready to eat you up to your last bone. You are too good for this world. Save yourself if you can.”

Ulterior: (adj) hidden, lying beyond the time period or topic being considered.

Origin: L *ulter*, beyond => ‘lying beyond what can be seen’ => ‘hidden’. The ultraviolet (UV) rays are called so because they lie beyond the violet coloured rays in the Electromagnetic Spectrum (the band of rays, in which different types of rays are arranged according to the energy they carry.)

- ❑ The teachers of the school were having a meeting to discuss the preparations for the annual function. One teacher raised her hand and addressed the Principal, “Ma’am, we can hold the Sports Day and the Annual Function on consecutive days. This will save us money.” The staff members considered this idea. Then, one said, “Or we can do away with the Sports Day altogether and have a Fete and a Science Exhibition instead this year, held, as my colleague said, one day before the Annual Function.” This remark created a buzz. Many teachers **vehemently** opposed this idea and argued about the need for a Sports Day, while others favoured the Fete equally strongly. When the debate went on for five minutes and showed no sign of **subsiding**, the Principal thumped the table and said in a voice loud enough to be heard over the **din**, “My dear colleagues, this debate is **ulterior** to the agenda for this meeting. I have taken note of the suggestion and we will meet some time to discuss it but for now, let us discuss the preparations for the Annual Function.”

⁹⁰ **Anthropomorphic:** (adj) having the form or the characteristics of a man.

Origin: Gk *anthropo-*, man + *morph*, form

⁹¹ **Anthropoid:** (adj) man-like in appearance, therefore, ape, guerilla.

Origin: Gk *anthropos*

Virile⁹², virtue⁹³, virtuoso⁹⁴, triumvirate⁹⁵**IE gyne woman**

The IE root for woman is very close to the root for birth, *gen-*. In Sanskrit, the word for birth is *janam* or *janu* and the woman is called *janani* or *jani*. The word for a woman in **rustic** Punjabi is *janaani*, which is nothing but a corruption of *janani*. Persian word for woman is *zan*, found in *zenana*, the part of the house reserved for women.

The English words from this IE root are **misogyny⁹⁶**, **polygyny⁹⁷** and ‘gynaecology’, the branch of medicine that deals with women’s diseases

IE nomen name

The English *name*, Greek *onoma*, Latin *nomen* and the Sanskrit and Persian *naam* are all in this family.

‘Synonyms’ are the words that name the same idea (Gk *syn-*, same + *onoma*, name), while ‘antonyms’ name the opposite idea. (Gk *ant(i)*, opposite + *-onym*, name).

Onomatopoeic⁹⁸ words make the sound they name. Examples: hum, buzz, bang, clank, **clangour⁹⁹**, cuckoo, ding, gurgle, murmur and **clique¹⁰⁰**.

⁹² **Virile:** (adj) masculine; (n): **virility**

- ❑ Black and dark blue are considered to be **virile** colours.

⁹³ **Virtue:** (n) moral goodness.

Origin: α *vir*, man => ‘qualities befitting a man.’

- ❑ Lord Ram and Sita were the perfect examples of **virtue**.

⁹⁴ **Virtuoso:** (n) an expert in an art.

Origin: from L *virtuosus*, one who has virtues => ‘an’ excellent man’. The word ‘virtuous’ too is from the same root.

- ❑ A.R. Rahman is a **virtuoso** musician.
- ❑ Ustad Zakir Hussain gave a **virtuoso** *tabla* performance.

⁹⁵ **Triumvirate:** (n) a group of three men in authority.

Origin: L *trium*, three + *vir*, man

- ❑ Brahma, Vishnu and Mahesh are the ruling **triumvirate** of the Hindu gods

⁹⁶ **Misogyny:** (n) hatred of women.

Origin: Gk *miso-*, hatred + *gyne*, women.

⁹⁷ **Polygyny:** (n) having many wives.

Origin: Gk *poly-*, many + *gyne*.

- ❑ **Polygyny** has been quite common in Indian history but **polyandry** has been rare. Draupadi is an example of a **polyandrous** woman. She had five husbands.

Polyandry: (n) having many husbands.

Origin: Gk *poly-*, many + *aner*, man.

⁹⁸ **Onomatopoeia:** (n) the use of words whose pronunciation is the same as the sound they name.

Origin: Gk *onoma*, *onomat-*, name, word + *poiein*, compose, make => ‘to make what it names.’

The fact that the root *poiein* also **begets** the word ‘poet’ will help you remember that the correct spelling of the word is Onomatopoeia, not onomatopia.

⁹⁹ **Clangour:** (n) a loud, ringing, repeated noise.

- ❑ She was climbing up the dark, spiral staircase by feeling the wall. Suddenly, the plate in her hand started glowing green. Shocked, she just threw the plate away. The **clangour** of the steel plate falling down the stairs resonated throughout the house.

¹⁰⁰ **Clique:** (n) a small group of friends or people with common interests in which no outsiders are allowed.

Origin: From the clicking sound made when a latch is closed to hold a closed door meeting.

- ❑ While the struggle for independence was going on, the leaders of Indian National Congress said that the Muslim League was just a **clique** of wealthy Muslims and nothing more. What they implied was that the Muslim League did not represent the majority of Muslims who were poor.

Badnaami becomes **ignominy**¹⁰¹ in English and *naam*, **renown**¹⁰².

Someone who sends poems to magazines without sending his name clearly wants to remain **anonymous**¹⁰³. Then, there are poets who publish under **pseudonyms**¹⁰⁴. Like the character of Sanjay Dutt in the movie *Saaajan*. His name in the movie was Aman, but he published his poems as Sagar. This simple fact created the whole drama in the movie.

The other words from this root are:

Nomen-1: **Nomenclature**¹⁰⁵, **nominal**¹⁰⁶, **misnomer**¹⁰⁷

-
- ❑ The new employee felt terribly out of place in his new office because every colleague of his was a part of one or the other **clique** in the office. These **cliques** were **mutually**-exclusive groups which ate together, passed their time together and gossiped together about the others. He ate and sat alone.

¹⁰¹ **Ignominy**: (n) public dishonour or shame. An action or a thing which is likely to bring **ignominy** is called **ignominious**.

Origin: L *ig-*, *in-*, not + *nomen*, name => 'name is lost'

- ❑ When the manager discovered that the office clerk—with the **ironical** name Satya Prasad Sharma—had been **embezzling** the office funds for a long time, he called him to his office and said, "Resign by today evening or get ready for the **ignominy** of being thrown out."

Embezzle: (v) to steal something (money, etc.) that you were asked to look after.

¹⁰² **Renown**: (n) fame; (adj): **renowned**: 'famous'

Origin: L *re-*, again + *nomen*, to name => 'to name again and again' => 'the state of your name being taken again and again'

- ❑ Salman Rushdie is a novelist of world-**renown**.

- ❑ Salman Rushdie is a world-**renowned** novelist.

¹⁰³ **Anonymous**: (n) one whose name is not known.

Origin: L *a-*, without + *nomen* => 'without name'

- ❑ The poet of these inspiring lines is **anonymous**: "Plan your castle in the air, then build a ship to take you there."

- ❑ In the Hindi movie *Darr*, Kiran is harassed by her **anonymous** lover.

¹⁰⁴ **Pseudonym**: (n) a false name used by an author to protect his real identity; pen name.

Origin: Gk *pseudo-*, false + *-onym*, name => 'false name'

¹⁰⁵ **Nomenclature**: (n) system of naming or terminology.

Origin: L *nomen*, name + *calator*, caller => 'a caller of names'. In ancient Rome, when a politician went to meet his **constituents**, he would take a servant along whose job was to tell him the names and details of all the people who came to him, so that he could know what to say to whom. This servant was called a Nomenclator. Later on, this word started being used for a person who assigns names, as in scientific classification.

- ❑ The **nomenclature** of the Bombay, Madras and Calcutta High Courts hasn't changed even though their cities are now called Mumbai, Chennai and Kolkata, respectively.

¹⁰⁶ **Nominal**: (adj) having existence in name only.

Origin: L *nomen*.

- ❑ The government hospitals and schools charge only **nominal** fees for their services.

- ❑ "Women have only **nominal** freedom in our society," the lady Sarpanch told the journalist who was visiting her village. "In reality, women still must obey the men of their family or they are kicked out or beaten."

¹⁰⁷ **Misnomer**: (n) a name wrongly applied to a person or a place.

Origin: L *mis-*, mistaken + *nomen*.

- ❑ Laakhan Seth's name was a definite **misnomer**. Lakshman, after whom he was named, was devoted to Lord Ram. Laakhan Seth, on the other hand, cut all ties with his poor elder brother who had taken heavy loans to educate and marry him.

Nomen-2: **contronym**¹⁰⁸, **homonym**¹⁰⁹, **eponym**¹¹⁰

Latin *pecus* **cattle**

The Sanskrit word *pashu* is a **cognate** of *pecus*. In the older times, when money was not yet invented, a man's financial standing was measured by the number of cattle he had. A guy who had lots and lots of *pecus* was called 'pecunious', and the one who had none, 'impecunious'. To steal somebody's cattle was called *peculation*. Pecuniary matters were the matters related with cattle. 'Peculiar' meant 'related to one's own cattle'.

With time, money replaced cattle, both as the index of a man's wealth, and in the meanings of the words above. So, here's presenting the modern meanings of these words:

¹⁰⁸ **Contronym**: (n) a word that is its own antonym. It has two mutually-opposite meanings.

Origin: Gk *contra-*, opposite + *-onym* => 'which names opposite ideas'.

Examples of **contronyms** include the words 'cleave' and 'left'.

Cleave: (v) split; bind strongly to. The two meanings are totally contrary.

- ❑ The woodcutter was **cleaving** a log of wood when a monster jumped upon him. He **cleaved** that monster into two with his axe.
- ❑ The man **cleaved** to his principles despite mounting pressures to give them up.

Left: (adj) remaining, went.

- ❑ Everyone went away. Just the two of them were left. He left soon after.

¹⁰⁹ **Homonym**: (n) a word which has the same spelling and sound as another but different meaning.

Origin: Gk. *Homos*, same, + *onoma* => (having the) same name

- ❑ Example: bark. There are 2 barks in English. Bark number one means 'the cry of a dog.' The other bark means 'the outer covering of a tree'.

There are two other similar types of words—**homophones** and **homographs**.

Homophones are words which have the same sound but different spellings and meaning.

Origin: Gk *homos* + *phone*, sound => 'having the same sound'

- ❑ Examples: sun, son; carat, carrot.

Homographs are words which have the same spellings but different meaning.

Origin: Gk *homos* + *graphein*, to write => 'written in the same way'.

- ❑ Example: lead 'to go first' and lead 'a metal'.

Therefore, a **homonym** is both a **homophone** and a **homograph**. However, many people use it to mean either a **homophone** or a **homograph**. For example, they will label carat and carrot as **homonyms**. This technically incorrect usage of the word is quite common.

¹¹⁰ **Eponym**: (n) the name of a person after which something is named.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, upn + *-onym* => 'named upon' => 'named upon a person'

- ❑ Andre Ampere, the man who first measured electrical current, is the **eponym** of ampere, a unit of measuring electrical current.
- ❑ In the old Hindi movie *Sharmilee*, the **eponymous** character was played by the actress, Rakhee.

The **eponymous** character means the character after which the movie was named.

- ❑ Shahjahanabad was the **eponymous** city founded by the Mughal emperor Shahjahan.

An **eponymous** city is that which is named after a person.

So, we can conclude that when we use the word **eponymous** for a person, it means that person whose name has been used to name something, and when we use it for a thing, it means that thing which has been named after a person.

impecunious¹¹¹, **peculation**¹¹², **pecuniary**¹¹³, **peculiar**¹¹⁴

Latin **caballus** **horse**

The unit of earlier armies that fought on horseback was called the ‘cavalry’ because of this root. A soldier on horseback was called a **cavalier**¹¹⁵ or a knight. The qualities that a knight was expected to possess were conveyed by the word **chivalry**¹¹⁶.

Imagine a cavalry moving from one location to another. You would see a huge procession of men on horses, all dressed up in knightly armour, moving through a forest, the horses kicking up a lot of dust. What you are seeing is a **cavalcade**¹¹⁷.

IE **ekwo-** **horse**

The Latin word *equus* is a child of *ekwo-*. It is found in **equine**¹¹⁸ and **equestrian**¹¹⁹.

¹¹¹ **Impecunious:** (adj) having little or no money; poor.

Origin: L *im-*, not + *pecunia*, wealth.

Refer to the sentence for ‘**philanthropy**.’ We can say that the family of the Nobel laureate scientist was too **impecunious** to send him to university.

¹¹² **Peculation:** (n) the act of stealing someone’s money or property which was entrusted to one’s care.

Origin: L *peculum*, private property.

☐ The school principal was charged with **peculation** and suspended. His **peculations** from the school funds were estimated at ₹ 9,19,000. The newspaper headline the next day read: ‘School principal charged with **larceny** of nine lakh’

Larceny: (n) theft

¹¹³ **Pecuniary:** (adj) related to money.

Origin: L *pecus*, cattle/money.

☐ The Supreme Court ruled, “If the Government **incurs pecuniary** loss on account of misconduct or negligence of a government servant and if he retires before any departmental proceedings are taken, it is open to the Government to initiate departmental proceedings. If in those proceedings he is found guilty of misconduct, negligence or any other act or omission, as a result of which the Government is put to **pecuniary** loss, the Government is entitled to withhold, reduce or recover the loss suffered by it by **forfeiture** or reduction of pension.”

Forfeit: (v) to lose something as a punishment.

¹¹⁴ **Peculiar:** (adj) unique, special; odd.

Origin: L *peculum*, private property.

☐ The baby boy was **peculiar**. He never cried!

☐ Not drinking milk—or eating potato ever—was just one of his many **peculiarities**.

¹¹⁵ **Cavalier:** (n) a horseman, esp. a soldier; (adj) so proud of oneself that one thinks everybody else to be beneath one.

☐ Many countries objected to the **cavalier** attitude of America. It decided to bomb Afghanistan and Iraq and just went ahead, without even bothering to discuss the matter with other countries or in the United Nations forums.

¹¹⁶ **Chivalry:** (n) qualities like courage, kindness, courtesy, etc., which are expected from a model soldier or a gentleman; (adj) **chivalrous**.

Origin: L *chevaler*, a soldier mounted on a horse, that is, a knight

☐ It was his first date and Rohan was at his **chivalrous** best. He opened all the doors for Shalini, asked her to walk in first, pulled out the chair for her, asked her to order and insisted on paying the whole bill when she suggested that they split it.

☐ It is against **chivalry** to strike your opponent when he is unarmed.

¹¹⁷ **Cavalcade:** (n) a procession of vehicles.

Origin: L *caballus*, horse => *cavalcare*, to go on horseback => ‘a procession of men on horseback’ => ‘a procession of any type of vehicles’

☐ Traffic was **diverted** off the highway for two hours to allow the Prime Minister’s **cavalcade**, consisting of 14 cars and 16 police vans, a safe and uninterrupted passage.

¹¹⁸ **Equine:** (adj) of a horse or related to a horse.

Origin: L *equus*, horse.

☐ The **quack** doctor claimed to cure cancer with a powder made from **equine** hair.

¹¹⁹ **Equestrian:** (n) a man who rides a horse. A woman who rides a horse is called an **equestrienne**.

Origin: L *equus* => ‘a man who rides a horse, just like a man who walks on foot is called a pedestrian.’ (The Latin root *ped-* means ‘foot’)

The Sanskrit cousin of *equus* is *ashwa*. The Vedas describe *Ashwamedha*, a horse-sacrifice which could be performed only by a king. It was a year-long *yagya* which started when the king **caparisoned**¹²⁰ and decorated his best horse and set it free. The horse could wander anywhere; no one dared stop it or alter its course. Every kingdom that let the horse pass through was considered to have accepted the **suzerainty** of the horse's owner. If some king refused to allow the horse into his land, the king conducting the *Ashwamedha* declared war upon him and **subjugated** his kingdom so that the horse could move unrestrained.

When, after an year, the horse finally returned home, the king sacrificed it in a grand ceremony. The *Ashwamedha* was supposed to bring great **bounties**¹²¹ and glory to the kingdom (it certainly did bring in many new **vassal**¹²² states!) but of course, not every king had the **audacity**¹²³ to perform it.

IE *gwou-* **ox, bull, cow**

Of course, we are all familiar with this root! Our *gau mata* comes from here!

The English word 'cow' too is a family member.

The Latin brother of cow is *bos* and the Greek one is *bous*. They resemble our word *baill*.

The other *baill* related words are: beef, **bovine**¹²⁴, **bugle**¹²⁵, **bucolic**¹²⁶, butter

- Equestrian** events are the sports events done on horseback.
- Equestrian** Anant won the National **Equestrian** Championship.

¹²⁰ **Caparison:** (n) a highly decorated covering for a horse.
(v) to decorate with a **caparison**.

¹²¹ **Bounty:** (n) a generous gift; generosity; a reward given by the government or someone else for doing something.
Origin: L *bonus*, good.

- When we thank God for his **bounties**, we are thanking him for all the gifts that he has given to us. When we thank him for his **bounty**, we are thanking him for his large-heartedness.
- In the film *Sholay*, Jai and Veeru are motivated by the **bounty** they will get if they capture Gabbar Singh. They will get ₹ 50,000 from the government and ₹ 20,000 from Thakur.

¹²² **Vassal:** (n) a subordinate who has pledged his loyalty to his master.

- In the days of Zamindari system, the **vassals** used to till the lands of the Zamindar and were totally bound by all his orders.

¹²³ **Audacity:** (n) boldness, fearlessness.

- Look at her **audacity**! She is fighting for her boyfriend with her dad!
- The **audacious** soldier volunteered to go to the jungle to hunt the man-eating tiger which had spread terror in the villages of the hill.

¹²⁴ **Bovine:** (adj) related with cow; cow-like.

Origin: L *bos*, cow, ox.

- Hindus do not eat **bovine** meat.
- Sushil was reading out to his friends the poem that he had written about his first crush in college. One of its lines, which he read amid many enthusiastic *wah-wahs* was: Her eyes were **bovine** and her smile, divine.

¹²⁵ **Bugle:** (n) a musical instrument made of brass. It has a cup-shaped mouthpiece and a cylindrical brass tube through which wind passes.

Origin: L *bos* because the bugle was initially made from the horns of ox.

- The gatekeeper sounded the **bugle** of the king's arrival.

¹²⁶ **Bucolic:** (adj) rural, related with pastures.

Origin: L *bos* + *colere*, to cultivate => 'related with cultivation of cows' => 'related with shepherds- the men who rear cows' => 'related with rural areas, because that is where the cows are reared.'

- The painter had a passion for the **bucolic**. Most of his paintings **depicted bucolic** images—**lush** fields, traditionally dressed women drawing water from a well, a woman cooking food on a *chulha*, bleating sheep, grazing cows, houses with thatched huts, etc.
- There are many Hindi movies in which the hero is an innocent **bucolic** who is forced by circumstances to go to the big, bad city.

'Culture', 'cultivate' are the other words from the root *colere*. Agriculture means 'to grow in fields' (L *ager*, field). 'Pisciculture' means to grow fish (L *pisces*, fish)

Exercise

Theos, Sacer:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The angry mob of students *damaged* the office of the Institute's director.
(a) execrated (b) flummoxed (c) heeded (d) vandalized (e) desecrated
2. The boy was so tired when he came home from the school that he simply *dropped down on* the sofa.
(a) drooped on (b) flopped down into (c) basked on (d) went into a trance on (e) ebbed away on
3. The minister issued an apology for his statement *as a consequence of* the Opposition's criticism.
(a) to sanctify (b) in the wake of (c) to bask in (d) to be on the verge of (e) to vandalise
4. He was quite a *wild and carefree* fellow who drank freely, borrowed money from everybody and gambled it away.
(a) rakish (b) drooping (c) filial (d) execrable (e) sacrilegious
5. A man who studies different religions in depth and presents a detailed comparison of their beliefs and customs is called a *religious scholar*
(a) theocrat (b) vandal (c) theologian (d) pantheist (e) sacrilegious scholar
6. As the *qawwal* slowed his dance, the music *too faded away* correspondingly.
(a) ebbed (b) flopped (c) drooped (d) heeded (e) became serene
7. For Muslims, the Holy Quran is *extremely sacred*.
(a) Subtle (b) sacrosanct (c) sanctified (d) heeded (e) revered
8. He was *a trifle* confused by her statement.
(a) execrably (b) supremely (c) on the brink of being (d) a little (e) needlessly
9. Iran is a *country ruled by religion*; its Head of state is an Islamic cleric and all laws of the land are made in accordance to Islamic principles.
(a) theocracy (b) theology (c) sacrosanct state (d) consecrated state (e) theist state
10. The qawwaal's dance was *wild and unrestrained*.
(a) rakish (b) full of turpitude (c) corybantic (d) entranced (e) unsanctioned
11. He *enjoyed* the glory of his success.
(a) drooped in (b) consecrated (c) articulated (d) bragged about (e) basked in
12. This custom has been *made sacred* by centuries of practice.
(a) Consecrated (b) desecrated (c) execrated (d) sanctioned (e) affiliated
13. The actor was at the *peak* of his career.
(a) brink (b) wake (c) apotheosis (d) haven (e) pinnacle
14. "All right, father, just as you say," the boy said with *respect befitting a son*.
(a) filial respect (b) fraternal respect (c) affiliated respect (d) heedful respect (e) subtle respect
15. The *peacefulness* of the lake calmed her disturbed mind.
(a) basking (b) wile (c) serenity (d) subtleness (e) sanctuary

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (a) 10. (c) 11. (e) 12. (a) 13. (e) 14. (a) 15. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Belief that God is in all and all is God: P_____
2. Unable to speak clearly: I _____

3. To exaggerate a story and add self-made details to it: E _____
4. Sin: T _____
5. Elevation to godhood: A _____
6. Full of tricks on how to fool others: W _____
7. So bad that it deserves to be hated or cursed: E _____
8. A place of shelter: H _____
9. An ideal example of something: A _____
10. A man who prepares and sells medicines: A _____
11. Deep respect: R _____
12. The act of damaging someone else's property to show one's anger: V _____
13. A semi-conscious state, like that induced by drugs: T _____
14. Killing one's brother: F _____
15. A false show of religious devotion: S _____

Answers:

pantheism, inarticulate, embroider, turpitude, apotheosis, wily, execrable, haven, apotheosis, apothecary, reverence, vandalism, trance, fratricide, , sanctimony.

Humus, Ster-, Petros, Lithos, Mons, Unda:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. The politician made *an attempt to enter* the film industry.
(a) a foray into (b) a forage into (c) an inhumation of (d) a homage to (e) a repast of
2. The bad news *turned him into a stone*.
(a) inundated him (b) made him amenable (c) petrified him (d) made him monolithic (e) menaced him
3. Frankenstein was a *devilish* creature.
(a) humane (b) inhumane (c) demoniac (d) homicidal (e) humble
4. He enjoyed his *leisurely walk* by the lake.
(a) promenade (b) promontory (c) nostrum (d) cowering (e) transhumance
5. Because of the new machines bought by the company, many workers became *unnneeded*.
(a) rueful (b) abundant (c) dubious (d) posthumous (e) redundant
6. The patient went to a *false doctor* and lost his life.
(a) quack (b) nostrum (c) dubious doctor (d) ruthless mountebank (e) menace
7. "Shut up or else..." he hissed in a *threatening voice*.
(a) an amenable voice (b) a minatory voice (c) a cowering voice (d) an imminent voice (e) a ruthless voice
8. He *felt sorry about* his rudeness towards her.
(a) rued (b) charred (c) inhumed (d) foraged (e) menaced
9. There is no challenge which we cannot *overcome* by courage and determination.
(a) super (b) surmount (c) demean (d) cower (e) exhume
10. There was not even a *tiny bit* of dust on the table.
(a) an Astronomical bit (b) a speck (c) abundance (d) depletion (e) a presence
11. The sudden *friendliness* between the two enemies stunned everybody.
(a) menace (b) transhumance (c) amenability (d) bonhomie (e) repast

12. The man *wet* the logs with petrol and set them on fire.
(a) charred (b) abounded (c) doused (d) inundated (e) undulated
13. The student astonished everyone by his *stellar* performance in the exam.
(a) pathetic (b) full of dubiety (c) astronomical (d) star-like (e) insuperable
14. The police *dug out* the dead body.
(a) ransacked (b) exhumed (c) yanked out (d) undulated (e) pelted
15. The weather report said that a storm was *going to come soon*.
(a) prominent (b) imminent (c) eminent (d) menacing (e) minatory

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (e) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (b) 11. (d) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (b) 15. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A false doctor: C _____
2. Needlessly repetitive: R _____
3. Taking place after one's death: P _____
4. Greatest in importance: P _____
5. To move in a wave-like fashion: U _____
6. Absence of pride: H _____
7. To lower in social dignity: D _____
8. Pity: R _____
9. To make black by burning: C _____
10. A fake medicine sold by a false doctor: N _____
11. To curl up in fear: C _____
12. Related to stars: A _____
13. To make a search for food: F _____
14. To turn a place upside down in search of something: R _____
15. Kind-hearted, sympathetic: H _____

Answers:

charlatan, redundant, posthumous, preeminent, undulate, humility, demean, ruth, char, nostrum, cower, astral, forage, ransack, humane

Aner, vir, gyne, nomen, pecus, caballus, ekwo-, gwou-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He had the *daring* to quit his job without a back-up.
(a) audacity (b) chivalry (c) speculation (d) virility (e) ignominy
2. The office workers formed *small, isolated groups* among themselves based on their mother-tongues.
(a) onomatopoeia (b) homonyms (c) cliques (d) triumvirates (e) bebies
3. He had *an ulterior* motive in helping the old man.
(a) a virtuous (b) a misanthropic (c) a hidden (d) an extremely selfless (e) an ignominious
4. The clerk was arrested on charges of *stealing money from his office*.
(a) embezzlement (b) ignominy (c) misanthropy (d) forfeiture (e) audacity
5. The royal apothecary said that he was ready to *lose his life as a punishment* if he failed to make the king well.
(a) forfeit his life (b) caparison his life (c) cleave his life (d) misconstrue his life (e) cleave to his life

6. Most Hindu gods are *man-like in appearance*.
(a) anthropomorphic (b) virile (c) virtuous (d) onomatopoeic (e) eponymous
7. There are not many *money-related* benefits of writing.
(a) peculiar (b) cavalier (c) ulterior (d) bountiful (e) pecuniary
8. The words *bank* meaning 'the side of a river' and *bank*, the place where money is deposited *have the same sound and spellings but different meanings*.
(a) are homophones (b) are homographs (c) are homonyms (d) are onomatopoeic (e) are contronyms
9. He was *an expert* painter.
(a) a clangorous (b) a renowned (c) a virtuoso (d) a chivalrous (e) a bountiful
10. Everybody disliked him for his *arrogant* manner.
(a) audacious (b) cavalier (c) chivalrous (d) peculiar (e) bucolic
11. *Rural* music is simple and charming.
(a) bovine (b) bucolic (c) Vassal (d) Pecuniary (e) Equine
12. The student who won a scholarship from his university by making false claims in his application was accused of *theft* and arrested.
(a) embezzlement (b) misanthropy (c) larceny (d) impecuniousness (e) bountifulness
13. In the mass prayer, the people thanked God for his *generosity*.
(a) philanthropy (b) bugle (c) speculation (d) bounty (e) virtue
14. *Having many wives* is allowed in some religions.
(a) philandering (b) Polygyny (c) Polyandry (d) Misogyny (e) Philanthropy
15. He had many *unique* habits.
(a) strange (b) cavalier (c) impecunious (d) peculiar (e) anonymous

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (a) 6. (a) 7. (e) 8. (c) 9. (c) 10. (b) 11. (b) 12. (c) 13. (d) 14. (b) 15. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A man who rides a horse: E_____
2. A group of birds or people: B_____
3. Having existence in name only: N_____
4. A subordinate who has pledged his loyalty to his master: V_____
5. Public dishonor: I_____
6. Related to money: P_____
7. Masculine: V_____
8. A decorated covering for a horse: C_____
9. The name of a person which is used to name a thing: E_____
10. Cow-like: B_____
11. Theft: L_____
12. Having little money: I_____
13. A procession of vehicles: C_____
14. A small, exclusive group of people with shared interests: C_____
15. An expert in an art: V_____

Answers:

equestrian, bevy, nominal, vassal, ignominy, pecuniary, virile, caparison, eponym, bovine, larceny, impecunious, cavalcade, clique, virtuoso

BIRTH OF MAN

Part I

Latin *nubere* to marry

Ryan Adhivaish, the **scion**¹²⁷ of the rich and famous Adhivaish family, finally told his parents about Mahi Mehra. He had met Mahi in university, he said. Her parents had already met him and approved. Now, would they both please meet her? They would really like her, he was sure.

His mother shook her head the moment she discovered that Mahi was from the middle-class. She also shook her son, as if trying to wake him up. Did he not know how **artful**¹²⁸ those middle-class girls were, she asked? And their parents were even more so; they encouraged their **nubile**¹²⁹ daughters to **entice**¹³⁰ rich men like him. Such girls married not the man but his money; she would forget all about him within two days of the marriage and would care only about the big cars and the big diamonds. He was such a sensible boy, how could he fall into her trap? It **behooved**¹³¹ him to marry somebody of their own class, not a gold-digger like what-was-her-name?-yeah-Mahi.

Ryan remained **adamant**; his Mahi was not like that; he had promised to marry her and he would and that was that.

In the end, his parents **acceded** to his wish (like they always had) but on the condition that Mahi would first sign an agreement that if she and Ryan divorced within 10 years of their marriage, she would get only ₹ 10 lakh in **alimony**. The agreement would be **null** and void after that duration.

¹²⁷ **Scion:** (n) descendant or heir of a wealthy family.

¹²⁸ **Artful:** (adj) someone who has the skill and the cleverness to get what he wants, whether by the straight route or a roundabout one.

Artless: (adj) lacking the art of manipulating things his own way, simple, innocent; lacking art, knowledge or skills, ignorant, uncultured; not artificial at all, natural.

Origin: Artful: *art* + *-ful* => 'the one who knows the art of getting things done.' Artless: *art* + *-less*. => 'the one who does not have this art.'

Shilpa made many moral rules, and tried to keep them, but her **artful** little son knew how to melt his mother's heart.

There was an **artless** charm in her face and manner, a simple grace in all her movements and a low, delicious melody in her voice.

¹²⁹ **Nubile:** (of girls) marriageable.

Origin: *nubere*

¹³⁰ **Entice:** (v) to attract by arousing hope or desire.

Srimati gave away a *phoren* perfume and a saree to her neighbour's maid. "Are you trying to **entice** my maid?" the maid's *maalkin*, Srimati's neighbour, asked angrily when she came to know. "Oh no, no!" Srimati replied (the truthful answer was 'yes').

¹³¹ **Behoove:** (v) to be necessary or proper.

"There is so much good in the worst of us, and so much bad in the best of us, that it ill **behooves** any of us, to find fault with the rest of us." Edgar Cayce. Ill-**behooves** means 'does not **behoove**', just like 'ill-fitting clothes' mean 'clothes that do not fit well.'

It **behooves** a Member of Parliament to listen to all points of view patiently and to respect opinions that are different from his own.

Ryan **demurred**¹³² about placing **stipulations**¹³³ upon his love. But his mother complained that when Ryan's father and she were compromising so much for him, could he not accept even one little demand of theirs, that too a demand which they were making for his own good? "Tomorrow, if you feel that the girl had married you in greed, at least you would be able to get rid of her without giving away a chunk of your fortune in **alimony**. If there is no **avarice**¹³⁴ in her heart, if she really does want to be your good wife all her life, then what problem would she have in signing the paper?"

The girl's family did have problems though. Ryan's parents had made a mockery of the **nuptial**¹³⁵ vows, they said. What did those rich people think Mahi was? How dare they place such an offending **stipulation** about her? And, what security was there for her in that marriage? What if Ryan left her, just like that, after a year or two? Their daughter was not a plaything!

Finally, the two lovers came up with an agreement that **placated** both the **niggling**¹³⁶ families. The new contract stated that if the marriage failed due to an **infidelity** or **misdemeanor** of Ryan, Mahi would get half his fortune, but if Mahi was the one at fault, she would get only 10 lakh rupees. Both Ryan and Mahi were confident of their **connubial**¹³⁷ bliss; they knew that matters would never come to such a pass; they were doing this only to **appease**¹³⁸ their families and get their approval.

They signed the **prenuptial**¹³⁹ agreement, followed it soon after by the **nuptial** ceremonies and yes, they did live happily ever after.

'Ever after' lasted five years, till Mahi died in a road accident. Ryan was heartbroken! Everybody's heart went out to the young widower. "Life is so cruel!" they **bemoaned**¹⁴⁰.

¹³² **Demur:** (v) to hesitate in doing something because you are not sure whether doing it would be right.

Origin: L *de-* + *mora*, delay

❑ "Dhaani, you must teach that asshole a lesson! He thinks that he can beat you and get away with it? Don't tolerate this **obnoxious** behavior, I tell you, or it will become a habit with him. Go to the police, right now!" Dhaani's angry sister counseled her upon discovering that Dhaani's husband had beaten her that day and had done it before too.

"But Di," Dhaani **demurred**, "will bringing in the police be right? What will the kids think? That their mama put their papa in jail? I don't think they will be able to handle that. I'm not sure that going to the police is the solution."

❑ During the magic show, the **conjurer** asked a man in the audience to give him his gold wrist watch. The man **demurred** a little but on being assured that he would get the watch back, he unfastened the watch.

The other word from the root *mora* is **moratorium**.

Moratorium: (n) legal permission to delay the payment of debt or doing of a duty.

❑ The drought had greatly reduced the crop yields. So, the government announced a **moratorium** of one year on the repayment of loans taken by the peasants from the government, private financiers or co-operative banks.

❑ When the government of India proposed to allow the cultivation of genetically modified brinjal in the country, environment activists and the general public came out in the streets to oppose the move. They said that the safety of GM foods had not yet been established and demanded a **moratorium** on their introduction in the country till that was done.

¹³³ **Stipulation:** (n) a condition put in a contract.

¹³⁴ **Avarice:** (n) excessive greed; greed to have more and more and more. Adjective: **avaricious**

❑ Desire can be satisfied, **avarice** can't be.

❑ King Midas was **avaricious**. He was the richest man of his kingdom, yet he was not satisfied and prayed for more gold.

¹³⁵ **Nuptial:** (adj) related with marriage.

Origin: L *nubere*, to marry.

¹³⁶ **Niggle:** (v) to keep complaining about small things

¹³⁷ **Connubial:** (adj) related to married state. Same meaning as **conjugal**.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *nubere* => 'married together.'

¹³⁸ **Appease:** (v) make peaceful, pacify.

Origin: L *pais*, peace

¹³⁹ **Prenuptial:** (adj) before marriage.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *nuptial*

¹⁴⁰ **Lament:** (v) to express sorrow or regret. The key word here is 'express.' If someone feels sorrow but does not show it, you cannot use the word lament for him.

❑ An example of **lamenting** is women crying in grief over the death of a loved one.

After a year of mourning, Ryan married the woman he had been in love with for the past three years. He sometimes regretted having arranged for Mahi's death but then, would tell himself that the **rash**¹⁴¹ **prenuptial** agreement he had signed had left him with no other option. Divorce would have been too expensive.

Latin **semen** **seed**

The 'semen' of men contains the seeds of their future children.

Something that contains the seeds of future growth is called **seminal**¹⁴². And, a place where the seeds of knowledge are sown, is called a **seminary**¹⁴³. The word 'seminar' is actually an American play on the word **seminary**. People come to a seminar, scatter or gather the seeds of knowledge, and then go away.

One evening, 10-year-old Som came to his papa in tears of **remorse**. "Papa, when you had said no to buying me a cycle, I was very very angry and said bad things about you to my friends. I did not know then papa that you *would* get me a cycle. I am very sorry."

Som's father comforted him and wiped his tears. Later that evening, he took the child for a walk and gave him a bunch of beautiful peacock feathers. Then, he told the excited boy to keep throwing a feather after every five minutes. Som's face fell. "Don't worry. I'll get you another set." Upon this assurance, Som remained fully attentive to his watch and followed his father's instructions **scrupulously**¹⁴⁴.

After the last feather was dropped, his father asked him to go back and pick up each feather that he had dropped. Som was **flustered**¹⁴⁵. "B...but papa, I cannot! Wind would have blown them away by now. It is impossible!"

"Precisely," his father replied. "Precisely, my son. That is what I want you to understand. Just like you cannot bring back the feathers you scattered, you cannot bring back the bad words you **disseminated**.¹⁴⁶ You do not know where all your words may have travelled by now and to how many people they would have given a wrong impression of your papa. Saying sorry to me will not undo all that. Yes, I forgive you but remember, my son, that words **inflict**¹⁴⁷ more damage than any knife or sword. So, always think before you speak."

¹⁴¹ **Rash:** (adj) done in a hurry without giving a proper thought to the matter.

¹⁴² **Seminal:** (adj) related with a seed or the semen.

An idea which later grows into a big new technology or philosophy or some other development is like a seed which later grows into a big tree. That is why such an idea is called a **seminal** idea.

¹⁴³ **Seminary:** (n) a place where the seeds of something are sown and grow into large trees. These seeds are not real but **metaphorical**. Usually that 'something' is knowledge. So, an educational institution—especially one that imparts religious training—is called a **seminary**. But if we take the seeds to be those of crime, we may say that a particular slum is a **seminary** of crime.

❑ A Muslim **seminary** is called a madrasa.

¹⁴⁴ **Scruple:** (n) conscience. (v) hesitate because of conscience. A guy who always listens to his conscience is called **scrupulous**. He is honest. The opposite is **unscrupulous**.

❑ "How could you steal your own father's money?" Abhi's shocked mother shook him. "Do you have no **scruples**?"

❑ Abhi's mother was shocked that her son did not **scruple** to steal his father's money. She had always believed, and not just believed but also boasted before all neighbours and relatives, that no one could be more **scrupulous** than her son. "Once, when he was small, he had found a wallet on the road outside our house. It had a thick **wad** of notes. He took the address from the driving license in the wallet and went all the way to the other end of the city to return it to its owner. That man was very impressed by his **scruples**, and even more when Abhi refused to accept any reward. 'You are very well brought up, my son,' the man had remarked." How often she had told this story to everybody! And now, that very *satyaawadi* *Harishchandra* had done such an **unscrupulous** thing!

¹⁴⁵ **Flusterd:** (adj) behaving in a very confused and nervous manner.

❑ He was 10 minutes late for the test and, as a result, was **flustered**, so much so that the invigilator asked the peon to get a glass of water for him.

¹⁴⁶ **Disseminate:** (v) to scatter all over, like one scatters the seeds in a field with one's hand.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *semen* => 'to spread the seeds apart'

¹⁴⁷ **Inflict:** (v) to give pain and suffering.

IE *pater* father

Bharat mata ki jai!

We have all heard this slogan **umpteens**¹⁴⁸ number of times. Did you ever wonder why we never say *Bharat pita* or *Hindustan pita*?

It's not just us. People the world over usually view their country as their mother. However, the word that they use for their devotion to their country—patriotism—comes from the Latin *patris*, which means fatherland. Two men who have the same *patris* are compatriots, and one who is out of his fatherland is an **expatriate**¹⁴⁹.

The Sanskrit *pitr* and the English father are in this family as are the following words:

*Pater-1: patrimony*¹⁵⁰, *patrician*¹⁵¹, *patron*¹⁵²

*Pater-2: patronize*¹⁵³, *paternoster*¹⁵⁴, *perpetrate*¹⁵⁵

¹⁴⁸ **Umpteens:** (adj) a large number of.

¹⁴⁹ **Expatriate:** (n) one who is living out of one's birth country; (adj) civing out of one's birth country

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *pater*, father => 'out of fatherland'

- ❑ These lines from the movie *Kabuliwala* (1966) beautifully express the longing of an **expatriate** Pathaan for his motherland: *Ai mere pyaare watan, ai mere bichhde chaman, tujhpe dil qurbaan. Tu hi meri aarzo, tu hi meri aabroo, tu hi meri jaan.*
- ❑ The Punjabis are the largest and most visible **expatriate** community of Southall, London.

¹⁵⁰ **Patrimony:** (n) the property or other things inherited from one's father.

Origin: L *pater*

- ❑ Although we still call ourselves a democracy, the system of governance in our country has in fact become **patrimonial**. Look at any state or the centre. You will find that most of the power has been concentrated in a few families.
- ❑ Business too is conducted on a **patrimonial** basis in India. The heads of most big business groups are men and their successors are their sons, brothers or cousins.

¹⁵¹ **Patrician: Patricians** and **Plebian**s were the two classes of free citizens in ancient Rome. The Patricians were the upper class, the nobles and the wealthy land-owners. The **Plebian**s were the lower class and included the rest of the free population, from the tradesmen to the very poor. Inter-marriage between the Patricians and the **Plebian**s was forbidden.

- ❑ Fateh's friends called him a *nawaabzaada* not because he really was one but because he carried himself like a **patrician**.

¹⁵² **Patron:** (n) someone who offers father-like protection or support.

- ❑ A restaurant is able to run only because of the money given by its customers. Its customers are, therefore, its **patrons**.
- ❑ Khwaja Moinuddin Chishti is popularly known as *Garib Nawaz*—**patron** of the poor.
- ❑ Akbar was a great **patron** of arts and music. The great musician Tansen was one of the many **protégés** of Akbar.

Protégé: (n) a person who gets protection or support, including financial support, from a **patron**.

Origin: L *protegere*, to protect. The word 'protect' itself is from this root.

¹⁵³ **Patronize:** (v) to offer support or protection; to behave arrogantly towards someone as if one was a **patron** of that person.

- ❑ We refuse to let anyone call us 'common people.' How dare anyone be so **patronizing** that he tells us we are 'common'? Each one of us is special even if nobody seeks our autographs.
- ❑ People remain glued to television programmes and no longer **patronize** musical concerts or theatre.

¹⁵⁴ **Paternoster:** (n) a sequence of words used as a prayer or a magical formula; a big bead in a rosary upon coming to which a Christian, who is praying with a rosary, says the prayer called Pater Noster.

Origin: L *pater noster*, our father. The first prayer medieval Christians recited on prayer beads was the Pater Noster. This prayer was called so because its first two words were *pater noster*.

Another word which uses the root *noster* is **nostrum**.

¹⁵⁵ **Perpetrate:** (v) to produce, to cause to happen.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *pater* => 'to father' => 'to produce'

- ❑ The Chief Minister assured everybody that he would do everything to bring the **perpetrators** of the recent violence against the minority community to account.
- ❑ Draupadi could not understand why the Pandavas were standing silently as the Kauravas attempted to do her *cheer haran*, instead of crushing the **perpetrators** of that horrible act to pulp.

Do not confuse **perpetrate** with **perpetuate**.

IE *ma* mother

*Ma, maiyya, mata, matri*¹⁵⁶ is how we lovingly address the most special woman in our life. Note that while the first two words are simply based on m-sound, the latter two are built on three consonants- m, t and r (*mata* is a simplification of *matri*). It may fascinate you to know that Greek has a word *Maia* which means ‘good mother.’

‘Matrimony’ means marriage, though its elements show it to mean ‘state of motherhood’ (Latin *mater* means ‘mother’ and the suffix *-monium* means ‘state, condition’). This little etymological fact tells us that the primary function of marriage has always been to grant social **sanction** to motherhood.

The other *mater* words are: **maternal**¹⁵⁷, **matrix**¹⁵⁸, **matriculate**¹⁵⁹, **madrival**¹⁶⁰

Also in the *ma* family is the Latin word *mamma*. It means breast. That is why the animals which suckle their young ones are called ‘mammals’.

Latin *nasci* to be born

A **nascent**¹⁶¹ rock band in Mumbai, the **Renaissance**¹⁶² in Europe and **prenatal**¹⁶³ sex determination in Punjab would all be left in the **lurch**¹⁶⁴ without the root *nasci*.

Have you ever noted that year-old kids, who cannot even feed themselves without spilling food on their bibs and the floor, somehow speak perfectly sensible sentences? They seem to know **intuitively**¹⁶⁵ the right order of words, the right tense and the right gender of things in their mother tongue. That is why many behavioural scientists believe

¹⁵⁶ Used only in compound words, like *matribhumi, matribhasha* etc.

¹⁵⁷ **Maternal:** (adj) related with mother.

Origin: L *mater*, mother.

☐ Maternal love is said to be the purest form of love.

¹⁵⁸ **Matrix:** (n) the source, the mother. In maths, a rectangular array of numbers or quantities into rows and columns.

☐ Pain is the matrix of art.

¹⁵⁹ **Matriculate:** (v) to be registered or added to a list; becoming eligible (v) to enter university (and thus be added to the list of university’s students).

Origin: L *matrix*.

☐ In British India, the 10th class of the school used to be called **Matric** and its exam was called the **Matriculation** exam, because after 10th class, a student entered university.

¹⁶⁰ **Madrigal:** (n) a short poem on non-religious subjects that was usually sung without musical instruments, in the 16th and 17th century.

Origin: L *mater* => ‘origin’ => ‘close to the original form, without much development’ => ‘sung without instruments’

¹⁶¹ **Nascent:** (adj) just born; in the process of being born

☐ India is still a **nascent** democracy; it is not fully developed yet.

¹⁶² **Renaissance:** (n) rebirth; (capitals) A movement that began in 14th century Italy that marked the rebirth of the arts, literature and science in Europe.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *nasci*, to be born => ‘to be born again’

¹⁶³ **Prenatal:** (adj) before birth.

☐ **Prenatal** and postnatal leave is a fundamental right of every female worker. ‘Postnatal’ means ‘after the birth.’

¹⁶⁴ **Lurch:** (v) to roll suddenly to one side; a sudden jerk.

☐ The government **lurched** from one political crisis to the next.

☐ The moment he saw the beautiful girl, his heart **lurched**.

¹⁶⁵ **Intuition:** (n) knowledge gained without any conscious thought or logical inference.

☐ He had an **intuition** that somebody was watching him. He looked back and saw a strange old woman staring at him.

☐ “Your time is limited, so don’t waste it living someone else’s life. Don’t be trapped by dogma—which is living with the results of other people’s thinking. Don’t let the noise of others’ opinions drown out your own inner voice. And most important, have the courage to follow your heart and intuition. They somehow already know what you truly want to become. Everything else is secondary.”— Steve Jobs

☐ The salesman in the sari shop knew **intuitively** that the female customer who had just taken her seat in front of him would like saris in softer colours and without loud embroidery.

that language is **innate**¹⁶⁶ rather than learned. While the words themselves are picked up from the child's immediate environment—he cannot speak a word he has not heard before—the ability to acquire language, the **propensity** to express oneself through speech instead of mere **gestures**¹⁶⁷ and **gesticulations**¹⁶⁸ seems **innate**.

The **innate** qualities of a man, the qualities that he was born with, are called his 'nature'. Something that is beyond the natural is **preternatural**¹⁶⁹.

A man is a **native**¹⁷⁰ of the land where he was born. And that birth-land of his is called his 'nation'. Someone who **retains** his **native** simplicity is called **naïve**¹⁷¹.

Two people or languages that were born together, that is, into the same family, are called **cognates**¹⁷². Look at this word carefully. The *gn-* part of it seems similar to *genus* which means 'race, stock.' The word would still mean the same if you assumed it to be made of *L. co-* + *genus* instead of *L. co-* + *nascere*. Is it just a coincidence? No. The root *nasci* is actually a simplified form of *gnasci*, to be born, and is therefore a member of the *gen-* family.

Latin *oriri* to rise

The word origin, meaning 'rise' or 'the point of rise', is from this root as are the following words:

Orient¹⁷³, **Aborigine**¹⁷⁴

¹⁶⁶ **Innate:** (adj) inborn.

Origin: *L in-*, *in* + *nasci*, to be born => 'that which was within you when you were born.'

- ☐ Men are considered to be rational and women, emotional. Some people say that this difference is **innate**, while others say that it is a result of the different ways in which a man and a woman are reared. This is a debate of 'nature' versus 'nurture.'

¹⁶⁷ **Gesture:** (n) a movement of the body, usually that of hands, which expresses an idea or emotion.

¹⁶⁸ **Gesticulate:** (v) to make gestures.

¹⁶⁹ **Preternatural:** (adj) supernatural, extraordinary.

Origin: *L praeter naturam* => 'beyond nature'

- ☐ She had a **preternatural** ability to read other people's minds. Her accuracy rate was 100%!
- ☐ A few hours before his death, a **preternatural** calm descended upon the patient. It seemed that his fear of death and his pain were gone.

¹⁷⁰ **Native:** (n) belonging to a place by birth.

- ☐ Sheela is a **native** of Budhiya village. She has gone to her **native** village for the vacation. Her grandparents still live there.
- ☐ The **natal** home of an Indian married woman is called her *mayka*.
- ☐ The mango plant is a **native** of India.

¹⁷¹ **Naïve:** (adj) someone who has a childlike simplicity. He has not yet learnt how to play clever tricks with other people or to be worldly wise.

Origin: *L nativus* -> *Fr. naïf*, someone who is still in the natural state

Naïve has a similar etymology to **ingenuous**.

- ☐ The stupid neither forgive nor forget; the **naïve** forgive and forget; the wise forgive but do not forget.
- ☐ The new employee was a brilliant guy but he was extremely **naïve** about the cruelties and politics of the business world. The poor chap tried to apply the mantra he had been taught as a child—honesty is the best policy—in his business dealings and fell down on his face.

¹⁷² **Cognate:** (adj) related by birth; two things that are so similar in nature that they seem to be related by birth.

Origin: *L co-*, together + *gnatus, natus*, born => 'born together'

¹⁷³ **Orient:** (n) east; (v) to turn the face of something towards east; to direct something in a particular direction.

Origin: *L oriri*, to rise => 'the direction in which the sun rises' => 'east'

- ☐ The countries which lie to the east of Europe have traditionally been referred to as the **Oriental** countries or, as a group, **The Orient**. Correspondingly, the **Oriental** countries have called the countries that lie to their west as the **Occidental** countries or, as a group, **The Occident**.

Origin: *L oc-, ob-*, down + *cidere*, to fall => 'the direction in which the sun falls' => 'west'

- ☐ The **Occidental** countries include European countries, Canada, U.S., Mexico, Australia and New Zealand.

¹⁷⁴ **Aborigine:** (n) a person who has been living in an area from the very beginning as opposed to the later invaders and settlers.

Origin: *L ab origine*, from the beginning

- ☐ Some scholars believe that the *adivasis* are the **aboriginal** people of India. This is also reflected in the etymology of the word: *Skt adi-*, first + *vaasi*, inhabitant => 'the first inhabitants.'

There is another word from the root *oriri* but to find it, you have to read the passage below. It is from the novel ‘*The Country Doctor*’ by Honore de Balzac, a celebrated French novelist of the nineteenth century. In this passage, the **eponymous** country doctor is making a confession about his early youth.

“At first I went through the experience, more or less **vivid**, that always comes with youth—the countless moments of **exultation**, the unnumbered **transports of despair**¹⁷⁵. Sometimes I took my **vehement** energy of feeling for a **resolute** will, and over-estimated my powers; sometimes, at the mere sight of some **trifling** obstacle with which I was about to come into collision, I was far more cast down than I ought to have been. Then I would **devise** vast plans, would dream of glory, and betake myself to work; but a pleasure party would **divert** me from the noble projects based on so **infirm** a purpose. Vague recollections of these great **abortive** schemes of mine left a **deceptive** glow in my soul and **fostered** my belief in myself, without giving me the energy to produce. In my **indolent** self-sufficiency, I was in a very fair way to become a fool, for what is a fool but a man who fails to justify the excellent opinion which he has formed of himself? My energy was directed towards no definite aims; I wished for the flowers of life without the **toil** of cultivating them. I had no idea of the obstacles, so I imagined that everything was easy; luck, I thought, accounted for success in science and in business, and genius was **charlatanism**. I took it for granted that I should be a great man, because there was the power of becoming one within me; so I discounted all my future glory, without giving a thought to the patience required for the **conception** of a great work, nor of the execution, in the course of which all the difficulties of the task appear.”

The word from the root *briri* in the passage above was **abortive**. It means ‘unsuccessful, failing to achieve a goal or causing abortion.’

Latin	<i>creare</i>	to create
Latin	<i>crescere</i>	to grow

The word create comes from *creare*. The other word from this root is **procreate**¹⁷⁶.

After ‘creation’ comes growth; hence, the root *crescere*. When a man’s wealth ‘increases’, it grows and when it ‘decreases’, it grows downwards. The flag of Pakistan has a ‘crescent’ moon—that is, a growing moon—in the centre. It symbolizes progress.

When a company recruits new employees, it grows in size. The same idea of growth is also seen in the following words: **accrue**¹⁷⁷, **accretion**¹⁷⁸, **crescendo**¹⁷⁹, **excrecence**¹⁸⁰

¹⁷⁵ **Despair:** (n) state of hopelessness

¹⁷⁶ **Procreate:** (v) to produce children.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *creare*, to create => ‘to create forth’ => ‘to create future generations’

- So many people just eat, rest, **procreate** and pass away, without making the world any better through their existence.
- The Indian society allows only married individuals to **procreate**.

¹⁷⁷ **Accrue:** (v) to grow; to grow by addition.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *crescere*, to grow => ‘to grow towards a greater number.’

- Interest **accrues** in your bank accounts daily. But, the bank does not credit you that interest on a daily basis. Rather, it pays you the **accrued** interest, as calculated by the formula:
Interest= Principal * Rate * Time/100
- Wisdom **accrues** with age.

¹⁷⁸ **Accretion:** (n) a steady growth. The noun form of the verb ‘accrue.’

- The **accretion** of his waist accompanied the **accretion** of his wealth.
- Accretion** of knowledge continues throughout one’s life. A man learns something new, whether consciously or not, every day.

¹⁷⁹ **Crescendo:** (n) an increase in volume, especially in a musical performance. The point of highest volume is also called a **crescendo**.

- Jana Gana Mana, our national anthem, reaches a **crescendo** with the ‘Jaya he, jaya he’ at its end.
- A.R. Rahman’s career reached a **crescendo** with his victory at the Oscars for the song ‘Jai ho.’

¹⁸⁰ **Excrecence:** (n) a tumour like outgrowth. L *ex-*out + *crescere*.

Origin: L *ex-*,out + *crescere*, to grow => ‘something that grows out’

IE *al-* to grow, nourish

The **sage** Vishwamitra was doing an intense meditation in a jungle and Indra, the lord of the gods, was losing his sleep over it. Successful completion of this **penance** would have **endowed**¹⁸¹ Vishwamitra with great powers. Indra wanted to prevent that at all costs. So, he sent Menaka, the most **winsome**¹⁸² woman in all worlds, to **allure**¹⁸³ the **sage**.

The **decoy** worked beautifully; the **sage** was so **entranced**¹⁸⁴ by Menaka's charms that he forgot all his **austerities**¹⁸⁵, forgot that he was an **ascetic**¹⁸⁶ and **ascetics** were not supposed to look at women. How could he not look at her? He would die! Oh, his dear Menaka, her **dulcet**¹⁸⁷ name was all that he could remember and chant! **Fraught**¹⁸⁸ with passionate love, he sang songs to her and **gambled**¹⁸⁹ with her and made love to her day after day and night after night.

❑ He was so worried by the **excrecence** in his neck that he got himself checked for cancer.

¹⁸¹ **Endow:** (v) to gift an income or a skill. Such a gift is called an **endowment**.

Origin: L *en-* + *dower*, to give. Dowry too is from the root *dower*.

❑ The millionaire **endowed** his former college with an annual grant of ₹ 50 lakh.

❑ He was **endowed** with a beautiful voice. But as the wise say, it is not your **endowments** that matter but what you do with them. He totally wasted his talent.

¹⁸² **Winsome:** (adj) attractive

Origin: win+ some => 'that which wins the heart'

❑ Aishwarya Rai Bachchan is a **winsome** woman. Her smile is especially **winsome**.

¹⁸³ **Allure:** (v) to attract; (n) power of attraction

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *lure* => 'to lure towards'

❑ Everyday, hundreds of young men and women come to Mumbai from all over India and outside with dreams of becoming Bollywood stars. The **allure** of Bollywood is mainly the fame it offers.

❑ Part of her **allure** was her simplicity.

¹⁸⁴ **Entrance:** (v) to fill with delight or wonder; to put into a **trance**.

Origin: L *en-*, in + *trance*.

Trance: (n) a hypnosis like state. When a man is so lost in something that he becomes absent to everything else around him, he is said to be in a trance.

Origin: L *transpire*, to go across => 'to go across to a different mental state' => 'to go across to a state different from the normal, wakeful state of the mind.'

❑ The sleepwalker walked as if in a **trance**. His wife kept calling him but he kept moving forward like a programmed robot.

There is another 'entrance' which is built as enter+ -ance and means 'entry point.' The two entrances are **homonyms**.

¹⁸⁵ **Austere:** (adj) extremely simple.

❑ To live in **austerity** requires great self-discipline and strictness with oneself. Therefore, 'austere' also means 'very strict.'

❑ A *rishi* lives an **austere** life.

¹⁸⁶ **Ascetic:** (n) someone who lives extremely simply and keeps his desires to the basic minimum because he thinks that self-denial is a **virtue**.

❑ The *Rishi-* *munis* and *sadhus* in the Hindu religion are all **ascetics**.

¹⁸⁷ **Dulcet:** (adj) sweet

❑ The **dulcet** tones of the instrumental music relaxed all his tensions.

¹⁸⁸ **Fraught:** (adj) loaded with, full of (tension, distress, etc.)

Origin: cousin of freight. Freight is the load that is transported by a ship or a train or some other vehicle.

❑ The relationship of the husband and the wife was **fraught** with tension. Another way of saying the same thing: the couple had a **fraught** relationship.

❑ The road less travelled is often **fraught** with bumps and dead-ends. But it is on that road that you have a chance of reaching somewhere no one has been.

¹⁸⁹ **Gambol:** (v) to skip about playfully.

Origin: It *gamba*, leg

❑ The children and the squirrels **gambled** on the grass. Goats **gambled** happily in the fields.

Another word from *gamba* is gambit.

Gambit: (n) a clever opening in chess in which the player sacrifices one or more pawns or some other unimportant piece with a bigger gain in mind.

Origin: It *gamba*, leg => 'tripping someone by putting one's leg in his way and making him fall.'

He came to his senses only when Menaka gave birth to a girl. It was then that he realized that he had better and nobler things to do than just waiting upon a woman and cleaning the noses of **sniveling**¹⁹⁰ infants. He **reproached**¹⁹¹ Menaka for **thwarting**¹⁹² his meditation and asked her to take the baby and go away. Menaka also thought that now that her mission had been accomplished, she should go back. So, she left the baby by the side of a river and went back to heaven.

A flock of birds found the **forsaken**¹⁹³ baby girl and surrounded her. When the child began to cry, they brought her fruits and leaves to suck. Then, a few of them flew in different directions to see if they could get a human somewhere. Rishi Kannav happened to be passing nearby. They attracted his attention and brought him to the child. The Rishi was surprised to see the baby, and was also taken in by her **cherubic**¹⁹⁴ face. He took her with him and raised her as his **foster**¹⁹⁵ daughter.

The Sanskrit word *shakunta* means bird. So, Rishi Kannav named his daughter Shakuntala, meaning one who was nourished by birds (*al-* means 'to nourish').



What are the adjectives that you use for the grown-ups? Old. Elder. Adult.

Now, here is a task for you. You have to try and guess the meaning of the Latin word *adolere*. It is made of *ad-* + *alere* (the prefix *ad-* means towards and *alere* means 'to nourish, grow'). The answer is at the end of the discussion on this root.

¹⁹⁰ **Snivel:** (v) to leak at the nose; to pull up all the mucus in one's nose audibly. One usually has so much mucus in one's nose that it needs to be pulled up, when one has a cold or is crying.

Origin: cousin of sniff and snuff.

- The old man had become virtually a child. If no one came to visit for a long time, he would wander through his rooms in misery, go up to the window, bite his lips **pensively**, heave a deep sigh, and end by virtually **snivelling**.
- The crying child **sniveled** as she told her mother how her elder sister had eaten her share of the cake. The mother then **reproached** her elder daughter: "Shalu, you are older than her. This is not how an elder sister behaves. Say 'sorry' to her now. And, learn to be mature."

¹⁹¹ **Reproach:** (v) to tell someone or show him by your actions that you unhappy or disappointed about something he did. Such an expression of disapproval is also called a **reproach**.

Origin: L *re-* + *prope*, *near* => 'to bring close' => to show one's true thoughts.'

- Ravi **reproached** his brother for lying to him by saying: "I didn't expect this from you. I trusted you."
- "There is a luxury in self-**reproach**. When we blame ourselves, we feel that no one else has a right to blame us." Oscar Wilde

Someone on whom no one can raise a finger, whom no one can **reproach**, is called '**irreproachable**.'

The other words from the root *prope* are approach and **propinquity**

¹⁹² **Thwart:** (v) fail the plans or hopes of.

- The Pakistani team **thwarted** India's hopes of winning the cricket World Cup.
- The hero of the movie **thwarted** the villain's plans of launching a terror attack on India.

¹⁹³ **Forsaken:** (adj) given up, left all alone with no support. The verb form of the word is 'forsake.'

- The writer said that she had been fed in her early youth many old wives' tales about how men would instantly **forsake** a beautiful woman when they saw a brilliant one. After she got out in the world, she felt it was her duty to record that she had never seen it happen.

¹⁹⁴ **Cherub:** (n) a child angel with wings; (adj) **cherubic**, meaning 'angelic.'

- The baby girl charmed everyone with her **cherubic** smile.

¹⁹⁵ **Foster:** (adj) reared; (v) rearing, to rear like a parent; to encourage the growth of

- Devaki was Krishna's biological mother and Yashoda, his **foster** mother.
- Krishna was the **foster** son of Yashoda.
- Working together and eating together **fosters** the love of a married couple.

The other English words that have grown out of *alere* are: **aliment**¹⁹⁶, **alimony**¹⁹⁷, **alumnus**¹⁹⁸, **alma mater**¹⁹⁹, **coalesce**²⁰⁰.

Then we have the word ‘abolish’, which literally means ‘to take away the nourishment’ and so, to kill something (L. *ab-* means away).



The Latin word *proles* is made by combining the prefix *pro-*, meaning ‘forth’, with *alere*. It therefore means ‘the one who grows forth from you’. Now, who is that? Your child.

To kill one’s child is called ‘proicide’. To produce children is to **proliferate**²⁰¹ and the one who produces many children is **prolific**²⁰².

The only way in which a poor man can serve his state is by producing more workers for it. That is why, the working class is called the **proletariat**²⁰³.



The phrase *badhta bacha* means two things—the child is growing in age, and in height. An increase in height obviously accompanies growth, whether of a child or of a plant or an animal. That is why one member of the *al-*family is dedicated solely to the concept of height. That is the Latin word *altus* and it is found in the following words:

¹⁹⁶ **Aliment:** (n) food; (v) to give food or nourishment to; (adj) **alimentary:** ‘related with food.’

❑ The tube through which the food passes in our body is called the **alimentary** canal.

❑ The guest went “wow” over the **alimentary** arrangements of his hosts. For two days, he felt that he was swimming in an **alimentary** sea of cakes and puddings and breads and pastas and ice creams and all sorts of yummy foods.

¹⁹⁷ **Alimony:** (n) maintenance money given by the earning spouse to the dependant spouse upon separation or divorce.

Origin: L *ali-*, to nourish + *-mony*, state => ‘the state of nourishing’ => ‘providing nourishment’

¹⁹⁸ **Alumnus:** (n) a person who has passed out of an educational institution. Plural: **alumni**

Origin: L *alumnus*, foster son

❑ I am an **alumnus** of Guru Nanak Public School, Chandigarh, and the University Institute of Engineering and Technology, Panjab University. And you?

¹⁹⁹ **Alma mater:** (n) the school, college or university that one has studied in.

Origin: L *alma mater*, nourishing mother.

²⁰⁰ **Coalesce:** (v) to grow together into one, to unite into a whole; (n): coalition

Origin: L *co-*, together + *alere*, to grow => ‘to grow together’

❑ After the *jaimala* was over, all the guests **coalesced** into little knots, men sharing a drink here, women discussing each other’s saris around the *angithi* there; the waiters kept supplying them with delicacies and they kept feeding each other with the latest gossip.

❑ Many political parties united to form one group. That group won the majority in the Lok Sabha and formed the government. Such a government is called a **coalition** government.

❑ How do you translate the song ‘*Oh re taal mile nadi ke jal mein, nadi mile saagar mein, saagar mile kaunse jal mein koi jaane na?*’ (Pools **coalesce** into rivers, rivers into seas, but what do seas **coalesce** into? No one knows.)

²⁰¹ **Proliferate:** (v) to grow in size or number.

❑ Albert Einstein remarked, thus, about **proliferation** of nuclear weapons: “I don’t know how World War 3 will be fought, but World War 4 will be fought with sticks and stones.”

²⁰² **Prolific:** (adj) producing or reproducing at a high rate.

❑ He was a **prolific** writer. In a career span of 30 years, he produced 40 novels, 20 collections of short stories, 15 books of children’s stories, 15 collections of essays and five books of poetry.

²⁰³ **Proletarian:** (n) member of the working class. The working class was called the **Proletariat**.

❑ “Let the ruling classes tremble at a Communist revolution. The **proletarians** have nothing to lose but their chains. They have a world to win. Working men of all countries, unite!”

—Karl Marx

altitude, **exalt**²⁰⁴, **haughty**²⁰⁵ and **hawser**²⁰⁶.

Coming back to *adolere*, it means ‘to take towards growth, to make grow.’ A grown up man (or woman) is, therefore, called an adult, and the one who is still growing up, an adolescent.

Part II

IE *gen-* to give birth

This IE root gave us the Sanskrit root *jan*, found in *janam*, *janani*, *jaati* and *yoni*.

Sparta was a military state in ancient Greece. The Spartans wanted that their military power should never **degenerate**.²⁰⁷ But how to ensure that? By seeing to it that every Spartan was healthy and strong. No weak babies were allowed to live in the state. The Spartans said that today’s babies were tomorrow’s soldiers and also, the **progenitors**²⁰⁸ of Sparta’s future soldiers. Weak, diseased or disabled infants would grow up to become weak, diseased or disabled adults. Such adults would be militarily useless themselves and the **progeny**²⁰⁹ they would **engender**²¹⁰ was also likely to be weak and diseased. So, in order to make sure that Sparta was not **encumbered**²¹¹ with any such undesirable people, as soon as a baby was born, he was inspected for **congenital**²¹² disorders. Then, he was bathed in wine; only strong infants could survive that test. The children who fared less than admirably in these tests were simply thrown off a mountain.

²⁰⁴ **Exalt:** (v) to raise to a higher level either by much praise or by promotion.

Origin: L *ex-* + *altus*, high

- ❑ When the Indian cricket team won the Champions Trophy, the media **exalted** it to Himalayan heights. When it lost the next international series that it played, the same media **yanked** it down.
- ❑ The Indians have **exalted** Mohandas Gandhi as “Mahatma”.

²⁰⁵ **Haughty:** (adj) proud, arrogant

Origin: L *altus*, high => Old Eng *haute* => ‘someone who thinks that he is high above everybody’

- ❑ In the song *gore rang pe naa itnaa gumaan kar*, the hero tells the heroine to stop being so **haughty** about her fair skin because it will not stay forever.

²⁰⁶ **Hawser:** (n) a thick rope used to tow a ship.

²⁰⁷ **Degenerate:** (v) to go from a higher or better to a lower or simpler condition.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *genus*, race

²⁰⁸ **Progenitor:** (n) an ancestor or a forefather.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *gen-*, to produce => ‘the one who produces forth’

²⁰⁹ **Progeny:** (n) the children, the future descendants

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *gen-*, to produce => ‘that which is produced forth’

- ❑ King Dashrath was extremely worried by his lack of **progeny**. He was getting old. Who would look after his kingdom after him? His ministers and priests advised him to perform a *Putrakameshti yagna*—a sacrifice for **progeny**—along with his three queens.
- ❑ The **progeny** of film stars find it much easier to get a break in Bollywood than unknown youngsters.

²¹⁰ **Engender:** (v) to give birth to.

Origin: L *in-* + *gen-*, to generate => ‘to bring into existence’

²¹¹ **Encumber:** (v) burden

Origin: Fr. *en-* + *combre*, a dam, barrier => ‘to block up’ => ‘to put difficulties in the path’

- ❑ The child was **encumbered** by a heavy school bag.
- ❑ The young man was **encumbered** by the responsibility of looking after his old parents, his two unmarried sisters, his alcoholic brother, his sister-in-law and their two children. His meager salary was barely enough to make the two ends meet.

Something that is burdensome can also be called **cumbersome** or **cumbrous**.

²¹² **Congenital:** (adj) present at birth.

Origin: L *com-*, with + *gen-*, to give birth => ‘the condition one is born with’

Congenital diseases are those that are present right from birth. They need not be hereditary. For example, a disease acquired during the pregnancy is **congenital** but not hereditary.

In twentieth century, a fan of the Spartans rose to power. Adolf Hitler. He implemented a similar **eugenics**²¹³ program in his country. In Hitler's Germany, the people with severe disabilities or with incurable or hereditary diseases, as well as the mentally ill, homosexuals, idlers or **inveterate**²¹⁴ alcoholics were officially declared as 'life unworthy of life.' More than four hundred thousand such people were forcibly sterilized and around sixty thousand were given **euthanasia**²¹⁵ by their physicians, so that their 'bad genes' could not spread further.



Hitler was also responsible for the cruel **genocide**²¹⁶ of six million people, whose only fault was that they were born to Jewish parents. Colonists everywhere have subjected to a similar **genocide** the **indigenous**²¹⁷ populations of their colonies.

Tyrants²¹⁸ and colonists, however, are not the only ones to judge people by their **genealogy**.²¹⁹ Ordinary people like us are equally guilty of the same.

Ron's mother **scotched**²²⁰ his desire to marry Ashley just because they belonged to the **gentry**²²¹ and she did not. Ashley's good nature, her sweetness, the deep love between Ron and her amounted to nothing before that one **congenital** flaw.

²¹³ **Eugenics:** (n) science that aims to produce better offsprings.

Origin: Gk *eu-*, good + *gen-*, birth

²¹⁴ **Inveterate:** (adj) so confirmed in a habit that there is no scope of living without it.

Origin: L *in-*, + *veter-*, old => 'grown old in (a habit)

☐ **Inveterate** foodie, **inveterate** traveler, **inveterate** TV serial watcher, **inveterate** liar

Veteran: (n) a person with long experience in a field.

Origin: L *veter-*, old, experienced

☐ Amitabh Bachchan is a **veteran** actor. He has been acting for more than three decades.

²¹⁵ **Euthanasia:** (n) mercy killing.

Origin: Gk *eu-*, good + *thanatos*, death => 'easy death'

²¹⁶ **Genocide:** (n) targeted destruction of the people belonging to a particular race, religion or culture.

Origin: L *genus*, race + *-cide*, to kill => 'to kill a particular race'

²¹⁷ **Indigenous:** (adj) having its origin at the place where it is found; native; not brought from outside.

Origin: L *indu*, in + *-gen*, give birth to => 'in-born (person or thing)'

☐ INS Arihant is India's first **indigenous** nuclear submarine.

²¹⁸ **Tyrant:** (n) a cruel dictator. His oppressive rule is called **tyranny**.

☐ When the men of the zamindar beheaded a farmer who could not pay the whole tax, the inflamed villagers decided that they had had enough. They would not submit to the **tyranny** of the zamindar any more.

²¹⁹ **Genealogy:** (n) study of the family line of a person.

Origin: L *gen-*, birth + *-ology*, study => 'study of the birth of a person, as in, whether he is of high birth or low birth etc.'

☐ The teacher asked the students to write down the **genealogy** of the Mughal rulers.

☐ The teacher asked the students to prepare a **genealogical** table of the Mughal rulers.

☐ The restaurant claimed that its *khaansaama*, the cook, traced his **genealogy** back to the cooks of the Mughal kitchens.

²²⁰ **Scotch:** (v) to put a definite end to; crush.

☐ The politician **scotched speculation** that he was quitting his party and joining its rival.

☐ The film actress **scotched** rumours of her secret marriage with her long-term film producer boyfriend.

²²¹ **Gentry:** (n) wellborn and well-bred people; in England, the class of landowners ranking just below the nobility.

Gentry was one of the classes the British society was divided into, below nobility but above **yeomanry**²²² and labourers and, accordingly, the families were noble, gentle, simple or working class.



In the good old Doordarshan days, the song ‘*Ek chidiya, anek chidiya*’ was a particular favourite of everybody. It had a line:

‘*Hind desh ke sabhi jan ek hain.*’

The Hindi word *jan* means ‘the one **begotten**, offspring.’ Gandhiji used the word Harijan, the children of Hari, for the *shudras*.

In ancient Rome, a *gens* (pl. *gentes*) was a group of families or a caste that shared a common name and a common ancestor. The Latin *gentilis* meant ‘of the same clan or family.’ It entered French as *gentil*, meaning “high-born, noble.” This one French word **spawned** many in English—gentle, **gentry**, **gentile**²²³, **gentility**²²⁴ and **genteel**²²⁵.

In order to accurately represent the French pronunciation of **gentile**, some people started writing it as *jantee* or *janty*. *Janty* continued to mean ‘well-bred’ for a while, but then assumed a life of its own. It became ‘**jaunty**’²²⁶ and came to be associated with the **dapper**²²⁷ appearance of the well-bred gentlemen, and with the easy, confident air they usually had.



²²² **Yeoman**: (n) a yeoman was usually a farmer who cultivated his own land but could also be a retainer, guard, attendant, or subordinate official. The word appears in Middle English as *yemen*, or *yoman*, and is perhaps a contraction of *yeng man* or *yong man*, meaning young man, or attendant.

²²³ **Gentile**: (adj) It is from the original Latin meaning that we get the modern word *gentile*, borrowed in the 14th century (again through French) meaning, essentially, “belonging to the same family as all non-Jews.”

²²⁴ **Gentility**: (n) the condition of being born to the **gentry**; the quality or qualities appropriate to those who are well born, as self-respect, dignity, courage, courtesy, politeness of manner, a graceful and easy mien and behaviour, etc.; good breeding

²²⁵ **Genteel**: (adj) possessing or exhibiting the qualities expected from a person of high birth and breeding; free from **vulgarity**, or lowness of taste or behaviour

❑ The lady impressed everybody with her **genteel** manner. She was dressed in an elegant cream sari teamed with a delicate diamond necklace and earrings, had a very graceful smile and walk, and talked very politely and in a very polished English with everybody.

❑ Another way of writing the above: the lady impressed everybody with her **gentility**.

❑ The *Mona Lisa* has no visible facial hair. The **genteel** women of the 16th century Europe often plucked out all their eyelashes and eyebrows because they considered facial hair to be **unsightly**.

Unsightly: (adj) not worthy of being seen, ugly, distasteful.

²²⁶ **Jaunty**: (adj) having a cheerful, lively, and self-confident air; elegantly stylish in clothing and manners.

❑ He walked in a half-dancing way and sometimes took off his hat, **hurled** it up in the air and then, with a spring, caught it and put it back on. He was also whistling, something he did rarely. He was clearly in a **jaunty** mood.

❑ The 1984 movie *Mashaal* has a song which is loved by millions of Indians. In it, a **jaunty** Anil Kapoor hops, skips, walks and whistles through roads and fields—sometimes even breaking into a dance, so happy is he—declaring: *liye sapne nigaahon mein, chalaa hoon teri raahon, zindagi aa raha hoon main*.

²²⁷ **Dapper**: (adj) neat, smart and dashing; active and lively.

❑ The Chairman of the company was a **dapper**, young man of 28. He wore a smart black suit and a pleasant perfume. His hair were perfectly gelled, his figure was athletic, his eyes intelligent and his manner was very confident. The female employees in particular were very impressed by his personality.

While working in his fields one day, **Charles**²²⁸ discovered a genie in a bottle. It asked him to make a wish and he immediately wished to be made a gentleman. And, pat! His wish was granted! He was so happy, so very happy, until he realized an hour later, that the genie had made him the *younger* son of a landlord. Oh, he **moaned**, how could he have forgotten about **Primogeniture**²²⁹? He should have asked to be made the *elder* son! What was the fun in being the younger son? He would still have to work to earn his living. Urgh!

Genies were what the *jinni* of the *One Thousand and One Arabian Nights* became, when they came to Europe through French translators in the early 1700s. The word ‘genie’, however, had been used for at least 50 years before that for a similar concept; it had been used as the short form of Genius.

The ancient Romans believed that the spirits of their ancestors looked after their *gens*, personally guiding and guarding each member of the clan. They were also supposed to control his temperament and destiny, and grant him intellectual **proWess**²³⁰ and abilities. This **tutelarY**²³¹ spirit was worshipped as the Genius (plural: genii. The word genius means ‘creator, **begetter**²³²) of the family. They believed that the Genius wanted them to make merry and enjoy fully the life he had blessed them with. The related adjective is **genial**²³³. **Congenial**²³⁴ people have, or seem to have, the

²²⁸ The male names Charles and Carl, and the word ‘**churl**’ have come from the German word *karl* meaning ‘man.’

Churl: (n) a rude, unmannered person.

Origin: Gmn *karl*, man => ‘common man’ => ‘free peasant’ => ‘uneducated, rural man’ => ‘person of low birth, lacking all refinement’ => ‘ill-mannered, rude person.’

The word ‘**churl**’ itself is rarely used. However, its adjective form—**churlish**, meaning ‘ill-tempered, bad-mannered, rude’—is quite common.

- ❑ The newspapers criticized the main Opposition party saying that it was behaving like a **churlish** child who throws tantrums on anything and everything.
- ❑ It is **churlish** to not shake an offered hand.
- ❑ “Madam, are you ok?” A jogger asked a woman who was crying alone in the park. “Who are you to ask?” She **glared** at him. “Get lost from here.” “How **churlish!**” he exclaimed and jogged off.

In each of the sentences above, we can replace the word ‘churlish’ with ‘**boorish**’.

²²⁹ **Primogeniture:** (n) a system of inheritance in which the whole property, wealth, every title and office, and in the case of royals, the throne, passed exclusively to the eldest son. This forced the younger sons to earn a living in the military, the clergy or the industry.

Origin: L *primus*, first + *gen-*, birth => ‘first-born.’

²³⁰ **Prowess:** (n) skill, exceptional ability or strength.

- ❑ A good singer is one who can show his **proWess** in every **genre** of music.
- ❑ India has proved its technical **proWess** by successfully developing **indigenous** satellites, satellite launch vehicles, missiles, submarines, warships and nuclear weapons.

²³¹ **TutelarY:** (adj) having the position of guardian or protector of a person, place, or thing. Noun: **tutelage**, meaning ‘the act of guarding, protecting, or guiding.’

Origin: L. *tueri*, to watch over, guard.

- ❑ Madhu learnt music under the **tutelage** of Pandit S. Sankar Rao.
- ❑ Ram and Lakshman learnt the scriptures and the martial arts under the **tutelage** of Sage Vishwamitra.

The other words from the root *tueri* are: tutor, tuition and **intuition**.

²³² **Beget:** (v) to produce.

- ❑ Rama was **begotten** by King Dashratha and Queen Kausalya. He was in fact the first-**begotten** son the king.
- ❑ Dashratha **begot** Rama and Rama **begot** Luv and Kush.
- ❑ You cannot hope to lead a happy life yourself if you make others’ life miserable. Misery **begets** misery.

²³³ **Genial:** (adj) that which supports life and happiness, warm.

- ❑ A child can grow into a cheerful adult only if he gets a **genial** atmosphere at home and school.
- ❑ The families of both Salman Khan and Madhuri Dixit in *Hum Aapke Hain Kaun* are models of **geniality**. Take any person from either family and you will know what the word **genial** means. The characters of Salman Khan’s *kaka* (his maternal uncle, who has also been his **foster** father since his parents died in an accident), his elder brother Rajesh, Madhuri Dixit’s parents and her elder sister, Puja all have **genial** natures.

²³⁴ **Congenial:** (adj) suited to one’s nature or habits; alike in nature or habits. Now, you are usually friendly with someone whom you find to be quite similar to you. So, congenial also means friendly.

- ❑ Dada was never happy when he was forced to move out of the **congenial** surroundings of his house. Without his books, his pen and paper, and his homely untidiness, he was an uncomfortable man. He was usually a **congenial** person but if you met him on one of his

same Genius (L. *com-*, together); they are that alike in nature, tastes or feelings. A **congenial** work atmosphere is the one that suits your temperament.

The word **ingenious**²³⁵ came to English in the early 1400s from the Latin *ingenium*, meaning ‘inborn ability’. A man gifted with genius was, therefore, called **ingenious** and slowly, the word began to be used for any fellow who was ‘very clever and inventive.’ An **ingenious** object was one that was cleverly made. However, in the 1590s, another word entered English and **muddled**²³⁶ things up. **Ingenuous**²³⁷ arrived from the Latin *ingenuus*, meaning ‘in the **native** state, hence free, honest and frank.’ An **ingenuous** man has not cloaked his child-like innocence with worldly **sophistication**. He dislikes self-**restraint**, clever manipulations and diplomacy, and speaks out simply whatever is on his mind. The noun form of **ingenuous** was **ingenuity**.

However, the similar spellings of **ingenious** and **ingenuous** caused considerable confusion to the writers and the general public, and for about 200 years, the two words were used interchangeably. Thus, the word **ingenuity** came to mean both ‘ingeniousness’ and ‘ingenuousness.’

forced out of the house tours, you would only think: “What an angry, **scowling** man!”

²³⁵ **Ingenious:** (aj) very clever and intelligent.

Origin: L. *in-* + *gen-* => ‘inborn’ => ‘having inborn ability’

- ❑ The *dhobis* collect heaps of clothes from scores of households. How then do they remember that which item belongs to whom? They don’t remember. They use an **ingenious** system to identify the clothes using arithmetical signs, dots, dashes, numbers, etc. No one is able to understand the meaning of these markings but them.
- ❑ In the movie ‘3 Idiots’, the hero thinks up an **ingenious** solution to the frequent power cuts—an inverter which runs on the car batteries.

²³⁶ **Muddle:** (v) to make muddy and unclear, to confuse.

Origin: mud.

- ❑ “When beetles fight these battles in a bottle with their paddles and the bottle’s on a poodle and the poodle’s eating noodles... ..they call this a muddle puddle tweetle poodle beetle noodle bottle paddle battle.” Try saying these lines by Dr. Seuss aloud. They are sure to **muddle** your head!
- ❑ Veer loved Shruti and Shruti loved Veer. Daanish, Veer’s elder brother, also loved Shruti. Shruti’s younger sister, Dhriti, loved Veer. “Didi, I’ve never asked anything of you,” Dhriti said one day to Shruti, “but please give me Veer! I will die if I don’t get him!” Shruti could not dream of being the cause of her dear sister’s misery. So, she **relinquished** her love and made Veer swear on her head that he would marry Dhriti. So now, there were two married couples in the family: Daanish-Shruti and Veer-Dhriti. But, neither Veer nor Shruti could forget each other. They were still deeply in love. If they even talked, Daanish or Dhriti would get jealous and feel insecure...and so, the **muddled** story of the TV serial continued. “It was all that Shruti’s mistake,” Mrs Shrivastava who watched the serial religiously remarked to her friend—who was an equally **ardent** viewer—at a kitty party. “Now she cries every time Daanish suspects her but she herself **muddled** her life, and not just hers, poor Veer’s too. This is so foolish, this idea of **renouncing** one’s love for others’ sake. It has only created so much confusion in the lives of all four of them.” **Ironically**, just a week ago, the same Mrs Shrivastava had asked her daughter to forget her boyfriend, who was from another caste, and had threatened to stop eating if she didn’t agree. The poor girl had to agree.

²³⁷ **Ingenuous:** (adj) innocent like a child and lacking in worldly tricks. An ingenuous female is called an **ingénue**.

Origin: L. *in-* + *gen-* => ‘in the state of a newborn’ => ‘child-like’

- ❑ The door bell rang. Surinder Sahni was very tired and in no mood to entertain any guests. So, he told his seven-year-old daughter to tell whoever had come that he was not at home. The **ingenuous** child did as instructed and told the guest, “Uncle, papa is saying that he is not at home.”

The opposite of ingenuous is **disingenuous**.

Disingenuous: (adj) lacking in innocence, full of worldly tricks, insincere.

- ❑ Surinder Sahni was only in class eight when both his parents were killed in an accident. His elder brother Virinder left his college mid-way and took up two jobs, one at day and the other at night, to make sure that he had enough money to fund Surinder’s college education. Surinder too was a model sibling, devoted to his elder brother to the extent of **veneration**. Fifteen years later however, when Surinder had become a University Professor and his elder brother remained stuck in small jobs, Surinder refused his uncle’s suggestion that he help Virinder financially. His **disingenuous** argument was: “Uncle, I really respect Bhai for what he did for me. Had I been in his place at that time, I too would have done the same. Because, we were each other’s family then. But now, I have my own family. Similarly, Bhai’s duties today are to his family first, and then, to me. If I were to expect him to spend all his job earnings on me today, that would be wrong, isn’t it? And even if I did expect it, he wouldn’t do it. I am not any different.”

This drama ended only around 1800 AD, when the dictionaries strictly refused to acknowledge **ingenious** and **ingenuous** as synonyms. However, by then, it was already too late for **ingenuity**²³⁸. It had started being used exclusively in the sense of ‘clever inventiveness’ and its older, original sense had been totally snatched away by the word ‘**ingenuousness**.’



‘Regeneration’ means rebirth, either of the cut-away tail of a lizard, or of the spirit of a sinner. ‘Pregnancy’ is the stage before giving birth (L. *pre-*, before).

All the living organisms are divided into different groups, based on similarities in their structure or origin, etc. There are eight main **taxonomic**²³⁹ ranks—domain, kingdom, **phylum**²⁴⁰, class, order, family, genus, and species.

The **taxonomic** classification of humans is given below:

Domain	Eukaryota (the other two domains are Bacteria, and Archaea, both of which belong to single celled microorganisms.)
Kingdom	Animalia (the other eukaryotic kingdoms are Plantae, Fungi and Protista (unicellular organisms like <i>Amoeba</i>)).
Phylum	Chordata (the animals having a flexible spinal column. Even cats and lions fall in the same phylum).
Class	Mammalia (the chordates who suckle their young ones. Cats and lions are still with us.)
Order	Primate ²⁴¹ (adapted to climbing trees, use hands and have a large brain. Cats and lions go to the order of carnivores).
Family	Hominidae (also known as ‘The Family of Great Apes’, it has only four members—humans, chimpanzees, gorillas and orangutans.)
Genus	Homo (humans and related extinct species).
Species	<i>Homo sapiens</i>

²³⁸ **Ingenuity:** (n) the state of being **ingenious**.

❑ Like the *dhobis* we talked about in the footnote for ‘**ingenious**’, the *dabbawaalaas* of Mumbai too manage their work with remarkable **ingenuity**. Their job is to collect tiffins from the homes of the city’s office workers and deliver them to their offices. Thanks to their **ingenious** system, their accuracy rate is an **astounding** 99.99%! Like the *dhobis*, they too have a code language of their own. For example, if a *dabba* has “3” marked at its centre, it means its destination is Nariman Point. Its precise office address at Nariman Point is marked in red on its side. Say, it is 10MT6. This means it is to go to the 10th floor, office number 6 at Mittal Tower. When the empty *dabbas* are collected from the offices after the lunch hour, they are kept upside down, showing the code on the bottom of the *dabba*. Suppose it is 10K. That means that the *dabba* is to be unloaded at the Kandivali area in Churchgate.

²³⁹ **Taxonomy:** (n) division of living organisms into different groups, based on similarities in their structure or origin, etc.

Origin: Gk. *taxis*, arrangement+ *nomos*, law => ‘law of arrangement’

²⁴⁰ **Phylum:** (n) the main subdivision of a kingdom, which groups together all the organisms that have similar body structure.

²⁴¹ **Primate:** (n) family of mammals that have highly developed features like binocular vision, specialized limbs for grasping and the ability to think intelligently. Includes humans, monkeys and apes.

Origin: L *primus*, first => ‘leader’

Anything which **pertains** to all the members of a genus, or less accurately, of any group or kind is called **generic**²⁴². For example, 'wooden furniture' is the **generic** term that includes all the items made from eucalyptus, pine, oak or any other wood. 'Oak furniture' is the 'specific' term (just like 'species' lies under the 'genus' in the **taxonomic** tree). 'Student' is a **generic** noun, because it does not specify the gender. Cola is a **generic** term because it does not specify whether the person has a Coke, a Pepsi or some other brand in his hand.

'Generalities' are vague statements; the speaker does not specify exactly what he will do or who he is referring to; there is a total lack of particulars. Politicians are **adept** at them.

'Homogeneous' groups have same kind of people, and 'heterogeneous' groups are quite the opposite (Gk *homos*, same, Gk *heteros*, other).



The Latin *genus* became *genre* in French. It was used in the general sense of 'genus, kind' initially but now, is used exclusively to mean the kind of artistic or literary work. A few of the literary **genres**²⁴³ are fables, romance, mystery, science fiction, historical fiction, tragedy, horror, fantasy, etc.

The most selling book in the world is The **Bible**²⁴⁴. Book of **Genesis**²⁴⁵ is the first book of The Bible, and it tells the story of how God created the world. The famous story of Adam and Eve comes from this book.

A little sprout or a bud that develops in a plant or a cell is called a 'germ' (from L. *germen*). The process of sprouting of a seed is called **germination**²⁴⁶. Imagine a project which has just started. It is **analogous** to a seed which has just sprouted. So, we say that the project is in a **germinal**²⁴⁷ stage. The adjective 'germane' literally means 'having the same

²⁴² **Generic:** (adj) general, having no special characteristics.

Origin: L *genus*, class, race.

²⁴³ **Genre:** (n) a distinct category of art work, whether in music, painting or literature.

²⁴⁴ **Bible:** simply means 'the book.'

Origin: Gk. *Biblion*, book.

So, when you write down all the books that you consulted for your research, that list is called a **bibliography** (Gk *graphein* means 'to write').

A book lover is called a **bibliophile** (Gk *philos*, loving).

²⁴⁵ **Genesis:** (n) origin, creation.

❑ The **genesis** of new knowledge needs hard work and imagination.

²⁴⁶ **Germination:** (n) sprouting of a seed.

❑ A seed **germinates** only if it gets proper environment.

❑ While watching the movie, a new idea **germinated** in Adi's head that he should try to be an actor!

²⁴⁷ **Germinal:** (adj) just begun to develop.

parents, and hence means 'related.' If your friends are discussing some topic and you say something that is not **germane** to the issue, they will just wave off your words in irritation and say, "Yaar, does he ever say anything relevant?"

The root *gen-* became *cyn* in Old English, and **engendered** the words **kin**²⁴⁸, **kindred**²⁴⁹, king and kind (both in the sense of 'genus' and 'gentle'.)

²⁴⁸ **Kin:** (n) relatives.

- ❑ The minister gave ₹ 10,000 to the **kin** of bomb blast victims.

²⁴⁹ **Kindred:** (n) relatives; (adj) related by blood or marriage. Also used for people who are not actual relatives but are so similar in their habits or character that they seem to be relatives.

Origin: Eng. *kin+ -red*. The suffix '-red' is also found in hatred. Just like a condition of hating is called hatred, a condition of kinship is called kindred. So, we conclude that the suffix '-red' means 'condition.'

- ❑ It was Diwali, the festival of lights. Everybody's faces shone as they illuminated their houses, visited their friends and **kindred**, prayed before the goddess Lakshmi and burst firecrackers.
- ❑ Sanskrit and English are **kindred** languages.
- ❑ *Tera mujh se hai pehle ka naata koi, yun hi nahin dil lubhaata koi*. In this song, the hero tells the heroine that they must be **kindred** in a previous birth because after all, our hearts are not drawn towards just anybody. Of course, he means 'kindred' in a romantic sense (imagine her turning out to be his sister in the last birth!).

Exercise

Part-I

Nubere, semen, pater, ma:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The *people who had caused* the violence were caught.
(a) perpetrators of (b) perpetuators of (c) patrons of (d) proteges of (e) patricians of
2. He was *an innocent fellow who knew no tricks*.
(a) an artful fellow (b) a flustered fellow (c) an artless fellow (d) a scrupulous fellow (e) a scion
3. The government announced a compensation package to *pacify* the relatives of those who were killed in police firing.
(a) lament (b) procreate (c) endow (d) allure (e) appease
4. He drove *extremely fast, without caring where his car went or bumped into*.
(a) seminally (b) lamentably (c) like a plebian (d) rashly (e) demurely
5. He was *an unscrupulous fellow*.
(a) a fellow who always listened to his conscience (b) a dishonest fellow (c) a fellow who hesitated before every decision (d) a fellow who took his decisions confidently and never showed any hesitation or doubt about them (e) a fellow who never listened to others
6. The television *spreads* news faster than newspapers.
(a) laments (b) disseminates (c) stipulates (d) niggles (e) behooves
7. She was *a girl of marriageable age*.
(a) a connubial girl (b) a nuptial girl (c) a nubile girl (d) an avaricious girl (e) a demure girl

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (e) 4. (d) 5. (b) 6. (b) 7. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. One who lives outside one's country of birth: E _____
2. Legal permission to delay the payment of debt or doing of a duty: M _____
3. Excessive greed: A _____
4. A short poem on non-religious subjects that was usually sung without musical instruments, in the 16th and 17th century: M _____
5. Descendant or heir of a wealthy family: S _____
6. A religious school: S _____
7. The property inherited from one's father: P _____
8. A condition put in a contract: S _____
9. A person who gets protection or support, including financial support, from a patron: P _____
10. A member of the working class in ancient Rome: P _____

Answers:

expatriate, moratorium, avarice, madrigal, scion, seminary, patrimony, stipulation, protege, plebian

Nasci, oriri, creare, crescere, al-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

- Out of *utter hopelessness*, he thought of ending his life.
(a) austerity (b) accretion (c) excrescence (d) despair (e) reproach
- He *gave up* his much-loved chicken and beer in order to lose weight.
(a) coalesced (b) thwarted (c) alimented (d) became naive about (e) forsook
- He did not consciously train to be a musician; *he was born with his musical ability*.
(a) his musical ability was nascent (b) his musical ability was naive (c) his musical ability was innate (d) his musical ability was intuitive (e) his musical ability was preternatural
- The situation *was full of danger*.
(a) proliferated with (b) fostered (c) coalesced (d) was fraught with (e) forsook
- The children *skipped about* happily.
(a) gambolled (b) thwarted (c) snivelled (d) accrued (e) gesticulated
- He was *a writer with a huge output*.
(a) a proliferating writer (b) a prolific writer (c) an exalted writer (d) a haughty writer
- She *expressed her disappointment to* him for his low grades.
(a) exalted (b) endowed (c) entranced (d) reproached (e) forsook
- The two languages are *cognate*.
(a) great (b) derived from the same ancestor (c) newly born (d) reborn (e) in the mother-child relationship.

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (e) 3. (c) 4. (d) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (d) 8. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

- Extraordinary: P_____
- To rear like a biological parent: F_____
- A person who has been living in an area from the very beginning as opposed to the later invaders and settlers: A_____
- A thick rope used to tow a ship: H_____
- Someone who lives extremely simply and keeps his desires to the basic minimum: A_____
- Maintenance money given by the earning spouse to the dependant spouse upon separation or divorce: A_____
- A member of the working class: P_____
- Just-born: N_____
- A child angel with wings: C_____
- The West: O_____

Answers:

preternatural, foster, aborigine, hawser, ascetic, alimony, proletarian, nascent, cherub, occident

Part-II

gen-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

- He devised *a very clever* solution to the problem.
(a) an inveterate (b) a dapper (c) an ingenious (d) an ingenuous (e) a disingenuous

2. The *origin* of his evil scheme lies in that book.
(a) genre (b) genesis (c) begetting (d) ingenuity (e) geniality
3. Gandhiji encouraged Indians to use *home-made* goods instead of foreign ones.
(a) begotten (b) engendered (c) kindred (d) congenial (e) indigenous
4. He *crushed* his rival's plans.
(a) scotched (b) degenerated (c) germinated (d) engendered (e) muddled
5. Critics questioned his musical *skills*.
(a) encumbrances (b) genre (c) genealogy (d) prowess (e) geniality
6. He accumulated great wealth for his *children and their children*.
(a) progenitors (b) progeny (c) genre (d) gentry (e) genealogy
7. She was *a woman who belonged to the high classes and showed good breeding*.
(a) a genteel woman (b) a gentry woman (c) a yeoman (d) a jaunty woman (e) a genial woman
8. He was *an un-reformable* drunkard.
(a) an inveterate (b) a veteran (c) a scotched (d) engendered (e) dapper
9. He was quite *an ill-tempered and bad-mannered fellow*.
(a) a tyrant (b) disingenuous (c) germinal (d) a primate (e) churlish
10. He *fathered* two sons.
(a) begot (b) germinated (c) scotched (d) euthanized (e) encumbered
11. She was *burdened* with many responsibilities.
(a) degenerated (b) scotched (c) engendered (d) begotten (e) encumbered
12. He liked the *warm and friendly* sunshine in the winter hills.
(a) generic (b) genial (c) congenial (d) genteel (e) gentile
13. Innovation requires *clever and intelligent thinking*.
(a) ingenuity (b) ingenuousness (c) disingenuousness (d) genesis (e) germination
14. The two heroes freed the villagers from the *oppressive rule* of the dacoit.
(a) degeneration (b) yeomanry (c) encumbrance (d) tyranny (e) primogeniture

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (e) 10. (a) 11. (e) 12. (b) 13. (a) 14. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A distinct category of art work, whether in music, painting or literature: G_____
2. Burdensome: C_____
3. A book-lover: B_____
4. Innocent like a child and lacking in worldly tricks: I_____
5. Mercy killing: E_____
6. Targeted destruction of the people belonging to a particular race, religion or culture: G_____
7. Study of the family line of a person: G_____
8. Forefather: P_____
9. The class of landowners ranking just below the nobility in the English society: G_____
10. Division of living organisms into different groups, based on similarities in their structure or origin etc. : T_____

11. A system of inheritance in which the whole property, wealth, every title and office, and in the case of royals, the throne, passed exclusively to the eldest son: P _____
12. A person with long experience in a field: V _____
13. The act of guarding, protecting, or guiding: T _____
14. Science that aims to produce better offsprings: E _____
15. Family of mammals that includes humans, monkeys and apes: P _____

Answers:

genie, cumbersome/cumbrous, bibliophile, ingenuous, euthanasia, genocide, genealogy, progenitor, gentry, taxonomy, primogeniture, veteran, tutelage, eugenics, primates

ALL THAT IS NEW BECOMES OLD; ALL THAT IS BORN MUST DIE

IE *aiw-* life, long life, eternity

The Sanskrit word *ayu* means ‘age’. The names *Ayush* and *Ayushman* mean ‘having a long life’. The ancient Indians showed great confidence in their medicinal system when they called it *Ayurveda*. It means ‘knowledge of long life’ (*veda* means knowledge).

From *aiw-*, we also get the Latin word *aevum*, also meaning ‘age’. *Aevum* is the root of the following words:

Primeval²⁵⁰, medieval, **coeval**²⁵¹, longevity (long-aev-ity)

When we suffix *aiw-* with *-ta-*, we get *aiwo-ta-* which leads us to the Latin word *aetus*. It too means ‘age’ and gives us the word **eternal**²⁵².

If we now attach *-en-* behind *aiw-*, we get *aiw-en*. This leads us to the Greek word **eon**²⁵³. Its earlier spellings, ‘aeon’, are even more closer to it IE mother root.

²⁵⁰ **Primeval:** (adj) belonging to the very first age, very ancient.

Origin: L *primus*, first + *aevum* => ‘belonging to the first age.’

- ❑ The need for companionship is a **primeval** instinct but **paradoxically**, so is the impulse to fight, and even kill, to preserve self.
- ❑ The scientists believe that the **primeval** organisms were single-celled, whereas followers of different religions believe that the organisms we see around today did not evolve from any **primeval** organisms but were simply put on the earth one fine day by God.

²⁵¹ **Coeval:** (adj) belonging to the same time period.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *aevum* => ‘together in age’

- ❑ The villagers believed the Banyan tree to be **coeval** with Lord Ram. Local legend said that Ram and Lakshman had rested under that tree during their search for Sita.

²⁵² **Eternal:** (adj) lasting forever.

Origin: L *aeviternus*, having a great age

- ❑ Mahesh and Meenakshi used to say that their love was **eternal** but marriage soon **doused** their passion.
- ❑ “It isn’t possible to love and leave. You will wish that it was. You can **transmute** love, ignore it, **muddle** it, but you can never pull it out of you. I know by experience that the poets are right: love is **eternal**.”
—E.M. Forster

²⁵³ **Eon:** (n) a very, very long time period. Alternate spelling: aeon.

Origin: Gk *aion*, lifetime, age.

- ❑ With the movie ‘Suhaana Safar’, Taareh Kumar—the superstar of the 70s—returned to Bollywood after **eons**.
- ❑ **Eons** ago, in a far away land, there lived a girl called Cinderella.

IE *g^wei-* to live

Zindagi ek safar hai suhana... sang an **ecstatic** Rajesh Khanna, **ecstatic** because Hema Malini was sitting on his bike. The *suhana safar* of the Persian word *zindagi* started from this IE root (whose ‘g’ is pronounced as in ‘general’).

Let’s have some fun with this root.

Attach *wo-* to *g^wei-*’s tail, and you get *g^weiwo-*. Complicated to pronounce? Well, the ancient Indians and Persians simplified this form to *jivo-*. Hence, the words *jivan* (and its simplified form *jaan*), *jiva* and *jivika*.

The Romans too simplified it, but instead of removing the middle ‘w’ like us, they cocked off the ‘g’ in the front. So, the Latin form of this root looked like *vivo-*. It is found in the following words:

*Jivo vivo-1: vivid*²⁵⁴, *vivacious*²⁵⁵, revive, survive

*Jivo vivo-2: vivisection*²⁵⁶, *convivial*²⁵⁷, *viviparous*²⁵⁸

*Jivo vivo-3: viable*²⁵⁹, *viand*²⁶⁰, *victual*²⁶¹

²⁵⁴ **Vivid:** (adj) full of life, colour or detail.

Origin: L *vivo-*, to live. => ‘lifelike’

❑ The old lady’s description of her childhood home was so **vivid** that we felt we were actually visiting it.

²⁵⁵ **Vivacious:** (adj) full of life and energy.

Origin: L *vivo-*, to live => ‘full of life’

❑ Preety’s **vivacity** was the first thing you noticed about her. ‘Bubbly’ was the adjective most people used for her. Her enthusiasm for life just bubbled out of her. The **vivacious** girl was always found laughing, talking or running about. She breathed life into any party or group that she walked into.

²⁵⁶ **Vivisection:** (n) cutting up a living animal, especially for research.

Origin: L *vivi-*, ‘living’ + *section*, ‘a cutting’ => ‘a cutting of something living’

²⁵⁷ **Convivial:** (adj) festive, fond of feasting.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *vivo-*, to live => ‘to enjoy the life together’ => ‘to eat together, laugh, dance and make merry’

❑ Rakesh was at a small dinner party at Mr Sharma’s—his colleague’s—house. Most other guests were Mr Sharma’s **cronies** from his previous jobs or college. He had never thought that Mr Sharma, who was always so formal and serious in college, could be so **convivial**! He cracked awesome jokes, told funny **anecdotes**, drank to the good health of his friends, never let anybody’s glass or plate be empty, and even sang a song in his croaking voice.

²⁵⁸ **Viviparous:** (adj) animals that give birth to their young ones.

Origin: L *vivus*, living + *parere*, ‘to bring forth’ => ‘those who bring their young ones forth alive’

❑ Humans are **viviparous**. Birds are **oviparous**.

Oviparous: (adj) organisms are those that lay eggs.

Origin: L *ovum*, egg + *parere*, ‘to bring forth’ => ‘those who bring their young ones forth through eggs’

The root *parere* is also found in ‘parent’ and **pauper**. Our parents are the people who bring us forth, that is, into this world.

The root *ovum* is also found in the words *oval* and *ovoid*. *Ovary* is called so because it contains the eggs. *Ovoid* means egg-like shape.

²⁵⁹ **Viable:** (adj) capable of living; capable of growing.

Origin: L *vita*, life => F *vie*, life + *-able* => ‘able to live’

❑ The human fetus becomes **viable** at seven months. So, even if it is taken out of the mother’s womb after the seventh month, it can survive.

❑ In today’s world, it is not **viable** to support a middle-class family of four on a salary of ₹ 3,000.

²⁶⁰ **Viand:** (n) an item of food, a dish.

Origin: L *vivenda*, things necessary for living

❑ There was a variety of **viands** at the five-star buffet. Devi, however, was nervous, this being her first visit to such a sophisticated hotel. She filled her plate with the first **viand** that appeared familiar and returned to her table.

²⁶¹ **Victual:** (n) food. When used in plural, as ‘victuals’, it means food supplies. (v) to provide with food; to eat food

Origin: L *vivere*, to live => *victus*, means of living => food

❑ Toshi was **aghast** to know how much food was wasted at the wedding feast. “It could **victual** a hundred hungry men for a whole month,” she regretted.

❑ The hungry boy **rummaged** through the kitchen to find at least some **victuals**.

Rummage: (v) to search thoroughly throughout the length, breadth and depth of something.

*Jivo vivo-4: vital*²⁶², vitamin, *revitalize*²⁶³, *viper*²⁶⁴

In the early 20th century, Polish scientist Casimir Funk was trying to find out why the people who ate brown rice were less **afflicted**²⁶⁵ by the disease beri-beri than those who ate white rice. In 1912, he finally isolated the substance present in rice husk which protected people from beri-beri. He found that this substance was an amine—a derivative of ammonia—and so, called it, Vitamine, the **vital** amine. He **postulated** that there were more vitamins, whose deficiency caused diseases like rickets, scurvy and pellagra. He was right. More vitamins were discovered, and when the chemists determined their structure, they found that not all vitamins were amines. The name vitamine proved to be a **misnomer** now. So, they dropped the ‘e’ in the end.

This then was the story of those *g^wei-* words which have *-wo-* as the suffix. Now, let us throw *-wo-* back into the box of suffixes and take out *-o-*. So, what do we get? *g^weio-*. The Greeks used this root as *g^wio-*. The Greeks and the Persians had the habit of converting the ‘j’ sound into ‘z’. So, the root became *z^wio-* to them. Therefore, the Greek word for a living being was *zoion*. Notice how close *zoion* is to the Persian words *zinda*, which means alive and *zindagi*, life. *Zoion* is the root of the following words:

Zoology²⁶⁶, **zodiac**²⁶⁷, **protozoan**²⁶⁸, **azote**²⁶⁹

²⁶² **Vital:** (adj) necessary for life; affecting life.

Origin: L *vivere*, life => L *vita*, life. The Latin word *vita* is a derivative of *vivere*.

☐ It is **vital** to have Oxygen in the air. It is **vital** to control river pollution; else what will our **progeny** drink?

☐ Freedom of speech is **vital** for a democracy.

☐ The police inspector made the **vital** mistake of trusting his enemy. The enemy shot at him the minute he turned away. The gun wound on the inspector's back proved **vital**. He died within two minutes.

²⁶³ **Revitalize:** (v) to give new life to

Origin: L *re-*, again + *vita*, life => ‘to give life again.’

☐ Drinking a glass of glucose **revitalizes** a tired person.

²⁶⁴ **Viper:** (n) a poisonous snake.

Origin: L *viviparous*, viviparous => *viviper* => *viper*. The earlier people believed that viper was a snake that did not lay eggs. Hence, its name.

²⁶⁵ **Afflict:** (v) To **inflict** pain or suffering upon. Noun: **affliction**, meaning ‘the pain or suffering which is **inflicted** upon a person.’

☐ Beri-beri is an **affliction**. Every disease can be called an **affliction**. Poverty too is an **affliction**.

²⁶⁶ **Zoology:** (n) study of animals.

Origin: L *zoo-*, animal + *-ology*, study

²⁶⁷ **Zodiac:** (n) a band of the sky which represents the path of the sun, the moon and the main planets. Astrologers divide this band into twelve segments, each 30 degrees wide ($12 \times 30^\circ = 360^\circ$). These twelve segments are called the signs of **zodiac**.

Origin: Gk *zoion*, animal => *zodiaion*, little animal + *kyklos*, circle => ‘circle of little animals’

²⁶⁸ **Protozoan:** (n) a group of single-celled organisms which have a nucleus and show some characteristics of animals like the ability to move and eat more than one type of food.

Origin: Gk *proto-*, first + *zoion*, animal => ‘the first animals.’ This name is actually a **misnomer** because they are not animals, only have some animal-like features.

The Gk root *proto-* is a cousin of the Sanskrit word *pratham*. Both mean first.

²⁶⁹ **Azote:** (n) the earlier name for nitrogen. Antoine Lavoisier was the man who discovered oxygen. He proved that air is made of two components—‘vital air’ and **azote**. The vital component was of course oxygen.

Origin: Gk *a-*, not + *zo-*, life => ‘lifeless’. So, Lavoisier used the word **Azote for** that component of air which was not necessary for breathing.

The Greeks also **amputated**²⁷⁰ the root *z^wio-* and turned it into *wio-*. But they pronounced the ‘w’ as ‘b’. Hence the *bio-* we find in biology, biography and **sybiosis**²⁷¹.

Latin *anima* **life, breath, mind**

An **animated**²⁷² movie is full, not of animals, but of characters that appear to be living. We can see that they are just drawings, but those drawings walk, run, cry, talk, laugh just like living beings. Animals too are from the same root though. The word ‘animal’ simply means ‘a living being’ (The Hindi word *jaanwar* too means ‘*jaan waala*, one who has life’). And, what do you call something that is not living? **Inanimate**²⁷³.

When Kuku Koel and his wife, Kiki, came to live in the Sundar Jungle, all the animals immediately fell in love with his beautiful voice. His songs made them forget all their stress and sorrows, they said. In a few months, the annual ‘Sundar Number One’ contest came up, and everybody decided **unanimously**²⁷⁴ to give the title to Kuku.

²⁷⁰ **Amputate:** (v) to cut off hands or legs. A person whose limbs have been amputated is called an **amputee**.

- ❑ The doctors had to **amputate** the leg of the bomb blast victim.
- ❑ In the movie *Sholay*, Gabbar Singh **amputated** the Thakur.
- ❑ Lakhs of **amputees** have been able to walk again with the Jaipur Foot, a rubber based **prosthetic** leg for people with below-knee **amputations**.

Four other words have a similar idea of disabling a person: **mayhem**, **maim**, **mutilate** and **impair**.

Mayhem: (n) the act of intentionally **inflicting** violent injury upon someone.

- ❑ The terrorists created **mayhem** in the city with a bomb explosion.
- ❑ Mayhem resulted when the protestors started **pelting** stones at the policemen who were trying to control them. The police answered with gunshots, first in the air and then at the crowd. The crowd **dispersed** quickly. One protestor was killed in the incident, three were injured and two constables were injured by the stones the crowd had **hurled** at them previously.

Maim: (v) to cripple.

Origin: derived from **mayhem**.

- ❑ Gabbar Singh **maimed** the Thakur.
- ❑ More than 20 people were killed by the car bomb that exploded in the crowded market and 53 were **maimed**.

²⁷¹ **Symbiosis:** (n) living together of two organisms of different species for mutual or one-sided benefit.

Origin: Gk *sym-*, together + *bio-*, life => ‘living together’

- ❑ The honeyguide bird and the honey **badger** both love honey. But they can’t get it by themselves. The bird can find beehives but is unable to open them. The **badger** can open beehives but is unable to find them. So, they become partners. The bird flies all over, locating the hives. Whenever it finds one, it makes codeword noises. The **badger** understands and comes there. It then tears apart the hive with its sharp claws. Thus, living together is good for both.

Badger: (n) a small carnivorous animal with short legs, long claws and thick fur, which lives in **burrows**.

Burrow: (n) a hole in the ground dug by a small animal for living.

²⁷² **Animated:** (adj) full of life, full of energy.

Origin: L *anima*, life

- ❑ People said that the poet had gone mad because these days, he cried just like that and then, all of a sudden, started laughing loudly and had **animated** conversation with himself all day long, no matter where he was.
- ❑ After coming home from a long trip, Prem’s father wanted to see him, and so, here he was, sitting before his father like a prisoner for the past half-an-hour. The little boy was getting bored, his father was no fun at all, and they had nothing to talk about! When his grandmother came to take him to his bed, Prem became **animated**, wished a cheerful ‘good night’ to his father and without even waiting for the reply, ran towards her and almost pulled her out of the room. His father noticed his sudden **animation** and felt sad to think that his son didn’t like sitting with him.

²⁷³ **Inanimate:** (adj.) lifeless

Origin: L *in-*, not + *animate*

- ❑ A log of wood is **inanimate** while a tree is **animate**.

²⁷⁴ **Unanimously:** (adv) with one mind. The adjective form of the word is **unanimous**, and the noun form is **unanimity**.

Origin: L *uni-*, one + *animus*, mind => ‘one mind’ => ‘everyone has the same thought’

- ❑ There was **unanimity** in the animals about giving the title to Kuku.
- ❑ The animals were **unanimous** about giving the title to Kuku.

When he and his wife returned after **foraging** for food the next evening, they found their eggs lying cracked on the ground. Being deeply religious cuckoos, they bore their loss with **equanimity**²⁷⁵. “It was God’s will,” they sadly consoled each other. Such accidents happened sometimes.

But, it happened again, then again and then again. They were horrified at the realization that someone was doing it on purpose! But who? And why? Whose **animosity**²⁷⁶ had they earned?

They went to Billi Maasi for counsel. She was known for her **astuteness**²⁷⁷ and ran the highly successful ‘Billi Advisory Services’ which suggested solutions to all those **woebegone**²⁷⁸ animals who were unable to solve their problems themselves. Presently, she listened to Kiki’s woes, deeply lost in thought. “I do not know who bears **animus**²⁷⁹ to me, Maasi. Why is he doing it?” Kiki broke down once more.

“You should have come to me earlier, my child,” Billi said. “Perhaps we could have saved some of those eggs. **Longanimity**²⁸⁰ solves no problems, it only delays solutions. Ok now, dry your tears. I will tell you how to save your eggs. Lay them in another bird’s nest, the colour of whose eggs matches yours. But beware, that bird should not come to know. No one is so **magnanimous**²⁸¹ that they will willingly feed another’s **progeny** in place of their own. No, you must do it by **stealth**²⁸². Spot a nest in which an egg similar to yours is already lying, **evict** that egg and lay yours in there.”

Kiki protested. “But that’s **immoral**²⁸³! I will be doing to another what someone is doing to me!”

²⁷⁵ **Equanimity:** (n) ability to stay calm even in tough situations.

Origin: L *aequus*, equal + *animus*, mind => ‘the two sides of the mind stay equal’ => ‘a balanced mind’

- During the job interview, two of the three interviewers deliberately talked rudely to the candidate and made fun of him because they wanted to see whether the candidate would lose his cool or maintain his **equanimity**.

²⁷⁶ **Animosity:** (n) hatred that expresses itself in actions.

Origin: L *animus*, spirit => ‘spirited’ => ‘active, passionate’ => ‘active hatred’

- On the surface, it seemed that Rudra really loved his elder brother Sudhir. However, inside, Rudra harboured deep **animosity** against him because he believed that his parents loved Sudhir more. Once, he hid Sudhir’s maths notebook in his father’s study two days before Sudhir’s maths test. Sudhir **ransacked** his room and then the whole house to find it, and was worried to death. He got poor marks in that test. A week after that, Rudra quietly left the notebook behind the shoe rack in Sudhir’s room. Sudhir discovered it a few days later and blamed himself for not having looked there before. Rudra kept doing such small-scale acts of hatred against Sudhir but neither Sudhir nor their parents ever realized this.

²⁷⁷ **Astute:** (adj) very clever. (n): **astuteness**

- The people were enthusiastically supporting the Lok Rajya party. Even the most **astute** members of its rival party could not figure out how to defeat the Lok Rajya party in the elections.

²⁷⁸ **Woebegone:** (adj) troubled by problems.

Origin: woe+ be+ go => ‘the one to whom all woes come’

Woe: (n) misery; something that gives lots of trouble.

- Comedy films or novels help us forget our **woes** for some time.
- An unemployed, alcoholic husband and two children who refused to study were the main **woes** of Savitri but not her only ones. She also had to struggle with **niggling** sisters-in-law and an **exacting** boss at work. Life, to sum up, was very tough for her.

²⁷⁹ **Animus:** (n) feeling of hatred or ill will.

Origin: L *animus*, mind => ‘temper’ => ‘feeling of anger or dislike’

²⁸⁰ **Longanimity:** (n) bearing all troubles calmly.

Origin: L *longus*, long + *animus* => ‘mind that can bear sufferings for long’

²⁸¹ **Magnanimous:** (adj) big-hearted.

Origin: L *magnus*, great + *animus*, mind, soul => ‘having a great soul or having a great mind.’

- The rich man gave the old age home a cheque of ₹ 20 lakh. The manager of the home thanked him profusely for his **magnanimity**.

²⁸² **Stealth:** (n) moving secretly so that no one can notice.

Origin: Eng steal => ‘to move like a thief going to steal.’

²⁸³ **Immoral:** (adj) morally wrong as per the society’s accepted moral code.

Origin: im-, not + moral.

There is another word that people sometimes confuse **immoral** with—**amoral**.

Amoral: (adj) that to which judgments of morality or **immorality** do not apply.

Billi smiled and said affectionately, “Then, I request you, young lady, to develop similar **qualms**²⁸⁴ about eating meat. After all, the insects and caterpillars that you eat too are somebody’s fathers, mothers or children, aren’t they?”

Both Kuku and Kiki still felt uncomfortable about Billi Maasi’s suggestion but they agreed to follow it.

In a few days, their chicks started **hatching**²⁸⁵ in the nests of crows, mynas and reed **warblers**²⁸⁶, to the utter shock of the host parents. But, then they thought that the chicks were God’s present to them and so they cared for them with full devotion, brought them food and kept them secure till they **fledged**²⁸⁷ and flew away.

Meanwhile, Kiki and Kuku were troubled by the ugly gossip that floated around. The animals had started using the word **cuckold**²⁸⁸ for anybody whose wife was unfaithful to him. The **insinuation**²⁸⁹ of course was that *Kiki* was unfaithful to *her* husband. Kuku had become tired of explaining to everyone that just because his wife laid her eggs in others’ nests didn’t mean that she slept with them too. But of course, the **innuendoes**²⁹⁰ kept coming ceaselessly. The **harried**²⁹¹ husband and wife then consoled themselves by saying that at least their chicks were still alive. What was a little loss of reputation in front of that **colossal**²⁹² joy?

Origin: a-, not + moral.

- ❑ For a lion, eating meat is an **amoral** act. He eats meat with the same easy conscience with which we breathe air or drink water. When he hunts a rabbit, he does not think that he is orphaning some little rabbit. What will he eat if he started thinking like that? Only humans can afford to say that eating animals is **immoral**, because they have other sources of food.

²⁸⁴ **Qualms:** (n) uneasiness that one feels because his inner voice tells him that he is not doing the right thing.

- ❑ He lied to his mother without any **qualms**.
- ❑ The man had no **qualms** in having an affair with his best friend’s wife.

²⁸⁵ **Hatch:** (v) to come out of the egg; to cause an egg to produce the young one by sitting over the egg and warming it.

²⁸⁶ **Warble:** (v) to sing like a bird.

- ❑ The flute **warbled**.
- ❑ The cuckoo **warbled** throughout the evening.
- ❑ The singer **warbled** one sad song after another.

²⁸⁷ **Fledge:** (v) to grow feathers.

Origin: related with ‘fly’ => ‘to become capable of flying.’

Two related words are: **fledgling** and **unfledged**.

Fledgling: (adj) a bird that has just grown feathers and is now learning to fly; someone who is new and inexperienced.

- ❑ Within eight months of its independence, the **fledgling** country was attacked by its powerful neighbour.

Unfledged: (adj) a bird that has not grown feathers yet and, so, is incapable of flying; someone who is totally inexperienced.

- ❑ The newspaper review of the first painting exhibition of a painter read: “This painter is clearly **unfledged**. He needs to spend a lot of time improving his skill before putting together his next exhibition.”

²⁸⁸ **Cuckold:** (n) the husband of an unfaithful wife.

Origin: Fr. *cucu*, cuckoo => ‘a male cuckoo whose wife leaves her eggs in others’ nests.’

The name *cucu* is **onomatopoeic**. This bird is named after the sound it makes. And this is so not just in French and English—the Latin name for the word is *cuculus*, the Greek name is *kokkyx* and the Sanskrit, *kokil*.

²⁸⁹ **Insinuation:** (n) something said indirectly. (v) **insinuate:** to say or do indirectly

- ❑ The gossiping aunts in the neighbourhood did not dare to say anything directly but they **insinuated** that Shukla ji of 221-B and Reema Sinha of 227-A were having an affair. Their following words could have no other meaning: “These days both Shukla ji and Reema have suddenly become very health conscious. They leave their houses within minutes of each other every morning but curiously, neither reaches the park. God knows which park they go to. Mrs Shukla was talking to me the other evening and she wondered why her husband’s weight was not reducing when he spent two hours in the park each morning. I thought within my heart, ‘Yes baby, I wonder about that too.’ Poor Mrs Shukla, she is so **ingenuous**. A man like Shukla can cheat on her very easily.”

²⁹⁰ **Innuendo:** (n) an **insinuation**.

Origin: L *in-*, towards + *nuere*, to nod => ‘to nod towards someone’ => ‘to point at someone’ => ‘indirect suggestion’

²⁹¹ **Harried:** (adj) harassed, troubled by repeated attacks. (v) **harry:** ‘to harass, trouble by repeated attacks.’

- ❑ The State Electricity Board **harried** the residents by cutting off the power supply daily for six hours, that too during the hottest hours.

²⁹² **Colossal:** (adj) huge.

Origin: Gk *kolossus*, statue => ‘The Colossus of Rhodes’ => ‘something as huge as the Colossus of Rhodes.’

One day, Billi Maasi called them. “I have found out the egg-cracker,” she told them proudly. “I had had a **hunch**²⁹³ that day itself when you had told me, but I wanted to verify before telling you. Well, he is Rang Rangeela Mor.”

“Rang Rangeela!” Kiki **gasp**²⁹⁴. “But why?”

“Envy, darling. These peacocks are **egotistical** creatures. They think too highly of themselves because of their beauty. And, the moment someone else gets praised, they become insecure. When the animals who had always been in **awe**²⁹⁵ of Rang Rangeela’s beauty, started showering **encomiums**²⁹⁶ on Kuku’s voice, he became extremely jealous. He realized that his own voice must appear to be **raspy**²⁹⁷ and **grating**²⁹⁸ in front of Kuku’s and could not bear that thought. How could *he*, the very **paragon**²⁹⁹ of beauty be lesser than someone in some department? Then, Kuku became ‘Sundar Number One’, a title that had been Rang Rangeela’s for the last seven years. He could take no more and, out of **spite**³⁰⁰, started breaking your eggs.”

Kiki only cried.

“And, my child, the sad truth is that his children will continue to feel similarly threatened by your children and will resort to similar measures as him. In order to protect your species, you will have to instruct your daughters and daughters-in-law to lay their eggs elsewhere. That really is the only way. You may think of dragging Rang Rangeela

The Colossus was a huge statue of the Greek god of Sun that was erected on the harbour of the city of Rhodes around 300 BC. It was 30 metres high, which was so huge by the standards of the ancient world, that people considered it as one of the Seven Wonders of the World.

²⁹³ **Hunch:** (n) an idea, a guess.

- The young pilot, who was killed in an air crash, seemed to have had a **hunch** about his **impending** death. Just one day before his fateful flight, he had posted a letter to his home—something he never did—in which he had written: ‘All my life I kept postponing important things, thinking there was enough time to do them later. But I’ve realized that life is **capricious**. I may die tomorrow! So, Baba, Aai, Amma, Bhai, I want you all to know that you mean a lot to me. Perhaps I do not show it, and perhaps I’ll never say it, but I live for you. Baba, Aai, I fought with you the last time I was home but I really love you. You are both...’ and so he continued. The letter reached his home five days after his death. His brother, who took the letter from the postman, **gasp**^{ed} when he recognized the handwriting.

²⁹⁴ **Gasp:** (v) to take in breath suddenly, out of shock; to speak when speaking is such an effort that one needs to catch his breath after every word; to struggle for breath.

- The dying woman **gasp**^{ed} out to the policemen the description of the man who had attacked her and what had happened before the attack.
- The asthmatic man **gasp**^{ed} for breath. He **fumbled** through all the drawers but could not find his inhaler.

Fumble: (v) to feel with hands clumsily

- The girl **fumbled** her way through the dark corridor.

²⁹⁵ **Awe:** (n) a feeling of respectful wonder at the greatness or beauty of something; (adj) **Awesome:** ‘something that inspires **awe** and makes you say “wow!”’

²⁹⁶ **Encomium:** (n) great praise; (adj) **encomiastic:** ‘showing great praise.’

- The newspapers, the television channels and the general public **lauded** the captain of the Indian cricket team in the most **encomiastic** terms after the team won the fifth consecutive international series. “The greatest captain ever,” “a modern Chanakya” and “the pride of the nation” were some of the **encomiums** they heaped on him.
- Walt Whitman’s ‘Song of Myself’ is an **encomium** to selfishness. Its first line is: ‘I celebrate myself, and sing myself.’

²⁹⁷ **Raspy:** (adj) harsh, grating.

²⁹⁸ **Grating:** (adj) irritating; so annoying that it seems as if someone is scraping your nerves or ears with sandpaper.

We also **grate** carrots to make *gajar ka halwa*. That means, we rub the carrots against a steel surface with many sharp **protruding** holes to get fine slices of them.

²⁹⁹ **Paragon:** (n) the perfect example.

³⁰⁰ **Spite:** (n) strong ill will, a strong desire to do harm to a particular person.

- When Kiran refused Rahul’s proposal, he started **maligning** her out of **spite**.

to the court, but that will be **futile**³⁰¹. You know how cases in the Sundar Jungle court drag for ages. So, you cannot **incarcerate**³⁰² him, and till he is free, he will keep harming you.”

Kuku **bemoaned** that the voice which he had always seen as a **boon**³⁰³ had proved to be a **bane**³⁰⁴ for him and his family. The cuckoos to this day lay their eggs in others’ nests.

IE *newo-* **new**

In 1898, two chemists—Sir William Ramsay and Morris Travers—were working on noble gases. Sir Ramsay had already discovered Argon about four years ago.

Now, they took a sample of air and liquefied it by extreme cooling. Then, they started heating this liquid air. The constituent gases started boiling off one by one and Ramsay and Travers kept capturing each one of them. Nitrogen was the first to go, then into Oxygen, and then, Argon. By now, 99.95% of the sample was gone. The **conscientious** chemists subjected the remaining 0.05% sample to spectroscopic analysis, lo and behold, it had **unprecedented** properties! They had discovered a new element! They named that gas **Krypton**³⁰⁵.

A few days later, they did a spectroscopic analysis on the Argon fraction of air and discovered a new gas within it as well! They named this gas Novum (from L. *novus*, new), but then thought that the name should rhyme with Argon and Krypton and so changed it to its etymological cousin Neon (from Gk. *neos*, new).

Then, they did an even more thorough analysis of the Krypton fraction, and this time, they found a foreign element in what they had assumed was a pure Krypton sample. They named this element **Xenon**³⁰⁶.

Within 42 days, the two chemists had discovered three elements! Sir Ramsay was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1904, and two years later, in 1906, Morris Travers was appointed as the founding director of the Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore.

The following words are from *newo-* :

Newo-I: New, **novel**³⁰⁷, **novice**³⁰⁸

³⁰¹ **Futile**: (adj) useless

³⁰² **Incarcerate**: (v) to put into jail.

Origin: L. *in-*, in + *carcer*, prison => ‘to put into prison’

³⁰³ **Boon**: (n) blessing; something that is prayed for.

Origin: Old Eng *ben*, prayer

³⁰⁴ **Bane**: (n) something that brings death or destruction.

☐ The school students were asked to write an essay on: Internet—A **boon** or a **bane**?

³⁰⁵ **Krypton**: **Origin**: Gk *kryptein*, to hide. Ramsay and Travers named this gas Krypton because it remained hidden and did not reveal itself until detailed analysis of air was done.

³⁰⁶ **Xenon**: **Origin**: Gk *xenos*, strange.

Another word from the root *xenos* is **xenophobia**.

Xenophobia: (n) fear or hatred of strangers. A person who shows **xenophobia** is called a **xenophobe**.

Origin: Gk *xenos*, strange + *phobia*, fear

³⁰⁷ **Novel**: (n) new. Something new is called a **novelty** or an **innovation**.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *novus*, new => ‘something new brought into being’

☐ Most Hindi films have the same old predictable plots. Movies with **novel** storylines are rare.

☐ The directors of Hindi movies prefer tried and tested formulas rather than risk **novelty**.

³⁰⁸ **Novice**: (n) a beginner, new to something.

Origin: L *novus*, new.

☐ The young parents were **novices** in bringing up children. They made many mistakes with their first child.

Tyro is another word that conveys the same idea.

Tyro: (n) a beginner.

*Newo-2: renovate*³⁰⁹, *neophyte*³¹⁰, *neologism*³¹¹

I am sure you've already figured out the Hindi words from this family: *naya*, *nava*, *naveen*.

Latin *tempus* **time, season**

Can you guess why *tempus* means not only 'time', but also 'season'? That is because, everywhere in the world, time is measured in terms of seasons.

The Latin *tempus* became *temps* in French, and then, *tens*. This is how English got its 'tenses'—past, present and future—and the word **contretemps**³¹².

The adjective **temporal**³¹³ means 'related to time'. But it also means 'unrelated to God or religion, worldly, **secular**³¹⁴ and you have to tell me why. Think!

The things that exist only for some time are 'temporary'. Two people who exist in the same time period are 'contemporaries' (L. *con-*, together).

- ❑ The reviewers of the painter's first exhibition said that he was a **tyro**. His ideas were good but he lacked the skill to execute them properly. They advised him to train himself well before organizing his second exhibition.

³⁰⁹ **Renovate:** (v) to make new again.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *novus*, new => 'renew'

- ❑ The Sharmas **renovated** their 20-year-old flat.

³¹⁰ **Neophyte:** (n) a beginner.

Origin: Gk *neos*, new+ *phyton*, plant => 'newly planted' => 'just begun to develop'

- ❑ "I'm a total **neophyte** at literature," the young man smiled at the attractive girl in the library to whom he had been just introduced by a common friend. "But I am trying to cultivate a taste. Will you please guide me how to start?"

³¹¹ **Neologism:** (n) a new word.

Origin: Gk *neos*, new + *logos*, word

- ❑ 'Saifeena' and 'Brangelina' are **neologisms** coined by the media to refer to the celebrity couples of Saif Ali Khan-Kareena Kapoor and Brad Pitt-Angelina Jolie, respectively.
- ❑ Vitamine was a **neologism** coined by the British scientist Casimir Funk. The word slowly entered common English as 'vitamin.'

³¹² **Contretemps:** (n) an unlucky accident that causes embarrassment.

Origin: Fr *contre-*, contrary + *temps*, time => 'opposite times' => 'bad times'

- ❑ Rihaana slipped out of the party to the terrace where Kabir was waiting for her. The terrace was dark. She could only see Kabir's **silhouette** in the distance. "Smart boy," she thought, "made sure that no one can see us." She went to him and without saying anything kissed him. He kissed her back. "Love in the dark, huh?" She teased him. Suddenly the arms holding her loosened. "What happened?" Rihaana asked. He lit up his cigarette lighter. By the dim light, both realized the **contretemps**. The man was not Kabir but Rihaana's boss Atul Nagpal. Atul had also arranged to meet his girlfriend on the terrace.

Silhouette: (n) outline

³¹³ **Temporal:** (adj) worldly

- ❑ Man often forgets that he will die one day and leave all his **temporal** possessions behind.
- ❑ The kingdom was ruled by a dual **monarchy** consisting of a Dharam Raja—the spiritual leader, and a Lok Raja—the **temporal** leader.
- ❑ The priest refused to allow Dalits into the temple. He did not **relent** even when the police **intervened**. When an officer told him that he had to let Dalits in because the country's law **mandated** equal rights for everyone, the priest became furious and said: "Apply your **temporal** laws to **temporal** matters. Don't you dare to **meddle** in religious matters! No **temporal** court can **decree** what should or should not be done in a temple of God."

³¹⁴ **Secular:** (adj) worldly, not religious.

- ❑ India is a **secular** state. It has no state religion.
- ❑ Diwali, Christmas, Id and Gurburab are religious festivals while Independence Day, Baisakhi, Makr Sankranti, Raksha Bandhan, etc. are **secular** festivals.

Tempo is the Italian word for time. When a **rustic**³¹⁵ comes to the city for the first time, he stares open-mouthed at the **tempo**³¹⁶ of city life. Even the **tempo** of urban music is so fast! Would he be able to survive in such mad rush? Should he have left his village after all, he wonders?

When the organizers of ‘The Conference against Communalism’ spotted former IAS officer Feroze Adenwala in the audience, they requested him to give a speech. He had resigned from the IAS in protest when, instead of **promptly quelling** the communal riots in his home state, the **bureaucrats**³¹⁷ and the state government had **temporized**,³¹⁸ as a result of which, the riots had continued **unabated** for three days, killing 2,000 people. He now gave a passionate **extempore**³¹⁹ speech exposing how the ruling party had **connived**³²⁰ in the riots.



Discussing the **temporal** words as we are, may I ask, what is time? Try defining it.

Time will be an **abstract** concept, difficult to define for most of us, if we do not divide it into some units, like seconds-hours-minutes, or parts of the day or seasons of the year. Time makes sense to us only upon such division. That is why, the Latin word *temperare*, derived from the time root *tempus*, means ‘to divide or proportion duly’

³¹⁵ **Rustic:** (n) a person from a rural area; (adj) something belonging to a rural area.

Origin: L *rus*, open land => ‘place where open lands are found’ => ‘rural area’

The word ‘rural’ too is from the root *rus*. Just like the root *tempus* gives temporal, *rus* gives the word rural.

- ❑ Examples of **rustic** songs from Hindi movies: *Saawan ka mahina, pawan kare sor; Beedi jalayi le jigar se piya; Dholi taro dhol baaje; Maare hiwada mein naache mor; Chane ke khet mein; choli ke peechhe kya hai; chalat musafir moh liya re; nain ladjai hain; uddein jab jab zulfein teri; kesariya baalam padhaaro maaro des.*

A related word is **rusticate**.

Rusticate: (v) to send someone to live in a rural area; to suspend a student from school or college.

³¹⁶ **Tempo:** (n) speed of music indicated in beats per minute.

- ❑ The remix versions of songs often have an increased **tempo**.
- ❑ “This song has the wrong **tempo**,” a movie viewer remarked. “It’s too fast for a sad song.”
- ❑ Jogging along with fast **tempo** songs is great fun. Also, the jogger automatically tries to run faster and match the **tempo** of the music.

³¹⁷ **Bureaucracy:** (n) administrative officials of the government taken as a whole.

Origin: Fr *bureau*, a desk with drawers + *-cracy*, rule => ‘those who rule by sitting on their desks’

³¹⁸ **Temporize:** (v) to say or do something not because you really mean it but because you want to gain time or delay taking the final decision.

Origin: L *tempus* => ‘to pass time’

- ❑ The girl’s side telephoned the boy’s parents to know what date they should fix for the engagement. The boy’s parents **temporized**. “Our pandit ji has gone to Haridwar. When he comes back, we will talk to him and let you know.” Actually, they were in talks with two other girls’ families and had not yet decided which ‘party’ was the best.

³¹⁹ **Extempore:** (adj) on the spot; (adv) on the spot; Verb: **extemporize**, ‘to make or do something on the spot, without preparation.’

Origin: L *ex-*, out of + *tempus*, time => ‘out of time’ => ‘not having even one moment to prepare’ => ‘on the spot’

- ❑ Feroze Adenwala had been asked on the spur of the moment by the conference’s organizers to give a speech. He had not come prepared. So, he gave an **extempore** speech. Another way of saying the same thing: he spoke **extempore**.
- ❑ The characters of every Hindi movie are shown to have the superhuman ability to **extemporize** complex songs whereas we, the poor ordinary people, have to scratch our heads for hours trying to rhyme our second line with the first.

³²⁰ **Connive:** (v) to either be an active partner in a wrongdoing or to overlook it, thereby implying that you do not mind it.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *nictare*, blink => ‘to close one’s eyes (while something wrong happens)’

- ❑ In India, the police and the politicians often **connive** with the criminals.

The words formed from *temperare* include **temper**³²¹, **temperate**³²², **temperance**³²³ and **temperament**³²⁴.



The word **tempest**³²⁵ originally meant a season, then it came to mean ‘bad season’, and by the time Shakespeare wrote his play ‘The Tempest’, it was used for the storms that make a season bad. The main **protagonist** of this 1610 play works up a **tempest** with his magic spells, so that his brother, who had betrayed him many years ago, is shipwrecked.



I had asked you why the word **temporal** also meant ‘not related to God.’ The answer is that the concept of time exists only for us **mortals**. God is said to be *akaal* or *kaal-rahit*, that is, **eternal**, beyond time.

Greek *chronos* time

I was in class nine that year. My summer holidays were going on and on and on and I was **jaded**³²⁶ with too much free time. Mama noticed my **ennui**. “Why don’t you create a family **chronicle**³²⁷?” she suggested. I jumped up at the idea. Wow! Yes, I would do that! It sounded so cool to be called ‘The Family **Chronicler**’!

³²¹ **Temper:** (v) to moderate.

Origin: L *temperare*, to proportion duly => ‘to remove the excess’ => ‘to moderate’

- Regret for what we did will be **tempered** by time. It is regret for what we didn’t do that will keep torturing us.

³²² **Temperate:** (adj) moderate

Origin: L *temperare*, to moderate

- The **Temperate Zone** is that zone of the earth which is neither too hot (**torrid**) nor too cold (**frigid**).
- The Speaker of the Lok Sabha asked the angry Member of Parliament to be **temperate** in his speech. “Such angry, loud-mouthed outbursts may work in the street quarrels of a village but they ill-**behoove** a member of the Indian Parliament.”

The opposite of **temperate** is **intemperate**.

- A drunkard is a man who drinks alcohol **intemperately**.
- Intemperate** eating of one’s favorite foods will make one fat.

³²³ **Temperance:** (n) moderation, self-control. The lack of self-control is called **intemperance**.

Origin: L *temperare*, to moderate

- Ram and Shyam were twins who got separated soon after birth. Ram was adopted by a rich childless couple and grew up into a spoilt, **intemperate** young man. He gambled and drank away all the wealth of his **foster** father. Shyam was raised by a poor labourer and amassed great wealth by following the three good habits of ‘economy, **temperance** and industry’ which his **foster** father had taught him.

Industry: (n) dedicated hard work; (adj) **industrious**.

- Shyam, who worked day and night to achieve success, was **industrious**.

³²⁴ **Temperament:** (n) the nature of a person.

Origin: L *temperare*, to proportion duly => ‘to make a mixture of different behavioural tendencies deciding what amount of anger/calmness, cheerfulness/gloominess, optimism/pessimism, enthusiasm/unexcitability etc. should be put in for a particular person’ => ‘the unique mixture of these tendencies that defines a particular person’.

- In the movie ‘*Seeta aur Geeta*’, the **eponymous** twins looked alike but were remarkably different in **temperament**. While Seeta became easily afraid and followed everybody’s orders, Geeta was self-confident and took no nonsense from anyone.

³²⁵ **Tempest:** (n) storm

- The room was very still. Nobody talked to anybody. Nobody looked up. It seemed like the quiet before a **tempest**.
- “Love is an ever-fixed mark that looks on **tempests** and is never shaken.” Shakespeare
- A relationship that is frequently under storms is a **tempestuous** relationship

³²⁶ **Jaded:** (adj) tired due to overwork or overindulgence.

- The tennis player was **jaded** after playing three international tournaments in quick succession.
- Shifa was crazy about ice cream. But one summer, she ate so much ice cream that she became **jaded**. Now, even the sight of ice cream made her want to vomit.

³²⁷ **Chronicle:** (v) to make a written record of a time period; (n) the written record of a time period

I immediately started interviewing my family members about their life histories. They were all amused by the idea but they cooperated. As I listened to them, I was surprised that I had known so little about my loved ones!

Each evening, I would **consolidate**³²⁸ all the quick notes that I had **jotted**³²⁹ down during my interviews into a register. But I soon encountered a problem. My interviewees' memory made **temporal** jumps as they **recounted** their stories and because I wrote exactly as they spoke, my notes started seeming **haphazard**³³⁰. For example, while Biji (my grandmother) was telling me about my papa's boyhood, she suddenly remembered an **anecdote**³³¹ about my brother's childhood and started telling me that, and then, she told me that her elder brother too had done something similar. After finishing that tale, she came back to my papa's boyhood only to **digress** again soon after. I realized that I would have to rewrite my notes in a **chronological**³³² order when I was finished with the interviews, to make a **coherent**³³³ story. I felt that I was no longer creating a mere **roster**³³⁴ of dates and events but writing a novel based on my family! This inspired me to **delve**³³⁵ deeper into my family's history.

Origin: Gk *chronos*, time => 'story of a particular time'

- ❑ Akbar's court historian, Abul Fazal, **chronicled** his **reign** in the books *Akbarnama* and *Ain-i-akbari*.
- ❑ Abul Fazal's books *Akbarnama* and *Ain-i-Akbari* are **chronicles** of Akbar's **reign**.

³²⁸ **Consolidate:** (v) merge into a whole; make solid and strong.

Origin: L *com-* + *solidus*, solid => 'to make solid.'

- ❑ The hero **consolidated** his position as Number 1 in Bollywood by giving four successive blockbusters in one year.

³²⁹ **Jot:** (v) to write a quick note; (n) the least bit.

Origin: Gk *iota*, the ninth and the smallest letter of the Greek alphabet (just like i is the smallest letter in the English alphabet) => very small amount

- ❑ I do not care a **jot** about what anyone says.

³³⁰ **Haphazard:** (adj) random, not in any order.

Origin: Eng *hap*, chance + *hazard*, risk => 'a matter of chance, involving a risk' => 'random'

³³¹ **Anecdote:** (n) a short story of something interesting that happened

³³² **Chronological:** (adj) ordered according to the time of occurrence.

Origin: Gk *chronos* + *-ology*, study => 'studying the time of occurrence of events' => 'arranging events according to their time of occurrence.'

³³³ **Coherent:** (adj) logically connected; sticking together. Opposite: **incoherent**.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *haerere*, to cling => 'the things that cling together'

Cohere: (v) to stick together; (n) **cohesion**.

- ❑ The various reasons that he gave for not accepting the job did not **cohere**. This means that those reasons did not stick together. They were not logically connected.
- ❑ Another way of saying the same thing: His explanation for not accepting the job was **incoherent**.
- ❑ Hate speeches made by political leaders against people of other religions damages the **cohesion** among the different religions of India.

The other word from the root *haerere* is '**adhere**.'

Adhere: (v) to cling to; (n) **adhesion**

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *haerere*.

- ❑ The university **adhered** to its admission policy and refused to give in to the students' demands to change it.
- ❑ Something that clings to another is called an **adhesive**. Fevicol is an **adhesive**. An **adhesive** bandage is that which sticks to the body.

³³⁴ **Roster:** (n) list

- ❑ Many countries demanded that Cricket be included to the **roster** of Olympic sports.

³³⁵ **Delve:** (v) to go deep into.

One day, Biji showed me Baba ji's (my grandfather's) documents. Among them were old **sepia**³³⁶ photographs of Baba ji and Biji. I **raved**³³⁷ about the **pulchritude**³³⁸ of the young Biji till she laughingly told me to shut up and drew my attention instead to a bundle of folded yellow pages wrapped in transparent polythene. I took one out and opened it. It was an Urdu letter.

"Noora's letters," she smiled.

Noor Mohammad was Baba ji's **crony**³³⁹. They had grown up together in **abutting**³⁴⁰ houses in a small village in Lailpur district of Punjab. Then, when Baba ji and Noora were 22, came 1947. India got divided, Lailpur fell into Pakistan and my paternal family had to relocate to the Eastern (the Indian) Punjab. But Baba ji never lost touch with Noor Mohammad.

I already knew this much. Now, Biji told me more.

"Noora and your Baba ji were born within a month of each other," Biji said. "Your Baba ji used to tell me that they were so alike, in looks and habits, that strangers often mistook them for twins! Then, after the Partition, the very day on which your Baba ji wrote him a letter saying that our wedding had been fixed, he received Noora's letter giving him the same news!"

"What a coincidence!" I exclaimed.

Biji laughed. "There were more. When we sent him the news of your papa's birth, guess what came soon after? The news of *his* son's birth! Then, a few years later, your *chacha ji* (paternal uncle) arrived within a month of Noora's younger son. These coincidences really convinced the two **cronies** that their lives were **synchronized**³⁴¹, that whatever happened to one would simultaneously happen to the other too."

³³⁶ **Sepia:** (n) brown colour.

³³⁷ **Rave:** (v) to talk with wild enthusiasm; to talk wildly like a mad man.

❑ Everybody who watched the movie '*Avatar*' **raved** about it. It got compliments like "the most awesome movie ever," "the movie that will redefine filmmaking," "breathtaking 3-D effects", etc.

❑ Deepu's father, mother and elder brother scolded him when he came home after midnight, that too drunk. **Infuriated** by their criticism, Deepu did not realize what he went on saying. "You people have destroyed my life," he **raved**. "Drinking my blood all day, not letting me do a single thing I want, you call this home? It's a jail. A jail, do you hear me? You all have made my life living hell. Bah! You call this life? It's better that I go somewhere and drown myself. Yeah, that is what I should do. Right. The best solution to all your problems and mine. Let's just end this daily drama forever. You too will live happily after becoming free of a pest like me, won't you? A pest is what I am, right? Am I not mother dear? And you, my dear elder brother, Lord Ram personified, you too will be relieved, won't you? You will not have to support your **wastrel**, good-for-nothing brother any more...you will not be embarrassed by this useless brother of yours who could not even get one job...yes, everyone will be happy that way. I know you will be. I should make everyone happy, shouldn't I? I can do at least that for all of you, my loved ones. Haha, my LOVED ONES! What a..."

"Shut up!" Deepu's father interrupted. "Haven't you **ranted** enough already? Go to your room and sleep. We will talk when you are in your senses. Go!"

Wastrel: (n) a person who wastes his time roaming uselessly and doing nothing—a loafer, a person who wastes money.

Rant: (v) to talk wildly like a mad man.

³³⁸ **Pulchritude:** (n) physical beauty.

❑ In the song '*Kya khoob lagti ho, badi sundar dikhti ho,*' the hero praises the heroine's **pulchritude**.

³³⁹ **Crony:** (n) a long time friend.

Origin: Gk *chronos*, time

❑ Before elections, politicians promise to serve the people. After getting elected, they serve their relatives and **cronies**.

³⁴⁰ **Abut:** (v) to share a border with.

❑ Two houses that **abut** each other share a wall. A house that **abuts** on a road shares a border with the road, that is, the boundary wall of that house lies on the road.

³⁴¹ **Synchronize:** (v) to cause to happen at the same time.

Origin: Gk *syn-*, together + *chronos*, time => 'to time together.'

Two things that occur at the same time always are said to be **synchronous** (adj form) or in **synchronization** (noun form).

❑ The movement of hands and legs of all the soldiers in the march past was perfectly **synchronous**.

Wow! I looked at the letter **wistfully**³⁴². “Baba ji,” I thought, “I did not even know all this!” The sight of Urdu (which he had taught me four summers ago), the letters of Noora, the story Biji was telling—they all made me feel a **proximity**³⁴³ to Baba ji. I felt that he was still with me, that he was sitting with us right then. I read the letter. It was full of **nostalgia**³⁴⁴ for the past, for the days of Noora’s and my Baba ji’s boyhood, for the **propinquity**³⁴⁵ there had been between their homes and their families and their selves. Noora had written that among the few regrets of his life was not being able to meet Baba ji again. The only **contemporary** thing he had written about was the frustration he felt at his **chronic**³⁴⁶ diabetes, which over the years had wrecked his eyes, his heart, his nerves, his kidneys... Then, he had joked about seeing who would hold on longer—he or my Baba ji.

At the end of the letter was the date: 10th August, 1998. I **started**³⁴⁷. Baba ji had died in December 1997! I showed the **anachronism**³⁴⁸ to Biji.

³⁴² **Wistful:** (adj) sadly longing for something, ‘sadly’ because one is aware that what one is wishing for is difficult to have.

- ❑ Twenty nine-year-old Rhea was flipping channels on the TV when she caught a glimpse of ‘The Adventures of Sherlock Holmes.’ She couldn’t believe her eyes. Yes, it was indeed the Granada series that she used to love so much in her childhood! “Oh wow!” She laughed, no, she was **delirious** with joy. “Jeremy Brett!” There he was in front of her again—her first love! “Oh wow!” She just couldn’t believe her good luck. She watched the whole episode without flapping her eyelids once. When it ended, she missed her childhood. “If only those days could come back,” she thought **wistfully**. “Those evenings, that funny black and white TV, how we brothers and sisters used to lie down on the carpet to watch Jeremy, with Papa sitting on the sofa behind us, explaining what we didn’t understand... oh Papa, how I miss you! How I miss being that innocent little girl!” Feeling terribly **nostalgic**, Rhea picked up her phone and called home.

³⁴³ **Proximity:** (n) nearness

Origin: L *proximates*, near.

- ❑ A person’s acceptance of behaviour that **flouts** social rules is inversely proportional to his **proximity** to the **flouter**. If he is told that so-and-so in his organization is a drug-addict, he will probably simply shrug off the news saying: “So what? Half the world is into drugs these days. It’s no big deal.” If his best friend becomes a drug addict, he will be disturbed and will try to instill good sense into him. But if his wife gets addicted, he will be worried to death—for her future and his—and will not be able to breathe easily till he has admitted her to a de-addiction centre and she is cured completely.

The word ‘**approximate**’ too is from the same root. It means ‘nearby, close.’

- ❑ **Approximate** chairs are those that lie close to each other.
- ❑ When someone says that he bought his house for ₹ 1 crore **approximately**, he is saying that he paid ‘close to ₹ 1 crore’ for it. The exact figure that he paid was ₹ 99, 45,000.

³⁴⁴ **Nostalgia:** (n) a sentimental longing for a place, time or people left behind.

Origin: Gk *nostos*, a return home + *algos*, pain => ‘feeling pain to return home’ => ‘homesickness’

A pain killer is called an **analgesic**.

Origin: Gk *an-*, no + *algos*, pain => ‘condition of no pain’

³⁴⁵ **Propinquity:** (n) nearness

Origin: L *prope*, near. The words approach and reproach too are from the same root.

- ❑ **Propinquity** is what keeps the neighbourhood *kiryana* shop and vegetable vendors in business even in the age of **modish** retail stores. The malls and the retail stores may be big and air-conditioned and glamorous but the *kiryana* shop is much closer to home and so, easier to go to.

³⁴⁶ **Chronic:** (adj) long-lasting

Origin: Gk *chronos*.

- ❑ Diseases that come, trouble you for some time and go are called **acute** diseases. But the diseases that come to stay are called **chronic** diseases. For example, diabetes, heart diseases, etc.
- ❑ A **chronic** smoker is one who has had the smoking habit for a long, long time.

³⁴⁷ **Start:** (v) to make a little movement of the body suddenly out of shock at what has just seen or heard

³⁴⁸ **Anachronism:** (n) something that is shown to exist in a time period to which it actually does not belong.

Origin: Gk *ana-*, against + *chronos* => ‘against the correct time period’ => ‘referring to wrong time period’

- ❑ **Anachronisms** are usually found in historical novels or movies because the writer or the director got his facts wrong or did not pay adequate attention to detail. For example, in the movie *Titanic*, Jack (the hero, played by Leonardo di Caprio) says that he went fishing on Lake Wissota in Wisconsin. This is an **anachronism** because Lake Wissota, a man-made lake, was created five years after the Titanic sank and Jack died.

“Oh this...I had written a letter to Noora telling him about your Baba ji’s death. His grandson read that letter first. Noora’s eyes had become incapable, so the boy used to read out his letters to him, and write down the replies Noora dictated. I got a letter from Noora’s elder son, in which he grieved over your Baba ji’s death and requested me to keep sending the letters on your Baba ji’s behalf. He said that Noora would lose his will to live if he came to know of your Baba ji’s death. He was fighting his disease only because he believed that, since your Baba ji was still alive, his time had not come yet.”

“So Bijji, you continued writing the letters?”

“Yes.”

“Is he still alive?”

“No. He died in December 1998. In this final milestone of their lives, the years got mismatched a bit, but the two friends did keep the months in tune.”

Latin *annus* **year**

The ‘Annual’ Function of a school is a yearly affair, as is an ‘anniversary’, of birth or death or marriage. The other *annus* words are:

*Annus-1: Biennial*³⁴⁹, *millennium*³⁵⁰, *quinquennium*³⁵¹, *vicennial*³⁵²

³⁴⁹ **Biennial:** (adj) happening after every two years, lasting two years.

Origin: L *bi-*, two + *annus*

- ❑ A **biennial** event and a **biennial** survey are done once every two years. But **biennial** plants are those that last two years. Carrot is a **biennial** plant.

Biennial is often confused with **biannual**. **Biannual** events are those that happen two times in one year. It has the same etymology as **biennial**.

³⁵⁰ **Millennium:** (n) a period of 1,000 years.

Origin: L *mille*, thousand + *annus*

- ❑ Many Christians believe that the world will end one day, and that before that end, Jesus Christ will rule the earth for a 1,000 years. This will be a period of happiness and justice for all. They call this period ‘the **millennium**.’

From this specific Christian context, the word ‘**millennium**’ has generalized to mean any hoped-for future period in which all will be happy and no one will suffer any pain or injustice.

³⁵¹ **Quinquennium:** (n) a five-year period.

Origin: L *quinque-*, five + *annus*.

The Latin *quinque* is from the IE root *penqwe*, which means ‘five’. The other derivatives of *penqwe* are the Sanskrit *pancha* and the Greek *penite*.

³⁵² **Vicennial:** (adj) happening after every 20 years, lasting 20 years.

Origin: L *viceni*, twenty each. This Latin word is a cousin of the Hindi *bees*, twenty.

A related word is **vicenary**. It means ‘related with twenty.’

*Annus-2: annals*³⁵³, *annuity*³⁵⁴, *perennial*³⁵⁵, *superannuate*³⁵⁶

Latin mutare to change

The words from this very easy root are:

*Mutare-1: mutate*³⁵⁷, *transmute*³⁵⁸, *commute*³⁵⁹

*Mutare-2: permutation*³⁶⁰, *mutual*³⁶¹

- ³⁵³ **Annals:** (n) a record of the years, history. Just like the words ‘maths’, ‘trousers’ and ‘spectacles’, ‘**annals**’ too looks plural but is actually singular.
Origin: L *annalis*, yearly
- ❑ In the **annals** of Test cricket, the match between West Indies and Australia in December 1960 is recorded as the only one ever in which all 40 wickets fell with the scores exactly equal.
 - ❑ The song ‘*Pyaar hua iqraar hua*’ is counted amongst the finest in the **annals** of Hindi film songs.
- ³⁵⁴ **Annuity:** (n) a yearly payment that is made to a person for a definite number of years or for his whole life, usually because he has made an investment that entitles him to such yearly payments. He can also arrange to get this money at intervals other than one year, for example, every three months.
Origin: L *annus* => ‘yearly payment.’
- ³⁵⁵ **Perennial:** (adj) lasting throughout the year; staying forever.
Origin: L *per-*, through + *annus* => ‘lasting throughout the year’ => ‘(of plants) evergreen’ => staying forever
- ❑ **Perennial** rivers are those that keep flowing all through the year; they do not dry up in the summers.
 - ❑ **Perennial** plants are those that have a lifespan of more than three years.
- ³⁵⁶ **Superannuate:** (v) to retire because of old age.
Origin: L *super annum* => ‘above a year in age (used for cattle)’ => ‘too old to work’
- ❑ The lecturer was due to **superannuate** on March 31, 2014. She, however, took voluntary retirement in 2009.
 - ❑ When Shesh Lal **superannuated** five years ago, he **diverted** a chunk of his retirement benefits to a fixed deposit so that he had enough money for his daughter’s wedding, which was likely to happen around five years later.
- ³⁵⁷ **Mutate:** (v) to change.
Origin: L *mutare*
- ❑ An ordinary teenager Peter Parker became the Spiderman due to a genetic **mutation**. This **mutation** was brought about by the bite of a radioactive spider and **endowed** him with **preternatural** strength and many spider-like qualities like creating webs, clinging to walls and super alertness to danger.
- ³⁵⁸ **Transmute:** (v) transform
Origin: L *trans-*, across + *mutare* => ‘to change across forms’ => ‘to change from one form to another’
- ❑ Everything touched by King Midas **transmuted** into gold.
 - ❑ *The Metamorphosis* is a story by Franz Kafka in which the central character goes to sleep one night and finds the next morning that he has **transmuted** into a huge insect!
- ³⁵⁹ **Commute:** (v) to travel, to change.
Origin: L *com-* + *utare* => ‘to change (condition, position etc.)’ => ‘to travel (because when you move from one place to another)’
- ❑ How do you **commute** to your college?
 - ❑ The Delhi Metro is a **boon** for the **commuters** who earlier had to travel in overcrowded buses or pocket-emptying autorickshaws and had to sweat in traffic jams for hours.
 - ❑ Dostoevsky, the Russian writer, was getting ready to die. The firing squad of the Russian army was getting ready to shoot him. Just then, he was informed that his death sentence had been **commuted** to four years of hard labour in a prison of Siberia.
- ³⁶⁰ **Permutation:** (n) a change in the order of constituent elements; the arrangement resulting from such change.
Origin: L *per-*, thorough + *mutare* => ‘to change thoroughly’
- ❑ The following six **permutations** are possible for a set of three alphabets- (e, h, t): eht, eth, hte, het, the, teh
- ³⁶¹ **Mutual:** (adj) reciprocal; common.
Origin: L *mutare* => ‘involving exchange’ => ‘reciprocal’ => ‘both parties have it’ => ‘shared, common’
- ❑ It was very difficult, Ravi was very nervous but finally he said it—he told Mita that he loved her. She smiled and said, “So, the feeling is **mutual**. I thought it was just me.” Now that was news for Ravi. “You love me too? Since when?” He had never guessed that! “Since we first met,” Mita replied with the same **placid** smile.
 - ❑ Charles Dickens wrote a novel titled *Our Mutual Friend*. This phrase is used for a shared friend of two people.

IE sen- old

The Sanskrit word *sanaatan*, which means ‘ancient, time-honoured, **eternal**’, is from this root.

One who is ‘senior’ to you is older and more experienced than you, and the ‘senior citizens’ are the old people of a country. The root of senior is the Latin word *senex*, meaning ‘old.’

Spanish and Italian are Romance languages. This means that they are derived from the ancient Roman tongue, Latin. Hence, they **abound** in words derived from Latin roots. Of course, English too **abounds** in such words, but it is based on German. The languages derived from ancient German are called the Teutonic languages, and English is one of them.

The Spaniards politely address all men as *Senor*. It is derived from ‘senior’ and is an equivalent of ‘Sir’ or ‘Mr’ Many people go “Aha!” upon hearing *Senor* and break into this dialogue in proper Shahrukh style:

‘*Bade bade shehron mein chhoti chhoti baatein hoti rehti hain, s-s-s-s-senorita*’

The word *Senorita*, that Raj insists upon using for Simran in the movie *Dilwale Dulhania Le Jayenge*, is the female **counterpart** of *Senor*. It is used for an unmarried girl. A married woman is addressed as *Senora*.

The Italian words of address too are derived from the root *sen-*. The Italians use *Signor* for a man, *Signorina* for an unmarried woman and *Signora* for a married one.

The other words **begotten** by *sen-* are:

*Senex is old-1: Senectitude*³⁶², *senescence*³⁶³, *senile*³⁶⁴

*Senex is old-2: senate*³⁶⁵, *sire*³⁶⁶, *surly*³⁶⁷

³⁶² **Senectitude:** (n) old age

Origin: L *senex*, old => ‘the state of being old’

❑ **Senectitude** is not synonymous with ill-health.

³⁶³ **Senescence:** (n) old age

Origin: L *senex*, old => ‘the state of being old’

❑ In India, we think that a **senescent** person should **renounce** all pleasures and take *sanyaas*. If an old man or woman tries to look good or enjoys his life, people are quick to **jeer** by saying ‘*boodhi ghodi laal lagaam.*’

Jeer: (v) make fun of.

❑ Raju’s classmates **jeered** him when he got 0/20 in the Maths test. “Raju Hero...got a Zero!” “Raju Hero...got a Zero!” they sang all day whenever he was nearby.

❑ A scene from a Hindi movie: “You will fight me?” The 300-kg Sumo wrestler **jeered** the **lanky** hero. “Sorry. I don’t fight with mosquitoes.”

We could also have used the words ‘**mocked**’ or ‘**derided**’ in place of ‘jeered’ in these sentences. **Jeer**, **mock** and **deride** mean the same—to make fun of.

³⁶⁴ **Senile:** (adj) related with old age, displaying mental decline in old age.

Origin: L *senex*

❑ Week after week, builders and property dealers came to the old man with attractive offers for the sale of his huge bungalow. But he swept them away saying he needed the backyard for his beloved dog to walk, run and play ball in. ‘The old uncle has gone **senile**’ they would **jeer** and walk away.

³⁶⁵ **Senate:** (n) an assembly of the senior-most decisionmakers of a government, whether they are elected or nominated. For example, the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha at the central level and the Vidhan Sabha at the state level in India.

Origin: L *senex* => ‘a council of elders’

³⁶⁶ **Sire:** (n) father; (v) to father.

Origin: L *senex* => senior => sire

❑ The French word for Mister is *Monsieur*. *Monsieur* developed from ‘*mon sieur*’ which means ‘my father, my lord’ and is, therefore, a very respectful way of addressing a male of high social standing.

❑ “My son married four years ago but he is yet to **sire** an heir. Please do something *baba*,” Kalawanti humbly prayed to the *baba* who had come to her village three days ago. He was said to be a very powerful *baba*.

❑ The word ‘sire’ comes from the same root that **sired** ‘senior.’

³⁶⁷ **Surly:** (adj) rude, bad-tempered.

Greek *geras* **old age**

This root is found in the words **progeria**³⁶⁸, **geriatrics**³⁶⁹ and **gerontocracy**³⁷⁰.

IE *nek-* **death**

The Hindi words *naash* and *nasht* are from this root. *Naash* means death or destruction. *Nasht* means completely destroyed.

Similarly, the Latin *nex* means death. That is why a disease or a virus that does *poora naash* is called **pernicious**³⁷¹. And, a battle in which the two parties kill each other off is called *antar-naashak* in Hindi and **internecine**³⁷² in English.

The Greek word *nekros* means ‘corpse’ and is the source of **necrosis**³⁷³ and **necromancy**³⁷⁴.

Origin: From ‘sir’. ‘Sirly’ meant ‘lordly’. ‘Surly’ was just an alternate spelling of ‘sirly’. The meaning development occurred as following: ‘Lordly’ => ‘arrogant’ => ‘rude’ => ‘bad-tempered.’

- ❑ The husband came home from the office. The wife gave him a glass of water. “What’s the matter sweetheart?” She asked. “You look tired today.” “What if I am?” was his **surly** reply. She still smiled and said, “You go and get fresh. And see what I prepare for you. Your tiredness will...” “There’s no need,” her husband cut her short. “You just go on enjoying your life. I’ll manage myself.” She did not understand his sudden **surliness**. He had been quite cheerful in the morning; what had happened during the day?

³⁶⁸ **Progeria:** (n) a rare **congenital** disease in which the body ages abnormally fast.

Origin: Gk *pro-*, before + *geras*, old => ‘becoming old before the normal age’ => ‘becoming prematurely old’

- ❑ Amitabh Bachchan’s character in the movie ‘Paa’ had **progeria**. By the time the child was 12 years old, his organs and skin were like those of a 70-year-old.

³⁶⁹ **Geriatrics:** (n) branch of medicine dealing with the care and the diseases of the old people.

Origin: Gk *geras*, old age

- ❑ A **geriatric** physician is a doctor of the elderly.

³⁷⁰ **Gerontocracy:** (n) rule by old people.

Origin: Gk *geras* + *-cracy*, rule.

- ❑ India can be called a **gerontocracy**. Most of the members of its central and state legislatures are old. The average age of Indian Prime Ministers since 1947 is 65.2 years. The average age of Chief Ministers is 67.

³⁷¹ **Internecine:** (adj) mutually destructive.

Origin: L *inter-*, mutual + *nex*, death

- ❑ “Do not go,” the man’s wife **implored**. ‘Do not go,’ his mother **implored**. “You will kill them and they will kill you. What is there to gain out of this **internecine** battle? I’ve already lost your father to this foolishness. Now, I cannot lose you. You are my only son. At least, for the sake of your responsibilities to this house, to your wife, to your mother, do not go.” The man looked at his mother with **contempt**. “You may be able to digest your family’s dishonour. I cannot. I will teach them a lesson; will end this feud once and for all. Get out of my way.” He pushed the two pleading women aside and went to fight with his enemies. The enmity of his family with that of the *thakur*’s had gobbled up many generations of each but still showed no sign of **abating**. His mother’s fears proved true. The fight was **internecine**. He was shot dead soon after he killed two of his ‘enemies’.

³⁷² **Pernicious:** (adj) that which brings death or destruction.

Origin: L *per-*, thorough + *nex*, death => ‘thoroughly deadly’

- ❑ Smoking is a **pernicious** habit.
- ❑ “Ban the TV!” “Ban the Fashion Shows!” “Ban the pubs!” “Ban the music videos!” “Ban Valentine’s Day!” “Ban skirts!” “Ban this!” “Ban that!” Such **fiery** calls are made every few days by unemployed, semi-literate **hooligans**. Their stated reason is the **pernicious** effect of westernization on the Indian culture. The actual reason usually is hunger for publicity.

Fiery: (adj) full of fire.

Hooligan: (n) one who shows violent, lawless behaviour.

³⁷³ **Necrosis:** (n) death of cells or tissue.

Origin: Gk *nekros*, dead body

³⁷⁴ **Necromancy:** (n) calling the spirits of the dead to know the future from them or to command them to do something.

Origin: Gk *nekros* + *-mancy*. See ‘**mantic**’.

Both Indian and Greek mythologies say that the drink of gods **conferred**³⁷⁵ immortality upon anybody who drank it. We call it *amrit*. The Greeks called it ‘nectar’. The word nectar is formed by combining the roots *nek-* and *ter-*. The IE root *ter-* means ‘to cross over, overcome’. So, the nectar **ostensibly** helped people overcome death.

Note: The Latin prefix *trans-* is derived from *ter-*. *Ter-* is also found in the Sanskrit words *taaran*, ‘a crossing over, passing’, *tairaaki* and *avataar* (crossing over from heaven to earth).



A Latin proverb very wisely says: *Quae nocent docent*. That which hurts, teaches.

The Latin word *nox* means ‘harm, injury.’ The most common word from *nox* is ‘innocent’, ‘incapable of hurting, harmless.’ The word **innocuous**³⁷⁶ too has a parallel etymology and meaning. What would be the opposite of innocent and innocuous? Something that does cause harm. Such a thing is said to be **noxious**³⁷⁷. The other words from *nox* are **obnoxious**³⁷⁸ and **nocebo**³⁷⁹.

IE *mer-* to die

Did you immediately exclaim that the **vernacular**³⁸⁰ word *marna* is from this root? Now, enjoy some more.

³⁷⁵ **Confer:** (v) to bestow a gift, etc., upon; to discuss; (n) conference.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *ferre*, to carry => ‘to bring together’

³⁷⁶ **Innocuous:** (adj) harmless

Origin: L *in-*, not + *nocere*, to harm => ‘that which can do no harm’

- ❑ Most computer viruses have such **innocuous** subject lines—‘Hello’, ‘Wassup?’, ‘Found this on the Net, thought you might like it’, ‘I love You’, ‘how are you’, ‘check it out’, ‘thought this was interesting’—that most people end up opening the mails and get infected.
- ❑ The terrorists often use **innocuous** words to deflect potential **eavesdroppers**. They may use “baby food” for bombs, “baby” for their target, “mother” for their operations’ chief, etc.

Eavesdropper: (n) one who listens to others’ conversations secretly.

Origin: Eave + drip => ‘the one who stands under the eave to listen to the conversation that is going on inside the house or room.’ Eave is that part of a sloping roof that hangs down the wall.

Innocuous is used far more commonly than its opposite—**nocuous**

³⁷⁷ **Noxious:** (adj) harmful

Origin: L *nox*, harm.

- ❑ This is a **noxious** plant which **blights** the soil it grows in.
- ❑ Burning plastic releases **noxious** gases.
- ❑ The soldiers were ordered not to eat the plant because it was **noxious**. But they were dying anyway from hunger. They wandered about the fields seeking it and dug it out and ate it.

³⁷⁸ **Obnoxious:** (adj) unbearably offensive.

Origin: L *ob-* + *nox*, harm => ‘harmed’ => ‘damaged’ => ‘deserving criticism’ => ‘behavior that deserves to be criticized’

- ❑ The way the lower castes are treated in India is really **obnoxious**.
- ❑ Jyoti was fuming after her America-returned cousin went away. “What does he think he is? The king of the world? And what are we? **Paupers**? The way he was **bragging** about his cars and his dollars and his gold chains....it was just so....so **obnoxious!**”
- ❑ “The Ransom of Red Chief” is a story by O. Henry in which two men kidnap a boy of 10. The boy turns out to be so spoilt and **obnoxious** that the **harried** men ultimately pay the boy’s father \$250 to take him back.

³⁷⁹ **Nocebo:** (n) a substance which is not actually harmful but which will cause a bad effect on a person’s body because he believes very strongly that it will harm him.

Origin: L *nocebo*, I am harmful. Compare, **placebo**

³⁸⁰ **Vernacular:** (adj) using the everyday language spoken by the people of an area.

- ❑ The song ‘Mile sur mera tumhara’ is a beautiful **amalgamation** of the **vernacular** languages of different parts of India.
- ❑ We have a **penchant** for mixing **vernacular** words and expressions with English, as in ‘*yeh dil maange more*’, ‘be cool *yaar*’, ‘hungry *kya?*’, ‘*chakaachak* chick’, ‘*masaala* movie’, ‘*pukka* promise’, ‘fruit-*wala*’ etc. We now even have words for this mixed language—Hinglish (Hindi+English), Penglish (Punjabi+English), Tinglish (Tamil+English) etc.

Look at the word *mard*. Seen here under this root, did a light bulb suddenly go on? *Mard* is a Persian word and it means ‘the one who will die one day, a mortal.’

The Persians called their local species of tiger—the Caspian Tiger—*mardamkhor*, meaning ‘man-eater.’ The word entered Greek as *martikhora* and slowly became *mantikhora*. Next heard, it was *mantichora* in Latin and finally, it arrived in English as *manticore*. Also see what happened to the tiger during this journey. The English people think that a *manticore* is a beast with the head of a man, the body of a lion and the tail of a serpent!

The Latin word *mordere* has also probably developed from the image of a *mardamkhor* killing and eating its prey. It means ‘to bite, to grind down.’ The words that have developed from *mordere* are:

Morsel³⁸¹, **mordant**³⁸², **remorse**³⁸³

The Latin for death is *mortis* and *morire* means ‘to die.’ The words they produced are:

Mer-1: Murder, mortal, immortal, **mortify**³⁸⁴

Mer-2: **moribund**³⁸⁵, mortuary, **mortician**³⁸⁶

³⁸¹ **Morsel**: (n) bite

- ❑ When the mother-in-law got up to give her son-in-law a second serving of the dessert, he put his hand over his plate. “No, no, please mama! My stomach doesn’t have the space for another **morsel**.”

³⁸² **Mordant**: (adj) biting, extremely sharp.

- ❑ A book which has been praised even by the most **mordant** critics must be very good, indeed.

³⁸³ **Remorse**: (n) painful guilt about past mistakes.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *mordere*, to bite => ‘when a person’s conscience bites back at him and does not let him live in peace’

- ❑ Mr Gyandhari was not angry that his son made mistakes. What he found **infuriating**—and insulting—was his utter lack of **remorse**.
- ❑ The Hindi saying ‘*ab pachhtaaye kya hot jab chidiyaa chug gayi khet*’ means that there is no use of feeling **remorseful** after a wrong is done; feeling **remorse** now will not correct the past mistakes.

³⁸⁴ **Mortify**: (v) to punish one’s body by inflicting pain on it or by denying its needs; to embarrass very much.

Origin: L *mortis*, death => ‘kill one’s body’ => ‘kill bodily desires’

Mortis, death => ‘to make someone wish death’ => ‘to shame someone’

- ❑ Many religions **endorse** the practice of ‘**mortification** of the flesh.’ In its simple form, it may involve **abstaining** from things that give the body pleasure, like drinking alcohol, eating delicious food, sex, luxuries, etc. Some people take it to extremes by beating themselves with whips, or in the case of Christians, piercing their body with nails, so as to remind themselves of the physical tortures the founding fathers of their religion went through.
- Fasting, *sumnat* (circumcision), **celibacy**, etc., are all forms of **mortification** of the flesh. Shia Muslims **flagellate** themselves during the Moharram procession to **commemorate** the martyrdom of Imam Hussein, grandson of Muhammad.
- ❑ Someone at the party lost her diamond necklace. Meeta’s *bhabhi* looked at her and studied her face. Meeta was **mortified** by the suspicion **implicit** in that gesture. Just because she was poor, her *bhabhi* thought she would steal too? Her cheeks burnt red in humiliation; tears burnt her eyes. She looked down, and thought of running away, away from all those rich, fake relatives, but no, she could not run away because that would convince them that she was, indeed, the culprit.

³⁸⁵ **Moribund**: (adj) dying, near death. It does not mean merely sick.

Origin: L *mori*, to die

- ❑ Sonia Gandhi put life back into a **moribund** Congress.
- ❑ In order to revive their **moribund** TV channel, the producers decided to start two reality shows, each with a big Bollywood celebrity as a host.

³⁸⁶ **Mortician**: (n) A person who works in a mortuary and prepares the dead for funeral and arranges the funeral. Also called an **undertaker**.

Origin: Mortuary, the place where dead are kept + *-ician*. Of course, the word ‘mortuary’ comes from L *mortis*, death.

- ❑ The job of a **mortician** is one that will never disappear because people will always keep dying. His job includes preparing the body of the **deceased** for the final viewing, planning the funeral, overseeing the funeral rites and performing the cremation. He also embalms the body if it needs to be preserved. A **squeamish** man cannot make a **mortician** because the job includes many tasks that most would consider **unsightly**, such as draining blood from a body or sewing a dead body’s mouth shut.

Squeamish: (adj) who gets shocked or disgusted easily.

Mer-3: postmortem, **amortize**³⁸⁷, **morbid**³⁸⁸

The Indian mythology said that *Amrita* (*a-mrita*) was the drink of gods by drinking which a mortal could overcome *mrityu*. The Greek word with a parallel etymology is **Ambrosia**³⁸⁹. **Ambrosia** was the food of gods and anybody who ate it was said to become immortal.

³⁸⁷ **Amortize:** (v) to pay off a debt in installments.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *mort-*, death => 'to take towards death' => 'to kill slowly, in degress'

- ❑ He was sure that the returns from his investment would be large enough to service his debt and **amortize** it over a five-year period.

³⁸⁸ **Morbid:** (adj) sick in body or in mind.

Origin: L *mori*, to die => *morbus*, sickness

- ❑ **Morbidity** rate of a population is the number of people who fall ill during a time period divided by the number of people in the total population. The **mortality** rate of a population is the number of people who die during a time period divided by the number of people in the total population.
- ❑ "Mama, I think that I will die young," Suhani casually said as she lay on the couch with her mother, watching an accident in a movie. Her mother waved off her words. "These are just **morbid** fancies, nothing more." "No mama, seriously. I can never imagine myself married or old. I have a very strong feeling that I will die young and in a road accident?"
- ❑ Many of the children's rhymes and stories are quite **morbid**. The child characters in them often get beaten or killed or kidnapped by demons or eaten by witches. For example, consider the following **lullaby**, which has been used by mothers to **lull** their little babies for centuries. It is about a baby whose cradle has been suspended from the branches of two neighbouring trees.

Hush-a-by baby, on the tree top,

When the wind blows, the cradle will rock.

*When the **bough** breaks, the cradle will fall,*

And down will tumble baby, cradle and all.

Lullaby: (n) a soft song that puts a child to sleep.

Lull: (v) to soothe someone and slowly put him to sleep.

Bough: (n) branch of a tree. Cousin of the Sanskrit *baahu* and Hindi *baaju*, both of which mean 'arm.'

³⁸⁹ **Ambrosia:** (n) the food of gods

Origin: Gk *a-*, not+ *mbrotos*, *mortos* mortal => 'of the non-mortals' => 'of the gods'

Exercise

aiw-, g^wei-, anima:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. There was *hatred* between the two families.
(a) animosity (b) spite (c) awe (d) longanimity (e) animation
2. She *said indirectly* that he was the cause of their ruin.
(a) incarcerated (b) gasped (c) insinuated (d) warbled (e) afflicted
3. He was amazed by the variety of *dishes* at the wedding feast.
(a) vipers (b) revitalizers (c) vitalities (d) viands (e) badgers
4. The actor had a *raspy* voice
(a) sweet (b) bird-like (c) child-like (d) harsh (e) unique
5. The rioters created *violent destruction of life and property* in the capital city.
(a) maiming (b) mayhem (c) woe (d) rummaging (e) innuendo
6. He remembered that night *in full detail*.
(a) in a primeval manner (b) eternally (c) vividly (d) stealthily (e) gratefully
7. Cars are *lifeless* objects.
(a) unanimous (b) amoral (c) non-vivid (d) Inanimate (e) unvitalized
8. The woman *searched* through her handbag to locate her constantly ringing mobile phone.
(a) burrowed (b) fumbled (c) afflicted (d) maimed (e) rummaged
9. He was *an inexperienced* writer.
(a) a fledgling (b) a woebegone (c) a futile (d) a harried (e) a maimed
10. Looking at the moon, the lovers dreamily *sang* a love song.
(a) gasped (b) grated (c) fumbled (d) warbled (e) inflicted
11. He had no *difficulty in conscience* about stealing his father's money.
(a) equanimity (b) affliction (c) mayhem (d) animus (e) qualms
12. It was a *colossal* statue.
(a) a statue that was lost among other things in an earthquake (b) a glossy and colourful statue (c) a huge statue (d) a statue that deserved being destroyed (e) an antique statue

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (e) 9. (a) 10. (d) 11. (e) 12. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A person whose hands or feet have been surgically removed: A_____
2. Not having a moral quality: A_____
3. The perfect example: P_____
4. The husband of an unfaithful wife: C_____
5. Belonging to the same age: C_____
6. Ability to stay calm even in tough situations: E_____
7. The act of moving secretly: S_____

8. To struggle for breath: G _____
 9. Egg-laying animals: O _____
 10. To put into jail: I _____

Answers:

1. amputee 2. amoral 3. paragon 4. cuckold 5. coeval 6. equanimity 7. stealth 8. gasp
 9. oviparous 10. incarcerate

newo-, tempus, chronos, annus:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *talked wildly* in his anger.
 (a) started (b) synchronized (c) abutted (d) raved (e) delved
2. The prison guards had *cooperated* with the prisoners in the latter's escape.
 (a) connived (b) temporized (c) adhered (d) tempered (e) cohered
3. The *closeness* of the two colleagues was questioned.
 (a) abutting (b) neologism (c) connivance (d) proximity (e) consolidation
4. She was *tired* after the long flight.
 (a) incoherent (b) jaded (c) ranting (d) wistful (e) superannuated
5. He did both his spiritual and *worldly* duties exceedingly well.
 (a) religious (b) temporal (c) millennial (d) perennial (e) industrious
6. His excuses *were not coherent*.
 (a) were perennial (b) were temperate (c) were adherent (d) were illogical (e) were divisive
7. He looked at the photographs of his youth *with a sad longing*.
 (a) wistfully (b) with pain (c) tempestuously (d) with temperance (e) like a neophyte
8. He was a man of *temperate* habits.
 (a) angry (b) changing (c) moderate (d) moody (e) natural
9. The event *was biennial*.
 (a) happened once every two years (b) happened twice a year (c) happened two years after it was conceptualised (d) happened two years after the start of a millennium (e) happened after gaps of two months
10. He was *industrious*.
 (a) an industrial worker (b) a hardworking man (c) a money-minded man (d) a physical labourer (e) as unfeeling as industrial machines

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (b) 5. (b) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (c) 9. (a) 10. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Beauty: P _____
2. To indulge in tactics in order to gain time or delay a decision: T _____
3. To retire because of old age: S _____
4. Storm: T _____
5. Arranged according to time of occurrence: C _____
6. A beginner: T _____

7. Lack of self-control: I _____
8. Long-lasting: C _____
9. A person from a rural area: R _____
10. A thing that is shown to belong to a wrong time period: A _____

Answers:

pulchritude, temporize, superannuate, tempest, chronological, tyro, intemperance, chronic, rustic, anachronism

Mutare, sen-, geras, nek-, mer-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He was *quite squeamish*.
(a) got disgusted at every little thing (b) took out his sword at every little thing (c) was very bad-tempered (d) weak in mind (e) funny
2. He was suffering from *deterioration of mental abilities due to old age*.
(a) senectitude (b) senescence (c) senility (d) morbidity (e) progeria
3. The battle *destroyed both sides*.
(a) was obnoxious (b) was internecine (c) mutual (d) pernicious (e) fiery
4. He was *in a foul temper* that morning.
(a) surly (b) senile (c) senescent (d) lulled (e) noxious
5. The gas was *noxious*.
(a) had an offensive smell (b) was harmful (c) produced a biting sensation on the skin (d) was decreasing in quantity (e) was inflammable
6. He bought a *dying* textile mill.
(a) morbid (b) moribund (c) mordant (d) mortified (e) noxious
7. The *deadly* weed quickly spread all over the lake and suffocated the organisms that lived underwater.
(a) mordant (b) morbid (c) pernicious (d) senescent (e) necrotic
8. The children *jeered* the newcomer.
(a) welcomed (b) sang a song for (c) made fun of (d) helped (e) pushed
9. The court *changed* his death sentence to life-imprisonment.
(a) transmuted (b) commuted (c) mortified (d) amortized (e) conferred
10. The film was *a mordant* comedy about the universal chase for money and fame.
(a) a deadly (b) a failed (c) an embarrassing (d) an immortal (e) a biting

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (c) 9. (b) 10. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. The food of gods: A _____
2. Unbearably offensive: O _____
3. Communicating with the spirits of the dead: N _____
4. Using the common language of an area: V _____
5. Rule by old people: G _____

70 *All that is new becomes old; all that is born must die*

6. To punish one's body to please gods: M_____
7. Branch of medicine dealing with the care and the diseases of the old people: G_____
8. To pay off a debt in instalments: A_____
9. One who shows violent, lawless behaviour: H_____
10. One who listens to others' conversations secretly: E_____

Answers:

ambrosia, obnoxious, necromancy, vernacular, gerontocracy, mortification, geriatrics, amortize, hooligan, eavesdropper

MATTERS OF THE HEAD AND THE HEART

Latin *caput* **head**

Eight-year-old Rajan came running into his father's study to tell him about the strange sparrow that he had just seen in the garden. Mr Gyaninder Chopra showed appropriate interest. But that encouraged the young **raconteur**³⁹⁰ and, instead of leaving after finishing his tale, he **rambled**³⁹¹ on about his school and his friends and his enemies and his coming birthday and the gifts he wanted from everyone. When even after 10 minutes the boy showed no signs of stopping his **ramble** and letting his father go back to his file, the **harried** Chopra ji cried out. "*Achha mere baap ab tu ja! Meri khopdi mat khaa!*"

Khopdi is the common man's version (that is, **vulgar**³⁹² version) of the Sanskrit word *kapaal*, and *kapaal* in turn is a cousin of the *caput* in the heading and *kephale* in Greek.

The English words built on this root have it in three forms: *cap-*, *cip-* or *cep-*.

³⁹⁰ **Raconteur:** (n) A person who tells 'what happened' in a very interesting style.

Origin: L *re-*, back+ *acon*, to tell, account + *-eur*, doer => 'one who tells back what happened'

³⁹¹ **Ramble:** (v) to wander without a definite route or goal; (n) an aimless walk taken for pleasure.

- The film should have been edited better. It **rambled** in the middle.
- The jobless, frustrated young man did nothing but **ramble** the streets of his village all day.
- The novelist's mind had become tired after the day's work. A **ramble** through the forest refreshed him.

³⁹² **Vulgar:** (adj) related with common people, unrefined, indecent.

Origin: L *vulgus*, the masses => 'related with the masses' => 'not related with the refined and educated upper classes' => 'not refined, crude' => 'in bad taste, indecent'

- The language spoken by the common people of an area is called its **vulgar** language or its **vernacular**.
- "Oh, speak like an educated man, will you?" The girl **snapped** at her boyfriend who had just used seven swear words in three sentences. "These **vulgar** manners make you no different from a roadside mechanic."

The other word from the root *vulgus* is **divulge**.

Cap put on the head-1: **Decapitate**³⁹³, **capitulate**³⁹⁴, **recapitulate**³⁹⁵

Cap put on the head-2: **Capitation**³⁹⁶, **capsize**³⁹⁷, **capillary**³⁹⁸

Cap put on the head-3: **Precipice**³⁹⁹, **precipitate**⁴⁰⁰, **precipitous**⁴⁰¹

³⁹³ **Decapitate:** (v) to cut off the head.

Origin: L *de-*, off + *caput*, head

- ❑ The head of the **decapitated** policeman was found by a bush, 25 metres away from his body.

³⁹⁴ **Capitulate:** (v) to surrender with conditions.

Origin: L *capitulum*, small head => 'to write a document with several sub-headings' => 'to prepare an agreement with several conditions'

- ❑ The terrorists hijacked an Indian Airlines flight and took it out of the country. They threatened to kill the 160 passengers on board unless their leaders who were under arrest in India were released. The government tried to negotiate with them, but ultimately, after talks of seven days failed and the hijackers became impatient, **capitulated** to their demands.
- ❑ In the song *sar kataa sakte hain lekin, sar jhukaa sakte nahin*, the patriots say that they will not **capitulate**, even if the enemy threatens to **decapitate** them.

³⁹⁵ **Recapitulate:** (v) to summarize the main points.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *capitulum* heading => 'to talk about the headings again' => 'to talk about the main points again'

- ❑ At the end of the class, the teacher **recapitulated** what he had taught in the past two hours.

³⁹⁶ **Capitation:** (n) to count the heads; a fees charged per head.

Origin: L *caput*, head => 'counting of heads'

- ❑ Schools and professional colleges collect **capitation** fees—sometimes calling it 'donation'—from the students, over and above the tuition fees. The Supreme Court has banned the practice.

³⁹⁷ **Capsize:** (v) to overturn.

Origin: Sp. *cabo*, head => *capuzar*, to sink headfirst. This etymology however is debatable.

- ❑ Our boat **capsized** and we all fell into the water.

³⁹⁸ **Capillary:** (n) a tube as fine as a strand of hair.

Origin: L *caput*, head => *capillus*, hair => *capillaris*, related with hair

- ❑ The thermometer that we use in our homes and clinics is a **capillary** thermometer. It has a bulb at one end and a **capillary** tube rises from it. The bulb contains mercury. Since the volume of a cylindrical capillary is $V = \pi \cdot r^2 \cdot L$, it pays to minimize the radius r , so that a given temperature change results in a large change in the length of liquid in the capillary, L . This makes it very easy to notice any change in temperature.

³⁹⁹ **Precipice:** (n) the steep, vertical edge of a hill or a huge rock. Also called a **cliff**.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *cip-*, head => 'a place from where you can fall, and if you fall, your head will be before the rest of your body.' => 'there is nothing below to stop the headfirst fall'

- ❑ "*Pakde rehnaa, chhodna mat!*" The hero's father called out to the hero and the heroine who were dangling from the edge of the **precipice**, barely holding onto a rock, and **frantically** looked about for a rope or some cloth with which he could pull them up.

⁴⁰⁰ **Precipitate:** (v) to throw down headfirst, to cause something to happen suddenly or prematurely; (adj) moving with great speed, occurring suddenly.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *cip-*, head => 'to throw down headfirst.'

- ❑ The village girl was happily bathing under the waterfall, humming a tune to herself. When she saw a man looking at her from behind a rock, she fled **precipitately** into the bushes.
- ❑ On Friday noon, the bridge broke and **precipitated** two buses into the gushing river below.

⁴⁰¹ **Precipitous:** (adj) very steep

Origin: See **precipice**

- ❑ The road to the hill top was narrow and **precipitous**.
- ❑ Only expert rock climbers could climb that **precipitous** hill.
- ❑ The Lok Sewa Party's tally of 23 marked a **precipitous** fall from its 124 seats in the previous Lok Sabha.

*Men-1: Memento*⁴⁰⁹, *reminiscence*⁴¹⁰, *mentor*⁴¹¹

*Men-2: mantic*⁴¹², *mandarin*⁴¹³, *muse*⁴¹⁴

*Men-3: bemused*⁴¹⁵, *amnesia*⁴¹⁶, *amnesty*⁴¹⁷, *mnemonic*⁴¹⁸

⁴⁰⁹ **Memento:** (n) something that reminds one of a person or an event.

Origin: L *meminisse*, to remember

- ❑ The organizers of the function gave a **memento** to the chief guest.

⁴¹⁰ **Reminiscence:** (n) a remembering of the past.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *mens*, mind => 'bring to mind again.' 'Remind' is built similarly.

- ❑ Almost every talk of old people is full of **reminiscences**. If you tell an old man that you will listen to him but on the condition that he will not **reminisce**, the poor man will effectively have little to say! He will also probably grow sad, because your condition will make him feel that you have no interest in his life.

⁴¹¹ **Mentor:** (n) a person who is a friend, philosopher and guide.

Origin: Gk *men-*, to think => 'to advice.' The Sanskrit word *mantra* too is from the IE root *man-*. *Mantra* means 'a thought, an advice.' A guy who thinks and gives advice is, therefore, called a *mantri*.

⁴¹² **Mantic:** (adj) related with the ability to tell the future or undiscovered truths with the help of supernatural powers or omens.

Origin: Gk *men-*, to think => 'to advice.'

- ❑ Some types of mantic practices are: A) **Bibliomancy:** knowing the future by randomly selecting a passage from a book, frequently a sacred book. B) **Oomancy:** drop egg whites into boiling water; the shape of the cooked egg tells the future. C) **Necromancy:** calling the spirits of the dead and asking about the future from them. D) **Ornithomancy:** using birds to know the future. For example, a fortune-teller using a parrot to pick out a card with someone's fortune inscribed on it. E) **Chiromancy:** telling a person's future from his hand. Also called 'palm reading.'

⁴¹³ **Mandarin:** (n) a high ranking Chinese official in the times of the Chinese empire.

Origin: Related with Hindi *mantri*.

⁴¹⁴ **Muse:** (n) something that inspires new thoughts in an artist; state of thinking deeply.

Origin: IE *men-*, to think

- ❑ The celebrated painter M.F. Hussain was so captivated by Madhuri Dixit's performance in 'Hum Aapke Hain Kaun' that she became his **muse**. She inspired many of his paintings and even became his reason to make a movie, 'Gajagamini'. He said the movie was an ode to womanhood in general, and Madhuri in particular.

⁴¹⁵ **Bemused:** (adj) lost in thought; greatly confused.

Origin: be + muse => 'in the state of deep thinking' => 'absent-minded to everything else' => 'confused about everything else.'

- ❑ When Ravi got the question paper, there was a **bemused** look on his face. Wasn't it the science paper today? Why had the invigilator given the maths question paper?
- ❑ The 13-year-old girl was **bemused** at everybody's changed behaviour that day. Her mother did not beat her even once and even told her not to do any housework. Instead, she washed her hair (!), made her wear very nice, new clothes and then decorated her with her own lipstick and nailpolish which she otherwise never allowed her even to touch. Baba always came home very late. But that day, not only was he at home, he also picked up Chhotu and told her that she need not bother about the little boy and should only get ready herself. Then guests came and mother told her to go and greet them. They also smiled upon seeing her. What was happening? Why was everyone being so good to her?

⁴¹⁶ **Amnesia:** (n) loss of memory; (adj): **amnesic**. A person who suffers from **amnesia** is called an **amnesiac** or an **amnesic**.

Origin: Gk *a-*, without + *mneme*, memory. The Greek root *mneme* is derived from the root *men-*, to think or remember.

- ❑ The patient had a brief **amnesic** period after the brain surgery.

⁴¹⁷ **Amnesty:** (n) pardon granted to a group of offenders by the government.

Origin: Gk *a-*, without + *mneme*, memory => 'we choose to forget the wrongs you did' => 'we set you free'

- ❑ The government declared an **amnesty** period of three months for all the illegal migrants working on its soil to either regularize their status or leave the country without penalty.
- ❑ The British-ruled Government of India had filed serious charges of **sedition** and terrorism against many freedom fighters. After the Independence, the Government of India declared an **amnesty** for all of them.

⁴¹⁸ **Mnemonic:** (n) a trick that helps one remember better.

Origin: Gk *mneme*, memory.

- ❑ The child was often confused between the words 'horizontal' and 'vertical'. Her teacher told her a **mnemonic**. H had a bar parallel to the ground in its middle. So 'h for horizontal' was parallel to the ground.
- ❑ Here's a **mnemonic** for the word 'guffaw' - 'guffaw' rhymes with 'haw'. So imagine a man laughing loudly saying 'Haw haw haw' (a slight variation of the usual ha ha ha)

The Greek goddess of memory was called Mnemosyne. The Latin root *monere*, discussed independently, is also a part of the *men*-family.

Latin *monere* to remind

A ‘monument’ reminds us of the person or the event in whose memory it was built. Anything that is as huge and impressive as a monument is **monumental**⁴¹⁹.

Rajan was the ‘monitor’ of his class. It was his duty to maintain the **decorum**⁴²⁰ in the class when the teacher was not there. One day, he was doing that when his two best friends broke into a **guffaw**⁴²¹, disrupting the pin-drop silence in the class. When he went to their desk, they showed him a cartoon they had drawn of one of their teachers. Rajan **admonished**⁴²² them. “You are my friends,” he said. “If you will not stay quiet when I mind the class, why will anyone else? I am sorry but I will have to write your names on the blackboard.”



Shiva was **furious**⁴²³. Swearing to teach Birju and his gang a lesson, he was rushing out of his house when his mother blocked the door. “I understand your anger,” she said. “Any brother would be **enraged** if a bunch of goons whistled and winked at his sister, but please do not go to those **fiends**⁴²⁴! I beg of you. I have a feeling that something bad will happen. You are my only son, Shiva. I cannot lose you! Please don’t go!”

Shiva soothed his **overwrought**⁴²⁵ mother and said that she was worrying needlessly; nothing would happen to him; had he ever lost a fight? Besides, he would also take Nandu, Gullu and Mahesh with him; could anyone stand before the four of them? Before the hour ended, Birju would be **groveling** at her and Rajni’s feet, pleading forgiveness. Telling her once more that he would be fine, he went out.

⁴¹⁹ **Monumental:** (adj) related to monuments; as huge and impressive as a monument.

Origin: adjective of monument. Etymology of monument: L *monere*, to remind + *-ment* => ‘something that reminds’

- ❑ Many speakers at Sharma ji’s *kriya* ceremony said that his **demise** was a **monumental** loss to the world of literature.
- ❑ The Vedas are a **monumental** treasure of spiritual wisdom.

⁴²⁰ **Decorum:** (n) fitting behaviour, proper conduct.

Origin: L *decorare*, to make fitting, beautiful. The word ‘decorate’ too is from the same root.

⁴²¹ **Guffaw:** (v) laugh loudly, go ‘ha ha ha’. Such a loud laughter is also called a **guffaw**.

⁴²² **Admonish:** (v) to warn, advice or mildly scold about something. (n): **admonition**; (adj): **admonitory**

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *monere*, to remind => ‘to remind about something’

- ❑ The girl picked up the tea-tray to go in front of the boy and his family who had come to see her. “Don’t forget what I told you,” her mother said in an **admonitory** voice.
- ❑ It is very important to **admonish** a child the first time he does something wrong, so that he knows that his bad behaviour will not be accepted.

⁴²³ **Furious:** (adj) extremely anger. Noun: **fury**, extreme anger. To **infuriate** someone is to make him extremely angry.

⁴²⁴ **Fiend:** (n) devil, a devilish person. Adjective: **fiendish**

⁴²⁵ **Overwrought:** (adj) extremely tense, nervous or excited; too elaborate or too complex or too decorated.

Origin: over + wrought, work => ‘to work more than is required’ => ‘to work up the mind more than is required’

- ❑ The child’s mother became **overwrought** when he told her that he saw ‘shapes’ at night. “Did this have to happen to my only child only?” She panicked. “What if those ghosts did anything to him?” She immediately ran with him to an *ojha* who was known for his **occult** powers. But on her way, she thought of taking the child to her family doctor first. The way she ran into the clinic and the tension on her face made the doctor think that it was an emergency. He couldn’t suppress his smile when she told him about her son’s **affliction**. The doctor made her sit outside and talked with the child. Then, he called her and told her that the fearful Shapes that haunted the child by night were nothing but creatures of his own **overwrought** fancy.
- ❑ Behind his back, everybody laughed at his **overwrought** politeness and the **overwrought** sentences he spoke. Just ‘ma’am’ was not good enough for him; he addressed every woman as ‘my dear lady’ or ‘the light of this evening.’ Similarly, every man was ‘my honourable sir’. He never asked “May I do this?” but rather “May I have the honour of having your permission to do this?”

Before the hour ended, he came back and threw a beaten-to-pulp Birju before her. Thank god, she breathed in relief. Her Shiva had come back safely. “See mom,” Shiva joked. “Your **premonitions**⁴²⁶ never come true.” She smiled. “I hope they never do!”



The Latin word *monstrum* is a derivative of *monere* and means ‘a warning, a bad **omen**⁴²⁷’. ‘Monster’ is from this root. In the earlier times, seeing an abnormal animal was regarded as a sign of coming evils. That is why, such animals were called monsters. Naturally, the people were horrified when they saw them. Slowly, any creature- real or imaginary- which horrified people started being called a monster.

The other related words are demonstrate, **remonstrate**⁴²⁸ and **muster**⁴²⁹.

IE (s)mer- to remember

The Sanskrit word *smriti* and the Latin *memor* come from this root. Both mean ‘memory’.

The words from *memor* are:

Memors-I: memory, memorable, **memorialize**⁴³⁰

⁴²⁶ **Premonition**: (n) forewarning, an idea beforehand of what is going to happen.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *monere*, to remind, warn => ‘to warn beforehand’

⁴²⁷ **Omen**: (n) a sign which supposedly predicts a good or bad happening in the future. Adjective: **ominous**

- ❑ A black cat crossing your way as you set out to go for some task is considered to be a bad **omen**. It is believed to signify that the work you are going to do will not get done.
- ❑ On the same day that Amjad Khan officially signed for the role of Gabbar Singh in *Sholay*, his wife gave birth to their son. The **fledgling** actor regarded it as a good **omen**. It did, indeed, prove to be so. *Sholay* proved to be a blockbuster and **encomiums** were heaped on Amjad for his performance.

⁴²⁸ **Remonstrate**: (v) to object to something.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *monstrum*, a warning => ‘to give a warning again’ => ‘to object to what is currently being done.’

- ❑ Shaaleen had noticed for some time that his friend Vicky was making advances towards his wife. She flirted back with him for amusement. Shaaleen did not **remonstrate** with her. “If one doesn’t trust one’s own wife,” he thought, “one has no right to be married at all.”

⁴²⁹ **Muster**: (v) to gather (all forces) together; (n) a gathering (of soldiers, forces, people etc.).

Origin: L *monstrum*, warning => ‘evil omen’ => ‘to show’ => ‘to show one’s total strength to the enemy’

- ❑ Ronit finally **mustered** his courage and told Shreya he loved her.
- ❑ “He had a horror of destroying documents, especially those which were connected with his past cases, and yet it was only once in every year or two that he would **muster** energy to **docket** and arrange them; for...the outbursts of passionate energy when he performed the remarkable feats with which his name is associated were followed by reactions of lethargy during which he would lie about with his violin and his books, hardly moving save from the sofa to the table. Thus, month after month, his papers accumulated, until every corner of the room was stacked with bundles of manuscript which were on no account to be burned, and which could not be put away save by their owner.” Dr Watson said about his friend and roommate, the famous detective Sherlock Holmes.

Docket: (n) a page which lists or provides a very brief summary of the various documents contained in a package; a book in a court which contain brief summaries of the court proceedings of each case; a list of the court cases scheduled for trial. (v) to make a summary of the heads of a document

- ❑ The senior advocate tried to get a case out of the **docket** of one judge and get it into the **docket** of another, more lenient judge. He failed.

⁴³⁰ **Memorialize**: (v) serve as a reminder of.

Origin: L *memor*, remembering

- ❑ The lovers decided to meet in the same restaurant which **memorialized** their first date.

Memor-2: **commemorate**⁴³¹, remember, **memorandum**⁴³²

IE kerd- heart

The Latin *cor*, the Greek *kardia*, and the Sanskrit *hridaya* all belong to this family.

Melinee was an editor in a newspaper. One evening when she came home, she found her husband in a particularly romantic mood. "Oh darling," he said, throwing her handbag aside and taking her into his clasp, "I love you from the core of my heart."

Melinee smiled, put her finger on his lips and said **sensuously**, "Darling, that's **tautological**⁴³³. Either say, you love me from your core or from your heart."

Ouch! Romance with linguists has its own **pitfalls**⁴³⁴.

'Core' itself means the heart, the central part of something and is derived from the Latin *cor*.

To show 'courage' is to show heart and face the **adversity**, while the faint-hearted develop **palpitations** and run away.

When someone invites you **cordially**⁴³⁵ to a wedding in his family, he invites you from his heart (the Hindi **counterpart**- '*uss ne dil se bulaya hai*'). A **cordial** dislike for the custom of dowry is a heartfelt dislike for it.

You go to the wedding and see the newly-weds, beaming with delight at having found each other. You wish them complete **accord**⁴³⁶ in their **marital**⁴³⁷ life. They look at each other and **smirk**⁴³⁸; *of course*, they will be in **accord**, their laughing eyes seem to say, funny that this **tottering**⁴³⁹ old uncle should even bother to say that!

You smile and, looking once more at their love-struck faces, hope that their belief does, indeed, come true.

⁴³¹ **Commemorate**: (v) serve as a reminder of.

Origin: L *com-* + *memor*, remembering

❑ The India Gate **commemorates** the 70,000 Indian soldiers who died in the First World War. 13,516 names of British and Indian soldiers killed in the Afghan War of 1919 are engraved on the arch and the walls of the monument.

⁴³² **Memorandum**: (n) a written communication.

Origin: L *memor* => 'to be remembered.'

❑ The protesting students submitted a **memorandum** to the vice-chancellor of the university.

❑ The university signed a **memorandum** of understanding with the Cambridge University.

⁴³³ **Tautology**: (n) repeating the same thing, especially in different words; (adj): **tautological**.

❑ Examples of **tautology**: 'My belief, my thought is...', 'very unique', 'necessary requirement', 'HIV virus' (because the V in HIV stands for virus) etc.

⁴³⁴ **Pitfall**: (n) a covered from the top pit into which animals fall and are trapped; a hidden danger.

Origin: pit + fall => 'a pit into which one falls.'

⁴³⁵ **Cordial**: (adj) warm and sincere; heartfelt.

⁴³⁶ **Accord**: (n) agreement; harmony of mind and heart.

Origin: L. *ad-*, to + *cor* => 'to lead the hearts towards each other'

❑ When you tell a teacher, 'The report has been prepared **according** to your specifications,' you mean 'The report has been prepared in agreement with your specifications.'

⁴³⁷ **Marital**: (adj) of or relating to marriage.

Origin: L. *maris*, male -> *maritus*, husband (a woman's own man).

⁴³⁸ **Smirk**: (v) to smile in a self-pleased manner such that it looks offensive to the other person.

⁴³⁹ **Totter**: (v) to walk unsteadily or **feebly**, so that it looks like you can fall anytime.

Nothing is more beautiful than a marriage in which both the partners are in complete **concord**⁴⁴⁰. Nothing is uglier than marital **discord**.⁴⁴¹

We still use the phrase ‘to learn by heart.’ In the earlier times, when paper was very expensive and beyond the reach of most, the only way to ‘record’ details was, in fact, ‘to learn them by heart.’

The colourful term ‘*dil ka doctor*,’ when translated in a no-nonsense manner, becomes ‘cardiologist,’ and he treats, not love problems, but **cardiac**⁴⁴² diseases.

Latin *sanguis* **blood**

Which actor of Indian cinema used to thunder **sanguivorous**⁴⁴³ threats to all his enemies? While you **mull**⁴⁴⁴ over the possibilities, read a story.



King Durmal decided to retire and pass on the kingdom to his elder son, Prince Suvir. He smiled as he imagined how people would dance when they came to know. They all loved the prince! Suvir’s manners were mild, his **temperament sanguine**⁴⁴⁵ and he talked to and laughed with even the poorest men on the street. He was also the best soldier of the land. Recently, the king’s **archrival**—the king of Aundh—had declared war upon him. The unexpected attack had shaken king Durmal. But Suvir had taken control of the situation with amazing **sangfroid**⁴⁴⁶. The king had thought it impossible, but his underprepared army had won the war, all thanks to Suvir’s leadership. It had made the king realize that Suvir was ready to be crowned.

Suvir was currently on an inspection tour to one of the states. The king decided that as soon as the prince came back, he would hand over the **diadem**⁴⁴⁷ to him.

⁴⁴⁰ **Concord:** (n) agreement; harmony of mind and heart.

Origin: L. *com-*, together + *cor* => ‘the hearts are together’

⁴⁴¹ **Discord:** (n) lack of agreement among persons, groups, or things; tension or strife resulting from a lack of agreement.

Origin: L. *dis-*, apart+ *cor* => ‘the hearts are apart’

⁴⁴² **Cardiac:** (adj) of or relating to the heart

⁴⁴³ **Sanguivore:** (n) blood-drinker.

Origin: L. *sanguis*, blood + *vor-*, to feed => ‘the one who feeds on blood.’

⁴⁴⁴ **Mull:** (v) to think deeply over

⁴⁴⁵ **Sanguine:** (adj) optimistic, cheerful, reddish

Origin: L. *sanguis*, blood => ‘reddish’. A person whose face glows with a reddish tinge is healthy (in disease, one’s face becomes pale). Healthy people are likely to be cheerful and optimistic too.

❑ I never will **desert** Mr Micawber. Mr Micawber may have concealed his difficulties from me in the first instance, but his **sanguine** temper may have led him to expect that he would overcome them. The pearl necklace and bracelets which I inherited from mama, have been disposed of for less than half their value; and the set of coral, which was the wedding gift of my papa, has been actually thrown away for nothing. But I never will **desert** Mr Micawber. No!’ cried Mrs Micawber. (from Charles Dickens’ ‘David Copperfield’)

Desert: (v) to leave a person when he needs you or after promising to help him.

⁴⁴⁶ **Sangfroid:** (n) calmness in a difficult situation.

Origin: L. *sanguis*, blood + *frigidus*, cold => Fr *sang froid* => ‘the ability to keep one’s blood cool in a situation where most people would become feverish’

⁴⁴⁷ **Diadem:** (n) crown

❑ The king had a **diadem** with 10 jewels, the queen’s **diadem** had five, while the **diadem** of the princess had a single jewel.

❑ On her 18th birthday, the king presented to the princess a **diadem** of diamonds.

He summoned his younger son, Rudir, gave him the happy news and asked him to prepare for the occasion. Rudir was excited too. “Don’t worry father,” he said. “This is my brother’s **coronation**⁴⁴⁸. I will make such arrangements that people will talk about the day years later.”

Early next morning, Rudir went to the king’s suite, bowed before him and handed a packet to him. The surprised king opened it and found white clothes **dappled**⁴⁴⁹ with blood. “This packet came just now, father dear,” Rudir gently said, as the king **gaped** at the **ensanguined**⁴⁵⁰ clothes.

“W-what does this mean?” The king suddenly felt uneasy.

“This is the blood of my dear brother, your dear son, our would-have-been king, the great Prince Suvir.” Rudir spoke louder with each other.

“Suvir!!! What has happened to him? Tell me! Now!”

“Your Majesty, I have killed your darling son. And, from this moment, you are under house arrest. And I am the new king of this land.”

“How dare you? I’ll have you arrested! I’ll call the…”

“No, father dear,” Rudir interrupted. “It’s too late. I’ve already talked to all the ministers. They know that Suvir is dead—by the way, your son was **assassinated**⁴⁵¹ last night in a heavily crowded public function in the city of Dwer; he was the chief guest there; and yes, the soldiers lost the **assassin** in the **pell-mell**. Your ministers themselves requested me to wear the **diadem** immediately. They know that Your Majesty has become **senile**, and now with the news of his son’s death, would make a joker of a king. So, Your Majesty, I am sad to inform you that your **majesty**⁴⁵² is over. Now, enjoy this room of yours for the rest of your life. Live here and die here. I will rule.”

The king was heartbroken.

“He was your brother!” he said with great pain. “You killed your own brother!”

Rudir laughed. “Kings do not bother about **consanguinity**⁴⁵³, my dear father. I learnt that from you. Didn’t *you* kill your brother when he started becoming too powerful? I loved Uncle Kurmal, you know. More than I have ever loved

⁴⁴⁸ **Coronation:** (n) the ceremony of crowning a new ruler and, thus, symbolically transferring the rule to him.
Origin: L *corona*, crown

⁴⁴⁹ **Dappled:** (adj) marked with round spots of colour.

⁴⁵⁰ **Ensanguined:** (adj) covered with blood.
Origin: L *en-*, in + *sanguis*, blood => ‘soaked in blood’

⁴⁵¹ **Assassinate:** (v) to kill, usually a prominent person, according to a pre-decided plan. The man who does that is called an **assassin**.

⁴⁵² **Majesty:** (n) a ruler; a ruler’s power; dignity befitting a king; grandness; (adj) **majestic**.
Origin: L *magnus*, great.

- ❑ The prince gathered together **sumptuous** presents befitting the **majesty** of his elder brother- the king- and set out towards the capital. The brothers were reuniting after a whole year!
- ❑ The child was **awed** by the **majestic** body of the tiger.
- ❑ The Taj Mahal is a **majestic** mausoleum built by an emperor in the memory of his wife.

⁴⁵³ **Consanguinity:** (n) blood relationship.
Origin: (n) L *con-*, together + *sanguis* => ‘together in blood’

- ❑ **Consanguineous** marriages are common in South India. This is illustrated by the fact that the Tamil word for husband is ‘athan’ which also means ‘father’s sister’s son’ and the word for mother-in-law is ‘mamiyar’ which is also what mother’s brother’s wife is called. However, North Indians have traditionally looked down upon **consanguineous** marriages. A North Indian Hindu family will make sure that there is no **consanguinity** between the bride and the groom upto seven generations from the father’s side and five generations from the mother’s.

you. Anyways, let's not get into all that. The fact is that a king fights **sanguinary**⁴⁵⁴ battles all his life and what better than my brother's blood to start my career with. Don't you agree, father dear? Goodbye!"



Could you find our **sanguivorous** actor? He is Dharmendra, famous for the **expletive**-dripping threat he used to shout at his enemies in almost every movie: "*Kutte! Kaminey! Main teraa khoon pee jaaunga!*"

IE *reudh-* **red**

The Sanskrit word for red is *rakt*. *Raktim* means 'having a red-tinge', *raktata* is redness and the word *raktaambar* is used for an **ascetic** dressed in red. *Rakt* also means blood, because of the red colour of blood. The slogan '*raktadaan mahadaan*' means that 'blood donation is the greatest donation.'

The English words of the *reudh-* family are:

Reudh-1: Red, **ruddy**⁴⁵⁵, ruby, **rubicund**⁴⁵⁶

Reudh-2: **rubric**⁴⁵⁷, **rubefacient**⁴⁵⁸, **rambunctious**⁴⁵⁹

⁴⁵⁴ **Sanguinary**: (adj) bloody, bloodthirsty

Origin: *L sanguis*

- The stage design in **sanguinary** red looked awesome.
- The *taantrik* had told the woman that she would be blessed with a son only if she first performed a **sanguinary** sacrifice. She obediently sacrificed a goat. When her wish still did not come true after a whole year, the *taantrik* said that her stars were angrier than he thought, and that only a male child's blood could **appease** them.

⁴⁵⁵ **Ruddy**: (adj) reddish, having a healthy red colour, bloody.

- The orchards were **ruddy** with ripe apples.
- He was a **ruddy**-faced, cheerful lad.
- The decades-old battle between the terrorists and the army in Kashmir has turned the beautiful valley into a **ruddy** battleground.

⁴⁵⁶ **Rubicund**: (adj) ruddy

Origin: *L ruber*, red

- Swati's husband returned home and went straight to the washroom to shower away the day's **grime**. He soon joined her on the dining table, looking fresh and so **rubicund**, that she couldn't help joking that his face had one thing in common with the lobsters and crabs—it went into the hot water very black, and came out very red.

Grime: (n) dirt sticking to a surface.

⁴⁵⁷ **Rubric**: (n) the heading of a text, which is made distinct from the rest of the text either by writing it in red ink or making it bold and bigger etc.; a title; category or class; established way of doing something.

Origin: *L ruber*, red => 'a heading written in red' => 'the heading in a religious text which gave instructions on how to perform a particular religious ceremony. The heading was traditionally written in red ink to distinguish it from the instructions that followed.' => 'protocol'

- Bomb blasts, hijacks, extortions, attacks on life and public properties are all acts that fall under the **rubric** of terrorism.
- Japan, China, Korea, the 10 countries of South East Asia, Australia, New Zealand, and India meet within the **rubric** of the East Asia Summit.

⁴⁵⁸ **Rubefacient**: (n) a medicinal substance that causes redness of skin.

Origin: *L ruber*, red + *facere*, to make =. 'that which makes (skin) red'

⁴⁵⁹ **Rambunctious**: (adj) difficult to control and making a lot of noise.

- The police found it very difficult to protect the politician from the **rambunctious** crowd which had gathered outside the court and was shouting angry slogans against him and seemed thirsty for his blood. This was his first public appearance after he was found **culpable** in the distribution of fake medicines which had killed more than hundred labourers.

*Reudh-3: robust*⁴⁶⁰, *corroborate*⁴⁶¹, rust, rouge

The red blood cells are called 'erythrocytes' because the Greek word *eruthros* means red and *cyte* means cell.

Latin *fidere* **to trust**

Fidere is a verb. Its noun form- the belief, the trust that is shown- is called *fides*. That is where the English word faith came from.

A friend of yours is going to give a public speech for the first time and is very nervous. "Oh, just look at the audience, half the town is here! God, I wish you had sent a **typhoon**⁴⁶² this morning and drowned this hall and the whole city! Why did they all have to come and see me making a fool of myself? Oh, I was such an **oaf**⁴⁶³ to give my name!"

You **bolster**⁴⁶⁴ his **sagging**⁴⁶⁵ spirit by telling him that he has prepared well and that all his doubts are **unfounded**⁴⁶⁶. "You will rock!" you tell him. "Just have faith in yourself, have confidence."

That is what 'confidence' is, faith.

To remain faithful is to show **fidelity**⁴⁶⁷ or **fealty**⁴⁶⁸. **Fiduciary**⁴⁶⁹ matters are matters related to faith.

⁴⁶⁰ **Robust:** (adj) healthy and strong.

Origin: L *ruber*, red -> *robur*, an oak with reddish heartwood => 'as strong as an oak'

- He was a **robust** young man.
- The company was **robust**.
- The U.S. wants a **robust** relationship with India.

⁴⁶¹ **Corroborate:** (v) to support a claim with evidence, validate.

Origin: L *co-*, intensive + *robur*, oak, strength => 'to strengthen (a claim)'

- The police produced witnesses to **corroborate** their version of the encounter in which seven young men were killed.
- Sunny said that he got the bruise because he had fallen off his cycle. Bunny **corroborated** his story. After all, Sunny had promised to buy him a chocolate.

⁴⁶² **Typhoon:** (n) A violent cyclone that occurs in the western Pacific or the Indian Oceans.

Origin: Related with the Hindi word *toofaan*.

⁴⁶³ **Oaf:** (n) a stupid person.

⁴⁶⁴ **Bolster:** (n) a long, cylindrical pillow; (v) to support (like a pillow does), to encourage

- In every *mujra* scene that comes out of Bollywood, one can see fat, paan-chewing *seths* who **recline** on **bolsters**, watch the nautch girl with eyes full of lust and throw notes over her.

⁴⁶⁵ **Flag:** (v) drop to one side (like a **drooping** flower) because of lack of energy.

- The movie is supposed to be a thriller and keep you at the edge of your seat but its narrative starts **flagging** after the first hour, and picks up only at the end.

⁴⁶⁶ **Unfounded:** (adj) with no foundation, baseless.

⁴⁶⁷ **Fidelity:** (n) faithfulness

Origin: L *fidelis*, faith

- Marriage demands **fidelity** from both partners.
- The servant's **fidelity** to his master **surpassed** a dog's.

⁴⁶⁸ **Fealty:** (n) faithfulness

Origin: L *fides*, faith

- In the recruitment ceremony, the new soldiers swore **unwavering fealty** to their king. They vowed to give their life for him.

⁴⁶⁹ **Fiduciary:** (adj) based on good faith (n) a person who acts on behalf of another (like in managing that person's property or finances) and promises to do his duty honestly and faithfully.

Origin: L *fides*, faith.

- As per the law, the members of a rock band are in a **fiduciary** relationship with each other. They are supposed to act in good faith and share the credit as well as the financial benefits of their work. If one of them refuses to do that, the other members of the group can move to court to claim their share.



The peacock feather kept in nine-year-old Ranjit's notebook fell down. Rani, the classmate he was secretly in love with, picked it up and put it in her own notebook.

"Give it to me!" he said nervously.

"It's mine now," she was **defiant**⁴⁷⁰.

"You *have* to give it to me, understand?" Was it his **agitation** that made him so aggressive?

"Oh, I have to, have I?" she **scoffed**⁴⁷¹. "In that case, I shan't. Do what you want to."

That challenge watered him down; his cheeks started blushing and he turned away in a hurry to hide his **diffidence**⁴⁷². What did she mean, 'do what you want to'? Did she know? *Hey bhagwaan*, did she know? Was she giving him a hint? He ran to his best friend, Sooraj, and told him all that had happened.

"Do not worry," his **confidant**⁴⁷³ replied like a wise, old man, "she will soon agree to marry you. Wait and watch."

Ranjit waited for Rani to **affiance**⁴⁷⁴ herself to him and after two days, watched his peacock feather fall accidentally out of Sooraj's notebook. He was shocked! The **infidelity**⁴⁷⁵ of his would-be wife and the **perfidy**⁴⁷⁶ of his best friend broke his little heart.

The other *fidere* words are **infidel**⁴⁷⁷ and **affidavit**⁴⁷⁸.

Latin *credere* to believe

Bewafa ai sanam, tu gaya tera gam, ab nikaale hai dum.

The *ghazal* singer sang this *ghazal* which was about a lover's complaint to his **recreant**⁴⁷⁹ sweetheart, who had not had the courage to **defy** her parents and had **meekly**⁴⁸⁰ married somebody else.

⁴⁷⁰ **Defiant:** (adj) refusing to follow orders. (v): **defy**. (n): **defiance**.

⁴⁷¹ **Scoff:** (v) ridicule

⁴⁷² **Diffident:** (adj) lacking confidence, nervous, shy.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *fides*, faith => 'the faith is shattered apart' => 'having no faith' => 'mistrusting'

⁴⁷³ **Confidant:** (n) a trusted friend with whom one shares secrets.

Origin: L *con-*, with + *fides*, faith => 'one to whom you tell things with the faith that he will not misuse the information.'

⁴⁷⁴ **Affiance:** (v) to promise to be faithful, like the bride and groom do during the marriage ceremony.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *fidere*, to trust => 'to promise to keep the trust'

⁴⁷⁵ **Infidelity:** (n) unfaithfulness; cheating on one's sexual partner.

Origin: opposite of **fidelity**.

⁴⁷⁶ **Perfidy:** (n) back-stabbing; a **deliberate** action done against someone who has total faith and trust in the doer of the action.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *fides*, faith => 'through faith' => 'harm through faith'

⁴⁷⁷ **Infidel:** (n) unbeliever

❑ A person who does not believe in a particular religion is called an **infidel** by the people of that religion. The Muslims use the word *kaafir* for **infidels**.

⁴⁷⁸ **Affidavit:** (n) a written statement made under oath before an authorized officer.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *fides*, faith => 'he has sworn that he can be trusted.'

⁴⁷⁹ **Recreant:** (adj) not loyal; cowardly

Origin: L *re-*, back + *credere*, to believe => 'to take back one's belief when faced with difficulties' => 'not being loyal to your belief till your last fighting breath' => 'an act of cowardice'

⁴⁸⁰ **Meek:** (adj) submissive

Sitting in the audience, Kripa remembered her own **recreant** sweetheart. It had happened five years ago but the pain was still fresh.

She was a **credulous**⁴⁸¹ girl who had just entered her college. When Navin, who stayed as a tenant in her house and was seven-year older, told her that he loved her and could not live without her, she believed him. She believed all the promises that he made to her and ran away with him. A week later, when they were waiting for a train, he excused himself saying that he was going to the toilet. He never came back. She was left **stranded**⁴⁸² at the platform, with no money and nowhere to go. He had taken the bag containing all her cash and jewellery with him. She was so embittered by that experience that she became **incredulous**⁴⁸³ of all men.

“You were thinking about him again, weren’t you?” Kripa’s colleague and best friend Abha asked her after the concert.

“Un-hun,” Kripa replied half-heartedly.

“Kripa, how long will you keep punishing yourself for one wrong choice? Not all men are like him, you know. There are **credible**⁴⁸⁴ men in this world.”

The other words from this root are:

Credence⁴⁸⁵, **credo**⁴⁸⁶, **miscreant**⁴⁸⁷

⁴⁸¹ **Credulous:** (adj) one who believes anything too easily, with no doubts or suspicion ever coming to his mind.

Origin: L *credere*, to believe

- ❑ The child was waiting for his mother outside the gate of his school. A heavy man in jeans and a t-shirt came to him, smiled, bent down to his height and told him that his mother had met with an accident and had asked him to get her son from the school to him. The **credulous** child started crying. “Uncle, is mama dead?” “No beta, mama is all right. I will take you to mama, do you want to go to mama?” The child nodded. The kidnapper took him away.

⁴⁸² **Strand:** (v) to leave in a helpless position.

⁴⁸³ **Incredulous:** (adj) not believing.

Origin: opposite of credulous

⁴⁸⁴ **Credible:** (adj) believable

Origin: L *credere*, to believe

- ❑ “Today’s newspaper says that there is a strong wave in favour of Sewa Dal in this election. It’s going to win, I tell you,” one old man sitting under the peepal tree in the village square said. “Ha!” said another. “Neither the journalists nor the elections in this country are **credible**. Newspapers say what they have been paid to say and elections are always rigged. There is no wave-shave in favour of Sewa Dal. Its leaders are doling out free liquor and money to the poor in exchange for their voter cards. That is why they will win.”

⁴⁸⁵ **Credence:** (n) belief that something or someone is trustworthy.

Origin: L *credere*, to believe

- ❑ The groom was just about to place the *jaimaala* around the bride’s neck when a woman entered the hall, crying “*Nahin, yeh shaadi nahin ho sakti!*” Everyone was stunned when she declared that the groom had already married her. The marriage photographs that she produced gave **credence** to her story. “Yes!” everybody **gasp**ed. “Those pictures are of the groom, indeed!”
- ❑ The girl’s angry brothers immediately started beating the groom. Her parents were still in shock. That boy, his innocent looks, his simple words...they had had no doubt that he was **credible**, that they could entrust their daughter to him.

⁴⁸⁶ **Credo:** (n) a formula that you believe in.

Origin: L *credo*, I believe

- ❑ My **credo** is: Work hard, party harder.
- ❑ He lives by the **credo** “Do not accept anything without questioning.”

⁴⁸⁷ **Miscreant:** (n) a villain type of a person, an evil doer.

Origin: L *mis-*, not + *credere*, to believe => ‘one who does not believe in your religion’ => ‘a person who hasn’t yet found the true god’ => ‘an evil person’

- ❑ Two **miscreants** snatched a gold-chain and a mobile phone from a woman in broad daylight.
- ❑ An unidentified **miscreant** set a bus on fire.

Latin *amor* **love**

Amor was the Roman god of love. He was **depicted**⁴⁸⁸ as a nude winged boy with a bow and a **quiver**⁴⁸⁹ of arrows. People hit by Amor's arrows fell in love with the first person they saw after being wounded.

*Amor-1: amorous*⁴⁹⁰, *amatory*⁴⁹¹, *enamored*⁴⁹²

*Amor-2: inamorata*⁴⁹³, *paramour*⁴⁹⁴, *amateur*⁴⁹⁵

⁴⁸⁸ **Depict:** (v) to show something through a picture or a painting; to paint a picture through words.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *pingere*, to paint => 'to paint something down.' Please note how the part–pict of '**depict**' comes from *pingere*. What does this tell you? That the words 'painting' and 'picture' have the same root!

⁴⁸⁹ **Quiver:** (n) a case for holding arrows. There is another **quiver** which means: (v) to tremble; (n) a slight shake a tremor.

❑ The old lady pierced her with her sharp gaze and never **quivered** an eyelash.

❑ **Quivering** fingers indicate either extreme weakness or cold.

❑ Her pale lips **quivered** as she listened to how her husband had **jeopardized** his life to save an old man from armed robbers outside a bank. Tears ran down her cheeks and she moved forward and tightly hugged him and kissed him and thanked God for saving him.

The word **quaver** too means the same as the second meaning of **quiver**.

⁴⁹⁰ **Amorous:** (adj) full of love, especially sexual love.

Origin: L *amor*, love

❑ Her colleagues accused her of having an **amorous** relationship with the boss. "Don't we understand why you are the one who gets all the promotions and goes to all the out-station trips with the boss," they **insinuated**. She was shocked and enraged by the **innuendos**.

❑ A few examples of **amorous** songs from Bollywood are: *mere dil mein aaj kya hai kaho toh main bataa doon, bhool gaya sab kuchh, jaadu hai nasha hai, bheege honth tere, zara zara touch me touch me, beedi jalai le jigar se piya*.

❑ The poet wrote about both the **mundane** everyday matters as well as **amorous** experiences, and with great style.

Mundane: (adj) boring, routine.

⁴⁹¹ **Amatory:** (adj) related to love, especially sexual love.

Origin: L *amor*, love

❑ The song *bhool gaya sab kuchh* from the film *Julie* is full of **amatory** embraces.

❑ In the song *bindiya chamkegi, choodi khankegi*, the heroine tries to attract the hero by singing and dancing provocatively on the terrace where he is trying to study. Initially, he tries to concentrate on his book but then does get into an **amatory** mood.

⁴⁹² **Enamored:** (adj) (usually followed by 'of' or 'by') in love with, charmed by

Origin: L *en-*, in + *amor*, love

❑ The rich businessman became excessively **enamored** of the film actress, so much so that he divorced his wife of 20 years without as much as a second thought, so that he could convince the actress of his love for her.

⁴⁹³ **Inamorata:** (n) female lover.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *amor*, love => 'to fall in love.' The male who falls 'in amour' is called an **inamorato**.

❑ Rudra was deputed to America for six months but he kept the flame of his love burning bright by writing passionate love e-mails to his **inamorata** every day.

❑ Her **inamorato** was fifteen years younger to her.

⁴⁹⁴ **Paramour:** (n) the lover of a married person; any lover

Origin: L *per-*, thorough + *amor*, love => 'one who loves thoroughly, passionately'

❑ The wife hired a detective to keep track of her husband's movements. She was sure he had a **paramour** hidden somewhere.

❑ A woman and her **paramour** were stabbed to death allegedly by the former's husband.

⁴⁹⁵ **Amateur:** (n) a person who does an activity just because he loves doing it and not to make it his profession or to earn money out of it.

Origin: L *amator*, lover

❑ "There was a moment when I changed from an **amateur** to a professional. I assumed the burden of a profession, which is to write even when you don't want to, don't much like what you're writing, and aren't writing particularly well."—Agatha Christie

❑ Internet has proved to be a **boon** for **amateurs**. You may be an **amateur** photographer or painter or cartoonist or poet or writer or philosopher. All you need today is a website or a blog and you can showcase your work to the whole world.

❑ There are two types of sports—professional and **amateur**. **Amateur** sports are those that require the players to participate without **remuneration**. Professional players, on the other hand, get match fees for playing.

Amor was known by another, definitely more famous, name—Cupid! The Greeks knew the same god as Eros. That is where we get the words **cupidity**⁴⁹⁶ and **erotic**⁴⁹⁷ from.

When one is in love, well, *kuchh kuchh hota hai!* In the movie by that name, when his **professor**⁴⁹⁸ asks Rahul to define love, he says, ‘*Pyaar dosti hai. Love is friendship.*’ That statement makes his best friend Anjali think that he probably loves her and she realizes, for the first time, her own deep love for him.

Apparently, Romans shared Rahul’s belief. Their words for friendship, listed below, came from *amor*.

Amity⁴⁹⁹, **amiable**⁵⁰⁰, **amicable**⁵⁰¹ and **inimical**⁵⁰²

⁴⁹⁶ **Cupidity:** (n) extreme greed.

Origin: L *cupere*, to desire

- ❑ The girl was shocked at the **cupidity** of her in-laws. She shook her husband in frustration. “My parents have already mortgaged their house to meet all your demands. Now, from where will they buy you a car?” “I don’t know that,” he replied **callously**. “Either bring a car or don’t come back to my house. How happy they must be feeling now, after **foisting** their daughter on us. It is we, I, who will have to carry your burden for the next fifty years. That car is the least your parents can do for me.”
- ❑ “**Cupidity debases.**” The Quran

Callous: (adj) unfeeling, hard-hearted.

Foist: (v) to give by force to someone who does not want to take it.

Debase: (v) degrade either in quality or in morals, character, etc.

⁴⁹⁷ **Erotic:** (adj) related with or full of sexual love; **amatory**.

Origin: Gk *Eros*, god of love

- ❑ The king spent all his time in **erotic** pleasures. He had 16 wives and 150 **concubines**.
- ❑ The *Kamasutra* is an **erotic** book.
- ❑ The **genre** of literature and art dealing with sexual love is called **Erotica**.

⁴⁹⁸ **Profess:** (v) to claim, to declare openly, to practice a profession; (n): professor, profession.

- ❑ Article 25 of the constitution gives one the right to practice and **profess** one’s religion.
- ❑ Bhatti **professed** great knowledge on the subject of automobiles. He would thoughtfully inspect broken down vehicles and his expert verdict usually was: “*iske carburetor mein kachra hai*”.

⁴⁹⁹ **Amity:** (n) friendship

Origin: L *amor*, love -> *amicus*, friendly

- ❑ The children forgave and forgot all injuries and clasped hands in **amity**.
- ❑ Indo-Pak **amity** can truly happen only after the Kashmir issue is resolved.

⁵⁰⁰ **Amiable:** (adj) friendly, good-natured; (adv): **amiably**: ‘in a friendly, good-natured manner.’

Origin: L *amicus*, friendly

- ❑ “How are you?” Sheila asked Swati. Swati laughed **amiably**. “Well, my boat is sailing on **amiable** seas. What about you?”
- ❑ He had not a handsome face, but it was better than handsome—it was extremely **amiable** and cheerful. So **amiable** were his temper and manners that I introduced him to everyone in the party, and everywhere he was a favourite.

⁵⁰¹ **Amicable:** (adj) showing friendliness or goodwill, that which brings peace and is acceptable to both parties.

Origin: L *amicus*, friendly

- ❑ The Hindus of the city were **adamant** on demolishing the local mosque and building a temple on its site. They claimed that 400 years ago, the mosque had been built by razing a temple and now they wanted to **retaliate**. The Muslims of course declared that they would die before letting the mosque be touched. The situation was tense. Many well-meaning **intermediaries** tried to consult the leaders of both communities and reach an **amicable** solution. They proposed that the temple be constructed right next to the mosque.
- ❑ “Please let us not go to the court,” the businessman said sweetly to the angry client who had come to his office to threaten him with legal action. “It will waste the time and money of both of us. I am sure we can reach an **amicable** settlement. I apologise for not being able to deliver the goods on time. Please tell me how I can **redress** your losses.”

Redress: (v) set right, compensate.

⁵⁰² **Inimical:** (adj) unfriendly, hostile, harmful.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *amicus*, friendly => ‘unfriendly.’ **Inimical** is the adjective form of ‘enemy.’

- ❑ It is safe to drink boiled water because high temperature is **inimical** to bacteria.
- ❑ You are not allowed to think in answering this question. Ready? Name a country **inimical** to India. Did you say ‘Pakistan’? 95% of the respondents to a survey gave the same answer. The rest answered US, China or Talibaan (yes, some people thought Talibaan was a country).

Latin **odium** **hatred**

Shafi was restless! She felt like a caged bird which desperately banged its head against the walls of its cage, thinking that its **odium**⁵⁰³ was mighty enough to break the cage, and feared that like that bird, she too would die banging her head and not a single dent would have been made into the walls. She was trapped! And, trapped for life! Oh no! No! Even the thought of that **odious**⁵⁰⁴ prospect made her start banging her head again. How badly she wanted to escape!

Shafi was 16 when she had been married, much, much against her wishes, by her uncle (she used to call him her **surrogate** father till then) to a 40-year-old man in exchange of a favour. That **odious** 'husband' of hers had come **doddering**⁵⁰⁵ to her on the wedding night and without so much as a word of greeting had imposed his drunken body upon her. Ugh! Her face **contorted** in **odium** each time she remembered that- and wasn't each night of her marriage the same?- night and the **nauseating** smell of alcohol on the beast's body. How *had* she managed to survive it all? Bearing his **noisome**⁵⁰⁶ body in the night, polishing his **noisome** shoes in the morning and getting kicked by them in the evening, cleaning his clothes and getting hers torn and doing just that, day after day after frustrating day. The marriage had killed her! She felt old and gray already, had forgotten how to smile—she who used to be so lively—and had to drag herself, had to force herself to wake up to another day; **ennui**⁵⁰⁷ seemed to have settled in her bones. She would not be able to last another year; before long she would hang herself from the fan.

No, she suddenly decided, rather than killing herself, she would abort the child. That drunkard did not know about it yet. He never would. She would never come back.

She took all the money she found in the house and left that **odious** place without so much as looking back for a last look.

Latin **arma** **tools, arms**

Army is from this root! The other words are:

Arma-1: **armada**⁵⁰⁸, **armament**⁵⁰⁹

Arma-2: **armistice**⁵¹⁰, **armor**⁵¹¹

⁵⁰³ **Oidium:** (n) intense hatred for something; the fact of being hated.

Origin: L *odium*, hatred.

⁵⁰⁴ **Odius:** (adj) hate-worthy

Origin: Adjective form of **odium**.

⁵⁰⁵ **Dodder:** (v) to walk shakily.

⁵⁰⁶ **Noisome:** (adj) disgusting; harmful for health

Origin: L annoy + some => 'that which annoys (either the mind or the body)'

Note that **noisome** has nothing to do with noise. It is most often used to describe unpleasant smells.

⁵⁰⁷ **Ennu:** (n) boredom

Origin: L *mihi in odio est*, I hate -> *inodiare*, to make hateful -> Fr *ennuyer*, hatred, boredom. The French *ennuyer* also led to the English word 'annoy.'

⁵⁰⁸ **Armada:** (n) fleet of warships.

Origin: L *arma*, tools of warfare

- ❑ A seven-ship **armada** carrying 10,000 sailors and marines set sail from the San Diego naval station in the US for duty in Iraq.
- ❑ US, Russia, France, UK, India and China are the only nations which have nuclear submarines in their **armada**.

⁵⁰⁹ **Armament:** (n) military equipment; in plural, **armaments** means 'overall military strength.'

⁵¹⁰ **Armistice:** (n) a temporary stopping of fighting by the agreement of both parties.

Origin: L *arma*, military tools + *-stitium*, a stopping => 'to stop using the tools (for some time)'

⁵¹¹ **Armor:** (n) a metal covering to protect the body against weapons.

- ❑ The princess was rescued by a knight in shining **armor**.

Latin *batre* **to beat**

The word ‘beat’ itself is a cousin of *batre*. And, what do you beat people with? A ‘bat’, again from the same root. When those people object to being beaten and try to **retaliate**, what is the situation that results called? A ‘battle’. A battle is also called a ‘combat’. Then, we have ‘debate’ which means ‘to beat down, to fight’ (L. *de-*, down). Thankfully, at least this fight remains verbal. ‘Rebate’ means ‘to beat back’ the stated cost, that is, to offer a partial refund or discount.

The other words from this root are: **Abate**⁵¹², **bate**⁵¹³

Latin *bellum* **war**

A ‘rebel’ is the guy who is at war with the government or the boss or the parents. And, a **bellicose**⁵¹⁴ brother is the troublesome younger fellow who seems to be at war with you. He shouts “Shut up!”, “Get lost!” or “Don’t you dare!” each time you try to say something to him. If some day, you do manage to retain your **equanimity** and not shout back, and the whole day passes peacefully, he picks up a fight over some small issue at the dinner table. His day doesn’t seem complete till he has fought with you, and given or received some bruises. And yes, the greatest joy of his life is to see you getting scolded from your parents. How he **revels**⁵¹⁵ each time that happens!

A **belligerent**⁵¹⁶ nation too likes fights; it does not listen to anybody and instead of resolving matters through discussions, tries to **cow**⁵¹⁷ down the other party. Aggression is the only route to **hegemony**⁵¹⁸ that such a nation seems to know.

⁵¹² **Abate:** (v) to lessen in intensity.

Origin: L *a-* + *batre*, to beat => ‘to beat back’

- ❑ The rain-storm **abated**, the lightning ceased, the thunder rolled among the distant hills, and the sun began to glisten on the wet leaves and the falling rain.
- ❑ It’s shameful that corruption continues **unabated** in all government offices.
- ❑ He faced many failures but his confidence was **unabated**.

Unabated: (adj) with no decrease at all.

⁵¹³ **Bate:** (v) to lessen the intensity of.

Origin: an alternate form of **abate**

- ❑ Almost the only current usage of ‘bate’ is in the phrase ‘bated breath’, as in “He waited for the results with **bated** breath.” This phrase was coined by Shakespeare.

⁵¹⁴ **Bellicose:** (adj) eager to fight.

- ❑ Sampat became **bellicose** after drinking alcohol. He walked out in the courtyard and started shouting to his sleeping neighbours to come out and face him and fight with him if they had the courage. His wife pleaded with him to go inside. He pushed her aside and continued with his hollering. When no one stirred in the next house even after he had shouted **obscenities** at them, he turned to his own wife. “You have ruined my life,” he said. Then, he went inside to his mother, who was assuring her crying grandchildren that everything was fine. “Mother, I will never forgive you. You ruined my life by marrying me,” he pointed at his wife in disgust, “to this woman.” It was with great effort that his mother and wife controlled their anger.

⁵¹⁵ **Revelry:** (n) noisy partying and fun-making; (v): **revel**

Origin: L *re-*, back + *bellum* => ‘to fight back’ => ‘to rebel’ => ‘to not follow the do’s and don’ts imposed by the society’ => ‘to go about doing what you like loudly, not caring whether anybody likes it or not’

⁵¹⁶ **Belligerent:** (adj) eager to fight and attack the other party; (n) one who is fighting a war.

- ❑ Many people become **belligerent** when they are in tension. “Madam, are you ok?” A jogger asked a woman who was crying alone in the park. “Who are you to ask?” She **glared** at him. “Get lost from here.”
- ❑ The Kauravs were the defeated party among the **belligerents** in the Mahabhartta.

⁵¹⁷ **Cow:** (v) to try to suppress someone by giving threats or using violence.

⁵¹⁸ **Hegemony:** (n) dominance in influence; leadership.

- ❑ The Southern states regard English as the alternative to a Hindi **hegemony**.

Exercise

Caput, men-, monere, (s)mer, kerd-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. When her husband lost his entire fortune in the stock market crash, she did not console him but *remonstrated*.
(a) complained to him (b) partied hard (c) guffawed (d) cried herself (e) warned him
2. The villain *cut off the head* of the hero's father.
(a) bemused (b) decapitated (c) capitulated (d) capsized (e) precipitated
3. He *mustered* an army of 80,000 men.
(a) destroyed (b) dispersed (c) was remembered by (d) gathered (e) attacked
4. Prakrit was a *vulgar language*.
(a) an indecent language (b) a historical language (c) a language spoken by the common people (d) an oral language (e) an overwrought language
5. The boy remembered his mother's *warning* and did not talk to the stranger.
(a) cordiality (b) commemoration (c) admonition (d) remonstrance (e) psychosis
6. The two brothers are in *accord* over this issue.
(a) agreement (b) deep thoughts (c) love (d) denial (e) dispute
7. The hero dangled from the *steep edge of the hill*.
(a) cliff (b) rambler (c) pitfall (d) omen (e) docket
8. Frankenstein's creator called him a *fiend*.
(a) a wonderful creation (b) a rare find (c) a devil (d) a creature whom one fears losing (e) an animal
9. The *confused* look on the student's face upon being asked a question convinced the teacher that he had not been paying attention.
(a) overwrought (b) musing (c) bemused (d) tottering (e) smirking
10. The king declared *an amnesty* for the prisoner.
(a) a memory-cleansing (b) a decapitation (c) a longer prison term (d) a pardon (e) less harder labour in the jail

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (c) 9. (c) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Lack of harmony: D _____
2. Loss of memory: A _____
3. Forewarning: P _____
4. The branch of medicine that deals with mental disorders: P _____
5. An aimless walk taken for pleasure: R _____
6. Something that inspires new thoughts in an artist: M _____
7. A remembering of the past: R _____
8. To surrender with conditions: C _____

9. Repeating the same thing, especially in different words: T_____
10. Madness: D_____

Answers:

discord, amnesia, premonition, psychiatry, ramble, muse, reminiscence, capitulate, tautology, dementia

Sanguis, reudh-, fidere, credere, :**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. The boy was *left all alone with no money and nowhere to go* at the railway station by his uncle.
(a) corroborated (b) made robust (c) incredulous (d) stranded (e) given a diadem
2. The crowd was *rambunctious*.
(a) confident (b) hard to control (c) sad (d) dancing (e) non-religious
3. He *thought deeply about* her suggestions.
(a) mulled over (b) affianced (c) scoffed at (d) defied (e) dappled
4. She *bolstered* his confidence.
(a) boosted (b) made fun of (c) feared (d) brought down (e) killed
5. The rumours were *unfounded*.
(a) were spread by an unknown source (b) spread till far above their base (c) were baseless (d) found no takers (e) died down
6. All false friends *leave* you in your time of need.
(a) ensanguine (b) bolster (c) swear fealty to (d) desert (e) flag
7. He *ridiculed* her claims.
(a) committed perfidy to (b) scoffed at (c) stranded (d) corroborated (e) rubbed grime over
8. It was a *sanguinary battle*.
(a) a forced battle (b) a battle in which lot of blood was spilled (c) a battle which started with the ritualistic sacrifice of an animal (d) a battle which started due to the murder of an important leader of one side by the other (e) a battle which had happy consequences
9. She was a *submissive* woman.
(a) defiant (b) ruddy (c) sanguine (d) meek (e) recreant
10. The crowd made him *lose his confidence*.
(a) diffident (b) incredulous (c) robust (d) sanguine (e) flag

Answers:

- 1 . (d) 2 . (b) 3 . (a) 4 . (a) 5 . (c) 6 . (d) 7 . (b) 8 . (b) 9 . (d) 10 . (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. One who believes easily: C_____
2. A person with whom one shares one's secrets: C_____
3. To kill a prominent person according to a pre-determined plan: A_____
4. An evil doer: M_____
5. Blood relationship: C_____
6. A heading or a title: R_____
7. To support a claim with evidence: C_____

8. Back-stabbing: P _____
 9. Calmness in a difficult situation: S _____
 10. Believable: C _____

Answers:

credulous, confidant, assassinate, miscreant, consanguinity, rubric, corroborate, perfidy, sangfroid, credible

Amor, odium, arma, batre, bellum:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *did painting as a hobby*.
 (a) was an amateur painter (b) was a paramour of painting (c) was an amorous painter (d) was a mundane painter (e) showed cupidity for painting
2. They talked about *mundane* things.
 (a) friendly (b) dreamy (c) sexual (d) love-related (e) ordinary
3. He was a *hate-worthy* young man.
 (a) a debased (b) an odious (c) an inamorata (d) a belligerent (e) an inimical
4. The two warring parties signed *an agreement to stop the fighting for some time*.
 (a) an armada (b) an armistice (c) an armament (d) armaments (e) a hegemony
5. They *redressed* her injury.
 (a) re-bandaged (b) compensated for (c) retold in fresh words (d) remade (e) apologised for
6. He became *bellicose* after hearing the results.
 (a) eager to fight (b) jubilant (c) harmful (d) nervous (e) drunk
7. He found her quite *friendly*.
 (a) erotic (b) amateur (c) amatory (d) amiable (e) enamoured
8. The society has become *callous to* misery and poverty.
 (a) sensitive (b) responsive (c) unresponsive (d) the cause of (e) intolerant to
9. The rain *abated*.
 (a) caused destruction (b) lessened in intensity (c) raged on (d) fell (e) did not fall.
10. It was a *foul* odour.
 (a) a debased (b) a foisted (c) a noisome (d) an amicable (e) a bated

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (e) 3. (b) 4. (b) 5. (b) 6. (a) 7. (d) 8. (c) 9. (b) 10. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Greed: C _____
2. Leadership by one state of the others: H _____
3. Hard-hearted: C _____
4. Fleet of warships: A _____
5. Disgusting: N _____
6. To give by force to someone who does not want to take it: F _____
7. Harmful: I _____

8. A tremor: Q_____

9. Intense hatred: O_____

10. Boredom: E_____

Answers:

cupidity, hegemony, callous, armada, noisome, foist, inimical, quiver, odium, ennui

KNOWLEDGE AND WISDOM

IE **gno-** to know

Say out ‘*gno*’ and then ‘know’. They sound similar, don’t they? ‘Know’ is a child of *gno-*. In Old English, all the ‘kn’ words, like ‘know’ and ‘kneel’, were pronounced with the ‘k’.

The Sanskrit words *gyaan* and *jaan* (the one in *jaan-pehchaan* and *jaankaari*, not the ‘*tu meri jaan hai*’ one) are also from the same root.

The idea of ‘knowing’ is **intimately**⁵¹⁹ related with ‘giving birth’ as is **evident** from the nearness between the roots *gen-* and *gno-*. In Sanskrit too, *jaan-na*, to know, is close to *jan-na*, to give birth. The English word ‘know’ also has an **archaic** meaning of ‘to have a sexual intercourse with.’

A noble man is ‘knowable’, an **ignoble**⁵²⁰ man is not. Someone who was well-known was called **notorious**⁵²¹ but now, the word is used only in the sense of being well-known for a bad thing.

⁵¹⁹ **Intimately:** (adv) very closely.

⁵²⁰ **Ignoble:** (adj) of low character. Opposite of ‘noble.’

Origin: L *in-*, not + *gno-*, to know => ‘not worthy of being known.’

- ❑ The Chief Minister played an **ignoble** role in the communal riots. Instead of controlling the violence, he gave statements which **incited** the passions of the majority community and encouraged them to express their anger through large-scale rioting, **arson** and **pillage**. The *tandava* continued **unabated** for three days because the Chief Minister had ordered the police to not arrest any person from the majority community and to register no FIRs from the minority community.
- ❑ Dalits have traditionally been called with many **ignoble** names.

Pillage: (n) the act of robbing violently; plunder

⁵²¹ **Notorious:** (adj) famous for a bad reason.

Origin: L *notus*, known

- ❑ The Indian Police is **notorious** for its inefficiency.
- ❑ The **notorious** criminal was finally arrested, after evading the police for twenty years.

An **ignorant**⁵²² man does not know anything. An **agnostic**⁵²³ too does not know, but the answer to one specific question—whether God exists or not. To ‘diagnose’ a disease means to know what it is from its symptoms. Once a doctor diagnoses a disease, he then **prognosticates**⁵²⁴ its future course.

The art of knowing the true character of a man, by studying his physical, especially his facial features, is called **physiognomy**⁵²⁵. Slowly, this tell-tale face itself started being called the **physiognomy** of a person.

When you say ‘I can do it,’ what you mean is ‘I know how to do it.’ The word ‘can’ means ‘having the know-how, knowledge.’ The brothers and sisters of ‘can’ are **canny**⁵²⁶, **uncanny**⁵²⁷ and **ken**⁵²⁸.

There are many more words in this treasure trove of knowledge. Let’s chant together the magic mantra that will open the doors of the *khazaana* to us! *Khulja simsim* had become far too common, so the password that the guardians of this treasure decided was “*Gnognoshuruo!*”

*Gno-1: Gnome*⁵²⁹, *acquaint*⁵³⁰, *quaint*⁵³¹

⁵²² **Ignoramus:** (n) a man who knows little or nothing.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *gno-*, to know => ‘one who does not know’

- ❑ Once, Nehru and a union minister of his cabinet were talking to a distinguished foreign guest. Nehru told the lady about the beauty of the Elephanta Caves and urged her to visit it before leaving India. The minister, who had never been to the Caves but wanted to miss no chance to please Nehru, immediately **blurted** out, “Yes madam, you will see many elephants there.” Nehru was shocked and embarrassed to discover that his cabinet minister was such an **ignoramus** who thought the Elephanta Caves were overrun by elephants.

⁵²³ **Agnostic:** (n) one who says that he does not know and that man cannot know whether God exists or not. Contrast this with a **theist**, who is confident that God exists and an **atheist**, who is equally confident that God does not exist.

Origin: Gk *a-*, not + *gno-*, to know => ‘one who does not know’

⁵²⁴ **Prognosis:** (n) a prediction about the progress of a disease and the chances of recovery. Such a prediction is called a **prognostication**.

Origin: Gk *pro-*, before + *gno-*, to know => ‘to know beforehand’

⁵²⁵ **Physiognomy:** (n) the face, especially when used to determine the character of a person.

Origin: Gk *physio-*, body + *gno-*, to know => ‘to know from bodily features’

- ❑ When someone says that he doesn’t trust a person with blue eyes, he is using a person’s **physiognomy** to make judgments about his character.
- ❑ The **physiognomist** claimed that he could analyse a person’s character by observing features like the condition of his hair, the structure and colour of his eyes, how he ate, how he spoke and the size of his chest.

⁵²⁶ **Canny:** (adj) very wise, knowing what to do, when to do and how much to do.

- ❑ In the early 1980s, the Government of India sent a team of technocrats to Japan to hunt for a **collaborator** for its Maruti project. Suzuki at that time was a very small player in the four-wheeler segment. However, the **canny** Chairman of the Suzuki Group, Osamu Suzuki, still managed to win the bid. That was because he made sure that he was present in all rounds of discussion with the Indian delegation whereas the big corporations like Toyota, Nissan and Honda had left the detailed technical presentations to their lower levels of management. This attention of Osamu Suzuki flattered the Indian team and also convinced them of the sincerity of his interest in their project.

⁵²⁷ **Uncanny:** (adj) that which cannot be explained with existing knowledge, supernatural, mysterious.

- ❑ The old man was woken up by an **uncanny** sound coming from the lobby. It was like the tick tick of a large clock, varied after every six ticks or so by a sound like a woman’s **stified** screams.

⁵²⁸ **Ken:** (n) knowledge, understanding; (v) to know.

- ❑ Rupa didn’t know what to say when her five-year-old son asked her what ‘sexy’ meant. He had heard the word from his playmates. She said: “*Beta*, you won’t understand it yet. It is beyond your **ken**. But don’t use the word. Good children do not say it.”
- ❑ The husband asked his wife what the name of the guy who had come up to them in the party the previous evening, was. “How absurd!” she replied. “How should I **ken** what the name was?”

⁵²⁹ **Gnome:** (n) creatures in European folk tales, described as old-aged dwarfs who guarded the treasures buried inside the earth.

Origin: Gk *gno-*, to know => ‘those with knowledge’

⁵³⁰ **Acquaint:** (v) to make known. A person whom you know is said to be your **acquaintance**.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *com-*, with + *gno-*, to know = *accognitare* => ‘to make known to’

⁵³¹ **Quaint:** (adj) charming because of its strangeness, especially if it is old-fashioned.

Origin: L *com-* + *gno-* => ‘to make known’ => ‘worth knowing’ => ‘interesting’

*Gno-2: cognition*⁵³², *cognizance*⁵³³, recognition

*Gno-3: cognoscenti*⁵³⁴, *incognito*⁵³⁵, *connoisseur*⁵³⁶

*Gno-4: reconnaissance*⁵³⁷, *reconnoiter*⁵³⁸

A related root is Latin *nota*, which means, ‘a mark or a note by which a thing may be known.’ It is found in noteworthy, **annotate**⁵³⁹, **connotation**⁵⁴⁰ and **denotation**⁵⁴¹.

- ❑ Radhe’s friends from the city exclaimed in delight when he showed them the **quaint** mud-and-thatch huts in his village. “Oh, how fantastic! And the roads are *kuchaa* too! And the fields all around! I’ve only heard of such scenes from my grandma,” his best friend said. “True,” chipped in another. “We can almost make ourselves believe that we have gone into the 18th century, isn’t it?” Radhe then took them to the pride of their village, a **quaint** Raghunath temple, which the local legend said, was built in the first century.

⁵³² **Cognition:** (n) mental ability to know things; the process of knowing; knowledge.

Origin: L *com-* + *gno-* => ‘to know’

- ❑ The abilities to sense, observe, recognize, think, judge and imagine are all essential for **cognition**.

⁵³³ **Cognizance:** (n) knowledge, notice.

Origin: L *com-* + *gno-* => ‘to know’

- ❑ The Principal took **cognizance** of the student’s excellent academic record and decided to give him one more chance.
- ❑ Taking **cognizance** of a newspaper report about how an MLA had allocated ‘Below Poverty Line’ cards to his middle-class supporters so that they could **procure** ration at **nominal** rates, the Chief Minister ordered an enquiry into the matter.
- ❑ To ‘recognize’ someone is to notice him again.

⁵³⁴ **Cognoscenti:** (n) a person with specialized knowledge in a field, usually the field of arts.

Origin: L *com-* + *gno-* => ‘the one who knows’

- ❑ The music which is liked by the man on the street is usually rejected by the **cognoscenti** and vice versa. Only very few musicians are able to win the approval of both the **connoisseurs** and the general public.

⁵³⁵ **Incognito:** (adv) under a false identity; (n) a person who does things incognito.

Origin: L *in-*, not + (*com-* + *gno-* = ‘to know’) => ‘not known’ => ‘unknown’

- ❑ The king used to walk the streets of his city **incognito** in the night.

⁵³⁶ **Connoisseur:** (n) a person with specialized knowledge in a field, usually the field of arts; cognoscenti.

Origin: L *com-* + *gno-* => ‘the one who knows’

- ❑ **Connoisseurs** and common man alike have been enthralled by the **grandeur** of *Mughal-e-Azam*.

⁵³⁷ **Reconnaissance:** (n) the act of surveying an area to know about its geography, etc.

Origin: From *re-* + *cognizance*

- ❑ The police caught a Pakistani terrorist while he was on a **reconnaissance** mission to Mumbai. From him, the police came to know that the terrorists were planning a major strike on the city.

⁵³⁸ **Reconnoiter:** (v) to survey an area to know about its geography, etc.

⁵³⁹ **Annotate:** (v) to add explanatory or critical notes to.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *nota*, note => ‘to add notes to’

- ❑ When you write your doubts or remarks on the margins of a document, or highlight some lines, you are **annotating** the text. Your remarks are called ‘**annotations**.’

⁵⁴⁰ **Connotation:** (n) the meaning or the idea that a word suggests.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *nota*, mark => ‘to mark together’ => ‘that which is marked together with the primary meaning of the word’

- ❑ The word ‘**notorious**’ only meant ‘famous’ to begin with. However, with time, it acquired a negative **connotation**. This means, that while it still meant ‘famous’, it started suggesting that the person in question was famous for a negative reason.
- ❑ The word ‘mother’ **connotes** ‘female, origin, warmth and unconditional love.’

⁵⁴¹ **Denotation:** (n) the basic meaning of a word, without its **connotations**.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *nota* => ‘to note down.’

- ❑ The words ‘inexpensive’ and ‘cheap’ have the same **denotation** but different **connotations**. They both mean ‘not expensive’ but the word ‘cheap’ has negative **connotation**.
It’s okay to say that someone was wearing an inexpensive dress but if you say that she was wearing a cheap dress, one gets the image of the lady as dressed distastefully.
- ❑ The symbol P denotes Pressure. That is, P means Pressure.

Greek *sophia* **wisdom**

A ‘philosopher’ pursues knowledge simply because he loves doing that (Gk *philo-*, loving). In contrast, the **sophists**⁵⁴², etymologically the ‘wise-ist’, were men who ‘did’ wisdom; that is, they made a business out of it.

Politics was the dream career for most of the young Greeks of fifth century B.C. The **sophists** exploited the opportunity by holding paid lectures all over the country, where they taught eager young men how to impress the masses and sway their beliefs. Anybody who attended the lectures, they claimed, could make the better reason appear the worse and vice versa, or give satisfactory replies on a subject he knew nothing about. This could be done by using difficult words, **convoluted** sentences, **exotic**⁵⁴³ **metaphors**⁵⁴⁴, **paradoxes**, etc. The dazzled listeners, in order not to let anyone think they were stupid, would quietly nod at the speaker’s **sophisticated**⁵⁴⁵ arguments without understanding an **iota**⁵⁴⁶ of them. Launching a personal attack on the opponent was another **sophistry**⁵⁴⁷ they taught to divert attention from the main issue.

Sophism is about *appearing* wise before others. Then there are the **sophomores**⁵⁴⁸, who genuinely think that the one year in college has made them quite wise. The truth is, though somewhat lesser, they are still morons. This **amalgamation** of *sophos*, wise, and *moros*, foolish, yielded ‘Sophomore.’

Latin *scire* **to know**

‘Science’ is knowledge. This simplest, and perhaps the most elegant, definition of science is given by the root of the word itself.

A man who is ‘conscious’ is well-aware; he knows what is happening around him. The self-knowledge of the rightness and wrongness of one’s actions is called ‘conscience’.



⁵⁴² **Sophist:** (n) a person whose reasoning is **fallacious** but is done so skillfully that the listeners believe it.

Fallacious: (adj) logically wrong, either because of ignorance or deliberately, in order to mislead. A fallacious argument is called a **fallacy**.

⁵⁴³ **Exotic:** (adj) foreign, unusual, new.

Origin: Gk *exo-*, out + *-tic* => ‘brought from outside’

☐ A tea festival *Cha cha* was organized in the city. Along with traditional brews like Kashmiri Kahwa, masaaledaar chai and taaza adraki chai, it served many **exotic** teas like Thai lemongrass tea, Chinese Green Tea, Lapsang Souchong and flavoured teas like Earl Grey and Caramel.

⁵⁴⁴ **Metaphor:** (n) a figure of speech which uses a word in a situation to which it is actually not applicable, in order to make an idea clear.

☐ Consider the phrase ‘sweet voice.’ The word ‘sweet’ actually cannot be used for ‘voice’ because ‘voice’ is not a thing; you cannot keep it on your tongue and taste it. However, using the word ‘sweet’ for voice immediately tells the reader that it is very pleasant sounding- as pleasant to the ear as sweets are to the tongue. Thus, the word sweet is used **metaphorically** here.

⁵⁴⁵ **Sophisticated:** (adj) very complex or complicated, lacking natural simplicity; worldly-wise.

Origin: Gk *Sophia*, wisdom => ‘very wise and knowledgeable’

⁵⁴⁶ **Iota:** (n) a very small amount, a jot.

Origin: Gk *iota*, the ninth and the smallest letter of the Greek alphabet (just like i is the smallest letter in the English alphabet) => very small amount

☐ I do not care an **iota** about what anyone says.

We can use the words ‘**jot**’ or ‘**whit**’ instead of ‘iota’ in the sentence above.

⁵⁴⁷ **Sophistry:** (n) a clever method of reasoning which makes an argument seem plausible on the surface. Only if one inspects the line of reasoning with care does one see the many **fallacies** it contains.

⁵⁴⁸ **Sophomore:** (n) a person in the second year of high school or college, or of any endeavour. **Sophomoric** means ‘like a **sophomore**—intellectually pretentious, overconfident, conceited, etc., but immature.’

The villagers were in **awe** of the new Swami ji. He had come to their village a week ago, in the course of his **peregrinations**⁵⁴⁹. They felt very proud when he decided to settle down there.

“Have you seen the glow on his face?” They discussed in the village square. “He seems one with God!”

“*Haan bhai*, he meditated in the Himalayas for 500 years,” said another.

“Five hundred years!” Most of the people did not know this.

“Yes,” the man continued with **reverence**. “That too, without eating or drinking anything or even answering the nature’s call. Can you imagine that?”

“That must require **prodigious**⁵⁵⁰ willpower!” Someone **gasped**. “No ordinary man can be so **conscientious**⁵⁵¹!”

“That is why we also remain **nescient**⁵⁵²,” said another. “Swami ji, on the other hand, is **omniscient**⁵⁵³. He knows everything about everybody’s past and their future. Nothing is hidden from him.”

“That reminds me,” another man chipped in. “Let me tell you how **prescient**⁵⁵⁴ Swami ji is. I was among the first ones to pay **obeisance** to him. It was a week ago, the very day he arrived. He blessed my head and with a smile said that joy was coming my way. I didn’t understand what he meant. The very next day, Bheekhu came to my home and returned the money that I had given to him three years ago, with interest! I had lost all hope of ever seeing it again!”

“Bheekhu returned your money?” Many men were **astounded**⁵⁵⁵. One asked. “But why did you lend to him in the first place? We all know what an **unconscionable**⁵⁵⁶ fellow he is.”

⁵⁴⁹ **Peregrination**: (n) travel from place to place, esp. on foot.

⁵⁵⁰ **Prodigious**: (adj) marvelous, extraordinarily huge.

- ❑ She is undoubtedly a **prodigious** talent with a bright future.
- ❑ The poet’s output in the last one year has been **prodigious**.
- ❑ “I must have a **prodigious** amount of mind; it takes me as much as a week, sometimes, to make it up!”
- ❑ —Mark Twain

See also, **prodigy**.

⁵⁵¹ **Conscientious**: (adj) one who listens to his conscience and, therefore, never does the wrong thing; very careful in his work.

Origin: conscience

- ❑ The new doctor was **conscientious**. He refused to prescribe expensive tests to patients to earn commission from the testing laboratories, something that all his colleagues did.
- ❑ The new doctor was **conscientious**. He spent a lot of time with each patient and asked him a large number of questions about the symptoms to make sure that he had, indeed, made the correct diagnosis. His colleagues barely spent more than a minute on a patient.

⁵⁵² **Nescient**: (adj) not knowing anything; ignorant.

Origin: L *ne-*, not + *scientia*, knowledge

⁵⁵³ **Omniscient**: (adj) one who knows everything.

Origin: L *omni-*, all + *scient-*, knowing

- ❑ The story of Charles Dickens’ novel *Bleak House* is narrated in part by the novel’s heroine, Esther Summerson, and partly by an **omniscient** narrator.

⁵⁵⁴ **Prescience**: (n) foreknowledge, knowledge of things before they happen.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *scientia*, knowledge => ‘knowledge beforehand’. Notice that the word foreknowledge has an exactly parallel construction. *Pre-* = *fore*; *scientia* = knowledge

⁵⁵⁵ **Astounded**: (adj) shocked with surprise.

Origin: alternate form of ‘astonished’.

⁵⁵⁶ **Unconscionable**: (adj) not listening to his conscience, done by not listening to one’s conscience.

Origin: L *un-*, not + *conscionable*. *Conscionable* is the now out-of-fashion opposite of *unconscionable*.

“It had been only a few months since he came to live in our village, and I did not yet know the **niceties**⁵⁵⁷ of his character. And when I discovered them, ask me how I repented! But within a day of Swami ji’s arrival, he gave me my money. That is the power of Swami ji!”

“It’s Swami ji’s power, indeed!”

Swami ji left the village that very night. The “**omniscient**” Swami ji had been informed by one of his *chelas* that the police had come to know of his latest **guise** and would reach the village the next morning.

IE *bheud-* awareness

‘Buddha’ means The Enlightened One. Gaya, where Buddha got enlightenment, has been called Bodh Gaya ever since. The Sanskrit word *bodh* means knowledge, awareness, and the centre of that awareness—the brain—is called *budhi*.

The English cousin of *bodh* is the verb **bode**⁵⁵⁸.

Rudraksh’s mother did not let him step out of the house on his birthday, because in her dream that morning, she had seen him being attacked by goons and lying blood-splattered on the road. Such a **gory**⁵⁵⁹ dream certainly did not **bode** well, she told him, when he wanted to know why he could not go out.

A **foreboding**⁵⁶⁰ and an **ombudsman**⁵⁶¹ are the etymological siblings of ‘bode.’

Latin *rerī* to think, calculate

The panchayat of Goraan village **arraigned**⁵⁶² Shiju Mall for marrying his son out of caste. The old man came with folded hands and bowed head and submitted that the marriage was not preplanned. His son had gone to attend the wedding of his friend’s sister, but just before the **nuptial** vows, the bridegroom’s father had demanded an impossible dowry; the girl’s family could not supply it and the *baraat* went back. To save the girl’s honour, his son offered to be

⁵⁵⁷ **Nicety**: (n) a fine detail, something requiring extreme care.

⁵⁵⁸ **Bode**: (v) to foretell, to be an **omen** of.

❑ Many people believe that a black cat crossing your way does not **bode** well for the work you have set out to do.

⁵⁵⁹ **Gory**: (adj) full of blood; unpleasant.

Origin: gore, ‘blood.’ So ‘gory’ means ‘bloody’ and because it is unpleasant to see blood, ‘gory’ means ‘unpleasant’ too.

⁵⁶⁰ **Foreboding**: (n) a strong inner feeling about what is going to happen in the future; a prediction.

Origin: Fore, before + *bodh*, knowledge => ‘knowledge beforehand.’

❑ The Hindi **counterpart** of **foreboding** is *prabodhan*, made of Skt *pra-*, before + *bodh*, knowledge.

❑ Rudraksh’s mother did not let him step out of the house on his birthday because she had a **foreboding** that something bad was going to happen to him.

❑ Two women, one old and one young, were talking in the park. A young woman joined them. They asked her how her pregnant sister was. “Oh, she’s alright,” she said sadly. “A daughter was born to her.” “Oh,” the other young woman moaned in sympathy. “Didn’t they get the sex test done?” “They did. The doctor had told my sister it was a boy.” The old lady, who had listening to them silently, now spoke up, her words full of **foreboding**. She said: “Twenty years later, when you will not be able to find brides for your sons, you will all remember this day and **lament**,” she looked at the **dismayed** aunt of the new-born girl, “why you didn’t let more girls be born.”

⁵⁶¹ **Ombudsman**: (n) a person who hears and tries to resolve the complaints of the people against the authorities.

Origin: Swedish *um-*, around + *bodh*, command + *man* => ‘a man who has the authority to command around’

❑ The **Ombudsman** for local self-government institutions, Justice H.K. Sinha, held a sitting in the village Rudgarh. Thirty-nine cases were heard and four cases decided.

❑ Shefali Gandhi, Banking **Ombudsman** for Orissa and Chief General Manager of Reserve Bank of India (RBI), said that she has received the highest number of complaints for **redress** from customers of ABC Bank, followed by the Rural Indian Bank. She said a major chunk of complaints that she received was in respect of credit cards. The complainants nursed a **grouse** about billing and some other issues which taxed their purse.

⁵⁶² **Arraign**: (v) accuse; to call an accused person before a court to hear his response to the charges made against him.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *rerī*, to reason => ‘to hear the reason’

her groom. “The boy got emotional,” his father pleaded before the five wise men, “and acted **irrationally**⁵⁶³. That was his only **foible**⁵⁶⁴. There was nothing between him and the girl before, may God kill me if I am lying.”

The panchayat **conferred** as the villagers and the fearful father looked on. Then, the Sarpanch spoke up. “You have tried to **rationalize**⁵⁶⁵ your son’s crime but we refuse to accept your explanation. There is a **rationale**⁵⁶⁶ behind our traditions; that is why they have stood for so long. We cannot let them be **undermined**⁵⁶⁷ by mere, momentary emotions. We cannot **ratify**⁵⁶⁸ this marriage, or else tomorrow, every young man and woman will marry whosoever they will, **citing** their emotions. What will happen to our society then? No, we cannot **ratify** this marriage. The panchayat of Goraan directs you to either **annul** the marriage or leave the village with your family.”

The one other word from this root is **ratiocination**⁵⁶⁹, the very thing that such **autocratic**⁵⁷⁰ panchayats do not allow.

Greek *dokein* **to think, believe**

⁵⁶³ **Rational:** (adj) logical, based on reason, having the ability to reason.

Origin: L *rerī*, to reason -> *ration*, reason (reason too is from the same root) -> rational

⁵⁶⁴ **Foible:** (n) a small weakness of character, not a major character defect.

Origin: Old French *feble*, weak. The word ‘**feeble**’ which means ‘weak’ too is from the same root.

❑ The sick man spoke **feebly**. The prolonged disease had made him **feeble**.

⁵⁶⁵ **Rationalize:** (v) to make logical, to make an action look logical when actually it is not.

❑ The husband **rationalized** slapping his wife by saying that it was her mistake to have brought him plain water when she knew that he liked his water cold.

⁵⁶⁶ **Rationale:** (n) reason, logical basis for something.

⁵⁶⁷ **Undermine:** (v) to weaken something secretly by gradually eroding the foundation on which it stands.

Origin: under+ mine => ‘to mine under a structure’ => ‘to weaken the foundation on which the structure stands.’

❑ The growing influence of Western culture on the Indian youth has **undermined** the institution of marriage in India.

❑ Smoking **undermines** one’s health.

⁵⁶⁸ **Ratify:** (v) to approve officially.

Origin: L *rerī*, to reason + *facere*, to make => ‘to make a reasoned decision’

❑ The State Assembly **ratified** the Reservation Bill.

❑ The Governing Council of the school **ratified** the appointment of the new teachers.

⁵⁶⁹ **Ratiocinate:** (v) to reason methodically.

Origin: L *ration*, reason

❑ What are now termed ‘detective stories’ were earlier called ‘tales of **ratiocination**.’

❑ Can you spot the error in this **ratiocination**? Let $x=0$. So, $x(x-1)=0 \Rightarrow x-1=0 \Rightarrow x=1 \Rightarrow 0=1$.

Well, the error lies in the second step. If $x=0$, we cannot write the second equation because it is just another way of writing $x-1 = 0/x$, that is, $0/0$. Division by 0 is not allowed.

⁵⁷⁰ **Autocrat:** (n) a ruler who has all the powers and is not subject to any restrictions, a dictator.

Origin: Gk *auto*, self + *-crat*, ruler => ‘one who rules by himself’ => ‘he rules without consulting or needing to consult anyone’ => ‘he has all the authority and needs not to listen to anyone’

❑ Nagendra became the King of Zhaq in 1672 and ruled as an **autocrat** for some 18 years. Then, when he could not suppress the people’s rebellion any longer, he smartly got such a Constitution made which turned Zhaq into a democracy but gave the king the right to **veto** any decision of the democratic government.

Veto: (n) the right to cancel a decision.

Origin: L *veto*, I forbid.

The words **dogma**⁵⁷¹ and **dogmatic**⁵⁷² are built on *dokein*.

Dokein is a verb. The noun form of ‘think’ is ‘thought’, of ‘believe’ is ‘belief’, and of *dokein* is *doxa*.

“*Doxa!*” did you exclaim, and immediately think of orthodoxy? Well, an **orthodox**⁵⁷³ follower of a religion is not the only one with *doxa*. **Paradox**⁵⁷⁴ and **heterodoxy**⁵⁷⁵ have it too.

The individual who does think by himself is very rare. Most of the people believe what they have been taught to believe. That is why, closely related to the Greek root *doxa* is the Latin root **docere**, to teach.

The word ‘doctor’ originally meant a teacher, and because a teacher is considered to be an authority on his subject, it came to be used in the sense of ‘an expert, an authority.’ Someone who has earned the highest academic degree **conferred** by a university in his discipline, therefore, deserves to be called a doctor. The doctor to whom we go with our ailments is technically, the doctor of medicine.

⁵⁷¹ **Dogma:** (n) an established belief or principle which everyone considers to be true; a group of such beliefs.

Origin: Gk *dokein*, to believe

- ❑ Science needs a willingness to challenge old **dogma**. Only that person can develop a new idea who first has the courage to question the conventional wisdom.
- ❑ “Your time is limited, so don’t waste it living someone else’s life. Don’t be trapped by **dogma**—which is living with the results of other people’s thinking. Don’t let the noise of others’ opinions drown out your own inner voice. And most important, have the courage to follow your heart and **intuition**. They somehow already know what you truly want to become. Everything else is secondary.”—Steve Jobs

⁵⁷² **Dogmatic:** (adj) related with **dogma**; stubbornly sticking to one’s beliefs, asserting that they are the only correct beliefs there can be and not willing to listen to any other point of view at all.

- ❑ Parenting is a tough job. Parents should not be **dogmatic**. They should shed rigid assumptions. Their children should feel confident that their viewpoint too is considered, even if it contradicts their parents’, and their individuality respected.
- ❑ Scientists cannot be **dogmatic**. They are driven by experimental results. So, if something turns up which contradicts the prevalent line-of-thought, they change their belief and create some new theory which will be able to accommodate the new results. For example, Francis Crick, the man who co-discovered the DNA with James Watson, had once said that the central **dogma** of Molecular Biology was “DNA makes RNA makes protein”. This **dogma** held sway until some virus hunters discovered that there are viruses that have no DNA in them at all and yet they are able to infect cells and multiply.

⁵⁷³ **Orthodox:** (adj) sticking to one’s beliefs or the common beliefs.

Origin: Gk *ortho-*, straight, right + *doxa*, belief => ‘having the right belief’

- ❑ Sharda grew up in the early 1900s in an **orthodox** family. She was lucky that her father supported girls’ education. He enrolled her into a school, much against the wishes of her grandparents and uncles. Her grandmother had even refused to eat food for two days.

⁵⁷⁴ **Paradox:** (n) a statement which contradicts the general opinion and seems totally impossible, but is actually based on some logic and may be true.

Origin: Gk *para-*, opposite + *doxa*, opinion => ‘contrary to the general opinion’

- ❑ It is an interesting **paradox** that the lesser facilities a student has, the better he does in competitive exams. Despite lacking even basic amenities, the students in Bihar achieve seats in IITs while the rich youth in Punjab, who have the best of everything, are increasingly dropping out of colleges and getting addicted to narcotics.
- ❑ The **paradox** of our time in history is that we lead easier but more complicated lives. Technology has simplified our lives greatly. Yet, humans have never been so much under stress and tensions as today.

⁵⁷⁵ **Heterodoxy:** (n) holding such beliefs which are contrary to or different from the generally accepted ones.

Origin: L *hetero-*, different + *doxa*, belief

- ❑ Emperor Akbar’s religious beliefs were **heterodox**. He wanted that all people in his rule should worship as they wanted to and showed equal respect to all religions. He later started a **syncretic** religion of his own—Din-e-Ilahi—which was a fusion of the main philosophies of all the religions of his land.

Syncretic: (adj) combining different types of beliefs.

The other words from *docere* are: **docile**⁵⁷⁶, **doctrine**⁵⁷⁷, **indoctrinate**⁵⁷⁸, **doctrinaire**⁵⁷⁹

Latin *scriber* to write

In 82 BC, Lucius Cornelius Sulla became the dictator of Rome and immediately published at all the public places, a list of ‘the internal enemies of the state.’

Around 1,500 nobles were on this list. Their citizenship was **revoked** and their property was **confiscated**⁵⁸⁰ by the state. Sulla directed the Romans to have no relation and sympathy whatsoever to a **proscribed**⁵⁸¹ man; anybody who did was punished, mostly by death. The citizens who informed the state about the whereabouts of any ‘man on the list’ were richly rewarded.

⁵⁷⁶ **Docile:** (adj) teachable, easy to manage, obedient.

Origin: L *docere*, to teach => ‘teachable’

- ❑ **Docility** is considered to be a must-have **virtue** for women in India. A *bhartiya naari* is supposed to always keep her eyes and her head down, never raise her voice, and to never take even a toe-nail outside the will of her father, brothers and later, husband and in-laws. “*Hamaari beti toh gau hai*,” parents tell her prospective in-laws with great pride. A ‘good woman’ means a **docile** woman. One who is not **docile** is immediately labelled a **shrew**, a **termagant**.

Shrew: (n) an ill-tempered scolding woman.

Termagant: (n) an ill-tempered scolding woman.

⁵⁷⁷ **Doctrine:** (n) beliefs or principles taught by a teacher or a religious leader.

Origin: L *doctor*, teacher => ‘that which the doctor teaches’

- ❑ Do you believe in the **doctrine** of rebirth?
- ❑ Shail tried to argue with his friend that India should try to resolve the Kashmir issue peacefully, that war never solved any problems and the crores spent on developing nuclear weapons were ill-spent. His friend shook his head. “If all the world were of the same way of thinking, then this **doctrine** of peace would work,” said he. “But it will be deadly to try it when you are faced with an enemy who still worships the god of war.”

⁵⁷⁸ **Indoctrinate:** (v) to teach a set of principles or a belief system; to teach only one type of beliefs while giving the student no idea that alternate belief systems also do exist and so, giving the student a biased point of view.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *doctrina*, teaching

- ❑ Many young Pakistani boys are **indoctrinated** against India by their local **seminaries**. They grow up believing that India is an evil empire of Satan which **perpetually** tries to destroy Pakistan, the Land of the Pure. Thus, a **visceral** hatred for India is **inculcated** in them and consider it their sacred duty to their motherland to fight against India and ruin it.

Visceral: (adj) felt till the depth of one’s inner organs.

⁵⁷⁹ **Doctrinaire:** (n) one who adheres to a **doctrine** rigidly without considering the possibility that it may not be practical or wrong or that other beliefs might be right.

Origin: doctrine

- ❑ The priests of every religion and, therefore, a majority of the followers of those religions, remain rigid and **doctrinaire** on issues such as the **sanctity** of the family, inter-religious marriage, homosexuality and gay marriages, condoms, women, abortion, **euthanasia** and so on.

Note: here the phrase ‘rigid and **doctrinaire**’ is **tautological**. Writing either of the two words would have been enough.

⁵⁸⁰ **Confiscate:** (v) to seize someone’s private property, as a punishment or otherwise, with official authority.

Origin: L *con-* + *fiscus*, treasury => ‘to put into the treasury of the state.’

Another word from *fiscus* is **fiscal**.

Fiscal: (adj) related with financial matters.

- ❑ The **fiscal** year starts on April 1 and ends on March 31.

⁵⁸¹ **Proscribe:** (v) to ban, declare illegal.

Origin: L *pro-*, before + *scribere*, to write => ‘to write before the world’ => ‘to publicly display just like Sula put his list of ‘the internal enemies of the state’ at all public places’ => ‘to declare someone an outlaw.’

- ❑ When, in early 1998, the LTTE bombed the Temple of the Tooth Relic in Kandy, the Sri Lankan government **proscribed** the militant organization. The temple was the holiest Buddhist site of the island nation. The LTTE’s **proscription** in India had been already effected in May 1992 for its involvement in the **assassination** of former Prime Minister Rajiv Gandhi on May 21, 1991.

Within a few months, Sulla had hunted around 9,000 ‘enemies.’

Apart from the dreaded **proscription**, writing can also be used to **ascribe**⁵⁸², **circumscribe**⁵⁸³, **conscribe**⁵⁸⁴ and **transcribe**⁵⁸⁵.

Greek	<i>graphein</i>	to scratch, write, draw
Greek	<i>gramma</i>	a piece of writing, a picture

Around mid-sixteenth century, a huge deposit of a black substance was discovered in a small village of England. The locals found that they could saw it into sticks and use it to mark their sheep. Later on, they also started writing on wood with it. They thought it was lead, and so called that deposit *plumbago* (‘lead ore’ in Latin).

It was in 1779 that an English chemist, K.W. Scheele, finally discovered that the substance was not lead but a form of carbon. In 1789, Abraham Gottlob Werner, a German geologist, named it Graphite, from *graphein*, because it was used to write.

Yet, out of habit, people continued calling the writing stick of a pencil, lead, hence leading to **befuddling**⁵⁸⁶ statements like ‘the pencil lead is made of graphite’!

⁵⁸² **Ascribe:** (v) to say ‘it is caused by’ or ‘it is made by’ or ‘it is made in’ or ‘it is a quality of.’

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *scribere*, to write => ‘to write towards’ => ‘to give a reason or a characteristic of something’

- ❑ The director **ascribed** the failure of his movie to the Cricket World Cup. “My film was targeted at the young males, and most young males were glued to their TV sets watching cricket and too engrossed to pay attention to what movie came or went. My timing was wrong,” he said, refusing to admit that his movie could have been flawed too.

⁵⁸³ **Circumscribe:** (v) to draw a circle around; to limit within a circular boundary.

Origin: L *circum*, circle + *scribere*, to write

- ❑ Poverty **circumscribes** the dreams of a man. A **destitute** man who does not even know whether he will be able to get his next meal cannot dream much beyond getting enough to eat each day and a roof over his head.
- ❑ The Prime Minister chose most of his **sympophants** as Ministers to **circumscribe** the authority of his rival leader in the party.

⁵⁸⁴ **Conscribe:** (v) to force into military service. A person who has been thus **conscripted** is called a **conscript** and the act is called **conscription**.

Origin: L *con-* + *scribere*, to write => ‘to write down the name on army rolls’

- ❑ The captured terrorist told the intelligence officials that the jihadi organizations forcibly **conscript** people into their armies, and that he too hadn’t taken up arms by his own **volition**.
- ❑ In the 2000s, Russia began to transfer the core of its army from the **draft** to a volunteer professional force. Russia’s armed forces have about 1.1 million personnel, out of whom 500,000 are officers who sign contracts to serve. The remaining 600,000 are **conscript** soldiers and non-commissioned officers and are gradually being replaced by volunteers.
- ❑ “Conscription is too high a price to pay to save a nation. Conscription is slavery, and I don’t think that any people or nation has a right to save itself at the price of slavery for anyone, no matter what name it is called. The United States has had the draft for decades now; I think this is shameful. If a country can’t save itself through the volunteer service of its own free people, then I say: Let the damned thing go down the drain!” Robert A. Heinlein

Draft: (v) to **conscribe**; (n) **conscription**

⁵⁸⁵ **Transcribe:** (n) to write down from oral notes, to translate in another language.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *scribere*, to write => ‘to write across’ => ‘to write in a different form (as in oral to written) or different language etc.’

- ❑ At the end of an American radio talk show or a news or TV show, a note is usually displayed on the screen that written **transcripts** of the programme are available. The guy who does that is called a media **transcriptionist**.

⁵⁸⁶ **Befuddle:** (v) to confuse thoroughly.

Graphein-1: **graphic**⁵⁸⁷, paragraph, geography, **topography**⁵⁸⁸, **graffiti**⁵⁸⁹

Graphein-2: **cartographer**⁵⁹⁰, **agraphia**⁵⁹¹, **epigraph**⁵⁹²

Graphein-3: **orthography**⁵⁹³, **hagiography**⁵⁹⁴, **graphology**⁵⁹⁵

⁵⁸⁷ **Graphic:** (adj) related with writing or drawing; written or drawn in full detail.

Origin: Gk *graphein*, to write, draw

- ❑ Paper based drawings are called 2-dimensional **graphics**.
- ❑ **Graphic** designing is about representing an idea or information in a visual form.
- ❑ The eyewitness gave a **graphic** account of the terrorist attack. We felt that it was happening right before our eyes.

⁵⁸⁸ **Topography:** (n) physical features of an area; mapping the physical features of an area.

Origin: Gk *topos*, place + *graphein*, to represent => 'to represent the features of a place'

- ❑ Open any atlas and you will find many **topographic** maps in it. By using colour codes, dots, dashes or solid lines—the meaning of which is explained in the margin of the map—a **topographic** map details the elevations or depressions in the area under study, and also the water bodies, forest cover, built-up area, roads, streets, even individual buildings (depending on the scale) and other natural or man-made features of the land.

⁵⁸⁹ **Graffiti:** (n) writing on the wall.

Origin: Gk *graphein*, to write

- ❑ Ajay picked up a piece of charcoal. "What is this for?" Meena asked. "I'm going to leave our mark here. Imagine. You and I come to this garden fifty years later and here, upon this wall, 'Ajay loves Meena' welcomes us. How wonderful it will be, isn't it?" Meena took the charcoal from him and threw it away. "Such **graffiti** only **defaces** the walls. My love doesn't need such declarations."

⁵⁹⁰ **Cartographer:** (n) map-maker. The study and practice of making geographical maps is called **cartography**.

Origin: Gk *carta*, chart + *graphein*, to write

- ❑ Making of **topographic** maps is called 'Topographic Cartography.'

⁵⁹¹ **Agraphia:** (n) a disorder of the brain which makes one unable to write.

Origin: Gk *a-*, not + *graphein*, to write

⁵⁹² **Epigraph:** (n) that which is written on a statue, a wall of a building or at the beginning of a book.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, upon + *graphein*, to write => 'to write upon something'

⁵⁹³ **Orthography:** (n) the system of spelling, the study of the rules by which words are spelled in a language.

Origin: Gk *ortho-*, straight, right + *graphein*, to write => 'to write correctly' => 'correct spelling'

- ❑ The word pairs *plain/plane, sun/son, here/hair/hare* have the same pronunciation but are distinguished from each other **orthographically**.
- ❑ There are **orthographic** differences between British and American English e.g., *colour/color, dialogue/dialog, doughnut/donut, realize/realise* etc.

⁵⁹⁴ **Hagiography:** (n) writing about the lives of saints.

Origin: Gk *hagio-*, saint + *graphein*, to write

- ❑ Saint Kabir was born in the 15th century into a Hindu Brahmin household and was adopted by a childless Muslim couple in Varanasi. He was dissatisfied with being a husband and a father. Apart from these basic facts, most of what we know about Kabir are myths and legends created about him by **hagiographers** of later centuries.

⁵⁹⁵ **Graphology:** (n) study of handwriting.

Origin: Gk *graphein*, to write + *-ology*, study

Grammar-1: grammar, parallelogram, program

Grammar-2: electrocardiogram, **anagram**⁵⁹⁶, **epigram**⁵⁹⁷

The teacher began his lecture: “Like all languages, English **orthography** has a set of rules that decide how the oral words are written down...”

“Rules!” Long-suffering-Rhea couldn’t control her emotions and spoke up. “Each time I write in English, I trip over some **orthographical** stumbling-block, and you say, sir, rules! Tell me, why isn’t *chemistry* written with a ‘k’ then? And, what is a ‘k’ doing in *knock*? Why is it *laugh* and not *laaf*? *Daughter* and *laughter*, how different they are in pronunciation, why then are they spelled similarly? When the spelling of *books* is not *boox*, why do we write *box* and not *boks*. And in any case, *boks* too doesn’t give the right pronunciation. Why isn’t the word spelled *bauks*? Why *through*, and not *thru*? I write exactly as you pronounce the words, sir, and still get zeroes in the dictation. No sir, English **orthography** is a jungle of no rules. Thank you.”

Latin *plumbum* **lead**

You probably remember that the chemical symbol of Lead is Pb. That is the **abbreviation** of the Latin name of Lead.

What do we call the guy who mends our leaking taps and waterpipes? Plumber. According to etymology, this guy should be ‘a lead worker.’ Then how did he stray towards the water pipes? Actually, the water pipes of **yore**⁵⁹⁸ were made of lead. Due to the tasks a plumber does, this word has also started being used for a person hired to detect and **remedy**⁵⁹⁹ leaks of sensitive information in an organization.

⁵⁹⁶ **Anagram**: (n) a word or phrase formed by rearranging the letters of another.

Origin: L *ana-*, back + *gram*, letter => ‘putting the letters back and forth’

- ☐ Here are a few famous **anagrams**: William Shakespeare= I am a weakish speller; Princess Diana= end is a car spin; A decimal point = I’m a dot in place; desperation= a rope ends it; eleven plus two= twelve plus one; astronomer= moon starrer; the eyes= they see.
- ☐ The title of Shakespeare’s play *Hamlet* is an **anagram** of its inspiration, the legendary Danish prince Amleth.

⁵⁹⁷ **Epigram**: (n) a short, humorous saying.

Origin: L *epi-*, upon + *gramma*, writing => ‘a writing upon a surface’ => ‘a quote’ => ‘a witty quote’

☐ Examples of **epigram**:

1. ‘The only way to get rid of a temptation is to yield to it.’ Oscar Wilde
2. ‘I’m tired of Love: I’m still more tired of Rhyme. But Money gives me pleasure all the time.’ Hilaire Belloc

⁵⁹⁸ **Yore**: (n) time long gone.

⁵⁹⁹ **Remedy**: (n) a solution to a problem.

The other words from the oh-so-heavy *plumbum* are:

*Plumbum-1: Plumb*⁶⁰⁰, *aplomb*⁶⁰¹

*Plumbum-2: Plummet*⁶⁰², *plunge*⁶⁰³

⁶⁰⁰ **Plumb:** (v) to measure the depth of. (n) the weight tied to one end of a string. That string is called a **plumb line** and is used either to measure the depth of water or by masons to determine if a wall is exactly vertical or not.

Origin: L *plumbum*, lead

- ❑ There is a Punjabi **epigram**: *dil darya samundron doonghe, kaun dilaan diyaan jaane?* It says that hearts are deeper than rivers and oceans; it is impossible to **plumb** to the depths of somebody's heart.

⁶⁰¹ **Aplomb:** (n) the vertical position; extreme self-confidence.

Origin: L *plumbum*, lead -> Fr *a plomb* => 'on the plumb line' => 'perfectly vertical' => 'with the back fully vertical. This is a posture of self-confidence' => 'self-confidence'

- ❑ The scene: A wedding reception. The guests are busy chatting with each other and enjoying their drinks and snacks. Then, the bride, dressed in a cr me gown, descends down the staircase in the manner of a queen. Such is her **aplomb** that the whole gathering falls silent and just watches her admiringly.

⁶⁰² **Plummet:** (n) a lead bob attached to a string so that it becomes vertical and can be used as a plumb line. (v) to fall sharply.

Origin: L *plumbum*

- ❑ Suhel was the class topper. But after his girlfriend left him, his marks fell like a **plummet**.
- ❑ Suhel's marks **plummeted** after his break-up. The former class topper barely managed to not get a reappear.

⁶⁰³ **Plunge:** (v) to push, throw or dive into something.

Origin: L *plumbum* -> *plumbicare* -> Fr *plongier*-> E *plungen*

- ❑ The swimmer **plunged** into the pool.
- ❑ The famine **plunged** the nation into starvation, debt and alarming price rice.
- ❑ Tasting freedom for the first time, the girl from the village **plunged** headlong into the thrills of city life. Wild shopping, short clothes, discos, pubs, drugs, boys- she desperately tried to cram the twenty three years for which she had been kept away from all these glories into the one year she had in the city.

Exercise

gno-, sophia, scire, bheud-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He had *a mysterious* ability to read people's minds.
(a) a quaint (b) a notorious (c) an agnostic (d) a nescient (e) an uncanny
2. It was *a gory* story.
(a) an ignoble (b) an animal (c) a strange (d) an unpleasant (e) a shocking
3. The terrorist was caught doing *a survey* of Delhi for a planned terror strike.
(a) a foreboding (b) a prescience (c) a peregrination (d) an annotation (e) a reconnaissance
4. The economist *prognosticated* a slowdown of the growth rate of the economy.
(a) let everyone know of (b) predicted (c) accepted responsibility for (d) accepted (e) explained
5. He was *a very careful and sincere* worker
(a) a nescient (b) a conscientious (c) a reconnoitring (d) a cognizant (e) a canny
6. He took care even of the *fine details*.
(a) intimacies (b) ken (c) connotations (d) niceties (e) iota
7. It is *logically incorrect* for a person to assume that because all the politicians whom he has known or heard of are corrupt, politicians are necessarily corrupt.
(a) unconscionable (b) fallacious (c) sophistry (d) prodigious (e) nescient
8. She liked using *foreign, unusual* words in order to impress people with her sophistication; for example, a curse was 'an execration' for her, an annoying thing 'a bête noir', a wonderful year 'annus mirabilis' etc.
(a) quaint (b) unacquainted (c) sophisticated (d) astounding (e) exotic

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (d) 3. (e) 4. (b) 5. (b) 6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A long journey on foot: P_____
2. All knowing: O_____
3. Famous for a bad reason: N_____
4. Clever but fallacious reasoning: S_____
5. A person with specialized knowledge in a field, usually the field of arts: C_____
6. Charmingly old-fashioned: Q_____
7. Face: P_____
8. Extraordinarily huge: P_____
9. One who knows nothing at all: N_____
10. Not noble: I_____

Answers:

peregrination, omniscient, notorious, sophistry, connoisseur/cognoscenti, quaint, physiognomy, prodigious, nescient, ignoble

Reri, dokein, scriber, graphein, gramma, plumbum:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He gave us *a fully detailed* account of the incident.
(a) transcribed (b) drafted (c) epigrammatic (d) graphic (e) ratified

2. He was a great man, but had one *weak point*- he talked too little.
(a) foible (b) feebleness (c) arraignment (d) undermining point (e) circumscription
3. She managed the stage with *great self-confidence*.
(a) docility (b) conscription (c) syncretism (d) proscription (e) aplomb
4. The king was *rigid in his religious beliefs*.
(a) orthodox (b) heterodox (c) syncretic (d) autocratic (e) indoctrinated
5. Many young men were *forced into military service* during the war.
(a) drafted (b) plunged (c) arraigned (d) indoctrinated (e) befuddled
6. 10 passengers were killed as the bus they were travelling in *fell* into a ditch.
(a) plummeted (b) plumbed (c) plunged (d) undermined (e) circumscribed
7. The government *banned* cigarette smoking in films.
(a) vetoed (b) circumscribed (c) rationalized (d) ratified (e) proscribed
8. The police sent a sample of *the soft abdominal organs* of the man who was suspected of having died from a drug overdose for medical examination.
(a) veto (b) anagram (c) viscera (d) orthography (e) epigram
9. He was *quite stubborn about and intolerant of any criticism of his beliefs*.
(a) syncretic (b) docile (c) visceral (d) dogmatic (e) paradoxical
10. He reached the wrong conclusion because there was an error in his *reasoning*.
(a) rationalization (b) ratiocination (c) arraignment (d) dogma (e) indoctrination
11. The profit earned by the company *fell sharply* from 26 crores in the fiscal year 2009-10 to 12 crores in 2010-11.
(a) plummeted (b) plumbed (c) plunged (d) undermined (e) circumscribed
12. The police *seized* the banned books which the bookshop was secretly selling.
(a) ratiocinated (b) confiscated (c) vetoed (d) proscribed (e) circumscribed

Answers:

- 1 . (d) 2 . (a) 3 . (e) 4 . (a) 5 . (a) 6 . (c) 7 . (e) 8 . (c) 9 . (d) 10 . (b) 11 . (a) 12 . (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. The merging of many different types of beliefs: S_____
2. The set of beliefs held to be true by a group of people: D_____
3. Map-maker: C_____
4. To ban: P_____
5. The act of writing down oral notes: T_____
6. Physical features of an area: T_____
7. Inscription written on a statue: E_____
8. The system of spelling: O_____
9. An ill-tempered scolding woman: T_____
10. Writing about the lives of saints: H_____
11. Obedience and submissiveness: D_____
12. A short, humorous saying: E_____

Answers:

syncretism, dogma, cartographer, proscribe, transcription, epigraph, orthography, termagant, hagiography, docility, epigram

I SEE!

IE *ok^w-* eye

A few years ago, Govinda had sung these **laudatory**⁶⁰⁴ lines for Raveena Tandon in a Hindi movie:

Akhyion se goli maare, ladki kamaal dekhi!

Meet the cousins of those killer eyes from other languages:

Language	<i>ok^w-</i> word
Hindi	<i>Aankh</i>
Punjabi	<i>Akh</i>
Sanskrit	<i>Akshi</i>
German	<i>Auge</i>
Dutch	Oog
English	Eye
Latin	Oculus
Greek	Ops

The Greek word *ophthalmos* also means ‘eye.’ The second element of the word comes from *thalamus*, ‘chamber,’ giving the whole a sense of ‘eye and eye socket.’

An ‘ophthalmologist’ is a medical doctor specializing in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases of the eye (*-logia* means ‘study’). He is qualified to perform eye surgery.

Then, there is the ‘optometrist’ who is professionally trained and licensed to examine the eyes for visual defects-like **myopia**⁶⁰⁵, **hypermetropia**⁶⁰⁶ and glaucoma- and prescribe corrective lenses (Gk. *opto-*, sight + Gk. *metron*,

⁶⁰⁴ **Laudatory:** (adj) praising; (v) **laud**.

Origin: L *laudare*, to praise

□ The Prime Minister **lauded** the courage of the Indian Army.

⁶⁰⁵ **Myopia:** (n) short-sightedness. The distant objects appear blurred and indistinct.

Origin: Gk. *myein*, ‘to shut’ + *ops*, eye => ‘the condition in which one has to constrict his eyes to be able to see something.’

⁶⁰⁶ **Hypermetropia:** (n) long-sightedness. Also known as Hyperopia. One can clearly see *over* the distance, but the nearby objects appear blurred.

Origin: Gk. *hyper-*, over, beyond + *ops*, eye => ‘defective vision in which one can see beyond but not near.’

measure). Unlike an ophthalmologist, an optometrist is not a Doctor of Medicine (M.D.) and cannot administer drugs or perform surgery.

The patient takes the optometrist's prescription to an 'optician' who is a specialist in fitting eyeglasses and making lenses to correct vision problems.

The term 'oculist' means an eye-care professional and is therefore used for both the ophthalmologists and optometrists.

'Inoculation' initially meant 'making a small eye in' the stem of a plant and inserting the bud of another plant in it. The bud was sealed from drying and was bound in place. Slowly, the tissues of the bud would fuse with those of the stem, and deriving nourishment from the host plant, the bud would grow into shoots. This method of asexual plant **propagation** is known as grafting. Now, the term 'inoculation' is also used for an **analogous** process in microbiology—the introduction of a small amount of a microorganism either in a growth medium, or in a living organism (to stimulate the organism's **immune** system).

The word 'autopsy', meaning 'to see by one's own eyes' (Gk. *auto-*, self), was first used in 1651, in the sense of 'a critical examination of something'. Within 30 years, however, it was being used exclusively for the critical examination of a dead body to establish the cause and circumstances of death. The other names for this procedure are necropsy, thanatopsy, necrotomy and postmortem (Gk. *nekros*, corpse; Gk. *thanatos*, *death*; Gk. *-tomy*, to cut; L. *mortem*, from *mors*, death).

Monocle⁶⁰⁷, binocular, **synopsis**⁶⁰⁸, **ogle**⁶⁰⁹ and **inveigle**⁶¹⁰ too are from *ok*^w.

IE *spek-* to observe

The Sanskrit word *spasht* means 'clear, easily observed' and *spashtikaran* is a clarification (making clear). The one who observes secretly is called *spash* in Sanskrit and 'spy' in English.

The 'spectacles' are called so because they help one see and a sight worth seeing is a 'spectacle' (note that our words *drish* and *nazaara* too are derived from sight-related-words, *drishti* and *nazar* respectively). The observer of the spectacle is its 'spectator' (just like the observer of the *drish* is its *darshak*).

The 'perspective' of a man is his 'point of view', his '*dekhne ka dhang*' or *nazariya* (from *nazar*).

More words from this family are presented below:

⁶⁰⁷ **Monocle**: (n) eye glass for one eye.

Origin: L *mono*, one + *oculus*, eye

⁶⁰⁸ **Synopsis**: (n) summary of the main points of an argument or a theory

Origin: Gk. *syn-*, together + *opsis*, to see => 'to see all main points together'

⁶⁰⁹ **Ogle**: (v) to stare at someone flirtatiously or with eyes full of sexual love or desire.

Origin: Dutch *oog*, eye -> *oogen*, to make eyes at, a derivative of *oog*, eye.

❑ To escape from a life of purposelessness, the retired old men gather at the park, play chess, indulge in **vulgar** jokes and sometimes **ogle** young lovers sitting in a hidden corner.

❑ Standing on the first floor of the shopping mall, Rohan and Rohit were **ogling** the girls below. "Look at that one in red," Rohan said enthusiastically, "girlfriend material, isn't she?" Rohit was still telling him why he disagreed when Rohan's attention veered to another 'hot chick'

⁶¹⁰ **Inveigle**: (v) to get something from another person or make him agree to something by gently urging, caressing, or flattering him.

Origin: L *ab-*, away from + *oculus* => 'without eyes, blind' -> Fr *avogle*, blind -> Fr *enveogler*, to make blind => 'to blind a person's judgment and lead him into doing something that he or she would not otherwise have done'

❑ Lakshmi's boyfriend **inveigled** her into running away with him and after living with her for a month, sold her to a house of prostitution.

*Spek-1: introspect*⁶¹¹, *retrospect*⁶¹², *circumspect*⁶¹³

*Spek-2: specter*⁶¹⁴, *spectrum*⁶¹⁵, *spectral*⁶¹⁶

*Spek-3: speculate*⁶¹⁷, *specious*⁶¹⁸, *despicable*⁶¹⁹, *conspicuous*⁶²⁰

⁶¹¹ **Introspect:** (v) to look within; (n): **introspection**

Origin: L *intro-*, inside + *specere*, to look at

- ❑ “I don’t need anyone! Get out! Leave me alone!” She had shouted at her sister and later, her mother, and pushed them out of her room and closed it from inside. Then, she had cried. Her friends, her family, everybody whom she called her own, failed to understand her, failed to say what she wanted to hear. She was alone in this whole world! Thinking these sad thoughts, she fell asleep. When she woke up, it was still dark outside. Sleep had calmed her mind. She went over her bad behaviour of the previous day and felt regret. “The frustration is within me, and I take it out on them. That’s not fair! How can they know what is wrong with me when I don’t know myself?” she thought. She decided to skip the college that day and just sit in her room, with a pen and paper, and write down all the thoughts that came to her mind. She hoped this **introspection** would finally reveal to her the reason for her restlessness. Was she still in love with Kabir? Or was it something else that was troubling her so much?

⁶¹² **Retrospect:** (n) a look at the past; (v) to look back in time.

Origin: L *retro*, back + *specere*, to look

- ❑ She was much distressed by not being able to get into IITs at the time. However, in **retrospect**, she realized that was the best thing to have happened to her.
- ❑ The world population reached the five billion mark on 11 July, 1987. The United Nations decided **retrospectively** in 1989 to observe that day each year as the World Population Day in order to focus everybody’s attention on the problem of growing population.

⁶¹³ **Circumspect:** (adj) careful, paying attention to the situation and the possible outcomes.

Origin: L *circum-*, around + *specere*, to look => ‘to look around’ => ‘exercising caution’

- ❑ It was the first time that Jaya had brought Sunil before her parents. “Oh ma, you’ll make him nervous,” Jaya laughed when she saw her mother study him with faint suspicion. “It’s a mother’s duty darling. I want the best for you,” the old lady smiled. Throughout the evening, she continued to observe Sunil with motherly **circumspection**, taking note of each thing that he said or did or did not. After he had gone, she told Jaya that she did not like him. “He is not as simple as he shows. I want you to be careful.” Jaya, however, was too much in love to be **circumspect**. “Ma, you are thinking too much. Good night,” she said and tossed her mother’s caution out of her mind.

⁶¹⁴ **Spectre:** (n) ghost

Origin: L *specere*, to see => ‘a strange appearance’

- ❑ The **spectre** of the **slain** king haunted his murderer night and day.

⁶¹⁵ **Spectrum:** (n) band of different waves arranged according to their wavelength; a range of values.

Origin: L *specere*, to see => ‘a band of seven colors that is seen when invisible light passes through a prism’

⁶¹⁶ **Spectral:** (adj) form of both spectre and spectrum.

❑ **Spectral** analysis is the analysis of a **spectrum** of waves.

- ❑ “I had told him not to stay in that haunted house. But my brother didn’t listen. The **specters** there killed him!” The young woman sobbed before the police inspector. The man shook his head. “Madam, you would surely agree with me that a **spectral** murderer would not leave material fingerprints. No, this is the work of a man, or a woman.” The girl’s face **blanched**. How had they found fingerprints? She had made it a point to wear gloves.

⁶¹⁷ **Speculate:** (v) to think about something, to try to guess.

Origin: L *specere*, to look => *specula*, watch tower => *speculari*, to watch over => ‘to try to guess danger’ => ‘to try to guess’ => ‘to think’

- ❑ The Ramayana dates back to 1500 bc according to certain early scholars. Recent studies have brought it down to 4th century bc But all dates in this regard can only be **speculative**.
- ❑ The whole nation **speculated** how long the Bollywood star Trisha Oberoi’s relationship with her businessman boyfriend would last.

⁶¹⁸ **Specious:** (adj) that which looks good but actually is not; that which looks possible but has a false basis.

Origin: L *specere*, to look => ‘that which is pleasing to look at’

- ❑ She got leave of absence for the afternoon on some **specious** excuse.

⁶¹⁹ **Despise:** (v) to look down upon; to find disgusting, distasteful or contemptible. Such a disgusting, distasteful or contemptible person is called **despicable**.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *specere*, to look at

- ❑ When asked what they **despise**, the stock answer for most people is ‘hypocrites.’ At no. 2 comes ‘liars.’
- ❑ Most people say that hypocrisy is **despicable**. Yet, most people are hypocrites.

⁶²⁰ **Conspicuous:** (adj) easily seen.

Origin: L *com-* + *specere*, to see

- ❑ One of his front teeth was **conspicuously** filled with gold.
- ❑ He had a charm of manner and of conversation which made him **conspicuous** in any gathering.

*Spek-4: perspicuous*⁶²¹, *perspicacious*⁶²², *auspicious*⁶²³

*Spek-5: espionage*⁶²⁴, *respite*⁶²⁵

A ‘telescope’ helps you observe far-off things (G. *tele-*, distant). The word ‘horoscope’ is a compound of Greek *hōrā*, hour and *skopos*, observer. Look carefully at the word *skopos*. It has the same consonants and the same meaning as our root *spek-*, but the order of the consonants is different. Should we include it in the family?

The answer is ‘yes.’ I do not know about you but as a child I used to be very confused about whether it was *keechad* or *cheekad* (it is *keechad* in Hindi and *chikad* in Punjabi), *lifaafa* or *flaafa* and *ladki* or *lakdi*. This rearrangement of consonants within a word is called **metathesis**⁶²⁶. Quite a few of our slips of tongue are **metathetical**. Like, a girl called Nitika is fed up of people calling her Nikita. However, that is not going to change her name. Similarly, words do not change just because some people sometimes mispronounce them. It is rare that a **metathetical** form completely **subdues** the original word in common usage. It’s happened in Sanskrit with *jihva*, tongue, becoming *jivha* (what we commonly call *jibbha*). The spinning wheel is known as *charkha*. This word came from *charka* which is a **metathetical** form of *chakra*, wheel. Similarly, in Greek, the IE root *spek-* became *skep-*. Apart from

⁶²¹ **Perspicuous:** (adj) clear, easy to understand; (n): **perspicuity**.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *specere*, to see => ‘see-through’ => ‘clear’

- ❑ R.K. Narayan’s writing is remarkable for its **perspicuity**. One can understand him so easily that we feel that we are reading not in English but in our mother tongue.

⁶²² **Perspicacious:** (adj) having insight; wise.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *specere*, to see => ‘one who can see through’ => ‘one who has insight’

- ❑ Jaya’s mother was **perspicacious**. She was the only one who could see through Sunil’s charm. No one paid any attention to her words then. Jaya and Sunil got married. It was only then, that Jaya slowly started discovering the dark underside of her husband.
- ❑ All the relatives became very impressed by his political **perspicacity** when the election results turned out to be exactly as he predicted.

⁶²³ **Auspicious:** (adj) bringing good luck.

Origin: L *avis*, bird + *specere*, to look at => ‘to look at birds and their flight to get knowledge of the future.’ Romans believed that sighting certain birds before setting out to work was lucky, and sighting some others was unlucky. They also believed that the direction you saw the bird coming from, the number of birds you saw, the direction they went into, etc. were all signs that foretold future events. An example of a similar belief among Indians is that a crow crowing on one’s rooftop in the morning is believed to foretell the arrival of a guest.

- ❑ Gifting the idol of Goddess Lakshmi is considered **auspicious**, bringing prosperity and goodwill to the receiver.
- ❑ Did you ever wonder why Lord Mountbatten chose the midnight of 14 August, 1947 to hand over power to the Constituent Assembly of India? Could he not have waited till the next morning? There were two reasons. First, some Indian leaders said August 15, a Friday, was **inauspicious**. Second, he did not want that the Tricolour should be hoisted immediately after the Union Jack was lowered. Under the flag code, flags are lowered in the evening and hoisted in the morning. Thus, the Union Jack was lowered on August 14 evening across India, and the Tricolour hoisted on August 15 morning.

⁶²⁴ **Espionage:** (n) the act of spying.

Origin: Gk *spahen*, to look out

- ❑ **Espionage** agents are usually called secret agents or spies.
- ❑ Research Analysis Wing (RAW) is the main **espionage** agency of India.

⁶²⁵ **Respite:** (n) temporary relief.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *specere*, to look => ‘looking back’ => ‘a short pause which walking’ => ‘a short rest’

- ❑ The sudden rain in the evening provided a welcome **respite** to the people cooked black by the intense heat.
- ❑ The people got no **respite** from power cuts even in the monsoons.

⁶²⁶ **Metathesis:** (n) an interchange of two sounds or two letters of a word.

telescopes and microscopes and **kaleidoscopes** and **periscopes**⁶²⁷, this **metathesized** root has given us a name for **skeptics**⁶²⁸.

Greek *phainein* **to show, make visible**

The occurrences that your eyes show you are called ‘phenomena’. And the ones shown by your mind are called ‘fantasies’. A distinct stage of development of something— the word ‘distinct’ here means ‘distinct by appearance’—is called a ‘phase’. An ‘emphasis’ on a word makes it visible.



Her **diaphanous**⁶²⁹ sari clung to her in the pouring rain, **delineating**⁶³⁰ each detail of her deliciously curved body and transparently showing her skin. She looked....good! His eyes travelled all over her, she shrunk and looked down and tried to cover her chest with her slender arms. Then, he put his hands on her waist and she **meekly** let him.

The **obscenely**⁶³¹ wealthy Brajesh Makhijani **obscenely fancied**⁶³² all that the moment he saw the young girl in the party. She was standing alone and looked around hesitantly, betraying the fact that she was new to such parties. Good, he thought, **naïve** girls were very easy to trap. Her **sartorial**⁶³³ choice suggested that she wouldn’t mind being trapped either. She was clearly not comfortable in her short dress. Yet she had chosen to wear it; so, she was probably one of those starry-eyed middle-class girls who were ready to do anything to climb up the ladder of success. Getting her would not prove too difficult and, the self-designated **fancier**⁶³⁴ of beauty decided, she was worthy of being got.

He called with a finger one of the many **sycophants**⁶³⁵ who went wagging their tails everywhere with him. “I want that girl,” he pointed her out **discreetly**, “tell her the usual things. Why, what’s the matter?” His faithful flatterer was looking troubled instead of complimenting him, as always, on his fine taste.

“S..sir, but there is nobody there..”

“What the...” He turned around. The girl was there, looking as lost as ever. “Look behind that fat lady by the flower pot, the girl in the red dress.”

⁶²⁷ **Periscope:** (n) an optical instrument with a series of mirrors, prisms and lenses which enables you to see even those surrounding areas which are beyond your range of vision.

Origin: Gk *peri-*, around + *-scope*, instrument for seeing => ‘an instrument that helps you see around.’

⁶²⁸ **Skeptic:** (n) a person who does not readily believe anything; a person who generally doubts common beliefs. Adj: **skeptical**, meaning ‘doubtful.’

Origin: Gk *skopein*, to look => ‘one who examines deeply’ => ‘one who enquires and doubts’

❑ “Do you really think that Trisha Oberoi will be able to play Indira Gandhi? It’s a complex role you know,” the film director’s friend asked him. “Not only you Rakesh, many people are **skeptical** about my choice. But I *know* that no one can do Indira better than her. Mark my words, one day you too will say the same.”

❑ Most Indians believe in God but there are a few **skeptics** too.

⁶²⁹ **Diaphanous:** (adj) almost see-through.

Origin: Gk *dia-*, through + *phainein*, to show => ‘that which shows everything through’

⁶³⁰ **Delineate:** (v) to draw or show the outline of; to represent a picture either by a sketch or by words.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *linea*, line => ‘to draw down every line’ => ‘to sketch’

⁶³¹ **Obscene:** (adj) indecent, disgusting.

⁶³² **Fancy:** (v) to imagine; (n) imagination, a sudden, strong desire or idea.

Origin: From fantasy.

⁶³³ **Sartorial:** (adj) related with clothes or tailors.

Origin: L *sartor*, tailor

⁶³⁴ **Fancier:** (n) a person who is excessively enthusiastic about something; a person who breeds animals to improve their qualities or beauty.

Origin: From fancy

⁶³⁵ **Sycophant:** (n) a person who licks the boots of important people so as to gain favors from them.

“Err...sorry sir...” the man said helplessly and looked down.

“You are useless,” he said impatiently and called another of his men and told him to get the girl.

The fellow looked **quizzically**⁶³⁶ at the said girl and then at his **downcast** colleague and told his boss in a weak voice that he could see no girl there.

That was the first time.

After that, each time he saw a girl he wanted to have, he found that he was the only one who could see her. He was *terrified*.

“The boss has got rather **fanciful**⁶³⁷ these days,” he heard one of his men joke to the others one day. “Oh yeah, the old guy’s mind is *totally* into women now,” **blathered**⁶³⁸ the second as others laughed. Then, a third chipped in cruelly, “I cannot really feel sorry for him. All his life, he has treated women as playthings, as things for use and throw. I used to hate him for that.” They nodded and then the first man **quipped**⁶³⁹, “You must see his expression these days as he points to one of his **fantastic**⁶⁴⁰ women and asks shakily if we can see her. I can barely control my laughter.” Makhijani did not burst upon them in anger only because he was disturbed more. He seemed to have lost all power, over his mind, over his men, otherwise how could anyone have dared to say even one **flippant**⁶⁴¹ word about him? And his mind? It had always been faithfully rational, had never got out of control. And now, now it could see nothing but those feminine **phantasms**⁶⁴²; he was going crazy!

He went to the doctors. That did not help. He went to the priests. That did not help. Each woman he noticed turned out to be a **phantom**⁶⁴³. It was maddening! If he could not even trust his own eyes and his own mind, who could he trust? Would he have to ask for others’ confirmation for everything his eyes showed him? Oh God, that was so humiliating! He pleaded and prayed for relief. He got none.

His **epiphany**⁶⁴⁴ came after four months of suffering. A goddess came in his dream and told him that he had been **prurient**⁶⁴⁵ in all his youth and **prurience** was a sin; so now, she was using his very **prurience** to punish him. She (horrifyingly) added that the **phantom** females would continue to **tantalize** him as long as he lived.

⁶³⁶ **Quizzically**: (adv) with a questioning or puzzled expression.

⁶³⁷ **Fanciful**: (adj) imaginative, imagined.

⁶³⁸ **Blather**: (v) to talk nonsense.

⁶³⁹ **Quip**: (n) a clever, witty remark; (v) to make such a remark.

□ When someone asked Gandhiji what he thought of the western civilization, he **quipped**, “Oh, that would be a good idea.”

⁶⁴⁰ **Fantastic**: (adj) imaginary; that which is real but is so extraordinary or unnatural that it looks as if it is the product of some overly wild imagination.

Origin: Gk *phainein*, to make visible -> *phantazein*-> *phantastikos*, that which the mind is able to see

⁶⁴¹ **Flippant**: (adj) disrespectfully casual.

⁶⁴² **Phantasm**: (n) a ghost; something that one thinks he is seeing in reality but which is actually created by his own imagination.

Origin: Gk *phainein*, to make visible => *phantos*, visible

⁶⁴³ **Phantom**: (n) a ghost; something that one thinks he is seeing in reality but which is actually created by his own imagination.

Origin: Gk *phainein*, to make visible => *phantos*, visible

⁶⁴⁴ **Epiphany**: (n) a seeing of a god or an angel; a sudden, clear insight into a problem or issue or the meaning of something that one has been thinking about for long but without much success, usually triggered by some unrelated commonplace occurrence.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, on + *phainein*, to make visible => ‘a god choosing to show himself.’

⁶⁴⁵ **Prurient**: (adj) having or related with lustful thoughts.

□ Writings or pictures that cause lustful thoughts in a person are called **prurient** writings or pictures.

He could not sleep after that. When he saw another **phantasm**, he became **utterly**⁶⁴⁶ hopeless that he ever would get rid of them and shot himself in the head.

IE *weid-* to see

A 'video' is seen, an audio is heard.

To 'view' something is to see it. The things that can be seen are 'visible'. Our eyesight is also called our 'vision'. When you go to see your favourite aunt, you 'visit' her. When we 'revise' or 'review' a topic, we see it again (L. *re-*, again). To 'supervise' a task is to oversee it (L. *super-*, over). When you go for an 'interview', you and your interviewer see each other (L. *inter-*, mutual). When an old uncle offers you his 'advice', he makes you see his point of view (L. *ad-*, to, towards).

When an embassy grants a 'visa' to a man, it is basically saying that his documents have been seen and found to be satisfactory.

All the words above are from the Latin root *videre*, as are the words below:

Videre 1: **provident**⁶⁴⁷, **improvident**⁶⁴⁸, **improvise**⁶⁴⁹

⁶⁴⁶ **Utterly**: (adj) completely; absolutely.

⁶⁴⁷ **Provident**: (adj) showing foresight; related with foresight.

Origin: L *pro-*, before + *videre*, to see => 'to see what lies before'

- ❑ The **provident** man had insured his business, his house, his car and himself.

Providence: (n) the divine power which controls the affairs and futures of all men. We call it *qismat* in India.

- ❑ The family cheerfully waved the newly-weds off to their honeymoon. But **Providence** had other plans. The flight in which the couple was travelling was blown up by terrorists.

Providential: (adj) lucky, resulting from **providence**.

- ❑ Soomi got her car's petrol tank filled at the petrol station. But when she opened the dashboard to take out her purse, she saw, to her horror, no purse there! She had forgotten to bring it! Now what? She had to pay ₹ 500. She checked her pockets and found just a few loose notes of ₹ 10 and coins. She **frantically** rechecked the dashboard. The cars waiting behind started honking their horns impatiently. Her panic was increasing. No cash, no card, no driving license, and a half-hour distance from home. What to do? She was close to tears as she explained her **predicament** to the petrol guy. He did not quite seem to believe it. How embarrassing! Just then, a colleague of hers **providentially** drove in. Mr Sharma!!! She breathed in great relief and rushed to him, explained the whole situation and took ₹ 500 from him. As she drove out, she profusely thanked her stars for sending Mr Sharma at the right time.

⁶⁴⁸ **Improvident**: (adj) lacking foresight, not bothering about future planning, careless.

- ❑ Amit had left his well-paying job to be a writer. His friends regarded him as one, who had **improvidently** thrown away his chance of advancement.
- ❑ His mother and his wife were always telling him to mend his **improvident** habits, but he never paid **heed**. The foolish man frittered away his immense fortune. Not content with just that, he even mortgaged his ancestral haveli and all his mothers' and wife's ornaments without their knowledge.

⁶⁴⁹ **Improvise**: (v) to prepare and perform on the spot with whatever resources are available.

Origin: L *im-*, not + *pro-*, before + *videre*, to see => 'not foreseen or prepared for'

- ❑ This was how Mrs. Verma punished her kids for bad behavior. Whenever any of her five children needed to be **chastised**, she would **improvise** some festive occasion in which she would take all the children except the offending child to participate. If all the children sinned collectively they were suddenly informed of a circus in a neighbouring town, a circus of unrivalled merit and uncounted elephants, to which, had they not done anything wrong, she would have taken them that very day.
- ❑ Dikshit took up his violin from the corner, and began to play some low, dreamy, melodious air,--his own, no doubt, for he had a remarkable gift for **improvisation**.
- ❑ In the Indian films, every hero and heroine seems able to **improvise** perfect, beautiful songs as easily as you **doff** a hat. I've always wondered how they just break into a song and the next words, the tunes, the dance steps keep coming to them automatically! In real life, such a talent is found only in rare individuals like Dikshit.

Note: Improve looks similar but is not from the same root

Videre-2: **prudent**⁶⁵⁰, **imprudent**⁶⁵¹, **invidious**⁶⁵²

Videre 3: **purveyor**⁶⁵³, **provisional**⁶⁵⁴, **proviso**⁶⁵⁵

⁶⁵⁰ **Prudent:** (adj) wise, one who plans for the future and knows what to say and what not to, what to do and what not to; (n): **prudence**

Origin: From **provident**

- ❑ Mobile phones need to be used with **prudence**. Instances are many of criminals literally snatching such phones from those who openly display them in public.

⁶⁵¹ **Imprudent:** (adj) not **prudent**

- ❑ When his girlfriend said she would not have breakfast, he looked at her with some concern and inquired if anything was the matter. "None," she said. "But the dinner was so yum last night and I ate so **imprudently** that my stuffed stomach will rebel if I eat even a **morsel** more for a week. Plus," she smiled naughtily, "your relatives might be thinking of me as a **glutton**. I need to **salvage** my image, you know?"
- ❑ Ramesh thought it was rather **imprudent** of Sheena to have come home in a taxi, all alone, at midnight. "You should have called me," he said sternly. "Why?" she tossed her head. "I know how to take care of myself."

⁶⁵² **Invidious:** (adj) causing anger, offense or jealousy.

Origin: L *in-*, upon + *videre*, to see => 'to look at someone with jealousy, wishing him harm' => 'actions which arise out of jealousy'

- ❑ "Stop crying, my beautiful girl," Raj Mata patted the youngest *rani* of her son, the king. "All those *ranis* speak ill of you because you rule the *raja's* heart and they don't. You don't have to let yourself be affected by their **invidious** gossip."

⁶⁵³ **Purveyor:** (n) a provider of some service or things (for example, food items).

Origin: L *pro-*, before + *videre*, to see => 'to foresee' => 'to foresee what will be needed and arrange for the supplies of those items.' The word 'provide' has the same etymology.

- ❑ The village moneylenders have till date remained a major **purveyor** of short-term credit to the poor.
- ❑ A **purveyor** of foods, a **purveyor** of jokes, a **purveyor** of misinformation.
- ❑ 'Dance Dance' is a Hindi movie of the late 1980s. It has a song- *Aa gaya aa gaya, halwa waala aa gaya-* which a pair of homeless and extremely hungry brother and sister sing in great delight when they see a **purveyor** of *halwa*.

⁶⁵⁴ **Provisional:** (adj) temporary, based on some condition.

Origin: provide -> provision -> provisional. Provisional means 'provided that a particular condition is fulfilled.'

- ❑ A university offered **provisional** admission to its MS programme to a 4th year BE student. Here, '**provisional** admission' means 'you are admitted provided that you successfully pass the BE programme with the minimum percentage we require.'

⁶⁵⁵ **Proviso:** (n) a condition, like in a contract; a **stipulation**.

Origin: 'provided that'

- ❑ After Rai Bahadur died, his will was read. As expected, he had **bequeathed** his entire wealth to his sole descendant, his granddaughter. What was unexpected was the **proviso** he had made. She would get the **bequest** only if she married within an year of his death. Otherwise, the whole estate would pass on to a charity.
- ❑ The RaiBahadur **bequeathed** his entire wealth to his granddaughter with the **proviso** that she married within an year of his death. If she failed to do so, the **bequest** would pass on to a charity.
- ❑ The Rai Bahadur **bequeathed** his entire wealth to his granddaughter with the **stipulation** that she married within an year of his death. If she failed to do so, the **bequest** would pass on to a charity.
- ❑ The Rai Bahadur **stipulated** that his wealth should be **bequeathed** to his granddaughter only if she married within an year of his death; otherwise, his wealth should be **bequeathed** to a charity.

*Videre 4: evident*⁶⁵⁶, *visage*⁶⁵⁷, *envisage*⁶⁵⁸, *vista*⁶⁵⁹

*Videre 5: visionary*⁶⁶⁰, *clairvoyance*⁶⁶¹, *déjà vu*⁶⁶², *voyeur*⁶⁶³



⁶⁵⁶ **Evident:** (adj) clearly seen.

Origin: L *e-*, out, full + *videre*, to see

- ☐ Every thing which shows, or gives a clue to, who did a murder is called an **evidence**.

⁶⁵⁷ **Visage:** (n) face

Origin: L *videre*, to see -> *visum*, that which is seen => 'the top surface, the face'

- ☐ "Uh!" The wife grunted and clawed the air with a powerless rage expressive of an intense desire to tear and **rend** the **visage** of her frustrating husband.
- ☐ *Kya miliye aise logon se, jinki fitrat chhupi rahe/ naqli chehra saamne aaye, asli soorat chhupi rahe*. This song says that it is pointless to be with and believe people who hide their real **visages** behind masks because you never can know who they really are. The song is from the 1968 movie *Izzat* and is pictured on Dharmendra, who sings it in a party.

⁶⁵⁸ **Envisage:** (v) to visualize.

Origin: L *en-in* + *visum*, sight => 'to bring in sight'

- ☐ The song 'Hum honge kamyab ek din' **envisages** a world of no war. *Hogi shaanti chaaron aur, hoga shaanti chaaron aur, hoga shaanti chaaron aur ek din/ ho ho mann mein hai vishwaas, poora hai vishwaas, hoga shaanti chaaron aur ek din// Hum chaleinge saath saath, daale haathon mein haath, hum chaleinge saath saath ek din/ ho ho mann mein hai vishwaas, poora hai vishwaas, hoga shaanti chaaron aur ek din*.
- ☐ After Ravin had answered the question—"Where do you **envisage** yourself five years down the line?" the politest member of the three-membered interview panel said that now, he wanted Ravin to ask them all a question. Ravin smiled and asked, "Sir, what kind of a career progression can I **envisage** in the company?" "If you are selected, you mean?" said the **gruff** interviewer sitting in the centre of the panel, who, throughout the interview, had seemed to Ravin to have come straight after fighting with his wife or getting kicked by his boss.

⁶⁵⁹ **Vista:** (n) a view.

Origin: L *videre*, to see

- ☐ The front windows of his aunt's house commanded a pleasant little **vista** of street.
- ☐ He had convinced himself that he would never forget Anie. Years kept coming and leaving quietly. Then, one day, he bumped into his long-lost college friend Namrata. And immediately, a new **vista** of life seemed to open—thoughts which had been **dormant** since long came **thronging** on his mind—he was in love again.

⁶⁶⁰ **Visionary:** (adj) related with imagination; (n) a dreamer.

Origin: vision + -ary

- ☐ He was a **visionary** politician. He had a dream of seeing India as a superpower by 2020 and worked hard towards it.
- ☐ Sheikh Chili was a **visionary**. He was always dreaming of what he would do and built huge castles in the air and in doing so, spent all the time that he could have spent working.

⁶⁶¹ **Clairvoyance:** (n) ability to see things that are not physically present before the eyes.

Origin: Fr *clair*, clear + *voyance*, sight => 'clear sight'

- ☐ In the movie 100 days, Madhuri Dixit's character Devi is **clairvoyant**. She gets visions some of which show her events that have not yet happened, while others tell her about things which have already happened but about which she doesn't know. For example, throughout the movie, she keeps seeing the image of a girl being shot at by a man in a long black overcoat and a black hat, and her hair-dryer falling from her hand. It is only towards the end of the movie that she realizes that that girl was her elder sister, who was killed a few years ago, while Devi and the others continued to believe that she was merely missing.

⁶⁶² **Déjà vu:** (n) the feeling that something has happened before when it is actually happening for the first time.

Origin: Fr *déjà vu*, already seen.

- ☐ Rupali was visiting the village for the first time but she had a **queer** sense of **déjà vu**. She seemed to know what was where, the fields, the windmill far away, the temple on the hill all seemed familiar.

Queer: (adj) strange

⁶⁶³ **Voyeur:** (n) a person who secretly peeps into others' bedrooms.

Origin: L *videre*, to see -> Fr *voir*, to see

- ☐ The movies make us into **voyeurs**. We sit in the dark, watching other people's lives.
- ☐ Examples of **voyeurs**: a person who watches pornography, a hotel employee who hides a secret camera in the women's bathroom to use the recording as private entertainment, a Peeping Tom who looks into his neighbour's bedroom each night and morning with binoculars.

The Sanskrit word *ves* means appearance, that aspect of a man that comes into sight. This word, as well as its English counterpart, **guise**⁶⁶⁴, is derived from *weid-*, as also is 'guide', a man or a thing that shows the way. Along with guide, another word was born- **guy**⁶⁶⁵.

No, this is not the guy who looks at girls.

Another *weid-* word that means appearance is the Greek *eidōs*. It is found in the following words:

idol⁶⁶⁶, **idyll**⁶⁶⁷, **kaleidoscope**⁶⁶⁸, **eidetic**⁶⁶⁹



⁶⁶⁴ **Guise:** (n) external appearance including the manner of dress, hairstyle, etc.

Origin: IE *weid-*, to see => Old German **wisson*, appearance -> Fr *guise*, appearance

❑ For one night each week, the king walked through his city in the **guise** of a beggar.

❑ For one night each week, the king walked through his city **disguised** as a beggar.

Disguise: (v) hide the actual external appearance under a false one.

Origin: dis- + **guise**

⁶⁶⁵ **Guy:** (n) a rope used to guide something in a particular direction or to secure something that is likely to change its position.

Origin: from guide

⁶⁶⁶ **Idol:** (n) an image that is worshipped.

Origin: Gk *eidōs*, appearance

❑ To **idolize** someone is to treat him as if he is an image of God and to worship him accordingly.

⁶⁶⁷ **Idyll:** (n) a place or time of simple pleasures with no tensions; a poem that talks about such a place or time.

Origin: Gk *eidōs*, appearance => 'a little picture'

❑ He spent an **idyllic** childhood in the hills.

❑ In the song '*Aa chalke tujhe main le ke chalu*' a father tells his son about an **idyllic** place.

Aa chalke tujhe main le ke chalu, ik aise gagan ke tale

jahaan gam bhi na hon, aansoon bhi na hon

bas pyaar hi pyaar pale.

Jahaan door nazar daudaayein, aazaad gagan lehraaye

jahaan rang birange panchhi aasha ka sandesaa laayein

sapno mein pali hansti ho kali jahaan sham suhaani dhale

jahaan gam bhi na hon, bas pyaar hi pyaar pale

⁶⁶⁸ **Kaleidoscope:** (n) a rotating tube which has bits of coloured glass at one end and two or more mirrors which are set at an angle to one another. Rotating the tube produces beautiful, constantly changing symmetrical designs through the reflection of the glass bits in the mirrors.

Origin: Gk *kalos*, beautiful + *eidōs*, appearance

⁶⁶⁹ **Eidetic:** (adj) related to the ability to first observe and then recall a scene with extraordinarily precise visual detail.

Origin: Gk *eidōs*, appearance => 'related with appearance.'

❑ A person with an **eidetic** memory can remember and easily recall almost everything he sees.

A 'wise' man is one who can see what others cannot and this ability is called his **wit**⁶⁷⁰. A **wiseacre**⁶⁷¹ too boasts about being wise but everybody just laughs him off. The pot of **wit** has cooked these words- **witticism**⁶⁷², **outwit**⁶⁷³ and **unwitting**⁶⁷⁴.

The Sanskrit word *vidyaman* means present, existent, that which can be seen. Something that is *avidyaman* is unreal. *Vidyu* meant lightening, and later on, electricity as well. The word *vidyut*, used as the Hindi **counterpart** of 'power' or 'electricity' is derived from it.

To see is to know. That is why, *vidya* means knowledge, and a man of knowledge is called *vidvaan*. We are all *vidyarthi*s yet, seekers of *vidya* trying to open our third eye—the eye of knowledge. Last but not the least, the four *Vedas* are books of knowledge.

⁶⁷⁰ **Wit:** (n) intelligence; the ability to say something intelligent in a humorous or enjoyable manner.

Origin: IE *weid-*, to see -> *weid*, to know -> Old Eng *wit*, knowledge, intelligence

❑ The Akbar-Birbal stories are famous because of Birbal's **wit**.

⁶⁷¹ **Wiseacre:** (n) a person who acts as if he is very wise.

Origin: Old High German *wizag*, knowledgeable

❑ "I prefer simpletons to **wiseacres**," Amrit Lal told me, his chest all puffed up with pride in his wisdom. His younger brother giggled behind his back. Later, he confirmed my suspicions that Amrit himself was a big **wiseacre**. "Once when we were small," he said, "Papa misplaced his watch. Amrit got it into his head that it had been stolen and insisted on getting the confession out of me or our cousins about who had done it. When his **browbeating** yielded no results, he made us all declare one by one before the Lakshmi **idol** in our house that we had not stolen anything. He had read somewhere that if someone lied before God, his forehead immediately became black. Needless to say, nobody got a black forehead, and he had to let us go. Later, papa remembered where he had kept his watch and *bade bhaaisahab* did not know how to look at us again."

Simpleton: (n) a foolish or silly person.

Origin: simple + -ton

⁶⁷² **Witticism:** (n) a witty saying.

Origin: from **wit**.

❑ Enjoy these **witticisms** by Oscar Wilde:

❑ Fashion is a form of ugliness so intolerable that we have to alter it every six months.

❑ The only thing worse than being talked about is not being talked about.

❑ Whenever people agree with me I always feel I must be wrong.

❑ When the gods wish to punish us, they answer our prayers.

⁶⁷³ **Outwit:** (v) outsmart

Origin: out + **wit**

❑ The police had laid traps at every possible exit route, still the smugglers **outwitted** the police. Their diamonds crossed the city's borders in a police jeep itself!

❑ Movie: *Hum Aapke Hain Kaun*. Scene: Rajesh is getting married to Puja. Rajesh's younger brother Prem has hidden Rajesh's *jooti* in a big red cardboard box meant for *laddoos*. Puja's younger sister Nisha discovers that and manages to **distract** Prem's attention till two little girls have exchanged the cardboard box with another similar one which actually contains *laddoos*. The girls quickly hide the shoes and then come before Prem, their faces **gloating** with the pride of **outwitting** him. Little do they realize that they have been **outwitted** themselves. Prem's dog Tuffy had followed the girls to their hiding place and had then led Prem to the same spot. The girls do not know that Prem has already exchanged the box in which they had kept the shoes with another red cardboard box containing a *gajraa* for the girls.

⁶⁷⁴ **Unwitting:** (adj) unintentional

Origin: un-, not + **witting**

❑ Just before leaving, Kaanti *bu*a said, "*Kuchh kaha*a *sunaa maafkar denaa*. If I have **unwittingly** hurt anyone, then please forgive it as the foolishness of an old woman. May God bless you all."

Exercise

ok^w-, *spek*, *phanein*:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. She found him *disgusting*.
(a) she thought he was a spectre (b) She was circumspect about him (c) She despised him (d) She was inveigled by him (e) She ogled him.
2. He used many *indecent* words.
(a) fanciful (b) despised (c) obscene (d) inconspicuous (e) metathetical
3. His *taste in clothes* was not very good.
(a) sartorial choice (b) prurience (c) dress ogling (d) sycophantic dressing (e) epiphany about clothes
4. He was *easily noticeable* in the crowd due to his strange, loose garments.
(a) specious (b) conspicuous (c) delineated (d) diaphanous (e) spectral
5. The salesman *talked* the customers into buying things they did not need.
(a) lauded (b) fancied (c) blathered (d) ogled (e) inveigled
6. He is a *wise* man.
(a) perspicuous (b) perspicacious (c) introspective (d) spectral (e) specious
7. The media *tried to guess* which party would win the elections.
(a) speculated (b) fancied (c) had an epiphany about (d) was circumspect (e) delineated
8. He gave a *careless* answer to his brother's serious question.
(a) specious (b) flippant (c) prurient (d) fanciful (e) skeptical
9. Celebrities ought to be *careful* about what they speak on camera.
(a) circumspect (b) introspective (c) specious (d) prurient (e) quizzical
10. The critics *praised* her performance.
(a) ogled (b) speculated (c) despised (d) lauded (e) inveigled

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (e) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A professional licensed to examine the eyes for visual defects and prescribe glasses: O_____
2. That which looks true but is actually false: S_____
3. Temporary relief: R_____
4. A professional who specializes in fitting eyeglasses and making lenses to correct vision problems: O_____
5. Transparent: D_____
6. A sudden insight into a long-troubling problem: E_____
7. A person whose instinctive response to any statement is to doubt it: S_____
8. A witty reply: Q_____
9. A doctor specializing in the diagnosis and treatment of eye diseases: O_____
10. Long-sightedness: H_____

11. A boot-licker: S _____

12. Disgusting: D _____

Answers:

optometrist, specious, respite, optician, diaphanous, epiphany, skeptic, quip, ophthalmologist, hypermetropia/hyperopia, sycophant, despicable

Weid-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He spent his money *carelessly*.
(a) providently (b) improvidently (c) providentially (d) prudently (e) unwittingly
2. It was *clearly seen* that he liked her.
(a) eidetic (b) evident (c) invidious (d) clairvoyant (e) envisaged
3. He came in *the mask* of a friend.
(a) guise (b) visage (c) vista (d) proviso (e) kaleidoscope
4. The singer sang *a song which he had composed there and then* before the audience.
(a) an improvised song (b) an outwitting song (c) a witty song (d) an envisaged song (e) an idyllic song
5. He *pretended to be very wise*.
(a) was a guy (b) was imprudent (c) was providential (d) was eidetic (e) was a wiseacre
6. He made many *offensive* allegations against his brother.
(a) provisional (b) improvised (c) voyeuristic (d) outwitting (e) invidious
7. The don's lover *unintentionally* led the police to him.
(a) imprudently (b) improvidently (c) evidently (d) unwittingly (e) provisionally

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (a) 5. (e) 6. (e) 7. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A provider of food items: P _____
2. Face: V _____
3. A person who secretly peeps into others' bedrooms: V _____
4. A dreamer: V _____
5. An image that is worshipped: I _____
6. Ability to see things that are not physically present before the eyes: C _____
7. The feeling that something has happened before when it is actually happening for the first time: D _____
8. The divine power which controls the affairs and futures of all men: P _____
9. A condition in a contract: P _____

Answers:

purveyor, visage, voyeur, visionary, idol, clairvoyance, deja vu, providence, proviso

a few hours later that Oedipus was still upset, Queen Merope **chided**⁶⁸³ him for taking a useless man's **inebriated**⁶⁸⁴ words so seriously.

Oedipus *knew* what that man said could not be true. Yet, his words kept **rankling**,⁶⁸⁵ he could not sleep that night.

Early next morning, he went to the **Oracle**⁶⁸⁶ of Delphi and asked if he was or not the son of the King and the Queen.

Instead of answering his disturbed mind, the **Oracle** dropped a new bombshell. She said that he was going to kill his father and marry his mother...!!!

Oedipus was **flustered**, *horrified*, at the unexpected **prophecy**. *No! He could do no such thing!* He rushed his chariot towards the **adjacent** city of Thebes. *He would never return to Corinth ... would never let Fate make him do those **heinous**⁶⁸⁷ crimes!*

The entrance to Thebes was guarded by the **Sphinx**⁶⁸⁸. She was a monster with the head and breasts of a woman, the body of a lioness and the wings of an eagle. She asked one riddle to all the passersby:

It has four legs at morn, at mid-day two, in evening three; and more the legs it has, the weaker it will be.

No one had ever answered it correctly and so the Sphinx had **strangled** and **devoured**⁶⁸⁹ every single visitor to the city. Now, she posed the same question to Oedipus and **gloated** in the **anticipation** of having such a handsome fellow as lunch.

Oedipus said the answer was Man, who crawled on all fours as a baby, then walked upright, and needed a stick in old age.

It was the right answer! The Sphinx had been **vanquished**! She threw herself off her high rock and died.

The people of Thebes hailed Oedipus as their hero and said that only he deserved to be their new king. Their previous king, Laius, had been killed a day ago by a gang of robbers. What a lucky coincidence, Oedipus smiled. Then he saw Queen Jacosta, Laius' widow. She was beautiful! The people of Thebes suggested that since he was their King now, he should marry their Queen too. "Of course!" he thought. "Only a fool would say no to her. Jacosta. What a lovely name!" They were married that evening.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *frontem*, front => 'to strike at the front'

☐ Akbar was enraged at Anarkali's **effronterous** declaration in the royal court, "*jab pyaar kiya toh daranaa kya; pyaar kiya koi chori nahin ki, chhup chuup aahein bharna kya.*"

See also, **affront**.

⁶⁸³ **Chide:** (v) to scold, to express disapproval.

⁶⁸⁴ **Inebriated:** (adj) drunk

⁶⁸⁵ **Rankle:** (v) (of wounds, unpleasantness, etc.) to not become better, to continue to irritate or anger greatly.

⁶⁸⁶ **Oracle:** (n) the person through whom the gods communicated their message; the message thus communicated; a person who gives very wise advise

Origin: L *orare*, to pray => 'answer to the prayer'

⁶⁸⁷ **Heinous:** (adj) hateworthy

☐ The judge was especially severe in his sentence because he felt that the criminal had shown no guilt for his **heinous** crimes.

⁶⁸⁸ **Sphinx:** (n) The word is now used for anybody who seems as full of unsolvable puzzles as the Sphinx. Hence, today, **sphinx** means 'an **enigmatic** or mysterious person.'

Enigma: (n) mystery

☐ Can you figure out which Hindi song means 'life is an enigma?' *Zindagi kaisi hai paheli hai, kabhi toh hasaaye, kabhi yeh rulaaye*

The adjective form of **Sphinx** is **Sphinx-like**, meaning 'mysterious.'

☐ He was **intrigued** by the **Sphinx-like** smile of Rebecca.

⁶⁸⁹ **Devour:** (v) to gobble up hungrily.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *vorare*, to eat => 'to thrust down the throat'

☐ The child **devoured** the Ruskin Bond books.

Years passed by happily. Two sons and two daughters were born to Oedipus and Jacosta.

Then, plague struck the city.

Oedipus consulted the Delphic Oracle for guidance. The Oracle said that the **pestilence**⁶⁹⁰ would end only when the murderer of King Laius was killed or **exiled**. Eager to find out that **felon**⁶⁹¹, he sent for a blind **prophet**, Tiresias. Tiresias came to the court but **entreated**⁶⁹² him not to pursue the matter. Oedipus was **inexorable**⁶⁹³. “How can you say that? People are dying each moment and you ask me not to pursue the matter? I refuse to do so and command you to tell me who the murderer is. Out with it, now!” Tiresias was much distressed and **dithered**⁶⁹⁴ a lot but when Oedipus threatened to hang him, he said that Oedipus himself was the murderer!

He? How could that be? Surely the **prophet** was wrong? He had never even met Laius. How could he have murdered him? Why did all these **oracles** and **prophets** say things to upset him?

Queen Jacosta saw him worried. “Cheer up, my dear,” she said tenderly. “**Prophets** are not always right. Look at me. I’ve long stopped taking them seriously. You know, many years ago, when I was pregnant with Laius’ child, we visited an **oracle**. He told us that Laius would be killed by his son, but see! He was wrong! We killed our son as soon as he was born. Laius lived for long after that and was killed only by bandits on the way to Delphi.”

Delphi? Oedipus was thunderstruck. “Tell me how Laius looked!” Jacosta was surprised to see how agitated Oedipus became as she described the appearance of her former husband to him. He immediately sent for the former servant who was the only eye-witness to Laius’ murder.

Just then, a messenger arrived from Corinth with the news of King Polybus’ **demise**⁶⁹⁵. Oedipus heaved a sigh of relief—at least one half of the **prophecy** could never be true now...*but*, he said in great misery, he still could not go back...even when his mother needed him the most...because he was fated to commit **incest** with her. The messenger tried to **ameliorate**⁶⁹⁶ his pain by telling him that he *could* go to Queen Merope because she was not his real mother. “I know,” the old messenger said fondly, “for I was the one who took you to them. I had found you lying **forsaken** near Thebes.”

A black fear started gripping Oedipus and Jacosta. Then the witness of King Laius’ death arrived. He was Laius’ most trusted servant, the same man to whom he had given his infant son to be killed. Now, when Jacosta asked him strictly, the **wizened**⁶⁹⁷ old man confessed that he had been unable to kill the child and had instead left him on the road. He also confirmed that King Laius had been killed by Oedipus.

That day when he had decided to leave Corinth forever and **flee** to Thebes, Oedipus had encountered a chariot coming from Thebes’ direction. In the stupid ego fuelled by his anxiety, he had not stepped off the road for that chariot.

Another word from the root *vorare* is **voracious**.

Voracious: (adj) extremely hungry.

☐ The child was a **voracious** reader of Ruskin Bond books.

⁶⁹⁰ **Pestilence:** (n) a widespread, deadly disease; a plague.

⁶⁹¹ **Felon:** (n) a person who is convicted of a serious crime. A serious crime is called a **felony**. Opposite: **misdemeanor**, **peccadillo**.

Misdemeanor: (n) a minor crime.

⁶⁹² **Entreat:** (v) to ask for something in a very sincere or begging manner.

⁶⁹³ **Exorable:** (adj) one who can be persuaded by repeated requests.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *orare*, to pray => ‘one who is moved by prayers’

The opposite of **exorable** is **inexorable**, meaning ‘a person who is totally unmoved by prayers or requests.’

⁶⁹⁴ **Dither:** (v) hesitate

⁶⁹⁵ **Demise:** (n) death

⁶⁹⁶ **Ameliorate:** (v) to improve, make better.

⁶⁹⁷ **Wizened:** (adj) old, shrunk and wrinkled with age.

Neither had the other man. This had led to an **altercation** between them and Oedipus had angrily thrust his sword into him.

He now **blanched**⁶⁹⁸ at the realization that he had killed his own father! Jacosta ran to her room. By the time Oedipus reached her, she had hung herself. He took out a few pins from her gown and **gouged**⁶⁹⁹ out his eyes. Thus blinded, he left the palace and spent his remaining years as a wanderer.

“Thus, my friends,” Sriram said in his **peroration**⁷⁰⁰, “Fate is **inexorable**. It does not change, no matter what you do or how much you pray or run away from it. It is **ineluctable**⁷⁰¹. You cannot escape from it. You may try to shut the beast within four walls but it will find a little **orifice**⁷⁰² and wriggle out and roar in front of you. So, it is better accept Fate than fight it⁷⁰³. Thank you.”

IE *bha-* to speak

What was the first word that came to your mind when you saw this heading? I would be glad if you said *bhaasha*. And, when you have been speaking for too long, what do your friends tell you? “*Achha baba, ab apna bhaashan band kar!*”

Bhajan too is from the same root. Stop putting so much stress on the *bh*, and you get *baani*, or *vaani*, meaning speech, voice.

⁶⁹⁸ **Blanch:** (v) become white.

❑ The French version of the novel ‘The White Tiger’ is titled ‘Le tigre blanc.’

⁶⁹⁹ **Gouge:** (v) to tear out; to overcharge.

❑ Any shopkeeper who sells goods above their Maximum Retail Price is guilty of **gouging** his customers.

⁷⁰⁰ **Peroration:** (n) the conclusion of a speech.

Origin: *α per*, through + *orare* => ‘to speak through’ => ‘to speak to the end.’

⁷⁰¹ **Ineluctable:** (adj) that which you cannot escape from.

❑ Death is ineluctable.

⁷⁰² **Orifice:** (n) a small mouth-like opening.

⁷⁰³ **Fatalism:** (n) the belief that you cannot escape your fate.

❑ The following dialogue of the character Anand in the **eponymous** movie **exemplify fatalism**. “*Zindagi aur maut uparwale ke haath hai jahanpana, jise naa aap badal sakte hai naa mein. Hum sab toh rangmanch ki kathputlia hai, jiski dor uparwale ke haath bandhi hai. Kab, kaun, kaise uthega, yeh koi nahi jaanta.*”

The English word ‘ban’ is a cousin of these Sanskrit words. Initially, it simply meant a **proclamation**. Then it became ‘a public condemnation’ and then, outright prohibition. The words **banns**⁷⁰⁴, **banish**⁷⁰⁵, **banal**⁷⁰⁶ and **contraband**⁷⁰⁷ are all derived from ban.

Now, the *bh* sound of the Indo-European roots is always faithfully reflected in Sanskrit, but the Romans would change it to *f*- and the Greeks to *ph*-. Just have a look at the table below:

Language	Root	Meaning
Latin	<i>Fari</i>	To speak
Latin	<i>Fama</i>	Talk
Greek	<i>Phanai</i>	To speak
Greek	<i>Pheme</i>	Saying, speech
Greek	<i>Phone</i>	Voice, sound

An ‘infant’ is a child who cannot yet speak. The ‘infantry’ in an army comprised of boy-soldiers, that is, the junior-most fighters in the army who, therefore, got no horses and fought on foot.

⁷⁰⁴ **Banns**: The banns of marriage, commonly known simply as “the banns”, (from an Old English word meaning “to summon”) are the public announcement in a parish church that a marriage is going to take place between two specified persons.

- The purpose of banns is to enable anyone to raise any legal **impediment** to it, so as to prevent marriages that are legally invalid, either under canon law or under civil law.

⁷⁰⁵ **Banish**: (v) to force to leave a country or place by official order.

Origin: **ban** => ‘to ban a person from entering that place again.’

- The father **banished** his son saying, “*Is ghar ke darwaaze, tumhare liye hamesha ke liye band ho gaye hain*” (“the doors of this house are now closed to you forever.”)

⁷⁰⁶ **Banal**: (adj) dull, boring, commonplace. A **banal** statement is called a **banality**.

- “How was the movie?” Jai, who could not go, asked his friends who had just returned. “The same old story,” one of them yawned. “The hero and the heroine start a stupid love story, her father is an old enemy of his father, there are fights and love wins in the end.” Another friend **grimaced**: “In short, a **banal** story. The acting was pathetic too.” The third now chipped in. “The dialogues, the scenes were all **clichéd**. Tell me Jai, what does the heroine say to the villain when he kidnaps her?” “*Bhagwaan ke liye chhod de mujhe?*” Jai guessed. “Eggjactly!” His friends laughed. “Now tell me what does the hero say to the villain when he comes to rescue her?” Jai said, “Obviously! *Kutte kaminey main tera khoon pee jaaunga!*” Then, one of his friends picked up the towel lying on Jai’s bed, put it on his head like a dupatta and asked Jai, “What does the hero say when he takes the heroine to his mother for the first time?” Jai got up, pulled another friend of his along and stood **deferentially** before his toweled ‘mother’. “*Dekho maa, main kise laaya hoon!*” Everyone cracked up with laughter. “You are spot on, Jai. That’s exactly what our **banal** hero said too. So, what does his mother say?” Jai took the towel on his own head, sat on the bed, took the hand of the ‘girlfriend’ and said, “*Aao beti, mere paas baitho!*” Ho-ho-ho. Ha-ha-ha. All of them were **uproarious** by now.

Grimace: (v) to make a face.

Clichéd: (adj) **banal**. A **clichéd** statement is called a **cliché**.

Uproarious: (adj) laughing very loudly; (n) **uproar**, meaning ‘very noisy situation.’

Origin: roar + up

⁷⁰⁷ **Contraband**: (n) a banned thing.

- The doctor had explained to Parimal’s family that his diet should be very light after the operation. Yet, they brought tiffins full of goodies. The nurse on duty had to seize the **contraband**.

‘Fables’ are spoken stories and a ‘fabulous’ performance is so good, so unbelievably good, that it seems not real but a part of a fable. **Affable**⁷⁰⁸ old men, **ineffable**⁷⁰⁹ secrets and casual **confabulations**⁷¹⁰ with neighbours too share this root with fables.

Then we have the following words:

Bha-: **preface**⁷¹¹, **prophecy**⁷¹², **aphasia**⁷¹³

Bha-fa: **euphemism**⁷¹⁴, **blaspheme**⁷¹⁵

⁷⁰⁸ **Affable**: (adj) friendly, easy to talk to

- ❑ Shakuntala is an **affable** person. It's a pleasure talking to her.
- ❑ Shakuntala Devi spells out her purpose of life to make Maths an **affable** and joyful experience for everybody.

⁷⁰⁹ **Ineffable**: (adj) that which cannot be spoken.

Origin: a *in-*, not + *ex-*, out + *fari*, to speak => ‘that which cannot be spoken out’

- ❑ For a *pativrata Bharatiya naari*, her *pati* is her *parmeshwar* and so his name is **ineffable**.
- ❑ Tears of **ineffable** delight welled in her eyes. “I can't tell you how happy I am,” she barely managed to say.

⁷¹⁰ **Confabulation**: (n) discussion

- ❑ The Government took stock of the situation at a high-level meeting with the Prime Minister at his residence. Besides, the Prime Minister, those who attended the **confabulations** included the Defence Minister, the Law Minister, the Parliamentary Affairs Minister and the Home Minister.

⁷¹¹ **Preface**: (n) an introduction; (v) to say something as an introduction to the main theme; (adj) **prefatory**, meaning ‘introductory.’

- ❑ In his **prefatory** note, the author explained what the book was all about, why he had written it and how the reader should read it.
- ❑ She always **prefaces** her lectures with Urdu couplets.

⁷¹² **Prophecy**: (n) prediction.

Related words:

Prophecy: (v) to make a prediction.

Prophet: (n) one who habitually makes predictions.

Prophetic: (adj) related with a **prophecy** or a **prophet**.

- ❑ “You people think he is a **wastrel** but mark my words, one day, he will do better than anyone of you. He will be an IAS officer or something,” Sudhi's uncle **prophesied** about her younger brother. No one really believed that Deepu could ever be an IAS officer. Ten years later, however, the **prophecy** did come true.
- ❑ “The whole world will bow before the greatness of this boy, you just see,” the saint said **prophetically** to the young couple who had come to seek his blessings for their newborn son. That boy grew up to become a **notorious** criminals. **Prophecies** do not always come true.

⁷¹³ **Aphasia**: (n) inability to speak.

⁷¹⁴ **Euphemism**: (n) a polite and nice-sounding way of saying something that you will feel awkward or embarrassed or rude saying directly.

Origin: Gk *eu-*, good + *pheme*, saying => ‘speaking good words’

- ❑ A few examples of **euphemisms** are:
Toilet: washroom, restroom
Died: passed away
Crippled: differently abled
Mass-murder of minorities: ethnic cleansing;
- ❑ ‘Casting couch’ is a **euphemism** for sexual favours demanded from struggling actors as a precondition to casting them in films or serials.

⁷¹⁵ **Blaspheme**: (v) to speak rudely or in a fun-making manner about something that other people respect greatly. Blame evolved from blaspheme!

- ❑ “Rajan *ki maa*, just come here and see what your darling son is **blaspheming** about! Two years in America and he thinks that he is the most learned man and we are mere illiterate cowherds,” Rajan's father **ranted** upon Rajan's comment that all the Hindu gods and goddesses were mythological and did not exist in reality, and never did.
- ❑ “Rajan *ki maa*, just come here and hear your son's **blasphemies!**”

Bha-fa: fame, defame⁷¹⁶, infamy⁷¹⁷

A 'telephone' brings us sound from far off (G. *tele-*, distance). A 'symphony' is a pleasant playing together of many sounds. A **cacophony**⁷¹⁸ is just the opposite. **Euphony**⁷¹⁹ too is from the same root, unsurprisingly, and so is **anthem**⁷²⁰, surprisingly.

Latin *loqui* **to speak**

A man who speaks too much is **loquacious**⁷²¹.

When, leaning over their common wall, two neighbours 'speak with one another' for a few minutes, their conversation is called a **colloquy**⁷²².

⁷¹⁶ **Defame**: (v) to harm the reputation of.

- ❑ The minister accused in the corruption scandal denied his involvement and said that it was only an attempt of the opposition to **defame** him.

⁷¹⁷ **Infamy**: (n) state of being famous for a wrong reason; **notoriety**.

- ❑ Osama Bin Laden achieved international **infamy** after the attack on the World Trade Center towers in America.

⁷¹⁸ **Cacophony**: (n) unpleasant noise.

- ❑ The writer moved to his village home for an year, far away from the **cacophony** of the city life, to be able to concentrate on his novel.
- ❑ A rock song is music to some and **cacophony** to others.

⁷¹⁹ **Euphony**: (n) sweet, musical sound.

- ❑ The **euphonous** voice of Lata Mangeshkar makes each song of hers truly charming.
- ❑ Noted for its **euphony** even when it is spoken, Urdu is particularly charming when recited as a poem or sung as a song.
- ❑ A respectful hush prevailed at the auditorium, while the intoxicating **euphony** from his violin **mesmerized** the audience.

Mesmerize: (v) hypnotize

⁷²⁰ **Anthem**: (n) a song of praise of patriotism

- ❑ Can you name the only person to have written the national anthems of two countries? The answer is Rabindranath Tagore. The national **anthem** of India, *Jana gana mana*, and that of Bangladesh, *amar shonaar Bangla*, are both written by him.

⁷²¹ **Loquacious**: (adj) talkative

Origin: L *loqui*, to speak. The word 'talkative' too has 'talk' in it. Parallely, the Hindi word for talkative, *baatuni*, has 'baat', meaning 'talk', in it.

- ❑ Who is the most **loquacious** character of the film Sholay?

The answer has to be Basanti. Her mouth goes off at a rate of like a 1,000 words per minute. There is a scene soon after Jai and Veeru come to her village. They are going by her *tonga* and she as always, is **prattling** non-stop. Jai is lying in the back and Veeru is taking an **avid** interest in what she's saying. After quite a long time, she asks, "yoon ki, tumne meraa naam nahin poochha?" Jai, who has been keeping mum till now, asks from the back, "tumhaara naam kya hai Basanati?" And, Veeru **ironically** replies, "Chup be! Jab bhi dekho bak bak karta rehta hai!"

Prattle: (v) to talk meaninglessly. Synonym: **babble**, chatter

Avid: (adj) eager

⁷²² **Colloquial**: (adj) conversational

Origin: L *com-*, together + *loqui*, to speak => 'to speak together' => 'to talk'

- ❑ A policewallah is called a *mamu* in **colloquial** Hindi. In fact, the word *policewallah* is itself a **colloquialism** for the formally correct 'policeman'. In India today, **colloquial** English is mixed with Hindi words, and vice versa. When we write down our sentences, we still take care to write in either proper English, or proper Hindi, but while speaking, we casually mix the two. The resultant informal language is called *Hinglish*. *Hinglish* is a **colloquial** language. Examples: Mom *maani nahin*, *yeh dil maange more*, *mujhe doubt ho raha hai*, I am sure *ke wohi hai*, I am *bindaas*, *oh bhaiyaa* all is well, God *tusin* great *ho*.

Colloquialism: (n) a word or expression used in **colloquial** but not in formal language.

Words that conveys related ideas are **slang** and **argot**

Slang: (n) informal expressions or usage of words which are not used in formal documents.

- ❑ The word 'cool' has the **slang** meaning of 'okay, fine or excellent.'
- ❑ Here are a few examples of Mumbaiiya **slang**:

I/us = *apun*

Dude = *beedu*

I'm leaving = *apun kaatli maar rha hai*

You leave = *chal kaatli maar*

Drunk = *talli, tight, piyela*

We speak with other people in both formal and informal settings. A **colloquium**⁷²³ is a setting for formal speeches. An informal speech, as we've already seen, is called a **colloquy**.



Little Shirley too had many soft toys but they never talked to her. And, look at that man's toy monkey! Not only was it saying things to him, but saying such funny things that everybody was laughing. "Mama," she turned decidedly to her mother but was hushed with a "shhh, later." As soon as the show ended and the lights came on, Shirley, who had bottled herself long enough, spilled out. "Mama, I want that man's monkey." "Why darling?" her mother picked her up, "Shirl already has so many toys, doesn't she?" "Yes but I do not have a talking monkey. I want a talking monkey. His monkey." Her mother laughed and then dropped the bombshell. "Darling, it wasn't the monkey but the man who was speaking." "What???? No mama, it was the monkey. I saw him. I know!" "Shirl, that guy knows how to talk with his lips closed. He is a **ventriloquist**⁷²⁴." The mysterious long, new word made Shirley forget her monkey. "Venti what mama?" she asked curiously. "Ventriloquist," her mother repeated. Ventlilokist. Ventlilokist. That was all that Shirley **chanted** that day. She felt so grown up, so elegant while saying that word!

The other words from this root are:

Loqui-1: **Circumlocution**⁷²⁵, **obloquy**⁷²⁶, **soliloquy**⁷²⁷

Argot: (n) **slang** of thieves and criminals.

⁷²³ **Colloquium**: (n) a formal meeting, a conference.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *loqui*, to speak => 'to discuss'

⁷²⁴ **Ventriloquist**: (n) a person who speaks without seemingly moving his lips, and shows the voice to be coming from some other source, usually a dummy or a soft toy held in his hand.

Origin: L *ventri-*, stomach + *loqui*, to speak => 'to speak from the stomach'

⁷²⁵ **Circumlocution**: (n) to talk in a roundabout manner.

Origin: L *circum*, circle + *loqui*, to speak

- ❑ "Seth ji, as you know the prices of everything have reached the sky these days. It has become impossible for an honest man to get two square meals for his family..." The shop owner interrupted his employee impatiently and said, "Cut these **circumlocutions** and come straight to the point." The poor man lowered his head and nervously mumbled an appeal to increase his salary.
- ❑ Two days after Rehaan gave Haya a poem in which he had confessed that he loved her, they met to talk about it.
Haya: Rehaan, you are my very very good friend and I don't want to spoil this.
Rehaan: Haya, please don't use these **circumlocutions** with me. I'm ready for any answer. But please tell me clearly.
Haya: Hmm...(taking a deep breath)...well, the truth is that I don't love you and never will...I am sorry. You asked for frankness, Rehaan, and I've taken you at your word. This is my answer without any attempt at **circumlocution**."

⁷²⁶ **Obloquy**: (n) public use of highly insulting and disgracing language for someone by a group of people or by all people.

Origin: L *ob-*, against + *loqui*, to speak

- ❑ Most rape victims do not dare to report the crime to the police because they fear **obloquy**. Our society perceives a raped girl as having fallen from **virtue**, as if it was her fault that she was raped.

⁷²⁷ **Soliloquy**: (n) a talk with oneself. Especially, the talk of a character of a drama with himself so that the audience can know what is going on in his mind.

Origin: L *solus*, alone + *loqui*, to talk

- ❑ A scene from an old Hindi movie:

The old woman walked around the empty, dark **palatial** house, feeling very **melancholy**. She **soliloquized**:

"Oh, if I only had not slapped Raadha, or having slapped her, if only I had kept my cool and let Kishan vent out his anger! He would have cooled down after some time. They would still have been with me." She choked back a little sob. Then she looked at the central courtyard and said:

"It was right here. Oh, if it was to happen over again, I wouldn't say that—I wouldn't say it for the whole world. But he's gone now; I'll never, never, never see him any more."

This thought broke her down, and she wandered into the darkness, with tears rolling down her cheeks.

"Look at her! Now the old **termagant** is crying. Earlier, she had made her *bahu*'s life living hell. Got what she deserves," someone from the audience shouted in delight.

Melancholy: (adj) in a very sad, gloomy mood.

Loqui-2: **grandiloquence**⁷²⁸, **magniloquence**⁷²⁹, **eloquence**⁷³⁰

Latin *nuntiare* **to say**

When I ask you to ‘pronounce’ *nuntiare*, I am asking you to say it out (L. *pro-*, forth). When you say something formally, or publically, your statement is said to be an announcement. The other words from this root are:

Enunciate⁷³¹, **renounce**⁷³², **denounce**⁷³³

Latin *dicere* **to say**

A ‘dictation’ is a saying aloud of words, and ‘diction’, the manner in which they are said. All the words that are said are collected in a ‘dictionary’. A ‘dictator’ is the guy who tells everybody else what to do, and punishes severely anybody who goes beyond his say.

There is a famous **dictum**⁷³⁴: think before you leap. King Naurooz had not heard it. One day, as he was getting ready for the court, the royal astrologer arrived in great **agitation** and told him that a boy born that morning would bring the end of his rule. The first thing that Naurooz did upon entering the court was to pass an **edict**⁷³⁵ that all the baby boys born in all parts of the kingdom that morning be killed. Everybody in the court was **aghast**⁷³⁶ at the

⁷²⁸ **Grandiloquence**: (n) the act of talking grandly, using big words, usually in order to impress or show off

Origin: L *grandis*, great + *loqui*, to talk

❑ *Mughal-e-Azam* is full of **grandiloquent** dialogues. Sample the dialogue below:

Akbar: *Humein yakin hai ke qaidkhanay ke khaufnaak andheron ne teri aarzoo 'on mein woh chamak baqi na rakhi hogi jo kabhi thi!*

Anarkali: *Qaidkhanay ke andhere kaneez ki aarzoo' on ki roshni se kam thay!*

Akbar: *andhere aur barhaa diye jaayeinge!*

Anarkali: *aarzu'ein aur barh jaayeinge!*

⁷²⁹ **Magniloquence**: (n) **grandiloquence**

Origin: L *magnus*, great + *loqui*, to talk

⁷³⁰ **Eloquence**: (n) clear, impressive speech; (adj) **eloquent**, meaning ‘speaking’.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *loqui*, to speak

❑ **Eloquent** silence, **eloquent** eyes

❑ People usually get **eloquent** when telling their own stories, or after consuming alcohol.

⁷³¹ **Enunciate**: (v) to express clearly.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *nuntiare*, to say

❑ “Well Miss Jutinder,” the friend of a friend clearly began the conversation at a wrong note. “Well,” I said with a smile on my face and daggers in my eyes, “my name is J-A-P-I-N-D-E-R.” I **enunciated** my name knowing that otherwise he would next call me Japneet.

⁷³² **Renounce**: (v) to give up; (n) **renunciation**.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *nuntiare*, to call

❑ Gautam Buddha **renounced** the pleasures of his palace and family and set out on the difficult search of truth.

❑ *Sanyaas* means a **renunciation** of all that one has hitherto loved and found good.

⁷³³ **Denounce**: (v) to criticize; (n) **denunciation**.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *nuntiare*, to say

❑ The writer told her audience that the parts of her story that were taken straight out of real life were **denounced** as impossible and absurd, and the scenes that she made up out of her “own silly head” were pronounced ‘charmingly natural, tender, and true’.

❑ The ill-treatment **meted out** by Sudhanshu Kakkar and his wife to his parents was **denounced** by all.

❑ The ill-treatment **meted out** by Sudhanshu Kakkar and his wife to his parents received universal **denunciation**.

Mete out: (v) hand out, apportion.

⁷³⁴ **Dictum**: (n) saying

Origin: L *dicere*, to say

⁷³⁵ **Edict**: (n) authoritative order.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *dicere*, to say

⁷³⁶ **Aghast**: (adj) horrified

indiscriminate⁷³⁷ order! **Oblivious**⁷³⁸ to the horrified faces of his courtiers, he asked his chief minister to make sure that not even a single child was spared. The minister **demurred**; he could not do such a **gruesome**⁷³⁹ act! **Slaughtering**⁷⁴⁰ infants! The king looked at him with **fury** and very much **daunted** by that look, the poor minister **slunk**⁷⁴¹ away to carry out the **carnage**.

That evening, a shabby woman with **disheveled**⁷⁴² hair and tattered clothes came crying into the court. The palace guard apologized for letting her in but said that he had no choice. She had been sitting by the gates for many hours, wailing **incessantly** and creating quite a scene. She had even **rent** her clothes in her grief. Then, the queen had sighted her and had directed him to take her to the court.

A minister looked at the **tatterdemalion**⁷⁴³, and asked her what she wanted. “I want justice,” she said.

“You’ll get it.” The king replied. “Tell me what happened.”

“This morning, royal soldiers came and **impaled**⁷⁴⁴ my son, the precious son I had gotten just today after many **grueling**⁷⁴⁵ years of prayers and **austerities**. And you took not even a minute to kill him. I had not even seen him properly yet.” Her voice suddenly steeled. “Now, I want justice. I want justice for the murder of my son.”

- ❑ In the movie *Jodha Akbar*, the newly-wed Jodha, unaccustomed to the brutal ways of the Mughals, is **aghast** to see her husband—emperor Akbar—have a **traitor** thrown down from the roof repeatedly till his death.

Traitor: (n) one who betrays trust.

⁷³⁷ **Indiscriminate:** (adj) making no distinctions; applicable for all.

- ❑ “People are constantly in search of idols, heroes, villains, sirens—in search of individuals, in search of noise. Anyone who is conventionally and moderately ‘successful’ becomes a celebrity. It’s **indiscriminate**—it can be Miss Universe, or a writer, or the maker of a ridiculous TV soap, the minimum requirement is success. There’s a particular kind of person who comes up to me with this star-struck smile—it doesn’t matter who I am—they just know I’m famous; whether I’m the ‘Booker Prize Winner’ or the star of the Zee Horror Show or whatever is immaterial.” Arundhati Roy

Opposite of **indiscriminate** is **discriminating**.

Discriminate: (v) to make distinctions, to not **mete out** the same treatment to everyone. A person who **discriminates** is called **discriminating**.

- ❑ Ordinary fans loved the latest movie of the actor Hriday Rolan but his **discriminating** admirers **unanimously** felt that his performance in this movie was below his earlier performances.

⁷³⁸ **Oblivious:** (adj) ignorant of, having no idea of; (n) **oblivion:** the state of being unknown or not knowing.

- ❑ There was a time when Geetanjali was the number 1 heroine of the Hindi film industry. The whole nation seemed to be crazy about her. Then, other, younger heroines slowly took the spotlight from her. People forgot her but she felt incomplete without her former **adulation**. She hated the **oblivion** which age had forced her into. When she couldn’t take it any more, she killed herself.

Adulation: (n) great, enthusiastic praise or admiration.

⁷³⁹ **Ghastly:** (adj) horrible

⁷⁴⁰ **Slaughter:** (v) to cut animals or like animals.

A related word is ‘**onslaught**.’

Onslaught: (n) a very angry and forceful attack.

⁷⁴¹ **Slink:** (v) to move loosely, half-heartedly or without energy.

⁷⁴² **Disheveled:** (adj) untidy, messy.

⁷⁴³ **Tatterdemalion:** (n) someone dressed in torn clothes.

Raggamuffin has a similar construction and means the same.

⁷⁴⁴ **Impale:** (v) to pierce with a pointed stick.

The word ‘pole’ has the same root as ‘pale’ part of impale.

⁷⁴⁵ **Grueling:** (adj) very tough

Most of the ministers, even those who had secretly hated the king for his **ruthless edict** in the morning, now **scoffed** at her **gall**⁷⁴⁶. **Deranged**⁷⁴⁷ woman! Her grief had maddened her. Did she even realize that she was **indicting**⁷⁴⁸ the king? The king!

“Foolish woman, go away!” said one minister. “You said ‘murder’? How dare you?” said another. She looked around. Nobody seemed to have taken her seriously. She became **downcast**⁷⁴⁹ and started walking towards the door. Then suddenly, she stopped, turned, and before anybody could stop her, cursed the king. “May every day of your rule kill a member of your own family! Then you will know.”

The king, shaken by the terrible **malediction**⁷⁵⁰ and by her **temerity**⁷⁵¹ to utter it, ordered his soldiers to take her away and behead her immediately. Then, he tried to calm himself. Nothing could happen from random words by a random woman. Of course, nothing would happen, he **reiterated**⁷⁵² to his shaken self all through the evening and the night.

The next day, his mother died. Naurooz was **daunted** but he held on. It could just be a coincidence. The following day, his favourite queen, the love of his life, died. He was **rent**⁷⁵³ **asunder**⁷⁵⁴ by grief. And **lurking**⁷⁵⁵ under that grief was **trepidation**. Who next? His little sons? No! No! No! He immediately announced that he was **abdicated**⁷⁵⁶ the throne and until his eldest son came of age, his younger brother, Prince Saurooz, would rule in his stead.

The astrologer’s ‘prediction’ came true.

The other words for *dicere* are:

⁷⁴⁶ **Gall:** (n) boldness

⁷⁴⁷ **Deranged:** (adj) mad

⁷⁴⁸ **Indict:** (v) to accuse, to charge formally in court.
Origin: L *in-*, in + *dicere*, to say

⁷⁴⁹ **Downcast:** (adj) without hope.
Origin: Down+ cast => ‘spirits cast down’

⁷⁵⁰ **Malediction:** (n) curse
Origin: L *malus*, bad + *dicere*, to say

⁷⁵¹ **Temerity:** (n) boldness, courage.

⁷⁵² **Reiterate:** (v) to repeat.

⁷⁵³ **Rend:** (v) to tear apart.
□ The widow’s wails **rent** the skies and Lord Vishnu himself had to come down and console her.

⁷⁵⁴ **Asunder:** (adv) split apart.
Related word: **sunder**.
Sunder: (v) to split.

⁷⁵⁵ **Lurk:** (v) to wait in hiding.

⁷⁵⁶ **Abdicate:** (v) to give up.
Origin: L *ab-*, away + *dicere*, to say

*Dicere-1: index*⁷⁵⁷, *contraindication*⁷⁵⁸, *indite*⁷⁵⁹, *interdict*⁷⁶⁰

*Dicere-2: vendetta*⁷⁶¹, *vindicate*⁷⁶², *vindictive*⁷⁶³, *avenge*⁷⁶⁴, revenge, *vengeance*⁷⁶⁵

⁷⁵⁷ **Index:** (n) an indicator.

Origin: L *in-*, *in* + *dicere*, to say

⁷⁵⁸ **Contraindication:** (n) prohibition

Origin: L *contra-*, against + *in-* + *dicere*, to say

- ❑ The dangerous rides of the amusement park, like the High Hurricane, Earthquake, Upside Down and *Chakkar pe chakkar*, were **contraindicated** for small children, heart patients and pregnant ladies.

⁷⁵⁹ **Indite:** (v) to write.

Origin: L *in-*, *in* + *dicere*, to say

- ❑ Gulzar is an amazingly **versatile** songwriter. He has **indited** many poetic masterpieces. But, he has also composed songs written in the language and idiom of common people- covering the whole **gamut** from a **rustic** of UP to a hep youth who dances the night away in a Mumbai disco.

Gamut: (n) range

⁷⁶⁰ **Interdict:** (v) prohibit; (n) prohibition.

Origin: L *inter-*, between + *dicere*, to say => 'to forbid'

- ❑ Scene from the novel David Copperfield. *David Copperfield* came into the room where his mother and Miss Murdstone, her sister-in-law (from her second marriage), were sitting. His step-brother (who was only a few weeks old) was on his mother's lap. He took the baby very carefully in his arms. Suddenly, Miss Murdstone gave such a scream that David all but dropped the baby. Here's how he describes what happened:

'My dear Jane!' cried my mother.

'Good heavens, Clara, do you see?' exclaimed Miss Murdstone.

'See what, my dear Jane?' said my mother; 'where?'

'He's got it!' cried Miss Murdstone. 'The boy has got the baby!'

*She was limp with horror; but stiffened herself to make a **dart** at David, and take the baby out of his arms. Then, she turned faint; and was so very ill that they were obliged to give her cherry brandy. David was **solemnly interdicted** by her, on her recovery, from touching his brother any more on any pretence whatever; and his poor mother, who, David could see, wished otherwise, **meekly** confirmed the **interdict**, by saying: 'No doubt you are right, my dear Jane.'*

⁷⁶¹ **Vendetta:** (n) enmity involving lot of blood shed.

Origin: from L *vindicta*.

- ❑ In many Hindi films of the 1970s and the 80s, the hero turned into a **vendetta** machine whose sole purpose in life was to kill the villain who had killed his family or raped his sister.
- ❑ *Qayamat Se Qayamat Tak* is the story of **vendetta** between two Rajput clans. The first *qayamat* comes when Ratan refuses to marry his girlfriend Madhumati, after making her pregnant. She kills herself in **despair** and her brother Dhanraj Singh shoots Ratan on his wedding day. This makes the two families blood-rivals of each other. Years later, Dhanraj's son Raj and Randhir's daughter Rashmi fall in love and elope. That leads to the second *qayamat* in the history of the two families.

⁷⁶² **Vindicate:** (v) prove right.

Origin: L *vindicare*, to lay a claim

- ❑ When the court declared the dacoity-accused 'not guilty', his mother said that her faith in her son had been **vindicated**.

⁷⁶³ **Vindictive:** (adj) seeking revenge.

Origin: L *vindicare*, to lay a claim

- ❑ When the Bollywood star Tauqeer Hussain left his wife for a heroine, she wrote a **vindictive** article in a tabloid in which she revealed many shocking secrets of his life which she said she had stayed quiet about till then, for the sake of her marriage. She accused him of having links with underworld, **evading** Income Tax, sleeping with his heroines, exploiting aspiring actresses by promising them films and many other **salacious** details.

⁷⁶⁴ **Avenge:** (v) to take revenge on somebody's behalf.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *vindicare*, to lay a claim

- ❑ A group of young Hindu men, **brandishing** their *trishuls* and shouting slogans of 'Jai Siya Ram', burnt a copy of The Holy Quran outside the masjid. Then, they forced their way in, throwing all over the masjid compound, raw pork, and pamphlets **proclaiming** that this attack was to **avenge** the **slaughter** of cows by the Taliban in Afghanistan.
- ❑ Veeru tried to kill Gabbar Singh to **avenge** his best friend Jai who had been killed by Gabbar Singh's men.

⁷⁶⁵ **Vengeance:** (n) revenge

Origin: L *vindicare*, to lay a claim

Dicere-3: **jurisdiction**⁷⁶⁶, **benediction**⁷⁶⁷, **benison**⁷⁶⁸

Dicere-4: **predicament**⁷⁶⁹, **paradigm**⁷⁷⁰

IE **prek-** **to ask, entreat**

The Hindi word *prashan* is from this root. And, a *prashan*—an asking—that you make to God is called a *prarthana* or a prayer. “*Ishwar allah yeh pukaar sun le...*” goes one prayer song. “*Itni shakti humein dena data...*” is another.

Look at these words: **Precarious**⁷⁷¹, **deprecate**⁷⁷², **imprecate**⁷⁷³

- ❑ The Imam of the masjid gave a call for **vengeance** and the blood of the young Muslim boys started boiling. They vowed to teach all who had **desecrated** their masjid, a memorable lesson.

⁷⁶⁶ **Jurisdiction:** (n) the area in which an authority, like a court, has its say.

Origin: L *juris*, law + *dicere*, to say

- ❑ “Today, for the first time in our long and **chequered** history,” he said, “we find the whole of this vast land... brought together under the **jurisdiction** of one constitution and one union which takes over responsibility for the welfare of more than 320 million men and women who inhabit it.” Dr Rajendra Prasad, addressing the nation on 26th January 1950, as he took the oath of office as the first President of the Republic of India.

⁷⁶⁷ **Benediction:** (n) blessing

Origin: L *bene-*, good + *dicere*, to say

- ❑ *Doodho nahaao, koodo fallo, sada suhaagan raha etc.* are **benedictions**.
- ❑ Laying a bouquet of flowers and the gift-wrapped doll upon the bed, the young mother kissed the sleeping Soha, she said this **benediction**: “A happy birthday, and God bless you, my daughter!”

⁷⁶⁸ **Benison:** (n) blessing

Origin: L *benedictio* -> Fr *beneicon* -> Eng *beneson*

- ❑ God has showered His **benisons** upon our motherland. Our country is blessed with immense natural wealth, with mountains and plains and forests and rivers and oceans and snow and sun.

⁷⁶⁹ **Predicament:** (n) a difficult or dangerous situation in which you cannot think what to do.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *dicare*, to say

- ❑ Seventy-year-old Sharma ji arrived in Delhi—for the first time in his life—checked into the pre-booked hotel, had a late lunch and then went out to explore the streets of Delhi by himself. When it started getting dark, he thought of returning to the hotel and...realized that...he didn't remember the name of the hotel! Or even the area! He checked his pockets. The chit bearing the hotel's address was in the other pants, hanging in the hotel's bathroom. Oh God, what a terrible **predicament**! He panicked, wishing he had listened to his sons and bought a mobile or had not come alone. What would he do now?

⁷⁷⁰ **Paradigm:** (n) model, framework.

Origin: Gk *para-*, side + *deiknynai*, to show => ‘to show side by side’. The Greek word *deiknynai* is related with *dicere*.

- ❑ Some scholars have established a **paradigm** of police character. They say that policemen are typically more **authoritarian**, aggressive and rigid, and that they are more distrustful and suspicious of the people they interact with than other professionals.

Authoritarian: (adj) having authority; dictatorial.

⁷⁷¹ **Precarious:** (adj) very risky; held up by on only a very thin and weak support.

Origin: L *prex*, prayer => ‘surviving only on a prayer’

- ❑ Rudir Gupta was the only breadwinner of his family of five. The family's financial situation became **precarious** after his death. Their only source of income now is his father's **measly** pension. The family does not know for how long that will continue, because since Rudir's death, old Mr Gupta's health has been **precarious**. The poor old man has not been able to recover from the tragedy.

Measly: (adj) very little in amount.

⁷⁷² **Deprecate:** (v) to lower in value, belittle.

Origin: L *de-*, away + *prex*, prayer => ‘to ward away by prayer’ => ‘to consider something evil’

- ❑ Some of us **deprecate** what we have done and refuse to take any credit for it. Perhaps we do not realize that such self-**deprecation** betrays a low self-esteem and decreases our worth in the eyes of the others.
- ❑ In the movie ‘The Pursuit of Happyness’, the **protagonist** tells his young son that people will always try to **deprecate** him but he needs to be strong enough to do what he wants. He says, “You got a dream, you got to protect it. People can't do something themselves, they want to tell you that you can't do it. You want something? Go get it.”

⁷⁷³ **Imprecate:** (v) to curse; (n) **imprecation**, a curse.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *prex*, prayer => ‘to call in prayer’

In each of these three words, the root *prek-* jumps out towards you, but there are two words in which it doesn't and one is actually surprised when he is told that they too are from *prek-*. These words are:

Postulate⁷⁷⁴, expostulate⁷⁷⁵

Did you raise your eyebrows too? What happened was that the root underwent the following sequence of changes:

Prek-sk -> *pork-sk* -> *posk* -> *posto*

Latin *rogare* to ask

An interrogation by a police officer is a 'questioning session between' him and you; he can ask you or anybody any questions because that is his **prerogative**.⁷⁷⁶ He did not have to ask someone to grant him this right. He got it the moment he **donned**⁷⁷⁷ the policeman's uniform.

However, such power corrupts some policemen; they **arrogate**⁷⁷⁸ the title of '*Mai-baap*' of the area; they enjoy it when the poor **grovel**⁷⁷⁹ in their feet for help; it **gratifies** their **arrogance**⁷⁸⁰ and makes them feel like the lords of the universe.

Many religions bind their people to pay **tithes**⁷⁸¹ to the actual lord of the universe. To donate more than that is **supererogatory**,⁷⁸² 'over and above what was asked out of them.' The Church said that this helped people reach their quota of goodness faster. The 'superabundant merit' that they continued to collect after that was deposited in the Spiritual Treasury of God, which could then be **disposed** by the Pope for **remitting** the sins of the ordinary believers.

- ❑ Rudir's mother muttered dreadful **imprecations** on the head of the drunken driver who had jammed his car into her son's scooter, killing him on the spot. "*Tere moonh mein keede padein,*" she **wailed**, "*tera kuchh na rahe. Narak mein sade tul!*"

⁷⁷⁴ **Postulate:** (v) to claim or assume something to be true and then use that assumption in further reasoning.

Origin: L *poscere*, to request -> *postulare*, to ask

- ❑ John Dalton **postulated** that elements are made of tiny indivisible particles called atoms, and that all atoms of a particular element are identical.

⁷⁷⁵ **Expostulate:** (v) to protest.

Origin: L *ex-* + *postulare*, to ask => 'to ask strongly'

- ❑ Old Mrs. Sharma decided to take *sanyas*. "But we need you, ma" **expostulated** her sons, "your grandchildren need you! Do not go, please!" They could not change her mind though.

⁷⁷⁶ **Prerogative:** (n) an automatic right that a person has by virtue of his status or job.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *rogare*, to ask

- ❑ The upper caste Zamindars believed it was their **prerogative** to do what they want to with the lower-castes.
- ❑ It is the government's **prerogative** to charge citizens for the services it provides through taxation.

⁷⁷⁷ **Don:** (v) to put on (clothes).

Origin: Contraction of *do on*

The opposite is **Do off**, meaning 'to take off or get rid of.'

Origin: Contraction of *do off*

⁷⁷⁸ **Arrogate:** (v) to take for oneself without permission or right.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *rogare*, to ask

⁷⁷⁹ **Grovel:** (v) to lie face downwards at somebody's feet.

⁷⁸⁰ **Arrogance:** (n) belief that one is superior to all others.

Origin: from **arrogate**

⁷⁸¹ **Tithe:** (n) the 'tenth' part of agricultural produce or personal income set apart as an offering to God or for charity.

Origin: from 'tenth'

- ❑ The old man absolutely believed in the power of **tithing**. He said that it was his life's experience that the more he had given away, the more was that came back.

⁷⁸² **Supererogatory:** (adj) more than is required, ordered, or expected.

Origin: L *super-*, above, + *e-*, *ex-*, out, + *rogare*

A **surrogate**⁷⁸³ is someone who is ‘asked in place of another.’ The uncle of a fatherless child usually becomes his **surrogate** father. The king was **outraged**⁷⁸⁴ when one day a few orphans came with the complaint of mistreatment by their relatives. He immediately **abrogated**⁷⁸⁵ the law banning adoptions. That a child stayed in a loving family was more important, he said, than his staying in his natural family.

Latin *clamare* **to call, cry out**

When you ‘claim’ something, you cry out that it is yours. In order to prevent any random person from claiming that the makers of a movie or a TV serial stole details from his life, the producers run a **disclaimer**⁷⁸⁶—‘This is a work of fiction and any resemblance to any person dead or living is purely coincidental.’

What is an ‘exclamation’? Nothing but ‘a crying out.’ I hope you do not exclaim when you are told that the words below are from *clamare*. The root is pretty obvious in all of them.

Call maar-1: **clamor**⁷⁸⁷, **clamant**⁷⁸⁸, **acclaim**⁷⁸⁹

Call maar-2: **declaim**⁷⁹⁰, **proclaim**⁷⁹¹, **reclaim**⁷⁹²

⁷⁸³ **Surrogate:** (n) a substitute who does one’s job.

Origin: L *sub-*, under, in place of + *rogare*

⁷⁸⁴ **Outrage:** (v) to anger or offend; shock.; (n) anything that strongly angers, offends or shocks.

Origin: L *outr(er)*, ‘to push beyond bounds.’

❑ His screams and harsh **cacophonies** were an **outrage** to the very name of music.

⁷⁸⁵ **Abrogate:** (v) to do away with, abolish.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *rogare*, to ask

⁷⁸⁶ **Disclaimer:** (v) to claim having no link with something. A notice which makes such a claim is called a **disclaimer**.

Origin: L *dis-*, away + *clamare*, to call

⁷⁸⁷ **Clamor:** (n) loud noise; (v) make noise, ask for something loudly and noisily.

❑ The small temple atop the mountain was far away from the noise and the **clamor** of the material world.

❑ After the third dacoity in two days, the people of the city **clamored** for increased police patrolling.

❑ Her hungry heart **clamored** for the happiness that was its right, and grew very heavy as she watched friends or lovers walking in the summer twilight when she took her evening **stroll**.

⁷⁸⁸ **Clamant:** (adj) urgent, crying.

❑ Population control is a **clamant** need of the hour. We just cannot afford to let our numbers multiply unchecked.

⁷⁸⁹ **Acclaim:** (n) appreciation; (v) to appreciate.

Origin: L *ad-*, at + *clamare*, to call => ‘to call in praise’

❑ Satyajit Ray won great **acclaim** for his very first film, Pather Panchali.

❑ Dilip Kumar was **acclaimed** for his performance in the movie Devdas.

⁷⁹⁰ **Declaim:** (v) to give a speech.

Origin: L *de-* + *clamare*, to call

❑ The Prime Minister **declaimed** his Independence Day speech from the Red Fort.

⁷⁹¹ **Proclaim:** (v) declare

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *clamare*, to call

❑ A successful marriage needs a lot more than “I love you” **proclamations**. It needs trust, respect, tolerance, understanding...

⁷⁹² **Reclaim:** (v) to claim again; to recover.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *clamare*, to call

❑ Many sea-side cities are built on **reclaimed** land, that is, the land which has been recovered from sea.

Latin vocare to call

The job at whose call we obediently get out of our bed each morning, get ready and report at our office, is our **vocation**⁷⁹³. On the other hand is our **avocation**⁷⁹⁴ which calls us away from our main job.

When two policemen entered the office, everyone left their desks and crowded around them. Was Rehaan Sheikh their colleague? The police enquired. “Yes”, they all nodded, “but why?” He had been arrested for attempted robbery of his landowner, they were told. “He!” Oh, he must have been framed! He could do no wrong! They all **vouched**⁷⁹⁵ for his **integrity**. As soon as the policemen left, all his friends in the office arranged an **advocate**⁷⁹⁶ and rushed to the police station.

An **advocate** always takes a clear, **unequivocal**⁷⁹⁷ stand. You always know whether he is arguing ‘for’ or ‘against’ an issue or a person. The politicians, on the other hand, are masters of **equivocation**⁷⁹⁸. The statements they make and the answers they give are such that they can be interpreted either ‘for’ the issue or ‘against’ it. Politicians rarely make their stand clear.

A **vociferous**⁷⁹⁹ speaker puts so much energy into his words that everything around—the glass on your table, the tables, the ground and the walls—starts trembling. You shut your ears helplessly to escape the **din**⁸⁰⁰. But suddenly everyone around you starts shouting. You open your ears, and hear passionate **avowals**⁸⁰¹ of **retaliation**. *‘Apni aan bachayeinge! Hum unko sabaq sikhayeinge.’* The **provocative**⁸⁰² lecture has done its job, you think. The crowd has been **provoked**.



⁷⁹³ **Vocation:** (n) job

Origin: L *vocare*, to call => ‘calling’

⁷⁹⁴ **Avocation:** (n) a secondary job or a hobby.

Origin: L *α-*, away + *vocare*, to call => ‘that which calls away from one’s main job’

⁷⁹⁵ **Vouch:** (v) guarantee, speak in favour of.

Origin: *α advocare* → Fr *avochier* → Middle english voucher .

⁷⁹⁶ **Advocate:** (v) to support strongly, to speak in favour of.

Origin: L *ad* – to + *vocare* => ‘to call to help’

⁷⁹⁷ **Unequivocal:** (adj) clearly taking one side, leaving no doubt about one’s stand on an issue.

Origin: See equivocate

⁷⁹⁸ **Equivocate:** (v) to speak equally on two opposing sides of an issue.

Origin: L *aequus*, equal + *vocare*

⁷⁹⁹ **Vociferous:** (v) carrying a lot of voice.

Origin: *α vox*, voice + *ferre*, to carry

⁸⁰⁰ **Din:** (n) noise

⁸⁰¹ **Avow:** (v) to declare; (n) **avowal:** a declaration.

A related word is ‘**disavow**.’

Disavow: (v) to publicly declare having no link with something.

⁸⁰² **Provocative:** (adj) that which arouses some emotion or action.

Origin: *α pro* –, forth + *vocare* => ‘to call forth’

It was on a calm Sunday afternoon that 60-year-old Gayatri Sinha **convoked**⁸⁰³ all her family members for an emergency meeting. Surprised by her summons, they were stunned by her announcement. She was taking *sanyas*! Some **gaped**, some **gaped**⁸⁰⁴. Then, all **exhorted**⁸⁰⁵ her to **revoke**⁸⁰⁶ her decision but she said her decision was **irrevocable**⁸⁰⁷.

Years passed. Her decision had been **irrevocable**, indeed. She had **renounced** them all. But they had not been able to. Random things—an **adage**⁸⁰⁸ she had often said, a song she had sometimes hummed, a colour she had always liked, a stick she had started using—still **evoked**⁸⁰⁹ in Umesh’s mind the memories of his mother. He still **invoked**⁸¹⁰ his mother at the slightest pain or shock or sorrow he felt. “Hai ma!” Oh, how he wished she was still there!



The Hindi words *vachan* (speech, promise), *vaachan* (reading, narration), *vaachnik* (oral), *vachas* (talkative), *vaak* (speech, voice), *vakya* (a sentence, word, speech), *vyakt* (expressed), *vakta* (speaker), *vyakhyaan* (speech, elaboration), and *avaak reh jaana* (be **rendered** speechless, stunned) as well as the Arabic *vakaalat* (**advocacy**) are cousins of the *vocare* words.

Latin *cantere* **to sing**

Kukadukdoo!!!

The next time you hear a cock give his wake-up call to the world, do go to him and thank him for his **conscientious** discharge of his duty. Or perhaps, give him a *jaadu ki jhappi*.

The poor creature will be touched. He may even start dancing with joy if you call him Mr Chanticleer. Indian cocks are not taught Latin roots by their mother hens, so he will not know what the word means but its length and sound will tell him it is something good. You are an Indian but not a cock and are reading Latin roots, so you can make out that chanticleer means ‘one who sings in a clear voice.’ Do not rush to flatter your croaking friends with this title though. The word is strictly reserved for cocks.

There are many more beautiful—and more human—words from this root.

⁸⁰³ **Convoked:** (v) to call together; (n) **convocation:** a meeting that is called together. (Latin *con* – means ‘together’)

⁸⁰⁴ **Gape:** (v) stare open-mouthed in great surprise.

⁸⁰⁵ **Exhort:** (v) to suggest very very strongly.

☐ The musician Frank Zappa is noted for his **exhortation**, “Drop out of school before your mind rots from exposure to our mediocre educational system. Forget about the Senior Prom and go to the library and educate yourself if you’ve got any guts.”

⁸⁰⁶ **Revoke:** (v) to call back. (Latin *re* – means ‘back’)

☐ The prince said that if he could **revoke** his connection to the royal family and make himself a person of common descent and ordinary connexions, he would gladly do so.

⁸⁰⁷ **Irrevocable:** (adj) that which cannot be called back or undone.

☐ The young man supported the concept of live-in relationships saying that he should have an opportunity of trying how he liked living with somebody before binding himself to her **irrevocably** through marriage.

☐ “Forget the past,” the wise old woman told the girl **pinning** for her lost lover. “The past is **irrevocable**. It is gone and will never, ever come back, no matter what you do, no matter how much you cry.”

⁸⁰⁸ **Adage:** (n) saying

☐ An old **adage** says, “The best conversations are those in which you respond to ideas, not words.”

⁸⁰⁹ **Evoked:** (v) call (some image, emotion or memory etc.) to mind. A thing which does that is called **evocative**. (Latin *e* – means ‘out’)

⁸¹⁰ **Invoke:** (v) to call someone in one’s speech.

☐ You **invoke** your mother by saying “*oui ma!*” You **invoke** god by saying “*Hey bhagwaan!*” or “*Hey Ram!*” etc.

*Cantere-1: chant*⁸¹¹, *cant*⁸¹², *canto*⁸¹³, *cantata*⁸¹⁴

*Cantere-2: incantation*⁸¹⁵, *cantabile*⁸¹⁶, *cantillate*⁸¹⁷

*Cantere-3: recant*⁸¹⁸, *incentive*⁸¹⁹, *accentuate*⁸²⁰

⁸¹¹ **Chant:** (n) a short hymn that is sung together by devotees; a short *mantra* supposed to have magical properties.

⁸¹² **Cant:** (n) an insincere statement which is said to impress or to avoid telling the truth.

❑ Politicians are masters of **cant**.

❑ When asked what she hated the most, the actress replied that she was intolerant of **cant**. "I appreciate people who say it as it is," she said.

⁸¹³ **Canto:** (n) a division of a long poem.

Origin: L *cantus*, song

❑ The Valmiki Ramayana is an **epic** poem. It is arranged into 6 books- Book of Youth, Book of Ayodhya, Book of Forest, The Empire of Holy Monkeys, Book of Beauty and Book of War. Each of these books is further arranged into **cantos**. Book of Youth has 77 **cantos**, Book of Ayodhya 119 **cantos**, Book of Forest 75 **cantos** and so on. Each **canto** tells a particular event. For example, the episode of Queen Kaikeyi asking King Dashrath to make her son Bharat the king of Ayodhya instead of Ram, is described in **Canto** 11 of Book of Ayodhya. The king's **anguish** at her demand is told in the following **canto**, **Canto** 12. Rama's departure happens in **Canto** 40 of the book. The intermediate **cantos** describe the drama that happened in between.

Epic: (n) a very long poem which tells the story of a hero's adventures.

⁸¹⁴ **Cantata:** (n) a medium-length narrative piece of music, religious in theme, and performed with vocal solos and a chorus. It is the shorter version of an **oratorio**.

⁸¹⁵ **Incantation:** (n) a magical formula.

❑ The magician asked the woman to put in all her jewellery into a box with the **incantation** "*Grooboodhooshoodhum*" repeated five times and to open it a week later with the **incantation** "*Muhdoohsoohdooboorg*" uttered seven times. That would double her jewellery, he promised.

⁸¹⁶ **Cantabile:** (adj) playing a musical instrument such that it resembles the human voice.

❑ The old man's piano could produce an unbelievably beautiful **cantabile** tone. This means, the piano sounded just like the humming of a lady.

⁸¹⁷ **Cantillate:** (v) to recite musically.

❑ Have you heard someone read *Ek omkaar sat naam* (the Sikh mool mantra) or the Gayatri mantra (*Om bhur bhuvah swah*) or passages from the Qura'n or the Bible? Does a person read these religious texts in a different manner from novels, newspapers or the other stuff he reads? Yes. We 'read' the novels and other books but we 'recite' the religious texts. That sing-song, musical manner of reading (a religious/**liturgical** text) is called **cantillation**. Note that **cantillation** only means musical recitation; it is not the same thing as singing. **Cantillation** involves fewer musical notes than singing.

❑ Try to recall the sound of the Muslim call to prayer. That is an example of Quranic **cantillation**.

⁸¹⁸ **Recant:** (v) to take back. (*α re* – means 'back')

❑ The emperor Hiranyakashipu ordered his son Prahlad to **recant** his belief in Vishnu or else get killed.

❑ The witness told the judge that the police was pressurizing her to **recant** her **testimony**. "They've all taken bribes from the murderer's family," she said, "and came to my house again and again to tell me that if I did not **recant** my statement, I would land in great trouble and they would not be able to protect me." Everyone in the courtroom was stunned by the disclosure.

⁸¹⁹ **Incentive:** (n) a reward promised as a motivation.

Origin: *α in* -, into + *canere* => 'to set the tune'

❑ Parents often use **incentives** to motivate their child to do unpleasant tasks. Example: "If you get 10 out of 10 in tomorrow's test, I'll buy you a big bar of chocolate."

❑ The Government of India offered ₹ 2 crore as **incentive** to any sportsperson who won a gold medal in the Olympics.

⁸²⁰ **Accentuate:** (v) highlight

Origin: from accent, which comes from *α ad* -, to + *contus*, singing => 'a particular way or tone of singing'

❑ The innocence of her looks was **accentuated** by her plain dress of black cotton and by the little brooch and bracelet which were her sole ornaments.

❑ The tight, straight coat **accentuated** her narrow waist.

Cantere-4: **chantey**⁸²¹, **canorous**⁸²²

Greek *oide* **song**

Rimjhim closed her eyes and **earnestly** sang an **ode**⁸²³ to love. The performance, the emotion, the **melody**⁸²⁴ wet many eyes. Really, how **pious**, how **divine** a feeling love was, they all thought, and how well this talented girl had captured its essence in her song. They had never heard a song like that, they said. They loved it!

But a few people disagreed. Strongly. They had found her **rhapsody**⁸²⁵ childish. It was **cloyingly**⁸²⁶ sentimental, they said. Laughing over it very much, they did a **parody**⁸²⁷ of the song, much to the chagrin of all her admirers.

That experience in her very first public performance taught Rimjhim how **subjective** judgments on art were, and, how **futile** it was to try to be liked by everyone. She decided not to worry any more about what other people said about her work and to concentrate just on what made her feel good.

The art of versification is called **prosody**⁸²⁸.

Latin *legere* **to choose, read**

Greek *legein* **to choose, speak**

The lucky guy who has been ‘selected’ by the college heartthrob to be her boyfriend has been ‘chosen apart’ from a large number of wannabes.

⁸²¹ **Chantey:** (n) a sailor’s song. Also called a **shanty**.

- ❑ A major part of the sailors’ work was to manipulate the sails by means of heavy ropes. This involved a lot of physical labour. In order to make the repetitive and difficult work enjoyable, the group leader—known as the shantyman—would sing a line of a song. The rest of the sailors would then respond in chorus, tightening or relaxing their hold on the rope as the melody rose or fell. Thus, the **chantey**s also served to **synchronize** the movements of all sailors. Most **chantey**s were such call-and-response songs—the shantyman sang the first line and the others responded. He selected songs that suited the task in hand in speed and length.

⁸²² **Canorous:** (adj) singing

- ❑ The cuckoo and the nightingale are **canorous** birds.

⁸²³ **Ode:** (n) tribute

- ❑ ‘*Saare jahaan se achha Hindustan hamaara*’ is the poet Iqbal’s ode to his motherland.

⁸²⁴ **Melody:** (n) a sweet sounding, musical arrangement of sounds. Adjective: **melodious**, sweet sounding

- ❑ Lata Mangeshkar has such a **melodious** voice that she is known as the Nightingale of India.

⁸²⁵ **Rhapsody:** (n) a song of great, enthusiastic praise; (v) **rhapsodize:** to talk or sing about with great enthusiasm.

- ❑ Lata was shopping in one of the famous malls of London when lo! She found herself face-to-face with Amitabh Bachchan! He had just entered the showroom she was in. Not being able to think in her excitement, she forwarded her trembling hand to him for his autograph. He smilingly obliged. Just then, the shop manager came and escorted him to their collection. Lata hung around till he stayed in the showroom. She **rhapsodized** about the encounter for months.

⁸²⁶ **Cloy:** (v) to make sick with sweetness; (adj) **cloying:** something that is so sweet that you feel disgusted or sick.

- ❑ No one can drink concentrated sugar syrup. It is **cloyingly** sweet.

⁸²⁷ **Parody:** (n) a performance that makes fun of another performance.

- ❑ The students presented ‘Sholay Reloaded’—a **parody** of the movie Sholay—in the college annual function.

⁸²⁸ **Prosody:** (n) the art of writing verse.

- ❑ The basic elements of music are: melody (sruti), rhythm (laya) and **prosody** (lyrics).
Think of even a basic song. An example:

Twinkle twinkle little star
How I wonder what you are
Up above the world so high
Like a diamond in the sky.

It is the particular arrangement of words that enables us to read it in a sing-song voice. The writer could also have expressed the same thought as: These twinkling stars shine like diamonds in the sky, high above the whole world. I often wonder what they really are. Can you recite the above two sentences? No. You can only read them like you read newspapers or books.

Duggu Dogra is a rich hotelier who **brags** about his **eclectic**⁸²⁹ taste in women; he claims he has had lovers of all colours and countries. While he is sentimental about a particular lady, he writes love poems to her because he believes that women like such romantic things. But I am sure you would want to cry out in sympathy for his girlfriends if you saw his **illegible**⁸³⁰ handwriting and the pathetic poetry that he makes them **wade**⁸³¹ through. Here is a Dogra **Doggerel**⁸³²:

*When you walked into my life, it seemed that sun shone
And those years started seeming dark, when I was still alone
Each moment that you are away, I feel on thorns thrown
Each moment I think of you, may that to you be known
Please darling now promise to never, leave my heart's throne
You are mine, oh my sunshine, and, I am your own*

Like Duggu's handwriting, maps seem **illegible** too. But at least a key can help you read a map. Such a key is called a **legend**⁸³³. Of course, the word also applies to the wonderful stories that we have 'read' in our childhood and continue to read still, or maybe watch in movies like '*The Legend of Bhagat Singh*.' In this movie, as in all **legends**, it is difficult to separate the fact from the fiction. The story tellers add generous dollops of *masaala* to make the story interesting.

If given a choice, which movie would you watch, '*The Legend of Bhagat Singh*' or '*Andaz Apna Apna*'? Well, in my case, the 'choice has been made beforehand'—I have a **predilection**⁸³⁴ for romantic comedies.

The other words from these two roots are:

Leg- 1: **negligent**⁸³⁵, **diligent**⁸³⁶, **intellect**⁸³⁷

⁸²⁹ **Eclectic**: (adj) selected from many different sources.

- ❑ The music album was an **eclectic** mix of songs from Bihar, Kashmir, Punjab, Gujarat, Rajasthan, Assam and Bengal.
- ❑ The menu of the restaurant was **eclectic**—it offered Mughlai, Rajasthani, Thai, Chinese, Italian and Continental cuisines.

⁸³⁰ **Illegible**: (adj) that which cannot be read. Opposite: **legible**, meaning 'readable.'

- ❑ Sushi picked up a tattered old letter from her grandfather's trunk. The page was rotten. Only here and there was a sentence or a part of a sentence **legible**. The first that she could read was near the middle of the page:
"His mother left for La. . . today, he . . . sty was stricken . . . terday. God give she does not die . . . and military. . . of Sha . . ."

⁸³¹ **Wade**: (v) to walk through water, snow, sand, or another such substance which offers resistance to movement; hence, to move with difficulty or labour

- ❑ It rained non-stop for a few hours in Chandrapur. As a result, the city was flooded, electricity went kaput and the people on the roads **waded** knee-deep in water.

⁸³² **Doggerel**: (n) a nonsensical poem; a very badly written poem.

A similar word is **drivel**.

Drivel: (n) nonsensical talk.

- ❑ "I do better things with my time than listening to the **drivel** of RJs," Ramesh told his friend who had asked him who his favorite Radio Jockey was.

⁸³³ **Legend**: (n) an explanatory list of the symbols appearing on the map; a mythical story about an event or person. (adj) **legendary**. Legendary doesn't mean just famous; it means so famous that myths are attached to him or it.

⁸³⁴ **Predilection**: (n) natural inclination towards one thing above all the others.

- ❑ A survey found that between BE and MBBS, students show an increasing **predilection** for the engineering degree.

⁸³⁵ **Negligent**: (adj) not paying attention.

- ❑ The child died due to the *ayah's* **negligence**. After cleaning the floor with the disinfectant, she forgot to put it back on the shelf. The child, who was barely a year and a half, thought it was milk and drank it.

⁸³⁶ **Diligent**: (adj) applying great care and effort to his work. The opposite of negligent.

Origin: L *di-*, apart + *ligere-*, to choose.

- ❑ The writer **diligently** researched historical records for his novel set in the Mughal era.

⁸³⁷ **Intellect**: (n) higher intelligence

Leg- 2: **intelligentsia**⁸³⁸, **intelligible**⁸³⁹, **elite**⁸⁴⁰, **sortilege**⁸⁴¹

Leg- 3: dialogue, **dialect**⁸⁴², **dialectical**⁸⁴³

Leg- 4: monologue, **lexicon**⁸⁴⁴, **dyslexia**⁸⁴⁵

The Greek *legein* means speech, as we have already seen. And what do we speak? That is described by a derivative of *legein*: *logos*. *Logos* means speech, word, reason. Can you think of why the Greeks would have used the same word for both speech and reason? ‘Logic’ is the eldest child of *logos*.

The *logos bacha*-log 1: **logistic**⁸⁴⁶, **analogous**⁸⁴⁷, **homologous**⁸⁴⁸

-
- ❑ Many people worry that the poor reading habits of the youngsters, and their addiction to television and video games, may make them a generation of a weakly developed **intellect** and imagination.

⁸³⁸ **Intelligentsia**: (n) group of **intellectuals**.

- ❑ The writer said that she worked hard to keep her language simple. “I do not try to be clever or scholarly in my writing,” she said. “I see no fun in being understood only by the **intelligentsia**. My writing is about the ordinary man. So I want that an ordinary man should be able to understand it.”

⁸³⁹ **Intelligible**: (adj) understandable

- ❑ Traditionally, Hindi and Urdu were **mutually intelligible** languages. After partition, religious fundamentalists started identifying Hindi with Hindus and Urdu with Islam. The commonly used Urdu words in Hindi were replaced by weighty, tongue-tripping Sanskrit words, and the Hindi words in Urdu, by Arabic or Persian words. This **stilted** Sanskritized Hindi was utterly **unintelligible** to a speaker of the **stilted** Arabicized Urdu.

Stilted: (adj) artificial, very stiff and formal, not natural.

⁸⁴⁰ **Elite**: (adj) highest class people.

- ❑ The clientele of the restaurant consisted of the very **elite** of the city.

⁸⁴¹ **Sortilege**: (n) divination by drawing lots.

Origin: *α sors*, fate + *legere*, to choose.

- ❑ Many popular forms of fortune telling are based on **sortilege**—tarot reading, dice casting, flipping of a coin, etc. The practice of opening a book at a random page and then taking the words written on that page as divine advice too falls under sortilege. Another method is to think of a question, throw a set of three dice and then, read the answer in the sum of the obtained numbers. For example, a sum of three suggests that a favourable surprise is on the way; four suggests disappointment, six warns of obstacles etc. There are eighteen possibilities in all. Sortilege always offers a predetermined number of possibilities.

⁸⁴² **Dialect**: (n) a regional variation of a language.

- ❑ The language of Rajasthan is called Rajasthani. Rajasthani further has many **dialects** such as Marwari, Brijbhasha, Malwi, Dhundhari, Mewari, Hadoti, Wagdi and Shekhawati.

⁸⁴³ **Dialectical**: (adj) related with debate.

- ❑ Nobody can match the **dialectical** skills of Gaurav. He has won each debate he has participated in.

⁸⁴⁴ **Lexicon**: (n) dictionary

- ❑ For most students, the idea of an English **lexicon** begins and ends with the Oxford English Dictionary.

⁸⁴⁵ **Dyslexia**: (n) a learning disorder in which the child is unable to recognize and understand written words and symbols.

Origin: L *dys-*, bad, ill + *lexis*, word

- ❑ Aamir Khan’s movie *Taare Zameen Par* tells the story of a **dyslexic** child and how he suffers till one teacher is finally able to diagnose his **dyslexia**.

⁸⁴⁶ **Logistics**: (n) management of all the resources involved in a particular event.

Origin: Gk *logos*, reason -> *logistikos*, skilled in reasoning => ‘skilled in calculation’

- ❑ The **logistics** of Maha Kumbh are mind boggling. 70 million people came to Allahabad for the Kumbh Mela of 2001! The administration had to arrange for their housing, food, toilets, garbage disposal, health care and security. It did it so well that the event passed without an accident.

⁸⁴⁷ **Analogous**: (adj) parallel to, similar to.

- ❑ The relationship between a novel and its chapters is **analogous** to the relationship between an **epic** and its **cantos**.
- ❑ The motion of the tilted earth around the sun is **analogous** to that of a spinning top.

⁸⁴⁸ **Homologous**: (adj) having the same relation, exactly similar to.

Origin: Gk *homos*, same + *logos*, word, ratio. Note: The word ratio means both reason and proportion.

The *logos bacha-log* 2: **prologue**⁸⁴⁹, **epilogue**⁸⁵⁰, **sylllogism**⁸⁵¹

The *logos bacha-log* 3: **apologue**⁸⁵², **apology**⁸⁵³, **logomachy**⁸⁵⁴

As for the answer to my question, just think of how many times you have dismissed a man as “stupid” just because he could not speak properly, and have called a man ‘intelligent’ just because he talks impressively.

Latin **verbum** **word**

When you talk of ‘Verbal’ Ability, you are talking of your ability with words.

The word ‘Verb’, however, feels arrogant that it is the head of the family and so refuses to be used for just any word. ‘I will only describe actions,’ he declares **haughtily**. But the other members of the family are not so proud. They let themselves be used in the general sense of ‘words.’ These **meek** members are:

Verbose⁸⁵⁵, **verbatim**⁸⁵⁶, **verbiage**⁸⁵⁷

- The tribal people regard nature to be **homologous** to the maternal womb.
- Most aspects of human physiology are closely **homologous** to corresponding aspects of animal physiology, and animal experimentation has provided much of the foundation of physiological knowledge.

⁸⁴⁹ **Prologue:** (n) an introduction, a foreword.

Origin: Gk *pro-*, before + *logos*, speech

- In the **prologue** to the novel, a young man is shown being murdered by a robber. The novel opens at five years after the day of that murder.

⁸⁵⁰ **Epilogue:** (n) an ending statement or speech at the end of a work.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, upon + *logos*, speech => ‘upon the end of a speech’

- The novel ends with Samia’s and Arnav’s marriage. The **epilogue** shows them five years later, happily married and the proud parents of a baby boy. Samia’s parents too are shown playing with the child, indicating that they have forgiven the couple completely. So, the readers close the book with the satisfaction that the couple lived happily ever after.

⁸⁵¹ **Syllogism:** (n) use of two statements together to reach a logical conclusion.

Origin: Gk *syn-*, together + *logos* reason => ‘to reason together’

- A classic example of a **syllogism** is “All men are mortal. Ram is a man. So, Ram is a mortal.”

⁸⁵² **Apologue:** (n) a short story, often with animal characters, that teaches a moral.

Origin: Gk *apo-*, away from + *logos*, speech => ‘to give a speech about something but staying away from that thing in the speech.’ => ‘to not talk in direct language’ => ‘to give your message using other things as symbols.’

- The Panchatantra stories are all **apologues**.

⁸⁵³ **Apology:** (n) a statement of defence or justification.

Origin: Gk *apo-*, off + *logos*, speech => ‘to speak in defence.’

A person who speaks in defense or support of something is its **apologist**.

- Gandhi was an **apologist** of non-violence.
- The Naxalites killed the editor of a leading Bihar newspaper because he was an **apologist** for strong government action against them.

⁸⁵⁴ **Logomachy:** (n) fight about words or their usage.

Origin: Gk *logos*, word + *makhe*, battle

- Logomachy can arise from the use of the same word or phrase in different senses.
- The two lovers agitated in a **logomachy** about the term ‘commitment.’

⁸⁵⁵ **Verbose:** (adj) using a lot of words.

- In the movie *Sholay*, Jai, who likes talking to the point, often puts plugs in his ears to escape from Basanti’s **verbose** talks.

⁸⁵⁶ **Verbatim:** (adj) word by word.

- The newspaper contained a **verbatim** account of the courtroom trial of the terrorist.
- The eager fan took down his favorite writer’s speech **verbatim**.
- The Muslims consider the Quran to be the **verbatim** word of God.

⁸⁵⁷ **Verbiage:** (n) wordy speech or writing.

- Hum yeh kareinge! Hum woh kareinge!* The netā’s **verbiage** went on for a whole hour.

Exercise

Or-, bha-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. Her bitter words *kept stinging him* for years.
(a) blasphemed (b) rankled (c) grimaced (d) banished (e) gouged
2. He is *an infamous man*.
(a) a man who is not famous (b) a man who is famous for wrong reasons (c) a man who harms the reputations of others (d) a man who was once famous but isn't now (e) an ordinary man
3. Her *mysterious* smile intrigued him.
(a) inebriated (b) ineluctable (c) bleak (d) enigmatic (e) wizened
4. To stab a man in the back is a *hate-deserving act*.
(a) misdemeanour (b) pestilence (c) rankling act (d) blasphemous act (e) heinous act
5. He *scolded* her for coming late.
(a) chided (b) defamed (c) blasphemed (d) grimaced (e) created an uproar about
6. He *hungrily gobbled up* the food.
(a) blabbered (b) squashed (c) gouged (d) devoured (e) confabulated
7. She *begged* him to tell her the truth.
(a) entreated (b) confabulated (c) dithered (d) prophesied (e) ameliorated
8. He *tore out* the bird's eyes.
(a) entreated (b) devoured (c) gouged (d) blanched (e) entreated
9. The car driver was *drunk*.
(a) ineluctable (b) inexorable (c) inebriated (d) exorable (e) ineffable
10. Ram was *sent away* from Ayodhya for fourteen years.
(a) entreated (b) made enigmatic (c) banished (d) blasphemed (e) gouged
11. There was nothing special about his speech. It *contained the same boring things that everyone says*.
(a) was unfamous (b) was infamous (c) was banal (d) was a libretto (e) was a perforation
12. The priest *predicted* that the young boy would rule the world one day.
(a) blanched (b) prophesied (c) prophesied (d) euphemised (e) confabulated
13. The prisoner pleaded to the king for mercy but the king was *immovable*.
(a) ineluctable (b) ineffable (c) cacophonous (d) uproarious (e) inexorable

Answers:

- 1 . (b) 2 . (b) 3 . (d) 4 . (e) 5 . (a) 6 . (d) 7 . (a) 8 . (c) 9 . (c) 10 . (c) 11 . (c) 12 . (c) 13 . (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A polite and nice-sounding way of referring to a socially awkward subject: E _____
2. A banned thing: C _____
3. A person through whom the gods communicated their message: O _____
4. A serious crime: F _____
5. To improve a bad situation: A _____
6. Unpleasant noise: C _____

7. The conclusion of a speech: P _____
8. Old and wrinkled: W _____
9. Shameless boldness: E _____
10. A statement that makes fun of or insults something which people respect greatly: B _____
11. The text of an oratorio: L _____
12. A small, mouth-like opening: O _____
13. Unspeakable: I _____

Answers:

euphemism, contraband, oracle, felony, ameliorate, cacophony, peroration, wizened, effrontery, blasphemy, libretto, orifice, ineffable

Loqui, nuntiare, dicere:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. They kept silent because they feared *that people would insult and disgrace them*.
(a) interdiction (b) obloquy (c) circumlocution (d) contraindication (e) vindictiveness
2. He was shocked at her *boldness*; how dare she say all that?
(a) contraindication (b) interdiction (c) vindictiveness (d) vindication (e) gall
3. He hoped someone would rescue him from his *terrible difficulty*.
(a) predicament (b) vendetta (c) paradigm (d) benison (e) malediction
4. He was *in a very sad mood*.
(a) vengeful (b) aghast (c) abdicating (d) in a predicament (e) melancholic
5. Everyone had to follow the king's *order*.
(a) saying (b) enunciation (c) edict (d) denunciation (e) grandiloquence
6. He *gave up* all his wealth.
(a) renounced (b) enounced (c) denounced (d) meted out (e) apportioned
7. He *had no idea of* the truth.
(a) was aghast at (b) was rent asunder by (c) downcast about (d) was indiscriminate about (e) was oblivious of
8. Her eyes *spoke*.
(a) interdicted (b) were eloquent (c) enounced (d) discriminated (e) denounced
9. She followed a *very tough* training schedule.
(a) vindicating (b) a gruelling (c) an authoritarian (d) a vengeful (e) a rending
10. The boy *kept talking meaninglessly* for hours.
(a) interdicted (b) was magniloquent (c) was loquacious (d) prattled (e) slunk
11. He had the *temerity* to fight.
(a) ability (b) courage (c) desire (d) motive (e) energy
12. He looked *untidy*.
(a) dishevelled (b) ghastly (c) deranged (d) asunder (e) rent
13. He *was charged with* twenty offences.
(a) interdicted (b) was indicted on (c) was sundered for (d) was contraindicated for (e) got a jurisdiction for
14. He has *an eager* interest in cars.
(a) an avid (b) a lurking (c) a slinking (d) an eloquent (e) a vindictive

Answers:

1(b) 2(e) 3(a) 4(e) 5(c) 6(a) 7(e) 8(b) 9(b) 10(d) 11(b) 12(a) 13(b) 14(a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A person dressed in rags: T _____
2. Great, enthusiastic praise: A _____
3. Model, framework: P _____
4. A person who speaks without seemingly moving his lips: V _____
5. Slang of criminals: A _____
6. Talkative: L _____
7. To pierce a stick through: I _____
8. Curse: M _____
9. Mad: D _____
10. To give up: A _____
11. To take revenge on somebody's behalf: A _____
12. An expression used in conversational language only: C _____
13. Enmity involving lot of blood shed: V _____
14. To wait in hiding: L _____
15. A talk with oneself: S _____

Answers:

tatterdemalion, adulation, paradigm, ventriloquist, argot, loquacious, impale, malediction, deranged, abdicate, avenge, colloquialism, vendetta, lurk, soliloquy

Prek-, rogare, clamare, vocare, cantere:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. The boys *protested to* their teacher about her unfair decision.
(a) deprecated (b) invoked (c) expostulated with (d) exhorted (e) avowed to
2. The work she did was *more than was required*.
(a) irrevocable (b) supererogatory (c) epic (d) disavowed (e) acclaimed
3. He *recanted* his statement.
(a) repeated (b) sang again (c) took back (d) revised (e) recorded
4. Her financial condition was *very risky*.
(a) precarious (b) measly (c) accentuated (d) cantabile (e) evocative
5. Only one person knew the *magical formula* by saying which any metal could be turned into gold.
(a) chant (b) cant (c) cantata (d) incantation (e) canto
6. He *was highly offended by* the insensitive media report.
(a) was vociferous about (b) expostulated about (c) was outraged by (d) totally disavowed (e) gaped at
7. He *belittled* her achievement.
(a) made precarious (b) imprecated (c) cantillated (d) deprecated (e) incentivised
8. He *vouched for* the safety of the machine.
(a) battled for (b) tested for (c) spoke in favour of (d) called for (e) worked day and night for

9. The king *abolished* the title of 'Vice Prime Minister'.
 (a) revoked (b) abrogated (c) recanted (d) canted (e) avowed
10. He was a *very loud and forceful* supporter of animal rights.
 (a) an avowing (b) a declaiming (c) an acclaimed (d) an unequivocal (e) a vociferous

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (c) 9. (b) 10. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. To speak equally on two opposing sides of an issue: E _____
2. A saying: A _____
3. A sailor's song: C _____
4. An automatic right that a person has by virtue of his status or job: P _____
5. Hobby: A _____
6. An insincere statement which is said to impress or to avoid telling the truth: C _____
7. Curse: I _____
8. To publicly declare having no link with something or somebody: D _____
9. To stare open-mouthed in great surprise: G _____
10. That which cannot be called back: I _____
11. To give a speech: D _____
12. A division of an epic poem: C _____
13. A reward promised as a motivation: I _____
14. The tenth part of agricultural produce or personal income set apart as an offering to God or for charity: T _____

Answers:

equivocate, adage, chantey, prerogative, avocation, cant, imprecation, disavow, gape, irrevocable, declaim, canto, incentive, tithe

Oide, legere, legein, verbum:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. He *walked with difficulty* through the mud.
 (a) cloyed (b) waded (c) parodied (d) rhapsodized (e) syllogised
2. She is a *very careful and hardworking* student.
 (a) an eclectic (b) an analogous (c) a dialectical (d) an intellectual (e) a diligent
3. He *went on and on* about his plans for the future.
 (a) spoke verbatim about (b) was verbose about (c) gave verbiage regarding (d) made an apology for (e) was stilted about
4. His words were *disgustingly sweet*.
 (a) eclectic (b) verbatim (c) dyslexic (d) doggerel (e) cloying
5. His words *could not be understood*.
 (a) were unintelligible (b) were intelligible (c) were illegible (d) were eclectic (e) were stilted
6. He wrote in a *very formal and unnatural* English.
 (a) a verbose (b) stilted (c) a dyslexic (d) an intellectual (e) a dialectical

7. She has *an inclination* for *saris*.
(a) an apologue for (b) a logomachy (c) a prosody (d) predilection (e) a rhapsody
8. She *talked enthusiastically* about her first prize for months.
(a) rhapsodized (b) parodied (c) made a prologue (d) was diligent about (e) made a melody about

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (e) 3. (b) 4. (e) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (d) 8. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A short write-up at the end of a novel: E _____
2. Selected from many different sources: E _____
3. A performance that makes fun of another performance: P _____
4. A regional variation of a language: D _____
5. A badly written poem: D _____
6. A learning disorder in which the child is unable to recognize and understand written words and symbols: D _____
7. A short story, often with animal characters, that teaches a moral: A _____
8. Dictionary: L _____
9. The art of writing verse: P _____
10. An explanatory list of the symbols appearing on the map: L _____
11. Unreadable: I _____
12. Management of all the resources involved in a particular event: L _____
13. Use of two statements together to reach a logical conclusion: S _____

Answers:

epilogue, eclectic, parody, dialect, doggerel, dyslexia, apologue, lexicon, prosody, legend, illegible, logistics, syllogism

HANDS, FEET, EARS AND BACK

IE swen- to sound

The word 'sound' itself is from this root. The Sanskrit words *svan*, *svani* and *svar* mean sound, and the science of phonetics is called *svanan vigyan*. The English called a swan by that name because it was a singer bird.

Two people are in **consonance**⁸⁵⁸, if they make the same sounds on most issues. If they do not, if one says "No way!" when the other is saying "I'd love to," that is the unfortunate state of **dissonance**⁸⁵⁹.

It was wonderful to see the whole audience get up and sing in **unison**⁸⁶⁰ "*Mile sur mera tumhara, toh sur bane hamara...*" The **sonorous**⁸⁶¹ chant **resonated**⁸⁶² till long afterwards.

⁸⁵⁸ **Consonance:** (n) harmony, agreement.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *sonare*, to sound => 'to sound together'

- ❑ The **consonance** of all witnesses was that the poor man was hit by a speeding truck.
- ❑ The songs were not in **consonance** with the mood and the look of the film.
- ❑ In *Mughal-e-Azam*, Shahzaada Salim does not sing a single song. Can you think why? Because that would not be **consonant** with a prince's personality. Mughal princes listened to songs, they didn't stoop so low as to sing themselves.

⁸⁵⁹ **Dissonance:** (n) lack of agreement, conflict.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *sonare*, to sound => 'the sounds are apart'

- ❑ There was **dissonance** within the party over the president's choice of Chief Ministerial candidate.
- ❑ The Ramayana begins with a **dissonance** in King Dashrath's family about his choice of successor. He wants to crown his eldest son Rama whereas his third wife, Kaikeyi, wants the **diadem** to go to her son, Bharat. The conflict does not escalate however because Rama obediently submits to his step-mother's wish and goes away. He returns only 14 years later and like all good stories, everybody lives happily ever after.

⁸⁶⁰ **Unison:** (n) in one sound; complete agreement.

Origin: L *uni-*, one + *sonare*, to sound

⁸⁶¹ **Sonorous:** (adj) giving a clear or loud sound; **resonant**

Origin: L *sonare*, to sound

- ❑ The hostages sat bundled and blindfolded in a large empty hall, listening to a loud watch ticking **sonorously**.
- ❑ After coming out of the movie hall, people said that the real star of the movie Mr Bhagwaan was Amitabh Bachcha's **sonorous** voice. "It was so booming, so powerful. I thought that is exactly how God would sound if I ever heard him," said one man. "Mr Bachchan doesn't appear even once on the screen. He is God. He is invisible. But we don't even miss him, because we are so much under the spell of his voice," gushed a woman.

⁸⁶² **Resonate:** (v) to resound, echo.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *sonare*, to sound.

A sound that **resonates** is a **resonant** sound.

Assonance⁸⁶³ and **sonnet**⁸⁶⁴ are the other words from this root.

Latin *dorsum* **back**

Endorsement⁸⁶⁵ of a brand by Amitabh Bachchan, the **dorsal**⁸⁶⁶ side of a whale and a **dossier**⁸⁶⁷ given by India to Pakistan about the Pakistanis involved in a terror attack in India all contain this root.

Latin *manus* **hand**

To do something ‘manually’ is to do it by hand. A ‘manual’ is a book that tells you how to do it. The ‘manufactured’ goods were made by hand (*facere*, to make). The machines came much later.

Common sense says that you cannot manufacture something out of nothing. However, a magician seems to do just that! Out of thin air, he produces a watch or a pigeon or a scarf. The audience knows it is **legerdemain**⁸⁶⁸, but cannot **fathom**⁸⁶⁹ exactly how he did it.

Another thing people often cannot **fathom** is what they were thinking when they chose their rulers.

The Chief Minister’s lack of ethics was **manifest**.⁸⁷⁰ He had flatly refused to **resign** even though his son had been caught on camera, accepting bribe to pass a particular project. The people **manifested** their **outrage** by holding dem-

⁸⁶³ **Assonance:** (n) agreement of the vowel sounds of two or more words in a poem when the consonant sounds which come after or before these vowel sounds do not agree.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *sonare*, to sound => ‘to sound’

- ❑ For example, consider the words *strike* and *grind*. These two words are not rhyming words. The consonant sounds of the two words do not agree. However, the ‘t’ of both the words has the same sound. So, *strike* and *grind* are **assonant**. Similarly, *hat* and *man* are **assonant** because the ‘a’ of both has the same sound.
- ❑ Loose/choose is a perfect rhyme. Rude /loose is an **assonant** rhyme
- ❑ **Assonance** is used in poems. For example, read this sentence: Fleet feet sweep by sleeping Greeks.’ Here, only the words ‘fleet’ and ‘feet’ are perfectly rhyming. Yet, the sentence sounds so good and poetic because ‘fleet’, ‘feet’, ‘sweep’, ‘sleeping’, ‘Greeks’ are **assonant** rhymes.

⁸⁶⁴ **Sonnet:** (n) a poem of 14 lines with a fixed rhyming scheme.

Origin: L *sonare*, to sound → L *son*, song → It *sonetto*, little song.

⁸⁶⁵ **Endorsement:** (n) backing, support.

- ❑ “We will teach them all a lesson,” the impassioned leader breathed fire through the microphone. “Tell me, my brothers, will we?” “Yes we will!!!” came the hearty **endorsement** from the crowd.

⁸⁶⁶ **Dorsal:** (adj) related with the back side of an animal.

- ❑ The people on the boat were enjoying the beautiful silence of the sea when something black shot up from below the water. It was the **dorsal** fin of a shark!
- ❑ The stomach side of an animal is called its **ventrinal** side, and its back side is called the **dorsal** side.

⁸⁶⁷ **Dossier:** (n) a collection of documents related to a particular topic.

Origin: L *dorsum*, back → fr. *dossier*, a bundle of papers with a label on the back of the file.

- ❑ The Indian government handed over a **dossier** on Mumbai terror attacks to the Pakistan government. The 600-page long document contained detailed evidence on the involvement of five Pakistan nationals in the attack.

⁸⁶⁸ **Legerdemain:** (n) sleight of hand; a clever trick.

Origin: L *levis*, light -> Fr. *léger*, light (in weight) + L *manus*, hand -> Fr *main*, hand => Fr. *léger de main*, ‘quick of hand’.

⁸⁶⁹ **Fathom:** (v) to understand; to go to the depth of.

Origin: Fathom initially meant the distance from the middle fingertip of one hand to the middle fingertip of the other hand of a large man holding his arms fully extended. This length was later standardized to six feet, and has long been used as a **nautical** unit of depth. ‘To fathom’, therefore, came to mean ‘to measure the depth of (a sea or a subject).’

Unfathomable: (adj) that whose depth cannot be measured.

⁸⁷⁰ **Manifest:** (v) to show; (adj) perceptible to the senses, esp. to the sight; plain; obvious.

Origin: L *manus*, hand and *-festus*, that which can be seized => ‘that which can be seized by hand.’

onstrations and burning copies of the ruling party's Election **Manifesto**,⁸⁷¹ which **ironically**⁸⁷² had promised them a corruption-free state.

Seasoned⁸⁷³ politicians, however, know how to **manipulate**⁸⁷⁴ the public. The next day, a bomb blasted off in a temple. Somebody said that he had seen two Muslim men around the area. That was it! **Livid**⁸⁷⁵ Hindus **bolted**⁸⁷⁶ towards the nearest Muslim locality. The mob kept growing each minute and within an hour, 100 Muslims had been killed. In the next hour, a mob of Muslims **retaliated**⁸⁷⁷. By the time the riot was **quelled**,⁸⁷⁸ 500 people had been killed. For the next two days, the riot dominated every discussion, in the papers, on the TV and among people. Two days were enough to make them forget all about the corruption scandal.



Emancipation⁸⁷⁹ of women and **manumission**⁸⁸⁰ of slaves means taking back the hand which held them in its grasp and setting them free.

The other words built on *manus* are:

⁸⁷¹ **Manifesto:** (n) a public declaration of the principles, policies or intentions (of a government, king, or organization).

Origin: from **manifest**.

⁸⁷² **Irony:** (n) an outcome of events which contrary to expectations.

❑ The latin root *vegere* means lively, but **ironically**, the word from it, vegetable, has come to mean just the opposite.

❑ It was **ironical** that the ship **touted** as 'unsinkable' sunk on its **maiden** voyage.

Maiden: (adj) first; (n) an unmarried girl.

⁸⁷³ **Seasoned:** (adj) experienced

⁸⁷⁴ **Manipulate:** (v) to work skillfully at something with one's hands; to manage or influence skillfully, esp. in an unfair manner.

⁸⁷⁵ **Livid:** (adj) extremely angry; having discoloured skin, for example, black-and-blue due to a bruise or white from illness or emotion.

⁸⁷⁶ **Bolt:** (v) to run; to eat in a rush, usually gulp down in one go

❑ Getting late for the office, Reena hurriedly buttered a slice of bread, **bolted** it and washed it down with a few gulps of juice.

❑ After his father slapped him, the angry teenager **bolted** upstairs and locked himself into his room.

⁸⁷⁷ **Retaliate:** (v) to return like for like; to give tit for tat.

⁸⁷⁸ **Quell:** (v) to suppress or crush completely; extinguish.

Origin: Related to 'Kill'

❑ Police burst tear gas shells to **quell** violence in Mirpur.

⁸⁷⁹ **Emancipate:** (v) to free from slavery.

Origin: L *e-*, *ex-*, out + *mancipare*, to own ⇒ 'to free from ownership. The word *mancipare* is formed as under: L *manus*, hand + *capere*, take' ⇒ 'to take in one's hand' ⇒ 'to own'.

❑ Karl Marx sought a way to **emancipate** the working class from the economic slavery of the their industrial bosses. The answer he found was Communism.

⁸⁸⁰ **Manumit:** (v) to free from bondage.

Origin: α *manu*, from one's hand + *mittere*, to send away ⇒ 'to send away from one's hand.'

❑ Slave owners usually **manumitted** a slave when he had become old and was therefore not useful to them any more.

❑ In ancient Rome, slaves could also secure their **manumission** by paying the price their owner had tagged on them. They were paid wages for their work, so it was possible for them to save the required sum over the years.

*Manus-1: manacles*⁸⁸¹, *mandate*⁸⁸², *countermand*⁸⁸³

*Manus-2: commandeer*⁸⁸⁴, *mannered*⁸⁸⁵

IE *deks-* right

South is called *dakshin* in Sanskrit. Can you figure out why?

In the Hindu mythology, Daksh was the son of Brahma, born out of his right hand.

Do you remember the **chiral**⁸⁸⁶ compounds that rotate plane polarized light towards the right? They are ‘dextrorotatory’.

The other words from *deks-* are **dexterous**⁸⁸⁷ and **ambidextrous**⁸⁸⁸.

⁸⁸¹ **Manacles:** (n) handcuffs; (v) **manacle:** to tie one’s hands with **manacles**.

- ❑ The police discovered the kidnapped child in a dark store in the basement of the building, lying **gagged** and **manacled**.
- ❑ The businessman requested the police officer to not handcuff him. “Sir, all my employees will see me, please,” he said uncomfortably. The officer, however, refused to make an exception for him and directed his constable to **manacle** the businessman. The man felt humiliated to be taken out of his office in **manacles** and vowed to himself that he would teach that police inspector a lesson. “You don’t know around whose hands you’ve dared to put these **manacles**,” he **seethed** within himself.

Gag: (v) to put something in the mouth of a person to prevent him from shouting or speaking.

Seethe: (v) boil in anger

⁸⁸² **Mandate:** (v) pass a binding order.

Origin: *α manus*, hand + *dare*, to give ⇒ ‘to give into one’s hand’ ⇒ ‘to commit to one’s care’

- ❑ Susheel’s grandfather had **mandated** that the whole family should be present at the dining table at 8 pm sharp every day. No one dared to be a minute late.

⁸⁸³ **Countermand:** (v) to pass an order which says the opposite of an earlier order.

Origin: Counter + **mandak**.

- ❑ The family had booked their first big car with great delight. However, just two days before the delivery, the head of the family suffered from a heart attack. Most of the savings were **diverted** towards his treatment and so they **countermanded** the order for the car.
- ❑ “Nathu Ram, move to the East Gate immediately with three men,” Inspector Jeevan hollered into Nathu Ram’s walkie-talkie. “But sir, Inspector Sudhir had instructed me to not move from Gate 2 under all circumstances,” Nathu Ram asked. “I am **countermanding** that order,” Jeevan spoke with great urgency. “D as I say. Quick!”

⁸⁸⁴ **Commandeer:** (v) to seize a private property (usually a vehicle) for military or public use.

Origin: *L com-* + *manus*, hand ⇒ ‘command’, to hand over authority. Commandeer = command + -eer ⇒ ‘to command someone to give their property for public use.’

- ❑ When the inspector’s jeep broke down, he **commandeered** the first car that came his way and ordered the driver to follow the terrorist’s truck.

⁸⁸⁵ **Mannered:** (adj) put-on, artificial, not natural.

Origin: *α manus*, hand ⇒ *manuaria*, a way of handling something

- ❑ “God! Why can’t people just be themselves!” Daksh fretted after meeting an aunt of his girlfriend. That woman clearly aspired to be super-sophisticated. She had dressed herself like those fashionable Mumbai socialites, “ooh”ed and “aah”ed regularly, generously dropped words like ‘darling’ and ‘sweetie’ and talked only in English—her English was pathetic—because, he was sure, she thought that was what made people cool. The way she talked, the way she walked, the way she behaved were all **mannered**.

⁸⁸⁶ **Mansuetude:** *chiral:* (adj) not super imposable on its mirror image.

Origin: GK *cheir*, hand

⁸⁸⁷ **Dexterous:** (adj) skilful, quick in actions; (n) **dexterity**.

- ❑ **Dexterity** is what the hero of almost every Hindi movie shows when 10 bullets are fired at him at the same time and from different angles but he moves his body first here, then there, then there in such a way that he escapes every bullet.
- ❑ The Chairman walked to the window of his office to see what was causing the noise below. Seeing nothing there, he walked the six steps back to his seat. In the 30 seconds of his absence, his **dexterous** manager exchanged the papers the Chairman was going to sign with another set.

⁸⁸⁸ **Ambidextrous:** (adj) equally skilled with both hands.

Origin: *α ambi-*, both + *dexter*, right-handed ⇒ ‘both hands are like right-hand’

- ❑ **Ambidexterity** by birth is extremely rare. Some people, however, teach themselves to be **ambidexterous**, by practicing equally with both hands.
- ❑ **Ambidexterity** is highly prized in juggling, shooting and sports like basketball, baseball and football.

As for South being called *Dakshin*, sun rises in the east and if you were to stand facing the rising sun, south would be on your right hand side.

Latin pug- fist

The Latin words *pugil* and *pugnis* both mean 'fist', and *pugnare* means 'to fight with the fist.' That is why, the pet line of a Bhai of Mumbai is "*Punga liya toh pug-doonga.*" Are you wondering how he knows the meaning of *pug-*? He had done his Masters in Literature but could not get a job. The frustration pushed him into the Underworld.

The *pug-* words are: **Pugilist**⁸⁸⁹, **pugnacious**⁸⁹⁰, **impugn**⁸⁹¹, **repugnant**⁸⁹²

Latin tradere- to hand over

'Traditions' are handed over from one generation to the next.

A person who hands over his motherland to the enemy is called a 'traitor' (short for 'traditor'), and the name for his **detestable**⁸⁹³ act is 'treason'.

An **extradition**⁸⁹⁴ is the handing over of a criminal by the country in which he is hiding to the one where he has **perpetrated** crimes.

⁸⁸⁹ **Pugilist:** (n) boxer

- Mohammad Ali is one of the most famous **pugilists** in the world.

⁸⁹⁰ **Pugnacious:** (adj) ready to fight, fighting or getting irritated over small things.

- Raju seemed to be very disturbed about something. He was in a **pugnacious** mood since the morning and kept getting **riled** over every small thing and shouting warnings and threats to anyone and everyone. His friends took him to a movie hoping his mood would improve, but 20 minutes into it he angrily exclaimed, "Oh, what crap!" and walked out. Then, when he had cooled somewhat and was returning to the movie hall with an ice cream cup bought from his favourite shop in that mall, the security guard of the hall stopped him from entering with the ice cream. Raju's **pugnacity** returned. He dared the guard to stop him. The guard politely explained that though that ice cream shop was in the same shopping mall, it was outside the **precincts** of the cinema hall and as a matter of policy, the cinema did not allow eatables from outside. Raju rolled up his sleeves and told the guard to be ready for the consequences if he dared to bar his way. When the guard still remained firm, Raju punched him in his stomach! The other employees of the hall, who had already come to the spot, held him from his arms and ordered him to leave. Now feeling humiliated as well as angry and not quite knowing how to express it, Raju threw his cup onto the floor with great violence and stomped out.

Precincts: (n) the boundary.

⁸⁹¹ **Impugn:** (v) to express doubt about.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *pugnare*, to fight => 'to attack'

- "Do you **impugn** my bravery, madam?" The hero of the film asked the heroine **indignantly**. "I will show you my strength by beating the goons who stole your purse to pulp."
- The gold watch of the new daughter-in-law went missing. She said she distinctly remembered having put it on her dressing table in the night but the next morning, when she came to the table after bathing, it was gone. "Of course no family member can take it. That leaves only one suspect," she said. Her father-in-law thundered, "I will not let you **impugn** Hariya's **rectitude bahu!** He has worked most faithfully for us for twenty years. Have you checked under the dressing table and the bed?"

⁸⁹² **Repugnant:** (adj) inspiring strong hatred

Origin: L *re-*, back + *pugnare*, to fight => 'to fight against' => 'you are fighting against a thing because you hate it'

- After she came to know of the cold-blooded manner in which her son had first kidnapped and then murdered a teenaged girl and **hacked** her body and burnt all the pieces in a *tandoor*, she **loathed** him absolutely. Her heart was filled with shock that her son was capable of something so **repugnant**. She cried to the policemen to take him away and not **incarcerate** the beast for his life. She never visited him in jail. Even the thought of him as her son filled her with disgust.

⁸⁹³ **Detest:** (v) hate very much.

- Consider the situation described for the word '**repugn**'. The old woman **detested** her son for what he had done. His deed was **detestable**.

⁸⁹⁴ **Extradition:** (n) the legal process by which one government may obtain custody of individuals from another government in order to put them on trial or imprison them.

Origin: α *ex-*, out + *tradere*, to hand over => 'to hand over to someone outside.'

IE *ped* foot

Pag ghungharoo baandh meera naachi thi and Amitabh Bachchan *naache bin ghungharoo ke*. The word *pag* as well as the other words we use for foot-*paun* and *pair*-are from this root.

The four-footed cot that a poor man sleeps on is called a *chaarpai*. And, because this **impecunious** man goes *paidal* everywhere, he is called a *padchaari* in Sanskrit and **pedestrian**⁸⁹⁵ in English. The other words under this root are:

*Ped-1: quadruped*⁸⁹⁶, *impede*⁸⁹⁷, *impediment*⁸⁹⁸

*Ped-2: impeach*⁸⁹⁹, *unimpeachable*⁹⁰⁰, *expedite*⁹⁰¹

*Ped-3: expedient*⁹⁰², *pedigree*⁹⁰³, *podium*⁹⁰⁴

*Ped-4: podiatrist*⁹⁰⁵, *antipodean*⁹⁰⁶

⁸⁹⁵ **Pedestrian:** (n) a man travelling by foot; (adj) commonplace, ordinary.

⁸⁹⁶ **Quadruped:** (n) a four-footed animal.

Origin: L *quadru* four + *-ped-*, foot

❑ Cows, goats, kangaroos, buffaloes are all **quadrupeds**. A centipede however has a hundred feet!

⁸⁹⁷ **Impede:** (v) to come in the way, to try to stop from moving forward.

Origin: α *im-*, *-in-*, in + *pedis*, foot ⇒ 'to put shackles in the feet'

❑ After poisoning her husband, the wife phoned her lover and said, "My dear, now there is no one to **impede** our union."

❑ Several roads, including the National Highway, were blocked by trees uprooted by the violent storm. This **impeded** the rescue operations to the storm-hit areas.

⁸⁹⁸ **Impediment:** (n) a roadblock.

Origin: same as **impede**.

❑ In the song *jo waada kiyaa, who nibhaana padegaa; roke zamaana chaahе lakh khudaai, tumko aana padega*, a lover insists to his sweetheart that she will have to keep her promise and come, no matter what the **impediments** on her way.

⁸⁹⁹ **Impeach:** (v) to formally accuse a government official of wrongdoing.

Origin: same as **impede**.

❑ The judge was **impeached** after a national newspaper published an investigative report that he accepted bribes from culprits to pass judgments in their favour.

⁹⁰⁰ **Unimpeachable:** (adj) one on whose conduct no one can raise a finger.

❑ The judge's colleagues and the Chief Justice of his court however stood by him. They said that his conduct in office was **unimpeachable** and there was not a single black spot in his long record of service. The newspaper report, they said, was a conspiracy to **malign** him and the court.

⁹⁰¹ **Expedite:** (v) to speed up.

Origin: α *ex-*, out + *pedis*, foot ⇒ 'to set the foot free from shackles'

❑ Meena's cell phone beeped once. A missed call from Shyamali. Oh god, that meant that Mohan had already picked her up. They would reach her house in 10 minutes and she could not be late again! She **expedited** her dressing up and somehow managed to set her *dupatta*, make-up her eyes, wear her heels and earrings and bangles, apply lipstick and nail-polish within 10 minutes.

❑ The teacher bribed the clerk to **expedite** his pension case. Otherwise, his file would have taken at least an year to be processed.

⁹⁰² **Expedient:** (n) a practical solution.

Origin: that which **expedites**.

❑ In the movie *Inquilaab*, Amitabh Bachchan solves India's problems by the simple **expedient** of locking all of the country's corrupt politicians in one room and taking a machine-gun to them.

❑ "You should always ask yourself, my son," the teacher gently patted the head of the boy who had got his homework done from his elder sister but had then gone to the teacher and confessed his mistake, "not if this or that is **expedient**, but if it is right."

⁹⁰³ **Pedigree:** (n) line of descent.

Origin: fr. *pie de grue*, crane's foot ⇒ 'that which resembles a crane's foot' ⇒ 'a family tree because it spreads out like the foot of a bird.'

❑ In his whole life, the *nawaabzaadaa* did nothing other than boasting about his **pedigree**. "Do you know whose son and whose grandson I am?" was his favourite dialogue.

⁹⁰⁴ **Podium:** (n) a raised platform, commonly known as the stage, on which a public speaker stands while giving his speech.

Origin: GK *podion* ⇒ little foot

⁹⁰⁵ **Podiatrist:** (n) doctor of the feet.

Origin: GK *pod-*, foot + *iatros*, doctor

⁹⁰⁶ **Antipodean:**

❑ **Antipodean** songs, **antipodean** cafes, **antipodean** plants.

The foot soldier in chess is called a ‘pawn’. Like its Indian **counterpart**—*peyaada*—pawn derives its name from a root meaning foot, the Latin *pes*. **Peons**⁹⁰⁷ and **pioneers**⁹⁰⁸ have the same sense of being foot-soldiers.

The Latin root *peccare* means the same as our idiom ‘*paun dagmagaana*’. This root is found in the words **peccadillo**⁹⁰⁹ and **impeccable**.⁹¹⁰ Note that it is not physical stumbling that we talk about here, but a stumbling from moral standards. Falling denotes sin, in both Hindi—think of the number of times you’ve heard of a *gira hua insaan*—and English, hence the words **fallible**⁹¹¹ and **infallible**⁹¹².

The foot—of a man or a mountain—is at the bottom, at zero height. So, when a situation has hit rock bottom, has become as bad as can be, foot-related roots are used for it. The words **pessimism**⁹¹³, **pejorative**⁹¹⁴ and **impair**⁹¹⁵ were born thus.

Latin *calx* heel, lime

Latin had two words called *calx*. One meant ‘the heel of the foot,’ and the other ‘lime.’ The heel word **yields**⁹¹⁶ **recalcitrant** and **inculcate**.

Antipodean: (n) either or both of two places that are situated diametrically opposite to one another on the earth’s surface; (specifically) Australia and New Zealand

Origin: GK *anti-*, opposite + *ped-*, feet ⇒ ‘having the feet opposite?’

⁹⁰⁷ **Peon:** (n) landless labourer

❑ The **peons** fought for the right to own the land they tilled.

⁹⁰⁸ **Pioneer:** (n) a foot soldier; the first to walk on a path which later many people took.

❑ “Science has been **pioneered** by **charlatans**. From the astrologer came the astronomer, from the **alchemist** the chemist, from the **mesmerist** the experimental psychologist. The **quack** of yesterday is the professor of tomorrow.”—Sir Arthur Conan Doyle

❑ Mary Wollstonecraft was a **pioneer** in feminist thinking and writing.

⁹⁰⁹ **Peccadillo:** (n) a minor crime.

❑ The mother advocated her son before her husband. “Forgive him for his **peccadillo** now. Why are you creating such a mountain out of a molehill? What has he done, tell me? Which child does not bunk classes? You are behaving as if he has robbed a bank or killed a man!”

⁹¹⁰ **Impeccable:** (adj) spotless

❑ The officer retired after an **impeccable** service of 25 years.

❑ **Impeccable** reputation, **impeccable** taste.

⁹¹¹ **Fallible:** (adj) likely to make mistakes.

❑ Man is **fallible**.

⁹¹² **Infallible:** (adj) one who can make no mistakes.

❑ No man is **infallible**; we all make mistakes.

⁹¹³ **Pessimism:** (n) belief that whatever can go wrong will go wrong.

❑ An **optimistic** man believes that all that happens is for the good, whereas a **pessimistic** man thinks that all that happens is for the worse.

⁹¹⁴ **Pejoration:** (n) the act of belittling or lessening the worth.

❑ The words ‘mad’, ‘idiot’, *budhu* and *bewkoof* are not always used in a **pejorative** sense. People may also call you so out of fond affection.

❑ ‘Fat’ is a much more **pejorative** term than ‘plump’ or ‘healthy.’

⁹¹⁵ **Impair:** (v) hurt, injure, disable; (n) **impairment:** disability.

❑ Geeta learnt sign language to communicate with her husband who had a hearing **impairment**.

❑ Geeta learnt sign language to communicate with her hearing **impaired** husband.

❑ “Hope is both the earliest and the most **indispensable virtue** inherent in the state of being alive. If life is to be sustained, hope must remain, even where confidence is wounded, trust **impaired**.”—Erik H. Erikson

⁹¹⁶ **Yield:** (v) produce; surrender; (n) the amount of crope produced per unit land.

❑ The use of fertilizers **yields** more crops.

❑ The use of fertilizers increases the **yield** of the crops.

❑ The son **yielded** to his mother’s wishes and entered the engineering college.

One night, little Vikram **regally** declared that he was not going to school anymore. Of course his mother woke him up as usual the next morning. This enraged Vikram. How dare his parents not **heed** his wish! His mother, seeing that he was not getting up on his own, scooped him out of his bed. Regarding this as insult to injury, he started ‘kicking back’ **furiously**, shouting that he would not go to school, come whatever may.

Imagine throwing such a **recalcitrant**⁹¹⁷ child onto the ground, digging your foot into his chest, and then repeating to him the *mantra* that ‘**truancy**⁹¹⁸ is a bad thing and good children do not do it’ till he says he has **imbibed** it and cannot forget it ever. That is what the word **inculcate**⁹¹⁹ suggests, ‘to put your heel into.’ Thankfully, my parents and teachers were not so **overzealous**⁹²⁰ about teaching me.

The lime word gave us ‘chalk’, ‘calcium’, ‘calculus’ and ‘calculate’. A small pebble was called a ‘calculus’ and since the earlier mathematical operations were done with pebbles, the process was called ‘calculation’.

⁹¹⁷ **Recalcitrant**: (adj) rebelling against authority.

Origin: α *re-*, back + *calx*, heel \Rightarrow ‘to kick back’

❑ After they caught her trying to run away, the family locked their **recalcitrant** daughter in her room till her marriage.

⁹¹⁸ **Truancy**: (n) refusal to go to school; missing school without informing the authorities.

❑ Despite his mother’s best efforts to lure the child into going to school—she promised to cook his favourite things in lunch and a dessert too—his **truancy** persisted. “I don’t want to go to school,” he cried, refusing to even budge from his bed. “The teachers scold me. No one plays with me. They are all bad. I am not going to school.”

⁹¹⁹ **Inculcate**: (v) instil

Origin: α *in-*, in + *calx*, heel \Rightarrow ‘to stuff in with one’s heel’ \Rightarrow ‘to trample’ \Rightarrow ‘to impress thoroughly’

❑ His father **inculcated** in him a love for books.

⁹²⁰ **Zeal**: (n) great enthusiasm.

❑ All his teachers agreed that it was a delight to teach Rudra. He had a **zeal** to learn.

❑ All his teachers took delight in teaching a **zealous** student like Rudra.

Zealous is a positive word and is used for someone who shows a lot of enthusiasm for a positive cause. On the other hand is the word **zealot**, which means someone who is so overly enthusiastic about his cause—usually, a religious cause—that he refuses to listen to anybody else or any other point of view.

Exercise

swen-, dorsum, manus, deks-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. His anger was *manifest*.
(a) crushed (b) clearly visible (c) chained (d) gone (e) declining
2. By some *clever trick*, the magician turned the bouquet he was holding into a rabbit!
(a) legerdemain (b) unfathomable manipulation (c) seasoned consonance (d) livid bolting (e) manumission
3. He was *an experienced* politician.
(a) a dexterous (b) an ambidextrous (c) a mannered (d) a livid (e) a seasoned
4. The metal was *sonorous*.
(a) was used to make musical instruments (b) produced sound (c) made noise (d) was precious (e) was gold-like
5. The police *crushed* the protest.
(a) quelled (b) seethed at (c) gagged (d) commandeered (e) manacled
6. It was *contrary to our expectations* that the minister who had presented the bill of compulsory education for every child, himself employed a ten-year old illiterate boy servant.
(a) emancipated (b) mannered (c) ambidextrous (d) ironical (e) commandeering
7. He wanted the party president to *support* his claim.
(a) resonate (b) be dissonant with (c) to give a dossier about (d) fathom (e) endorse
8. He *ran* towards the door.
(a) bolted (b) commandeered (c) countermanded (d) seethed (e) gagged

Answers:

- 1 . (b) 2 . (a) 3 . (e) 4 . (b) 5 . (a) 6 . (d) 7 . (e) 8 . (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A rhymed poem of 14 lines: S _____
2. Handcuffs: M _____
3. To seize a private property for military or public use: C _____
4. That whose depth cannot be measured: U _____
5. To free from slavery: E _____
6. To give tit for tat: R _____
7. Lack of agreement: D _____
8. One who is equally skilled with both hands: A _____
9. To pass an order which says the opposite of an earlier order: C _____
10. Agreement of the vowel sounds of two or more words in a poem when the consonant sounds which come after or before these vowel sounds do not agree: A _____
11. Extremely angry: L _____

Answers:

sonnet, manacles, commandeer, unfathomable, emancipate, retaliate, dissonance, ambidextrous, countermand, assonance, livid

pug-, tradere-, ped, calx:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The child was *rebellious and refused to submit to the authority of his parents or teachers*.
(a) truant (b) repugnant (c) unimpeachable (d) recalcitrant (e) pejorative
2. He *expressed doubts over* his boss' integrity.
(a) impugned (b) inculcated (c) detested (d) impeached (e) impaired
3. The novelist portrayed her hero as *incapable of making mistakes*.
(a) unimpeachable (b) impeccable (c) infallible (d) impugned (e) impeded
4. She *felt a great hatred for* people who did not earn their own living.
(a) impugned (b) was impugned by (c) was a pioneer of (d) detested (e) had zeal for
5. He had a *spotless* reputation.
(a) an infallible (b) an impeccable (c) a pejorative (d) an antipodean (e) an impugned
6. He was hearing *disabled*.
(a) impaired (b) inculcated (c) zealous (d) antipodean (e) impugned
7. There was nothing special about the book- both its subject and writing style were *dull and ordinary*.
(a) a peccadillo (b) pedestrian (c) impeded (d) an expedient (e) impaired
8. They tried to *put hurdles in the path of* his progress.
(a) impede (b) yield (c) expedite (d) be pessimistic about (e) make fallible
9. He was *always ready to fight*.
(a) a pugilist (b) pugnacious (c) repugnant (d) detestable (e) extradited
10. His behaviour *aroused a strong repulsion*.
(a) was recalcitrant (b) was truant (c) was zealous (d) was pejorative (e) was repugnant

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (c) 4. (d) 5. (b) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. The first to walk on a new path: P_____
2. A minor crime: P_____
3. Great enthusiasm: Z_____
4. Line of descent: P_____
5. The act of formally levelling charges against a government official: I_____
6. The act of refusing to go to school: T_____
7. A practical solution: E_____
8. A doctor of feet: P_____
9. Landless labourer: P_____
10. Boxer: P_____
11. The act of belittling somebody or something: P_____
12. A hurdle in one's way: I_____

Answers:

pioneer, peccadillo, zeal, pedigree, impeachment, truancy, expedient, podiatrist, peon, pugilist, pejoration, impediment

TOUCH AND SENSITIVITY

Latin *corpus* **body**

Death turns a ‘man’ into just a ‘body.’ That is why that dead body is also called a ‘corpse.’

You would definitely have heard of RBCs and WBCs. Do you remember their full names? Red Blood Corpuscles. White Blood Corpuscles. A ‘corpuscle’ means ‘a little body’, especially an unattached cell that floats freely.

The other *corpus* words are: **Corporal**⁹²¹, **corpulence**⁹²² and **corset**⁹²³.

IE *ost-* **bone**

The Sanskrit *asthi* is a child of this root as is the Latin *os*, whose own children are: **osseous**⁹²⁴ and **ossify**⁹²⁵.

In ancient Greece, papyrus was not produced **indigenously**; it was imported from Egypt and, hence, was very expensive. The common people wrote and sketched on oyster shells or **potshards**⁹²⁶. These tablets were known as *ostrakon* (plural of *ostrakon*).

Every year in Athens, the citizens were asked in an assembly whether they wished to hold **ostracism**⁹²⁷ or not. If the majority said “yes”, then two months later, all the citizens would gather in the **agora** and scratch on an *ostrakon* the

⁹²¹ **Corporal**: (adj) related with the body; physical. Alternate spelling: **corporeal**

- ❑ **Corporal** punishment ought to be totally banned from all schools.

⁹²² **Corpulence**: (n) state of being fat.

- ❑ “I really love sweets,” the **corpulent** boy grinned as he took yet another helping of the ice cream. One of his classmates ran his eyes from his chubby cheeks down to his elephant legs and said: “We can see that.”

⁹²³ **Corset**: (n) an undergarment used to slim the body of the wearer and to enforce the desired figure. For example, the **corsets** for women provided them with a perfect hourglass figure by reducing the waist and therefore exaggerating the bust and the hips.

⁹²⁴ **Osseous**: (adj) related with bone; bony.

- ❑ The skeletal system of the body is also known as the **osseous** system.

⁹²⁵ **Ossify**: (v) to change into bone.

- ❑ He no longer felt any emotions—delight, sadness, mercy, anger, love—nothing! No soft place remained in his heart. The tragedy had **ossified** it totally.
- ❑ It will require great political will to shatter the **ossified** caste structures of the Indian society.

⁹²⁶ **Shard**: (n) a piece of broken pottery or glass, etc.

Origin: Related with ‘share’ => ‘a portion of pottery or glass’

- ❑ In the film *Sholay*, Gabbar Singh tells Basanti that her sweetheart—Veeru—would be kept alive only till her feet danced, and to make her task even more difficult, has **shards** of glass **strewn** on the ground before her.

⁹²⁷ **Ostracize**: (v) to boycott socially.

Origin: from *ostrakon*.

- ❑ Rajan’s family was **ostracized** by the villagers because he had married a girl from another religion.

name of the citizen they wanted expelled. The submitted *ostrakon* were then counted. A **quorum**⁹²⁸ of 6,000 votes was needed to make the **ostracism** valid. Whoever got the maximum number of votes was **banished** for ten years. The person had to leave within ten days, and if he came back before serving out his ten years, he was punished with death. The **exiled**⁹²⁹ person had no forum to appeal to, and no chance to get the verdict reconsidered or **revoked**. He just had to accept it and leave.

Latin *caro* flesh

By what name have we been calling the flesh-eaters since we were perhaps in class three? That learnt-by-**rote**⁹³⁰ word is ‘carnivores’, from *carn-*, a form of *caro* and *vorare*, ‘to eat.’

The other words from this root are:

Carn-1: **Carnal**⁹³¹, **Carrion**⁹³², **crone**⁹³³

Carn-2: **Carnation**⁹³⁴, **incarnation**⁹³⁵, **reincarnation**⁹³⁶

⁹²⁸ **Quorum**: (n) the minimum number of members who must be present to make a meeting or the decisions taken in the meeting valid.

- ☐ The company board consists of seventy-four members, of whom sixty-seven are necessary to form a **quorum**.

⁹²⁹ **Exile**: (n) expulsion from one’s homeland; (n) a person who is thus expelled.

- ☐ Kaikeyi forced king Dashrath to make her son Bharath his heir and to send his eldest son—her stepson—Ram into **exile** for fourteen years.
- ☐ At Kaikeyi’s **behest**, King Dashrath **exiled** Ram from Ayodhya for fourteen years.

⁹³⁰ **Rote**: (n) a mechanical act; (for learning) to learn mechanically without understanding the meaning.

- ☐ A big problem with the Indian education system is that it encourages **rote** learning.

⁹³¹ **Carnal**: (adj) bodily

- ☐ **carnal** needs, **carnal** desires, **carnal** pleasures

⁹³² **Carrion**: (n) flesh of dead animals.

- ☐ Can you think of birds that feed on **carrion**? Examples are crows, eagles and vultures.

⁹³³ **Crone**: (n) a witch-like old woman.

Origin: *α caro* → Anglo Fr. *caroine*, dead flesh. *caroine* led to both ‘carrion’ and ‘crone’

- ☐ The fortune-teller was an old **crone**. She looked absolutely terrifying with her **aquiline** nose, her sunk-in eyes, her falling ears, her long, sharp nails (which were painted black), her wrinkled skin, her toothless mouth and the long, red cap on her head.

Aquiline: (adj) related with or like an eagle.

⁹³⁴ **Carnation**: (n) pink, light red.

Origin: L *caro*, flesh => ‘the color of flesh’

- ☐ We saw birds of all colors: some **carnation**, some crimson, orange, **tawny**, purple, and so on; and it was for us a great timepass to behold them.

Tawny: (adj) yellowish brown.

⁹³⁵ **Incarnation**: (n) bodily form.

- ☐ According to the Hindu theology, Lord Vishnu is the preserver of the world. In order to fulfil this role, he descended to earth in 10 different incarnations at different points of time. Collectively known as Dasavatar, these 10 **incarnations** are: Matsya (fish), Koorma (tortoise), Varaaha (boar), Narasimha (the man-lion), Vaamana (the dwarf), Parsuram (the man with the axe), Rama (the perfect human), Krishna (the statesman), Buddha and Kalki (Eternity). Kalki is expected to appear at the end of the Kali Yug, the present time period.

⁹³⁶ **Reincarnation**: (n) rebirth in another bodily form.

- ☐ Snehlata chachi often told us tales of **reincarnation**—of how a child in her village who had died at two was born a year later in a village 200 miles away and still remembered his previous family, etc. But when it came to her own dead husband, she was not ready to believe that he may have been **reincarnated** too. Instead, she imagined that when she died, he would come to fetch her and their story would resume from where his death had interrupted it.

Carn-3: Carnage⁹³⁷, **carnassial**⁹³⁸

Also related to this root is the Latin word *corium*, which was initially used for a piece of flesh and then, started being used for leather. You can remember that *cor* means 'leather' with the phrase '**corcodile leather**.' The words that developed out of *corium* are:

excoriate⁹³⁹, **coriaceous**⁹⁴⁰, **quarry**⁹⁴¹

Latin **palpare** **to touch, feel**

"*Aji dekho mera seenaa kitni zor se dhadak raha hai,*" the heroine held the hero's hand with a coy smile and tried to put it on her chest. The hero **wrenched**⁹⁴² his hand away, breaking the poor heroine's heart in a thousand pieces. "We doctors check the pulse from the wrist," he said heartlessly. Ouch!

Anyway, the word that you can learn from our heroine's misery is **palpation**⁹⁴³.

That scene came quite early in the movie. Now, see a scene from half-an-hour later which makes it abundantly clear that our heroine was not discouraged by the hero's **gruffness**⁹⁴⁴:

⁹³⁷ **Carnage:** (n) destruction of life.

- ❑ A student, angry at having been failed in an exam, entered his college with a revolver and shot his professor and three random students and then killed himself. The campus **carnage** was reported all over the world.

⁹³⁸ **Carnassial:** (adj) (of teeth) used to shear flesh apart.

Shear: (v) to cut away or through with a sharp instrument.

⁹³⁹ **Excoriate:** (v) to strip off or wear away the skin; to scold very strongly.

- ❑ The stiff shirt collar **excoriated** his neck.
- ❑ Cinderella's stepmother made her do all the hard work in the house while she and her two daughters just **primped** and **preened** before the mirrors all day. One evening, Cinderella timidly asked her for a balm to rub on her hands which had been bruised as she shifted the heavy stones in her back garden to the front garden. The mean old lady **excoriated** her. "*Aahaa! A day's hard labour now **excoriates** the maharani's palms! What do you mean to say by showing me these hands of yours? That your stepmother is so wicked that she bleeds you to death? In that case, get out and show them to the whole world, you understand? Go and get lost. And ask those people only to feed you too. Don't you try to be oversmart with me, asking me to feed you and clothe you but when asked to do the slightest chores in return, acting like a delicate princess who cannot lift a pebble. I understand all the schemes that your filthy little mind can think of, you better remember that!*" Cinderella's father had come home early and had listened to all that his wife said. He now came in front of her and **excoriated** her. "How dare you do something so shameful about my daughter?" He thundered.

⁹⁴⁰ **Coriaceous:** (adj) leathery

- ❑ **coriaceous leaves**

⁹⁴¹ **Quarry:** (n) prey; a mine; (v) to mine into.

Origin: α *corium*, animal hide => 'to take the animal hide off' => 'to hunt'

- ❑ With an accurately sighted rifle, the hunter sitting on the branch of the tree awaited the coming of the **quarry**.
- ❑ The villagers started an agitation, demanding the cancellation of the licence given to a granite **quarry** situated just outside their village. They alleged that almost all human dwellings in the surroundings of the **quarry** had been hit by broken pieces of rocks flying in the blast at one time or the other.

⁹⁴² **Wrench:** (v) to pull or twist violently especially to remove a thing from its attachments.

- ❑ The film *Do Bigha Zameen(1953)* is the heart-**wrenching** tale of a poor peasant Shambhu whose two acres of land—all that he has—is eyed by the big landlord.

⁹⁴³ **Palpation:** (n) a part of the physical examination of the body in which the doctor feels a tumour or a diseased organ with his hands to determine its size, shape, firmness, etc.

- ❑ The mid-wife **palpated** the stomach of the pregnant woman to determine the position of the foetus.

⁹⁴⁴ **Gruffness:** (n) rough manner.

- ❑ *Jaane bhi do yaaro* is one of the best comedies of Indian cinema. It is famous for the Mahabhartta skit at its end. In the skit, when Yudhishtir tries to stop Draupadi (which is actually a dead body draped in a sari!) from being stripped of her sari, Bhim (who is actually the villain of the movie) asks Yudhishtir **gruffly**, "*Abey oye, tu kaun hota hai bolne waala, ham bhi to Draupadi mein shareholderrr hai!*"

“Aji dekho toh, ek baar fir mera seenaa kitni zor se dhadak raha hai,” she held the hero’s hand with a coy smile. “It’s going *dhak dhak, dhak dhak!*” “Why is your heart **palpitating**⁹⁴⁵ so wildly? *Kahin koi dil kaa rog toh nahin ho gayaa?*” He winked at her. She lowered her eyes. Then, they both sang a song about *dil kaa rog* and the **palpitations** that it causes.

Now, we cannot be sure whether the bond between our hero and heroine is that of love or lust, but who cares? We got your ticket’s worth of *masala*, didn’t we? Love, lust, satisfaction, pleasure—these are all emotions. Emotions are things that exist in our mind. You cannot touch them. They are **impalpable**⁹⁴⁶. On the other hand are touchable things like the director’s camera, the ticket in our hand and the **condiments**⁹⁴⁷ that we put into our food. They are **palpable**⁹⁴⁸.

Latin *tangere* **to touch**

Reddy was actively discussing with his friends whether the ‘tangent of an angle’ one studied in trigonometry was related to the ‘tangent of a circle’ from geometry. Why did these two seemingly **disparate**⁹⁴⁹ concepts share their name? **Intrigued**, they were all trying to think of a **plausible**⁹⁵⁰ reason when Manu spoke up.

“See guys,” everybody looked up in expectation, “a tangent is called so because it only touches the circle. And hey! Hey! Hey! It struck me just now as I said that, that a **secant**⁹⁵¹ is so named because it cuts the circle into two sections! Wow! Just imagine! I have studied maths for all these years, and etymology for all these months, and I didn’t see this!

⁹⁴⁵ **Palpitation:** (n) a rapid beating of the heart; trembling or shaking.

⁹⁴⁶ **Impalpable:** (adj) that which cannot be touched.

❑ Light is **impalpable**.

❑ As he left the room in anger, he swept his right arm, as though brushing aside some **impalpable** obstacle.

❑ People usually imagine ghosts as **impalpable** beings.

⁹⁴⁷ **Condiment:** (n) something added for flavour in food, for example, spices, sauces, etc.

⁹⁴⁸ **Palpable:** (adj) that which can be touched or seen.

❑ The brain is **palpable**; the mind is **impalpable**.

❑ The anger of the protesting students was **palpable**.

❑ There is a **palpable** lengthening of the day as the summers approach.

❑ The effort in her voice was **palpable**. It was as though she were forcing herself to utter words from which her inmost being **recoiled**.

Recoil: (v) to shrink back in horror or disgust.

⁹⁴⁹ **Disparate:** (adj) totally unrelated.

❑ The award-winning Hindi poet said that he drew inspiration from sources as **disparate** as Goethe (a famous German intellectual, 1749-1832) and the Sufi saints.

❑ Investigations revealed that the terror activities in different parts of the country, which had seemed **disparate** till then, were in fact all part of one plan.

⁹⁵⁰ **Plausible:** (adj) that which sounds logically possible. Opposite: **implausible**.

❑ The historian said that it was a **legend** that Mahatma Gandhi had said ‘*Hey Ram*’ before breathing his last. They say that it is simply not **plausible** that he was in a position to utter those words at the moment of his death. He was surrounded by a huge crowd. All the eyewitnesses reported that he had collapsed immediately upon receiving the bullet. He was then carried into the house where, after remaining unconscious for half an hour, he died.

⁹⁵¹ **Secant:** (n) a line which cuts a curve at two or more points.

Origin: L *secare*, to cut.

The other words from *secare* are: section, insect, **dissect**, **bisect**

Dissect: (v) to cut apart; to go into full detail.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart+ *secare*, to cut

❑ He could **dissect** a car and put it together again.

❑ When the journalist asked the film director why most of his films were fairy-tale-like and totally divorced from reality, he replied that the common man watched movies to dream, not to **dissect**.

❑ To cut apart animal tissue for study is called animal **dissection**.

Bisect: (v) to cut into two sections.

Seriously guys, etymology is so much fun! And so **illuminating!** You guys should do it too. If you want...” He would have **raved** further had Reddy not shot out an **exasperated**⁹⁵² “shut up!”

“You were supposed to talk about tangents,” reminded another.

A remark like Manyu’s, which only touches the topic at hand, before **digressing**⁹⁵³ into totally unrelated territory, is called ‘tangential’.

Books, lovers and bodies are **tangible**⁹⁵⁴ but knowledge, love and ghosts are not. They are **intangible**⁹⁵⁵.

Two things that touch each other are **contiguous**⁹⁵⁶; they are in contact. The ‘contacts’ list in our phone book contains the people who we are ‘in touch with’.

When the contact of a drug addict with his drugs is broken, he starts having **tactile**⁹⁵⁷ **hallucinations**⁹⁵⁸ of insects crawling all over his body.

A disease that spreads by touch (a *chhoot ki bimari*) is called a **contagion**⁹⁵⁹. The substances whose touch pollutes lakes or airs or men are called **contaminants**⁹⁶⁰.

⁹⁵² **Exasperate:** (v) to irritate very much.

A related word is **asperity**.

Asperity: (n) bitterness, sharpness of temper.

❑ The trembling little girl apologized to her step-mother for breaking the glass. “No, no,” her step-mother replied with **asperity**. “Why should you be sorry? You are the princess of the house after all. Wait, Your Highness, let me bring more glasses and plates before your **majesty**. Please break them too so that this drama ends once and for all.”

❑ Unfortunately for her, however, her husband—the girl’s father—had entered the house a moment ago and had heard her **tirade**. “Shut up Kulwanti,” he said in **exasperation**. “How long will you keep torturing the poor girl? I had thought time would **mellow** you down but no.” He threw his briefcase away. “I **toil** the whole day in the office thinking that I will get rest at home but the moment I enter home, I hear your *chik-chik*. Can I have some peace in my house? *Please?*”

Mellow: (v) soften

Toil: (v) work very hard.

⁹⁵³ **Digress:** (v) to move away from the main thing or topic; to wander off.

Origin: *α dis-*, apart + *gradi*, to go

❑ The question paper pattern is fixed, the examiner has little freedom to **digress** from it.

⁹⁵⁴ **Tangible:** (adj) touchable

❑ In the streets of the riot-torn town, one could see hate as a **tangible** thing, a thing that thickened the air, that made breathing difficult.

❑ After Jivan had had yet another fight with the ghost of his dead wife, he gritted his teeth and said, “You **exasperating** woman! I’d thought I would be able to live in peace at least after your death but no! Here you are, come back to suck the last blood drop out of me. How I wish that you were **tangible** and that I could get my hands on your throat once!”

⁹⁵⁵ **Intangible:** (adj) untouchable

⁹⁵⁶ **Contiguous:** (adj) touching each other.

Origin: *α con-*, together + *tangere*, to touch. *tig-*, *tag-*, *ting-* and *tang-* are variants of the same root, tangere.

❑ The two houses were **contiguous** and the common wall was rather thin. If one applied his ear on the wall and there was silence in the room, he could easily listen to what was being said on the other side.

⁹⁵⁷ **Tactile:** (adj) related with touch.

Tact- and *tang-* are the different versions of the same root. Their difference is caused only by nasalization. Think of passage/passenger, message/messenger.

⁹⁵⁸ **Hallucination:** (n) mental condition of seeing or experiencing things that are actually not there.

❑ The old servant came running out of his room shouting “*Bhoot! Bhoot!*” His young master, who had recently finished his engineering, laughed and asked him if he had drunk too much or had recently listened to a horror story. “There is no *bhoot-voot, kaka*,” he said. “You are **hallucinating**.”

⁹⁵⁹ **Contagion:** (n) a disease that spreads by touch.

❑ AIDS is a communicable disease, but it is not a **contagion**. It does not spread by touch.

⁹⁶⁰ **Contaminant:** (n) pollutant

Origin: *L. contamen* simply means ‘contact’ but is used only where the contact is with something bad or polluting.

A man who shouts off foul words the moment you touch him is **cantankerous**⁹⁶¹.

An 'integer' is called so because it is untouched (in-teg-er), hence is undivided and whole. The derived from integer are **integrate**⁹⁶², **integral**⁹⁶³ and **integrity**⁹⁶⁴.

When a TV journalist comments that the **integrity** of India is under threat from communal politics, it is the wholeness of our country that he thinks is endangered. He further **elaborates** that **harping**⁹⁶⁵ too much on the issues of mandirs and masjids has already led to many riots and can **irrevocably** divide India into Hindu India and Muslim India, psychologically even if not physically.

Latin **sentire** **to feel**

'Sentiments' are feelings. Our eyes, ears, nose, tongue and skin help us feel the world around us; that is why they are called our 'sense' organs.

The following words too are dripping with feelings:

Sentire-1: **sentient**⁹⁶⁶, **sensitization**⁹⁶⁷, **insensible**⁹⁶⁸, **insensate**⁹⁶⁹

☐ Three people died by consuming water **contaminated** with sewage.

⁹⁶¹ **Cantankerous:** (adj) very irritable, rude person.

☐ In most folk songs, a mother-in-law is portrayed as a **cantankerous** old lady bent on making her daughter-in-law's life miserable.

⁹⁶² **Integrate:** (v) make part of the whole.

☐ **Integrating** technology into the classroom greatly enhances the learning experience.

⁹⁶³ **Integral:** (adj) a fundamental part of the whole.

☐ The Indians **assert** that Kashmir is an **integral** part of India and in no case will they ever give even an inch of it to Pakistan.

⁹⁶⁴ **Integrity:** (n) wholeness; moral uprightness.

☐ Sita had to give an *agnipariksha* to prove her **integrity**.

⁹⁶⁵ **Harp:** (v) to keep talking about something too much; (n) a musical instrument having a triangular frame and having string attached between two sides of the frame, which are plucked with fingers

☐ For us in India, the **harp** is an instrument only seen performed on the silver screen. Very rarely do we get to listen to a harpist.

⁹⁶⁶ **Sentient:** (adj) capable of feeling.

☐ In the film, the hero confessed his love to the heroine with this letter. "If the room in which I live were a **sentient** thing, I would appeal to it to tell you how each night I lie awake in my bed, looking at its walls, thinking about you...it would tell you how many times and in how many different ways I've decided to tell you this one truth that burdens my heart and how each time, I've lost courage at the last minute."

⁹⁶⁷ **Sensitize:** (v) make sensitive; make aware.

☐ Before sending him to Saudi Arab, Sanjay's company **sensitized** him to the culture of that country and cautioned him about the do's and the don'ts.

⁹⁶⁸ **Insensible:** (adj) not in senses.

☐ The old man rather suddenly fell ill, and took to bed; was **insensible** when the doctor came, and soon died.

⁹⁶⁹ **Insensate:** (adj) incapable of feeling.

☐ Your tongue becomes **insensate** for a few moments after you eat **fiery** chillies.

☐ In '*The Thousand and One Nights*', Shahryar is an **insensate** king who marries each evening and executes his bride the next morning.

*Sentire-2: sensual*⁹⁷⁰, *sensuous*⁹⁷¹, *sententious*⁹⁷², *presentiment*⁹⁷³

*Sentire-3: consent*⁹⁷⁴, *consensus*⁹⁷⁵, *assent*⁹⁷⁶

*Sentire-4: dissent*⁹⁷⁷, *resent*⁹⁷⁸, *sentinel*⁹⁷⁹

Greek *pathos* suffering, feeling

Your friend had called you when you were entering the movie hall to watch the much-**touted** ‘Grandest movie of Bollywood.’ Now, when you call him back, he asks you eagerly how it was. You do a “Grr!” at being reminded of what you went through. “Don’t even ask! It was pathetic!”

A movie that makes you suffer is ‘pathetic.’ The word could be equally used for a sight that **evokes** feelings of sadness or pity in you. While passing by the park with her mother, twelve-year old Kani saw something ‘pathetic.’ A little girl was **scavenging**⁹⁸⁰ the municipal dustbin for food. She must be around five years in age. Her clothes were tattered, her hair **unkempt**⁹⁸¹. Kani looked at her own smart frock.

⁹⁷⁰ **Sensual:** (adj) expressing or suggesting physical, especially sexual, pleasure or satisfaction.

- ❑ She looked **sensual** in a sari. The men in the party couldn’t stop looking at her.
- ❑ The item songs are inserted in movies purely to offer **sensual** pleasures to the audience.

⁹⁷¹ **Sensuous:** (adj) giving or expressing pleasure through the physical senses.

- ❑ The most remarkable aspect of John Keats’ poetry is its **sensuousness**. **Sensuous** poetry is that which is devoted, not to philosophical thoughts, ideas or emotions, but to what the poet perceives through his five senses. Keats describes his imagery so well that the reader feels that he can see, smell, hear, taste or touch what Keats did.

⁹⁷² **Sententious:** (adj) trying to appear wise, clever and important.

- ❑ The wannabe entrepreneur asked for some tips on how to succeed in business from the industrialist who had been invited to a panel discussion organized by his business school. The industrialist replied **sententiously**, “Fall seven times, get up eight.”

⁹⁷³ **Presentiment:** (n) a feeling beforehand of what is going to happen. (*α pre-*, before)

- ❑ Our wishes are **presentiments** of the capabilities which lie within us. Whatever we are able and would like to do, presents itself to our imagination as a dream for the future. We feel a longing after that which we already possess unconsciously.
- ❑ She had a **presentiment** that something bad was going to happen.

⁹⁷⁴ **Consent:** (v) agree; (n) agreement.

Origin: *α con-*, together + *sentire*, to feel ⇒ ‘to feel together on an issue.’

- ❑ The lovers were **ecstatic** the day their parents **consented** to their marriage. They had had to work quite hard for that **consent!**

⁹⁷⁵ **Consensus:** (n) general agreement.

- ❑ The Prime Minister called a meeting to evolve a **consensus** between all the parties of the ruling **coalition** on the issue of price hike of oil.

⁹⁷⁶ **Assent:** (n) say ‘yes’ to.

Origin: *α ad-*, to + *sentire*, to feel ⇒ ‘to agree with’

- ❑ A bill becomes a law only after first the Parliament and then the President give their **assent** to it.

⁹⁷⁷ **Dissent:** (v) to feel apart on an issue; (n) lack of agreement; Alternate form: **dissension**

- ❑ Babar attacked Delhi which was in the control of the Lodi Sultans. Despite internal **dissent**, the Lodis managed to field an army of 1,00,000 men and 1,000 elephants against Babar’s paltry force of 12,000. Yet, Babar routed the Lodis and took possession of Delhi.
- ❑ We could also have written ‘Despite internal **dissensions**’ in the sentence above.

⁹⁷⁸ **Resent:** (v) feel angry about; (n): **resentment**.

- ❑ The young woman **resented** the interference of her sister in her life.

⁹⁷⁹ **Sentinel:** (n) a watch guard.

Origin: *α sentire*, to feel ⇒ ‘to observe’

- ❑ The **sentinels** kept an alert guard, while the whole camp slept.

⁹⁸⁰ **Scavenge:** (v) to search for food in waste material; to pick up the wastes of human body.

- ❑ Although banned by the law, the practice of manual **scavenging** of human waste continues in many Indian states.

⁹⁸¹ **Unkempt:** (adj) untidy

- ❑ It was a rather dirty and **unkempt** room, and lit poorly by a single tired bulb.
- ❑ The prisoners were a dirty, **unkempt**, unshaven, hard-looking lot, with bloodshot eyes.

“Mama,” she showed the girl to her mother. “Shall we give her a packet of biscuits?” Kani and her mother were coming back from the market, where they had bought bagfuls of biscuits, juices, *namkeens* and cakes.

“No.” Her mother said. “What purpose will that serve? She will still have to **scavenge** the bin for her next meal.”

“But at least for this meal...” Kani countered.

“Giving her a packet of biscuits just means one packet less on our table. It does nothing to change her life. Charity is no solution to poverty.”

Kani was quite surprised by her mother’s **apathy**⁹⁸². They walked some distance in silence, then Kani said, on the **verge** of tears, “I had not expected this from you.”

“What?”

“Your utter lack of **sympathy**⁹⁸³ for that girl. She was younger than even Tisha!” Tisha was Kani’s sister, six years her junior.

Her mother nodded seriously. “She was. So?”

“What so? You were so heartless towards that girl!” Kani **scowled**⁹⁸⁴.

“Giving easy food or easy money to a poor person does not mean you are showing heart,” her mother said. “Poverty is a **pathology**⁹⁸⁵. These things are nothing but momentary pain killers. I want you to think about what you can do to eliminate the disease itself. That is what is challenging and that is what will really help that girl too. Do something so that that girl does not have to sit on the bin anymore. Giving her one packet of biscuits will do nothing except making you feel good about yourself and making her think that begging is a good enough job.”

Kani understood her mother and started thinking hard.

The other words from this root are: **Pathos**⁹⁸⁶, **empathy**⁹⁸⁷, **antipathy**⁹⁸⁸

⁹⁸² **Apathy:** (n) lack of feeling, indifference; (adj) **apathetic**.

- ❑ The **apathy** of the government forced a former national level hockey player of Madhya Pradesh into **penury**. She had been promised a government job and had waited for it for years. But now, after her husband, a truck driver and the sole earning member in a family of six, lost his limbs in an accident, she had been forced to sell her house and shift to a slum.

Penury: (n) extreme poverty; (adj): **penurious**

⁹⁸³ **Sympathy:** (n) sharing the feeling of another.

⁹⁸⁴ **Scowl:** (v) to wrinkle one’s forehead in anger.

⁹⁸⁵ **Pathology:** (n) disease

Origin: GK *pathos*, suffering + *-logia*, study ⇒ ‘study of diseases’ ⇒ ‘the diseases that are studied’.

- ❑ Can you think of some examples of social **pathologies**? The answer: poverty, crime, gender discrimination, etc.
- ❑ The tests used to diagnose whether a patient is suffering from a disease or not are called **pathological** tests.

⁹⁸⁶ **Pathos:** (n) ability of a work of art or of a real life experience to arouse feeling; the feeling thus aroused.

- ❑ The film director showed his expertise in both **pathos** and action sequences.
- ❑ The poet was moved with a deep sense of **pathos** when the old lady in her neighbourhood died all alone. He looked at her dead body, shaking his head over the riddle of man’s life. She had five children, had devoted all her life in bringing them up, but when she needed them, they had all become too busy in their own lives.
- ❑ The painting reflected the **pathos** of a woman in pain.

⁹⁸⁷ **Empathy:** (n) putting oneself in another person’s shoes; imagining an object or a character in an art work to be in the same situation and have the same characteristics and feelings as oneself; (adj): **empathetic**.

Origin: Gk *em-*, in + *pathos*, feeling

- ❑ Most people reserve their **empathetic** concern only for those who are higher and mightier than them. When their boss’ mother develops common cold, they tell him that they totally understand how one feels when one’s mother is not well and sweetly request him to convey their best wishes to her. But, when their maid pleads to them for a small loan because her mother-in-law is in hospital, they remind her that a few months before too, someone in her family had fallen ill. They do not run a charity, they tell her; she should get down to work or they would have to look for a maid with a healthier family.

⁹⁸⁸ **Antipathy:** (n) hostility, strong dislike.

Latin *dolor* **pain**

“With you, we are in your pain”.
 His friends **condoled**⁹⁸⁹ once again.
 And left him there with his tears
 To pass alone his **doleful**⁹⁹⁰ years
 His darling wife was freshly dead
 Now only **dolor**⁹⁹¹ seemed ahead
 Life had no purpose any more
 He would not work now. “Who for?”
 Day and night he slept or wept
 Then one day he did accept that
Indolence⁹⁹² couldn’t lessen grief
 And went to work to get relief

Latin *pallere* **to be pale**

The Latin *pallere*, the English *pale* and the Hindi *peela* (yellow) are related. Jaundice is called ‘*peelia*’ in our country because in it, the face turns yellow, **pallid**⁹⁹³. The states of ‘pallor’ and of being **appalled**⁹⁹⁴ also have the face turning yellow.

Origin: Gk *anti-*, against + *pathos*, feeling

- The young MLA was known for his **antipathy** to religion and caste-based politics.
- A misogynist has an **antipathy** to women.
- The child had an **antipathy** to Maths.

⁹⁸⁹ **Condole:** (v) to soothe someone in pain.

Origin: α *con-*, together + *dolere*, to feel pain ⇒ ‘to be together with someone in his pain.’

- The poem is about a fresh widower. His friends **condole** him in his grief and promise to be there for him whenever he needs them. Soon, however, they become busy with their own lives. He is left alone with his pain. Only pain seems to lie ahead now. Life doesn’t seem to have any purpose. He loses his will to work because he thinks there is nobody he needs to work for. He just weeps and sleeps through his days and nights. One day, however, he does realize that not doing any work is no solution for his pain. In fact, working will help **divert** his mind. So, he reports to work again.

⁹⁹⁰ **Doleful:** (adj) painful, sad.

- The **doleful** music of shehnai at the time of *bidaai* made the bride and her whole family very, very emotional.

⁹⁹¹ **Dolor:** (n) pain; (adj) **dolorous:** full of pain, sad.

- The soldier departed from his bride with a **dolorous** heart.
- She read her dead husband’s last letter in the most **dolorous** tone.

⁹⁹² **Indolence:** (n) laziness, not doing any work.

Origin: α *in-*, in-, not + *dolere*, to feel ⇒ ‘one who takes no pains.’

- The door bell rang twice. Scooby opened his eyes, stretched, yawned and went to sleep again—he really is the most **indolent** dog.

⁹⁹³ **Pallid:** (adj) pale, sapped of energy.

A similar word is **wan**.

Wan: (adj) **pallid**

- The dying man looked **wan** and weak.

⁹⁹⁴ **Appall:** (v) shock with horror or disgust.

- The foreigner was **appalled** to see people living on streets in India.

You **embarked**⁹⁹⁵ on your first air journey with great enthusiasm, even requested your co-passenger to exchange seats so that you could sit by the window and as the plane took off, looked out eagerly! The excitement, however, **palled**⁹⁹⁶ after sometime. For how long can one see the clouds? Yawn! You were soon asleep.



People earlier believed that because the eyes of a jaundiced person were yellow, everything appeared yellow to him. A quotation from the early 1700s says: 'all looks yellow to the jaundiced eye.' So, the phrase '**jaundiced**⁹⁹⁷ eye' became a **metaphor** for a **prejudiced** view.

Latin *cura* **care**

A disease is 'cured' by appropriate care. A 'pedicure' takes care of the feet and a 'manicure' of the hands (*pedis*, foot; *manus*, hand). A **curator**⁹⁹⁸ too takes care, but of more important things.

An 'accurate' proofreader reads every word with great care.

The policemen travelled all the way to Bhushan's tiny village in Assam to **procure**⁹⁹⁹ evidence against him.

In contrast to these three **diligent** professionals stands Mr Moti Mehra, who boasts before everybody with a **hideous**¹⁰⁰⁰ big grin, that his job is a **sinecure**¹⁰⁰¹. He has no cares, he says, at job, or at home (his wife is "a **coy** cow"), or

⁹⁹⁵ **Embark:** (v) to set on a journey.

Origin: barque means: a type of sailing vessel with three or more masts.

- ❑ After the success of *Pickwick Papers*, Charles Dickens **embarked** on a full-time career as a novelist.
- ❑ In 1883 Rudyard Kipling returned to India and **embarked** on a career of journalism, writing the news stories as well as the tales and ballads that began to make his name.

Disembark: (v) to get down from a ship or other vehicle; to take goods off a ship or other vehicle.

- ❑ The guests cheered as the newly-weds arrived at the party in a royal carriage. The groom got down first, walked over to the other side, gave his hand to his bride and helped her to **disembark**.

⁹⁹⁶ **Pall:** (v) to become dull, boring or tiring; to fail to please (n) a dull, thick cover.

Origin: from **apall**.

- ❑ The flash and **glare** and brilliancy of the big mall **palled** upon her tired eye.
- ❑ The night was so black under a cloud-**palled** sky that a tree-trunk could not be seen an eighth of an inch beyond.
- ❑ A smoke-**palled** city.

⁹⁹⁷ **Jaundiced:** (adj) yellowed; prejudiced.

- ❑ The doctor could tell by the **jaundiced** look of his patient's face that he was being poisoned.
- ❑ To Ravi's **jaundiced** gaze, his wife appeared to be the loveliest creature of earth.
- ❑ When his marriage didn't work out, Ravi began to take a thoroughly **jaundiced** view of all women and often advised his friends against getting into a relationship. "These women only want a man's money," he told them. "They cannot be trusted at all. No woman is trustworthy."

⁹⁹⁸ **Curator:** (n) caretaker, especially of a museum.

⁹⁹⁹ **Procure:** (v) to obtain something by *care* and special effort.

- ❑ Like most Punjabi **expatriates**, Gary Sandhu—born and brought up in Canada—went to Punjab to **procure** a wife.
- ❑ The Municipal Corporation of Delhi decided to **procure** 60 lakh new dustbins.

¹⁰⁰⁰ **Hideous:** (adj) repulsive

- ❑ **Hideous** forms of violence still continue to be unleashed upon the women in the subcontinent.

¹⁰⁰¹ **Sinecure:** (n) a job that requires little or no work but provides good salary.

Origin: L *sine*, without + *cura*, care => 'a job without any cares or responsibilities'

- ❑ When he retired at the age of 58 from the directorship of the company he had set up, Mr Natarajan was given a **sinecure** position as The Chief Mentor.

about future. His **hefty**¹⁰⁰² bank balance makes him feel secure (*se-*, without), and so, he treats life like a never-ending party.

Proxy¹⁰⁰³ and **scour**¹⁰⁰⁴ may not look like it but are from the same root.

Note: The word 'care' is a cousin, not a child, of this root. It evolved independently in English, along with its **cognate chary**¹⁰⁰⁵.

¹⁰⁰² **Hefty**: (adj) having a lot of weight, bulky; (v): **heft**, to lift a weight.

- ❑ The trainer made the weightlifters train at 80% of the maximum weight they could **heft** in one try.

¹⁰⁰³ **Proxy**: (n) a substitute, a person authorized to appear as one's representative.

Origin: Abbreviation of 'procuracy', that which has been **prowed**.

- ❑ In order to cast their vote, a voter must appear in the election booth himself. He cannot vote by **proxy**. Only the soldiers posted in **remote** deserts and glaciers are allowed to nominate their **proxies**.

¹⁰⁰⁴ **Scour**: (v) run through; to clean or get rid of (something undesirable) by or as if by a cleansing action.

Origin: α ex- + curare, to care for ⇒ 'to clean' ⇒ 'to wash'

- ❑ The old wooden chair was **scoured** with soap and sand and polished with wax and then provided with a substantial hather cushion.
- ❑ The streams running down the slopes of the mountains **scoured** them of their treasures of minerals and essences.

¹⁰⁰⁵ **Chary**: (adj) cautious, staying alert of hidden dangers.

Origin: OE *cearig*, full of care

- ❑ The **absconding** murderer was **chary** of the friends he made in the new town.
- ❑ He was **chary** of computers and the new technology.
- ❑ People were **chary** of eating chicken because an influenza **epidemic** had broken out among the chickens in West Bengal.

Exercise

Corpus, ost-, caro, palpare, tangere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The tumor was large enough to be *felt by hand*.
(a) harped on (b) ostracized (c) integrated (d) palpitated (e) palpated
2. The boy was supposed to be a *bodily form* of Lord Shiva.
(a) a reincarnation (b) an incarnation (c) a corpulence (d) a carnage (e) a hallucination
3. He owned many copper *mines*.
(a) quarries (b) palpations (c) palpitations (d) crones (e) corsets
4. He was *boycotted* by the villagers.
(a) sheared (b) excoriated (c) ostracized (d) quarried (e) dissected
5. The movie presented the stories of *totally unrelated* characters, ranging from a fifteen-year old office peon to an aspiring actress to a chief minister, who never know each other throughout the movie and yet change the course of each others' lives.
(a) intangible (b) non-contiguous (c) excoriated (d) wrenched (e) disparate
6. Fear was *easily seen* on her face.
(a) impalpable (b) palpable (c) palpating (d) palpitating (e) recoiling
7. He was a miserly, *always shouting at others* old man.
(a) excoriating (b) exasperating (c) cantankerous (d) hallucinating (e) exiled
8. She was *greatly irritated* by his never-ending questions.
(a) cantankerous about (b) a crone for (c) gruff about (d) quarried by (e) exasperated by
9. When she asked him if he was angry, he said "No" *in an angry and bitter voice*.
(a) with asperity (b) like a crone (c) gruffly (d) impalpably (e) in an excoriating manner
10. He was quite a *fat fellow*.
(a) a corpulent (b) an ossified (c) an osseous (d) a coriaceous (e) a carnassial
11. The mother *strongly scolded* her son for stealing from his father's pocket.
(a) exasperated (b) toiled (c) recoiled from (d) wrenched (e) excoriated
12. The two plots of land *touched each other*.
(a) were integral (b) were tangible (c) were bisected (d) were contiguous (e) were tactile
13. His pain was not *physical* but emotional.
(a) integral (b) tangible (c) palpable (d) corporal (e) carnassial

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (e) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (e) 9. (a) 10. (a) 11. (e) 12. (d) 13. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Spices and sauces added to food for flavour: C _____
2. The minimum number of members who must be present to make a meeting or the decisions taken in the meeting valid:
Q _____
3. Honesty and righteousness: I _____
4. Bony: O _____
5. Related with an eagle: A _____

6. A disease that spreads by touch: C _____
7. A piece of broken pottery or glass: S _____
8. A person who is expelled from his homeland: E _____
9. Flesh of dead animals: C _____
10. Mental condition of seeing or experiencing things that are actually not there: H _____

Answers:

condiments, quorum, integrity, osseous, aquiline, contagion, shard, exile, carrion, hallucination

sentire, pathos, dolor, pallere, cura:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *showed anger about* her remarks.
(a) resented (b) dissented (c) was apathetic about (d) became hideous about (e) was chary about
2. She felt *a strong dislike towards* him.
(a) resentment towards (b) a dissension towards (c) apathetic to (d) an antipathy to (e) a hideousness towards
3. The government of Delhi was criticized for its *unfeeling* decision of sending all beggars in the city back to their home states.
(a) chary (b) insensate (c) appalling (d) hefty (e) jaundiced
4. The music was *very sad*.
(a) sentient (b) pallid (c) doleful (d) chary (e) wan
5. Frankenstein had *a repulsive* face.
(a) resenting (b) scowling (c) wan (d) a dolorous (e) hideous
6. He was *appalled* to see his first school in ruin.
(a) horrified (b) sad (c) miserable (d) angry (e) unmoved
7. The doctor showed *lack of feeling* for the poor accident victim desperately fighting for life and refused to touch him till his family deposited fifty thousand rupees.
(a) indolence (b) dolour (c) antipathy (d) empathy (e) apathy
8. The panchayat gave a *jaundiced* decision.
(a) sick (b) biased (c) wan (d) painful (e) weakened
9. The political party threw out its *members who disagreed with the party*.
(a) insentient members (b) insensible members (c) sententious members (d) dissenting members (e) resenting members

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (e) 6. (a) 7. (e) 8. (b) 9. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A job that requires little or no work but provides good salary: S _____
2. Laziness: I _____
3. Extremely poor: P _____
4. Disease: P _____
5. A person authorized to appear as one's representative: P _____
6. To search for food in waste material : S _____

7. Ability of a work of art or of a real life experience to arouse feeling: P_____
8. Imagining an object or a character in an art work to be in the same situation and have the same characteristics and feelings as oneself:
E_____
9. To get down from a ship or other vehicle: D_____

Answers:

sinecure, indolence, penurious, pathology, proxy, scavenge, pathos, empathy, disembark

ROTI, KAPDA AUR MAKAAAN

Latin *granum* **grain**

The most obvious word from this root is 'grain'. The others are:

Granary¹⁰⁰⁶, **garner**¹⁰⁰⁷, **granule**¹⁰⁰⁸, **filigree**¹⁰⁰⁹, **granita**¹⁰¹⁰

'Pomegranate' literally means 'apple with many seeds' (L. *poma*, apple). The deadly 'grenade', which devastates the place where it **detonates**¹⁰¹¹, got its name from *grenate*, the French abbreviation for pomegranate; it resembles the fruit in shape.

IE *pekw-* **to cook**

Heer had sweated the whole day in the kitchen, cooking up all the favourite dishes of Ranjha, her husband. There was no occasion; she had just got the idea in the morning to do something for him. As the evening descended, her **ebul-**

¹⁰⁰⁶ **Granary:** (n) storehouse of grains.

Origin: L *granum*, grain

- ❑ The Prime Minister claimed that India's **granaries** were overflowing with foodgrains and that even if there was a drought, the country had enough food to feed its population for two years.

¹⁰⁰⁷ **Garner:** (v) to gather.

Origin: L *granum*, grain => 'to gather grain'

- ❑ The party made many attempts to garner the support of the scheduled castes.

¹⁰⁰⁸ **Granule:** (n) a small grain.

Origin: L *granum*, grain

- ❑ The little kid's mother gave him the job of counting the number of sugar **granules** in a spoonful of sugar. The job kept the child busy for the next three hours.

¹⁰⁰⁹ **Filigree:** (n) delicate lace-like decoration done with fine wires of silver, gold or other metals.

Origin: L *filum*, thread + *granum*, grain

- ❑ **Filigree** is one of the traditional methods of fashioning jewellery.
- ❑ The silver **filigree** jewellery box, silver filigree napkin holder.
- ❑ The silver **filigree** work was so fine that even the leaves and the pistil stood out.

¹⁰¹⁰ **Granita:** (n) a dessert made of frozen ice.

Origin: L *granum*, grain => 'a dish having **granular** ice'

¹⁰¹¹ **Detonate:** (v) explode

Origin: L *de-* + *tonare*, to thunder

- ❑ In *Sholay*, a dying Jai fires at a dynamite lying on a bridge to **detonate** it. As a result, all of Gabbar's men who are hiding under the bridge are killed.

lience ascended. He would be so happy! He would chuckle like a child! His eyes, his face would **exude**¹⁰¹² his joy; how handsome he looked like that! His **fulgent** eyes would look into her shy ones; he would take her hand, but then suddenly, would leave her and disappear into the dark **alcove**¹⁰¹³, only to reemerge a moment later, **brandishing**¹⁰¹⁴ with **mirth**¹⁰¹⁵, his flute. Oh! She would exclaim in delight. After so long! He would dust it and then, play it, and she would sing alongside, and they would relive those dreamy days of their romance. After so long!

The **fatigued**¹⁰¹⁶ Ranjha came from the fields and had a quick bath. He came out and saw the **sumptuous** meal that Heer had laid out meanwhile. He smiled appreciatively and started eating. Afterwards, he patted her on the cheek, took her hand, kissed it, told her that the meal was **delectable**¹⁰¹⁷ and lay down on his cot. Another **gruelling** day **loomed**¹⁰¹⁸ ahead; he fell asleep the moment he closed his eyes.

Heer's eyes welled up. She had laboured the whole day, for this? Such a **frigid** response? He said the food was **delectable** but his face didn't show any delight at all. He must have said it just like that. A **lachrymose**¹⁰¹⁹ complaint came to her lips and went back:

¹⁰¹² **Exude:** (v) to ooze out, like sweat.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *sudere*, to sweat

- ☐ Her pink face and her baby-like smile seemed to **exude** kindness.
- ☐ Self-confidence seemed to **exude** from his very pores.
- ☐ The body **exudes** sweat.

¹⁰¹³ **Alcove:** (n) a small corner separated from a bigger room or hall by means of curtains or a wood partition etc.

¹⁰¹⁴ **Brandish:** (v) to show off.

- ☐ As the policemen drew close to the woman who had kidnapped her neighbour's daughter, she **brandished** a knife and warned them to not come any closer.
- ☐ Whenever his wife told him to mend his bad habits, Noor Mohammad **brandished** the sword of divorce over her head.

¹⁰¹⁵ **Mirth:** (n) happiness and laughter.

Origin: from 'merry'

- ☐ Jenny giggled: the first appearance of **mirth** he had exhibited in the whole evening.
- ☐ The child was watching his sister, on his face an expression of subdued **mirth**. Their looks met, and both exploded in laughter.
- ☐ When Romi realized that his wife had made him an April fool, his **bemused** expression was so funny that she almost rolled on the floor in helpless **mirth**.

¹⁰¹⁶ **Fatigue:** (n) tiredness

A related word: **indefatigable**

Indefatigable: (adj) tireless

- ☐ With his **indefatigable** prayers, which lasted 30,000 years, Bhagiratha brought the Ganga down to earth in order to obtain **salvation** for his ancestors by washing their bones in its water.

¹⁰¹⁷ **Delectable:** (adj) delightful, delicious.

Origin: L *delectare*, to delight.

In fact, the words 'delight' and 'delicious' are themselves from the root *delectare*. Another word from this root is 'dilettante.'

Dilettante: (n) a person who takes up an activity merely because it delights him, not to earn money or make a profession out of it.

- ☐ Seema Sidiqi's role in the film *Faarooq ke jaane ke baad* had the critics and audiences **clamoring** to see more of her. She however said, "I am a **dilettante**, a **dabbler**. I never wanted to be a Hindi film actress. I did this role because it excited me. But having done that doesn't mean I necessarily will take on another role."

Dabbler: (n) a person who takes up an activity only for some time and then moves on to other interests.

¹⁰¹⁸ **Loom:** (v) to appear as an unclear or enlarged shadow; to seem likely to happen in the near future.

- ☐ The minarets of the town **loomed** above the houses in the pale rays of the sun.
- ☐ Her terror-filled gaze was frozen upon that awful figure that **loomed** so large and evil above her.
- ☐ Before him **loomed** a huge pile of homework.

¹⁰¹⁹ **Lachrymose:** (adj) causing tears, full of tears.

Origin: L *lacrima*, tear

- ☐ The bride's family bid her an affectionate and **lachrymose** goodbye.

Another word from the same root is **lachrymal**.

Lachrymal: (adj) related with tears

“Pakwaan pakaundi mar gayi main te tu kadr na jaani!”

(I died cooking delicacies for you, and you did not even bother!)

The Indian words *pakwaan*, *pakaana*, *pakka* are from this root. Their Latin cousin is *coquere*, which means ‘to cook’ and, in fact, is the source of the word ‘cook.’



When we first read stories like “So and so writer had written her first poem at the age of three,” or that “so and so had graduated at 12,” we often **dismiss**¹⁰²⁰ them as **concocted**¹⁰²¹, ‘cooked up’.

Sadly however for our egos, some of those stories are true. A few kids *are* **precocious**¹⁰²²—they seem to arrive in the world ‘pre-cooked’—while we, the lesser mortals, have to fry our brains for years, first at school and then at college.

Decoction¹⁰²³, **culinary**¹⁰²⁴ and **kiln**¹⁰²⁵ are the other words from *coquere*.

In Greek, the root is *pepetein*, to cook. The digestive enzyme found in our stomach, pepsin, derives its name from here, as do **euepsia**¹⁰²⁶ and **dyspepsia**¹⁰²⁷.

IE *ed-* to eat

The word ‘eat’ itself is from this root. ‘Eat’ came into Modern English from the Old English word *etan*, to eat.

¹⁰²⁰ **Dismiss:** (v) to remove from office or attention.
Origin: L *dis-*, away + *mittere*, to send

¹⁰²¹ **Concoct:** (v) to cook up, to make by mixing ingredients.

Origin: α *con-*, together + *coquere*, to cook ⇒ ‘to cook together’

- ❑ “Are you saying that you never went out with Mr Rai?” The shocked journalist asked the famous Bollywood heroine Trisha Oberoi. “No,” she coolly replied. “Vineet and I have always been just good friends. All those stories of romance were **concocted** by the media.”
- ❑ The expert chef **concocted** many different types of *chaat*.

¹⁰²² **Precocious:** (adj) more mature than natural for a particular age.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *coquere*, to cook ⇒ ‘cooked before time’

- ❑ In the movie ‘*Cheeni Kum*’, Sexy is a **precocious** six-year-old who offers sensible relationship advice to a 64-year-old man!
- ❑ Mozart, Carl Friedrich Gauss and Tathagat Avatar Tulsi were **precocious** as children. Mozart was only five when he composed his first symphony. Gauss made many mathematical discoveries in his teenage. Tathagat Avatar Tulsi, born in 1987, gave his 10th Board exams at the age of nine years, completed a Bachelor degree in Physics at 10, and finished his M.Sc. at 12. By 21, he had already completed his Ph.D from the Indian Institute of Science, Bengaluru. Such **precocious** achievers are also called **prodigies**.

¹⁰²³ **Decoction:** (n) an extract obtained by boiling something in water.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *coquere*, to cook ⇒ ‘to cook down’ ⇒ ‘to boil down’

- ❑ A warm **decoction** of the bark of the fig tree can be used as a mouthwash.
- ❑ A **decoction** made from dried flower buds of pomegranate can ease cough and bronchitis.

¹⁰²⁴ **Culinary:** (adj) related with cooking or kitchen.

Origin: α *coquere*, to cook → α *culina*, kitchen

- ❑ The Hotel Management students showcased their **culinary** skills at the food fest.
- ❑ The Punjabi boy boasted to his friends that his state is the home of many **culinary** delights.

¹⁰²⁵ **Kiln:** (n) a brick-lined or other oven used for baking, burning or drying something.

Origin: L *culina*, kitchen

¹⁰²⁶ **Euepsia:** (n) good digestion.

Origin: Gk *eu-*, good + *peptein*, to digest

¹⁰²⁷ **Dyspepsia:** (n) indigestion

Origin: Gk *dys-*, bad + *peptein*, to digest. The Greek prefix *dys-* is a **cognate** of the Sanskrit prefix *dus-*. Both mean ‘bad.’

- ❑ The visiting son-in-law of the house grew **dyspeptic** after a course of **dainty** dishes and ungratefully demanded plain food at the next meal.

Then we have the Latin root *edere*, which means ‘to eat.’ The most famous word from *edere*, and one that gives nightmares to people of all age-groups and both genders, is **obese**¹⁰²⁸. Second on the *edere* popularity charts would probably be ‘edible’, which means eatable. **Comestible**¹⁰²⁹ is the less famous synonym of edible.

The banquet of the IE root *ed-* also serves the following words: **Prandial**¹⁰³⁰, **anodyne**¹⁰³¹

Hope you enjoyed the multi-course feast!

IE **poi** **to drink**

Thodi si jo pi li hai, chori toh nahin ki hai...

The Hindi words *piyo*, *peena*, *peeta*, *piyakad* are from this IE root. Their English cousins are:

Poison, **potion**¹⁰³², **potable**¹⁰³³, **symposium**¹⁰³⁴

Latin **bibere** **to drink**

When a small child is drinking something, his mother ties a piece of cloth around his neck so that his clothes are not spoiled. That protective cloth is called a ‘bib’.

Cold drinks, alcohol—in fact, all **potable** liquids except water—are called ‘beverages.’ One of those beverages also got its name from this root. Try and think. *Bibere*, *bibere*... which drink sounds similar to it? Hint: it is an alcoholic drink.

Meanwhile, let me list the other words from this root:

¹⁰²⁸ **Obese:** (adj) overly fat.

Origin: L *ob-*, away + *edere*, to eat => ‘one who eats away’

¹⁰²⁹ **Comestible:** (adj) eatable; (n) **comestibles:** eatables.

Origin: L *com-* + *edere*, to eat + *-ibilis*, able => ‘able to be eaten.’

❑ Almost everyone gifted **comestibles** to Motu Chand on his birthday because they knew how fond of food he was. For the next few days, he swam delightfully in a sea of cakes, chocolates, cookies and wines.

¹⁰³⁰ **Prandial:** (adj) related with a meal.

Origin: L *pram-*, first + *edere*, to eat => ‘first meal’

❑ A good way to avoid weight-gain is to make a habit of post-**prandial** walks instead of post-**prandial** naps.

❑ The doctor suspected that the patient was diabetic and so, ordered him to get both fasting blood glucose and post-**prandial** glucose levels tested.

¹⁰³¹ **Anodyne:** (n) pain reliever

Origin: Gk *an-*, without + *odune*, pain. *Odune* comes from the root *ed-*, to eat and means ‘that which seems to eat the body.’

❑ The air was heavy with the perfume of the flowers and their beauty seemed to bring him an **anodyne** for his pain.

❑ **Anodynes** or **analgesics** are **colloquially** known as ‘painkillers.’

¹⁰³² **Potion:** (n) a drink having medicinal or magical properties.

Origin: L *potare*, to drink

❑ The *vaid* made a **potion** based on rose oil, cow urine and bitter herbs that could, he claimed, cure all diseases.

¹⁰³³ **Potable:** (adj) drinkable

Origin: L *potare*, to drink

❑ The water in our rivers and wells is no more **potable** and must at least be boiled before drinking.

¹⁰³⁴ **Symposium:** (n) a conference to discuss a topic. In ancient Greece, a **symposium** used to be a merry after-dinner meeting in which people drank together and talked.

Origin: Gk *sym-*, together + *pinein*, to drink

Imbibe¹⁰³⁵, **imbrue**¹⁰³⁶, **imbue**¹⁰³⁷, **bibulous**¹⁰³⁸

That alcoholic beverage, my dear, is beer.

IE **gel-** **to swallow**

What is the Hindi word for swallowing? *Nigalna*. It is made by combining *ni*, below (think of *niche*) and *gala*, throat, and so means 'taking something below the throat'. Did you immediately look at the root in the heading the moment you saw the word *gala*? Yes, you are right. *Gala* is from this root. The other words from *gel-* are:

Gel-1: Gulp, **glut**¹⁰³⁹, **glutton**¹⁰⁴⁰, **deglutition**¹⁰⁴¹

¹⁰³⁵ **Imbibe**: (v) to drink, to take in.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *bibere*, to drink

- I opened the window and put out my head to catch the cooling breeze, and **imbibe** deep **draughts** of the pure morning air.
- The habits **imbibed** in the childhood are very difficult to break.

Draught: (n) gulp

¹⁰³⁶ **Imbrue**: (v) to stain, to soak thoroughly.

Origin: same as **imbibe**.

- Emperor Ashoka felt greatly sorry for having **imbrued** his hands in the blood of innocent people.
- Rishi picked up the business book with enthusiasm but soon found himself **imbrued** in boring facts and figures.
- The sky was **imbrued** in pale pink.

¹⁰³⁷ **Imbue**: (b) to soak thoroughly.

Origin: same as **imbibe**.

- The movie *Sholay* is **imbued** with humour, drama and tension and makes for gripping viewing.
- He could not tell whether she was **imbued** with sunshine, or whether it was a glow of happiness that shone out of her.

¹⁰³⁸ **Bibulous**: (adj) fond of drinking alcohol, related with drinking alcohol.

Origin: L *bibere*, to drink

- After a particularly **bibulous** evening, Sharma ji came home and declared that he was going to resign from his job and contest in the next General Elections. His wife wisely **refrained** from making any comment. He had forgotten all about his **resolution** by the morning.

¹⁰³⁹ **Glut**: (n) full supply, overly full supply; (v) to feed till full; to feed till overly full.

Origin: L *gula*, throat -> *gluttire*, to gulp down

- The **glut** of the mangoes in the market led to a falling of their prices.
- The Chinese companies **glutted** the Indian markets with cheap goods.

¹⁰⁴⁰ **Glutton**: (n) a person who eats or drinks too much; a person who takes in too much of something.

Origin: L *gluttire*, to gulp down => 'a person who gulps down everything.'

- The *purohit* of the Zamindar was a **glutton**. His bigger than a football stomach was an ample proof of this.
- The tennis player was a **glutton** for physical training. When a journalist asked her if following the same, hard routine everyday did not become **monotonous**, she smiled and said: "That's the only way to reach the top."

Monotonous: (adj) continuing in the same tone, without any variation; boring, routine; (n) **monotony**.

Origin: Gk *mono*, one + *tonos*, tone

¹⁰⁴¹ **Deglutition**: (n) the process of swallowing.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *gluttire*, to swallow

- Hunger is said to be the best sauce for poor food, but even hunger failed to make the jail food **palatable**. The food was so repulsive that two prisoners actually starved to death because they were unable to force their organs of **deglutition** to receive the **nauseous** food and pass it on to the stomach.

Palatable: (adj) acceptable to the sense of taste or to the mind. Opposite: unpalatable

Origin: palate, roof of the mouth + -able => 'that which can be put into the to mouth.'

*Gel-2: polyglot*¹⁰⁴², *gullet*¹⁰⁴³, *gull*¹⁰⁴⁴

*Gel- 3: gullible*¹⁰⁴⁵, *gully*¹⁰⁴⁶

The root *gel-* also **manifests** itself as *ger-*. The *ger-* root **mimics**¹⁰⁴⁷ our throat sounds (that is, it is **onomatopoeic**).

Think of what else do we call our *gala*? We call it *gardan*, which is a Persian word. And, what do we call the act of taking a big gulp of water in your mouth, tilting your head backward and doing gr-gr-gr? Our word is *garaara* and the English word is 'gargle'. Did you ever notice their similarity before?

The other English from the *ger-* root are:

*Gr-gr-gr-1: gorge*¹⁰⁴⁸, *engorge*¹⁰⁴⁹, *disgorge*¹⁰⁵⁰

¹⁰⁴² **Polyglot:** (n) one who knows many languages.

Origin: Gk *poly-*, many + *glotta*, tongue => 'one who knows many tongues'

❑ Vikram Seth is a **polyglot**. He can read and speak Hindi, Urdu, English, French, German, Welsh and Mandarin.

Don't confuse a **polyglot** with a **polymath**.

Polymath: (n) one who is learned in many subjects.

Origin: Gk *poly-*, many + *manthanein*, to know

❑ Leonardo da Vinci was a **polymath**. He was a painter, sculptor, architect, musician, scientist, mathematician, engineer, inventor, anatomist, geologist, botanist and a writer.

¹⁰⁴³ **Gullet:** (n) the throat; a **gully**.

Origin: L *gula*, throat

❑ He caught the villain by the **gullet** and punched him on the nose with his fist.

¹⁰⁴⁴ **Gull:** (v) to trick or cheat.

Origin: L *gula*, throat => 'to swallow'

❑ The consumer courts exist to punish the companies which **gull** the consumers with false promises.

❑ The Hindi movie *Bunty aur Babli* is about a pair of cheats who are forever ready to take advantage of any who have money and are foolish enough to be **gulled** by their tricks.

¹⁰⁴⁵ **Gullible:** (adj) easily tricked or cheated.

Origin: *gull* + *able*

❑ The *sadhu* told the villagers that he was a descendant of Lord Ram. The **gullible** villagers bowed their heads and kissed his feet.

❑ Several coaching institutes offer thick wads of money and attractive gifts like a car or an expensive laptop to top rankers in competitive exams so that they **endorse** the institutes' claim to have coached them. The photographs of these students are then printed in whole-page ads in national newspapers to lure **gullible** students.

¹⁰⁴⁶ **Gully:** (n) a water channel or ditch cut in the ground by the force of water running violently fast.

Origin: L *gula*, throat => 'a throat like structure in earth's surface'

❑ Through the midst of this hill jungle, there runs a deep **gully** or **glen**.

Glen: (n) a narrow valley.

¹⁰⁴⁷ **Mimic:** (v) to imitate.

Origin: Gk *mimikos*, to imitate. The word **mime** too is from the same root.

❑ Aditi was an expert at **mimicry**. She regaled her friends with the **mimicry** of all their teachers.

¹⁰⁴⁸ **Gorge:** (v) to stuff oneself greedily; (n) a narrow deep cut in a hill which is surrounded by steep rock walls on both sides and at the base of which a stream usually runs.

Origin: L *gorges*, throat

❑ Chenghiz Khan pursued Jalaal **relentlessly**. For 40 days, Jalal rode non-stop, managing somehow to stay ahead of Chenghiz Khan's troops. They finally nailed him at a place from where escape seemed impossible: a **gorge** above a roaring river. But Jalaal spurred his horse over the cliff and into the river, more than a 100 feet below.

¹⁰⁴⁹ **Engorge:** (v) to stuff oneself greedily.

Origin: L *en-*, in + *gorges*, throat

❑ The fat man **engorged** himself, then vomited so that he could **gorge** again.

❑ The hungry child **engorged** the stale bread he found in the garbage dump.

¹⁰⁵⁰ **Disgorge:** (v) to throw out.

Origin: L *dis-*, away + *gorges*, throat

❑ The huge yellow crane alternately **gorged** and **disgorged** immense quantities of mud.

Gr-gr-gr-gr 2: **gurgle**¹⁰⁵¹, **ingurgitate**¹⁰⁵², **regurgitate**¹⁰⁵³

Gr-gr-gr-gr 3: **gargoyle**¹⁰⁵⁴, **gargantuan**¹⁰⁵⁵, **jargon**¹⁰⁵⁶

We can also discuss here another similar sounding root meaning neck—the Latin *collum*. It is due to this root that the part of a shirt which encircles our neck is called a ‘collar’.

Collum words: **accolade**¹⁰⁵⁷, **decollate**¹⁰⁵⁸, **decollete**¹⁰⁵⁹

IE **swad** **sweet, pleasant**

Needless to say, the Sanskrit word *swaad* has come from this root.

- ¹⁰⁵¹ **Gurgle:** (v) to flow in a broken manner making gr-gr-gr sound; to make such a sound; (n) the noise of gurgling or the act of gurgling.
Origin: L *gurges*, throat
 It was impossible to talk near the mouth of the waterfall amidst the loud **gurgle** of the water before it **plunged** into the boiling pool farther down.
- ¹⁰⁵² **Ingurgitate:** (v) to eat greedily or in great amounts.
Origin: L *in-*, in + *gurges*, throat
 The kids **ingurgitated** the icecream.
- ¹⁰⁵³ **Regurgitate:** (v) to throw back, to vomit.
Origin: L *re-*, back + *gurges*, throat
 The blood **regurgitates** into the ventricles of the heart.
 A student can do extremely well in the Indian schools by simply memorizing facts and **regurgitating** them in the exams.
 The baby **regurgitated** some of the milk he had drunk.
- ¹⁰⁵⁴ **Gargoyle:** (n) a water spout showing a man or an animal with an open mouth which projects from the gutter attached to the building's roof and throws the water it receives away from the building.
Origin: L *gurges*, throat -> Old French *gargouille*, throat, a waterspout which throws water in the same manner as a gargling man does from his throat.
 Between each of the windows of the house was a **gargoyle** presenting the fantastic jaws of an animal without a body, vomiting the rain-water upon large stones pierced with five holes to drain the water.
- ¹⁰⁵⁵ **Gargantuan:** (adj) huge
Origin: from a gluttonous giant named Gargantua.
 After the guests had gone, father threw himself into a chair and gave vent to roars of **Gargantuan** laughter.
 Even five burgers in one sitting could not satisfy his **gargantuan** appetite.
- ¹⁰⁵⁶ **Jargon:** (n) specialized vocabulary of a particular group of people or profession, which outside people find difficult to understand; any understandable piece of writing or talk.
Origin: Fr. *gargouille*, throat => ‘to gargle’
 Here are a few **jargon** terms related with electronics: megahertz, megapixel, MP3, FM, WiFi, etc.
 Doctors regularly use **jargon** words that no one outside the medical field can understand. Examples include ectomy, phlebotomy, anaphylactic shock, antivert, cerebrovascular accident, diuresis, diplopia, etc.
- ¹⁰⁵⁷ **Accolade:** (n) the ceremony of conferring knighthood on someone by touching his shoulder with the flat side of a sword or by embracing him; any praise, award or honour
Origin: L *ad-*, to + *collum*, neck => ‘to touch the neck’ => ‘to embrace around the neck’
 Arthur C. Clarke won great **accolades** for his science fiction. In 1964, his short story ‘Nightfall’ was voted by the Science Fiction Writers of America as the greatest science fiction story of all times, an **accolade** many still agree with.
 To appear in print is an **accolade** by most people.
- ¹⁰⁵⁸ **Decollate:** (v) to cut down the head.
Origin: L *de-*, down + *collum*, neck
 The emperor ordered the **decollation** of the evil minister.
- ¹⁰⁵⁹ **Décolleté:** (adj) a low-necked dress.
Origin: L *de-*, down + *collum*, neck
 The actress appeared at the film awards ceremony in an elegant **décolleté** cream gown.

The Latin *suavis* means pleasant. It is found in **suave**¹⁰⁶⁰ and **assuage**¹⁰⁶¹. Related to this word is *suadere*, which means ‘to call something pleasant.’ Slowly, the root acquired the sense of ‘recommending, advising or urging.’ The words from this root are ‘persuade’ and **dissuade**¹⁰⁶².

The *swadisht* of Sanskrit becomes *hwadist* in Persian. In Greek too, the ‘s’ changes into ‘h’ and so the Greek word from this root is **hedonism**¹⁰⁶³.

Latin **sapere** **to taste, have taste, be wise**

All of a sudden, the people of Gagaland started dying. Each day, more than 2,000 deaths were reported in that tiny kingdom of one lakh people. The citizens were terrified! They failed to understand what had caused this **spate**¹⁰⁶⁴ of deaths.

After a week, an old man sailed into the island. He wore a white **toga**. Its silver sheen matched his flowing **hoary**¹⁰⁶⁵ hair and beard. He looked very **sapient**¹⁰⁶⁶. So, a few men of the kingdom touched his feet in welcome. He smiled

¹⁰⁶⁰ **Suave:** (adj) having polished manners.

Origin: L *suavis*, sweet => ‘pleasant’

- ❑ **Suave**, polite and fashionably dressed, thirty-year old Sowmya Singh **belies** the traditional image of a **dowdily** dressed, aggressive and deliberately unfeminine woman politician.

Dowdy: (adj) shabbily dressed.

Belie: (v) to show false, to contradict, to lie about.

Origin: be + lie

- ❑ She told him to go away. “No, I don’t love you,” she screamed. But, her eyes **belied** her words.

¹⁰⁶¹ **Assuage:** (v) to soothe.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *suavis*, sweet => ‘to take towards being sweet and pleasant’

- ❑ The parents often brought expensive gifts for their daughter, perhaps to **assuage** their guilt at not being able to spend any time with her.
- ❑ Time did not **assuage** his grief. Often, during office hours, while his colleagues were discussing the topics of the day, his eyes would suddenly fill with the memories of his dead wife.

¹⁰⁶² **Dissuade:** (v) to change someone’s mind from doing something.

Origin: L *dis-*, away + *suadere*, to advice => ‘to advice away from something.’

- ❑ Three-year-old Archi declared that she too would go with mummy and daddy to the movie. Her parents and her grandparents tried their best to **dissuade** her but she remained **adamant**. Finally, the poor parents cancelled their own plan because that movie was not fit for a child.

¹⁰⁶³ **Hedonism:** (n) belief that self-pleasure and happiness is the greatest goal of life.

Origin: Gk *hedone*, pleasure

- ❑ He was well-known as a **hedonist**. He lived in a home that rivaled five-star hotels, flew in his own chartered plane and cruised in his luxury **yachts**.

Yacht: (n) a luxury boat.

¹⁰⁶⁴ **Spate:** (n) flood

- ❑ The hill stream came down in a **spate**.
- ❑ A sudden **spate** in the river swept down a horse that was crossing it and nearly drowned its rider.

¹⁰⁶⁵ **Hoary:** (adj) old, (for hair etc.) white with age, stale.

- ❑ The young boy got beaten by the **hoary**-headed woman.
- ❑ Diya was delighted to find a **hoary** diary of her grandfather.
- ❑ The movie was **hoary**. Every dialogue of every scene could be predicted because hundreds of movies had told the same story before.

¹⁰⁶⁶ **Sapient:** (adj) showing great wisdom.

Origin: L *sapere*, to have taste => ‘to be wise’

- ❑ Rachit’s father was fuming because a bird had just shit on his darling Ambassador. Watching his father’s anger inspired Rachit with the **sapient** reflection that it’s a terrible thing to be in love, even if only with a rickety, old car.

A **sapient** man is called a **savant**.

Savant: (n) very learned and wise.

Origin: L *sapere*, to be wise => ‘a wise man’

calmly and blessed them. That convinced them that he was no ordinary man but a **sage**¹⁰⁶⁷. They told him about the ongoing deaths and asked for his advice.

The **sagacious**¹⁰⁶⁸ old man sat on a nearby rock and closed his eyes. There was pin-drop silence all around. After a few moments, he opened his eyes and asked them if they had all started eating a new fruit in the past few months? The astonished men said, “Yes, sir. We call it the **Sapid**¹⁰⁶⁹ Fruit. It is very tasty. One of our ships had brought it from distant lands a few seasons ago. We really loved it. And, we found that the fruit could grow on our soil. So the king ordered its large-scale plantation. This year, those plantations gave their first yield. But why?”

The old man shook his head. “That fruit which you so happily call the ‘**Sapid** fruit’ was placed on that ship by the **Devil**¹⁰⁷⁰ himself.”

The men **gasp**ed. The old man continued, “The Devil is **savvy**¹⁰⁷¹. He knows how to destroy whom. He knew that the **savour**¹⁰⁷² and smell of the fruit would lure all of you. His job is to kill people, physically or morally. And, he succeeded admirably in your case. Remember, my children, that **sapid** things too can be bad.”

¹⁰⁶⁷ **Sage:** (n) a very wise man.

Origin: L *sapere*, to be wise -> *sapidus*, wise

- ❑ The **sage** stood at the banks of the holy Ganga and performed the puja rituals.
- ❑ The boy ignored the **sage** advice of his father and resigned from his job without having a backup.

¹⁰⁶⁸ **Sagacity:** (n) wisdom; (adj) **sagacious**

- ❑ The woman managed her house with **sagacity**.
- ❑ The Constitution makers of India had the **sagacity** to make the process of removal of a Supreme Court or High Court judge very difficult for the government. This has gone a long way to give the judges the courage to stand up fearlessly against the government if the need be.
- ❑ How **sagacious** is it to be friends with one's ex-lover?

¹⁰⁶⁹ **Sapid:** (adj) tasty; appealing to one's mind.

Origin: L *sapidus*, tasty

- ❑ Mrs Sharma prepared a most **sapid** family dinner on her son's birthday.
- ❑ Ravi, a professor of Mathematics, had a **sapid** discussion on geometry with the 10-year-old son of the cousin whom he was visiting. He later exclaimed to his cousin that the boy was a genius.

The opposite of **sapid** is not insapid but **insipid**.

Insipid: (adj) without any taste, dull, boring.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *sapidus*, tasty

- ❑ The students yawned through the **insipid** lecture.
- ❑ Art movies are usually **insipid**. So is hospital food.

¹⁰⁷⁰ The adjective form of 'devil' is **diabolical**. It means 'devilish, related with a devil.'

- ❑ When three members of her family got injured within a few days of each other, Sumitra Devi was convinced that some **diabolical** agency was shadowing her home and quickly organized a *havan* to ward off its evil influence.
- ❑ Shiresh hatched a **diabolical** plan to marry his girlfriend to a rich, old man and to kill him after a year and then marry her and live on the dead man's wealth afterwards.

¹⁰⁷¹ **Savvy:** (v) to understand; (n) understanding; (adj) having full understanding.

Origin: L *sapere*, to be wise

- ❑ “You don't quite **savvy** girls, dear boy, do you?” The boy's uncle teased him. Another uncle chipped in, saying: “Our Bobby can indeed be a girl's delight—look at his eyes and dimple—but he doesn't **savvy** how to make a girl want him. Look at your cousins, boy. They are all quite **savvy** in this regard.”

¹⁰⁷² **Savour:** (v) to enjoy the taste of; to give a taste to; to have a taste of

Origin: L *sapere*, to be wise

- ❑ I set out on a walking tour to **savour** the leisurely pace of life in this old town.
- ❑ He **savoured** the first drops of the monsoon falling on the baked earth.
- ❑ At their reunion, the college friends fondly remembered their canteen where they **savoured** the pakodas and chatted endlessly.

Latin *odor* **smell**

The word **odour**¹⁰⁷³ has travelled as it is into English. And what do you call something which removes the smell from your clothes when you haven't bathed for three days? A 'deodorant'. What word would people use for you and your clothes if you cannot find your deodorant and step out as you are? They would clench your noses and call you, "Eeeeh! **Malodorous**^{1074!}"

The other words from this root are: **Odoriferous**¹⁰⁷⁵, **olfactory**¹⁰⁷⁶, **redolent**¹⁰⁷⁷

Latin *vestire* **to clothe**

The *vastra* of Sanskrit is a **cognate** of *vestire*.

When you 'invest' your capital, you give it a new form. The etymology says that you clothe it in a different style. To 'invest' a new emperor means to clothe him formally in the royal robes and install him in office. To 'invest' somebody with a power means to clothe him with it. But if he does not perform well, he is soon **divested**¹⁰⁷⁸ of all his duties.

A **travesty**¹⁰⁷⁹ clothes its subject with ridiculous-looking garbs so that anybody who sees it laughs.

¹⁰⁷³ **Odour:** (n) smell

Origin: L *odor*, smell

- ❑ The bad **odour** in your mouth in the morning is caused by the bacterial decay of food particles stuck in it.

¹⁰⁷⁴ **Malodorous:** (adj) bad smelling.

Origin: L *mal-*, bad + *odor*, smell

- ❑ The residents demanded that the **malodorous** garbage dumping site near their locality be shifted to the city outskirts.
- ❑ Eating raw onions causes **malodorous** breath.

¹⁰⁷⁵ **Odouriferous:** (adj) carrying a smell.

Origin: L *odor*, smell + *-ferous*, carrying

- ❑ The Champa tree—its biological name is *Magnolia champaca*—is **odouriferous**. In fact, Champa flowers are used to make Joy, one of the most expensive perfumes of the world.
- ❑ Some gardeners say that roses and violets spring more **odouriferous** near garlic and onions, by reason that the last suck and **imbibe** all the ill odour of the earth.

¹⁰⁷⁶ **Olfactory:** (adj) related with the sense of smell.

Origin: L *olere*, to smell + *facere*, to do

- ❑ The **olfactory** sense of blind people is said to be keener than others.
- ❑ Sitting next to Beena is always an **olfactory** treat. She wears a great perfume.
- ❑ Passing near the tannery was an **olfactory** torture.

¹⁰⁷⁷ **Redolent:** (adj) having a pleasant smell; smelling of something.

Origin: L *re-* + *olere*, to smell => 'to smell, to smell of something.'

- ❑ He spent half an hour in search of a bunch of **redolent** roses to carry home to his wife.
- ❑ She was **redolent** of eau de Cologne and mint. He was **redolent** of alcohol.
- ❑ The song '*Kaisi paheli zindagani*' in the movie *Parineeta* was **redolent** of the Bollywood music of the 60s.
- ❑ The kitchen was **redolent** of onions and cheese.

¹⁰⁷⁸ **Divest:** (v) to strip, as of clothes or ornaments, or property, rights, etc; (n) **Divestiture**.

Origin: L *dis-*, away + *vestire*, to clothe

- ❑ The man **divested** himself of his clothes—he thought there was no reason why one should not die as he was born—and threw himself into the furious river. The only witness of his sad act was a sparrow perched on a tree.
- ❑ Ratan Jain **divested** himself of one-third of his fortune and donated it to charity.
- ❑ The trade unions all over the country opposed the government plans of **divestiture** of its majority holdings in public undertakings.

¹⁰⁷⁹ **Travesty:** (n) an action or thing that makes fun of something and makes it look ridiculous.

Origin: L *trans*, over + *vestire* => 'to disguise'

- ❑ The model's dress was a ridiculous **travesty** of a sari.
- ❑ Justice in the village was a **travesty**; its panchayat passed whatever orders the village landlord asked it to.

Latin manere to stay

The Sanskrit word *mandir* is related to this root. *Mandir* means a house, though now we use it almost exclusively to mean 'a house of god.' And guess what does *mandira* mean? Also written as *mandura*, it means a stable!

The Latin *manere* too names different kinds of **dwelling**¹⁰⁸⁰. On one hand is a 'mansion' or a 'manor', which is the large and impressive house of a rich landlord, and on the other, is a **menagerie**¹⁰⁸¹ of animals!

To 'remain' means 'to stay back.' Something that stays throughout is 'permanent' (L. *per-*, throughout).

The other words from this root are:

Remnant¹⁰⁸², **immanent**¹⁰⁸³, **menial**¹⁰⁸⁴ and **ménage**¹⁰⁸⁵

IE weik- house, dwelling

When Kaikeyi demanded the *banvaas* of Lord Ram, she asked that he 'dwell' in the forests. The Sanskrit words *vaas*, *vaasi*, *aavaas* and *parvaas* are from this root. The 'v' and 'b' sounds often interchange in our languages (think of *vanvaas-banvaas*, *vaniya-baniya*) and so the word we use for a village is *basti*. A building is called *vaastu* in Sanskrit; *vaastugyaan* and *vaastukala* is architecture and *vaastushastra* is the science of architecture.

The *weik-* words in English are:

¹⁰⁸⁰ **Dwell:** (v) to live; to spend much time or energy on something. The house where one **dwells** is called his **dwelling**.

- ❑ "Before complaining to God that your house is not big enough, remember for a moment that there are people who **dwell** in the slums," the saint preached.
- ❑ The government gave asbestos sheets to the people who had lost their homes in the storm, so that they could rebuild their **dwelling**s.

¹⁰⁸¹ **Menagerie:** (n) a collection of wild animals; the place where they are kept.

Origin: from **menage**

- ❑ The children were delighted to see the **menagerie** of circus animals.
- ❑ Ritu kept a dozen dogs at her farm, and would turn her city house too into a **menagerie** if her father would let her.

¹⁰⁸² **Remnant:** (n) a remaining thing.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *manere*, to stay => 'that which stays back'

- ❑ Devotees from far away came to visit the **remnants** of the famous church which was destroyed in a fire.
- ❑ Lata ate the **remnants** of her brother's birthday cake when nobody was home.

¹⁰⁸³ **Immanent:** (adj) living within, inherent.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *manere*, to stay

- ❑ God is **immanent** in each one of us.
- ❑ Social injustice is **immanent** in the caste system.
- ❑ His friends cautioned him against the **immanent** risks of starting one's own business.

¹⁰⁸⁴ **Menial:** (adj) lowly, regarded as a servant's job; (n) a servant, a person doing lowly jobs.

Origin: L *manere*, to stay -> *mansionem*, house -> Old Fr. *mesnie*, household -> *meignial*, related with household

- ❑ Cleaning excreta and removing dead animals are examples of **menial** jobs.
- ❑ The best way to impress your boss is to do well all the tasks that he assigns to you, no matter how **menial** you regard them to be.

¹⁰⁸⁵ **Ménage:** (n) a household.

Origin: L *manere*, to stay -> *mansionem*, house -> Old Fr. *mesnie*, household -> *mesnage*, household

- ❑ He made his new wife an allowance and established a **menage** with her.
- ❑ "What sort of a **menage** is it which pays double the market price for a governess but does not keep a horse, although six miles from the station?" Sherlock Holmes in 'Adventure of the solitary cyclist.'

*Weik-1: ecology*¹⁰⁸⁶, *economy*¹⁰⁸⁷, *ecumenical*¹⁰⁸⁸

*Weik-2: parish*¹⁰⁸⁹, *parochial*¹⁰⁹⁰, *vicinity*¹⁰⁹¹

IE *dem-* house, household

The Sanskrit word *dampati* is used for a married couple. It is formed by the combination of *dama*, house, and *pati*, master, and, therefore, literally means ‘master of a house’, a householder (house+holder). Before marriage, you belong to your parents’ house. Upon marriage, you set up your own and become a *dampati*.

The English words from this root are:

*Dem-1: dome, domestic, domicile*¹⁰⁹², *major-domo*¹⁰⁹³

¹⁰⁸⁶ **Ecology:** (n) study of the relationship of organisms with their environments.

Origin: Gk *oikos*, house + *-ology*, study

¹⁰⁸⁷ **Economy:** (n) study of resource management; efficient resource management.

Origin: Gk *oikos*, house + *nemein*, to manage => ‘to manage a house’

¹⁰⁸⁸ **Ecumenical:** (adj) general, universal, not related with only one religion or one type of people; interreligious.

Origin: Gk *oikos*, house -> *oikein*, to live in a house => ‘belonging to the whole earth that is lived on’ => ‘belonging to the whole world.’

The word ‘**secular**’ is many a times **erroneously** used in contexts where ‘**ecumenical**’ or ‘**syncretistic**’ fit far better.

India prides itself as an **ecumenical** society where people of all religions, regions, languages and colors live together in peace. Most Indians however still frown upon **ecumenical** marriages.

¹⁰⁸⁹ **Parish:** (n) a local church.

Origin: Gk *para-*, near + *oikos*, house => ‘near to one’s house’ => ‘neighbouring’

¹⁰⁹⁰ **Parochial:** (adj) related to a **parish**; narrow in one’s outlook, unable to think broadly.

Origin: same as **parish**.

Why worry so much about what your neighbours will say? It is so **parochial** to bind oneself to views which are not valid even a couple of hundred miles away.

The Shiv Sena is full of **parochial** nationalists who insist that Mumbai belongs only to the Marathi people and demand that people from other states should not be given jobs there.

¹⁰⁹¹ **Vicinity:** (n) neighbourhood

Origin: L *vicus*, neighbourhood

The Taj Mahal is built in the **vicinity** of the Yamuna.

Cancer was **rampant** in the populations living in the **vicinity** of the chemical factories.

Rampant: (adj) widespread, unrestrained.

¹⁰⁹² **Domicile:** (n) residence; (v) to take up residence, to provide with usually temporary residence.

Origin: L *domus*, house + *colere*, to live. The word ‘colony’ is from *colere*.

With few exceptions, all state government jobs are provided to the citizens with **domicile** in that state.

When his savings started drying up, the writer made up his mind to leave the hotel, and to rent some less posh and less expensive **domicile**.

The tree was hollow to an extent of about 50 ft in diameter, and from its flat, hard floor the detective judged that it had often been used to **domicile** men.

¹⁰⁹³ **Major-domo:** (n) the head servant of a household.

Origin: L *major*, chief + *domus*, house

The child was very fond of Nathu, his family’s gardener-cum-**major domo**.

When the old man woke up after a night of heavy drinking, his **major-domo** came to inform him that a visitor, a nervous young man, was waiting since an hour and seemed very anxious to meet him.

Dem-2: **domain**¹⁰⁹⁴, **dominion**¹⁰⁹⁵, dominate, **domineer**¹⁰⁹⁶

Dem-3: **donna**¹⁰⁹⁷, **dungeon**¹⁰⁹⁸, madam, mademoiselle, **despot**¹⁰⁹⁹

There is a **hierarchy** in every house. There will be a lord and there will be those who are lorded over. We have already seen the words related with 'lord of the house.' Let us now look lower in the power ladder.

Consider the word 'domestic.' It simply means 'related with house,' as in 'domestic duties.' But, when you 'domesticate' somebody, say, an animal, you force him to stay within the house though he may have preferred roaming freely in the wilds. There are many *dem-* words which carry this sense of 'taming, using force to constrain.'

The Sanskrit word *daman* means suppression, **subjugation**. *Damit* is the one who is suppressed or subjugated. A rope that is used to **tether**¹¹⁰⁰ the cattle is called *daam* or *daamni*. Lord Krishna is also known as *Daamodar* because in his childhood, his **foster**-mother Yashoda had unsuccessfully tried to tie his hands with a rope as a punishment for his

¹⁰⁹⁴ **Domain:** (n) territory under rule; field.

Origin: L *dominus*, master of a household

- ☐ **domain** of arts, the **domain** of Pakistan, the **domain** of the housewife.

¹⁰⁹⁵ **Dominion:** (n) rule; power of ruling; a territory under rule.

Origin: L *dominus*, master of a household

- ☐ India was a **dominion** of the British.
- ☐ The British had **dominion** over India.
- ☐ In British India, the state of Hyderabad was known as the **Dominion** of His **Exalted** Highness, the Nizam.

¹⁰⁹⁶ **Domineer:** (v) to rule in a dictatorial fashion; to dominate.

Origin: L *dominus*, ruler

- ☐ In all animal species, the strong **domineer** over the weak.
- ☐ The central peak of the island **domineered** over the neighbouring hills.
- ☐ Rita's mother-in-law totally **domineered** over her. She could not even breathe without first taking the old **hag**'s permission.

Hag: (n) a witch-like old woman.

¹⁰⁹⁷ **Donna:** (n) Italian title meaning 'Lady' prefixed to a woman's name in order to show her respect.

Origin: L *domina*, lady of the house

- ☐ The name Madonna literally means 'my lady.'

A related word is **Prima Donna**.

Prima Donna: (n) the lead female singer of an opera; a person who acts like the star singer of an opera and becomes furious if somebody does not treat him like a star.

Origin: L *prima*, first + *donna*, lady

- ☐ The IIT students claim **prima donna** status in India.
- ☐ "Why do you go off by yourself like a **prima donna**?" The father asked his son. "Come and sit with our guests!"

¹⁰⁹⁸ **Dungeon:** (n) a dark prison, usually underground.

Origin: L *dominus*, master -> *domnion*, master's tower in a castle -> Fr. *donjon*, prison underneath a castle tower

- ☐ To the clerk, his ill-lit, ill-ventilated, musty office, cramped with age-eaten files, seemed no better than a **dungeon**.
- ☐ The prisoner was taken down dark, winding stairs to the bottom of the castle and fastened in a **dungeon**, with a great chain on his legs and with rats for company.

¹⁰⁹⁹ **Despot:** (n) a ruler with unlimited power, a dictator.

Origin: Gk *dems-pot* from *demos*, house + *potis*, lord

- ☐ There are two kinds of government—the **despotic** and the democratic.
- ☐ He was **despotic** and ready for any violence to get his way.
- ☐ The businessman ruled his family like a **despot**; his family members were just supposed to quietly bow their heads to everything he said; they dared not squeak before him because he would immediately threaten to cut their allowance or throw them out of 'his' house.

Note that **despot** has parallel etymology to the Sanskrit word *dampati*.

¹¹⁰⁰ **Tether:** (v) to tie with a rope; (n) such a rope.

- ☐ The sun was hot, so he sought the shelter of a nearby tree, where he **tethered** his horse, and sat down upon the ground to smoke.
- ☐ The runner started off at a pace which soon brought him to the end of his **tether**, and from that point merely dragged himself to the finishing line.
- ☐ She had borne the torture in silence for a long time, but now she had come to the end of her **tether**.

naughtiness. The rope fell a few inches short. She brought out more rope from inside and attached it to the previous rope but this time too, it fell just a little short. This kept happening and she gave up in the end.

The English word tame itself is from the root *dem-*. The other words in the ‘taming’ sense of *dem-* are:

*Dem-5: adamant*¹¹⁰¹, *indomitable*¹¹⁰²

*Dem-6: daunt*¹¹⁰³, *dauntless*¹¹⁰⁴

Indu told Meer that she too would observe the fast of Ramadan. Touched, the Muslim husband stroked his Hindu wife’s hair and told her that she need not to; it was very difficult; one had to fast from dawn to dusk and that too for 30 days; he would observe it on behalf of both of them.

“Do you think difficulties can **daunt** me?” Indu asked mischievously.

“Oh no, how can I!” Meer laughed. “I know how **dauntless** my little wife is. She can walk on fire, she can climb mountains, she can beat any *goonda* or her husband. My darling little wife is **dauntless**, indeed, and I am her poor, much **daunted** husband.”

¹¹⁰¹ **Adamant:** (adj) not changing one’s mind despite many requests, appeals or logical arguments; very hard to cut or break.

Origin: Gk *a-*, not + *daman*, to tame, conquer => ‘not tamed, not conquered’

- ❑ He was **adamant** in resisting his aunt’s suggestion that he ask her husband- his uncle- for a loan.
- ❑ He was **adamant** about going to the cave alone.

¹¹⁰² **Indomitable:** (adj) unconquerable

Origin: L *in-*, not + *domare*, to conquere + -able

- ❑ Strength does not come from physical capacity. It comes from an **indomitable** spirit.
- ❑ When the king had attacked and conquered eight kingdoms in a row, he began to think that he was **indomitable**.

¹¹⁰³ **Daunt:** (v) make afraid, become afraid.

Origin: L *domare*, to tame

- ❑ The weak-hearted easily get **daunted** by difficulties.

¹¹⁰⁴ **Dauntless:** (adj) fearless

Origin: **daunt** + less

Exercise

Granum, pekwa-, ed-, poi, bibere, gel-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. She took *an anodyne*.
(a) an appetite-increasing drug (b) an appetite-killing drug (c) a pain-reliever (d) a digestion-aiding drug (e) an eatable
2. *The habit of overeating* is sinful.
(a) glutting (b) gluttony (c) deglutition (d) Being a polyglot (e) Gulling
3. He was *an indefatigable* worker.
(a) an always winning (b) a tireless (c) a fatigued (d) a useless worker (e) a regular worker
4. Children *take in* prejudices from the adults around them.
(a) imbibe (b) imbue (c) imbrue (d) gorge on (e) ingurgitate
5. She made many *delicious* dishes.
(a) delectable (b) dilettante (c) dabbling (d) decocted (e) concocted
6. The princess *was decollated*.
(a) was wearing a low-necked gown (b) was beheaded (c) was greatly praised (d) stood with bowed head (e) was short-necked
7. The bomb *exploded*.
(a) garnered energy (b) decocted (c) brandished (d) loomed (e) detonated
8. He was *so innocent and believing that anyone could trick him*.
(a) gulled (b) gullible (c) a gullet (d) a glutton (e) a glen
9. It was a *cooked up* story.
(a) precocious (b) concocted (c) decocted (d) comestible (e) prandial
10. Her *cooking* skills were great!
(a) comestible (b) prandial (c) eupeptic (d) culinary (e) decocting
11. She *exuded* confidence.
(a) was without (b) showed abundance of (c) showed off (d) sweated with (e) gathered
12. He was fed up of his *boring and routine* life.
(a) monotonous (b) unpalatable (c) disgorged (d) imbued (e) bibulous
13. The student *vomited* all the facts and figures that he had memorized, in the exam.
(a) gorged (b) ingurgitated (c) regurgitated (d) gulled (e) gluttoned

Answers:

- 1 . (c) 2 . (b) 3 . (b) 4 . (a) 5 . (a) 6 . (b) 7 . (e) 8 . (b) 9 . (b) 10 . (d) 11 . (b) 12 . (a) 13 . (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Drinkable: P_____
2. Delicate lace-like decoration done with fine wires of silver, gold or other metals: F_____
3. A water channel or ditch cut in the ground by the force of water running violently fast: G_____
4. An extract obtained by boiling something in water: D_____
5. A small corner separated from a bigger room or hall by means of curtains or a wood partition etc.: A_____
6. Fond of drinking alcohol: B_____
7. One who knows many languages: P_____

8. A brick-lined oven used for baking, burning or drying something: K_____
9. Indigestion: D_____
10. One who knows many subjects: P_____
11. More mature than natural for a particular age: P_____
12. Specialized vocabulary which can be understood only by members of a particular group or profession: J_____
13. Storehouse of grains: G_____
14. A person who takes up an activity merely for the love of it, not to earn money or make a profession out of it: D_____
15. A drink having medicinal or magical properties: P_____

Answers:

potable, filigree, gully, decoction, alcove, bibulous, polyglot, kiln, dyspepsia, polymath, precocious, jargon, granary, dilettante, potion

Swad, sapere, odor, vestire, manere, weik-, dem-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The politician had *narrow-minded* views and wanted to send all the migrants from other states of India back to their home-states, saying that they took away job opportunities from the locals.
(a) ecumenical (b) menial (c) despotic (d) sapid (e) parochial
2. The book talked about *an old* saint.
(a) a parochial (b) a suave (c) a savvy (d) an insipid (e) a hoary
3. The darkness *made her afraid*.
(a) domineered over her (b) was despotic (c) was rampant (d) daunted her (e) was immanent
4. Everyone respected him for his *wisdom*.
(a) despotism (b) sagacity (c) travesty (d) dominion (e) divestiture
5. The story was *boring; it lacked spice*.
(a) savvy (b) dowdy (c) insipid (d) a travesty (e) hoary
6. Corruption was *widespread* in all departments of the government.
(a) parochial (b) adamant (c) domineering (d) rampant (e) dauntless
7. She *soothed* his pain with her words.
(a) assuaged (b) made suave (c) belied (d) dissuaded (e) daunted
8. The kitchen *smelled of* roasted meat.
(a) was redolent of (b) was odoriferous with (c) was malodorous due to (d) savoured (e) was sapid with
9. The politicians made a complete *mockery* of the rules.
(a) sagacity (b) travesty (c) major-domo (d) dungeon (e) menagerie
10. He did many *menial* jobs.
(a) house-based (b) lowly (c) corrupt (d) neighbourhood (e) masterly
11. There was a *flood* of complaints against the police inspector.
(a) a parish (b) a menage (c) an immanence (d) a spate (e) a dwelling
12. India is *an ecumenical society*.
(a) a highly populated (b) a society with a high density of constructed space (c) a narrow-minded society (d) a society of many religions (e) a close-knit society
13. He was a *politician who understood politics well*.
(a) a savvy politician (b) a despotic politician (c) a major-domo (d) a parochial politician (e) an adamant politician

14. The horse was *tied with a rope* to a tree.
(a) daunted with (b) belied with (c) tethered to (d) in the vicinity of (e) was adamant about

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (e) 3. (d) 4. (b) 5. (c) 6. (d) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (b) 11. (d) 12. (d) 13. (a) 14. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A witch-like old woman: H _____
2. A man of great wisdom: S _____
3. A collection of wild animals: M _____
4. Unconquerable: I _____
5. Neighbourhood: V _____
6. Bad-smelling: M _____
7. The act of stripping somebody of his rank or property rights: D _____
8. That which carries a smell: O _____
9. Belief that self-pleasure and happiness is the greatest goal of life: H _____
10. A territory under rule: D _____
11. A luxury boat: Y _____
12. A dark, underground prison: D _____

Answers:

hag, savant/sage, menagerie, indomitable, vicinity, malodorous, divestiture, odoriferous, hedonism, dominion, yacht, dungeon

ALL WORK AND NO PLAY

Greek *ergon* **work**

‘Work’ itself is a cousin of *ergon* (just put a ‘w’ before *ergon* and you can see the similarity). One of the units of work that we learnt at school was ‘erg’. Did you ever notice then that the word ‘energy’ too carries an ‘erg’ within it? Energy is formed from *en-*, meaning ‘in’, and *ergon*, and therefore means ‘the state of doing work’. From ‘doing work’ to ‘the ability to do work’ was just a small extension of meaning.

The Sanskrit word for energy is *urja*. Obviously, it too is a cousin of *ergon*.

Ergon is also found in ‘allergy’. It is formed from *allos*, other, and *ergon*. The word is used to denote ‘the other’, the out of the ordinary, effect that normally harmless things—like dust or pollen or nuts—work on some people.

The male name ‘George’ means ‘the one who works the earth’, hence a farmer. It is formed from the Greek *ge*, earth, plus *ergon*.

In 1894, Baron Rayleigh and Sir William Ramsay discovered a gas that seemed to do no work, that is, it showed no chemical activity. So, they named it ‘Argon’, from *a-*, without, + *ergon*.

The other words from this root are:

Ergon-1: **Ergonomics**¹¹⁰⁵, **metallurgy**¹¹⁰⁶, **synergy**¹¹⁰⁷

¹¹⁰⁵ **Ergonomics**: (n) the applied science which deals with designing the work equipment and the workplace in such a manner that the workers’ productivity is maximized and his **fatigue**, minimized.

Origin: Gk *ergon*, work + *nemein*, to manage

- ❑ In the 19th century, Frederick Taylor found that reducing the size and weight of coal shovels increased the amount of coal which the workers could shovel per unit time. He then worked out the size and the weight of coal shovels which gave the highest shoveling rate. Design of such shovels is an example of **ergonomics**.
- ❑ **Ergonomic** chairs are very useful for people who work long hours in a sitting position. These chairs give proper support to the spine and help prevent backache.

¹¹⁰⁶ **Metallurgy**: (n) science that deals with separation of metals from their ores and with creating useful objects from metals.

Origin: Gk *metallon*, metal + *ergon*, work => ‘metal-work’

¹¹⁰⁷ **Synergy**: (n) cooperative action of two forces or things such that the combined effect is greater than the sum of their individual effects

Origin: Gk *syn-*, together + *ergon*, to work

- ❑ “Our clothes offer a **synergy** of value and style,” the designer claimed.
- ❑ The **synergy** of the tabla, the sitar and the singer’s wonderful voice enchanted the audience.
- ❑ The **synergy** of the group was inspiring. Together, the group members came up with ideas that none of them could have thought of individually.

Ergon-2: **urge**¹¹⁰⁸, **liturgy**¹¹⁰⁹, **orgy**¹¹¹⁰

Latin **labour** **work**

Apart from 'labour' and 'labourers', the other words from this root are: **labourious**¹¹¹¹, **elaborate**¹¹¹², **collaborate**¹¹¹³ and **belabour**¹¹¹⁴.

Latin **opus** **work**

Due to its large scale and **grandeur**¹¹¹⁵, many people said that the movie *Devdas* was the magnum opus of Sanjay Leela Bhansali. 'Magnum opus' means 'a creator's greatest work'. There is another phrase- 'Opus Magnum'- which simply means 'a great work.'

To 'operate' something simply means to work it, and to 'cooperate' is to work together. The other words from this root are:

¹¹⁰⁸ **Urge:** (v) to push or drive towards something.

Origin: Gk *ergon*, work -> L *urgere*, to push, drive

- He was **urged** by his poverty to leave his studies and take up the first job that he could find.
- He **urged** his friend to take better care of herself.
- His hunger **urged** him to steal.

¹¹⁰⁹ **Liturgy:** (n) public worship.

Origin: Gk *laos*, people + *ergon*, work

- The music related to any religion can be divided into two categories—**liturgical** and non-**liturgical**. If we take Islam as an example, then **liturgical** music would include Arabic verses chanted or performed in assemblies or on Muslim festivals. Non-**liturgical** music, in this case, would be the local songs about the Prophet or some Muslim heroes or landmark historic events. The *qawwali* is an example of Muslim non-**liturgical** music in India. It is associated with the Chishti movement of the Sufis in the thirteenth century.

Another word from the root *laos* is **laity**.

Laity: (n) the common people; the ordinary followers of a religion, as opposed to the clergy—the priests—of that religion.

¹¹¹⁰ **Orgy:** (n) a wild, drunken, unrestrained party; any wild, unrestrained activity.

Origin: Gk *ergon*, work

- orgy** of shopping, **orgy** of eating, **orgy** of violence
- The police caught three women having an **orgy** with nine men.

¹¹¹¹ **Laborious:** (adj) requiring lot of work, requiring extreme attention to detail, showing excessive work and lack of natural spontaneity.

Origin: L *labor*, labour

- Writing a book is a **labourious** task. It requires **labourious** research.
- A **labourious** poem is that which is very heavy on the mind and does not seem at all natural.

¹¹¹² **Elaborate:** (v) to work out in details; to add details to.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *labour*, to work => 'to work out'

- "I don't talk to people like you," Shreya tossed her head and turned away from Sumit. "Wait a minute," Sumit said, turning her around to face him. "Will you please **elaborate** what you meant by 'people like me'?"

¹¹¹³ **Collaborate:** (v) to work together.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *labour*, to work

- The Indian Home Minister told his Pakistani counterpart that peaceful **collaboration** will give Pakistan great benefits by throwing open the vast and rapidly growing Indian market.
- Gulzar and Jagjit Singh **collaborated** to produce a music album.

¹¹¹⁴ **Belabour:** (v) to beat; to work at or talk about something to a frustrating excess.

Origin: L *be-* + *labour*

- In the old days, husbands used to **belabour** their wives with sticks at the slightest indiscipline.
- He **belaboured** his regret till one of his frustrated friends said, "It's all right, Sangeet. We've understood how sorry you are."

¹¹¹⁵ **Grandeur:** (n) state of being grand or magnificent

Origin: L *grandis*, great

- Sanjay Leela Bhansali's *Devdas* is worth-watching for the **grandeur** of its sets. Another movie famous for its **grandeur** is *Mughal-e-Azam*.
- The **grandeur** of the snow-covered mountains all around him dazzled him. He felt like a small, insignificant dot in that vast landscape.

*Opus-1: Opera*¹¹¹⁶, *operose*¹¹¹⁷, *opulent*¹¹¹⁸

*Opus-2: copious*¹¹¹⁹, *cornucopia*¹¹²⁰, *optimum*¹¹²¹, *optimism*¹¹²²

*Opus-3: oeuvre*¹¹²³, *manoeuvre*¹¹²⁴, *inure*¹¹²⁵

¹¹¹⁶ **Opera:** (n) a musical drama which tells its story through songs.

Origin: L *opus*, a work

¹¹¹⁷ **Operose:** (adj) requiring a lot of work; hard-working.

Origin: L *opus*, work

☐ A calculator can perform **operose** calculations in microseconds.

¹¹¹⁸ **Opulent:** (adj) very rich.

Origin: L *opus*, work -> *ops*, wealth -> *opulentus*. The etymology of the word **opulent** is a proof that wealth stems from hard work.

☐ The film director Sanjay Leela Bhansali built **opulent** sets to shoot his movie *Devdas*.

¹¹¹⁹ **Copious:** (adj) large in quantity, abundant.

Origin: L *co-*, with + *ops*, wealth => 'with wealth' => 'with abundant resources'

☐ The widow earned everybody's sympathy by shedding **copious** tears over her husband's dead body. Even the police officers started doubting their belief that she had killed him.

☐ Bengaluru is blessed with **copious** rainfall.

☐ The teacher told the students that she did not want them to make **copious** notes of her lectures and that she would be happier if they focused on understanding what she taught.

The word 'copy' is derived from '**copious**.' To copy means 'to make **copious**' by making many imitations of the work.

¹¹²⁰ **Cornucopia:** (n) a mythological horn of a goat which became filled with whatever foods or drinks its owner wished; an overflowing source.

Origin: L *cornu*, horn + *copiae*, **copious** => 'a horn that gives **copious** supply of something'

☐ What child has ever lived who did not believe that his grandpa's pocket was a **cornucopia** for all his desires, that whatever he wished would not come out of that pocket?

☐ Many people see Mumbai as a **cornucopia**, a city that satisfies every wish.

¹¹²¹ **Optimum:** (adj) the best or the most favourable conditions (for growth, etc.).

Origin: L *ops*, wealth -> *optimus*, wealthiest -> *optimus*, best

☐ 37 degree Celsius is the **optimum** temperature for the growth of the bacteria *Escherichia coli*.

☐ Allocating too few resources to a project creates deficiencies, allocating too many leads to wastage and under-utilization. That is why, **optimum** resource distribution is very important.

¹¹²² **Optimism:** (n) the confident belief that everything that happens is for the good.

Origin: related with **optimum**.

☐ "Do not worry," Shailesh confidently told all his friends. "We will all pass." They all knew how badly each one of them had done in the exam. One of them asked, "May we know the basis of your **optimism**?"

☐ An **optimist** believes that everything that happens is for the good.

¹¹²³ **Oeuvre:** (n) the total work of a creative artist; any individual work of a creative artist.

Origin: L *opus*, work -> Fr *oeuvre*, work

☐ The **oeuvre** of film director Sanjay Leela Bhansali includes sensitive films like *Khamoshi* and *Black*.

☐ The **oeuvre** of the celebrated writer Vikram Seth spans different **genres**, from travel writing to novel-in-verse to poetry to novel.

¹¹²⁴ **Manoeuvre:** (n) a skillful move, especially to change direction; a well-planned movement of troops and military equipment; (v) making such moves.

Origin: L *manus*, hand + *operari*, to work -> Fr *maneuver*, to work by hand => 'to handle skillfully'

☐ For a new driver, the most difficult **manoeuvre** is to take a U-turn.

☐ It is the job of a ship captain to **manoeuvre** his vessel through icebergs, fog or storms.

¹¹²⁵ **Inure:** (v) to become used to; harden; to give benefit to.

Origin: *in*, in + Fr *oeuvre*, work => 'in use'

☐ The high frequency of corruption cases in our country has **inured** us and we are less shocked each time we hear about a new scam.

☐ "How do you people live here?" The tourist asked his local guide. He lived in the plains and was shivering badly in the sub-zero temperature of the high mountains despite wearing many layers of warm clothes. His guide smiled and said, "Sir, we become **inured** to the cold."

☐ The Supreme Court directed the government to make sure that the food subsidy scheme did actually **inure** to the poor people for whom it was meant.

Latin *fungi* **to perform**

The root *fungi* means ‘to perform or execute something.’ The most common word from this root is ‘function.’ The other words from *fungi* are: **defunct**¹¹²⁶, **dysfunctional**¹¹²⁷ and **perfunctory**¹¹²⁸.

Latin *facere* **to make**

The one who makes is called a *factor* in Latin. The place where ‘factors’ (makers) of goods assemble is called a ‘factory.’ 2 and 3 are the ‘factors’ of 6. This means, that 2 and 3 are the numbers which upon multiplication make 6.

When we say that its great music was only one of the ‘factors’ in the success of *Hum Aapke Hain Kaun*, we mean that it was only one of the makers of the movie’s success; there were other factors too.

Sayontan’s idleness was the greatest factor in his mother’s decision to send him—her only child and hope—to America. He flatly refused and, when she tried to convince him, exploded.

“Oh ma!” he shouted angrily, “Will you *please* be quiet? Oh, why did that Arjun have to come at all? I know what you are thinking right now; that if Arjun had been your son, he would not have shouted at you like that; aren’t you? Well, for the record my dear mother, I am sorry to say but I am not that **factitiously**¹¹²⁹ polite Arjun. I cannot **affect**¹¹³⁰ politeness when I am angry, just in order to impress somebody. Sorry I cannot. I cannot flash the **superficial**¹¹³¹ smiles that guy flashes all the time. ‘Oh dear masi,’ ‘My dear masi,’ ‘May I, masi?’ ‘For you, masi.’ Hah! He sure knows how to impress his masi. I bet he would do cartwheels of joy when he sees his masi trying to make her son to be like

¹¹²⁶ **Defunct:** (adj) no longer functioning; no longer in use.

Origin: L *de-*, off + *fungi*, to perform => ‘off-duty’

❑ The kidnappers kept the child in a **defunct** textile mill.

¹¹²⁷ **Dysfunctional:** (adj) not functioning properly.

Origin: L *dys-*, bad + *fungi*, to perform => ‘performing badly’

❑ The doctors removed a **dysfunctional** kidney of the patient.

❑ He sought divorce as a way out of his **dysfunctional** marriage.

¹¹²⁸ **Perfunctory:** (adj) done merely out of duty; done without interest or enthusiasm.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *fungi*, to perform => ‘to just perform through somehow’

❑ The teacher gave a **perfunctory** lecture and, in the end, she asked **perfunctorily**, “Did you all understand?” The students, most of whom had slept through the class, replied with an equally **perfunctory** “Y-e-s m-a-a-m” because they didn’t want to prolong their torture by asking doubts from the teacher.

¹¹²⁹ **Factitious:** (adj) artificial, not real.

Origin: L *facere*, to make => ‘made up’

❑ Leela had learnt to distinguish between real and **factitious** love.

❑ **Factitious** laughter, **factitious** story

¹¹³⁰ **Affected:** (v) to pretend, to like.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *facere*, to do

❑ He **affected** to **affect** Hindu principles, and delighted in discussing them. His wife, however, could not persuade herself that he really believed in them.

¹¹³¹ **Superficial:** (adj) on or near the surface; just outward; not deep.

Origin: L *super*, over + *facies*, face => ‘over the face’ => ‘at the surface’

❑ Last minute study before an exam is always **superficial**. One just cannot afford to waste time thinking about the hows and the whys at that time. Such **superficial** knowledge also evaporates quickly.

❑ A friend in need is a friend indeed. **Superficial** friendships never survive the test of tough times.

her **pluperfect**¹¹³² nephew. '**Beguiling**¹¹³³ masi was **facile!**¹¹³⁴ He would **gloat**. But I am not his masi and I am not charmed. I do not trust that guy. Yes, I do not; do not look at me like that.

You are thinking that I am jealous, aren't you? Ma, it's not jealousy but suspicion. Remember Aladdin? Our little story is getting to be uncomfortably similar to his. Only that he was poor and we are rich and that complicates matters further. Tell me, why had Aladdin's uncle showed such **solicitude** for him and proposed to help him? His mother had thought the reason was **avuncular**¹¹³⁵ love, but tell me, what was it actually? The magician needed someone to go into the magic cave and by doing a little show of love to Aladdin, he got him easily. Once his purpose was served, he simply left Aladdin to **languish**¹¹³⁶ in the cave. Now tell me, is your Arjun not just as **officious**¹¹³⁷ as Aladdin's uncle? Why is he so eager to help us? We never asked him to! He comes out of nowhere, bearing **sumptuous** gifts and tears in eyes. Then, almost immediately he starts offering to send me to America and you go gaga over how caring your just rediscovered nephew is! If America is as cool and **beatific**¹¹³⁸ as he says, then why did he himself leave it and come to the **sudorific**¹¹³⁹ heat out here? He or his mother did not even talk to us all these years. His mother still hasn't talked to

¹¹³² **Pluperfect**: (adj) more than perfect.

Origin: L *plus*, more + *per-*, through + *facere*, to do => 'more than done thoroughly' => 'more than perfect'

☐ In English grammar, the past perfect tense is also known as the **pluperfect** tense

¹¹³³ **Beguile**: (v) to cheat, mislead.

Origin: be- + **guile**

☐ His family **beguiled** him into marriage with assurances of how wonderful it was to have a loving someone by one's side through all the ups and downs of life.

☐ He introduced himself as the priest of a church in a nearby village and acted so well that he **beguiled** even the cleverest people into giving him money. He told them that he would use their money to organize a medical camp in his village. No one ever suspected his **guiles**.

Guile: (n) a clever trick used to cheat or make someone do what you want.

¹¹³⁴ **Facile**: (adj) easy; moving or working with ease.

Origin: L *facere*, to make -> *facilis*, easy to make. The opposite of **facile** is 'difficult', both meaning-wise and etymologically. Here is the etymology of 'difficult':

L *dis-*, not + *facilis*, easy-> *difficilis*, not easy

☐ The teacher had the talent to make the most complicated concepts appear clear and **facile** to their understanding.

☐ The poetry written in Sanskrit is not **facile** to most young Indians today.

☐ Shami found it disgusting to think that his wife had always lied to him in such a **facile**, heartless way.

¹¹³⁵ **Avuncular**: (adj) related with uncle.

Origin: L *avunculus*, mother's brother. The word 'uncle' itself is from this root.

☐ Shomit was much closer to his maternal uncle than to his parents. So, whenever he was distressed by life's problems, he sought **avuncular** advice.

¹¹³⁶ **Languish**: (v) to lose energy and **droop**; to suffer prolonged misery or neglect.

☐ Banke Bihari **languished** in jail for 16 years awaiting trial. If the court had heard his case immediately upon his arrest, then even if he had been found guilty, the maximum sentence he would have got would have been of two years.

¹¹³⁷ **Officious**: (adj) overly eager to offer one's services, so much that the person to whom such services are offered becomes annoyed.

Origin: from 'office'. The etymology of 'office' is as under:

L *opus*, work + *facere*, to do => 'work one has to do' => 'duty, service.'

☐ 'Who was the gentleman you were dancing with,' Mrs Kundra asked her daughter-in-law as they were returning from a wedding party, 'who was later so **officious** in helping you with your sprained foot?'

☐ A good helper is never **officious**; he offers his services only when asked for.

¹¹³⁸ **Beatific**: (adj) producing bliss or happiness.

Origin: L *beatus*, happy + *facere*, to make

☐ "Your smile is **beatific**. All my tensions evaporate when I see it and a calm confidence comes over. I feel that all is well in the world when I see you smiling." The man thought as he watched his sleeping little daughter.

☐ The gods are often painted with a **beatific** smile on their faces.

¹¹³⁹ **Sudorific**: (adj) sweat producing.

Origin: L *sudor*, sweat + *facere*, to make

☐ Sweat glands are also known as **sudorific** glands.

us. Why is *he* suddenly being so **munificent**? I am sure that this suddenly-discovered love for masi and her-son is an **artifice**¹¹⁴⁰ to make me go, so that you are left alone here—a rich, old woman, totally dependent on him. Now, isn't that a nice situation to be in? But I am not going to let his plans **fructify**¹¹⁴¹. I will not go. Try tears, try **fiat**¹¹⁴². I will not go."

Years ago, Arjun's mother and his masi had **wrangled**¹¹⁴³ over their father's property. There had been much bitterness; the matter had gone to court and each sister had vowed to die before looking at the other again. Arjun, who was only 12 then, had been much saddened by that **breach**¹¹⁴⁴; he had loved his masi very much. A few years later, Arjun's family had migrated to America and he had never heard of masi again.

When business prospects brought him back to Delhi for a year, the first thing he did was to visit masi and try to mend the broken bonds. His masi too took him in her arms. They observed one another; she was delighted, and he **dismayed**, by the changes they saw. His dear masi was now a widow and Sayontan had turned out to be a **feckless**¹¹⁴⁵ fellow who did nothing but live off his inheritance. Masi was much worried about Sayontan, he noticed. So, he offered to use his contacts to help Sayontan set up a business in America. Nobody can survive in America without working hard, he told his masi. That **rekindled** her hopes of seeing her son become serious about life and it was in that hopeful state that she had **broached**¹¹⁴⁶ the topic with her son.

- The body gives a **sudorific** reaction to fear.
- Drinking a **sudorific** herb tea produces sweat in the body; the hotter the tea, the more the sweat.

¹¹⁴⁰ **Artifice:** (n) a clever trick; cleverness; something created with a lot of skill and cleverness.

Origin: L *ars*, art + *facere*, to make => 'to make with art'

- Raavan brought Sita out of the Laxman Rekha by **artifice**.
- The Ramayana is written with a lot of **artifice**. Valmiki was a real genius to have told so complex a story so well.

¹¹⁴¹ **Fructify:** (v) to bear fruit.

Origin: L *fructus*, fruit + *facere*, to make

- At last, Kamal's years of hard work **fructified**. He got a top rank in the IAS entrance exam.
- Mango plants **fructify** in the summer months.

¹¹⁴² **Fiat:** (n) an authoritative order.

Origin: L *fiat*, let it be done

- The Karnataka state government enforced Kannada education in primary schools by **fiat**.
- The king's words were seen by his people as a **fiat** from God.
- The Khap panchayat ordered the couple to treat each other as brother and sister because they were from the same village. The couple, however, refused to obey the Panchayat's **fiat**.

¹¹⁴³ **Wrangle:** (v) to argue noisily; to obtain with a scheme.

- "I can't stand it when you **wrangle**," the mother told her kids in great frustration.
- The divorced husband and wife **wrangled** in the court for the custody of their child.
- India and Pakistan have been **wrangling** over

Kashmir for more than six decades now.

But make sure that 'The word *wegde*.'

- He **wrangled** an invite to the embassy dinner. The word '**wangle**' too could have been used in this sentence instead of '**wrangle**.' It too means 'to obtain with a scheme.'

¹¹⁴⁴ **Breach:** (n) a breakage.

Origin: related with 'break'

- Breach** of trust, **breach** of security, **breach** of the terms of a contract, **breach** of rules
- A major **breach** in the main water supply line flooded the eastern zone of the city.

¹¹⁴⁵ **Feckless:** (adj) irresponsible, ineffective.

Origin: effect + less

- At a time when foreigners were building up their presence in India, the rulers of most Indian states were **feckless** and did nothing more than spending their time drinking, enjoying music, dances and women and fighting each other.

¹¹⁴⁶ **Broach:** (v) to talk about for the first time; to draw a liquid by piercing a hole in its container; (n) a cutting tool used to create or enlarge holes.

- After exchanging pleasantries for around 10 minutes with his relatives, the host cleared his throat indicating that he was going to **broach** the subject of his daughter's marriage. He said, "Let us now talk about the issue that we have all gathered here for."
- The robber threw the owner of the house down on the floor and holding a thick iron rod in his hand, thundered, "Tell me where the keys of the safe are, or else this blow will **broach** your dearest blood!"

Sayontan did not know it but his **unseemly**¹¹⁴⁷ outburst had been too loud. Arjun, who had just entered the house, had heard the whole **harangue**¹¹⁴⁸. That his cousin should **vilify**¹¹⁴⁹ him like that was difficult to digest for the proud Arjun. He felt too humiliated, too angry to stay there one minute longer. He packed his bags and giving his surprised masi some quick excuse, left. How easily he used to tell his mother to forget the past and start talking to masi again! It was only now that he understood how **disaffecting**¹¹⁵⁰ hurtful words could be; he could well imagine that Sayontan's words would continue to **rankle**¹¹⁵¹ him even after years. He would not be able to talk nicely to Sayontan again, he knew; and so (his eyes filled up at the thought) with the only peacemaker too having given up, the **rancour**¹¹⁵² between the two families would **fester** forever. He had failed!

But he had not. Arjun's efforts did not prove **ineffectual**¹¹⁵³. Soon after he went, his masi called his mother and complimented her on her fine son. Awkwardly at first, the sisters started talking. Both felt as if a huge burden had lifted off

❑ The carpenter made a hole in the wood with a **broach**.

❑ Traditionally, beer was brewed in winter and then stored in air-tight **kegs** in a cold cellar. It would become fit for drinking by the following spring and then, the **kegs** were **broached**.

Keg: (n) a small barrel.

¹¹⁴⁷ **Unseemly:** (adj) inappropriate; that which does not look good.

Origin: un + **seemly**

Seemly: (adj) that which looks good; appropriate; attractive.

Origin: from 'seem' => 'that which seems good'

❑ A **seemly** appearance and a cheerful manner are necessary for an air hostess.

¹¹⁴⁸ **Harangue:** (n) a long, passionate speech; (v) to deliver such a speech.

❑ The old man addressed a long **harangue** to Jemmy about the worthlessness of his poems and stories.

❑ The landlady went upstairs to **harangue** her tenant who was hosting a **boisterous** drinking party.

❑ In the election rally, the politician **harangued** against his opponent's attempt to divide Hindus and Muslims.

¹¹⁴⁹ **Vilify:** (v) to speak ill about; to try to defame.

Origin: *α vilis*, cheap, inferior + *facere* to make => 'to make cheap'

❑ The Indian minister accused Pakistan of trying to **vilify** India in every forum or occasion, justified or not.

❑ The Chief Minister said that the Opposition parties were spreading half-truths and untruths about his government to **vilify** it.

❑ The writer was **vilified** all over India for the title and contents of his book, 'The Bullshit called India.'

¹¹⁵⁰ **Disaffect:** (v) to make one lose his **affection** and loyalty.

Origin: L *dis-* + 'affect', to inspire with affection

❑ The uncaring king, who spent all his time chasing women or pleasures, soon **disaffected** the people. His ministers warned him about the peoples' **disaffection** and tried to make him do something about it but he simply didn't bother. He did not mend his ways. One day, he increased the taxes yet once more. The popular **disaffection**, which had been **simmering** below the surface till then, boiled over into a violent uprising that day. An extremely angry flood of people, stretching for miles and miles, stormed into the king's palace that day and rested only after killing the king and all his sons and daughters.

Simmer: (v) to cook (food) in a liquid just below the boiling point; to be just below the point when one breaks out in anger or excitement

¹¹⁵¹ **Rankle:** (v) to continue to irritate, annoy or give pain.

❑ India's loss of the Football Cup to Pakistan by a hair's breadth—India was 1-0 to Pakistan for most of the match, till Pakistan scored a goal in the last minute and another in the extra time—continued to **rankle** Indian fans for quite some time.

❑ Abhi had promised to marry Sia but had run away on the wedding day, never to return. He turned up at her door 10 years later. "I am very sorry," he said. "The guilt of what I did to you has **rankled** in my heart all these years. It is as if I have a pus-filled painful wound in there. This wound has not let me live one day in peace since that day and I know it will continue to **fester** till I die."

¹¹⁵² **Rancour:** (n) **rankling** anger, bitterness or enmity.

❑ "Come," said the chief of one warring community to the other, "let us put aside all **rancour** and talk pleasantly."

❑ Sudhir's love for Shama was a great love, above jealousy. It not only held her happiness above his own, but the happiness and welfare of the man she loved, as well. He felt no **rancour** at all against Shashi for marrying Shama.

❑ Hundreds of innocent soldiers were sacrificed to the personal **rancour** of the two kings.

❑ There has been **rancour** between India and Pakistan right from Independence.

¹¹⁵³ **Ineffectual:** (adj) not effective.

Origin: in-, not + effectual, effective

❑ The state government's attempts to control poverty proved **ineffectual**.

❑ The fast bowlers proved **ineffectual** against the master batsman.

their hearts. The same day, Sayontan called Arjun, and with much **discomfiture**¹¹⁵⁴, apologized. Arjun was surprised at how easily he forgave his ‘little brother.’ The pair of sisters and the pair of brothers forgave and forgot. The phone calls ended with four beaming faces on two continents.

The other words from *facere* are:

Fac-fic-fec-feas-fy-1: **feasible**¹¹⁵⁵, **factotum**¹¹⁵⁶, **faculty**¹¹⁵⁷

Fac-fic-fec-feas-fy-2: **faction**¹¹⁵⁸, **factious**¹¹⁵⁹, **artifact**¹¹⁶⁰

¹¹⁵⁴ **Discomfiture**: (n) confusion, embarrassment; frustration of hopes

Origin: L *dis-* + *com-* + *facere*, to make => ‘to not make what was expected’

- “Oh, what a made-for-each-other couple! See, even their names match!” Fifteen-year-old Sumit’s friends teased him about Sumi. “Oh Shut up *yaar!*” Sumit flushed with **discomfiture**. “You say just anything. Someone will overhear.”
- Naureen was **discomfited** because the friend whom she had brought along to her aunt’s house was not making a good impression.
- “And the award of the Best Student of the Year goes to...” Hitesh got up from his seat with a smile as his enthusiastic friends patted him on the back. “...Yatin Chaudhary!” Hitesh was **discomfited**. Yatin? But his class teacher has told him that it was he, Hitesh, who had won the award!

¹¹⁵⁵ **Feasible**: (adj) doable, suitable.

Origin: L *facere*, to do

- The father said it was not **feasible** for him to arrange independent tuitions for each of his children.
- Johnny’s scheme for world peace is very interesting but hardly **feasible**.

¹¹⁵⁶ **Factotum**: (n) a servant who does all types of work in a house.

Origin: L *fac*, do + *totum*, everything

- The character Lalloo Prasad in the movie *Hum Aapke Hain Kaun* is a **factotum**. He cooks food, cleans utensils, cleans the house, brings groceries and does all other work he is asked to do.

¹¹⁵⁷ **Faculty**: (n) an ability; a department of a university; the staff of an educational institute.

Origin: L *facilis*, easy -> *facultas*, ability

- The management school of the Delhi University is known as ‘**Faculty** of Management Studies’ (FMS).
- When it started in 1922, Delhi University had just two **faculties**—Art and Science—and only 750 students.
- The mental **faculties** decline with age.
- A particular disability is often compensated by the superior functioning of another **faculty**. For example, blind people usually have much sharper senses of smell and sound.

¹¹⁵⁸ **Faction**: (n) a group within a larger group.

Origin: L *facere*, ‘to do or make (a class or party of people)’.

- There were many **factions** within the political party. The party leaders spent more time in fighting each other than in fighting the other parties.
- One **faction** in the government wanted that the state be divided on the basis of language while another opposed the idea.

¹¹⁵⁹ **Factious**: (adj) related with faction; promoting **factions**.

Origin: from **faction**

- The party could not win over the **factious** tendencies of its leaders. It slowly disintegrated.
- The government had a smooth time in office because of the **factious** nature of the Opposition.

¹¹⁶⁰ **Artifact**: (n) something which is man-made and not natural.

Origin: L *arte factum*, made with art => ‘not natural’

- The National Museum has numerous **artifacts** belonging to the Indus Valley civilization.
- Moradabad is famous for its brass **artifacts**.
- Seema opened a posh store that sold handcrafted decorative **artifacts** collected from all over India and abroad.

Fac-fic-fec-feas-fy-3: **efficacy**¹¹⁶¹, **putrefaction**¹¹⁶², **stupefy**¹¹⁶³

Fac-fic-fec-feas-fy-4: **refectory**¹¹⁶⁴, **surfeit**¹¹⁶⁵

Fac-fic-fec-feas-fy-5: **defection**¹¹⁶⁶, **edifice**¹¹⁶⁷, **edification**¹¹⁶⁸, **rarefy**¹¹⁶⁹

¹¹⁶¹ **Efficacy**: (n) effectiveness

Origin: from 'effect.'

- ❑ The pharmaceutical company conducted trials to evaluate the **efficacy** of the AIDS vaccine. Unfortunately, the vaccine's **efficacy** turned out to be low and short-lived.
- ❑ The bark of a dog which barks all the time loses its **efficacy**.

¹¹⁶² **Putrefaction**: (n) rotting

Origin: L *putrere*, to rot + *facere*, to make => 'to make rotten'

- ❑ Material that is subject to **putrefaction** is called **putrescible**. Human body is **putrescible**. Refrigeration of the dead body slows down the process of **putrefaction** and enables for it to be buried three days after death. Otherwise, the first stage of the dead body's decomposition occurs in the first two days after death. In this stage, the body becomes cold and stiff. The second stage is **Putrefaction** and this sets in after two days. Here, the body swells up, becomes greenish-blue and **emanates** a **putrid** odour. As the **putrefaction** advances, the colour of the body changes from green to brown to black.

Putrid: (adj) rotten

Origin: L *putrere*, to rot

¹¹⁶³ **Stupefy**: (n) to put into a **stupor**, to make the mind numb.

Origin: L *stupere*, to be numb + *facere*, to make

Stupor: (n) state of being incapable of sensing or understanding anything, mental numbness.

- ❑ Ali Baba had seen that the cave in front of him had opened when the dacoits had shouted 'Khulja Simsim.' The dacoits were long gone now and he felt tempted to get into the cave himself. "Khulja Simsim!" He nervously ordered and, the cave opened! He went inside and was **stupefied** to see mountains of gold and diamonds all around. His mind became numb at the sight of so much wealth.
- ❑ Tia had invited her friend Rahul to have dinner with her parents. In the middle of the meal, Tia cleared her throat and in a serious, shaking voice said, "Mama, Papa, I want to tell you something. Rahul is not my friend. We married in court this week." There was a **stupefied** silence. A spoonful of curd and a glass of water froze in mid-air as the old man and the woman who held them were paralyzed with shock.
- ❑ She lived in the **stupor** of drugs. Devdas spent his last years in the **stupor** of drink.

¹¹⁶⁴ **Refectory**: (n) dining hall

Origin: L *re-*, again + *facere*, to make => 'to make again' => 'to renew' => 'to reenergise by eating food'

- ❑ At five o' clock, the school was dismissed and all the students and the masters went to the **refectory** for tea.

¹¹⁶⁵ **Surfeit**: (n) excess

Origin: L *super*, over + *facere*, to do => 'to overdo'

- ❑ After the success of *Dilwale Dulhaniya Le Jayenge*, there was a **surfeit** of romantic movies featuring NRIs.
- ❑ There is a **surfeit** of mangoes in the market in summers.

¹¹⁶⁶ **Defection**: (n) the action of leaving a party or a country and going to another; (v): **defect**

Origin: L *de-* + *facere*, to do => 'to fail' => 'to leave'

- ❑ The king's army was weakened by the **defection** of his Lieutenant General to his enemy's side.
- ❑ Three months before the state elections, seven sitting MLAs of the Congress **defected** to the BJP.

¹¹⁶⁷ **Edifice**: (n) a large building; a large, complex structure.

Origin: L *aedes*, building + *facere*, to make => 'to build'

- ❑ The Akshardham Temple in Ahmedabad is a grand **edifice**, ten-stories high.
- ❑ The **edifice** of Modern Physics is built on the foundation of two theories- the Quantum Theory and the General Theory of Relativity.

¹¹⁶⁸ **Edify**: (v) to give moral or spiritual lesson.

Origin: L *aedes*, building + *facere*, to make => 'to build'

- ❑ The Ramayana not only entertains but also **edifies** its readers.
- ❑ The moral stories that we used to read in school were written for our **edification**.

¹¹⁶⁹ **Rarefy**: (v) to make rare; (adj) **rarefied**: belonging to a select group.

- ❑ One needs oxygen cylinders to survive in the **rarefied** atmosphere of Mountain Everest. The people who do manage to first reach the **summit** and then come back alive belong to a **rarefied** group.

Summit: (n) peak of a mountain.

Origin: L *summus*, highest

Fac-fic-fec-feas-fy-6: **ramify**¹¹⁷⁰, **ramification**¹¹⁷¹, **amplify**¹¹⁷², **qualify**¹¹⁷³

After something has been made, its final form or appearance is denoted by the Latin word *facies*. The English word face comes from this root, as do surface, **facet**¹¹⁷⁴, **façade**¹¹⁷⁵, **efface**¹¹⁷⁶ and **deface**¹¹⁷⁷.

¹¹⁷⁰ **Ramify**: (v) to branch out.

Origin: L *ramus*, branch + *facere*, to make

- ❑ The Intelligence Bureau reported to the Home Minister that the Naxals had **ramified** their network all over the country.
- ❑ Education in class 11 **ramifies** into three main streams—Science, Commerce and Humanities. The Science stream further **ramifies** into Medical and Non-Medical.

¹¹⁷¹ **Ramification**: (n) the act of branching out; a branch; a derived result, an implication or a consequence.

- ❑ Medical and Non-Medical are the two **ramifications** of the Science stream.
- ❑ The Green Revolution made India self-reliant in foodgrains. However, it had some unintended **ramifications** too.
- ❑ The wise always consider the **ramifications** of their intended actions before they set about to do something.

¹¹⁷² **Amplify**: (v) to make larger; to expand by adding details.

Origin: L *amplus*, large + *facere*, to make

- ❑ Speakers **amplify** the sound from a music player.
- ❑ The teacher **amplified** the theory, much beyond what was written in the book and by giving examples from the real world, till he was satisfied that each student had understood it.

Another word from the root *amplus* is **ample**.

Ample: (adj) more than sufficient.

- ❑ **Ample** food, **ample** money, **ample** leisure, **ample** excuses

¹¹⁷³ **Qualify**: (v) to limit, restrict; to give a characteristic of; to modify.

Origin: L *qualis*, quality + *facere*, to make => 'to give a quality of'

- ❑ "The **unqualified** truth is that I like you very much," Ratan told Sia breathlessly in one go. Sia stayed quiet for a minute. She then gave him a **qualified** answer. "I like you too, but only as a friend."
- ❑ Adjectives **qualify** nouns and adverbs **qualify** verbs.
- ❑ In the film *Ek Dije Ke Liye*, the families of the hero and the heroine give **qualified assent** to their desire to get married. They ask the couple to stay apart for a year with no contact or communication at all. If after one year, the boy and the girl are still in love, they promise to marry them gladly.

¹¹⁷⁴ **Facet**: (n) one of the many small, polished faces of a cut gem.

Origin: L *facies*, face -> Fr. *facette*, little face

- ❑ He is a multi-**faceted** personality—a businessman, an actor, a singer and a writer all rolled into one.
- ❑ He turned the jewel of memory, and **facet** by **facet** it dazzled him with its brilliant loveliness.

¹¹⁷⁵ **Façade**: (n) the front face of a building.

Origin: L *facies*, face

- ❑ The long, red-brick house had an impressive 24-window two storey **façade**.
- ❑ The Hawa Mahal in Jaipur is famous for its five-story red sandstone **façade**. This **façade** is lined with 953 small windows decorated with very fine lattice work. The ladies of the royal household used these windows to see the market street below without being seen themselves. Many people say that it is **erroneous** to call Hawa Mahal a palace because behind the impressive **façade** of the Hawa Mahal lies no building!
- ❑ Behind the **façade** of democracy, the President ruled like a dictator.

¹¹⁷⁶ **Efface**: (v) to erase, wipe out.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *facies*, face => 'to rub out a face'

- ❑ After breaking up with her boyfriend, she desperately tried to **efface** the permanent tattoo of his name on her arm.
- ❑ Devdas tried to **efface** all memories of Paro by washing them with alcohol.
- ❑ Most Indian women **efface** themselves after marriage and become merely the obedient, loyal shadows of their husbands and children.

¹¹⁷⁷ **Deface**: (v) to spoil the appearance of.

Origin: L *de-* + *facies*, face

- ❑ **Defacing** public property with **graffiti** is actually a form of **vandalism** and is punishable by law. However, we Indians **blatantly** deface the walls of our heritage sites and of our government and public buildings with ugly **graffiti** or film posters.

Latin *ingere* to shape

The fingers on our hand are not named after this Latin word. But they will make a good **mnemonic** to remember the meaning of this root, because we shape things with our fingers.

The words derived from this root are:

Fingere-1: **feign**¹¹⁷⁸, **unfeigned**¹¹⁷⁹, **feint**¹¹⁸⁰

Fingere-2: **fictitious**¹¹⁸¹, **figment**¹¹⁸², **effigy**¹¹⁸³

The final form that results from the shaping up process is called **figura** in Latin (say *ingere* with your nose tightly closed). The women who are worried about their 'figure' are worried about their shape; they want to stay in shape always. The following words too are about forms:

¹¹⁷⁸ **Feign**: (v) to pretend.

Origin: L *ingere*, to shape => 'to make a show of'

- ❑ The **truant** child **feigned** illness on the morning of the test to avoid going to school.
- ❑ The detective was convinced that the widow's tears were **feigned**.

¹¹⁷⁹ **Unfeigned**: (adj) real, genuine.

- ❑ The police inspector was convinced that the widow's tears were **unfeigned** and the murderer was someone else.

¹¹⁸⁰ **Feint**: (n) a false show.

Origin: from **feign**

- ❑ The detective was convinced that the widow's tears were a **feint** to deflect his suspicions from her.

¹¹⁸¹ **Fictitious**: (adj) not factual, made-up, false.

Origin: L *ingere*, to shape -> *fictus*, shaped, constructed. The word 'fiction' too is from this root.

- ❑ Movies and TV serials often carry this **disclaimer**: "This work is **fictitious** and any resemblance to any person dead or living is purely coincidental."
- ❑ The murderer escaped to a small village, far away from the city, and started living their under a **fictitious** name and told the villagers a **fictitious** story of his life.

¹¹⁸² **Figment**: (n) a product of imagination.

Origin: L *ingere*, to shape + *-ment* => 'something shaped'

- ❑ The mother came running into her son's bedroom upon hearing his violent cry in the middle of the night. She found him sitting on his bed, looking terribly afraid. She put her arms around him; he clung to her, shaking badly. "What happened, sweetie?" She asked in a soothing voice, stroking his back in a reassuring manner. "Mama, ghost!" The child exclaimed with terror. "There was a ghost in my room!" "There are no ghosts, sweetie," the mother coolly replied. "It was just a **figment** of your imagination. Weren't you watching that horror show before sleeping? That was why you saw the ghost in your dream."

¹¹⁸³ **Effigy**: (n) an image or a dummy of a person.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *ingere*, to shape => 'to shape a likeness to a person'

- ❑ The protesting citizens burnt an **effigy** of the state's chief minister.
- ❑ Every year on Dussehra, people burn an **effigy** of Ravana to **commemorate** the victory of good over evil.

Figurine¹¹⁸⁴, **figurative**¹¹⁸⁵, **transfigure**¹¹⁸⁶, **disfigure**¹¹⁸⁷

Latin *aptus* **fitted**

An 'apt' reply is that which fits well with the question. An 'aptitude' test checks whether you fit in a particular type of work or not. When an organism does not initially fit into an environment, but slowly makes itself well-fitted, he is said to have **adapted**¹¹⁸⁸.

The other words from *aptus* are: **adept**¹¹⁸⁹ and **inept**¹¹⁹⁰.

Latin *ornare* **to equip, decorate**

Indian weddings are all about the show. Invitations are sent out on **ornate**¹¹⁹¹ cards and spectacular venues are set up; the heavily **adorned**¹¹⁹² bride and groom are placed on **ornate** chairs fit for royalty on an **ornate** stage; suited men

¹¹⁸⁴ **Figurine:** (n) a small statue.

Origin: from **figure**

- ❑ Dancers often keep **figurines** of Shiva Nataraja with them.
- ❑ The old lady gifted a gold **figurine** of Lord Ganesha to her newly-wed grandson and his bride.

¹¹⁸⁵ **Figurative:** (adj) involving a figure of speech, representing by a figure or a symbol.

- ❑ Speech is of two types—literal and **figurative**. In literal speech, words convey their dictionary meanings. For example, 'grass is green.' But in **figurative** speech, words are used to represent ideas and images beyond their literal meanings. For example, 'he turned green upon seeing everyone praise his brother.' This sentence does not mean that the man's skin colour actually became green, but that he became jealous of his brother. Similarly, when one says 'the old man kicked the bucket,' he does not mean that the old man physically kicked a real bucket. This is an idiomatic way of saying 'the old man died.' **Metaphors**, similes, idioms, **parables** and **allegories** are examples of **figurative** speech.

They are also called **tropes**.

Trope: (n) a figure of speech, such as a **metaphor** or a **parable**, which uses words in their non-literal sense.

¹¹⁸⁶ **Transfigure:** (v) to change shape, transform.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *figura*, form

- ❑ Love is an intoxicant. It **transfigures** the world and all things start looking beautiful.
- ❑ There was a light in his eyes which **transfigured** his face to something superhuman and devilish. She turned away from him, shuddering.

¹¹⁸⁷ **Disfigure:** (v) to spoil the appearance of.

Origin: L *dis-* + *figura*, form

- ❑ The accidental fire in the laboratory **disfigured** her face and arms.
- ❑ The palace wall was **disfigured** by *paan* stains and charcoal **graffiti**.

¹¹⁸⁸ **Adapt:** (v) to adjust to given conditions.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *aptus* => 'to take towards being fitted'

¹¹⁸⁹ **Adept:** (adj) expert

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *aptus*, fitted => 'fitted to something' => 'well-suited to a particular task' => 'expert at it'

- ❑ Akbar proved **adept** at incorporating the various religious and linguistic traditions of his empire into the culture of his court.
- ❑ Mohammad Rafi was equally **adept** at singing slow songs like *Mere mehboob tujhe meri mohabbat ki qasam* as singing **boisterous** ones like *Yahoo, chahe koi mujhe junglee kahe*.

Boisterous: (adj) noisy

¹¹⁹⁰ **Inept:** (adj) totally lacking skill or ability, inappropriate.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *aptus* => 'not fitted' => 'ill-suited to a task'

- ❑ Seth Duni Chand was **inept** at handling money and the family sank deeper and deeper into debt.
- ❑ As a result of Seth Duni Chand's **ineptitude** with money, his family sank deeper and deeper into debt.

¹¹⁹¹ **Ornate:** (adj) highly decorated.

Origin: L *ornare*, to decorate

- ❑ The rooms of the palace were massive and **ornate**.

¹¹⁹² **Adorn:** (v) to decorate.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *ornare*, to decorate => 'to take towards being decorated'

- ❑ The bride was **adorned** with rich jewellery.

and women dripping with ornaments come onstage to bless the couple and do not forget to bring their shimmering gifts in focus when the photographer asks them to pose. That duty done, they drift away to the food stalls and have a week's worth of food.

That was also the scene at Sudhendra Chaudhary's daughter's wedding. He was smiling contentedly as he surveyed the proceedings. All was going well. Suddenly, his brow **furrowed**¹¹⁹³. Vinod Lal was onstage, handing over a big **glossy** gift pack to his daughter. He immediately rushed there. Lal was already down the stage by then. Chaudhary ji hurriedly took the gift from her daughter, told her that she could not accept it and **scurried**¹¹⁹⁴ towards Lal.

"What were you trying to do?" He asked the man heatedly. Lal smiled an oily smile, "Chaudhary ji, please do not be so angry. Your beautiful daughter is like a daughter to me too. I too wanted to bless her on her happy day. I want her to be happy." Lal then looked **balefully**¹¹⁹⁵ at the stage. "It would sadden me if her happiness does not last."

"Are you trying to threaten me? I will call the police. Try gifts, try threats, try whatever you can, you cannot **suborn**¹¹⁹⁶ me. Do you understand? Now, take your gift and leave! Immediately!" Lal left the gift on a table. As he saw the man go, dread snaked around Chaudhary ji's heart. What would that villain do to his family? Oh, why had he witnessed Lal murdering that man? Why had he not had the good sense to quietly **skulk**¹¹⁹⁷ away from the scene? He looked at his daughter. How happy she looked! May God guard her, he prayed with all his might.

Latin **rudis** **unformed, rough**

Look at *rudis*. What is the first word that comes to your mind from this root? Rude! 'Rude' behaviour is rough as are 'rude' hands or a 'rude' hut or a 'rude' calculation or a 'rude' idea.

Can you now guess the meaning of the words **rudimentary**¹¹⁹⁸ and **erudite**¹¹⁹⁹?

¹¹⁹³ **Furrow:** (v) to wrinkle one's face as if in anger or deep thought.

¹¹⁹⁴ **Scurry:** (v) to move hurriedly.

Origin: from the phrase hurry-scurry, which means 'a confused, hurried rush'

¹¹⁹⁵ **Baleful:** (adj) intending harm, showing harm.

¹¹⁹⁶ **Suborn:** (v) to motivate a witness to give false **testimony** in court by bribing him or using other means; to **induce** someone to do something illegal.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *ornare*, to equip => 'to equip under the table' => 'to bribe'

¹¹⁹⁷ **Skulk:** (v) to lie in hiding; to move secretly so that no one can notice.

¹¹⁹⁸ **Rudimentary:** (adj) related to basic facts; undeveloped.

Origin: L *rudis*, rough, unformed

☐ The woman had only a **rudimentary** knowledge of maths and so found it difficult to help her son in his homework.

Related word: **rudiments**

Rudiments: (n) the basic principles of a subject; the unformed first stage of something

☐ She knew only the **rudiments** of maths.

☐ The child picked up the **rudiments** of Kathakali from her mother who was a trained dancer.

¹¹⁹⁹ **Erudite:** (adj) learned, scholarly; (n) **erudition**.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *rudis*, unformed => 'to take out of the unformed state' => 'to teach' => 'a man who is well-taught'

☐ The professor published an **erudite** study on the morally grey areas in the Ramayana.

☐ Ravana was the most intelligent and **erudite** man of his times.

Latin *onus* load, burden

Onus¹²⁰⁰ is one of those Latin words that have travelled unchanged into English. It is also the (single) parent of the words **onerous**¹²⁰¹ and **exonerate**¹²⁰².

¹²⁰⁰ **Onus:** (n) burden, responsibility.

Origin: L *onus*

- ❑ The **onus** was on the accused to prove that he was not guilty.
- ❑ The **onus** of providing health care to all citizens of India is on the government.

¹²⁰¹ **Onerous:** (adj) burdensome

- ❑ There being a thousand students in the school, the job of the principal was a very **onerous** one.
- ❑ Directing a film is an **onerous** task.

¹²⁰² **Exonerate:** (v) to free from guilt or blame.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *onus*, burden => 'to unburden'

- ❑ Aina refused to **exonerate** her brother Samesh of the charge of murdering her cat. "If only you had not been so careless as to leave her alone in the house when she was so ill and go off doing your stupid work, my Cuds would have been alive today," she sobbed.
- ❑ The special investigation report **exonerated** the state government for its **culpability** in the communal **pogrom** which happened in the state three years ago.

Pogrom: (n) a well-planned large-scale massacre of a minority community often carried out with official approval.

Exercise

Ergon, labor, opus, fungi, aptus, ornare, rudis, onus:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. This novel stands out in the writer's *total work*.
(a) rudiments (b) erudition (c) onus (d) oeuvre (e) orgy
2. She was *an expert* sitar player.
(a) an adept (b) an adorned (c) an ornate (d) an erudite (e) an operose
3. The machine was *not functioning properly*.
(a) defunct (b) dysfunctional (c) manoeuvred (d) suborned (e) inept
4. She wore *very rich* jewels.
(a) elaborate (b) belabored (c) adorned (d) opulent (e) ornate
5. He *kept talking about his point to a frustrating excess*.
(a) collaborated his point (b) elaborated his point (c) belabored his point (d) skulked his point (e) urged his point
6. This region gets *abundant* rainfall.
(a) furrowed (b) onerous (c) ornate (d) boisterous (e) copious
7. The task *required a lot of painstaking effort*.
(a) was laborious (b) was erudite (c) was copious (d) was elaborate (e) was liturgical
8. People became *used to* bad governance.
(a) erudite (b) inured (c) operose (d) perfunctory (e) baleful
9. It was *a burdensome* task!
(a) a perfunctory (b) a copious (c) a belaboring (d) an onerous (e) a baleful
10. The school principal *freed* the child of stealing charges.
(a) urged (b) suborned (c) exonerated (d) optimised (e) inured
11. The crowd was *noisy*.
(a) boisterous (b) baleful (c) perfunctory (d) liturgical (e) synergistic

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (e) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (d) 10. (c) 11. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Belief that everything that happens is for the good: O_____
2. Public worship: L_____
3. Burden: O_____
4. Basic, undeveloped: R_____
5. The science which deals with designing the work equipment and the workplace in such a manner that the workers' productivity is maximised and his fatigue, minimised: E_____
6. To motivate a witness to give false testimony in court by bribing him or using other means: S_____
7. A well-planned large-scale massacre of a minority community often carried out with official approval: P_____
8. To move hurriedly: S_____
9. Cooperative action of two forces or things such that the combined effect is greater than the sum of their individual effects: S_____

10. Highly decorated: O _____
11. A mythological horn of a goat which became filled with whatever foods or drinks its owner wished: C _____
12. To move secretly so that no one can notice: S _____
13. Scholarly: E _____
14. The ordinary followers of a religion: L _____

Answers:

optimism, liturgy, onus, rudimentary, ergonomics, suborn, pogrom, scurry, synergy, ornate, cornucopia, skulk, erudite, laity

Facere, fingere:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

- There was *an excess* of water during the monsoons.
(a) an edifice (b) an amplification (c) a discomfiture (d) a summit (e) a surfeit
- The two children *argued noisily* about a toy car.
(a) discomfited (b) disaffected (c) were feckless (d) wrangled (e) were sudorific
- The cuckoo is quite *an irresponsible and careless* bird.
(a) an unseemly (b) an ineffectual (c) a factious (d) a vilified (e) a feckless
- He *spoke bad things* about her.
(a) disaffected (b) rankled (c) harangued (d) was officious (e) vilified
- He *pretended to be surprised*.
(a) was figuratively surprised (b) transfigured surprise (c) feigned surprise (d) disaffected surprise
- The soldiers *frustrated the hopes of* their enemies.
(a) discomfited (b) disaffected (c) made unseemly (d) affected (e) harangued
- He *misled* innocent people into investing in his scheme.
(a) fructified (b) beguiled (c) feigned (d) wrangled (e) languished
- The body of the dead dog *rotted*.
(a) rankled (b) putrefied (c) edified (d) defected (e) harangued
- He sued his employee for *breakage* of contract.
(a) fructification (b) fecklessness (c) discomfiture (d) broaching (e) breach
- The saint *gave moral lectures* to his audience.
(a) transfigured (b) presented a feint to (c) gave different facets of the truth to (d) edified (e) qualified morality for

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (d) 3. (e) 4. (e) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (e) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

- More than perfect: P _____
- A clever trick used to cheat someone: G _____
- The front face of a building: F _____
- A servant who does all types of work in a house: F _____
- Dining hall: R _____
- Something which is man-made and not natural: A _____
- The peak of a mountain: S _____

8. Inappropriate, not looking good: U_____
9. An authoritative order: F_____
10. To continue to pain or irritate over a long period of time: R_____
11. A dummy of a person: E_____
12. Related with uncle: A_____
13. A long, passionate speech: H_____
14. Overly eager to offer one's services: O_____
15. The act of leaving one's party and joining another: D_____

Answers:

pluperfect, guile, facade, factotum, refectory, artefact, summit, unseemly, fiat, rankle, effigy, avuncular, harangue, officious, defection

MOVING ABOUT

Latin *movere* **to move**

The word ‘move’ is obviously from this root. ‘Emotion’ is something that is capable of moving you. To ‘remove’ somebody from the limelight is to move him back. We all go to movies. A ‘movie’ is called so because it is made of moving pictures. That is why movies are also called ‘motion’ pictures.

The ‘mobile’ that we cannot live without is properly called a mobile telephone, that is, movable telephone. A car is an ‘automobile’, a self-moving machine. Unlike a rickshaw or a cart, you don’t need to push it or pull it.

To ‘promote’ somebody is to move him forward. A ‘motive’ is the moving force behind a man’s action. To ‘motivate’ somebody is to set him moving towards his goal.

The other words from this root are:

*Move re-I: mob*¹²⁰³, *momentous*¹²⁰⁴, *motif*¹²⁰⁵

¹²⁰³ **Mob:** (n) an uncontrolled, violent crowd.

Origin: from L *mobilis vulgas*, movable crowd of common people

- ❑ The **mob** set three buses on fire.

¹²⁰⁴ **Momentous:** (adj) of great importance.

Origin: L *movere*, to move + *-ment* + *-ous* => ‘capable of moving something’ => ‘having power’

- ❑ Einstein made **momentous** contributions to Physics.
- ❑ 15 August, 1947 was a **momentous** day in Indian history.

¹²⁰⁵ **Motif:** (n) a recurring theme of a literary or an artistic work; the dominant image in a design.

Origin: from ‘motive’ => ‘the idea or theme that moves a work of art’

- ❑ “Show me some bedsheets,” the customer said. “Sure ma’am. Which kind of **motifs** will you like- geometric or flowers or animals? Just today, we’ve got a breathtaking piece with peacock **motifs** all over. Will you like to see it?”
- ❑ The contrast between the Indian and the western culture was the **leitmotif** of the film.

Leitmotif: (n) the dominant theme of a literary or an artistic work; a musical theme associated with a specific character or situation.

Origin: German *leiten*, to lead + *motiv*, motif

Move re-2: **motility**¹²⁰⁶, **commotion**¹²⁰⁷, **remote**¹²⁰⁸

IE **ag-** **to drive, draw, move**

“Aage jao beta, bahut aage jaao tum!”

Ram’s father gave him his enthusiastic blessings when he touched his feet. The young man had returned home after giving his final exams in engineering. Sharma ji felt so proud of him! He had been an **exacting**¹²⁰⁹ father, had never been **lax**¹²¹⁰ on the question of discipline or studies and had dreamed of and demanded only the best for and from his son. And, Ram had more than lived up to his expectations; he had more than lived up to his name, his father smiled.

Two days later, police arrived at Sharma ji’s doorstep and told the **flustered** father that his son was being arrested for snatching the laptop, mobile and gold chain of a girl in the university and selling them. Sharma ji asked his servant to get Ram; the boy entered cheerfully but the moment he saw the policemen, became **timorous**¹²¹¹. His **trepidation**¹²¹² proved his guilt to his father. He gave him one tight slap, then slapped his own forehead with the same hand, then shook the boy, standing like a statue with his head bowed-down, and asked him in great **agitation**¹²¹³ that what had

¹²⁰⁶ **Motility:** (n) ability to move spontaneously.

Origin: L *motus*, motion

- ☐ Drinking warm water improves intestinal **motility** in constipated patients.
- ☐ Some bacteria have one or more **flagellum** which gives them **motility**. Non-**motile** bacteria lack this structure.

Flagellum: (n) a whip like **appendage** of certain unicellular organisms which helps them move.

Origin: L *flagrum*, whip.

To flagellate somebody is to beat him with a whip.

¹²⁰⁷ **Commotion:** (n) noisy disturbance.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *movere*, to move

- ☐ The students made a great **commotion** when the teacher announced at the end of his lecture that he was taking the following lecture as well because the concerned lecturer was on leave. “Ok now, silence!” he ordered but seeing no effect, **resolutely** kept relaying his theories which kept getting lost in the student’s **din**.

¹²⁰⁸ **Remote:** (adj) far away, far removed from all activity.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *motus*, motion => ‘to remove’

- ☐ The Superintendent of police came to his bedroom, changed his uniform, had a bath and went to sleep. Moments later, a bomb planted under his bed by gangsters was **remotely detonated**, killing him and destroying the room.
- ☐ Most of the citizen-welfare policies of the government fail to reach the **remote** areas, where they are needed the most.

¹²⁰⁹ **Exacting:** (adj) demanding exact adherence to all rules and instructions.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *agere*, to drive => ‘to drive out’

Related word: **exactitude**, the quality of being exact

- ☐ “What age are you?” Jiya asked her cousin. The boy became lost in thought for a minute and then said, “I am ten years, three months, four days and ten hours old.” Jiya was amused by his **exactitude**.

¹²¹⁰ **Lax:** (adj) relaxed, not strict, loose.

¹²¹¹ **Timorous:** (adj) one who becomes easily afraid.

Origin: L *timere*, to fear. **Timid too is from this root.**

- ☐ In the movie *Chaalbaz*, Anju and Manju are two twins with totally opposite personalities. While Manju is bold and aggressive, Anju is a **timorous** girl whose lips **quaver** with fear each time she says something or someone talks to her.

¹²¹² **Trepidation:** (n) fear, anxiety.

Opposite: **intrepid**, meaning ‘fearless’

- ☐ Bhagat Singh was an **intrepid** fighter for India’s independence.
- ☐ In *Mughal-e-Azam*, Anarkali is shown to be so **intrepid** that she dares to sing ‘*Jab pyaar kiya toh darna kya*’ before Akbar, the emperor of India!

¹²¹³ **Agitate:** (v) to move violently or with force; to upset.

Origin: L *agere*, to drive

- ☐ The students **agitated** to get their demands accepted by the university authorities.
- ☐ He was **agitated** by his failure to get the job that he had been confident of getting.

actuated¹²¹⁴ him to do such a **horrendous**¹²¹⁵ deed? His son accused of **larceny**!¹²¹⁶ “Bah!” he turned his face in disgust and then turned back and hit that **knave**¹²¹⁷ of his son once more.

The inspector stepped forward and told the facts that he had **gleaned**¹²¹⁸ from Ram’s friends and hostel mates. The boy had fallen into the company of **profligate**¹²¹⁹ sons of rich men and so his own allowance had started seeming **exiguous**¹²²⁰ to him. He took to borrowing money from his friends, and when they closed their doors, from his juniors and the juniors of his juniors. If any of them asked back for his money, he would **browbeat**¹²²¹ them into silence. However, one boy remained **intransigent**¹²²². He threatened to report the matter to the warden if his money was not returned. Ram feared that the warden may report the matters to his father and so tackled that **exigency**¹²²³ by stealing instead.

Sharma ji did not know what to say or do. This was his son! The son that he had thought would bring light to his old age had, instead, brought **litigation**¹²²⁴. His whole life’s hard work had gone waste, he thought with **dismay**¹²²⁵.

Some of the words done through the story above belong to the Latin root *agere*, which means ‘to do, drive, move.’ The other words from this root are:

¹²¹⁴ **Actuate:** (v) to motivate, to lead to an action.

Origin: L *agere*, to do -> *actus*, a thing done

¹²¹⁵ **Horrendous:** (adj) horrible

☐ The consequences of substance abuse are **horrendous** not only for the user, but also for the family. They are pained by the addict’s surrender of his dignity, the constant tension in the house saps their energy, the bank balance **depletes**, financial uncertainty **looms**, people stop visiting them and they feel unable to face people.

¹²¹⁶ **Larceny:** (n) theft

☐ He was a shameless fellow who committed **larceny** in his own uncle’s house.

¹²¹⁷ **Knave:** (n) an unprincipled, unreliable person.

¹²¹⁸ **Glean:** (v) to collect slowly, little by little.

¹²¹⁹ **Profligacy:** (n) wild wastage of money.

☐ His **profligacy** ultimately forced the Rai Bahadur to turn his residential *haveli* into a hotel.

¹²²⁰ **Exiguous:** (adj) very little.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *agere*, to draw => ‘to measure out and give the exact amount’ => ‘to give very little’

☐ Child labourers are paid **exiguous** wages.

¹²²¹ **Browbeat:** (v) to instil fear by giving angry looks or words.

Origin: brow + beat

☐ Elder brothers and sisters are experts at **browbeating** their younger siblings into obedience.

¹²²² **Intransigent:** (adj) refusing to compromise.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *trans-*, across + *agere*, to go => ‘not willing to go across’

☐ The management’s **intransigence** towards the genuine demands of the workers forced the workers to go on strike.

¹²²³ **Exigent:** (adj) urgent; demanding.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *agere*, to drive => ‘to drive out’ => ‘to demand’

☐ Under **exigent** circumstances, when the police officers must act quickly and cannot go to the court to seek permission, they are allowed to arrest a person without warrant.

☐ “I don’t wish to be **exigent**, Miss,” the stylish young man addressed the girl by whose seat in the train bogey he was passing. “...but if this is your trunk, it’s rather in the way here.”

¹²²⁴ **Litigation:** (n) law suit

Origin: L *lis*, law + *agere*, to go => ‘to go to law’

¹²²⁵ **Dismay:** (v) to disappoint; to destroy the courage by arousing doubt or fear.

☐ Sheenam was **dismayed** at her boyfriend’s silence when his parents demanded a huge dowry from her parents and said that otherwise they could not marry their boy to her.

Agere-1: Act, action, active, actor, **reactionary**¹²²⁶

Agere-2: **actuary**¹²²⁷, **agendum**¹²²⁸, **agile**¹²²⁹, **cogitate**¹²³⁰

Agere-3: essay, **assay**¹²³¹, **cogent**¹²³², **coagulate**¹²³³

¹²²⁶ **Reactionary:** (adj) opposing progress.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *actus*, motion

- ❑ A young Afghan woman **defied** the Taliban's **reactionary** ban on female education by holding secret classes at her house. A man in her neighbourhood reported her to the Taliban. They publicly stoned her for 'immorality'.

¹²²⁷ **Actuary:** (n) a statistician who evaluates how long a person will live and what is the risk to the insurance company in giving him insurance, etc.

Origin: L *agere*, to draw -> *acta*, accounts => 'one who studies accounts.'

- ❑ In India, one becomes an **actuary** by passing the examinations conducted by the Institute of **Actuaries** of India.

¹²²⁸ **Agendum:** (n) the to-do list.

Origin: L *agere*, to drive

- ❑ the **agenda** of a meeting

¹²²⁹ **Agile:** (adj) active

Origin: L *agere*, to do

- ❑ He amazed the gathering with his **agility**. Someone asked him what the product of pie (22/7) and square root of 29 was and he gave the answer within two seconds, before people had even managed to type in the multiplicants in their calculators. They were amazed when their calculators gave them the answer that he was correct, right to the ninth decimal place!
- ❑ The **agile** monkey jumped from one high branch to the other.
- ❑ The villain shot at the hero but the hero stepped aside with **agility** and half-a-second later, made an agile leap at the villain. Before the villain could understand what had happened within a second, the hero had thrown him to the ground and was **battering** his body.

¹²³⁰ **Cogitate:** (v) to think deeply; (n) **cogitation:** thought

Origin: L *co-*, + *agere*, to drive

- ❑ In Victor Hugo's short novel *The Last Day of A Condemned Man*, a man waiting for his execution writes down his **cogitations**, feelings and fears.

¹²³¹ **Assay:** (v) to analyse, assess, to assess the purity of a metal

Origin: from 'essay.' Etymology of essay:

L *ex-*, out + *agere*, to drive => 'to drive out' => 'to examine in detail.'

- ❑ The king had heard so much about the bravery of his chief minister's son that he was taken with a desire to **assay** the young man's strength.
- ❑ Gold is most commonly **assayed** by weighing a small sample accurately, melting it, separating the gold from the impurities in the molten state and then cooling the pure gold fraction and measuring it again.

¹²³² **Cogent:** (adj) logical, convincing.

Origin: L *co-* + *agere*, to drive => 'to drive together' => 'to collect, to compel' => 'compelling'

- ❑ "No. I am going. Can you give me one **cogent** reason why I should not?" demanded the husband when his wife asked him not to go for his out-of-the-city business conference that morning. The wife sheepishly said, "I saw a very bad dream today." "Well my dear, that is not a **cogent** reason why a man should not do his work," he smiled and left.
- ❑ The wife of the murdered man failed to give any **cogent** explanation for why one fourth of the dead body's left ear was missing. The servant who had discovered the dead body had seen the ear intact. But by the time the police arrived- fifteen minutes- later the ear lobe was **mutilated**. No one except the man's wife and the servant had been near the dead body in that duration.

¹²³³ **Coagulate:** (v) to curdle, to clot.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *agere*, to drive

- ❑ Cheese is produced by **coagulation** of milk.
- ❑ The clotting of blood at the site of an injury is also called **coagulation**.

Agere-4: **redact**¹²³⁴, **retroactive**¹²³⁵ and **squat**¹²³⁶.

‘Retroactive’ **amnesia** is a type of memory loss in which the patient forgets some or all of the events that happened before the accident. However, their memory of the life after the accident will be intact and they will also be able to acquire new memories. This is the kind of amnesia that is usually shown in Hindi movies.

The opposite of this is **anterograde**¹²³⁷ **amnesia**. In this type, the accident victim remembers his past but cannot form fresh memories. So, if he has a brother who got married after his accident, he will remember his brother but will have to be told who the woman by his side is each time he meets the couple. The movies *50 First Dates* and *Ghajini* are based on this condition.

The Latin root *agere* has a sister in the Greek *agein* which means ‘to drive, lead.’ The words from *agein* are:

Agony¹²³⁸, **synagogue**¹²³⁹, **antagonist**¹²⁴⁰, **protagonist**¹²⁴¹

The fifth word from the *agein* family is **stratagem**¹²⁴². Ravana kidnaps Sita through a **stratagem**. He makes a demon, Mareecha, assume the form of a golden deer and wander in front of the hut where Ram, Sita and Lakshman are living.

¹²³⁴ **Redact**: (v) to revise or edit.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *agere*, to drive => ‘to drive back’

- ☐ The Ramayana has been **redacted** many times since it was first written. Therefore, there exist many versions of the story.

¹²³⁵ **Retroactive**: (adj) effective from a past date.

Origin: L *retro-*, backward + *active*

- ☐ In July 2010, the factory’s management increased the wages of the workers by 10% with **retroactive** effect from May 1, 2010.
- ☐ The dam-affected villagers demanded **retroactive** compensation for the continued damage that the dam had done to their ecosystem and livelihood.

¹²³⁶ **Squat**: (v) to sit on one’s heels; (adj) short and thick.

- ☐ **Squatting** is a good exercise and helps tone the leg muscles.
- ☐ The teacher asked the naughty student to **squat** and hold his ears with arms taken from under his knees.
- ☐ The house sat **squat** in the wheat fields, nothing more than a plain square cube of cement.
- ☐ He was a short, **squat** man.

¹²³⁷ **Anterograde**: (adj) effective from the time the shock was received to the present.

Origin: L *ante-*, forward + *gradi*, to step => ‘to step forward’

¹²³⁸ **Agony**: (n) extreme mental or physical pain.

Origin: Gk *agein*, to drive -> *agon*, struggle

- ☐ An **Agony** Aunt is a trusted counsellor with whom you share your troubles and who then advises you on what to do.
- ☐ The Supreme Court ruled that a husband can seek divorce on the grounds that his wife caused him mental **agony** by constant nagging.
- ☐ “Help!” The picnickers heard a woman’s **agonized** scream from deep inside the jungle and rushed in the direction of the voice to help.
- ☐ She experienced such pain in her hands that even normal taken-for-granted tasks like brushing her teeth or lifting a vessel or writing were now an **agony**.

¹²³⁹ **Synagogue**: (n) a Jewish temple.

Origin: Gk *syn-*, together + *agein*, to lead => ‘an assembly’

¹²⁴⁰ **Antagonist**: (n) opponent, enemy; (n) **antagonism**: active enmity

Origin: Gk *anti-*, against + *agon*, struggle

- ☐ Ravana is the main **antagonist** of Ramayana and Rama is its **protagonist**.
- ☐ Urmila rose up to take her young daughter to her bed. “Come on beta, say good night to everyone,” she said. “Good night Papa. Good night Grandma,” the child obediently responded. “Won’t you say good night to Sham Uncle? Look, he’s waiting for you,” Urmila said, pushing the child a little towards Sham, a college friend of her husband. But the child only turned away from him and ran to her father. “Silly Dani, silly Dani!” said Urmila. Sham felt some mistrust and **antagonism** in the small child. He could not understand it.

¹²⁴¹ **Protagonist**: (n) the lead actor or character of a story.

Origin: Gk *proto*, first + *agon*, struggle => ‘the first fighter’

- ☐ There can be any number of **antagonists** in a story but there can only be a single **protagonist** to tackle them all. It is wrong to talk of four protagonists of a novel.

¹²⁴² **Stratagem**: (n) a clever trick used to mislead an enemy; any clever trick used to gain advantage over a competitor or to gain a goal.

Sita is **bewitched**¹²⁴³ by the beauty of that deer and asks Ram to hunt it for her. The deer runs away and Ram chases it, after instructing Lakshman to stay alert and to not leave Sita alone. After sometime, Sita and Lakshman hear Ram's **agonized** scream from afar. Sita is greatly worried and asks Lakshman to go after him. Lakshman says that he thinks that that cry is not real but an enemy's **ruse**¹²⁴⁴ to take him away from the hut. He assures Sita that Ram will be all right. "My brother is **invincible**," he tells her. Sita gets angry. She accuses him of not being concerned enough for his brother and orders him to leave at once. Lakshman reluctantly follows her command, but draws a circular boundary around the hut and asks Sita to not step out of it, come what may. Shortly afterwards, Ravana appears in the **guise** of a sadhu and asks Sita to give him food. He refuses to accept Sita's offering unless she steps out of the Lakshman Rekha. Not wanting to offend the sadhu, Sita fulfils his wish. Ravana immediately returns to his real form and carries Sita away.

Latin *citare* **to put in motion**

When something 'excites' you, it arouses your interest and puts in motion your mind or your heart or your hands.

The other words from this root are: **cite**¹²⁴⁵, **incite**¹²⁴⁶, **resuscitate**¹²⁴⁷ and **solicitous**.

Latin *gradi* **to step, move**

You may be an 'undergraduate', a 'graduate' or a 'postgraduate'. These are the three **degrees**¹²⁴⁸ of higher education. A thermometer also tells you degrees, because it too has been **graduated**¹²⁴⁹.

Origin: Gk *stratos*, army + *agein*, to lead => 'to lead an army'

- ❑ A married Greek queen, Helen, ran away with Paris, the prince of the city of Troy. The angry Greeks **marshaled** a huge army and set sail to Troy to teach Paris a lesson. Troy was protected by high walls. So, they laid **siege** to the city. **Sporadic** battles between the Greeks and the Trojans continued for nine years. An intense battle was fought in the 10th year. Still no side could dominate the other. One morning, the Trojans discovered a huge wooden horse outside the city and found no trace of the Greek soldiers, their animals or their tents. The Greek ships too were not at the harbour. The Trojans thought that the Greeks had finally admitted their defeat and gone away. They brought the horse inside the city as a trophy of their victory and celebrated the whole day. In the night, when the Trojans were fast asleep, 30 Greek soldiers, who had hidden themselves in the wooden horse's belly, stepped out and opened the gates of the city. The rest of the Greek army—which had sailed back to the city—marched in, destroyed the whole city and decisively won the battle. What mere strength could not do in 10 years, **stratagem** did in hours.

Sporadic: (adj) occurring at irregular intervals in time.

Origin: Gk *sporas*, scattered. The word 'spore' too is from the same root.

¹²⁴³ **Bewitch:** (v) to attract; (adj) bewitching: so beautiful that one can't think of anything else.

¹²⁴⁴ **Ruse:** (n) a way of doing something or getting something by cheating somebody.

¹²⁴⁵ **Cite:** (v) to mention something as a reason or an example.

- ❑ The professor **cited** a passage from a research paper to prove his point.
- ❑ "Pluck is greater than luck, my friends," the lecturer said and then **cited** the example of Stephen Hawking whose whole body was slowly disabled by a motor neuron disease. "Who could be more unlucky?" the lecturer asked. "But Mr Hawking did not let this bog him down and today he is a leading physicist of the world."

¹²⁴⁶ **Incite:** (v) to encourage somebody to do something violent.

Origin: *a in-*, into + *citare*, to move => 'to move into action'

- ❑ The students of an IIT-JEE coaching institute in Patna clashed with the security and the staff of the institute alleging that it had collected exorbitant fees from them but had failed to cover the entire syllabi. The institute, however, denied the charge and alleged that rival institutes had **incited** the students.

¹²⁴⁷ **Resuscitate:** (v) to make somebody start breathing again; to revive

Origin: *a re-*, back + *sub-*, below + *citare*, to move => 'to move back from below the earth' => 'to bring back from the under world'

- ❑ The doctor tried hard to **resuscitate** the blue-faced child who had drowned in the pool.
- ❑ The tribals held a mass prayer in which they sacrificed two young boys and washed their leader's corpse with the boys' blood. Their priest had told them that doing this would **resuscitate** their beloved leader. However, when the dead old man did not revive even after two hours, the priest angrily declared that at least one person among them had not prayed sincerely enough and so the Mother Goddess had rejected their offering.

¹²⁴⁸ **Degree:** (n) a step in a scale of intensity or amount.

¹²⁴⁹ **Graduate:** (v) to divide into regular steps or degrees (of height, difficulty, etc.).

The temperature of the Rajwansh family shot up sharply when their recently widowed daughter-in-law announced her **egress**¹²⁵⁰ from the *haveli* instead of stepping, like all good widows, into the **Retrogressor**.¹²⁵¹ The Retrogressor was a time-machine into which a widow was put after her husband's last rites, **ostensibly** to take her back into her happy past with her husband, but of course, it was also a very convenient way of getting rid of her before she could demand her husband's share of the property. **Retrogression** had become a **prevalent** custom. Every family practiced it.

She, however, said that she planned to move to Bombay and take up a job. Her **furious** in-laws accused her of trying to **degrade**¹²⁵² their family name. They tried emotional blackmail on her. They tried to **intimidate**¹²⁵³ her. They did all they could to change her mind.

"People cast all types of **aspersions** on widows who do not **retrograde**¹²⁵⁴." "**Rogues**¹²⁵⁵ of all kinds will **aggress**¹²⁵⁶ upon you if you live alone." "Everybody will laugh at us. Think of your sister-in-law. No one will marry her." "Perhaps you never loved our son enough. How pained his soul would be to see you doing all this..."

She did not **waver**¹²⁵⁷ and left. They never forgave that **transgression**¹²⁵⁸.

¹²⁵⁰ **Egress:** (n) going out, esp. from an enclosed place.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *gradi*, to step

- ❑ The movie hall had two doors for **ingress** and two separate ones for **egress**.

¹²⁵¹ **Retrogressor:** (n) a **fictitious** machine which, according to this story, was used to take widows back to a time when their husbands were still alive.

Origin: L *retro-*, backward + *gradi*.

Related word: **retrogress**, which means 'to go backward.'

- ❑ The panchayat of a Haryana village forbade its girls from stepping out of the village for education or work. It's logic was that it wanted to nip in the bud the problem of girls bringing disrepute to their parents. The shocked national media termed the **fiat retrogressive**. "Which century is that village living in?" Many Indians wondered.

¹²⁵² **Degrade:** (v) to lower in dignity or estimation.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *gradi*, step

¹²⁵³ **Intimidate:** (v) to make afraid.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *timere*, to fear.

¹²⁵⁴ **Retrograde:** (adj) going backward.

Origin: L *retro-*, back + *gradi*, to step

- ❑ The **apex** court judgment that a woman kicking her daughter-in-law or threatening her with a divorce did not amount to cruelty under Section 498A of the IPC shocked most people. It was **retrograde**, they said, and would undo all the progress made by the government so far in prevention of domestic violence.
- ❑ "When an animal, as it approaches maturity, becomes less perfectly organised than might be expected from its early stages and known relationships, it is said to undergo a **retrograde** development." Charles Darwin, *Origin of Species*

Apex: (n) peak

- ❑ The Supreme Court is the **apex** court of India.

¹²⁵⁵ **Rogue:** (n) a dishonest, unreliable person.

¹²⁵⁶ **Aggress:** (v) to commit the first act of hostility or offense; attack first. The attacker is called the **aggressor** and the act is called **aggression**.

Origin: L *ad-*, toward + *gradi*, step

- ❑ India gave a befitting reply to Pakistan's military **aggression**.
- ❑ Policemen are usually **aggressive** in their manner to common people.

¹²⁵⁷ **Waver:** (v) to sway to and fro; to feel or show doubt, indecision, etc.

Origin: From wave+ er.

- ❑ The captured soldier's eyes did not blink or **waver** before the enemy's gun.
- ❑ Babban was confident that the police would not be able to get any secret out of him. However, when the inspector thrust a gun on his forehead, he **wavered**. "All right," he said just as the inspector was pressing the trigger, "I'll tell you."

¹²⁵⁸ **Transgression:** (n) violation of a law, command, or duty

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *gradi* => 'to step across the (legal or moral) boundary'

- ❑ The old man **asserted** to the journalists that his son, whom the police had accused to be a terrorist and killed in an encounter, was innocent and had not **transgressed** a single rule of law all his life.

Years **progressed**.¹²⁵⁹ So did she. She was a **pioneer** of the ‘Women against **Retrogression**’ movement that finally succeeded in getting that **abominable**¹²⁶⁰ practice banned.

Latin *ire* to go

When we ‘exit’ a cinema hall, we go out of it. The ‘initial’ stages of a project are when you are just going into it. The word ‘ambition’ originally meant ‘to go around to **solicit** votes,’ as suggested by its etymology (L. *ambi-*, around). Later, however, the word started being used almost exclusively for the reason why a man went around **soliciting** votes—a desire to attain power or wealth, etc.

The other words from this root are:

Ire-1: **itinerary**¹²⁶¹, **itinerant**¹²⁶², **circuitous**¹²⁶³, **concomitant**¹²⁶⁴

- ❑ Sumati was an untouchable woman of the 15th century. She learnt Vedas from a young Brahman and married him. The scandalized villagers decided to burn her for her double **transgressions**—reading the texts which only a Brahman had the right to read and breaking the caste barrier.

¹²⁵⁹ **Progress**: (v) to go forward in space or time or scope.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *gradi*.

The opposite is **Regress**, a going backward.

¹²⁶⁰ **Abominable**: (adj) hateful, exceptionally bad or distasteful.

Origin: L. *ab-*, away + *omen*=> ‘something said to be an omen for ill-luck and therefore pushed away and hated by everyone.’

Related words: **abominate**, **abomination**

Abominate: (v) to hate.

Abomination: (n) a curse, hatred.

- ❑ The artist said that he loved good smells as much as he **abominated** the ill ones.
- ❑ “I **abominate** dishonest men,” the girl said fiercely. “Dishonesty is **abominable**.”
- ❑ Dishonesty is an **abomination**. Dishonesty filled her with **abomination**.

¹²⁶¹ **Itinerary**: (n) travel plan

Origin: L *ire*, to go -> *iter*, journey

- ❑ Two friends from a Delhi-based business school made the following **itinerary** for a 2-day trip:

Day	Time	To Do
0	Midnight	Take a sleeper bus to Jaipur
1	9am-6 pm	Visit all heritage sites of Jaipur aboard the city-touring bus of Rajasthan Tourism Development Corporation.
	6 pm-7.30 pm	Roam in Bapu Bazaar/MI Road.
	7.30 pm	Hire a cab to Chowki Dhaani
	8.30 pm-11.30 pm	Chowki Dhaani
	12 am	Check into the booked hotel.
2	6 am	Take the train for Agra
	11 am	Reach Agra. Hire a cab for a city tour.
	8:25 pm	Board Shatabadi
	10:30 pm	Delhi reached

¹²⁶² **Itinerant**: (adj) wandering

Origin: L *iter*, journey

- ❑ The Banjaras and the Gadia Lohars are **itinerant** tribes.
- ❑ Gautam Buddha was an **itinerant** preacher. He spent 45 years travelling in the Ganga plain to spread his message.

¹²⁶³ **Circuitous**: (adj) circular

Origin: L *circum*, circle + *ire*, to go

- ❑ When the car thief saw a police check point in the far distance he turned backwards and reached his home by a longer, **circuitous** route.

¹²⁶⁴ **Concomitant**: (n) that which comes together with something.

*Ire-2: sedition*¹²⁶⁵, *obituary*¹²⁶⁶, *ambient*¹²⁶⁷

*Ire-3: transient*¹²⁶⁸, *transitory*¹²⁶⁹, *transition*¹²⁷⁰

John Burroughs was a preeminent American essayist of the late 19th and the early 20th century. Here are presented excerpts from his article, ‘**Transient** and Permanent.’

“The clouds are **transient**, but the sky is permanent. The petals of a flowering plant are **transient**, the leaves and fruit are less so, and the roots the least **transient** of all. The dew on the grass is **transient**, as is the frost of an autumn morning. The snows and the rains abide longer... In our own lives, how **transient** are our moments of inspiration, our morning joy, our **ecstasies** of the spirit! Individuals, species, races, pass. Life alone remains and is immortal.”

Latin *cedere* **to go, withdraw**

Something that you cannot let go away is ‘necessary’ (L *ne-*, not + *cedere*) for you.

To ‘exceed’ one’s limits is to go out of them. To go towards a door is to ‘access’ it (L. *ad-*, towards). Look at the following series:

1, 11, 121, 1331, 14641, 161051...

Can you figure out which number will succeed 161051? (‘Succeed’ means ‘to go after’. Here, the L. *sub-* means ‘after’). The one who comes after is called the ‘successor’.

In order to succeed, you have to work hard. It is not only the wise men, but also etymology that tells you so. ‘Success’ is that which ‘goes after’ (the effort).

Origin: L *con-*, together + *ire*, to go

- His wife thought that his increasing disregard of others was a **concomitant** of his growing bank balance. He was no longer the man she had fallen in love with and married—caring, principled, idealistic and poor.
- Gray hair is a **concomitant** of growing age.
- Most victims of the office-fire were killed not by the fire but by the **concomitant** smoke.

¹²⁶⁵ **Sedition:** (n) rebellion against government.

Origin: L *sed-*, apart + *ire*, to go

- The British objected to *Vande Maatram* saying it was **seditious**, but did not mind *Jana Gana Mana*, which was even sung in schools. The popular myth was that Rabindranath Tagore had addressed *Jana Gana Mana* to the British king.

¹²⁶⁶ **Obituary:** (n) death notice

Origin: L *ob-*, away + *ire*, to go

¹²⁶⁷ **Ambient:** (adj) related with surroundings.

Origin: L *ambi-*, around + *ire*, to go => ‘to go around’

- The room temperature is also known as the **ambient** temperature.
- The restaurant had the **ambience** of rural Rajasthan.

¹²⁶⁸ **Transient:** (adj) fleeting, existing only for a very short time.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *ire*, to go => ‘going across’

- Ruchir’s friends were all excited that he had seen Amitabh Bachchan in Mumbai. “Oh wow!” one said. “Does he look as good in real life?” Another wanted to know. “Did you shake hands with him?” A third asked. “Well,” Ruchir clarified, “I had only a **transient** glimpse of him. I saw his car moving out of the Taj Mahal hotel. He was in the rear seat.”

¹²⁶⁹ **Transitory:** (adj) short-lived

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *ire*, to go => ‘going across’

- Many alcoholics say that they drink in order to forget their worries. Alcohol gives only **transitory** peace.
- A crush is **transitory**, love lasts for years.

¹²⁷⁰ **Transition:** (n) change from one state to another.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *ire*, to go => ‘going across’

- Adolescence is the period of **transition** from childhood to adulthood.

When Surekha kept insisting on studying in the US, her father **acceded**¹²⁷¹ though he would have liked his only child to stay and study nearer home. However, years later, when Surekha won a reputed research fellowship, he **conceded**¹²⁷² that she could not have succeeded so much so soon in India.

An 'accessible' MP is the one to whom you can go to whenever you want; he is not **cordoned**¹²⁷³ off by innumerable rings of secretaries and security guards and **lackeys**¹²⁷⁴.

The sight of all those MPs would shock our ancestors if they came back today. How absolutely the system of governance has changed, they will wonder! The word 'ancestor' is a simplified form of 'antecessor'. Our 'antecessors' or **predecessors**¹²⁷⁵ are the people who went before us. (a *ante-* mass 'bfore')

The other words from this root are:

*Cedere-1: Cede*¹²⁷⁶, *precede*¹²⁷⁷, *precedent*¹²⁷⁸

*Cedere-2: antecede*¹²⁷⁹, *antecedents*¹²⁸⁰, *intercede*¹²⁸¹

¹²⁷¹ **Accede:** (v) to agree.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *cedere*, to go

- ☐ The college administration **acceded** to the student's demand of postponing the examinations by one week.

¹²⁷² **Concede:** (v) to grant.

Origin: L *con-* + *cedere*, to go

- ☐ Ten-year-old Bholey Prasad told his uncle wanted to be a hermit and live his life in a small hut surrounded by **serene** snow-capped mountains. His uncle had a hearty laugh, then said, "You cannot stop chattering for a minute now. How will you live without talking for 50 years?" Bholey was startled. He had not thought about this point. He considered it now and **conceded** that that aspect of his career choice would certainly be difficult.

¹²⁷³ **Cordon:** (n) a line of policemen that blocks off an area to general access; (v) to block off an area by a cordon

- ☐ The road to the politician's house was crowded with protesting villagers. They were shouting angry slogans against him and were kept back, with great difficulty, by a **cordon** of policemen.
- ☐ As soon as the police came to know that the don was inside an empty house on the Dali street, they reached the place and **cordoned** off the area. Then, a task force of three policemen sneaked into the house hoping to catch him off guard.

¹²⁷⁴ **Lackey:** (n) servile follower

- ☐ All the students teased the class topper as 'the teachers' **lackey**'

¹²⁷⁵ **Predecessor:** (n) that which comes before.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *cedere*, to go

¹²⁷⁶ **Cede:** (v) to surrender, to give up.

Origin: L *cedere*, to go

- ☐ The king **ceded** the crown to his younger brother and retired from politics.
- ☐ The French **ceded** Pondicherry to India in 1950.

¹²⁷⁷ **Precede:** (v) to come before.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *cedere*, to go

- ☐ An introduction to a book written by another person is called a foreword and **precedes** the preface, which is an introduction written by the book's author.

¹²⁷⁸ **Precedent:** (n) that which comes before.

¹²⁷⁹ **Antecede:** (v) to come before.

Origin: L *ante*, before + *cedere*, to go

- ☐ For Megha, a fever is usually **anteceded** by a cold.

¹²⁸⁰ **Antecedents:** (n) the prior whereabouts; the preceding circumstances.

- ☐ People are recommended to check the **antecedents** of a household employee before hiring him or her.
- ☐ The bride's father hired a detective to check the **antecedents** of the groom.

¹²⁸¹ **Intercede:** (v) to act on behalf of somebody; to act as a mediator in a dispute.

Origin: L *inter*, between + *cedere*, to go

- ☐ Guddi's grandfather, a firm follower of Baba Sarnath, held that it was only due to Babaji's kind **intercession** that she had not once failed in her exams.

Cedere -3: **recede**¹²⁸², **secede**¹²⁸³, **recess**¹²⁸⁴

Cedere -4: **cessation**¹²⁸⁵, **incessant**¹²⁸⁶, **decease**¹²⁸⁷

By the way, the successor of 161051 in the series above is 1771561. The general formula for the series is $t_{n+1} = 11^n$.

- The child cried before his mother and begged her to **intercede** for him with his father and get his punishment **revoked**.
- At first, when the invitations to the party had come, the mother had said the children could not go; but when the father **interceded** in the children's favour, she reluctantly agreed,

¹²⁸² **Recede:** (v) to go back.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *cedere*, to go

- As we **recede** from the earth, the force of gravity diminishes in the inverse ratio of the square of the distance.
- The director of the street play made the crowd **recede** so as to leave a larger space free around him.
- "Meet my daughter, Mini," Nalini's fiancé introduced her to his eight-year-old daughter, "Mini, say hello to aunty." When Mini kept mum, Nalini smiled and stretched out her hand, meaning to touch Mini. The girl **receded**. Nalini drew a step nearer; Mini's **recession**, still silent, became swift. She soon broke into a run and went out of the room. "Don't worry. She'll take some time to accept," Nalini comforted her embarrassed fiancé.

¹²⁸³ **Secede:** (v) to separate from a union.

Origin: L *se-*, apart + *cedere*, to go

- Pakistan initially had two parts—West Pakistan and East Pakistan. East Pakistan, however, **seceded** from the union in a bloody war in 1971 and became the independent nation of Bangladesh.
- The Bangladesh Liberation War of 1971 resulted in the **secession** of East Pakistan from the union of Pakistan.
- The Constitution of India does not allow the Indian states to **secede** from the Union.

¹²⁸⁴ **Recess:** (n) a period of low activity; a backward corner of a room, etc.

Origin: from **recede**

- It is impossible to know someone fully. Who knows what is hidden in the deep **recesses** of a person's heart?

¹²⁸⁵ **Cessation:** (n) stoppage

Origin: L *cedere*, to go

- Lulled** by the repetitive chhuk-clink-chhuk-clink sound of the train, the man dropped asleep; he had not long **slumbered** when the sudden **cessation** of motion awoke him.

¹²⁸⁶ **Incessant:** (adj) unceasing, unceasing

- "Oh be quiet and get out for some time, will you?" the **harried** mother shouted at her sons. "I am tired of your **incessant** quarrels."
- Incessant** rainfall for two days flooded the low-lying areas of the city.

¹²⁸⁷ **Decease:** (v) to die.

Origin: L *de-* + *cedere*, to go

- A 10-day state mourning was announced in the honour of the **deceased** chief minister.
- In Hinduism, the male family members of a **deceased** person put his or her dead body on a pier and carry it on their shoulders to the cremation ground amid the chanting of mantras.

Latin *linquere* **to leave**

The **vagrant**¹²⁸⁸ ghost of King Roomi came back to his palace after **roving**¹²⁸⁹ all over the Earth and the other worlds, and was instantly heartbroken to see the utter **dereliction**¹²⁹⁰ of his beloved palace. The walls were **rickety**¹²⁹¹, the doors **decrepid**; the roofs were long-gone and the floors had **fissures**¹²⁹². There remained nothing, of value or otherwise, in the ruins.

He calculated that three hundred and forty four years in Earth time had passed since his death. From the accounts of his descendants whom he had met in heaven, he knew that his kingdom had been merged into the Indian state when the latter became independent and that his **progeny** had had to **relinquish**¹²⁹³ all their powers and most of their property. That must have happened about 50 years ago, he **reckoned**¹²⁹⁴. The **dilapidated**¹²⁹⁵ palace showed that the government had not bothered at all about their **legacy**¹²⁹⁶.

¹²⁸⁸ **Vagrant:** (n) a homeless wanderer.

Origin: L *vagari*, to wander

- ☐ The movie *Awaara* is about a happy-go-lucky, comic **vagrant** who is intensely in love with a girl he met once in his childhood.

Related word: **Vagabond**

Vagabond: (n) a homeless wanderer.

Origin: L *vagari*, to wander

- ☐ The Banjaras are a **vagabond** tribe.
- ☐ This song from the 1972 movie 'Parichay' describes the life and attitude of a **vagabond** very well:

Musaafir hoon yaaro, naa ghar hai naa thikaanaa.

Mujhe chalte jaanaa hai, bas chalte jaanaa.

¹²⁸⁹ **Rove:** (v) to wander without a destination

¹²⁹⁰ **Dereliction:** (n) negligence; the act of abandoning somethings. (adj) **derelict:** abandoned, neglected.

Origin: L *de-* + *linquere*, to leave

- ☐ After a child was kidnapped right outside the school gate, the school watchman—who had left his place to buy a packet of cigarettes from a nearby shop—was suspended for **dereliction** of duty.
- ☐ The **derelict** old car kept rusting in the driveway of the **derelict** farmhouse.

¹²⁹¹ **Rickety:** (adj) old, about to collapse.

Origin: from the disease **ricketts** in which legs become deformed

- ☐ The film *The Motorcycle Diaries* is about two medical students, one 23 year old, and another 29, who decide to travel across Latin America on their **rickety** motorcycle for adventure. Their journey brings them closer to Life, and its grim realities that were hidden from them in their cocoon of privileged existence. One of them becomes a revolutionary, Che Guevera.

¹²⁹² **Fissure:** (n) crack

- ☐ The almost vertical cracks that are created on the earth's surface by an earthquake are called earth **fissures**.

¹²⁹³ **Relinquish:** (v) to give up.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *linquere*, to leave => 'to leave behind'

- ☐ Raavi Virk. The name sounded so cool, so stylish! Now, engaged as she was to Pratap Singh Sidhu, she would soon have to **relinquish** it. Raavi Sidhu did not sound half as good. She thought she would rather convince Pratap to let her keep her surname after marriage.

¹²⁹⁴ **Reckon:** (v) to think or calculate.

Origin: Related with **reck**, to think

- ☐ Ranvir Sodhi was normally a very cautious driver but once **inebriated**, he drove **recklessly**. One evening, he went with his wife to attend a party at his sister's house. By the end of the party at midnight, he was literally **doddering** from intoxication. His sister insisted that they spend the night at her house. His wife too refused to let him drive in such a sozzled state. He declared that he would drive, come whatever may. His wife coolly replied, "I **reckon** that you will learn only after you have mowed some sleeping pavement **dwellers** under your car or rammed your car into something."

See also, **reckless**

¹²⁹⁵ **Dilapidated:** (adj) ruined, about to fall.

¹²⁹⁶ **Legacy:** (n) something come down to one from one's ancestors or predecessors.

The royal ghost was **indignant**. He wanted to teach the **delinquent**¹²⁹⁷ government a lesson. So, he entered the body of the Indian Prime Minister who was at that time **expostulating** on a crucial issue in a cabinet meeting. The Prime Minister's sentence hung in the mid-air for some time and then, he started **muttering**¹²⁹⁸ **inaneities**¹²⁹⁹. His colleagues stared **aghast**. They waited for him to stop, but when he did not, and remained foolish for more than 10 minutes, they called for his secretary and awkwardly asked him to take him away. The secretary too was bewildered but had the presence of mind to tell everybody that the PM had taken a few medicines shortly before the meeting and they must have made him **delirious**¹³⁰⁰. That explanation **allayed**¹³⁰¹ everybody's fears.

The PM's wife saw the sorry state in which he was brought home and started weeping as the secretary **recounted** what had happened during the meeting. He was still talking when the PM got up and started **gamboling** around, laughing stupidly, gleefully making monkey faces at his wife, his secretary and then, himself in the mirror. His wife beat her forehead; whose **wizardry**¹³⁰² was this? What would happen now?

The king's ghost inside her husband spoke up in a **stentorian** voice. He told her whose ghost he was and that he would leave her husband's body only when he was assured that the government would restore the palace. The **distraught** old lady **fervently** promised on her husband's behalf.

The **benign** ghost came out. The PM proved as good as his wife's word. The palace was immediately **renovated**. The king went back to heaven, feeling happy that he had taught the government to take care of royal **relics**¹³⁰³.

He **capriciously**¹³⁰⁴ returned one day, 10 years later in Earth time. He saw that his palace was as **dilapidated** as it had been before. The government had changed.

Latin *venire* to come

The hero and the villain are fighting. *Dhishoom! Dhishoom!* The heroine is lying unconscious and the vamp, who secretly loves the hero, is looking on anxiously. Suddenly, she gasps. One of the villain's **minions** is aiming his gun at the hero! "Raaaaaaaam!" the vamp exclaims, coming before our hero, Ram, and taking the bullet meant for him on her chest.

To 'prevent' somebody from dying means to come before his Death. But if you could not prevent it, if Death pushed you aside and took the poor fellow away, you will have to go to his cremation. The place where everybody comes to for a pre-decided event is called the 'venue' of that event.

¹²⁹⁷ **Delinquent:** (adj) neglectful of duty; neglectful of law.

Origin: L *de-*, + *linquere*, to leave

❑ The writer's latest novel was about the **delinquency** of a widowed queen who gave away her son's kingdom to a rival, in the hope of winning that man's love.

¹²⁹⁸ **Mutter:** (v) to utter words indistinctly or as if talking to oneself; murmur.

¹²⁹⁹ **Inanity:** (n) a silly statement.

❑ It has become routine in India for works of art or literature to be banned because of some **inane** complaints about hurt sentiments.

¹³⁰⁰ **Delirium:** (n) a fevered state of mind characterized by **delusions**, great anxiety, uncontrolled excitement, etc.

¹³⁰¹ **Allay:** (v) soothe, lay to rest.

Origin: from 'lay'

¹³⁰² **Wizardry:** (n) magic

¹³⁰³ **Relic:** (n) object or monument left behind from the past time.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *linquere*, to leave

¹³⁰⁴ **Caprice:** (n) a sudden, unpredictable change of the mind.

❑ The employees had become so used to the **caprices** of their boss that they were hardly surprised when on a Tuesday he told them that there would be a fancy dress ball on the office premises on Thursday evening.

❑ Nature is a **capricious** lady. She may shatter your world this minute just because she was in the mood of an earthquake. Or, she may suddenly decide that she is bored of dutifully sending the monsoons every year and, to spice things a little, may hold them up for a whole year or two or three or whatever number she decides. One never knows when she will show her anger to us, and when, her love.

The following words have travelled from far-flung places in the dictionary just to meet you. Please welcome them!

Venire-1: **advent**¹³⁰⁵, **adventitious**¹³⁰⁶, **misadventure**¹³⁰⁷, **venture**¹³⁰⁸, **venturesome**¹³⁰⁹

Venire-2: **circumvent**¹³¹⁰, **intervene**¹³¹¹, **convene**¹³¹², **convention**¹³¹³, **conventional**¹³¹⁴

¹³⁰⁵ **Advent:** (v) arrival

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *venire*, to come

☐ The friends celebrated the **advent** of the new year in great style.

¹³⁰⁶ **Adventitious:** (adj) happening by chance.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *venire*, to come => 'coming from outside' => 'not an intrinsic part'

☐ When the waiter brought the bill, he casually put his hand in his pocket to take out the wallet and that was when he realized that...his pocket had been picked! He was trying to explain his situation to the hotel manager when an old classmate of his walked in the hotel. He had no idea how he would have come out of the embarrassing situation had it not been for that **adventitious** meeting with his friend.

¹³⁰⁷ **Misadventure:** (n) mishap, an unlucky attempt.

Origin: L *mis-*, bad + *ad-* + *venture* => 'bad going to something'

☐ The film star's **foray** into politics proved to be a **misadventure**. He realized that it was not his cup of tea.

¹³⁰⁸ **Venture:** (v) to move into a new or uncertain field; (n) a risky project.

Origin: L *venire*, to come

☐ The film star **ventured** into politics.
☐ The entrepreneur started a new **venture**.

¹³⁰⁹ **Venturesome:** (adj) bold, risk-taking.

Origin: *venture* + *some*

☐ Entrepreneurs are by nature **venturesome**.
☐ He set on the **venturesome** mission of cycling from Kashmir to Kanyakumari.

¹³¹⁰ **Circumvent:** (v) to go around; to avoid.

Origin: L *circum*, circle + *venire*, to come

☐ The land ceiling act limits the maximum amount of land that a family may hold. But big landowners **circumvent** the rule by registering their excess land under **fictitious** names.

¹³¹¹ **Intervene:** (v) to come in between.

Origin: L *inter-*, between + *venire*, to come

☐ The timely **intervention** of the police saved the two young men from fighting one another to death.

¹³¹² **Convene:** (v) to call together.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *venire*, to come

☐ The convener **convened** a meeting of the magazine committee.

¹³¹³ **Convention:** (n) a meeting; a practice on which everyone agrees.

☐ Radhey Prasad broke the **convention** of his times by refusing to marry his daughter in her childhood and educating her.

¹³¹⁴ **Conventional:** (adj) related with or according to the **conventions**.

☐ In the India of 19th century, it was **conventional** to marry girls before the age of 10.

Venire-3: **contravene**¹³¹⁵, **covenant**¹³¹⁶, **souvenir**¹³¹⁷, **provenance**¹³¹⁸, **parvenu**¹³¹⁹

Latin *currere* **to run**

“Do you both agree?” the priest of the church asked the bride and the groom.

“Yes!” They beamed in **concurrence**¹³²⁰.

Concurrent¹³²¹ with this happy event however was a tragedy in another part of the city.

A group of friends had ‘run out of doors’ for a welcome break. This ‘excursion’ had turned sour when one of them slipped down the hill and died on the spot.

The deceased was a writer but not a very successful one. **Incidentally**¹³²², death had been a **recurrent**¹³²³ **motif** of his **oeuvre**. The hero of almost every novel of his died, or thought of dying, and was a writer. Writing was the only **recourse**¹³²⁴ his poor, distressed heroes had, their writing desk the only place that offered them some **succor**.¹³²⁵

Hardly anybody had bought his novels. Most of the people to whom he had gifted them had kept them aside after a **cursory**¹³²⁶ glance. The few who had read them had liked them. His plots were good, they had said, but their impact

¹³¹⁵ **Contravene:** (v) to go against.

Origin: L *contra-*, opposite + *venire*, to come

❑ The society does not take kindly to any person who **contravenes** its **conventions**.

¹³¹⁶ **Covenant:** (n) agreement, contract.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *venire*, to come

❑ Marriage is a **covenant** which binds two souls.

¹³¹⁷ **Souvenir:** (n) keep-sake

Origin: L *sub-*, up + *venire*, to come => ‘to come in mind’

❑ The college **souvenir** was a treasure trove of beautiful memories.

¹³¹⁸ **Provenance:** (n) origin

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *venire*, to come

❑ For the Indians of today, English is no more a language of colonial **provenance**. It is very much an Indian language for them, a language they have grown up with and in which they can very well express all the flavours and colours of their lives. It is also the only language that enables them to communicate with all the other parts of their vast, multilingual country.

¹³¹⁹ **Parvenu:** (n) a person who has newly become rich but still lacks the sophistication of the upper classes.

Origin: L *par-*, through + *venire*, to come => ‘one who has come through the barrier that divides the upper class from the middle class’

❑ Many consider New Delhi to be a **parvenu** city. It was recreated by the refugees who had lost their everything in the partition and had come to the city empty-handed. They **toiled** day and night to rebuild themselves and the city. They succeeded.

¹³²⁰ **Concurrence:** (n) simultaneous occurrence; agreement.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *currere*, to run

¹³²¹ **Concurrent:** (adj) occurring at the same time.

¹³²² **Incidental:** (adj) occurring by chance or in isolation.

¹³²³ **Recurrent:** (adj) occurring again; occurring again and again.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *currere*, to run

¹³²⁴ **Recourse:** (n) a person or thing that you go to for help of protection.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *currere*, to run

¹³²⁵ **Succour:** (n) something that offers support or consolation.

Origin: L *sub-*, up to + *currere*, to run => ‘to run up to someone’ => ‘to offer help’

¹³²⁶ **Cursory:** (adj) running; **superficial**.

Origin: L *currere*, to run

was **marred**¹³²⁷ by his **discursive**¹³²⁸ style. He was working hard on this weakness, and often told his friends that his novels till now were only the **precursors**¹³²⁹ to the great novel that he would write. He was confident that he would write it. He was not confident though that it would sell. He said that people purchased only what was talked about, and only those writers became a part of the public **discourse**,¹³³⁰ who were already famous or **notorious**, or those who created a controversy.

That dead unknown writer was not the only one who soaked up the **currere derivatives**. **Cursive**¹³³¹ handwriting, **current**¹³³² news, royal **couriers**¹³³³, **incursive**¹³³⁴ terrorists and **incurred**¹³³⁵ debts have them too.

A related root is the Latin word *carrus*, meaning ‘a two-wheeled wagon,’ and found in car, cargo, carry, **career**¹³³⁶, carriage, chariot, discharge and **caricature**¹³³⁷.

Latin *fugere* **to run away, flee**

The **fugitive**¹³³⁸ lovers reached a small village. The sun had already set. The streets were empty. The boy told the girl that they would easily find a **refuge**¹³³⁹ there. He had heard that villagers were always very helpful.

¹³²⁷ **Mar:** (v) to damage, to harm.

¹³²⁸ **Discursive:** (adj) wandering from one topic to the other.
Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *currere*, to run => ‘running apart from the main topic’

¹³²⁹ **Precursor:** (n) that which comes before.
Origin: L *pre-*, *before* + *currere*, to run
□ “Hitler and Stalin believed that with a little social engineering, with the mass murder of a few million people, they could create a new and perfect world. The idea of perfection has often been a **precursor to genocide**.” Arundhati Roy

¹³³⁰ **Discourse:** (n) conversation; a formal talk about a subject.
Origin: L *dis-*, about + *currere*, to run => ‘to run about a topic’ => ‘to talk about a topic’
□ The swami gave a **discourse** on the need for forgiveness.
□ The **discourse** on education is increasingly becoming focused on the the use of Information Technology in education.

¹³³¹ **Cursive:** (adj) running
Origin: L *currere*, to run

¹³³² **Current:** (adj) happening right now.
Origin: L *currere*, to run

¹³³³ **Courier:** (n) messenger
Origin: L *currere*, to run => ‘a man who runs with your message’

¹³³⁴ **Incursive:** (adj) intruding; breaking in.
Origin: L *in-*, in+ *currere*, to run
□ The Intelligence Bureau reported the **incursion** of 300 men in the Kargil sector.

¹³³⁵ **Incur:** (v) to come into.
Origin: L *in-*, in + *currere*, to run => ‘to run into’
□ The State Electricity Board **incurred** huge losses due to the Chief Minister’s decision to supply free electricity to the farmers.

¹³³⁶ **Career:** (v) to move or run at full speed.
Origin: L *carrus*, wagon
□ As soon as their mother said they could go and play, the children ran out at full **career**. As if let out of a suffocating prison, they **careered** joyfully around the garden, their arms stretched out as if they had just broken imaginary chains around their spirit.

¹³³⁷ **Caricature:** (n) a sketch or a description of a person in which his characteristics are comically exaggerated.
Origin: L *carrus*, wagon -> *caricare*, to load

¹³³⁸ **Fugitive:** (adj) one who is running away from somebody.
Origin: L *fugere*, to run away

¹³³⁹ **Refuge:** (n) a place that offers shelter.
Origin: L *re-*, back + *fugere*, to run => ‘to run back to’

He knocked on a door. A **burly**¹³⁴⁰ middle-aged man, wearing a **chequered**¹³⁴¹ dhoti, a dirty vest and a thick moustache opened the door. He looked at them from head to toe. “What do you want?” came his **brusque**¹³⁴² question.

Intimidated somewhat by the unexpected rudeness, the boy explained that they were looking for a shelter to spend the night. The man immediately softened. “Oh ok ok,” he said, “But, I live alone here. I will not be able to do much for you. My sister lives over there,” he pointed down a bend in the street, “go to her, or no, let me take you there myself, and she will look after you very well.”

“See, didn’t I tell you?” the boy’s smile seemed to ask the girl as they followed the man. The girl’s return smile said that she was impressed by his wisdom.

The man’s sister was delighted to have guests. “I was worried about being alone at the house tonight,” she told her brother, “both your nephew and his father have gone to a relative’s, and look, God sent two such lovely children to me!” The man laughed and after patting the young man on the shoulder, went to his own home. His sister fussed over them like an affectionate mother. They ate contentedly and went to sleep.

The boy woke up in a jungle, the girl in a brothel. That show of love had just been a **subterfuge**¹³⁴³ to make them eat the food in which the woman had mixed a strong sleep-**inducing** medicine. Her brother arrived with the madam of the local brothel soon after the unsuspecting lovers dozed off. The girl was pretty; they got a good sum for her. The brother and the sister **gloated** over their unexpected **windfall**¹³⁴⁴ and over the **gullibility** of the boy and the girl.

Centrifugal¹³⁴⁵ is the last word from this root of fugitives.

Latin *errare* to wander

Sudhir Chaturvedi was **lambasting**¹³⁴⁶ Sameer so badly that it seemed he would kill the boy. It was only with great difficulty that Bade Chaturvedi Ji managed to **extricate**¹³⁴⁷ his grandson from his son’s iron-grip. After **coddling**¹³⁴⁸ the sobbing boy and sending him away to drink some water, he gently advised his son to not raise his hand on Sameer because he was not a child anymore. Sudhir shook his head. “*Baoji*, stop **mollycoddling**¹³⁴⁹ him; you have spoiled

¹³⁴⁰ **Burly**: (adj) having a huge, strong body.

¹³⁴¹ **Chequered**: (adj) having a cheque pattern; having many ups and downs.

Origin: From the **chequered** board on which Chess is played.

❑ The businessman had a **chequered** life. He saw many successes and many failures.

¹³⁴² **Brusque**: (adj) rude, abrupt.

¹³⁴³ **Subterfuge**: (n) a clever trick intended to cheat, escape from something or hide something.

Origin: L *subter*, below + *fugere*, to escape => ‘to escape secretly’

¹³⁴⁴ **Windfall**: (n) an unexpected good fortune.

¹³⁴⁵ **Centrifugal**: (adj) centre-fleeing

Origin: L *centri*, center + *fugere*, to run

¹³⁴⁶ **Lambaste**: (v) to criticize very strongly; to beat or whip physically.

¹³⁴⁷ **Extricate**: (v) to free someone from a difficulty or entanglement.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *tricae*, confusion

The other words from the root *tricae* are: **intricate**, **intrigue**

Intricate: (adj) highly complex, complicated.

❑ An **intricate** design of embroidery

Intrigue: (n) secret love affair, conspiracy; (v) arouse the curiosity of.

❑ The dying man’s last words—rich, gold, hide—**intrigued** his son

¹³⁴⁸ **Coddle**: (v) to pamper.

¹³⁴⁹ **Mollycoddle**: (v) to pamper.

him. I met his teacher in the market today and he told him that your darling grandson likes to **filch**¹³⁵⁰ money from his classmates.”

“What? Sameer?”

“*Ji Baoji*. Today, he is stealing small change; tomorrow, his daring will increase. *Beta bhatak raha hai Baoji; usko raste pe laana padega.*”

When someone wanders from the right path, he is said to have committed an error. The other words from this root are:

errare-1: **erroneous**¹³⁵¹, **erratum**¹³⁵², **errant**¹³⁵³

errare -2: **aberrant**¹³⁵⁴, **inerrancy**¹³⁵⁵, **erratic**¹³⁵⁶

Latin *vehere* to carry

Latin *via* way

A carrier is called a vehicle in English and *vaahan* in Sanskrit. The two words are **cognates**. Organisms like the female *Anopheles* mosquito, which are the vehicles of disease causing microorganisms, are called vectors. **Vexed**¹³⁵⁷ wives,

¹³⁵⁰ **Filch**: (v) to steal in a petty way.

¹³⁵¹ **Erroneous**: (adj) wrong, full of errors.

Origin: from ‘error’

- ❑ It is **erroneous** to equate knowledge with wisdom.
- ❑ On the phone, her child-like voice gave an **erroneous** impression of her age.
- ❑ An **erroneous** report.

¹³⁵² **Erratum**: (n) an error in a text; an error notice.

Origin: L *errare*, to err

¹³⁵³ **Errant**: (adj) wandering

Origin: L *errare*, to err

- ❑ In the older times, the knight-**errants** had to travel to distant lands to carry out assigned missions. When far-away from home, they relieved their minds by carving their sweethearts’ names in deserts, and wildernesses, and other savage places where there was no probability of them ever being read by anybody.
- ❑ The wife well knew her husband’s **errant** heart and kept him in strict control.

¹³⁵⁴ **Aberrant**: (adj) abnormal; deviating from the normal.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *errare*, to wander => ‘to wander away from the normal’

- ❑ When the young man first showed signs of mental **aberration**, his family put it to merely overwork and anger.
- ❑ The family misinterpreted his **aberrant** behavior as being merely overwork and anger.
- ❑ The theory had predicted a linear curve. While most of the data points in Roshan’s experiment did fall on one line, he got three values which were far away from that line. His co-worker dismissed the **aberrant** data as resulting from experimental error but Roshan decided to cross-check.

¹³⁵⁵ **Inerrancy**: (n) inability to make errors.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *errare*, to err

- ❑ No man can claim **inerrancy**. Everyone makes mistakes.

¹³⁵⁶ **Erratic**: (adj) irregular, unpredictable.

Origin: L *errare*, to wander

- ❑ Sushma admired her husband’s maturity; his even temper was a contrast to her own **erratic** mood swings.

¹³⁵⁷ **Vex**: (v) irritate, trouble

Origin: L *vehere*, to carry -> *vexare*, to attack

- ❑ The child **vexed** his aunt by asking “what?” and “why?” about everything.

convex¹³⁵⁸ mirrors, **convection**¹³⁵⁹ currents, passionate **invective**¹³⁶⁰, **inveighed**¹³⁶¹ against men, **vehement**¹³⁶² winds and modes of **conveyance**¹³⁶³ also share the *vehere* connection.

The in-laws of a new bride carry her away from her parents' home. That is why, they call her '*bahu*'. '*Vivah*' literally means 'a carrying away'. The Punjabi word is *viah*, closest to the Latin root.

Now, the way that a vehicle follows is expressed by the root *via*. Mr Snehashish Chatterjee reached Kolkata 'via' Delhi. His brother Debashish had travelled by the same route previously. 'Previous' means 'going before, on the road before' (L. *pre*, before).

The other words from *via* are:

Route-1: **deviate**¹³⁶⁴, **devious**¹³⁶⁵, **obviate**¹³⁶⁶

¹³⁵⁸ **Convex**: (adj) having an outwardly round surface.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *vehere*, to carry => 'to carry together'

¹³⁵⁹ **Convection**: (n) transfer of heat by movement of molecules of the medium.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *vehere*, to carry

¹³⁶⁰ **Invective**: (n) very strong worded or angry criticism or scolding.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *vehere*, to carry => 'to carry in words' => 'to attack with words'

❑ When he met a traffic jam at yet another traffic light, he broke into an **invective** on how pathetic the traffic situation of India was and how the politicians did nothing but stuff their own stomachs while letting the country go to rot and how the people foolishly kept on buying new cars to clog the already suffocated roads even more.

¹³⁶¹ **Inveigh**: (v) to attack or criticize with very strong or angry words

Origin: L *in-*, in + *vehere*, to carry => 'to carry in words' => 'to attack with words'

❑ When he **inveighed** against the evil government under whose bloody policies the poor workers suffered, his hearers were roused and the whole sky **reverberated** with their slogans against the government.

Reverberate: (v) to echo.

¹³⁶² **Vehement**: (adj) carrying a lot of energy, enthusiasm, emotion or anger.

Origin: L *vehere*, to carry

❑ The boy yearned for the girl's love—for some sympathy with the **vehement** passion which was burning within him; but she was as cold as marble.

❑ He spoke against his enemy with such **vehemence** that his mother feared that he was going to kill him.

¹³⁶³ **Conveyance**: (n) communication; transport.

Origin: L *con-*, + *vehere*, to carry => 'to carry from one point to another'

❑ modes of **conveyance**.

❑ He **conveyed** his anger to her by talking to everyone but her.

¹³⁶⁴ **Deviate**: (v) to go off the main road.

Origin: L *de-* + *via*, road

❑ The pull of money **deviates** many men from the path of honesty.

¹³⁶⁵ **Devious**: (adj) not straightforward; crooked.

Origin: L *de-* + *via*, road => 'off the straight road'

❑ In the movie *Bawarchi*, the new cook wins everybody's hearts with his easy charm. The viewers, however, suspect that he may be **devious** because the cook is often shown stealing **stealthy** glances at the locked trunk of the family **patriarch** when no one is looking.

¹³⁶⁶ **Obviate**: (v) to make unnecessary.

Origin: L *ob-*, in + *via*, way => 'standing in the way' => 'blocking the road for something' => 'making it unneeded'. The word 'obvious' too has the same etymology. The sense interpretation of 'obvious' is as under:

'standing in the way' => 'easily seen'

❑ Today, the cell phone has **obviated** the need for a wrist watch.

Route-2: **envoy**¹³⁶⁷, **convoy**¹³⁶⁸, **trivial**¹³⁶⁹

Route-3: **pervious**¹³⁷⁰, **impervious**¹³⁷¹, **vogue**¹³⁷²

Latin *portare* **to carry**

All work and no play had made Jack a rather dull boy. He decided to take a break and **disport**¹³⁷³ himself at an amusement park. So he went there and lo! He found himself enjoying so much! Every ride had him in **transports**¹³⁷⁴, he laughed and shrieked and shouted, everybody could see what a good time he was having. He took most rides twice, some even thrice!



How you **comport**¹³⁷⁵ yourself is how you ‘carry’ yourself. If you need any lessons on the matter, look at the **deportment**¹³⁷⁶ of the royals or the aristocrats. Such stately, **majestic** gentlemen who **deported** themselves with **grave** dignity were called **portly**.

Most of them were also rather fat. So, people slowly started saying “Umm...He looks like a **portly**¹³⁷⁷ gentleman,” as the polite answer to “Isn’t he a fat pumpkin?”

¹³⁶⁷ **Envoy:** (n) messenger; a diplomatic agent.

Origin: L *en-*, on + *via*, way => ‘on his way’

☐ Indian government appoints its **envoys** to different countries. They are called the ambassadors.

¹³⁶⁸ **Convoy:** (n) a fleet of cars or military vehicles which travels together with an important vehicle to ensure its safety.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *vehere*, to carry

☐ Suspected militants attacked the **convoy** of the chief minister. Coincidentally, the **convoy**, which usually had around 50 cars, was only 10 cars long that day.

¹³⁶⁹ **Trivial:** (adj) of little value.

Origin: L *tri-*, three + *vium*, road => ‘an intersection of three roads where people used to stand and talk’ => ‘to talk of unimportant, ordinary things’ => ‘unimportant, ordinary.’

☐ “I don’t have time to waste on **trivial** domestic problems. Solve them yourself”, the husband told his wife and left for office.

¹³⁷⁰ **Pervious:** (adj) allowing water or other material to pass through.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *via*, way

☐ Roads and pavements made of **pervious** asphalt and concrete can solve the waterlogging problem that most Indian cities face during heavy rains and can also help recharge ground water.

¹³⁷¹ **Impervious:** (adj) not allowing anything to pass through; uninfluenced

☐ The king seemed **impervious** to the tears of the young lady and ordered the guards to carry out his orders of killing her husband.

☐ The doctor was **impervious** to all that was happening around him once he started watching a film.

¹³⁷² **Vogue:** (n) fashion

☐ Fashion is ever-changing. What is in **vogue** today, becomes outdated tomorrow.

¹³⁷³ **Disport:** (v) to divert or enjoy.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *portare*, to carry => ‘to carry away from the main work’

¹³⁷⁴ **Transport:** (v) to carry from one place to another; to move to strong emotion, get carried away.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *portare*, to carry

¹³⁷⁵ **Comport:** (v) to bear or conduct (oneself); behave.

Origin: L *com-*, + *portare*, to carry => ‘to carry oneself’

¹³⁷⁶ **Deportment:** (n) a manner of personal conduct; behaviour; to expel from a country.

Origin: L *de-* + *portare*, to carry

☐ His **deportment** made people think that he must be a prince.

☐ The Canadian government **deported** all the Indians who had migrated to the country illegally.

¹³⁷⁷ **Portly:** (adj) fat, bulky.

Origin: L *portare*, to carry => ‘carrying a lot of weight’

‘Import’ and ‘export’ of ‘portable’ goods is a rather **lucrative**¹³⁷⁸ business. When something is too heavy for us to carry, we hire a ‘porter’. A few of these poor men are illegal immigrants who live in the fear of being ‘**deported**’ (carried away).

The other words from this, and related, roots are:

Carry the pot to the port, porter!-1: **Purport**¹³⁷⁹, **purported**¹³⁸⁰, **import**¹³⁸¹, important

Carry the pot to the port, porter!-2: report, **rapport**¹³⁸², port, passport

Carry the pot to the port, porter!-3: opportunity, **opportune**¹³⁸³, **inopportune**¹³⁸⁴

Carry the pot to the port, porter!-4: **importune**¹³⁸⁵, **portfolio**¹³⁸⁶, **ford**¹³⁸⁷

Latin *latus* carried, brought

When you ‘bring back’ an interesting scene that you saw and tell it to everybody, you are ‘relating’ it to them. And, if some of the people do not understand your mother tongue, you ‘translate’ your story into a language they do understand. To translate is ‘to carry across.’

The man who brings in new laws is called a ‘legislator’ (*L. legis*, law, + *lator*, bringer)

❑ Santa Claus is often **depicted** as a **portly** old man dressed in red.

¹³⁷⁸ **Lucrative**: (adj) moneymaking, profitable.

Origin: *lucre*, money

❑ The lure of the **lucre** drove him into the world of crime.

¹³⁷⁹ **Purport**: (n) purpose, intention, meaning.

Origin: *L pro-*, forth + *portare*, to carry => ‘to carry forth, convey.’

❑ Selfish behavior that **purports** to be **altruistic** carries the mask of **altruism** in front.

❑ The **purport** of the Bhagwad Gita is the meaning it intends to **convey**.

¹³⁸⁰ **Purported**: (adj) reputed or claimed; presenting an (often false) appearance of being or intending.

❑ A man **purported** to be wealthy **conveys**—through his actions and appearance—that he has lots of money, but does not really have it.

¹³⁸¹ **Import**: (n) importance

Origin: *L im-*, in + *portare*, to carry

❑ He spoke with such careless authority that it was clear that he believed that every word of his was of great **import** to mankind.

❑ It is a crime to marry small children who do not even understand the full **import** of the word ‘marriage.’

¹³⁸² **Rapport**: (n) a relationship in which both sides feel good about and trust each other.

Origin: *L re-*, back + *portare*, to carry => ‘to bring back’ good feelings after meeting a person.

❑ The teacher struck a good **rapport** with the students and soon became the favourite teacher of the whole class.

¹³⁸³ **Opportune**: (adj) favourable

Origin: from *L ob portum veniens* => ‘a wind that is coming towards the port’ => ‘favorable wind’

❑ When she saw that her father was in a good mood, Simran thought it was an **opportune** moment to seek permission for the Europe trip that her classmates were going on.

¹³⁸⁴ **Inopportune**: (adj) inappropriate, not favourable.

❑ When she saw that her father was in an angry mood, Simran thought it was an **inopportune** moment to seek permission for the Europe trip that her classmates were going on.

¹³⁸⁵ **Importune**: (v) to give unwanted attention; to make unwelcome demands.

Origin: *L im-*, not + **opportune**

❑ I knew that Vikram Seth was staying in the same hotel. He was my favourite writer. But now, the thought of trying to meet him did not occur to me. So famous a writer, I assumed, was sure to be **besieged** by admirers and would, if anything, be grateful to be spared my **importunities**.

¹³⁸⁶ **Portfolio**: (n) a portable case to carry documents.

Origin: *L portare*, to carry + *folium*, leaf, sheet

¹³⁸⁷ **Ford**: (n) a place where a river is shallow enough to be crossed on foot; (v) to cross a river at such a place.

Origin: *L portare*, to carry => ‘a passage’

❑ The name Oxford literally means ‘where the oxen **ford**’.

❑ The ad showed the Ford car driving through a **ford**, splashing water all around.

The other words from this root are:

Latus-1: **oblate**¹³⁸⁸, **prolate**¹³⁸⁹, **prelate**¹³⁹⁰

Latus-2: **collate**¹³⁹¹, **collation**¹³⁹², **dilatory**¹³⁹³

Latus-3: **elation**¹³⁹⁴, **superlative**¹³⁹⁵

Latin *rota* **wheel**

One ‘rotation’ is one whole turn of the wheel. The earth became ‘round’ by knocking out the ‘t’ of *rotundus*, wheel like. A **rotund**¹³⁹⁶ man is just like the round globe. A **rotund** building is called a **rotunda**¹³⁹⁷.

There is a **rotund** speech too. It has come from the Latin phrase *ore rotundo*, which means ‘to speak with a round mouth.’ Imagine speaking out so that each element comes out clear, strong and smooth, with a ringing quality to it. Such a rich speech is also called ‘orotund’ (a contraction of *ore rotundo*).

¹³⁸⁸ **Oblate:** (adj) flattened at the poles.

Origin: L *ob-*, toward+ *latus*, carried

❑ The earth is not a sphere but an ‘**oblate** spheroid’, more curved at the equator and flatter at the poles.

¹³⁸⁹ **Prolate:** (adj) lengthened

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *latus*, carried

❑ If an ellipse is rotated about its major axis, we get a **prolate** (elongated) spheroid, like a rugby ball. If the ellipse is rotated about its minor axis, the result is an **oblate** (flattened) spheroid, like the Earth.

¹³⁹⁰ **Prelate:** (n) a high ranking priest of the church.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *latus*, carried => ‘carried before others’

❑ The highest ranking **prelate** in the U.K. Catholic Church visited India.

¹³⁹¹ **Collate:** (v) to put together for comparison or interpretation.

Origin: L *com-* together + *latus*, carried

❑ The NGO **collated** data on HIV/AIDS in India.

❑ The CBI set up a “cyber crime research and development unit” to collect and **collate** information on cyber crimes reported from different parts of the country.

¹³⁹² **Collation:** (n) light meal

Origin: L *com-*, together + *latus*, carried

❑ When the **collation** was over, and every child provided with a slice of cake and a biscuit, Mrs. Watkinson said to Mrs. Morland: “Now, ma’am, you shall have some music from my daughter Jane.”

¹³⁹³ **Dilatory:** (adj) serving to dilate, that is, increase in size; serving to delay.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *latus*, carried

❑ Before the operation, the nurse put **dilatory** drops in the patient’s eye.

❑ Instead of taking immediate action against the **perpetrators** of the riots, the government adopted **dilatory** tactics like appointing a one-man commission. The minister said that the government would act as per the report of the commission. The commission took fifteen years to complete its investigation.

¹³⁹⁴ **Elation:** (n) extreme happiness.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *latus*, carried

❑ She was **elated** by the news of her son’s job.

¹³⁹⁵ **Superlative:** (adj) the highest degree of comparison.

Origin: L *super*, above + *latus*, carried

❑ The best is the **superlative** of good.

¹³⁹⁶ **Rotund:** (adj) round in shape; plump, fat; full-toned or sonorous.

Origin: L *rota*, wheel

❑ The baby looked very cute when joyous dimples broke into his **rotund** face.

❑ The balloon was swollen into **rotundity**.

❑ **Rotund** stomach.

¹³⁹⁷ **Rotunda:** (n) a round building; especially, one that is round both on the outside and inside; less properly, but very commonly, used for a large round room.

Latin *volvere* to roll

A ‘revolving’ door can ‘roll back’. To ‘evolve’ is to ‘roll out, to unfold and open up’. When you ‘involve’ somebody in your plan, you ‘roll him in’, that is you make him a part of your scheme.

Historically, ‘volume’ meant ‘a roll’ of papyrus. Even today, a single manuscript is called a volume. The word’s generalized sense of ‘bulk, mass’ developed out of the sense of ‘bulk, mass of a book.’

The other words from this root are:

Devolve¹³⁹⁸, **voluble**¹³⁹⁹, **convoluted**¹⁴⁰⁰

Latin *nare* to swim

This Latin root is a cousin of the Sanskrit *snati*, which means ‘he bathes.’ The common Hindi words *snaan* and *na-haana* are from this Sanskrit root.

The words from the Latin *nare* are:

Natation¹⁴⁰¹, **supernatant**¹⁴⁰², **natatorium**¹⁴⁰³

IE *nau-* boat

“Ah!” Are you smiling to see the humble *nau*, on which you have gone boating so often, reveal that it is actually an IE root? Well, the words ‘navy’ and ‘navigation’ are nephews of our *nau*. They are the children of the Latin *navis*, which means ‘a ship.’

¹³⁹⁸ **Devolve:** (v) to come down upon.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *volvere*, to roll

- ❑ The power of governance **devolves** from the Central government to the States, and from the States to the local bodies such as Municipal Committee and the panchayats.
- ❑ When a person dies, his property **devolves** on his legal heirs as per the Succession Act, if he leaves no will. If he does leave a will, the property devolves according to it.

¹³⁹⁹ **Voluble:** (adj) talkative

Origin: L *volvere*, to roll => ‘when words roll down one’s tongue’

- ❑ Alcohol made him **voluble** and he spoke out everything that he had been suppressing since long.

¹⁴⁰⁰ **Convoluted:** (adj) complicated; twisted.

Origins: L *con-*, + *volvere*, to roll

- ❑ Who is the son of the son of your grandfather’s father? That is just a **convoluted** description of your father.
- ❑ The following is the **convoluted** definition of ‘non-hours work’, taken from the draft National Minimum Wage Regulations of 1998.
The hours of non-hours work worked by a worker in a pay reference period shall be the total of the number of hours spent by him during the pay reference period in carrying out the duties required of him under his contract to do non-hours work.

¹⁴⁰¹ **Natation:** (n) swimming

Origin: L *nare*, to swim

- ❑ Everyone should know at least the simple **rudiments** of **natation**. You never know when you might need it.

¹⁴⁰² **Supernatant:** (n) that which floats over the surface.

Origin: L *super*, over + *nare*, to swim

- ❑ Put mud in a glass of water. Stir it. You will see the whole water get murky. Now take the spoon out and leave the glass undisturbed for an hour. The part that has settled down is called the sediment. The almost clear liquid overlying the soil deposit is called the **supernatant**.

¹⁴⁰³ **Natatorium:** (n) an indoor swimming pool.

Origin: L *nare*, to swim

- ❑ The swimming competitions of the Olympic Games are held in a **natatorium**.

The Greek brother of *nau* is *naus*, again meaning ‘a ship’ and a sailor is called *nautes*. The **progeny** of *naus* and *nautes* is: **nausea**¹⁴⁰⁴, **nautical**¹⁴⁰⁵, ‘astronaut’ and ‘noise’. An astronaut literally means ‘a sailor among stars’ (how poetic!). Noise came from *nausea* and so initially meant ‘discomfort, sickness.’ Slowly, it started being used predominantly for discomfiting, sickening sounds.

Since the ship sails in the sea, let us also discuss a root for sea. That root is the Latin *mare*, meaning ‘sea’ found in **marine**¹⁴⁰⁶ and **maritime**¹⁴⁰⁷.

Remember the ‘mermaids’ that you read about in your childhood fairy tales? They were so called because they were ‘maidens of the sea.’ A vessel that can navigate under the sea is called a submarine. The words **marsh**¹⁴⁰⁸, **morass**¹⁴⁰⁹, **mire**¹⁴¹⁰ and **quagmire**¹⁴¹¹ are cousins of **marine** and **maritime**.

¹⁴⁰⁴ **Nausea:** (n) sea-sickness; a feeling of illness with the inclination to vomit.

Origin: Gk *naus*, ship

- ☐ The people who are suffering from **nausea** are **nauseated**; something that causes **nausea** is **nauseous**.

¹⁴⁰⁵ **Nautical:** (adj) related with sailors, ships or navigation.

Origin: Gk *naus*, ship

- ☐ A **nautical** mile is a unit of length used by sea navigators and is equal to 1.852 km (1 mile = 1.609 km)
- ☐ Central Institute of Fisheries, **Nautical** and Engineering Training offers a B.Sc. in **Nautical** Science.

¹⁴⁰⁶ **Marine:** (adj) related with sea

Origin: L *mare*, sea

- ☐ **marine** life, **marine** soldiers, **marine** exports, **marine** pollution

¹⁴⁰⁷ **Maritime:** (adj) related with sea or shipping.

Origin: L *mare*, sea

- ☐ When it was revealed that the terrorists who had attacked hotel Taj Mahal of Mumbai, had entered the city by the sea, a serious question mark was put on the **maritime** security of the country.
- ☐ April 5 is marked as the National **Maritime** Day in the Indian calendar in order to **commemorate** the date on which for the first time a ship set sail with the Indian flag flying high on it. The year was 1919 and the ship was SS Loyalty of the Scindia Steam Navigation Company. It sailed from Bombay to the United Kingdom.

¹⁴⁰⁸ **Marsh:** (n) a wetland.

Origin: related with L *mare*

- ☐ The **marsh** was declared as a Reserved Forest to protect its ecosystem from being destroyed by construction nearby, felling of trees and dumping of waste there. Several migratory water birds came to the **marsh** for breeding.

¹⁴⁰⁹ **Morass:** (n) a **marsh**, a soft, wet ground.

Origin: related with L *mare*

- ☐ In the very first physics coaching class, he found himself in a **morass** of numbers and theorems and proofs.

¹⁴¹⁰ **Mire:** (n) a **marsh** (v) to become trapped in a **marsh** or a wrongful activity.

- ☐ Meera’s car became **mired** in mud.
- ☐ He had gone to Mumbai to find a job but became **mired** in the underworld.

¹⁴¹¹ **Quagmire:** (n) a soft muddy surface which sinks in when you set foot on it, therefore taking you further in.

- ☐ Meera looked around for help. There was no one in the heavy rain. She **frantically** raced her brain on how to get the car out of that **quagmire**.
- ☐ His father scolded him, reasoned with him, threatened to disown him—did everything he could—to make him get out of the **quagmire** of crime.

Exercise

Movere, ag-, citare, gradi:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The dacoit *made the child afraid* by his loud, angry voice.
(a) intimidated the child (b) abominated the child (c) made the child abominable (d) wavered the child (e) agonized the child
2. The decision to bar women from driving cars was criticized as being *one that pushed the society into the past centuries*.
(a) anterograde (b) retrogressive (c) redacting (d) reactionary (e) retroactive
3. He was accused of *theft*.
(a) stratagem (b) ruse (c) cogency (d) exiguousness (e) larceny
4. The practice of Sati was *disgusting, hateworthy*.
(a) reactionary (b) agonizing (c) antagonistic (d) coagulating (e) abominable
5. He *was someone who became afraid too easily*.
(a) was squat (b) was exiguous (c) was reactionary (d) was timorous (e) was intimidated
6. He *gave a well-presented and convincing* argument.
(a) a cogitated (b) an assayed (c) a coagulated (d) a redacted (e) a cogent
7. He *motivated* her to participate in the talent hunt competition.
(a) actuated (b) dismayed (c) cogitated (d) abominated (e) agitated
8. The government found it hard to *revive* the collapsed textile industry.
(a) incite (b) redact (c) waver (d) resuscitate (e) retrogress
9. The court expressed its *disappointment* over the poor law and order situation in the state.
(a) dismay (b) exigency (c) trepidation (d) commotion (e) ruse
10. She couldn't find the way to the *egress*.
(a) female eagle (b) exit (c) past (d) future (e) attack
11. He had a *lifestyle marked by spending money like water*.
(a) an exiguous lifestyle (b) an exigent lifestyle (c) a profligate lifestyle (d) a dismaying lifestyle (e) a sporadic lifestyle

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (e) 4. (e) 5. (d) 6. (e) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (a) 10. (b) 11. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Peak: A _____
2. A person who calculates insurance risks: A _____
3. Urgent: E _____
4. Violation of a law, command, or duty: T _____
5. Noisy disturbance: C _____
6. A clever trick used to mislead an enemy: S _____
7. The dominant theme of a literary or an artistic work: L _____
8. The lead actor or character of a story: P _____
9. Curse: A _____
10. A Jewish temple: S _____

11. Effective from a past date: R_____
12. Theft: L_____
13. One who refuses to compromise: I_____
14. Very little: E_____
15. Unthinking wastage of money: P_____
16. Fear: T_____

Answers:

apex, actuary, exigent, transgression, commotion, stratagem, leitmotif, protagonist, abomination, synagogue, retroactive, larceny, intransigent, exiguous, profligacy, trepidation

Ire, cedere, linquere:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. He *agreed* to his demand.
(a) ceded (b) roved (c) acceded (d) deceased (e) seceded
2. The child *started breaking the law*.
(a) became dilapidated (b) became delinquent (c) relinquished the law (d) became capricious about the law (e) started reckoning the law.
3. He *licked the boots of the politician*.
(a) was concomitant to the politician (b) was capricious towards the politician (c) was a delinquent supporter of the politician (d) was the politician's lackey (e) was a vagabond
4. The king *surrendered* his border state to his neighbouring kingdom.
(a) ceded (b) acceded (c) conceded (d) interceded (e) receded
5. He *soothed* her fears.
(a) acceded to (b) conceded (c) receded (d) allayed (e) ceded
6. He gave *an inane* answer.
(a) a silly (b) a calculated (c) a negligent (d) an unstopping (e) a rebellious
7. The announcement of the chief guest's arrival caused *a stoppage* of the noise made by the audience.
(a) cession (b) cessation (c) secession (d) cordoning (e) sedition
8. Before hiring a domestic servant, one must check *his background and his prior whereabouts*.
(a) precedents (b) antecedents (c) itinerary (d) recesses (e) legacy
9. He was suspended for *negligence* of duty.
(a) caprice (b) relic (c) cessation (d) secession (e) dereliction
10. The circus *was itinerant*.
(a) kept moving from one place to the other (b) had a fixed travel plan (c) was coming (d) was facing ruin (e) was silly
11. They travelled in *a bus which was old and falling apart*.
(a) concomitant (b) seditious (c) vagrant (d) delinquent (e) rickety

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (e) 10. (a) 11. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Crack: F_____
2. Death notice: O_____

3. To separate from a union: S _____
4. A line of policemen that blocks off an area to general access: C _____
5. Something come down to one from one's ancestors or predecessors: L _____
6. A dark, unused corner of a room: R _____
7. Servile follower: L _____
8. A homeless wanderer: V _____
9. Travel plan: I _____
10. A sudden, unpredictable change of the mind: C _____
11. Object or monument left behind from the past time: R _____
12. Rebellion against government: S _____

Answers:

fissure, obituary, secede, cordon, legacy, recess, lackey, vagrant/vagabond, itinerary, caprice, relic, sedition

Venire, currere, fugere, errare:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. The two parties signed a *contract*.
(a) convention (b) covenant (c) contravention (d) venture (e) parvenu
2. The car had rammed into the truck so badly that it was difficult to *take out* the passengers trapped inside.
(a) extricate (b) lambaste (c) mar (d) convene (e) venture
3. The electricity supply was *irregular*.
(a) erratic (b) erroneous (c) inerrant (d) aberrant (e) errant
4. All the friends *agreed* on the issue.
(a) convened (b) took recourse (c) were brusque (d) concurred (e) careered
5. He gave the book *one quick* glance and threw it away.
(a) a cursory (b) an intricate (c) a coddled (d) a filched (e) a brusque
6. Many NGOs came forward to provide *support* to the victims of the cyclone.
(a) souvenir (b) provenance (c) succor (d) incursion (e) subterfuge
7. The meeting between the two old classmates was *accidental*.
(a) aberrant (b) erratic (c) discursive (d) adventitious (e) cursory
8. They sought *shelter* in a temple.
(a) recourse (b) succor (c) refuge (d) subterfuge (e) advent
9. He was *not afraid to take risks*.
(a) was venturesome (b) was adventitious (c) was a fugitive (d) was brusque (e) was burly
10. He said that his failure to meet his deadline was *a one-off abnormal event*, not a routine.
(a) an erratum (b) a windfall (c) a subterfuge (d) an aberration (e) an incursion
11. It is a famous story of this country but its *origin* is unknown.
(a) refuge (b) incursion (c) discourse (d) advent (e) provenance

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (c) 9. (a) 10. (d) 11. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. To come in between: I _____
2. To steal little things: F _____
3. A formal talk about a subject: D _____
4. A person who has newly become rich but still lacks the sophistication of the upper classes: P _____
5. A place that offers shelter: R _____
6. A person or thing that you go to for help of protection: R _____
7. A clever trick intended to cheat, escape from something or hide something: S _____
8. Origin: P _____
9. Wandering from one topic to the other: D _____
10. Arrival: A _____
11. That which comes before: P _____
12. A sketch or a description of a person in which his characteristics are comically exaggerated: C _____

Answers:

intervene, filch, discourse, parvenu, refuge, recourse, subterfuge, provenance, discursive, advent, precursor, caricature

Vehere, via, portare, latus, rota, volvere, nare, nau-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The story *had many complicated twists and turns*.
(a) was maritime (b) was in a morass (c) was nauseous (d) was convoluted (e) was prolate
2. He denied the allegations *very strongly*.
(a) nauseatingly (b) vehemently (c) importunately (d) in a trivial manner (e) deviously
3. He used many *not straight* methods to ruin his competitors and emerge as a market leader.
(a) devious (b) purported (c) rotund (d) inopportune (e) pervious
4. He did not understand the *meaning* of her statement.
(a) deportment (b) rapport (c) portfolio (d) purport (e) prelate
5. These sandals are *in fashion* these days.
(a) pervious (b) inveighed (c) in vogue (d) reverberating (e) in deportment
6. It was a *vexatious* issue.
(a) an irritating (b) a complicated (c) a needlessly lengthened (d) a difficult to interpret (e) a taken up at the wrong time
7. He *collected* articles on the partition of India into a book.
(a) collated (b) devolved (c) inveighed (d) dilated (e) mired
8. They *wandered away* from the main topic.
(a) inveighed (b) obviated (c) disported (d) deviated (e) comported
9. She *talked quite a lot* about the dictatorship in her country.
(a) was superlative (b) was dilatory (c) was vehement (d) was an envoy (e) was voluble
10. She remained *unmoved* by his tears.
(a) mired in (b) impervious to (c) dilatory about (d) importunate (e) devious

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (e) 10. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A fleet of cars or military vehicles which travels together with an important vehicle to ensure its safety: C _____
2. To expel from a country: D _____
3. A diplomatic agent: E _____
4. Extreme happiness: E _____
5. A place where a river is shallow enough to be crossed on foot: F _____
6. Very strong worded or angry criticism or scolding: I _____
7. To make unwelcome demands: I _____
8. Profitable: L _____
9. A feeling of illness with the inclination to vomit: N _____
10. Flattened at the poles: O _____
11. To make unnecessary: O _____
12. Fat: P _____
13. A soft muddy surface which sinks in when you set foot on it, therefore taking you further in.: Q _____
14. To echo: R _____
15. A relationship in which both sides feel good about and trust each other: R _____
16. A round building; especially, one that is round both on the outside and inside: R _____

Answers:

convoy, deport, envoy, elation, ford, invective, importune, lucrative, nausea, oblate, obviate, portly, quagmire, reverberate, rapport, rotunda

TO MOVE UP, AFTER OR TO THE SIDE

Latin *salire* **to jump**

Just look at the wonderful images behind the words result and insult. ‘Result’ is what ‘jumps back’ at you when you do something! And, to ‘insult’ somebody is to ‘jump upon’ him (the prefix *in-* here means ‘on, at’) and so the word has the **connotation** of attacking somebody.

Two women were talking in a park.

Suman: “Kanta didi, did you see Surya yesterday? He was so delighted that he was actually doing **somersaults**¹⁴¹² here in the park!”

Kanta: “Yes, I saw him. Chanda too was standing nearby, laughing. I think he proposed and she accepted.”

Suman: “Hmm, so we will have a marriage in the colony soon? Good! But, this Chanda, she is a remarkably **resilient**¹⁴¹³ woman, I must say. I’ve heard that her engagement broke just a year ago? And that, two months later, she had already hitched another man, who also left her after seven months. Mrs. Mehta told me that. Now, within three months of his exit, she has said yes to this Surya! On the other hand are some people I know, who could not recover from heartbreak even after years.”

Kanta: “Arrey Sumi, you are so innocent. Heart has nothing to do with it, dear. You are new here, you do not know. That Chanda and her mother are **artful** women. I wouldn’t be surprised if Chanda is just **feigning** her love to Surya so that she can marry his money. If there ever were any scheming women, this mother and daughter are them.”

Suman: “Oh really? Is that so? Poor Surya...he was so **exultant**¹⁴¹⁴ yesterday! They are just fooling him then?”

Kanta: “I am almost sure. He would not have **exulted** so much if he knew the things that I do.”

Kanta lowered her voice. Suman inched closer to her.

Kanta: “The only **salient**¹⁴¹⁵ feature of this Chanda’s life has been her affairs. That is all that girl could think of. She was with my Neetu in school. As early as in class seventh, she would tell her mother that she was going to library, and

¹⁴¹² **Somersault:** (n) a complete forward or backward revolution of the body hinged on one’s head, with the knees bent close to the chest.
Origin: L *super*, over + *saltus*, leap

¹⁴¹³ **Resilient:** (adj) capable of bouncing back after having been compressed or after suffering a misfortune.
Origin: L *re-*, back + *salire*, to jump

¹⁴¹⁴ **Exultant:** (adj) jumping up in joy.
Origin: L *ex-*, out + *salire*, to jump

¹⁴¹⁵ **Salient:** (adj) the most noticeable, the most noteworthy.
Origin: L *salire*, to jump => ‘that which jumps into your notice’

then would go to some park and read cheap, **salacious**¹⁴¹⁶ novels on rent. She tried to corrupt my Neetu too, but thank god, my daughter was sensible and told me. I immediately forbade her from befriending such girls. She thanks me to this date for that timely **intercession**. Anyway, from those **salacious** novels, madam Chanda proceeded onto, well, a lot more. You were amazed at just three lovers in a year? Ask us! In her school and college, her affairs used to be as short as the clothes she wore! Every day, a new boy would come to drop her home, and sometimes—many times—a whole carful of boys. We were sick and tired, I tell you. What would the young children in the colony learn from such a **debauched**¹⁴¹⁷ lifestyle? But no, what did this girl care?”

Just then, Mrs Sehgal waved her hand from afar. The two women waved back with smiles. Noticing her coming towards them, Kanta muttered to Suman, “I cannot stand this **vixen**¹⁴¹⁸ for a moment! Her husband started going to another woman because of her bad temper. But instead of working on her problem, she has become even more **irritable**¹⁴¹⁹. I hope she leaves soon.”

Mrs. Sehgal sat beside them and exchanged pleasantries. The three women talked on **desultorily**¹⁴²⁰. They asked about each other’s children, when were their exams coming? It was such a torture for the poor kids to study in such heat. The **erratic** power supply made matters worse. And, just like the electricity, the maids too played **truant** and did not come for days at end, and still, felt not the slightest shame in demanding an increase in the wages each month. As if money grew on trees. Everything was getting so expensive! The government seemed to be just sleeping. By the way, Mr Mehta had walked in his sleep till as far as the colony’s gate two nights before. If the guard had not been alert, god knows where he may have wandered off to...

“Leave! Leave! Leave!” Suman shouted silently at Mrs Sehgal at each word of the above conversation. The stupid woman had interrupted Kanta didi just when the talk had become spicy and now, was not even leaving. Finally, unable to bear Mrs. Sehgal and the dull conversation any more, Suman **sallied**¹⁴²¹, “My own Mintu would be wondering where his mummy has wandered off to. Mintu’s papa is also about to come home. So, I guess I will leave.” She got up and looked meaningfully at Kanta didi, conveying that they would resume their Chanda-chat soon. Both Kanta didi and Mrs Sehgal smiled a warm farewell to her.

Mrs. Sehgal: (watching Suman go) “She looks so innocent!”

Kanta: “Hah! She only looks innocent. You should have heard her talk. For the past one hour, she’s been doing nothing but **assailing**¹⁴²² anybody and everybody of our colony. I just kept listening to her **calumnies**¹⁴²³. And, Mrs. Sehgal, I was shocked! Umm...shall I tell you something? This Suman was especially **vicious** about Chanda; she

¹⁴¹⁶ **Salacious:** (adj) lustful, indecent.

Origin: L *salire*, to jump => ‘a male animal fond of leaping on a female’

¹⁴¹⁷ **Debauched:** (adj) corrupted; excessively lost in pleasures of the senses.

¹⁴¹⁸ **Vixen:** (n) a female fox; a quarrelsome or evil woman.

¹⁴¹⁹ **Irritable:** (adj) getting irritated at little things.

¹⁴²⁰ **Desultory:** (adj) jumping from one thing to another; random; lacking order.

Origin: L *de-* + *salire*, to leap => ‘to leap from one thing to another’. A horserider who rid two or three horses at once, leaping from one to the other was called a **desultor**.

¹⁴²¹ **Sally:** (v) to make a witty remark, to rush out suddenly.

Origin: L *salire*, to leap

¹⁴²² **Assail:** (v) to attack.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *salire*, to jump

❑ The minister received three bullets shot from close quarters by unidentified **assailants** who **accosted** him on two motorcycles as he took his morning walk around his bungalow.

Related word: **assault**. It has the same etymology and same meaning.

❑ A 40-year-old Indian man living in Australia was **assaulted** and racially abused by a gang of white men who had entered his yard after damaging the back fence of his house.

¹⁴²³ **Opprobrium:** (n) **slander**

kept asking me more about her and from her talk, I **surmised**¹⁴²⁴ that she has been asking others too. I cannot even tell you what all she was saying about Chanda, our dear Chanda, can you imagine that? The intentions of somebody who can make up such **salacious** stories about somebody as innocent and **unassailable**¹⁴²⁵ as Chanda, are definitely not good. I think that this Suman **fancies** Surya herself and is jealous of Chanda's good fortune. God knows what such women may do out of jealousy! Has a husband, has a child, but no, she will still eye somebody else's fiancé! You are Chanda's *chachi*. I think you should pass the matter through her ears once. She is like our daughter after all, isn't she?"

Latin *scandare* to climb

To 'ascend' is to climb up, to 'descend' is to climb down, and to **transcend**¹⁴²⁶, climb across. The other words into the business of climbing are: **condescend**¹⁴²⁷, **echelon**¹⁴²⁸

Latin *vertere* to turn

When you 'reverse' a car, you turn it back (L. *re-*, back). An 'anniversary' comes when the year turns, from first to second, second to **third**, or 24th to 25th (L. *annus*, year). In a cricket match of India 'versus' Australia, the two teams are turned against one another.

The 'vertebrates' are the animals that are able to turn around their head as well as their torso. They can do so because they have a spinal cord.

The totality of everything that there is, is called 'Universe'. The word literally means 'turned into one' (Latin *unus*, one). The word 'University' is a shortening of the Latin phrase '*universitas magistrorum et scholarium*' which meant 'a universe of masters and scholars.' Waiting to step into your private universe are the following *vertere* words:

Vertere-1: **avert**¹⁴²⁹, **aversion**¹⁴³⁰, **averse**¹⁴³¹

¹⁴²⁴ **Surmise**: (v) guess, conclude from insufficient data.

¹⁴²⁵ **Unassailable**: (adj) one who cannot be attacked.

¹⁴²⁶ **Transcend**: (v) to surpass; to go across.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *scandere*, to climb

❑ Raj Kapoor's *Awara* is a classic film that **transcended** time and geography.

❑ The Hindu religion believes in soul mates and relationships that **transcend** lifetimes. Marriage is a **putative** *saat janam ka bandhan*.

Putative: (adj) supposed, generally considered to be.

¹⁴²⁷ **Condescend**: (v) to look down upon; to agree to do something as a favour

Origin: L *con-* + *de-*, down + *scandere*, to climb

¹⁴²⁸ **Echelon**: (n) a rank.

Origin: L *scandere*, to climb -> *scalae*, ladder -> Fr. *Eschelon*, a step of a ladder

❑ He joined the company in the lowest **echelon** and gradually worked his way up to the highest **echelons**.

¹⁴²⁹ **Avert**: (v) to prevent from happening.

Origin: L *a-*, away + *vertere*, to turn

❑ Strikes are a regular feature in India. The government lacks the **resolve** to **avert** a strike and the labour unions are stubborn and insensitive to the hardships their strikes cause to the general public.

❑ A major air collision was narrowly **averted** over the Indian Ocean between two passenger aircrafts which were flying at the same level.

¹⁴³⁰ **Aversion**: (n) dislike

Origin: L *a-*, away + *vertere*, to turn

❑ Sumi has an **aversion** to loud music and loud people.

¹⁴³¹ **Averse**: (adj) disinclined

Origin: same as above

❑ Sumi was **averse** to going to the rock show with us.

Vertere-2: **adverse**¹⁴³², **adversity**¹⁴³³, **adversary**¹⁴³⁴

Vertere-3: **advert**¹⁴³⁵, **inadvertently**¹⁴³⁶, **animadversion**¹⁴³⁷

Vertere-4: **divert**¹⁴³⁸, **diversity**¹⁴³⁹

Vertere-5: **universal**¹⁴⁴⁰, **controvert**¹⁴⁴¹

Vertere-6: **incontrovertible**¹⁴⁴², **extrovert**¹⁴⁴³, **introvert**¹⁴⁴⁴

¹⁴³² **Adverse:** (adj) opposite, not favourable.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *vertere*, to turn

- ☐ The national leaders at the time of Independence believed that the British rule had had an **adverse** impact on Indian industry, that the industry had been stunted by the **imperial** policies.

¹⁴³³ **Adversity:** (n) difficult situation; unfavourable situation.

Origin: same as **adverse**

- ☐ The family members faced every **adversity** together.

¹⁴³⁴ **Adversary:** (n) enemy; opponent.

Origin: same as **adverse**

- ☐ The brave hero of the movie defeated every **adversary** and emerged victorious in the end.

¹⁴³⁵ **Advert:** (adj) to refer to.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *vertere*, to turn

- ☐ The lawyer told the students about the various offences **adverted** to under the Section 195 of the Criminal Procedure Court.

¹⁴³⁶ **Inadvertantly:** (adv) unintentionally

- ☐ Sulekha's husband had told her not to tell anyone that he had recently appeared for a job interview. However, the fact **inadvertently** slipped out of her mouth when she was talking with her friends.

¹⁴³⁷ **Animadversion:** (n) critical remark.

Origin: L *animus*, mind + *ad-*, to + *vertere*, to turn => 'to apply one's mind to' => 'to analyze thoroughly'

- ☐ The two old women's conversation was a series of **animadversions** on fashion, television, religion, politics, daughters-in-law, sons, education, weather, old age and so on.

¹⁴³⁸ **Divert:** (v) to turn away from.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *vertere*, to turn

- ☐ The clanging noise outside the classroom **diverted** the attention of the students.
- ☐ Because the main road was being repaired, the traffic was **diverted** to the smaller roads.

Note: The word 'divorce' is a derivative of divert!

¹⁴³⁹ **Diversity:** (n) variety

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *vertere*, to turn => 'to turn in different directions'

- ☐ India has unity in **diversity**. That is, in India, people from **diverse** religions, regions and cultures live together as one nation.

¹⁴⁴⁰ **Universal:** (adj) related with the universe, applicable to all, general.

Origin: L *uni-*, one + *vertere*, turn => 'all together'

- ☐ It is a **universal** truth that one reaps what one sows.

¹⁴⁴¹ **Controvert:** (adj) to deny; contradict, prove false.

Origin: L *contra*, opposite + *vertere*, to turn => 'to turn against'

- ☐ He refused to **controvert** the **slander hurled** against him by the newspapers; he thought his record will speak for itself.

¹⁴⁴² **Incontrovertible:** (adj) that which cannot be denied or proved false.

- ☐ The detective produced **incontrovertible** evidence that the dead man had been killed by his own wife.

¹⁴⁴³ **Extrovert:** (n) one who expresses herself well and likes talking to people.

Origin: L *extra-*, out + *vertere*, to turn => 'turned outwards'

- ☐ In the movie *Sholay*, Veeru and Basanti are **extroverts**.

¹⁴⁴⁴ **Introvert:** (n) a person who keeps his thoughts to himself and in general talks little.

Origin: L *intra-*, in + *vertere*, to turn => 'turned inwards'

- ☐ In the movie *Sholay*, Jai and Radha are **introverts**.

*Vertere-7: convert*¹⁴⁴⁵, *converse*¹⁴⁴⁶, *conversant*¹⁴⁴⁷

*Vertere-8: wayward*¹⁴⁴⁸, *froward*¹⁴⁴⁹, *untoward*¹⁴⁵⁰

*Vertere-9: pervert*¹⁴⁵¹, *traverse*¹⁴⁵², *prosaic*¹⁴⁵³

*Vertere-10: vertex*¹⁴⁵⁴, *vertigo*¹⁴⁵⁵, *vortex*¹⁴⁵⁶

¹⁴⁴⁵ **Convert:** (v) to change one's religion or belief system.

Origin: L *con-* + *vertere*, to turn

☐ Baba Saheb Ambedkar **converted** to Buddhism.

¹⁴⁴⁶ **Converse:** (v) to talk.

Origin: L *con-* + *vertere*, to turn. The Hindi word '*vaartaa*' also means 'a talk' and it too is from the Sanskrit root *vrat-*, meaning 'to turn'

¹⁴⁴⁷ **Conversant:** (adj) familiar with.

Origin: from **converse**

☐ He was well **conversant** with the culture of Saudi Arabia, where his company had deputed him for two years.

¹⁴⁴⁸ **Wayward:** (adj) turned away from the right or the usual path.

Origin: away + *-ward* => 'turned away'. The suffix '*-ward*' is a derivative of L *vertere*, to turn

☐ The father thought of a plan to bring his **wayward** son on the right track.

¹⁴⁴⁹ **Froward:** (adj) unruly, not easily managed.

Origin: fro, against + *-ward*, turn

☐ The father tried his best but could not tame his **froward** son.

¹⁴⁵⁰ **Untoward:** (adj) unfavourable

Origin: un + *to*, towards + *-ward* => 'that which is not turned towards you' => 'that which is turned against you'

¹⁴⁵¹ **Pervert:** (n) morally corrupted person; (v) to corrupt; to distort.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *vertere*, to turn => 'to turn through'

☐ The journalist was found guilty of **perverting** the news stories according to his personal beliefs.

☐ The Marquis de Sade was a **pervert**. He held **orgies**, which frequently involved children, **inflicted** violence on the prostitutes that he visited and asked them to whip him back and indulged in group sex.

¹⁴⁵² **Traverse:** (v) to go across; to travel

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *vertere*, to turn

☐ Akako gave up her **lucrative** banker's job to discover the joys of travelling. She **traversed** Asia through the land route from Japan, stopping in every country along the way, including India. She had been travelling continuously for three years when she entered Iran.

☐ There are 6,00,000 villages in the country, tens of thousands of which are located at a distance of more than 10 km from a Primary Health Centre and devoid of **traversable** roads.

¹⁴⁵³ **Prosaic:** (adj) boring, dull, commonplace.

Origin: from 'prose'. Etymology of 'prose':

L *pro-*, forward + *vertere*, to turn => 'to turn forward' => 'straightforward talk' => 'talk having no poetic imagery at all' => 'dull, unimaginative'

☐ The **prosaic** writing style of the novelist failed to impress the readers.

¹⁴⁵⁴ **Vertex:** (n) an end-point of a triangle; a peak.

Origin: L *vertere*, to turn => 'the turning point'

¹⁴⁵⁵ **Vertigo:** (n) dizziness

Origin: L *vertere*, to turn => 'when the whole world seems to turn'

¹⁴⁵⁶ **Vortex:** (n) a whirlpool.

Origin: L *vertere*, to turn

☐ "It is one of the worst effects of prosperity to make a man a **vortex** instead of a fountain; so that, instead of throwing out, he learns only to draw in." Henry Ward Beecher

*Vertere-11: versatile*¹⁴⁵⁷, *subversion*¹⁴⁵⁸, *suzerainty*¹⁴⁵⁹, *tergiversate*¹⁴⁶⁰

*Vertere-12: obverse*¹⁴⁶¹, *converge*¹⁴⁶², *diverge*¹⁴⁶³

IE *sekw-* **to follow**

“Secretary! Follow me!”

This was the command that the **domineering** (and scheming) *saas* gave to her secretary after every few minutes in the movie ‘*Biwi Ho to Aisi?*’. This was Salman Khan’s first movie and he had played *devar* to the biwi of the title, who was played by Rekha.

It is the job of secretaries to follow their masters and the word looks similar to *sekw-* too. But it is not derived from here. Secretary comes from secret-ary; so, by definition, he is the **discreet** man who knows and keeps all his boss’ secrets. A secretary is called *sachiv* in Hindi, and that is our word from the root *sekw-*. The sanskrit word *Sachan* means **servitude**¹⁴⁶⁴, a following around.

In *sachiv* and *sachan*, the ‘following after’ is done for bread and butter, but you may also follow someone by **volition**, with no reason apart from the fact that you like being with him or her. That’s where the sanskrit word *sachi* comes in. It means friendship, intimacy. And, the person with whom you have *sachi* is your *sakha* or *sakhi*.

Just like *sachi* in Sanskrit, we have the word *socius* in Latin. It too is used for a companion or a friend. *Socius* is the root of ‘society’, ‘social’, ‘associate’ and ‘dissociate’.

Then, we have the Latin root *sequi*, to follow. The words from it are:

¹⁴⁵⁷ **Versatile:** (adj) having many talents.

Origin: L *vertere*, to turn => ‘turned in many directions’

☐ Aamir Khan is a **versatile** actor. He can do action, comedy, romance and art cinema equally well.

¹⁴⁵⁸ **Subversion:** (n) overthrowing from the very foundations; to weaken the foundations of something.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *vertere*, to turn => ‘to turn from under’

☐ The media claimed that the court acquittal of a Cabinet Minister in a murder charge because of lack of evidence was a total **subversion** of justice. They said that the evidence had been deliberately held back by the police, the witnesses had been **suborned** and that the judges too had not pressed the police to be more serious.

¹⁴⁵⁹ **Suzerainty:** (n) lordship, **dominion**.

Origin: L *sub-*, up + *versum*, turned => ‘turned upwards’ => ‘the one who dominates’

☐ Most Indian states accepted the **suzerainty** of the East India Company.

¹⁴⁶⁰ **Tergiversate:** (v) to avoid giving a straightforward answer or taking a clear action.

Origin: L *tergum*, back + *versare*, to turn

☐ After long and hesitant **tergiversation**, the small telecom company decided to take up the offer of merger with the biggest telecom company of the country.

¹⁴⁶¹ **Obverse:** (adj) the head side of a coin; the opposite side of something; something which is narrower at the base than at the top (therefore looks like it has been turned upside down).

Origin: L *ob-*, toward + *versare*, to turn

☐ Indian currency notes have Gandhi’s face and the promissory note on the **obverse** side and the denomination of the note written in 15 Indian languages on the **reverse** side.

¹⁴⁶² **Converge:** (v) to gather at one point.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *vertere*, to turn

☐ The point where all the reflected rays from a mirror **converge** is called its focus.

¹⁴⁶³ **Diverge:** (v) to spread apart.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *vertere*, to turn

☐ White light **diverges** into seven colours upon passing through a prism.

¹⁴⁶⁴ **Servitude:** (n) being in service to somebody.

☐ Cinderella lived in virtual **servitude** with her evil stepmother and stepsisters.

Sequi-1: **sect**¹⁴⁶⁵, sequel, sequence

Sequi-2: consequence, **consequential**¹⁴⁶⁶, **ensue**¹⁴⁶⁷

Sequi-3: pursue, **persecute**¹⁴⁶⁸, **prosecute**¹⁴⁶⁹

Sequi-4: execute, **obsequious**¹⁴⁷⁰, **subsequent**¹⁴⁷¹

Sequi-5: suitor, **sequester**¹⁴⁷²

A 'sequel' follows what happened before. A 'sequence' is a set of things, one following the other. A 'consequence' is that which follows from a set of conditions. 'Pursue' comes from L. *pro-*, forward+ *sequi* and means 'to follow in order to overtake, capture or kill.' To 'execute' is to follow out to the end. A 'suitor' is a man who follows either a woman, asking her to marry him, or a judge, asking him to grant him justice.

The English word sign is in this family too. A 'sign' is an identifying mark that you follow. The other 'sign' words are:

¹⁴⁶⁵ **Sect:** (n) a group of people within a larger group who differ from the rest of the group in certain beliefs or practices and are, therefore, distinct.

Origin: L *sequi*, to follow -> *secta*, a path to follow

- ☐ Shias and Sunnis are two **sects** of Islam.

¹⁴⁶⁶ **Consequential:** (adj) very important; resulting.

Origin: L *con-*,together + *sequi*, to follow => 'that which follows, one who has many followers'

- ☐ He was a **consequential** politician.
- ☐ The President of the company accepted responsibility for the wrong expansion move and the **consequential** losses suffered by the company, and resigned.

¹⁴⁶⁷ **Ensue:** (v) follow

Origin: L *en-*, in + *sequi*, to follow

- ☐ A long legal battle **ensued** after one brother **usurped** a plot of the other.

¹⁴⁶⁸ **Persecute:** (v) to pursue persistently, to harass continuously.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *sequi*, to follow

- ☐ The government **persecuted** the minorities in order to keep the majority community happy.

¹⁴⁶⁹ **Prosecute:** (v) to put on trial in a court of law.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *sequi*, to follow => 'to follow up on charges'

- ☐ The two sides that fight a court case are—**prosecution** and defence. **Prosecution** tries to prove the charges on the accused and the defence tries to prove the accused innocent.

¹⁴⁷⁰ **Obsequious:** (adj) wagging his tail like a servant.

Origin: L *ob-*, to + *sequi*, to follow

¹⁴⁷¹ **Subsequent:** (adj) following, happening afterwards.

- ☐ After winning the election, the politician was surrounded by many **obsequious** followers who eagerly did more than he told them to and went to the extent of licking his boots in order to please him and get favors out of him.

Origin: L *sub-*, up + *sequi*,to follow => 'to follow up'

- ☐ Sita gave an *agnipariksha* **subsequent** to Ram's telling her that they could never live together again because she had been with another man.
- ☐ In the movie *Rab ne banaa di Jodi*, the heroine Tani loses her husband-to-be and his family in a bus accident within the first five minutes of the film, and is **subsequently** orphaned when her father suffers a heart attack on hearing the news.

¹⁴⁷² **Sequester:** (v) to isolate; to remove from activity; to take temporary possession of a person's property till he settles his debts.

Origin: L *sequi*, to follow => *sequester*, a follower -> 'a trustee' =, 'one who keeps goods for safekeeping'

- ☐ The lawyers of the murder accused requested the judge to **sequester** the jury because they feared that the wide media discussion of the case could influence the decision of the jury.

Assign, **resignation**¹⁴⁷³, **consign**¹⁴⁷⁴, designation, **sigil**¹⁴⁷⁵, **insignia**¹⁴⁷⁶

And, by the way, a thing that follows the first thing is called 'second.'

¹⁴⁷³ **Resign:** (v) to give up one's job or office; quit, especially by formal notification.

Origin: L *re-*, back, and *signare*, to seal=> 'to unseal, annul.'

¹⁴⁷⁴ **Consign:** (v) to hand over officially to another's care; to assign.

Origin: L *com-* + *signare*, to mark => 'to hand over with an official seal'

- ❑ The dead painter's son **consigned** his paintings to the National Art Gallery.
- ❑ The dead man's son **consigned** his body to flames.

¹⁴⁷⁵ **Sigil:** (n) a seal.

Origin: L *signum*, mark

¹⁴⁷⁶ **Insignia:** (n) a distinguishing mark; a distinguishing mark of a rank.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *signum*, mark

- ❑ The **insignia** of the oil major British Petroleum is a blooming flower.
- ❑ The sub-inspector who risked his life while fighting with terrorists was rewarded with the **insignia** of the Director General of Police on the Republic Day.

Exercise

Salire, scandare, vertere, sekw-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He was *familiar* with the rules of the game.
(a) vertiginous (b) desultory (c) prosaic (d) versatile (e) conversant
2. The students were asked to explain the *most noticeable* features of the Indo-Pak war.
(a) salacious (b) obsequious (c) obverse (d) salient (e) prosaic
3. The satellite *wandered from its designated orbit* and came in a collision course to earth.
(a) became wayward (b) became froward (c) became untoward (d) averted its designated orbit (e) transcended its designated orbit
4. He *attacked* the politician's character.
(a) sallied (b) surmised (c) assailed (d) tergiversated (e) sequestered
5. He was *supposed to be the* author of the book.
(a) the obsequious (b) the vertiginous (c) the persecuted (d) the consigned (e) the putative
6. He *jumped up in joy*.
(a) sequestered (b) exulted (c) traversed (d) subverted (e) animadverted
7. He proved his *ability to bounce back* by opening a new factory days after losing his old one.
(a) resilience (b) suzerainty (c) animadversion (d) sigil (e) versatility
8. It was sad that the government itself *weakened the foundations of* the constitution.
(a) persecuted (b) consigned (c) tergiversated (d) subverted (e) controverted
9. He spent a week *isolated* in the ruined castle.
(a) resigned (b) consigned (c) persecuted (d) prosecuted (e) sequestered
10. He *was disinclined* to going with them.
(a) was averse (b) was adverse to (c) was inadvertent about (d) averted (e) was obverse

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (e) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (e) 10. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Enemy: A _____
2. To look down upon: C _____
3. To isolate: S _____
4. Excessively lost in pleasures of the senses: D _____
5. Critical remark: A _____
6. Jumping from one thing to another: D _____
7. Female fox: V _____
8. One who expresses herself well and likes talking to people: E _____
9. Public disgrace: O _____
10. Morally corrupted person: P _____
11. Dizziness: V _____

12. A complete forward or backward revolution of the body hinged on one's head, with the knees bent close to the chest: S_____
13. To avoid giving a straightforward answer or taking a clear action: T_____
14. A peak: V_____
15. Having many talents: V_____

Answers:

Adversary, condescend, sequester, debauched, animadversion, desultory, vixen, extrovert, opprobrium, pervert, vertigo, somersault, tergiversate, vertex, versatile

POSTURES

Latin *clinare* **to slant**

The words lean (as in ‘she leaned out of the window’, not ‘he was **gaunt**¹⁴⁷⁷ and **lean**¹⁴⁷⁸’), incline, inclination, **disinclination**¹⁴⁷⁹, decline and **recline**¹⁴⁸⁰ are from this root.

A related root is *clivus* meaning slope, and **clambering**¹⁴⁸¹ up the slope we meet **acclivity**¹⁴⁸², **declivity**¹⁴⁸³ and **proclivity**¹⁴⁸⁴.

The Greek **counterpart** of *clinare* is *klinein*. The surface of the Earth slopes from the Equator to the poles. Therefore, the regions having different slopes were called different *klima*. This word became ‘climate’ in English. Slowly, the

¹⁴⁷⁷ **Gaunt:** (adj) extremely thin and bony.

¹⁴⁷⁸ **Lean:** (adj) thin; poor; lacking in richness or income.

- ❑ Sheeta, the panther, was not a hunter of men. He was young and in his prime; but always before he had avoided this hated presence. Of late, he had become more accustomed to it with the passing of many soldiers through his ancient hunting ground, and as the soldiers had frightened away a great part of the game Sheeta had been **wont** to feed upon, the days had been **lean**, and Sheeta was hungry. So, he was ready to hunt man.

Wont: (adj) used to.

¹⁴⁷⁹ **Disinclination:** (n) having no tendency for a particular thing.

- ❑ He was **disinclined** to go for dinner outside.

¹⁴⁸⁰ **Recline:** (v) to lean back.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *clinare*, to slant

- ❑ She **reclined** on the easy chair and lost herself in the novel.
- ❑ He **reclined** on the **bolster** as he watched the TV.

¹⁴⁸¹ **Clamber:** (v) to climb using both hands and feet; to climb with difficulty.

Origin: related with ‘climb’

- ❑ She had planned to slip out of her house through the pipe that ran by her bedroom window. But, as she tried to **clamber** down, she got scared.

¹⁴⁸² **Acclivity:** (n) upward slope.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *clivus*, slope

- ❑ The castle sat on the top of a steep **acclivity**.

¹⁴⁸³ **Declivity:** (n) a downward slope.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *clivus*, slope

- ❑ The boy ran down the steep **declivity** at break-neck speed.

¹⁴⁸⁴ **Proclivity:** (n) natural inclination.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *clivus*, slope

- ❑ He had a **proclivity** to talk with his legs rather than lips.

sense of the word shifted from ‘region’ to ‘the weather associated with that region.’ The more poetic word for climate is **clime**¹⁴⁸⁵.

Another thing that slants is a ladder and that is what the Greek word *klimax* means. “Hey! That’s the source of **climax**¹⁴⁸⁶,” are you exclaiming? Yes, my dear budding etymologist, climax, and also **ant Climax**,¹⁴⁸⁷ has the idea of reaching the top of a ladder.

Latin *cubare* to lie down

The ‘concubine’ of a man is a woman who lies down with him without marriage (L. *com-*, with, together). The Mughal emperors had harems full of concubines. The concubine of a modern day man is more often known as his mistress.

A small chamber where you can lie down and sleep is called a ‘cubicle’.

The young Mrs. Grace Carpenter woke up in the dead of the night. Panting hard, sweating all over, she **groped**¹⁴⁸⁸ for her husband. Yes, he was still there, by her side. It was just a nightmare. All was well. Calm down, she told herself. No one could have come here. It was just a dream. Oh, good lord! What a terrible dream! What a *terrible, terrible* dream! She stayed awake the whole night, fearing that the nightmare may return if she slept.

She never realized that it had not been a nightmare. A man had actually come and laid over her and raped her. As soon as she woke up, he had **flitted**¹⁴⁸⁹ from her room to the next, where Stella Carpenter, her **nubile** sister-in-law was sleeping. He was a dead man, a **demon**, called **Incubus**¹⁴⁹⁰ by all the spirits because of this habit of his.

The other words from this root are

*Quber ‘lay down’ on mounts of gold: incubate*¹⁴⁹¹, *incumbent*¹⁴⁹²

¹⁴⁸⁵ **Clime:** (n) the poetic word for climate.

❑ As the winter set in, the birds migrated to warmer **climes**.

¹⁴⁸⁶ **Climax:** (n) the highest point of a drama.

Origin: Gk *klinein*, to lean -> *klimax*, ladder

❑ The women’s reservation bill, after years of heated debate all over the country and in the parliament, finally reached the **climax** of a parliamentary vote.

¹⁴⁸⁷ **Ant Climax:** (n) an event that is far less dramatic or powerful than expected.

Origin: anti + climax

❑ The audience was expecting that the heroine of the movie would refuse to return to the hero and would choose the second hero who had stood with her in all her difficulties. But no such thing. The hero said sorry once and the heroine smiled and the end credits rolled. The ending was an **anti-climax**. No one wanted the heroine to go back to the hero after the pathetic way in which he had treated her.

¹⁴⁸⁸ **Grope:** (v) to feel with one’s hands, usually because one cannot see clearly.

❑ The blind man **groped** along the staircase.

¹⁴⁸⁹ **Flit:** (v) to fly.

¹⁴⁹⁰ **Incubus:** (n) a mythological male ghost that lay on sleeping women and had sex with them; a nightmare; something that troubles and burdens one’s mind like a nightmare.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *cubare*, to lie => ‘to lie upon’ => ‘the ghost who lies upon sleeping women.’

The female counterpart of **incubus** was **succubus**. She was a female ghost that lay under sleeping men and had sex with them. (L *sub-*, under)

¹⁴⁹¹ **Incubate:** (v) to sit upon eggs to hatch them.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *cubare*, to lie => ‘to lie upon’

¹⁴⁹² **Incumbent:** (adj) current occupant of an office; binding.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *cubare*, to lie => ‘to lie upon’ => ‘currently sitting upon a chair’

❑ The new **incumbent** in the college Principal’s office had a totally different style of functioning from his **predecessor**.

❑ It was **incumbent** upon the eldest son of the family to be the breadwinner for the family after his father’s untimely death.

He was rich but his soul was sold: **recumbent**¹⁴⁹³, **succumb**¹⁴⁹⁴.

The ‘m’ in the last three words landed through the nose—*cumbare* is the nasalized version of *cubare*.

IE *swep-* to sleep

‘*Mujhe neend na aaye*’ is a major love-related problem, though not the only one. Many lovers need to hide their affair from their families, and each morning when they get up, they hope they have not **blurted**¹⁴⁹⁵ out their secret in their **somniloquys**¹⁴⁹⁶. They, like almost everyone, go to their loved ones in their dreams but a few, the **somnambulists**¹⁴⁹⁷, actually start walking to reach them!

If you too are suffering from sleeplessness, cannot find any romantic reasons for it, and even the most boring lecture cannot make you **somnolent**¹⁴⁹⁸, you are probably suffering from **insomnia**¹⁴⁹⁹.

Did you ever notice that the Hindi words for sleeping, *sona*, and dreams, *sapna*, *swapna*, sound quite similar? These words as well as the Latin *somnus* and *sopor* (found in **soporific**¹⁵⁰⁰) have come from *swep-*. The ‘s’ sound of the IE root often changes into ‘h’ in Greek, and so the word ‘hypnosis’ too has the same root.

Latin *dormire* to sleep

A room providing sleeping beds to a number of persons is called a ‘dormitory’. A **dormant**¹⁵⁰¹ volcano has been sleeping for the past several decades.

Dormeor meant sleeping room in French. It became ‘dormer’ in English. The window of the dormer was called, obviously, ‘the dormer window.’ Now, a European house often had an attic—a room with sloped ceiling just under the roof. In order to provide it with air and light, so that it could be used as a sleeping room, a small window was projected from the sloping roof. It was called ‘the dormer window’, or simply ‘the dormer.’ Today, the word ‘dormer’ is used only in the latter sense, and not for a bedroom or its window.

¹⁴⁹³ **Recumbent:** (adj) lying down; leaning back.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *cubare*, to lie

□ The statue **depicted** a **recumbent** woman lying luxuriously on the waves.

¹⁴⁹⁴ **Succumb:** (v) to surrender, give up.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *cubare*, to lie

□ The accident victim **succumbed** to his injuries on the way to the hospital.

¹⁴⁹⁵ **Blurt:** (v) to utter **inadvertently**.

□ Try saying ‘blurt’ without opening your lips. I bet you can’t! The lips are closed tightly at the ‘b’, but then the ‘l’ sound originates in the throat and before you know it, your mouth has opened to let it out.

¹⁴⁹⁶ **Somniloquy:** (n) talking in sleep.

Origin: L *somnus*, sleep + *loqui*, to speak

¹⁴⁹⁷ **Somnambulist:** (n) sleepwalker

Origin: L *somnus*, sleep + *ambulare*, to walk

¹⁴⁹⁸ **Somnolent:** (adj) sleepy, drowsy.

Origin: L *somnus*, sleep

□ A **somnolent** lecture makes you sleepy.

Soporific is an exact synonym.

¹⁴⁹⁹ **Insomnia:** (adj) **chronic** sleeplessness

Origin: L *in-*, without + *somnus*, sleep

¹⁵⁰⁰ **Soporific:** (adj) sleep-producing

Origin: L *sopor*, sleep + *facere*, to make

¹⁵⁰¹ **Dormant:** (adj) sleeping; inactive.

Origin: L *dormire*, to sleep

□ Many animals and trees become **dormant** in winter. This winter sleep is known as **hibernation**.

Latin *quietis* rest, calm

Shh! Mute all sounds and look out for these words as they walk towards you 'quietly', on tiptoe,

Quiet-1: **Quiescent**¹⁵⁰², **requiem**¹⁵⁰³

Quiet-2: **acquiesce**¹⁵⁰⁴, **acquit**¹⁵⁰⁵, **quietude**¹⁵⁰⁶

Quiet-3: **coy**¹⁵⁰⁷, **disquiet**¹⁵⁰⁸

IE *sed-* to sit

A newsreader on Doordarshan informed: “*Jab unke baar baar anurodh karne par bhi sadasyon ne naare lagaana band nahin kiya, toh Adhyaksh mahodya ne sadan ki baithak uttha di.*”

A netaji of a political party promised: “*Hum yeh mudda Sansad ke Monsoon satra mein zarur uthayeinge.*”

Did you ever notice that a *sadan* always sits? ‘*Sadan ki baithak*’ is what a meeting of the *sadan* is called. The Sanskrit word *sadan* means a house or a chamber, places where people sit. A *sadasya* is a ‘sitting member’ of the *sadan*. The Indian Parliament is called *Sansad* because the representatives of people sit together there (Skt. *san-*, together). A session of *Sansad* is called its *satra*.

Sitting is also a **metaphor** for remaining at one place; the ‘settlers’ of a place are the people who have sat down there, forever. They are called the ‘residents’ of that area. The word ‘reside’ has come from L. *re-*, back + *sidere*, to sit and this is how its meaning developed:

‘To sit back’ -> ‘to not move from a place’ -> ‘to live in a place permanently or for a long time’.

The following *sed-* words were found to be sitting on some of the seats arranged for a game of musical chairs at a friend’s house:

¹⁵⁰² **Quiescent:** (adj) calm, inactive, **dormant**.

Origin: L *quietis*, calm

□ He was as **quiescent** as the deep sea.

¹⁵⁰³ **Requiem:** (n) a song or hymn for the dead.

Origin: L *requies*, rest, the first word of the Christian prayer spoken for a dead person

¹⁵⁰⁴ **Acquiesce:** (v) to agree to silently.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *quietis*, calm

□ She did not really want to get married so soon but being the obedient daughter she was, she **acquiesced** to her parents’ wishes.

¹⁵⁰⁵ **Acquit:** (v) to free from blame.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *quietis*, rest => ‘to lay charges to rest’

□ Finding no evidence to prove the charges on the accused, the judge **acquitted** him.

¹⁵⁰⁶ **Quietude:** (n) silence

Origin: L *quietis*, calm

□ Tiya had been very excited about travelling by a ship. But soon, the **monotonous quietude** of the sea began to bore her.

¹⁵⁰⁷ **Coy:** (n) shy, pretentiously shy.

Origin: L *quietis*, shy

□ When the hero complimented the heroine for her beauty, she **coyly** lowered her eyes.

¹⁵⁰⁸ **Disquiet:** (v) disturb

Origin: L *dis-* + *quietis*

□ Matrubhoomi is a **disquieting** film that shows what happens to a son-worshipping society that systematically **decimates** its girls. It is set in a village in which there is such a **dearth** of brides that rich families pay lakhs to get one and the poorer men have no **recourse** other than pornography, homosexuality or rape to satisfy their desire.

Seat-1: seat, **siege**¹⁵⁰⁹, **saddle**¹⁵¹⁰

Seat-2: sediment, **sedate**¹⁵¹¹, **sedentary**¹⁵¹², obsessive

Seat-4: **residue**¹⁵¹³, **supersede**¹⁵¹⁴, **prepossessing**¹⁵¹⁵

Seat-6: **beset**¹⁵¹⁶, **ersatz**¹⁵¹⁷, **assiduous**¹⁵¹⁸

Seat-7: **subsidy**¹⁵¹⁹, **subsidiary**¹⁵²⁰

¹⁵⁰⁹ **Siege:** (v) to surround from all sides; (n) the act of surrounding a city or building from all sides

Origin: L *sedere*, to sit

- ❑ The protestors laid **siege** to the hospital and did not let anybody enter or leave the building.
- ❑ The protestors **besieged** the hospital.

¹⁵¹⁰ **Saddle:** (n) the seat put on an animal for the rider.

Origin: related with L *sedere*, to sit

¹⁵¹¹ **Sedate:** (adj) not easily excited; calm, serious and dignified in manner.

- ❑ In the movie *Rab Ne Bana Di Jodi* the heroine Tani finds her **Staid** husband boring.

¹⁵¹² **Sedentary:** (adj) sitting

Origin: L *sedere*, to sit

- ❑ Those who work in **sedentary** jobs must make a habit of exercising for at least 45 minutes each day in order to avoid weight gain and stay healthy.

¹⁵¹³ **Residue:** (n) left-over

Origin: L *re-*, back + *sedere*, to sit

- ❑ Ash is the **residue** of burnt wood.

¹⁵¹⁴ **Supersede:** (v) to take the place of another.

Origin: L *super-*, over + *sedere*, to sit

- ❑ At the atomic level, Einstein's theory of relativity **superseded** Newton's laws of motions.
- ❑ China **superseded** America as 'the world's biggest polluter.'

¹⁵¹⁵ **Prepossessing:** (adj) attractive, impressive.

Origin: L *pre-*, beforehand + *poti*, master + *sedere*, to sit => 'to control one's mind beforehand'

- ❑ The man had quite a **prepossessing** appearance.

¹⁵¹⁶ **Beset:** (v) surround on all sides; harass.

Origin: be + set

- ❑ Strongly drawn by an ambition to be a full-time writer, but **beset** by family financial crises that continued to the end of his life, Sundar Lal suffered periods of deep depression.

We could also have used the word **beleaguer** in the above sentence. It means the same as **beset**.

¹⁵¹⁷ **Ersatz:** (n) an artificial substitute for the real thing.

Origin: Gmn *ersetzen*, to replace

- ❑ The amusement park had many **ersatz** waterfalls.

¹⁵¹⁸ **Assiduous:** (n) very devoted and hard working.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *sedere*, to sit => 'to sit near'

- ❑ He studied **assiduously** to clear the IAS exam.

¹⁵¹⁹ **Subsidy:** (n) monetary help given by the government or some organization or person.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *sedere*, to sit => 'to sit under' => 'to support'

¹⁵²⁰ **Subsidiary:** (n) subordinate

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *sedere*, to sit => 'sitting under'

- ❑ Maruti Suzuki India Limited is a **subsidiary** of Suzuki Motor Corporation of Japan, which owns 54.2% of the company.

Seat-9: **insidious**¹⁵²¹, **dissident**¹⁵²², **séance**¹⁵²³

You will be surprised to know that the word ‘nest’ too has origins in this IE root. It is formed from *ni-sd*, meaning ‘sitting down’ and so, came to be used for the place where a bird sat down after the day’s flight (L *ni-* means ‘down’ just like our own *neeche*).

The Latin word for nest, *nidus*, too is a part of the family. It is found in **niche**¹⁵²⁴.

Latin **ponere** **to put, place**

When somebody ‘proposes’ a project or a relationship, he ‘puts that idea before’ his company or his sweetheart. When the **nexus** between the underworld and Bollywood is ‘exposed’, it is ‘put out’ in the full view of the whole world. A well-put remark is **apposite**¹⁵²⁵ or **apropos**¹⁵²⁶. On the other hand are **malapropisms**¹⁵²⁷ like the ones below, whose ill-fitting words make us laugh.

- “I do not like *olive-eaters*,” Mrs. Chadha declared. “I can climb my own stairs.” (Instead of elevators)
- “What does she think of herself?” the young Bubbly Chadha complained about Pinky Panesar, her Enemy Number One at school. “She is not the only one who can win a prize. I too have many *tail-ends*!” (Instead of, well, talents)
- The moment Runju got the question paper, she *failed*; she had prepared for English and it was the Science paper! (Instead of paled)
- Business respects *punctured* people. (Instead of punctual)
- Motu Bhai started *painting* after climbing just five steps. (Instead of panting)

The other words which are in the business of putting and placing things are:

Ponere-1: postpone, **component**¹⁵²⁸, **composure**¹⁵²⁹

¹⁵²¹ **Insidious**: (adj) spreading harmfully but silently; intending to trap and do harm.

Origin: L *in-*, upon + *sedere*, to sit => ‘to sit in wait for the prey to walk into the trap.’

- ☐ Amma has been diabetic for 12 years now. Every year, her systems get weaker and weaker as she battles with this **insidious** disease.

¹⁵²² **Dissident**: (n) a person who disagrees.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *sedere*, to sit

- ☐ The party President ruled the party like a **tyrant**. He tolerated no **dissent** and threw all **dissidents** out of his party.

¹⁵²³ **Séance**: (n) a session held by a spiritual leader to communicate with spirits of the death.

Origin: L *sedere*, to sit -> Fr *seoir*, to sit -> *séance*, a session

¹⁵²⁴ **Niche**: (n) a place that suits a person’s talents and abilities.

Origin: L *nidus*, nest

- ☐ The writer found his **niche** in writing vampire stories.

¹⁵²⁵ **Apposite**: (adj) appropriate

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *ponere*, to put => ‘well-put’

¹⁵²⁶ **Apropos**: (adj) fitting; relevant.

Origin: Fr *a propos*, to the purpose

- ☐ When his wife asked him why he had drunk, the husband replied, “My best friend got promoted today, darling. So it was **apropos** that we had a little celebration.”
- ☐ The phrase ‘**apropos** of’ means ‘in relation with’ or ‘in reference to.’

¹⁵²⁷ **Malapropism**: (n) funny use of a similar sounding but inappropriate word.

Origin: L *mal-*, bad + **apropos**

¹⁵²⁸ **Component**: (n) an element which along with other elements makes the whole.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *ponere*, to place

¹⁵²⁹ **Composure**: (n) mental calmness.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *ponere*, to place

Ponere-2: compound, **decompose**¹⁵³⁰, **depose**¹⁵³¹
Ponere-3: **deposition**¹⁵³², **disposition**¹⁵³³, **predispose**¹⁵³⁴
Ponere-4: **exposition**¹⁵³⁵, exposure, **interpose**¹⁵³⁶
Ponere-5: **posture**¹⁵³⁷, **imposture**¹⁵³⁸, **poseur**¹⁵³⁹
Ponere-6: **proponent**¹⁵⁴⁰, **propound**¹⁵⁴¹, **expound**¹⁵⁴², **repository**¹⁵⁴³

¹⁵³⁰ **Decompose:** (v) to break down into its components.

Origin: L *de-*, down + component

¹⁵³¹ **Depose:** (v) to remove from office.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *ponere*, to put

❑ Shah Jahan was **deposed** and **immured** by his own son, Aurangzeb.

¹⁵³² **Deposition:** (n) testimony given in court on oath.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *ponere*, to put down => 'to put down one's statement'

❑ In the surgeon's **deposition**, it was stated that the posterior third of the left parietal bone of the dead man had been shattered by a heavy blow from a blunt weapon.

¹⁵³³ **Disposition:** (n) one's tendency or temperament; arrangement or distribution

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *ponere*, to set => 'to set in different places.'

❑ He had a **disposition** to take everything lightly.

❑ The **disposition** of the loot jewellery proved difficult for the thieves because all the jewellers had been alerted by the police.

¹⁵³⁴ **Predispose:** (v) to give an inclination beforehand.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + **dispose**

❑ He was **predisposed** to diabetes because everyone in his mother's family had the disease.

¹⁵³⁵ **Exposition:** (n) showing clearly.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *ponere*, to put

❑ The professor gave an **exposition** of Weber's theory of suicide.

¹⁵³⁶ **Interpose:** (v) to put in between; to come in between.

Origin: L *inter*, between + *ponere*, to put

❑ When the fight between the two brothers seemed to be worsening, their mother **interposed**.

¹⁵³⁷ **Posture:** (v) to assume a particular position or posture.

Origin: L *ponere*, to put

❑ The film director **postured** that his film would give the people a new point of view for the country's problems.

¹⁵³⁸ **Imposture:** (v) to assume a fake identity.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *ponere*, to put => 'to put oneself in another's position'

❑ The admit cards to most examinations contain a photograph of the candidate in order to prevent **imposture**.

¹⁵³⁹ **Poseur:** (n) one who pretends.

❑ The man said that he was a prince from Himachal Pradesh but everybody knew that he was a **poseur** from his total lack of knowledge and princely sophistication.

¹⁵⁴⁰ **Proponent:** (n) supporter

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *ponere*, to put

❑ The **proponents** of the women's reservation bill held demonstrations and protests to put pressure on the government to table the bill. When the government did present the bill, the opponents of the bill started holding demonstrations and protests.

¹⁵⁴¹ **Propound:** (v) to put forth.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *ponere*, to put

❑ The Mughal emperor Akbar **propounded** a **syncretic** religion called *Din-e-Ilahi*, which combined the best principles of Islam, Hinduism, Jainism, Zoroastrianism and Christianity.

¹⁵⁴² **Expound:** (v) to explain; to make a detailed statement.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *ponere*, to put

❑ In his lectures, the philosopher **expounded** his principles.

¹⁵⁴³ **Repository:** (n) store house.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *ponere*, to put

❑ Libraries are **repositories** of the world's knowledge.

*Ponere-7: superimpose*¹⁵⁴⁴, supposition, **supposititious**¹⁵⁴⁵

Greek *thesis* **a placing**

A ‘thesis’ submitted by a scholar is a proposition that he places before the academic world for consideration and debate. A placing together of all the parts so as to make a whole is called ‘synthesis’.

To insert an explanatory note within the brackets () is to put it in ‘parenthesis’. The word is formed from *para-*, beside+*en-*, in + *thesis*, placing and therefore it means ‘a placing in, besides the main text.’

The following words too are from the same root:

*Thesis-1: Hypothesis*¹⁵⁴⁶, *Antithesis*¹⁵⁴⁷, *Prosthesis*¹⁵⁴⁸

*Thesis-2: Epithet*¹⁵⁴⁹, *Anathema*¹⁵⁵⁰

IE *sta-* **to stand**

This root really deserves the deepest **reverence** and **obeisance**¹⁵⁵¹ from all Indians. We owe to it the name of our nation! The Persian suffix *-stan* means ‘place where one stays, home, country.’ Hindustan has it as do Pakistan, Afghanistan and so many other countries, and even some states like Balochistan and Rajasthan.

The Sanskrit words *sthal* or *sthan* (station), *sthanu* (a pillar; trunk of a tree), *sthapan* (setting up), *sthayi* (permanent, stable), *sthir* (stable, steady) and *sthiti* (state) are from this root.

❑ The National Museum of Art is a **repository** of the best art works produced in the country.

¹⁵⁴⁴ **Superimpose:** (v) to put one over the other.

Origin: L *super-*, over + *im-*, on + *ponere*, to put

❑ The child **superimposed** a thin paper over the drawing in the book and drew the outlines of the drawing.

¹⁵⁴⁵ **Supposititious:** (adj) supposed, hypothetical.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *ponere*, to put

❑ The theory held true for every **supposititious** scenario the philosopher could think of. So he thought it would apply to the real world too.

¹⁵⁴⁶ **Hypothesis:** (n) a theoretical assumption.

Origin: Gk *hypo*, under + *thesis*, a placing

¹⁵⁴⁷ **Antithesis:** (n) a contrast, an opposite.

Origin: Gk *anti-*, opposite + *thesis*, a placing

❑ This statement is an example of **antithesis**: ‘He had said he would top in the exam. He failed.’

❑ His actions were **antithetical** to his statements.

¹⁵⁴⁸ **Prosthesis:** (n) an artificial device which replaces a missing or a dysfunctional body part. It may be implanted or external; (Adj) **prosthetic**.

Origin: Gk *pro-*, forward + *thesis*, a placing.

❑ **Prosthetic** limbs help **amputees** lead normal lives.

¹⁵⁴⁹ **Epithet:** (n) a word or phrase which tells about a defining characteristic of a person or a place and is used along with or instead of that person’s or place’s name.

❑ There were two Motu Chands in the locality. So, the residents distinguished them from their **epithets**—Motu Chand, *mochi* and Motu Chand, *nikamma*.

¹⁵⁵⁰ **Anathema:** (n) curse; something that is greatly disliked.

Origin: L *ana-*, up + *thesis*, to place => ‘to place upon’

❑ The idea of leaving his motherland to earn money elsewhere was **anathema** to the young man. His grandfather had gone to jail for the freedom of this country, how could he leave it?

❑ The old man heaped **anathema** upon all the politicians who had willingly kept his beloved country backward and poor in order to fill their own pockets.

¹⁵⁵¹ **Obeisance:** (n) respect

❑ The followers paid **obeisance** to the guru by touching his feet.

The word 'stand' originated in old England and was not derived from any other language. 'Understand' came from the notion of 'standing under', therefore, knowing well.

The Latin word for standing is 'stare'; it has **begotten** the following English words:

Stare-1: Stage, **stance**¹⁵⁵², **stanch**¹⁵⁵³

Stare-2: status, **statute**¹⁵⁵⁴, **statutory**¹⁵⁵⁵

Stare-3: distant, **extant**¹⁵⁵⁶, **obstetric**¹⁵⁵⁷

Stare-4: constant, **restive**¹⁵⁵⁸, **substantiate**¹⁵⁵⁹

Stare-5: stationary, **insubstantial**¹⁵⁶⁰, **substantive**¹⁵⁶¹

Stare-6: circumstances, **oust**¹⁵⁶², **constituent**¹⁵⁶³

¹⁵⁵² **Stance**: (n) stand

❑ India repeated its **stance** on the Kashmir issue to the Pakistan ambassador.

¹⁵⁵³ **Stanch**: (v) to stop flow of.

Origin: related with 'stand'

❑ The heroine tore her *dupatta* to **stanch** the gushing wound of the hero.

¹⁵⁵⁴ **Statute**: (n) law

Origin: L *stature*, to set up

❑ The dictator amended the **statute** of his country in order to give himself the power to postpone democratic elections indefinitely.

❑ Company **statutes** required that the board should have an odd number of members.

¹⁵⁵⁵ **Statutory**: (adj) related with law; required by law.

❑ All cigarette packets carry the **statutory** warning that cigarette smoking is injurious to health.

¹⁵⁵⁶ **Extant**: (adj) existent

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *stare*, to stand => 'standing out' => 'existent.'

❑ The new Railway minister announced a number of new trains and increased the frequency of the **extant** trains.

¹⁵⁵⁷ **Obstetric**: (adj) related with childbirth. The branch of medicine that deals with the care of women during pregnancy and childbirth is called **ostetrics**.

Origin: L *ob-*, by + *stare*, to stand => 'the one who stands by during childbirth' => 'the mid-wife'

❑ In India, **obstetrics** has traditionally been practiced by midwives (*daais*). Even today, more than 50 per cent of deliveries in the country are conducted by them.

¹⁵⁵⁸ **Restive**: (adj) uneasily restless, usually under forced confinement or pressure.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *stāre*, to stand => 'to keep back.'

❑ '**Restive**' applies specifically to the impatience of somebody who has been kept back by **coercion** or restriction, and is not a general synonym for 'restless.' Restless of course is from the same root, and means 'unable to stand back.'

¹⁵⁵⁹ **Substantiate**: (v) add substance to; make stronger; give evidence for.

❑ The judge asked the witness if he could **substantiate** his claims with evidence.

¹⁵⁶⁰ **Insubstantial**: (adj) not having much substance, not much in size or amount.

Origin: L *in-*, not + **substantial**.

❑ Over the years, there has been only an **insubstantial** growth in the revenues of the company while the costs have increased **substantially**. In short, the company is running in losses.

Substantial: (adj) having lot of substance, quite big in size or amount.

¹⁵⁶¹ **Substantive**: (adj) quite big in size or amount or value or importance.

❑ "While a confession is **substantive** evidence against its maker, it cannot be used as **substantive** evidence against another person, even if the latter is a co-accused. It can, however, be used as a piece of **corroborative** material to support other **substantive** evidence." The Supreme Court of India

¹⁵⁶² **Oust**: (v) to push out from a position or place.

Origin: L *ob-*, against + *stare*, to stand => 'to stand against' => 'oppose' => 'to remove'

❑ The Indians **ousted** the British from India.

¹⁵⁶³ **Constituent**: (n) a person who has the power to elect his representatives; a component of the whole.

Origin: L *con-*, + *statuere*, to set up => 'one who sets up something' => 'one who sets up a democratic system' => 'one who sends his representatives to the legislature.'

A 'stage' is the place where you stand. Your 'status' is your standing in the society. A 'distant' relative is one who stands quite apart from you on the scale of closeness in blood. A 'constant' thing is that which stands firmly. A 'stationary' car is a standing car. 'Circumstances' are the conditions or details that stand around a person.

If Latin is here, can Greek be far behind? The Greek root for 'standing' is *stasis* and is found in:

System, **apostasy**¹⁵⁶⁴, **ecstasy**¹⁵⁶⁵, **epistemology**¹⁵⁶⁶

The *sys-* in 'system' is a variant of *syn-*, together, before 's'. So, a system is a group of parts that stand together.

Below are presented a **medley** of words coming from a **medley** of roots, all belonging to the *sta-* family:

*Hindustan ki Kasam-1: Steadfast, Stalwart*¹⁵⁶⁷, **armistice**

*Hindustan ki Kasam-2: stoic*¹⁵⁶⁸, **obstinate**¹⁵⁶⁹, **destitute**¹⁵⁷⁰

- In a democracy, every politician has to keep his **constituents** happy if he wishes to be re-elected by them.
- Oxygen and Hydrogen are **constituents** of water.

¹⁵⁶⁴ **Apostasy:** (n) turning totally away from one's earlier, passionate beliefs. A person who does this is an **apostate**.

Origin: Gk *apo-*, away + *sta-*, to stand => 'to stand away'

- When Raj Sharma met his old classmate Diwakar Prabhat after 20 years, he was shocked at how drastically the man had changed. Prabhat used to be a dedicated socialist during college, had even **endured** beatings by the police for protesting about workers' rights, used to talk about dedicating his life to bringing a social revolution. And now, the same man was an industrialist like any other and milked his workers to the core. "What an **apostasy!**" Raj muttered.
- Diwakar Prabhat was an **apostate**.

¹⁵⁶⁵ **Ecstasy:** (n) the highest state of happiness; intense delight.

Origin: Gk *ec-*, out of + *stasis*, to place => 'to place out of the normal state of mind'

- The whole family was **ecstatic** to hear that Neha had topped the city in the CBSE exams. They hugged each other and their darling, darling Neha in **ecstasy**.

¹⁵⁶⁶ **Epistemology:** (n) the philosophy of knowledge.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, over + *sta-*, to stand => 'to stand over' => 'to understand'

- Epistemology** deals with questions like: What is knowledge? What is truth? How do we know what we know? Is knowledge the same as belief? Is truth the same as belief?

¹⁵⁶⁷ **Stalwart:** (n) very strong, long time firm supporter of a cause or a party.

Origin: Old Eng *stathol*, foundation (that on which a body stands) + *weorth*, worthy => 'a valuable foundation' => 'one who has become the foundation of a cause or a party'

- He was a **stalwart** of the party. He was only 16 when he had become its member and had remained loyal to it his whole life, through all its ups and downs.

¹⁵⁶⁸ **Stoic:** (adj) unmoved by grief or joy, calmly accepting them both.

Origin: Gk *sta-*, to stand -> *stoa*, a porch. The Greek philosopher Zeno used to teach his disciples under a porch known as Stoa Poikile. His **doctrine** came to be called Stoicism. A **stoic** person is one who seems to follow this **doctrine**. Zeno used to teach his followers that God made everything happen for the best and one's happiness depended not on external things but on one's **virtue**. So, one should not get overly disturbed by occurrences which are beyond one's control or by loss of material things.

- In the midst of his argument, the lawyer received a telegram. He read it, kept the missive on the table, and continued his advocacy. After the hearing was over, he picked up his stuff, handed it over to his subordinate and instructed him to handle the office in his absence; he was rushing to his village because his wife had died that morning. The junior was amazed at how **stoically** the man had borne such a huge loss.

¹⁵⁶⁹ **Obstinate:** (adj) stubborn

Origin: L *ob-*, by + *stare*, to stand => 'one who keeps standing by' => 'one who refuses to go'

- The mother tried hard to convince the child not to eat an ice-cream in the freezing cold but he was **obstinate**.

¹⁵⁷⁰ **Destitute:** (n) a person who is so poor that he has no food, clothes or shelter.

Origin: L *stare*, to stand -> *statuere*, to place + *de-*, away => 'to place away' => 'to abandon'

- In every city of India, one can see **destitutes** sleeping on the streets.

*Hindustan ki Kasam-3: retribute*¹⁵⁷¹, *superstition*¹⁵⁷², *desist*¹⁵⁷³

*Hindustan ki Kasam-4: subsistence*¹⁵⁷⁴, *interstice*¹⁵⁷⁵, *solstice*¹⁵⁷⁶

Latin *testis* **a witness**

The word *testis* is a compound of *tres-*, meaning three, and *-stis*, to stand. Therefore, *testis* means ‘a third person who was standing by’ when the fight between the two parties was going on. When one of them **contests**¹⁵⁷⁷ the claims of the other in the court, this third person is called to **ascertain** what had actually happened. To ‘testify’ is to bear witness to something, which is exactly what **attest**¹⁵⁷⁸ means too.

The courts do not rely on a single witness. They abide by the **axiom**¹⁵⁷⁹: *testis unis, testis nullus*—one witness is no witness.

¹⁵⁷¹ **Restitute:** (v) to restore to form condition; to refund.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *statuere*, to place => ‘to place back’

- ❑ The consumer court ordered the educational consulting company to make a **restitution** of ₹ 1 lakh to the consumer who had complained about its unsatisfactory service.

¹⁵⁷² **Superstition:** (n) illogical but strongly held belief that certain things or occurrences are good omens and others are bad omens.

Origin: L *super-*, beyond + *statuere*, to set =>

- ❑ The **superstitious** man left home after eating sweet curd, because that was supposed to ensure his success in the interview. However, he was nervously back home in 10 minutes. A black cat had crossed his way and that was a bad omen.

¹⁵⁷³ **Desist:** (v) to stop.

Origin: L *stare*, to stand -> *sistere*, to stand + *de-*, away => ‘to stay away from’

- ❑ The college strictly ordered its students to **desist** from ragging the freshers.

¹⁵⁷⁴ **Subsistence:** (n) existence

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *sistere*, to stand => ‘to support from beneath so that the structure can keep standing’

- ❑ A vast majority of Indian farmers are still trapped in **subsistence** agriculture—they produce foodgrains only for consumption. Their economic betterment is not possible till they are enabled to get out of the rut of **subsistence** agriculture and start producing crops that they can sell.

¹⁵⁷⁵ **Interstice:** (n) in-between space.

Origin: L *inter*, between + *sistere*, to stand => ‘the stand, the stop in between’ => ‘a break’

- ❑ Imagine a bundle of 125 balls arranged in a 3-D lattice of 5*5*5. Can you see the empty space between any two consecutive balls? That is what an **interstice** is.
- ❑ Sometimes, when you click on a weblink on a website, you first get a page of advertisement or a page that asks you to submit your details. It is only when you close this page or fulfil its requirements that you are taken to the link that you had originally clicked. Such a page that sits in between the referencing and the referenced webpages is called an **interstitial** webpage, or simply, an **interstitial**.

¹⁵⁷⁶ **Solstice:** (n) the two days of the year when the sun is the farthest from the equator.

Origin: L *sol-*, sun + *sistere*, to stand => ‘the sun appears to stand still’

- ❑ **Equinox** occurs on March 20 or 21 and September 22 or 23. **Solstice** occurs on June 21 or 20 and December 21 or 22.

Compare **Solstice** with **Equinox**.

¹⁵⁷⁷ **Contest:** (v) to argue or struggle against somebody.

Origin: L *con-* + *testis*, witness => ‘to call witnesses to support one’s claims => ‘to be a part of a dispute’

¹⁵⁷⁸ **Attest:** (v) to confirm to be true.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *testis*, witness => ‘to be a witness to’

- ❑ A **proliferation** of gyms in every city and town **attests** that Indians are becoming aware of the importance of weight management and staying healthy.

¹⁵⁷⁹ **Axiom:** (n) a statement whose truth is so obvious that no proof is needed for it.

- ❑ The statement that only one line can pass through two given points is an **axiom**.

A will which does not have the signatures of at least two witnesses is considered invalid. It is also important that none of the witnesses should be a **beneficiary** of the will; if a witness is found to benefit from a **bequest**¹⁵⁸⁰, his **testimony**¹⁵⁸¹ is said to have **vested** interests, and the will is rejected. A person who makes a valid will in the presence of acceptable witnesses is, therefore, called a 'testator'. On the other hand, a person who dies without making a will, or a valid will, is said to die **intestate**¹⁵⁸².

After making his will, a person may think of many "ifs" and "buts" and "however's." **Codicil**¹⁵⁸³ rushes in to **accommodate** all such afterthoughts, because that will enable her to be attached to her beloved Will, and then, she dreamily imagines, the Will and the Codicil will live happily ever after!

'Testis', the male reproductive gland, also derives its name from this root, presumably because it bears witness to the **virility** of a man.

¹⁵⁸⁰ **Bequest:** (n) the act of handing over personal property by will; a property received by will.

A related word is **bequeath**.

Bequeath: (v) to give personal property by will.

- ☐ A will gives full details and location of the properties which are being **bequeathed** by the **testator**. It also states how the **testator** had acquired those properties, that is, whether they were inherited or self-acquired. The **testator** can **bequeath** his property to anybody he wishes, and in any ratio among the different **beneficiaries** of the **bequest**.

¹⁵⁸¹ **Testimony:** (n) statement given by a witness under oath in a court.

Origin: L *testis*, witness + *-mony*, state => 'state of being a witness'

¹⁵⁸² **Intestate:** (adj) a person who has not made a will.

Origin: L *in-*, no + *testari*, to make a will

Interestingly, a person who dies **intestate** is also called '**intestate**.' But, the person who dies **testate** is called a **testator**.

- ☐ If a Hindu man dies **intestate** leaving behind a wife, a son and a daughter, the Hindu Succession Act of 1956 **decrees** that his property shall **devolve** equally upon the three of them.

¹⁵⁸³ **Codicil:** (n) an **appendix** to a will which contains an explanation or a modification, etc.

Exercise

Clinare, cubare, swep-, dormire, sed-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The eggs of a cuckoo are *sat over and warmed* by other birds.
(a) groped (b) succumbed (c) reclined on (d) incubated (e) superseded
2. He *spoke out suddenly without wanting to* his secret.
(a) acquiesced (b) seiged (c) blurted (d) flitted (e) beset
3. Milk has a *sleep-producing* effect.
(a) a lean (b) an insomniac (c) soporific (d) a dormant (e) an acquiescing
4. The volcano was *inactive*.
(a) somnolent (b) soporific (c) lean (d) recumbent (e) dormant
5. The educational system of the country is *surrounded from all sides* by problems.
(a) subsided (b) prepossessed (c) superseded (d) beset (e) disquieted
6. The judge *freed him from blame*.
(a) acquiesced to him (b) unwonted him (c) succumbed to (d) made him acquiesce (e) acquitted him
7. The girl was *shy*.
(a) quiescent (b) coy (c) flitting (d) insidious (e) gaunt
8. It was *obligatory for* the company to pay at least the minimum wages prescribed by the law to its workers.
(a) recumbent on (b) prepossessing for (c) assiduous for (d) sedate for (e) incumbent upon
9. The city was *surrounded from all sides* by the enemy troops.
(a) besieged (b) acquiesced (c) succumbed (d) incubated (e) flitted
10. He *was used to* complaining about everything.
(a) was wont to (b) had a proclivity of (c) was sedate about (d) was coy about (e) was somnolent about

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (e) 5d) 6. (e) 7. (b) 8. (e) 9. (a) 10. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Hard-working: A_____
2. Current occupant of an office: I_____
3. Upward slope: A_____
4. To take the place of another: S_____
5. To climb with difficulty: C_____
6. Spreading harmfully but silently: I_____
7. The most intense moment of a drama: C_____
8. A person who disagrees from the others: D_____
9. An artificial substitute for the real thing: E_____
10. The disease of being unable to sleep: I_____
11. A hymn for the dead: R_____
12. Sleepwalker: S_____

Answers:

assiduous, incumbent, acclivity, supersede, clamber, insidious, climax, dissident, ersatz, insomnia, requiem, somnambulist

Ponere, thesis, sta-, testis:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. The woman *had no money and nowhere to go*.
(a) was stanchd (b) was obstetric (c) was ousted (d) was apostate (e) was destitute
2. He was *stubborn* about not going to Delhi.
(a) ecstatic (b) stoic (c) intestate (d) obstinate (e) apposite
3. He *made a will to give* his property to his sister's daughter.
(a) deposed (b) propounded (c) expounded (d) bequeathed (e) predisposed
4. Ram was *a complete opposite* of Raavan.
(a) a malapropism (b) a bequest (c) an axiom (d) an imposture (e) an antithesis
5. He bore the loss of his entire property *calmly, without showing any grief*.
(a) stoically (b) ecstatically (c) in an apropos manner (d) like a poseur (E) with an epithet
6. He *explained in detail* the principle of relativity.
(a) propounded (b) expounded (c) postured (d) interposed (e) deposed
7. While trapped in the jungle, he *stayed alive* by eating grass.
(a) subsisted (b) remained apposite (c) propounded (d) stanchd (e) substantiated
8. The dissident minister was *pushed out of* the cabinet.
(a) substantiated in (b) made restive in (c) stanchd from (d) ousted from (e) made extant in
9. Thousands paid *their respect* at the memorial of the dead revolutionary.
(a) their apostasy (b) ecstasy (c) obeisance (d) restitution (e) bequest
10. The website was *a storehouse* of classic novels.
(a) an epithet (b) a stalwart (c) a constituent (d) a repository (e) a deposition

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (e) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (a) 8. (d) 9. (c) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Curse: A _____
2. Illogical but strongly held belief that certain things or occurrences are good omens and others are bad omens: S _____
3. An appendix to a will: C _____
4. A person who dies without a will: I _____
5. Very strong, long time firm supporter of a cause or a party: S _____
6. An artificial device which replaces a missing or a dysfunctional body part. It may be implanted or external: P _____
7. A statement whose truth is so obvious that no proof is needed for it: A _____
8. Law: S _____
9. Funny use of a similar sounding but inappropriate word: M _____
10. A property received by will: B _____
11. The philosophy of knowledge: E _____
12. A person who totally gives up his previous beliefs: A _____
13. Testimony given in court on oath: D _____
14. The two days of the year when the sun is the farthest from the equator: S _____

Answers:

anathema, superstition, codicil, intestate, stalwart, prosthesis, axiom, statute, malapropism, bequest, epistemology, apostate, deposition, solstice

STRENGTH AND THE USE OF STRENGTH

IE *wal-* to be strong

The Ramayana has a character called ‘Bali’ (South Indians call him Vali) who had immeasurable strength. He was the king of the *vaanars*, one of whom was Hanuman. Bali had a **boon** that whoever fought with him would lose half of his strength to him. He was ultimately killed by Rama, who was a sympathizer of Bali’s younger brother, Sugreeva.

The Hindi words *nirbal* and *abla* mean ‘without *bal* (strength), weak’, which is exactly what the Latin *debilis* (*de-bil-is*) means too; hence the word **debility**¹⁵⁸⁴. When a man recovers his strength after a **debilitating** disease, he is said to be **convalescing**¹⁵⁸⁵.

A man whose mind stays on his diseases 24X7 is a **valetudinarian**¹⁵⁸⁶. Whenever you go to meet him, his poor health is all that he can talk about and after a few visits, you beat your head in frustration—“how can anybody talk about just one thing all the time?” And then you wonder. If you, who visit this guy just once in a while, are feeling so **exasperated**, what would be the condition of his family members? “The poor fellows!” you sigh in sympathy.

‘Balwant’ means strong in Hindi. Sardarni Balwant Kaur lived up to her name when a few men in her bogey got up, took out guns from under their kurtas and started ordering everybody to quietly hand over all their cash and jewellery. Instead of **timidly**¹⁵⁸⁷ obeying them like everybody else, she tried to **wrest**¹⁵⁸⁸ the gun of the dacoit who was ordering

¹⁵⁸⁴ **Debilitate:** (n) weaken; (n) **debility:** weakness.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *-bel-*, strength

- ❑ Old age brings physical **debility** and failing senses.
- ❑ Corruption is like a cancer. This, more than the threat of external enemies, will **debilitate** and disable us as a nation.

¹⁵⁸⁵ **Convalesce:** (v) to recover strength after illness. The one who is **convalescing** is called a **convalescent**.

Origin: L *con-*, + *valescere*, to grow strong

- ❑ The **convalescent**, once cured, often forgets his illness.
- ❑ **Riled** by the large crowd of visitors outside the **convalescing** minister’s room, the doctor ordered them to not disturb his patient for three days. “You want him to **recuperate** fast, right? So, let him rest.”

¹⁵⁸⁶ **Valetudinarian:** (adj) sickly, weak, excessively worried about his poor health; (n) such a person.

Origin: L *valere*, to be strong -> *valetudo*, state of strength => ‘state of health’ => ‘one excessively worried about his state of health.’

¹⁵⁸⁷ **Timid:** (adj) one who lacks self-confidence, becomes easily afraid.

Origin: L *timere*, to fear.

- ❑ “Don’t worry beta, the dog will not say anything. Scuffy, say hello to Rahul!” Forced by his elders, seven-year-old Rahul **timidly** lowered his hand to touch the dog, but the moment the dog tried to sniff his trousers, he jumped away in alarm.

Two other words from this root are **intimidate** and **timorous**.

¹⁵⁸⁸ **Wrest:** (v) to snatch; to obtain by effort.

her. All the passengers in the bogey stared, the women in amazement, the men in **ambivalence**¹⁵⁸⁹, as she **valiantly**¹⁵⁹⁰ fought the uneven battle. She was old and alone, the dacoits were armed and five. They soon managed to overpower her but the **amazon**¹⁵⁹¹ kept struggling. One of the dacoits was taking aim at her chest when thuck! A cricket ball hit his head from behind. He **wincd** and turned about. The little boy two seats away was looking **defiantly** at him. **Leonine**¹⁵⁹² in rage and shouting **expletives**, he **lunged**¹⁵⁹³ at the child but two young women stood up in his way. Then, within a moment, everyone got up and threw themselves at the **discombobulated**¹⁵⁹⁴ dacoits and snatched their guns and tied them up and locked them in the toilet.

The passengers were **ecstatic!** They **lionized**¹⁵⁹⁵ the old woman whose courage, they said, had **prevailed**¹⁵⁹⁶ over the armed dacoits. "It is not my courage that has **prevailed**," she laughed, "but your unity. I should be the one to thank you all, because you **validated**¹⁵⁹⁷ my faith in humanity. You are not my **kin**; you could just have looked on as they killed me. But you did not. Thank you my dears!"

The dacoits were handed over to the Railway Police at the next station. The journey continued amid stories and songs. The whole bogey seemed to have become one big family whose **matriarch** was the **benevolent** (and *balwant!*) Balwant Kaur. As her station came nearer, and **concomitant** with it, her **valediction**¹⁵⁹⁸, everybody grew so sad that she gave them her address and asked them to drop by any time and promised to stay in touch.

IE *poti-* powerful, lord

The *pati* of an Indian woman is her master and her lord. The *rashtrapati* is the master of the nation and a *crorepati*, of crores.

Origin: Related with wrist.

- ❑ "Do what you can." The leader of the labour union challenged the management of the factory. "But we won't let you **wrest** our rights."
- ❑ The Congress **wrested** Rajasthan from the BJP.

¹⁵⁸⁹ **Ambivalence:** (n) state of being in two minds about something; wanting to do something, yet not wanting to do it; loving a person, yet disliking him too, etc.

Origin: L *ambi-*, both + *valentia*, strength => 'both sides of the argument are equally strong'

- ❑ The men are watching Balwant Kaur's struggle in **ambivalence** because they know that they too should be fighting the dacoits but still they do not dare to. They are debating "Should I? should I not?"
- ❑ "I don't know what I want," the daughter replied sadly when her father asked her what her career plans were. Her father smiled. "It's perfectly all right," he said. "Most of the most interesting people I know were just as **ambivalent** at your age. Quite a few of them remain so after twenty years."

¹⁵⁹⁰ **Valiant:** (adj) brave. Noun: **valour**, heroic courage, bravery

Origin: L *valere*, to be strong => *valor*, strength, value

- ❑ The inspector fought the terrorists with **valour** without regard to his own life.

¹⁵⁹¹ **Amazon:** (n) a female warrior.

¹⁵⁹² **Leonine:** (adj) like a lion.

Origin: L *leo*, lion

¹⁵⁹³ **Lunge:** (v) make a sudden forward movement; (n) such a movement.

¹⁵⁹⁴ **Discombobulate:** (v) to confuse completely.

¹⁵⁹⁵ **Lionize:** (v) to treat like a celebrity.

Origin: lion + -ize => 'to treat like the king of the jungle.'

¹⁵⁹⁶ **Prevail:** (v) to dominate over; to be widespread; to successfully convince.

Origin: L *pre-*, first + *valere*, to be strong => 'to be number one in strength'

- ❑ The child **prevailed** upon her mother to get her a laptop.

¹⁵⁹⁷ **Validate:** (v) to confirm.

Origin: L *valere*, to be strong -> *validus*, strong. Validate means 'to make strong'

¹⁵⁹⁸ **Valediction:** (n) farewell

Origin: L *valere*, to be strong and well + *dicere*, to say => 'to say "be well"' => 'farewell'

The Persians called their kings *baadshah* or *padishaah* and the Turks, *pasha*. All these words came from the Old Persian *pati*.

In Latin, this root gave rise to the following words:

Potis-1: potential, **potent**¹⁵⁹⁹, **omnipotent**¹⁶⁰⁰

Potis-2: **prepotent**¹⁶⁰¹, **potentate**¹⁶⁰²

Potis-3: **puissant**¹⁶⁰³, **impuissant**¹⁶⁰⁴

The words ‘possible’ and ‘possessions’ too are from the same root. Possible means ‘to be able, to have the power’ and the things that you have a power over are called your possessions.

Latin *fortis* **strong**

‘Force’ is strength. A ‘fort’ is a building that is made strong by the presence of troops, arms and ammunition. When we ‘comfort’ a sad friend, we try to strengthen his weak spirits. And, an ‘effort’ is an exertion of our physical strength. (Effort= *ex-*, out, + *fortis*)

The other *fortis* words are:

Forte¹⁶⁰⁵, **fortitude**¹⁶⁰⁶, **fortify**¹⁶⁰⁷

¹⁵⁹⁹ **Potent**: (adj) powerful, effective; (n) **potency**.

Origin: L *potis*, powerful

❑ The pharma company claimed to develop a potent vaccine against HIV.

¹⁶⁰⁰ **Omnipotent**: (adj) all-powerful, having unlimited power.

Origin: L *omnis*, all + *potis*, powerful

❑ God is **omnipotent**.

¹⁶⁰¹ **Prepotent**: (adj) having more power and influence than others.

Origin: L *pre-*, first + *potis*, powerful

❑ The Tatas are a **prepotent** business house of India.

¹⁶⁰² **Potentate**: (n) one who possesses more power than all others, a ruler.

Origin: L *potis*, powerful

❑ The old man was the **potentate** of the house. Without his permission, even a bird could not flap its wings there.

¹⁶⁰³ **Puissant**: (adj) powerful

Origin: L *posse*, to have power

❑ The brave police officer dared to disregard the **puissance** of the politician and investigated the cases of corruption against the man honestly.

¹⁶⁰⁴ **Impuissant**: (adj) lacking power, weak.

❑ Though India is a democracy and the people are said to have all the power, a common man feels **impuissant** and unable to bring any real change.

¹⁶⁰⁵ **Forte**: (n) strength, one thing that a person is really good at.

Origin: L *fortis*, strong => ‘strong point’

❑ Govinda’s **forte** is comedy.

¹⁶⁰⁶ **Fortitude**: (n) strength of mind that makes one battle all difficulties with courage.

Origin: L *fortis*, strong => ‘the state of being strong in the face of difficulties’

❑ He was awarded the Vir Chakra for his **fortitude** in the battle.

¹⁶⁰⁷ **Fortify**: (v) to make strong.

Origin: L *fortis*, strong

❑ The security in-charge recruited five more guards and installed biosensors at different doors to **fortify** the security of the industrialist’s residence.

❑ The Virani family did not eat white bread. They only ate bread that was **fortified** with Vitamins and dietary fibres.

Latin *vincere* **to conquer**

The ancient Romans used to say *Amor vincit omnia*. Love conquers all.



Barqat was a poor young man of a city called Shams. One day, the **cavalcade** of the city's princess, Aaleen, was passing through the bazaar where his grocery shop was. He caught a glimpse of her. He was so dazzled by her beauty that he immediately fell in love with her.

The princess visited the city twice a month. Barqat lived for those two days. And when they came, he moved heaven and earth to see her. Once, he had even dressed up as a **transvestite**¹⁶⁰⁸! Because a **transvestite's** blessings were thought to come true, the princess' security guards had let him go up to her and bless her head. She had then touched his feet! How **deliriously** happy he had been! He had felt like her husband!

He knew he could never be Aaleen's husband. The difference in their social ranks was **prohibitive**¹⁶⁰⁹. How he wished it wasn't! How he wished she could know how much he loved her!

One day, an evil jinn came to the mountain in the north of Shams. He was taller than 20 men combined and broader than a 100. His skin was frighteningly white. He uprooted trees as if they were mere **twigs**¹⁶¹⁰ and huge rocks as if they were pebbles and **hurled**¹⁶¹¹ them at the city. Hundreds of citizens died and thousands were **mangled**¹⁶¹². Then, as suddenly as this **barrage**¹⁶¹³ of trees and rocks had started, it stopped. People saw the jinn lie down on the mountain. They looked at the dead bodies **strewn**¹⁶¹⁴ all around them and at their own wounded bodies and knew not how to **lament** this sudden **calamity**¹⁶¹⁵.

The next day, the jinn repeated his **fusillade**¹⁶¹⁶. This time, the royal army was ready. The soldiers shot thousands of arrows and spears at him. But their **volley**¹⁶¹⁷ had no effect on him! He simply brushed off all the **munitions**¹⁶¹⁸ that had

¹⁶⁰⁸ **Transvestite:** (n) a person who dresses and behaves like the opposite sex. Usually used for a man who dresses and behaves like a woman.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *vestire*, to dress

¹⁶⁰⁹ **Prohibitive:** (adj) tending to prohibit something; tending to prohibit the purchase or use of something.

❑ The **prohibitive** prices of fruits have kept them away from the middle class and poor families.

¹⁶¹⁰ **Twig:** (n) a very thin, young, small branch of a plant or a tree.

¹⁶¹¹ **Hurl:** (v) to throw with great force.

Hurl is usually confused with **hurtle**.

Hurtle: (v) to rush with great speed.

❑ Disowned by his family, rejected by his friends and torn apart by his **remorse** at all the wrongs he had done, the man drank and drank and drank and **hurtled** to his death.

¹⁶¹² **Mangle:** (v) to injure the body severely by beating, cutting, crushing etc.; to deform something totally by applying lot of force

❑ The car was badly **mangled** in the head-on collision with the truck.

¹⁶¹³ **Barrage:** (n) a bombardment of either bullets, missiles, etc. or of questions, insults, etc.

¹⁶¹⁴ **Strewn:** (adj) scattered; (v) **strew:** to scatter

❑ The groom's cousins **strew** flower petals in his path as he brought the bride home.

❑ The dead man's family **strew** his ashes in the holy Ganga at Haridwar.

¹⁶¹⁵ **Calamity:** (n) a disaster; (adj) **calamitous**.

❑ Earthquakes, floods, war, terror attacks are all **calamities**.

¹⁶¹⁶ **Fusillade:** (n) a continuous firing from a number of firearms at the same time.

Origin: Fr *fusil*, gun

❑ Executing a person by firing squad is also sometimes called **fusillading**.

❑ Forty five civilians and three policemen were killed in a machine gun **fusillade** by three terrorists in a crowded bus stand.

¹⁶¹⁷ **Volley:** (n) a **fusillade**; the bullets or missiles fired in a **fusillade**.

¹⁶¹⁸ **Munitions:** (n) weapons and ammunition used in a war.

dug into his skin. He did not get even a single scratch! One man, who had climbed close to a toe of the jinn, poured oil over it and set it afire. The fire extinguished by itself and not even a bit of the jinn's skin was **seared**¹⁶¹⁹. The jinn continued to **hurl** his **volleys** at the city and when he got tired, stopped, lay down and snored.

The royal sorcerer said that the jinn was probably a Hathroo jinn. Nobody could kill the jinns of that species; they could die only at their own hands. "Obviously, he would never kill himself," the king said with distress. Did that mean that the jinn was **invincible**¹⁶²⁰? Would they never be able to defeat him? That day, he had killed 500 people and the day before, 400. Would the death count continue **unabated**? The worried king announced that whosoever could **vanquish**¹⁶²¹ the jinn and **evict**¹⁶²² him from the city would be rewarded with Princess Aaleen.

Here was his chance! His only chance to win Aaleen! Barqat thought hard. Then, he presented himself before the king and said that he could defeat the jinn. The king looked at his **lanky**¹⁶²³ body and said, "I doubt."

"The strength of a man lies in his mind, my lord" Barqat said with a smile. His bold manner **evinced**¹⁶²⁴ his confidence. It **convinced**¹⁶²⁵ the king. He asked Barqat what resources he needed. Barqat requested for the royal sorcerer.

He asked the royal sorcerer to turn him into a mosquito which buzzed a thousand times louder and stung a thousand times sharper than a normal mosquito. The sorcerer understood. "That is an intelligent plan," he smiled. He muttered some **incantations** over Barqat's head and lo! Barqat **metamorphosed**¹⁶²⁶ into a mosquito!

"The young man's plan is very risky, my lord," the sorcerer remarked after the mosquito had flown out. "He can easily get killed. But, there is a slim possibility of success too."

The mosquito reached the mountain. The jinn lay **sprawled**¹⁶²⁷ over a flat plateau. He was **slumbering**¹⁶²⁸. The mosquito started buzzing in his left ear. Irrked, the jinn covered his ear with his hand and turned over. The mosquito

¹⁶¹⁹ **Seared:** (adj) burnt; (v) **sear:** to burn the surface of

❑ The host of the cookery show shared with the viewers the recipe of 'seared fish with mushrooms.' Vipul liked the look of the dish and tried to make it himself. When he was taking a pan off the gas stove with a cloth napkin, the loose end of the napkin caught fire from the flame. Panicked, Vipul threw the burning napkin on the shelf and tried to put out the fire with his hands. The fire was extinguished but his hands were **seared** in the process.

¹⁶²⁰ **Invincible:** (adj) one who cannot be defeated.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *vincere*, to overcome + *-iblis*, able => 'not overcome-able'

¹⁶²¹ **Vanquish:** (v) to defeat, overcome

Origin: L *vincere*, to overcome

❑ James Bond **vanquished** many evil brains like Goldfinger and Blofeld.

¹⁶²² **Evict:** (v) to kick out.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *vincere*, to overcome => 'to overcome and throw out'

The word 'victory' too is from the root *vincere*.

¹⁶²³ **Lanky:** (adj) tall and thin such that the person looks as if merely clothes have been hung on a hanger.

¹⁶²⁴ **Evince:** (v) to show clearly.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *vincere*, to overcome => 'to overcome an argument and bring out the truth'

¹⁶²⁵ **Convince:** (v) to make someone believe or agree with something.

Origin: L *con-* + *vincere*, to overcome => 'to overcome disbelief or doubt'

❑ A man about whose role in a crime, a judge or a jury is convinced, is called a convict.

¹⁶²⁶ **Metamorphose:** (v) to change the form. A complete change in form is called a **metamorphosis**.

Origin: Gk *meta-*, change + *morphe*, form

¹⁶²⁷ **Sprawl:** (v) to sit or lie with the legs and arms spread out gracelessly; to spread out gracelessly; (n) a graceless spreading out of something, usually of a city.

❑ The city **sprawled** over the surrounding agricultural land.

❑ Due to the city's **sprawl**, it became harder and harder to find open areas.

¹⁶²⁸ **Slumber:** (v) to sleep; (n) sleep, esp. light sleep.

❑ No one dared to wake the giant from his **slumber**.

buzzed into the right ear now. “Oho!” the jinn moaned in sleep and covered that ear with his free hand. The mosquito bit the hand. The jinn **wined**¹⁶²⁹ at the **spasm**¹⁶³⁰ of pain and roughly rubbed the bitten area against his body. The mosquito bit the other hand now. That was enough! The jinn sat up in great anger. Who had disturbed his sleep? He roared. Who had dared? The playful mosquito started buzzing around one of his ears. The jinn slapped it with great **fury**, but the mosquito flew out of the way and the slap hit his own face. Hard! The jinn was now in a black rage. The mosquito bit him on his left forearm. The jinn swore that he would **squash** the little devil and hit it with full force. The mosquito moved away with **celerity**¹⁶³¹ and the jinn’s right hand hit his left forearm with such force that the left arm was fractured.

The mosquito continued to **rile**¹⁶³² the jinn **relentlessly**. By the next evening, the jinn was utterly sleep-deprived, **enervated**¹⁶³³ and **mangled**. Every part of his body was **lacerated**¹⁶³⁴. The mosquito now flew back to the royal sorcerer and asked him to **transmute** ten thousand soldiers into similar mosquitoes. The sorcerer immediately obliged.

The jinn had just started thinking that the **horrid**¹⁶³⁵ mosquito was gone for good. When he saw it return with a **horde**¹⁶³⁶ of mosquitoes, he felt so trapped and afraid and desperate that the only escape he could think of was to cut his throat.

Great joy spread in the city. The mosquitoes returned. The sorcerer **transmuted** them into men again. The king **promulgated**¹⁶³⁷ that the **valiant** Barqat would be married to Princess Aaleen that evening itself. He told the queen to **adorn** the bride.

¹⁶²⁹ **Wince:** (n) a sudden facial or bodily expression of pain; (v) to shrink involuntarily, as in pain.

¹⁶³⁰ **Spasm:** (n) a sudden, short-lived wave of pain or joy or energy, etc.; a sudden, involuntary contraction of one or more muscles.

The related adjective is **spasmodic**.

Spasmodic: (adj) occurring in short bursts which are separated by periods of inactivity; fitful, intermittent.

□ **Spasmodic** cough, **spasmodic** work

¹⁶³¹ **Celerity:** (n) speed

Origin: L *celer*, swift.

Two related words are: accelerate and decelerate

Accelerate: (v) to take the speed up

Decelerate: (v) to take the speed down

¹⁶³² **Rile:** (v) to irritate.

□ The Britishers were **riled** by a survey report which ranked France higher in the list of ‘Best countries to live in.’

¹⁶³³ **Enervate:** (v) to deprive of energy, exhaust; (adj) **enervated:** exhausted.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *nervus*, nerve fibre, muscle + *-ate* => ‘to take the muscles out’ => ‘to deprive of strength.’

¹⁶³⁴ **Lacerated:** (adj) with the skin cut or torn apart; (v) **lacerate:** to tear apart the skin or wound in other manners.

¹⁶³⁵ **Horrid:** (adj) causing horror, horrible.

Origin: Related with horror.

Another word which comes from the same root as horror is ‘**abhor**.’

Abhor: (v) to hate something so strongly that you shrink away in horror the moment you see it; (n) **abhorrence**.

□ She **abhorred** lies. This is much stronger than saying that she disliked lies. The use of the word **abhorred** suggests that she just could not stand lies.

¹⁶³⁶ **Horde:** (n) a large group, a crowd.

□ In the 8th century a.d., Persia (modern day Iran) was run over by **hordes** of Arabs. Many Persians rushed to India and sought **refuge** here. Jaidev Rana, a Hindu king, welcomed them and promised that India would be a safe **haven** for them. He, however, **stipulated** that the Persians should marry within their community and make no attempts at **proselytising**. Those Persians were the **progenitors** of the Parsi community of India.

Proselytise: (v) to convert or try to make someone convert his religion. A person who does change his religion is called a **proselyte**.

¹⁶³⁷ **Promulgate:** (v) to declare, to put into effect with a public announcement.

□ The Mughal emperor Akbar **promulgated** a **syncretic** religion called *Din-e-Ilahi*, which combined the best principles of Islam, Hinduism, Jainism, Zoroastrianism and Christianity.

The queen found not Aaleen but her letter in her chamber. She had written that she refused the marriage. Her father could have rewarded the hero with jewels or cash or with a post in the court, why with her? Was she too just a commodity, just a prize to be given? And a prize that anybody could win, whether he was a **hoary** old man or a father of five? By **vanquishing** a jinn, a man only proved his bravery, she wrote; bravery had no **correlation**¹⁶³⁸ with the sensitivity, tender-heartedness and other **virtues** she desired in her husband. But nobody had even asked her what she wanted. She also knew that her point of view would not be understood. So, she was leaving the palace.

The king was **livid**. How dare his daughter insult him like that? He assured Barqat that his bride *would* be brought back. Till then, Barqat would be a royal guest.

Barqat too was disappointed. The Aaleen of his dreams had been so **docile** and obedient, an ideal woman. And this real Aaleen? She could even **affront**¹⁶³⁹ her own father! What was all that nonsense about *asking* her about marriage? Did a woman have to be *asked*? Anybody else would never marry a run-away woman. But, he would still forgive her **effrontery** and accept her. With his love, he would *make* her the Aaleen of his dreams.

He did not get the chance though. Princess Aaleen was captured from a village by the royal army. Feeling utterly hopeless, she pulled out a dagger and killed herself.

Latin *rapere* **to seize, take by force**

When a man seizes a woman and forces himself upon her, his act is called a ‘rape’. The Sanskrit word for it, *balatkaar*, too is formed on the same image. *Bal* is strength, force; something done by force is called *balaat*, and so *balaatkaar* means ‘an act of force.’

Then there is the word ‘rapid’—meaning swift and speedy—which initially denoted the quick carrying off of the valuables that had been seized.

The other words built on the idea of seizing or being seized are:

*Rapere-1: rapacious*¹⁶⁴⁰, *rapine*¹⁶⁴¹

*Rapere-2: rapt*¹⁶⁴², *rapture*¹⁶⁴³, *enrapture*¹⁶⁴⁴

¹⁶³⁸ **Correlation:** (n) mutual relationship.

¹⁶³⁹ **Affront:** (v) to insult in front of everyone by showing contempt or disrespect; (n) an open insult.

Origin: L *ad*, at + *frontem*, front => ‘to strike at the front’ => ‘to strike at the face’

¹⁶⁴⁰ **Rapacious:** (adj) extremely greedy, looting.

Origin: L *rapere*, to seize => ‘seizing away the desired thing.’

☐ The **rapacious** humans have shamelessly looted the earth which cares for them like a mother.

¹⁶⁴¹ **Rapine:** (n) the act of violently seizing another’s property

Origin: L *rapere*, to seize

☐ The dacoits resorted to **plunder** and **rapine**, laying waste the whole village.

Plunder: (v) to loot.

Beware: rapine is not ‘raping’

¹⁶⁴² **Rapt:** (adj) with mind totally absorbed into an activity; **enraptured.**

Origin: L *rapere*, to seize => ‘to seize the mind’ => ‘to grab total attention of the mind’

☐ The class listened to the teacher with **rapt** attention. Not an extra sound could be heard.

¹⁶⁴³ **Rapture:** (n) extreme delight, **ecstasy.**

Origin: **rapt** + -ure => ‘the state of one’s mind being totally seized by an emotion’ => ‘the state of being so happy that you just cannot see or think anything else.’

☐ The Kathak dancer **depicted** the **rapture** of a girl who is going to meet her beloved. The performance was so beautiful that the audience was **enraptured.**

¹⁶⁴⁴ **Enrapture:** (v) to put into the state of **rapture**; to delight very, very much

Origin: *en-*, in + **rapture**

Rapere-3: **ravish**¹⁶⁴⁵, **ravage**¹⁶⁴⁶, **ravenous**¹⁶⁴⁷
 Rapere-4: **ravine**¹⁶⁴⁸, **surreptitious**¹⁶⁴⁹, **usurp**¹⁶⁵⁰

Latin *capere* **to take, seize, catch**

To 'capture' an **absconding**¹⁶⁵¹ criminal means to grab him by his collar or by his arm as he is trying to run away and put him in jail. Once he has been captured, he is called a 'captive'. A 'captivating' beauty seizes the minds of men in a similar fashion. They become utterly incapable of seeing anything but her, of thinking about anything but her.

'Receptacles' and 'capsules' are both vessels that take in matter. The 'capacity' of a receptacle is the amount of matter that it can take.

Something or somebody who has been taken out of the group is called an 'exception'. All the students of Army Public School were taken to the picnic, except Rinku. He was left behind as a punishment for his **exceptionable**¹⁶⁵² conduct the day before. He had burst crackers in the boys' toilet.

¹⁶⁴⁵ **Ravish:** (v) to carry off by force; to **enrapture**

Origin: L *rapere* -> Old Fr *ravir*, to seize

- When you use the phrases '**ravishing** beauty' or '**ravishing** music' or '**ravishing** roses', what you mean is that you are delighted by the woman's beauty or the music or the roses.
- The kingdom of Hupai **ravished** many of her neighboring kingdoms in her bid to be the largest kingdom of the earth.

¹⁶⁴⁶ **Ravage:** (v) to destroy completely or almost completely.

Origin: L *rapere* -> Old Fr *ravir*, to seize => 'to seize and then destroy it violently, with force.'

- Age **ravaged** her beauty.
- A violent tornado **ravaged** east Bihar, killing 80 people, besides **rendering** thousands homeless.
- The dacoits **ravaged** the village. Try to picture this. Here the word '**ravaged**' has an additional implication. It means, not only are the dacoits destroying the houses and the huts of the village, they are also looting them. Looting is a type of destruction too.

¹⁶⁴⁷ **Ravenous:** (adj) extremely hungry; extremely greedy.

Origin: L *rapere* -> Old Fr *ravir*, to seize -> Old Fr. *ravin*, to rush violently

- His friends were astonished to see him gobble a whole burger in two huge bites. He ordered the waiter to bring two more burgers and explained to them, "I've not eaten anything for 24 hours. I am **ravenous**."

¹⁶⁴⁸ **Ravine:** (n) a narrow, deep pit at whose base a river flows and which is sandwiched between two steep hills.

Origin: L *rapere* -> Old Fr *ravir*, to seize -> Old Fr. *ravin*, to rush violently => 'water rushing at great speed'

- Twenty persons were killed when a bus fell into a **ravine** in Himachal Pradesh.

¹⁶⁴⁹ **Surreptitious:** (adj) done secretly so that no one can notice.

Origin: L *sub-*, below + *rapere*, to seize => 'to seize from below instead of from above' => 'to take without being noticed.'

- After receiving a bribe from a guest at the conference, the waiter **surreptitiously** replaced the president's half-drunk glass of juice with another glass which had the same amount of juice but to which poison had been added.

¹⁶⁵⁰ **Usurp:** (v) to seize something you have no rights over by using force.

Origin: L *usus*, to use + *rapere*, to seize => 'to seize and use'

- The tenants **usurped** the house they had rented.
- The chief of the military **usurped** the king's authority.

¹⁶⁵¹ **Abscond:** (v) to run away and go in hiding.

- The man who had murdered the minister is **absconding**. The police have conducted raids at the houses of all his family friends and friends but have not been able to find him. They have now released his sketch to the public and declared a reward for whoever helps them find him.

¹⁶⁵² **Exceptionable:** (adj) objectionable

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *capere*, to take + -able => 'worthy of being taken out from the rest of the things' => 'worthy of being taken out from the rest of the things because no other thing is as bad.'

The opposite is **unexceptionable**.

Unexceptionable: (adj) that about which no one can raise an objection.

- The politician's conduct as a Member of Parliament was **unexceptionable**.

The 'recipient' of an award is the man who takes it. A 'receptive' mind is the one that is ready to take in new ideas and suggestions.

How you 'perceive' things is how you take them. A 'perceptive' critic is the one who can take in even those **nuances**¹⁶⁵³ that everybody else misses.

The other words from this root are:

Capere-1: **capacious**¹⁶⁵⁴, **captious**¹⁶⁵⁵, **caitiff**¹⁶⁵⁶

Capere-2: **anticipate**¹⁶⁵⁷, **conceive**¹⁶⁵⁸, **conception**¹⁶⁵⁹

Capere-3: **inception**¹⁶⁶⁰, **incipient**¹⁶⁶¹, **intercept**¹⁶⁶²

¹⁶⁵³ **Nuance**: (n) a slight difference in meaning, colour, etc.; a fine shade of meaning.

- ❑ The words 'collect' and 'gather' mean broadly the same but differ in the **nuances**. 'Collect' may imply a careful selection based on some property or rule but 'gather' means only accumulation.

¹⁶⁵⁴ **Capacious**: (adj) spacious, having a lot of capacity.

Origin: L *capere*, to hold => 'able to hold much'

- ❑ The car was not a car but a **capacious** luxurious room that moved **placidly** on the road.

¹⁶⁵⁵ **Captious**: (adj) faultfinding; (of arguments, questions, etc.) trying to trap you.

Origin: L *capere*, to seize

- ❑ The **captious** neighbourhood aunties have nothing better to do than to criticize anything and everything that anybody does.
- ❑ A **captious** argument looks valid on the surface and will trap anybody who is not alert enough to find out its flawed reasoning. An example of a **captious** argument: X said to Y: 'You are different from me. You are not what I am.' Now this was so obviously true to Y that he readily agreed. Next, X said: 'I am a human.' Again, the truth of that statement was quite evident. So Y granted this too. Then, X added: "Therefore, you are not a human."

¹⁶⁵⁶ **Caitiff**: (n) a villainous person with no morals.

Origin: L *capere*, to seize -> *captivus*, captive, that is, a person who is seized for a villainy -> ME *caitiff*

- ❑ The businessman fell in love with the **ravishing** woman the moment he saw her. He was **dismayed** when he found that she was married. When, however, he learnt that her husband was a **caitiff** and greedy to the last degree, he got an idea. He offered ₹ 10 lakh to the husband to divorce his wife and, seeing so much money for the first time in his life, the **despicable** husband readily agreed.

¹⁶⁵⁷ **Anticipate**: (v) to see, act or feel something in advance; to look forward to something.

Origin: L *ante-*, before + *capere*, to seize => 'to seize beforehand'

- ❑ The MLA **anticipated** arrest by the police. So, he filed for an **anticipatory** bail in the court.
- ❑ Though Kanav wished to be liked by Peehu, he did not try to **anticipate** her opinions before putting forward his own. He wanted her to see his true self and talked frankly.

¹⁶⁵⁸ **Conceive**: (v) to become pregnant with; to begin; to think or understand.

Origin: L *con-* + *capere*, to take => 'something new taking hold'

- ❑ When a woman **conceives**, it means a life has begun within her.
- ❑ He has been a part of the project from the day it was **conceived**.

¹⁶⁵⁹ **Conception**: (n) beginning

Origin: noun form of **conceive**.

- ❑ He has been a part of the project since its **conception**.

¹⁶⁶⁰ **Inception**: (n) beginning

Origin: L *in-*, in + *capere*, to take => 'to take in something new'

- ❑ The charity hospital has served 5,000 poor patients since its **inception** 10 months ago.

¹⁶⁶¹ **Incipient**: (adj) beginning

Origin: adjective form of **inception**

- ❑ An **incipient** stage fire can be controlled with fire extinguishers or small water hoses. At this stage, firefighters do not even need to wear any protective equipment.
- ❑ His literary fame in the 1940s was only **incipient**, his better work was just then beginning.

¹⁶⁶² **Intercept**: (v) to get hold of something while it is moving from its source to its destination.

Origin: L *inter-*, between + *capere*, to take => 'to take in between'

- ❑ The intelligence officials **intercepted** the telephonic conversation of the two suspected terrorists.
- ❑ The Pakistan Navy **intercepted** an Indian ship that was going to Iran.

The following words too have origins in *prehendere*:

*Prehendere-1: apprehensive*¹⁶⁷⁰, *misapprehension*¹⁶⁷¹

*Prehendere-2: comprehensive*¹⁶⁷², *reprehend*¹⁶⁷³, *reprehensible*¹⁶⁷⁴

*Prehendere-3: comprise*¹⁶⁷⁵, *apprise*¹⁶⁷⁶, *reprise*¹⁶⁷⁷

*Prehendere-4: reprisal*¹⁶⁷⁸, *pregnable*¹⁶⁷⁹

¹⁶⁷⁰ **Apprehensive:** (adj) fearful, uneasy.

Origin: L *ad-* + *prehendere*, to grasp => ‘capable of grasping a sense of danger’

❑ She was **apprehensive** that she was being followed and kept looking around. She made it a point to walk only on crowded roads.

¹⁶⁷¹ **Misapprehension:** (n) misunderstanding

Origin: Mis-, wrong + **apprehension**, understanding

❑ “I do not want you to be under any **misapprehension** that I am still **hankering** after you,” Raj roughly told his ex-girlfriend Lavi. “I came here only because Simi insisted.” Simi was their common friend. It was her wedding that day and Raj and Lavi—who had been lovers two years ago—had both come to attend it.

Hanker: (v) to long for something so strongly that you find no rest or peace.

❑ Raj feared that Lavi may **misapprehend** his coming to the marriage as his excuse to get near her once again. That was why he made it clear that that was not the case.

¹⁶⁷² **Comprehensive:** (adj) large in scope; covering many details or aspects.

Origin: L *com-* + *prehendere*, to grasp => ‘grasping much’

❑ The documentary provides **comprehensive** information on the Royal Bengal Tiger.

¹⁶⁷³ **Reprehend:** (v) to blame or criticize.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *prehendere*, to grasp => ‘to grasp and pull back’ => ‘to restrain’

❑ One should **reprehend** the deed, not the doer.

¹⁶⁷⁴ **Reprehensible:** (adj) blameworthy

Origin: **reprehend** + -able

❑ The Opposition termed as most **reprehensible** the remark of the Chief Minister that the suicide of a farmer in the state the previous day was “a drama”.

¹⁶⁷⁵ **Comprise:** (v) consist of.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *prehendere*, to get hold of => ‘to hold components together’

❑ The gift pack **comprised** of three novels, two poetry books and one movie dvd.

¹⁶⁷⁶ **Apprise:** (v) to inform.

Origin: from **apprehend** => ‘to make **apprehend**’ => ‘to teach, inform’

❑ The blackmailer threatened to **apprise** the police of the businessman’s many crimes.

❑ “What’s happening?” The father rushed to the children’s room upon hear hearing shouts of his two sons. His daughter, who had witnessed the whole scene and had unsuccessfully tried to stop the fight, **apprised** him of how the fight had started.

¹⁶⁷⁷ **Reprise:** (v) to repeat.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *prehendere*, to grasp => ‘to grasp once again’

❑ Trisha Oberoi **reprised** her role of a cute ghost in the **sequel** to the movie “*Pyara sa bhoot*.”

¹⁶⁷⁸ **Reprisal:** (n) the act of giving a tit for a tat; giving back at least as much harm and injury as you received.

Origin: from **reprise**

❑ At the 1972 Olympics in Munich, Germany, Palestinian terrorists kidnapped—and killed—11 Israeli athletes. This triggered **vengeful reprisals** by the **outraged** Jewish state and further, counter **reprisals** by Palestinian groups.

❑ When America launched its **reprisals** for 9/11, the only evidence against Osama Bin Laden consisted of intelligence chatter and guesswork. There was no concrete proof at all.

¹⁶⁷⁹ **Pregnable:** (adj) open to attack.

Origin: L *prehendere*, grasp + -able => ‘capable of being grasped’

The opposite of **pregnable** is **impregnable**, meaning ‘that which cannot be attacked or won.’

❑ The security was so tight outside the royal palace that it was considered **impregnable**. It was said that even a bird could not flutter its wings there. Yet, somebody managed to kill the king.

Do not confuse **impregnable** with **impregnate**, which means ‘to make pregnant’ and is not from the root *prehendere*.

Prehendere-5: **apprentice**¹⁶⁸⁰, **prize**¹⁶⁸¹

Prehendere-6: **enterprise**¹⁶⁸², **entrepreneur**¹⁶⁸³



Everytime you shout “surprise!” you make an **obeisance** to this root. The prefix *sur-* in surprise is a variant of the Latin prefix *sub-*, which means under. To ‘surprise’ somebody is to take him under, that is to overwhelm or overcome him. Your sudden **gesture** or attack overwhelms the other person so much that he does not come to know for a moment what he ought to do.

Latin *emere* **to take**

The word ‘example’ is derived from the Latin *eximere*, which means ‘to take out’, made as it is from the prefix *ex-* meaning ‘out’ and *emere*. Anything which is taken out of a group of things to serve as a representative of that entire group is called its example. The word ‘sample’ is just a simplified form of ‘example.’

The following words are built on *emere*:

Emere-1: **Exemplary**¹⁶⁸⁴, **exemplify**¹⁶⁸⁵, **exempt**¹⁶⁸⁶

¹⁶⁸⁰ **Apprentice:** (n) a person who works with an expert to learn work.

Origin: L *ad-* + *prehendere*, to grasp => ‘one who is grasping the methods and techniques of work’

¹⁶⁸¹ **Prize:** (v) to force open or out as if with a lever.

Origin: L *prehendere*, to seize

❑ The policemen **prized** out the truth from the criminal by beating him severely.

¹⁶⁸² **Enterprise:** (n) a risky project that can be undertaken only by the bold; a company; boldness, adventurous spirit.

Origin: L *entre-*, between, in the midst of + *prehendere*, to seize => ‘to seize an opportunity’

❑ A private company can be called a ‘private **enterprise**.’

❑ The **enterprising** man left his well-paying job and started his own **enterprise**.

¹⁶⁸³ **Entrepreneur:** (n) a person who starts his own business.

Origin: L *entre-*, between, in the midst of + *prehendere*, to seize => ‘to seize an opportunity’

¹⁶⁸⁴ **Exemplary:** (adj) serving as an example.

Origin: from example

❑ He showed **exemplary** courage in the battlefield.

¹⁶⁸⁵ **Exemplify:** (v) serve as an example of.

❑ Bollywood, where people of all religions and regions work on their common passion—films—together, **exemplifies** India’s **secularism**.

❑ “Mythologist Joseph Campbell **exemplified** the **autodidactic** method. Following completion of his Master’s degree, Campbell decided not to go forward with his plans to earn a doctorate, and he simply followed his curiosity and read deeply for five years. He developed a systematic programme of reading nine hours a day.” Excerpted from Wikipedia.

¹⁶⁸⁶ **Exempt:** (v) to free from an obligation or a duty; (n): **exemption**.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *emere*, to take => ‘to take out of an obligation’

❑ Men whose taxable annual income is less than ₹ 1,60,000 are **exempted** from paying income tax.

❑ On ground of his poor health, the accused was granted **exemption** from appearing in the court during the hearings of his case.

Emere-2: **peremptory**¹⁶⁸⁷, **preempt**¹⁶⁸⁸, **redemption**¹⁶⁸⁹

Emere-3: **prompt**¹⁶⁹⁰, **impromptu**¹⁶⁹¹, **pronto**¹⁶⁹², **vintage**¹⁶⁹³

The word *emere* just means 'to take' but a related word *sumere* means 'to take up'. *Sumere* is formed when the prefix *sub-*, up from under, is put before *emere*. A 'consumer' is one who takes up things. When someone 'assumes' the office of the company president, he takes it up. Similarly, a man who 'assumes' himself to be the centre of the universe has taken up that belief.

The other words that stem from *sumere* are:

Sumere-1: **Sumptuary**¹⁶⁹⁴, **sumptuous**¹⁶⁹⁵

¹⁶⁸⁷ **Peremptory**: (adj) full of authority, leaving no option of refusal.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *emere*, to take => 'to take away completely.'

- ❑ From her drunkard husband's **peremptory** knock on the bedroom door, she could tell that she would have to let him in or he would start kicking the door.

¹⁶⁸⁸ **Preempt**: (v) forestall

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *emere*, to take => 'to take a step before the other person can take his.'

- ❑ The new Chief Minister gave ministerial berths to all the important leaders of his party so as to **preempt** attempts at snatching power from him.

¹⁶⁸⁹ **Redemption**: (n) recovery; making up for; (v) **redeem**.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *emere*, to take => 'to take back what you have given'

- ❑ He has sinned beyond **redemption**.

¹⁶⁹⁰ **Prompt**: (adj) quick

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *emere*, to take => 'to bring forth' => 'at hand' => 'ready quick'

- ❑ The **prompt** arrival of the ambulance saved the accident victim's life.

¹⁶⁹¹ **Impromptu**: (adj) on the spot, with no preparation.

Origin: L in *promptu*, in readiness.

- ❑ The friends were eating their dinner at the hostel mess when they made an **impromptu** plan to watch a late night movie at the nearby multiplex.

¹⁶⁹² **Pronto**: (adv) quickly

Origin: from **prompt**.

- ❑ The model claimed that she could make anyone fall in love with her **pronto**.
- ❑ The old lady in the neighbourhood advised the new bride to learn cooking **pronto**.

¹⁶⁹³ **Vintage**: (adj) belonging to a particular year or time period; old-fashioned

Origin: L *vinum*, grape + *emere*, to take away => 'to take away grapes' => 'to make wine from grapes' => 'wine of a particular year'

- ❑ **Vintage** wine, **vintage** cars, **vintage** music

The other words from the root *vinum* are: **vintner**, **vineyard**

Vintner: (n) a wine maker and seller.

Vineyard: (n) a plantation of grapes.

- ❑ A wine bottle marked with the general 'Made in France' label has been company-produced on a large scale, whereas one whose label specifies the name of the Chateau and the village has been produced by a **vintner** on his own **vineyard**. Such a wine is exclusive and much superior in quality.

¹⁶⁹⁴ **Sumptuary**: (adj) related with moral policing; related with expenditure.

Origin: L *sumere*, to take => 'cost'

- ❑ Examples of **sumptuary** laws include: ban of alcohol, ban on smoking in public places, ban of sale to alcohol to minors, a university banning its female students from wearing jeans.

¹⁶⁹⁵ **Sumptuous**: (adj) very rich and elaborate.

Origin: L *sumere*, to take => 'cost' => 'costly'

- ❑ The family laid a **sumptuous** feast to welcome their son-in-law.

Sumere-2: **presumptive**¹⁶⁹⁶, **presumptuous**¹⁶⁹⁷, **unassuming**¹⁶⁹⁸

Sumere-3: **resumption**¹⁶⁹⁹, **subsume**¹⁷⁰⁰

Latin *trahere* **to pull, draw**

The machine that obediently pulls a trolley loaded with grain-sacks is called a 'tractor'. When opposites 'attract', they feel a pull towards one another (L. *ad*-, towards). A contract pulls people together (L. *con*-, together). To 'subtract' is to pull away from below (L. *sub*-, under, below).

While the sacks were being filled with grains, a few words too jumped in. They are now merrily singing travel-songs while the poor tractor pulls the heavy trolley. They are:

Sack 3: **Tractable**¹⁷⁰¹, **intractable**¹⁷⁰², **tract**¹⁷⁰³

¹⁶⁹⁶ **Presumptive**: (adj) probable; assuming something to be true.

Origin: L *pre*-, before + *sumere*, to take => 'to take beforehand'

- ❑ The young man was the nephew of the bachelor businessman and the heir **presumptive** to his huge estate.
- ❑ The speaker began her speech thus: "I do not have the foolish **presumption** to imagine that I can offer any thing new on a subject which has been so successfully treated by many learned and able writers."

¹⁶⁹⁷ **Presumptuous**: (adj) making assumptions beforehand; excessively bold.

Origin: L *pre*-, before + *sumere*, to take => 'to take beforehand'

- ❑ For a man who has never succeeded, it is **presumptuous** to declare that success does not matter.
- ❑ It was **presumptuous** of the professor to introduce himself to the class as 'a future Nobel winner.' The students took an immediate dislike to him.

¹⁶⁹⁸ **Unassuming**: (adj) modest

Origin: L *un*-, not + assuming => 'not making any assumptions about his power or importance.'

- ❑ Upon seeing him, there was no way one could know that he was the founding-chairman of one of India's biggest IT companies. He dressed very simply, was very polite in talking and threw no weight around. He was an **unassuming** man and that increased everybody's respect for him.

¹⁶⁹⁹ **Resumption**: (n) starting again; (v): **resume**.

Origin: L *re*-, again + *sumere*, to take

- ❑ We **resumed** the work after a short break. Upon its **resumption**, we noticed that we were working more efficiently than before. The break had, indeed, **invigorated** us.

¹⁷⁰⁰ **Subsume**: (v) to take under.

Origin: L *sub*-, under + *sumere*, to take

- ❑ Renowned educationist Professor Yash Pal proposed the setting up of a National Commission for Higher Education and Research, which would **subsume** all other regulatory bodies of higher education in the country, such as the AICTE, the UGC, etc.

¹⁷⁰¹ **Tractable**: (adj) manageable

Origin: L *trahere*, to pull => 'those who can be pulled along.'

- ❑ Teachers like **tractable** students.

¹⁷⁰² **Intractable**: (adj) unmanageable, stubborn.

Origin: L *in*-, not + **tractable**

- ❑ Poverty seems to be an **intractable** problem of India. The political leaders claim to have been trying to **eradicate** it since the Independence, but for all their efforts, people remain poor and in as huge and horrifying numbers as before.

¹⁷⁰³ **Tract**: (n) a large piece of land; a specific area of the body

Origin: L *trahere*, to pull => 'pulled out' => 'stretched' => 'large stretch of land'

- ❑ Because they wanted to settle the forest area, the British government allotted **tracts** of land to anybody who applied for a farm there.
- ❑ Respiratory **tract**, urinary **tract**, etc.

Sack 67: **Detract**¹⁷⁰⁴, **abstract**¹⁷⁰⁵, **protract**¹⁷⁰⁶, **retract**¹⁷⁰⁷

Sack 171: **retreat**¹⁷⁰⁸, **treatise**¹⁷⁰⁹, **entreat**¹⁷¹⁰

Sack 289: **trait**¹⁷¹¹, **distrait**¹⁷¹², **distraught**¹⁷¹³

¹⁷⁰⁴ **Detract:** (v) to pull down, to belittle.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *trahere*, to pull

- ❑ The Ramayana has two episodes which **detract** from Rama's character as the ideal man. One is his killing Bali, the monkey king, from behind. And the other is his telling Sita, when they are reunited, that he cannot live with her again because she had been taken by another man.

¹⁷⁰⁵ **Abstract:** (n) summary; (adj) existing only in the mind, having no physical presence.

Origin: L *abs-*, away + *trahere*, to pull => 'to pull away from the material world'

- ❑ The painter said that he did not paint real things like an apple or a woman or a tree or a landscape. He painted the **abstract**—ideas such as pain, love, sadness, hope—and used the real things only as a medium for conveying those abstract thoughts and emotions. "For example," he said, "consider three paintings. One shows a bright, red apple, the second a shrunk, wrinkled one and the third, an apple that is rotting and twisted. All the three paintings show the same real object—the apple. Yet, the meaning they convey, the emotion each arouses in you is different. That **intangible** emotion, that thought which you think when looking at my painting is what I actually paint."
- ❑ The **abstract** of a research paper

¹⁷⁰⁶ **Protract:** (v) to draw out, lengthen.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *trahere*, to pull

- ❑ The project manager **protracted** his work leave by a week. "He must have **protracted** the negotiations himself so that he gets to enjoy America for a week more!" His **subordinates** chuckled. The manager had been sent by the company to the US to settle a deal with a client and was originally scheduled to return within a week. Meanwhile, his team members enjoyed their break from the **protracted** meetings that the manager was famous for.

¹⁷⁰⁷ **Retract:** (v) to take back.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *trahere*, to pull

- ❑ Sia was so afraid that her mother would **retract** her permission for the school trip that she behaved like a model child till the trip started.
- ❑ The politicians and film actors are always saying something and then **retracting** it.

¹⁷⁰⁸ **Retreat:** (v) withdraw from action; (n) a place where one goes after withdrawing from action.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *trahere*, to pull => 'to pull oneself back from the busy schedule'

- ❑ The Prime Minister **retreated** to the hills of Manali for a much-needed vacation.
- ❑ The Manali hills were the favourite summer **retreat** of the Prime Minister.

¹⁷⁰⁹ **Treatise:** (n) a very long, detailed formal essay about the principles of a subject.

Origin: treat+ ise => 'treatment of a subject'. The word 'treat' is a derivative of *trahere*.

- ❑ The Arthashastra by Kautilya (also known as Chanakya) is a **comprehensive treatise** on all aspects of good governance, economic policy, military strategy and international relations.

¹⁷¹⁰ **Entreat:** (v) plead earnestly.

Origin: L *en-*, in + *trahere*, to pull => 'to pull in'

- ❑ She **entreated** her husband to tell her the truth and admit if there was someone else in his life.

¹⁷¹¹ **Trait:** (n) characteristic, quality.

Origin: L *trahere*, to draw out => 'a sketch of a person' => 'qualities that define a person'

- ❑ Honesty, dishonesty, punctuality etc. are character **traits**.

¹⁷¹² **Distrait:** (adj) absent-minded

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *trahere*, to pull => 'to pull away from the topic being discussed'. The word **distract** has the same etymology.

- ❑ Sia was telling her mother all that happened on the trip with full enthusiasm, but her mother appeared **distrait**, with a far-away look on her face. "Mama," Sia said. Her mother did not realize. "Mama!" Sia shook her. Her mother's chain of thoughts broke, she came back to the world where Sia had been talking, and replied with a confused, "*Haan?*"

¹⁷¹³ **Distraught:** (adj) crazy with fear or tension.

Origin: same as **distrait**.

- ❑ Two days before her daughter's marriage, riots broke out in Delhi, which was where her would-be son-in-law lived. Savitri Devi was **distraught**. What would happen now? Was he safe? Was his family safe? Would the *baraat* be able to come when riots were happening all around? The widowed mother had spent her life's savings on the arrangements. What if the wedding did not happen now? She prayed feverishly for the well-being of the boy and his family and her daughter.

Latin *trudere* **to push**

The words ‘thrust’ and ‘threat’ are cousins of the Latin *trudere*. When princess Aaleen ‘thrusted’ a knife into her heart, she pushed it into the organ. ‘Threats’ are issued to push somebody into doing something that he otherwise would not do.

An ‘intruder’ is a *ghuspaithiya*; he pushes himself into an area that he has no right over. When his intrusion is discovered, he is kicked out, that is, **extruded**¹⁷¹⁴. The other words from this root are:

*Trudere-1: Obtrude*¹⁷¹⁵, *unobtrusive*¹⁷¹⁶

*Trudere-2: protrude*¹⁷¹⁷, *abstruse*¹⁷¹⁸

Latin *pellere* **to push**

When a troublesome student is ‘expelled’ from his college, he is pushed out of the institute.

You can say that you were ‘compelled’ to do something when you did not really want to do something, but were pushed into doing it. You had no choice. Doing that thing had become ‘compulsory’ for you.

Repulsion is the opposite of attraction. To ‘repel’ something means to push it back. Like, a mosquito repellent pushes back all the mosquitoes.

The other words from this root are:

¹⁷¹⁴ **Extrude:** (v) to push out.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *trudere*, to push

❑ The drunkards were **extruded** out of the movie hall.

¹⁷¹⁵ **Obtrude:** (v) to push forward or upon; (adj) **obtrusive:** that which **obtrudes** or pushes itself into one’s view or attention.

Origin: L *ob-* against + *trudere*, to push

❑ In spite of his **obtrusive** baldness, he gave the impression of youth.

❑ Riya lost her whole family in a train accident. Nitin tried his best to console her. He badly wanted to tell her that she was not alone in the world, that he would always be there for her. But he didn’t because he thought that it was to take her at a disadvantage to **obtrude** his love upon her at such a time when she was so shaken, weak and dependent upon him.

¹⁷¹⁶ **Unobtrusive:** (adj) that which does not draw attention.

Origin: un + **obtrusive**

❑ He slipped out of the party **unobtrusively**, went up to his hotel room, killed his boss, cleaned his hands in his boss’ washroom and then entered the party hall as **unobtrusively** as he had left it.

¹⁷¹⁷ **Protrude:** (v) hang outwards.

Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *trudere*, to push => ‘pushed outwards’

❑ His two front teeth **protruded** quite prominently. So, he got braces on his teeth to push them in.

¹⁷¹⁸ **Abstruse:** (adj) difficult to understand.

Origin: L *abs-*, away + *trudere*, to push => ‘pushed away’ => ‘pushed away from sight’ => ‘hidden’

❑ It is an art to write about **abstruse** topics in a simple and interesting manner.

dispel¹⁷¹⁹, **impel**¹⁷²⁰, **impulse**¹⁷²¹, **propel**¹⁷²²

Latin *pressare, premere* **to press**

The words from this root are:

Pressus-1: press, pressure, compress

Pressus-2: espresso, depress, impress

Pressus-3: suppress, repress, **reprimand**¹⁷²³

Latin *jacere* **to throw**

To 'reject' a proposal literally means to 'throw it back.' No matter how gently you do it, it will still **deject**¹⁷²⁴ the poor suitor. But, some things just need to be done and you can only hope that he (or she) will come out of the **doldrums** soon. And most do. There is always someone in their **adjacent**¹⁷²⁵ flat or the junior year to take their mind off you.

However, a few **abject**¹⁷²⁶ lovers 'throw away' their self-respect and pride and keep wagging their tails behind their unresponsive sweethearts, with the hope that they will **relent**¹⁷²⁷ one day. That seldom happens. Just the other day, a

¹⁷¹⁹ **Dispel**: (v) to scatter.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *pellere*, to push

- ❑ The sight of his mother and her sunshine-like-warmth **dispelled** all darkness and sorrows from his heart.
- ❑ Sandhu tried to **dispel** the sadness which overhung all the friends by telling one of the poor jokes he was famous for, but nobody was in the mood to laugh.

¹⁷²⁰ **Impel**: (v) lead into doing something.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *pellere*, to push => 'to push into something'

- ❑ His jealousy **impelled** him to kill his brother.
- ❑ Two instincts **impel** a child to play—the craving for activity and the craving for joy.

¹⁷²¹ **Impulse**: (n) a sudden, strong desire that makes one do something; a moving force.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *pellere*, to push => 'to push into something'

- ❑ He had not planned to murder his business rival. He just acted on **impulse** when the fellow **swaggered** before him about his brand new Mercedes and taunted him for his low profits.

Swagger: (v) boast; to talk or walk arrogantly, as if one is the king of the world.

¹⁷²² **Propel**: (v) to drive forward.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *pellere*, to push

- ❑ A boat is **propelled** by its oars or, if it is a machine boat, by its engine.

¹⁷²³ **Reprimand**: (n) severe scolding or criticism, especially by a person in authority.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *premere*, to press => 'to push back' => 'to push back someone who was crossing his limit'

- ❑ In the middle of the lecture, Rahul stuck a pin in the boy, sitting next to him. The boy said "Ouch!" loudly and Rahul got a new **reprimand** from his teacher.

¹⁷²⁴ **Deject**: (v) to dishearten.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *jacere*, to throw => 'to throw down the spirits of'

¹⁷²⁵ **Adjacent**: (adj) adjoining, neighbouring.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *jacere*, to throw => 'to throw towards each other' => 'to lay together'

- ❑ Accident and Crime lie in **adjacent** territory. They **abut** on each other. The boundary line that distinguishes between the two is intent.

¹⁷²⁶ **Abject**: (adj) a condition of great misery and zero dignity.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *jacere*, to throw => 'to throw away'

¹⁷²⁷ **Relent**: (v) soften, melt, give in.

- ❑ In Dilwale Dulhaniya Le Jayeinge, Simran begs her father to let her go on a trip to Europe, her last chance to see the world before her marriage to a complete stranger. Her father initially does not like the idea but soon, he **relents** and allows her to go, on the condition that she promises never to betray his trust.

Relentless: (adj) One who refuses to give in.

poet died in **abject** poverty on the streets. He had great talent and could have been rich but all he cared to write were lovelorn poems to a girl who had long ago married someone else.



Love is not the only thing that sinks people. Sea storms do too. The visibility was poor as **gusts**¹⁷²⁸ and **gales**¹⁷²⁹ raged, and before the captain realized, the ship hit an iceberg! He immediately sounded the alarm and ordered all sailors to **jettison**¹⁷³⁰ the cargo. This **frantic**¹⁷³¹ effort could not save the vessel. It sunk. Men **floundered**¹⁷³² about in the waters, fighting for life. By the time help arrived, all that was left were dead bodies and **flotsam**¹⁷³³.

The tragic news drew many an **ejaculation**¹⁷³⁴ of horror from whoever heard it. The **bereaved**¹⁷³⁵ families **conjectured**¹⁷³⁶ that it was the fault of the captain. He had not slowed down the ship, they said, despite the storm and the reports that ice **floes**¹⁷³⁷ were present in the area. But of course their judgment was **subjective**¹⁷³⁸; their loss had made them unable to look at the situation **objectively**¹⁷³⁹. With the **objective**¹⁷⁴⁰ of investigating the cause of the accident, the government instituted a committee. Whatever they may do now but the men once lost will never come back. Like a **projectile**¹⁷⁴¹ never does.

¹⁷²⁸ **Gust:** (n) a sudden, strong blast of wind.

¹⁷²⁹ **Gale:** (n) a very strong wind.

¹⁷³⁰ **Jettison:** (v) to throw goods overboard from a sinking vessel in order to lighten its weight. The goods, thus thrown, are called the **Jetsam**.
Origin: L *jacere*, to throw -> *jactare*, to throw

¹⁷³¹ **Frantic:** (adj) desperate or crazy with fear or anger, etc. Alternate spelling: **frenetic**.
□ The state of violent excitement that a **frantic** person shows is called a **frenzy**.

¹⁷³² **Flounder:** (v) to struggle clumsily or helplessly.
Origin: from **founder**, which means 'to sink.'

¹⁷³³ **Flotsam:** (n) the wreckage of a ship and the **jetsam** which did not sink and is found floating on the water
Origin: from 'float'

¹⁷³⁴ **Ejaculation:** (n) exclamation
Origin: L *e-*, out + *jacere*, to throw => 'to throw out (words, for example)'

¹⁷³⁵ **Bereaved:** (adj) grieving at the death of a loved one. Also, **bereft**.
Origin: OE *Be+* reave, to rob => 'robbed of a treasure'
□ Twenty people lost their lives in a train accident. The Railways Minister announced a grant of ₹ 1 lakh to the **bereaved** families. **Bereft** of her only son, a crying old woman asked the minister if the money could bring her son back. The minister had no answer.

¹⁷³⁶ **Conjecture:** (v) to guess; to make an opinion without sufficient evidence; (n) such an opinion.
Origin: L *com-*, together + *jacere*, to throw => 'to throw the clues together and form a theory.'

¹⁷³⁷ **Floe:** (n) a detached floating ice sheet.
Origin: from float.

¹⁷³⁸ **Subjective:** (adj) belonging to the mind of the subject; therefore, changing with his mental state
Origin: L *sub-*, under + *jacere*, to throw

¹⁷³⁹ **Objective:** (adj) related to a tangible object; therefore, unchanging, uninfluenced by emotions.
Origin: L *ob-* + *jacere*, to throw

¹⁷⁴⁰ **Objective:** (n) goal; something worked toward or striven for.
Origin: L *ob-* + *jacere*, to throw

¹⁷⁴¹ **Projectile:** an object 'thrown forward' which is incapable of self-**propulsion**.
Origin: L *pro-*, forth + *jacere*, to throw
The path followed by a **projectile** is called its **trajectory**.
Origin: L *trans-*, across + *jacere*, to throw

Greek *ballein* **to throw**

Jesus Christ often told **parables**¹⁷⁴² to impart his message to his followers in a manner that they would both enjoy and understand. An example is ‘the **parable** of the **prodigal**¹⁷⁴³ son.’ It is the story of a man who has two sons. The younger son is **insolent**¹⁷⁴⁴ and demands his share of property while his father is still alive. The father fulfills his wish. The son then goes away with all his money and wastes it **recklessly**¹⁷⁴⁵. He comes to his senses only when he has **squandered**¹⁷⁴⁶ all his wealth and has to do **menial** jobs to buy his food. Then, he feels sorry for all that he’s done and returns to his father and falling at his feet, pleads with him to accept him as his servant since he is no longer worthy of being his son. The father picks him up and hugging him with love, shouts to his servants to kill a calf to celebrate his son’s return. The elder son complains, “Father, I feel cheated. He did not respect you, took all his share, spent it as he wanted and now, he is back in the family. What did he lose? Nothing. And, what did I gain by respecting every word of yours and going not a step beyond your wishes? Nothing.” The father smiled and explained, “My son, you have always been with me. Everything that I have is yours. The reason why we must celebrate is that this other son of mine was dead and has come alive again. We have found him whom we had lost.” Through this **parable**, Jesus warns his followers that someone who rebels against the loving father, the Almighty, has to ultimately suffer for his sins. But if, even then, he confesses his sins to God and feels sorry for them from the heart, God is so generous that he forgives him easily.

The words from this root are:

Throw the ball: **ballistics**¹⁷⁴⁷, **hyperbole**¹⁷⁴⁸

¹⁷⁴² **Parable:** (n) a story which teaches a moral or religious lesson.

Origin: Gk *para-*, alongside + *ballein*, to throw => ‘to throw the lesson you want to teach alongside a story’ => ‘a seemingly simple story whose characters actually have a deeper, symbolic meaning and which gives a profound lesson.’

¹⁷⁴³ **Prodigal:** (adj) spending extravagantly.

¹⁷⁴⁴ **Insolent:** (adj) rude

¹⁷⁴⁵ **Reckless:** (adj) one who acts without thinking of the consequences, rash.

Origin: reck, to think + less.

☐ “Don’t be **reckless** with other people’s hearts. Don’t put up with people who are **reckless** with yours.” Kurt Vonnegut

A related word is **reckon**.

¹⁷⁴⁶ **Squander:** (v) to waste away.

¹⁷⁴⁷ **Ballistics:** (n) study of projectiles which are used as firearms, such as bullets, rockets, missiles, etc., (adj) **ballistic:** related with **ballistics**, become illogically angry.

Origin: Gk *ballein*, to throw

☐ India has many **indigenous ballistic** missiles

☐ The housewife went **ballistic** when the servant broke the expensive vase.

¹⁷⁴⁸ **Hyperbole:** (n) a statement which is exaggerated for effect, to convey a sentiment or idea

Origin: Gk *hyper*, beyond + *ballein*, to throw => to throw beyond

☐ Examples of **hyperbole:**

To say, “The whole town was there at Sharma’s birthday bash,” when every resident of the town was not actually there.

To say, “You are the best father in the whole world,” without having any survey or formal comparison with every other father in the world.

A housewife complaining, “The electricity is always gone here,” when, in fact, the power cuts in her city last for two hours in the morning and two hours in the evening.

The geometric curve **hyperbola** has the same etymology as **hyperbole**.

Ballein means to throw: **parabola**¹⁷⁴⁹, **palaver**¹⁷⁵⁰, **problematic**¹⁷⁵¹
 Throw the ball, oh, throw, throw, throw!: **parley**¹⁷⁵², **parlance**¹⁷⁵³, **parliament**¹⁷⁵⁴

Latin **torquere** **to twist**

A ‘torque’ is a twisting force. It makes a body rotate or twist about an axis. A **tortuous**¹⁷⁵⁵ road is full of twists and turns, as in the hills.

Mrs Jayanti Lal, Mrs Sheila Punj and the other eight members of the kitty party were counselling their youngest and soon-to-be-married member, Naina, on the perfect honeymoon spot.

¹⁷⁴⁹ **Parabola:** (n) a geometric curve each point of which is equidistant from a fixed point (focus) and a fixed line (directrix).

Origin: Gk *para-*, alongside + *ballein*, to throw => ‘to throw alongside’ => ‘to compare’

¹⁷⁵⁰ **Palaver:** (n) idle talk; (v) to talk idly.

Origin: Gk *para-*, alongside + *ballein*, to throw => ‘to throw alongside’ => ‘to compare’ => ‘to compare notes’ => ‘to talk’

❑ The two old women—sisters, one of whom had come to stay with the other after a long, long time—sat in the cosy sun of the winter day and talked about relatives and their childhood. Their **palaver** ended only when the grandchildren of the host sister returned from school.

❑ Sheikh Chili’s father challenged him to execute his dreams and not spend his time **palavering** about them.

¹⁷⁵¹ **Problematic:** (adj) causing problem, questionable.

Origin: from ‘problem.’ Etymology of problem: Gk *pro-*, forth + *ballein*, to throw => ‘to throw before one in one’s path’ => ‘to present an obstacle’

❑ a **problematic** future, a **problematic** idea, a **problematic** child.

¹⁷⁵² **Parley:** (v) to talk; to have a conference or discussion. (n) such a conference.

Origin: Gk *para-*, alongside + *ballein*, to throw => ‘to throw alongside’ => ‘to compare’ => ‘to compare notes’ => ‘to talk’

❑ The peace **parley** between the heads of the two warring countries failed in the seventh round.

❑ The villagers sent Sham, who being a BA was the most educated among them, to **parley** with the deputy commissioner on their behalf for linking their village to the main road which ran a few kilometres away.

¹⁷⁵³ **Parlance:** (n) speech, way of speaking.

Origin: related with **parley**.

❑ The Section 420 of the Indian Penal Code has entered the common **parlance** to denote a cheater.

❑ In the legal **parlance**, a criminal is a person whose crime has been proved in a court. However, the common people use the word for anybody who has been charged with a crime.

¹⁷⁵⁴ **Parliament:** (n) a place or meeting where **parleys** on public or national issues are held.

Origin: related with **parley**.

Two words related with **parliament** are: **parliamentary** and **unparliamentary**.

Parliamentary: (adj) related with Parliament, according to the rules of the Parliament.

Unparliamentary: (adj) not according to the rules of the Parliament.

❑ When an Opposition leader named two of his former colleagues in a press conference and said that they had now started licking the shoes of the Prime Minister like dogs, there was an **uproar** in the political circles. Many politicians criticized his use of **unparliamentary** language for his colleagues.

¹⁷⁵⁵ **Tortuous:** (adj) full of twists and turns.

Origin: L *torquere*, to twist

Mrs Punj suggested a hill station. Mrs Lal immediately **contorted**¹⁷⁵⁶ her nose and said, “Ugh! Hills have nothing to offer but tiring **trekking**¹⁷⁵⁷ on **tortuous** tracks¹⁷⁵⁸. Take my advice, Naina. Go to a beach.”

Mrs Punj **retorted**¹⁷⁵⁹ with a sweet smile. “The **tortuous** tracks won’t worry you Naina. You are fit.” Ha-ha, she laughed inwards. “One should have seen the face of that fat and **fatuous**¹⁷⁶⁰ Jayanti Lal! She did not **mutter** a single word after that for the whole evening,” she triumphantly told her husband later in the evening.

Torquere is also involved in ugly **torts**¹⁷⁶¹ like **distorting**¹⁷⁶² truth and **extorting**¹⁷⁶³ money.

¹⁷⁵⁶ **Contort:** (v) to twist out of shape.

Origin: L *com-* + *torquere*, to twist

¹⁷⁵⁷ **Trek:** (n) a journey, especially a difficult one; (v) such a journey

Origin: related with ‘track’

¹⁷⁵⁸ **Alliteration:** (n) the words of a phrase or sentence having the same first letter or first sound.

Origin: L *ad-* + *littera*, letter

☐ An example of **alliteration:** *Chandu ke chacha ne Chandu ki chachi ko chaandi ke chamche se chatni chataai.*

The other words from the root *littera* are: letter, literacy and **obliterate**.

Obliterate: (v) to destroy completely.

Origin: L *ob-*. Against + *littera*, letter => ‘to rub against a letter’ => ‘to make the letter disappear.’

☐ The hero of the movie *Naam-o-nishaan mitaa doonga* vowed to **obliterate** the villain and his evil empire.

¹⁷⁵⁹ **Retort:** (v) to give a clever reply; (n) such a reply.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *torquere*, to twist => ‘to turn back’

¹⁷⁶⁰ **Fatuous:** (adj) silly

Origin: L *fatuus*, foolish

Related word: **infatuate**, meaning ‘to make silly.’

Origin: L *in-*, in + *fatuus*, foolish => ‘to bring into foolishness’

☐ Many people initially behave foolishly around the people they are attracted to. This is called **infatuation**.

¹⁷⁶¹ **Tort:** (n) any wrongdoing, other than those related to contracts, which can be addressed and remedied by civil law; the area of law that deals with such wrongdoings.

Origin: L *torquere*, to twist => ‘twisted’ => ‘injured’

¹⁷⁶² **Distortion:** (n) twisting out of shape; (v) **distort**.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *torquere*, to twist

☐ In order to ensure that money power did not **distort** the election process, the Election Commission placed strict restrictions on the money that each candidate could spend in his campaigning.

☐ The play was based on the life of King Ashoka but it **distorted** many facts of his life.

¹⁷⁶³ **Extortion:** (n) to use violence, force or threats to get something (money, information etc.) out of a person.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *torquere*, to twist => ‘to wring out by twisting’

Exercise

wal-, poti-, fortis, vincere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. She was *in two minds* about going to Shimla.
(a) valetudinarian (b) ambivalent (c) strewn (d) impuissant (e) discombobulated
2. Comedy is his *strong point*.
(a) forte (b) valor (c) fortitude (d) volley (e) convalescence
3. The train *rushed with great speed* off the bridge.
(a) hurled (b) hurtled (c) strew (d) lionized (e) prevailed
4. His illness *weakened* him.
(a) lacerated (b) convalesced (c) wrested (d) debilitated (e) vanquished
5. It was a natural *disaster*.
(a) barrage (b) fusillade (c) calamity (d) valediction (e) puissance
6. Ram *defeated* Raavan.
(a) evicted (b) evinced (c) enervated (d) vanquished (e) mangled
7. He was *irritated* by their non-stop criticism.
(a) affronted (b) lacerated (c) enervated (d) prevailed over (e) riled
8. The earthquake was *burnt* into the collective memory of the people of the state.
(a) lacerated (b) fortified (c) hurled (d) mangled (e) seared
9. He was *an extremely tall and thin* fellow.
(a) a lanky (b) an enervated (c) a sprawling (d) an affronted (e) an impuissant

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (c) 6. (d) 7. (e) 8. (e) 9. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A female warrior: A_____
2. To deprive of energy: E_____
3. Strength of mind that makes one battle all difficulties with courage: F_____
4. A person who dresses and behaves like the opposite sex: T_____
5. One who cannot be defeated: I_____
6. Weapons and ammunition used in a war: M_____
7. To recover strength after illness: C_____
8. Speed: C_____
9. A complete change in form: M_____
10. One who is excessively worried about his poor health: V_____
11. To convert or try to make someone convert his religion: P_____
12. A ruler: P_____
13. Heroic courage: V_____
14. Farewell: V_____

Answers:

Amazon, enervate, fortitude, transvestite, invincible, munitions, convalesce, celerity, metamorphosis, valetudinarian, proselytize, potentate, valour, valediction

Rapere, capere, prehendere, prendere

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *had a very high opinion about himself*.
(a) was captious (b) was a caitiff (c) was exceptionable (d) was conceited (e) was deceitful
2. He moved in *secretly*.
(a) apprehensively (b) reprehensibly (c) deceitfully (d) captiously (e) surreptitiously
3. He was *extremely hungry*.
(a) ravished (b) captious (c) ravenous (d) susceptible (e) hankering
4. The soldiers at the gates of the village could not protect it from the *looting* dacoits.
(a) enterprising (b) rapacious (c) pregnable (d) reprising (e) reprehensible
5. His behavior was *offensive*.
(a) penitential (b) incipient (c) susceptible (d) conceited (e) exceptionable
6. He *felt sorry for the wrongs he had done*.
(a) was penitent (b) was apprised (c) was captious (d) hankered (e) recuperated
7. The police party went in search of the *running away* criminal.
(a) plundering (b) absconding (c) captious (d) anticipated (e) intercepted
8. The looters *destroyed* the village.
(a) ravaged (b) plundered (c) prized (d) reprehended (e) usurped
9. The police *arrested* the criminal.
(a) apprehended (b) reprehended (c) apprised (d) reprised (e) prized
10. The fort was *unreachable by any outsider, nor could anyone attack it*.
(a) was usurped (b) was misapprehended (c) was prehensile (d) was anticipated (e) was impregnable
11. The company has been profitable since its *beginning*.
(a) recuperation (b) inception (c) rapine (d) reprisal (e) enterprise

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (e) 3.(c) 4. (b) 5. (e) 6. (a) 7. (b) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (e) 11. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. To get hold of something while it is moving from its source to its destination: I _____
2. Capable of grasping: P _____
3. Extreme delight: R _____
4. A rule or principle about how to act: P _____
5. A narrow, deep pit at whose base a river flows and which is sandwiched between two steep hills: R _____
6. A person who works with an expert to learn work: A _____
7. To recover: R _____
8. A villainous person with no morals: C _____
9. Giving back at least as much harm and injury as you received: R _____
10. The act of violently seizing another's property: R _____
11. To seize something you have no rights over by using force: U _____
12. A fine shade of meaning: N _____

Answers:

intercept, prehensile, rapture, precept, ravine, apprentice, recuperate, caitiff, reprisal, rapine, usurp, nuance

Emere, trahere, trudere, pellere, pressare, premere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *took back* his words.
(a) retreated (b) retracted (c) subsumed (d) obtruded (e) swaggered
2. They made a *sudden, on-the-spot* plan to go to the hills.
(a) protracted (b) preempted (c) an unassuming (d) a prompt (e) an impromptu
3. The court *scolded* the government for letting lakhs of tonnes of foodgrains rot every year.
(a) swaggered (b) retracted (c) dispelled (d) reprimanded (e) obtruded
4. The disciplines of literature, history, philosophy, law and religion are all *taken under* one branch of academics—Humanities.
(a) subsumed in (b) preempted in (c) dispelled in (d) protracted in (e) abstracted in
5. She did not want to *force* her opinions upon her child.
(a) extrude (b) protrude (c) subsume (d) detract (e) obtrude
6. The people who earned less than one lakh rupees per year were *freed* from paying income tax.
(a) exempted (b) preempted (c) redeemed (d) subsumed (e) detracted
7. He was a *willful and unmanageable* child.
(a) an obtrusive (b) an unobtrusive (c) a sumptuary (d) an intractable (e) a presumptuous
8. He *begged to* the king for his life.
(a) impelled (b) propelled (c) entreated (d) presumed (e) exempted
9. The voice with which he asked them to sit down was *full of authority*.
(a) sumptuary (b) presumptive (c) presumptuous (d) peremptory (e) vintage
10. He looked *absent-minded*.
(a) detracted (b) distraught (c) distraught (d) swaggering (e) intractable
11. She *pushed* him to change his life.
(a) impelled (b) obtruded (c) prompted (d) preempted (e) entreated

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (e) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (e) 6. (a) 7. (d) 8. (c) 9. (d) 10. (b) 11. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. To belittle: D_____
2. Summary: A_____
3. To scatter: D_____
4. A large piece of land: T_____
5. Hard to understand: A_____
6. Winemaker and seller: V_____
7. To take back: R_____
8. Laws related with moral policing: S_____
9. A very long, detailed formal essay about the principles of a subject: T_____

Answers:

Detract, abstract, dispel, tract, abstruse, vintner, retract, sumptuary, treatise

Jacere, ballein, torquere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. They do nothing except *talking idly* the whole day.
(a) palavering (b) parleying (c) alliterating (d) obliterating (e) squandering
2. They lived in *miserable* poverty.
(a) dejected (b) abject (c) relenting (d) prodigal (e) insolent
3. The roads in hills are *full of twists and turns*.
(a) contorted (b) alliterative (c) distorted (d) problematic (e) tortuous
4. The rescue guard immediately dived into the swimming pool to save the child who was *struggling to keep his head above water* and calling for help.
(a) floundering (b) bereaved (c) dejected (d) frantic (e) prodigal
5. I have no evidence for what I said; it is only my *guess*.
(a) infatuation (b) extortion (c) obliteration (d) bereavement (e) conjecture
6. He gave a *rude* answer.
(a) a prodigal (b) a reckless (c) an insolent (d) a hyperbolic (e) a fatuous
7. He was *disheartened* by his repeated failures.
(a) made insolent (b) bereaved (c) made relentless (d) obliterated (e) dejected

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (e) 6. (c) 7. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. An instance of words of a phrase or sentence having the same first letter or first sound: A _____
2. Study of projectiles which are used as firearms, such as bullets, rockets, missiles etc: B _____
3. A wrongdoing, other than breach of a contract, which can be addressed and remedied by civil law: T _____
4. To use violence, force or threats to get something (money, information etc.) out of a person: E _____
5. To destroy completely: O _____
6. The path of a projectile: T _____
7. A detached floating ice sheet: F _____
8. A story which teaches a moral or religious lesson: P _____
9. A sudden blast of wind: G _____
10. To throw goods overboard from a sinking vessel in order to lighten its weight: J _____
11. A statement which is exaggerated for effect, to convey a sentiment or idea: H _____
12. The goods thrown overboard from a sinking ship: J _____

Answers:

alliteration, ballistics, tort, extortion, obliterate, trajectory, floe, parable, gust, jettison, hyperbole, jetsam

STRETCH, SPREAD AND CLOSE

IE *ten-* **to stretch**

“Arrey, do you know? Madan Lal had himself gone to Kishori’s house to extend the hand of friendship, but that Kishori, leave alone shaking his hand, *seena taan ke khada ho gaya*. I ran into Madan Lal on my way to the fields today. ‘Oh, you must have felt so **slighted**¹⁷⁶⁴! I **commiserated**¹⁷⁶⁵ with him. He changed the topic but brothers, his brow had **corrugated**¹⁷⁶⁶ immediately; I saw it. He is **smoldering**¹⁷⁶⁷ with **indignation** (who wouldn’t, tell me?) and will take revenge for his insult. The *tanaav* between the two families is going to increase even more, I tell you.”

When the **intransigent** Kishori had stood up *seena ‘taan’ ke*, his chest was fully stretched out, and the ‘*tanaav*’ between the two families, which keeps the gossiping old men at the *chaupaal* so entertained, is the ‘tension’ between them.

The Greek *teinein* and the Latin *tendere* both mean ‘to stretch.’ Since a stretched wire also becomes thinner, the Latin *tenuis* means ‘thin, rare, fine.’ By the way, only those wires get stretched in the first place, which can withstand strain; others just break apart when they are pulled at the ends. That is why one of the Latin children of *ten-* is *tenere*, which means ‘to hold, keep, maintain.’

Greek *teinein*
Latin *tendere* **to stretch**

A stretched string or ribbon is called *tonos* in Greek, *tani* in Sanskrit, *tand* in Punjabi and *taana* in Hindi (as in *taana-baana*)¹⁷⁶⁸. Then, there is the Sanskrit word *tantram*, the loom on which the *taana-baana* is woven.

To ‘extend’ a hand of friendship is to stretch it out. A string that is tightly stretched, so that it is **taut**¹⁷⁶⁹ and rigid, is said to be ‘tense’, or in a state of ‘tension’ or ‘*tanaav*’. The adjective form of tense is **tensile**¹⁷⁷⁰.

¹⁷⁶⁴ **Slight:** (v) to insult; (n) an insult.

¹⁷⁶⁵ **Commiserate:** (v) to share the misery, to show sympathy
Origin: L *com-*, together + *miser*, miserable

¹⁷⁶⁶ **Corrugate:** (v) to wrinkle; to wrinkle up in a sinusoidal wave-shaped folds.

¹⁷⁶⁷ **Smolder:** (v) to burn without flame; to burn with anger or hatred inside without showing it.
Origin: from **smother**

¹⁷⁶⁸ The English **counterpart** of the phrase *taana-baana* is warp and woof. The warp, or the *taana*, are parallel threads that are fully stretched across the length of the loom and tied to both its ends. The woof, or the *baana*, are then woven horizontally through alternately raised warps. The fabric is thus produced as a uniform criss-cross of the horizontal and the vertical threads.

¹⁷⁶⁹ **Taut:** (adj) stretched tight.

¹⁷⁷⁰ **Tensile:** (adj) related with tension.

The ‘hypotenuse’ of a right triangle is the side that ‘stretches under’ (the right angle).

When his teachers praised Neeta Mehra’s son as the most **diligent** student in the class, her heart **distended**¹⁷⁷¹ with pride. On the other hand, her sister Leela Motwani had to **tender**¹⁷⁷² apologies to the principal on her son’s behalf. The principal was **livid** at Chintu Motwani and wanted to suspend him for beating up his juniors, **contumacy**¹⁷⁷³ to his teachers and cheating in exams.

Chintu Motwani was a real pain in the neck for all his teachers. He **contended**¹⁷⁷⁴ with everything they said, just to harass them. His **contentions**¹⁷⁷⁵ were often stupid, but if they ignored them, he would openly accuse them of being **tendentious**¹⁷⁷⁶. His **harried** teachers were looking forward to his suspension. Alas, the principal agreed to give him another chance.



An **ostentatious**¹⁷⁷⁷ person is showy; he likes showing off his wealth, or his **sophistication** or his knowledge. He is also called **pretentious**¹⁷⁷⁸. The **ostensible**¹⁷⁷⁹ reason for which Champak Motwani had thrown the party was to celebrate his son Chintu’s birthday; his actual motive was to show off his wealth and status to his sister’s poor boyfriend. He wanted to put that **pauper** into his rightful place who thought that he could marry *his* sister.

Seeya Motwani’s astrologer had predicted that Chintu’s birthday was going to be a **momentous** day for her. “*Of course, it was going to be!*” she cooed happily. Senjil was going to meet her brother for the first time that day. *Bhaiya* had been

-
- ❑ **Tensile** Strength is a term of material science. It means the maximum tension that a material can withstand without fracturing.
 - ❑ The word **tensile** is also used to mean tensible, that is, capable of being **tense**, hence, capable of being stretched. When used in this sense, like in the phrases ‘**tensile** wire’ or ‘**tensile** membrane’, the word becomes a synonym of **ductile**.

¹⁷⁷¹ **Distend:** (v) to stretch; to swell.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *tendere*, to stretch

¹⁷⁷² **Tender:** (v) to offer.

Origin: L *tendere*, to stretch, to extend.

There is another **tender** which means ‘soft’. It is not from the root *tendere*.

¹⁷⁷³ **Contumacy:** (n) rebelliousness

Origin: **Contumacy** is the refusal to obey a court order, which is usually punished as contempt of court. The word contempt is closely related with contumacy. See, contemn, contempt.

- ❑ He told his teachers that he knew more about science than them. They called it **contumacy** and asked him to leave the college.

¹⁷⁷⁴ **Contend:** (v) argue, compete.

Origin: L *com-* + *tendere*, to stretch

¹⁷⁷⁵ **Contention:** (n) argument

Origin: from **contend**

¹⁷⁷⁶ **Tendentious:** (adj) partial, biased.

Origin: from ‘tendency’. Origin of tendency: L *tendere*, to stretch => ‘to stretch in one direction, to lean’

¹⁷⁷⁷ **Ostentatious:** (adj) showy, done to show-off.

Origin: L *ob-*, in front of + *tendere*, to stretch => ‘to display’

- ❑ **Ostentatious** wedding, an **ostentatious** house built with ₹50 crore.

¹⁷⁷⁸ **Pretentious:** (adj) showing-off, pretending to be somebody or something important.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *tendere*, to stretch => ‘to display’

¹⁷⁷⁹ **Ostensible:** (adj) for the show, not actual.

Origin: L *ob-*, in front of + *tendere*, to stretch => ‘to display’

- ❑ Aunt Meera had invited her pretty niece to stay with her in summers, **ostensibly** so that the girl might see a little of the fashionable Mumbai life while also escaping from the **scorching** Delhi heat, but her actual motive was to introduce the girl to Rahul, the eligible young son of her rich friend Shanta.

so good when she had told him about Senjil. She hadn't really expected that **divulgence**¹⁷⁸⁰ to go so smoothly. The battle had been won, she thought, because nobody who met her Senu could stop himself from being impressed! Perhaps, *bhaiya* would talk about their marriage at the party itself! She kept smiling and blushing the whole day. Nothing, no one—not her astrologer, not any **omen**—could **portend**¹⁷⁸¹ the plan her brother had made for the party.

Latin *tenuis* **thin**

The Indian female names Tanu and Tanima both mean 'slim and slender'.

There is an old Hindi movie, starring Shashi Kapoor, Rakhi and Zeenat Aman, titled *Bandhan kachche dhaagon ka*. The English translation of the title would be 'The bond of **tenuous**¹⁷⁸² threads.' (Of course, the bond in question is the bond of marriage, which **ironically**, is also **touted**¹⁷⁸³ as the *saat janamon ka atoot bandhan*, again by the Hindi movies.)

In the movie, Shashi Kapoor's character, happily married to Rakhi, with two kids already brought into the world, sleeps with Zeenat Aman after singing a song in the rain with her. Later, he tries to **extenuate**¹⁷⁸⁴ his **infidelity** by saying 'it just happened', as if it was the rain's fault to have come when he was alone with an attractive woman.

The discovery of her husband's **escapades**¹⁷⁸⁵ would **attenuate**¹⁷⁸⁶ the faith of any wife. But, films are films; so, as always, the other woman dies and the wife forgives and our hero lives happily ever after.

Latin *tenere* **to hold, keep, maintain**

To 'contain' something is to hold it within specified limits. A 'container' holds all the things within its volume; those things are called its 'contents'.

A 'content' man is satisfied because he has 'contained' his desires or expectations. That is precisely what a **malcontent**¹⁷⁸⁷ man has not been able to do. This guy wants the society to be perfect and the fact that it makes him dissatisfied and restless. He **rants** against the laws and the leaders and the leprous system and talks of changing everything, *reforming* everything and vows not to rest till his **utopia**¹⁷⁸⁸ is attained.

¹⁷⁸⁰ **Divulgence:** (n) revealing of a secret.

Origin: L *dis-* + *vulgus*, the common people => 'to make known among the common people' => 'to tell everybody'

☐ After the two children fought, the sister **divulged** her brother's secret—that he had not gone to the school the day before in order to miss a class test—to their mother.

¹⁷⁸¹ **Portend:** (v) predict. The prediction, thus, made is called a **portent**.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *tendere*, to stretch

¹⁷⁸² **Tenuous:** (adj) thin, weak, delicate.

Origin: L *tenuis*, thin

¹⁷⁸³ **Tout:** (v) hype

¹⁷⁸⁴ **Extenuate:** (v) to lessen the seriousness of a mistake or a crime.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *tenuis*, thin => 'thin out' => 'to make thinner' => 'to weaken'

¹⁷⁸⁵ **Escapade:** (n) an instance of unrestrained behaviour.

Origin: escape + *-ade* => 'an escape from all restrictions'

¹⁷⁸⁶ **Attenuate:** (v) to weaken the intensity or amount of something.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *tenuis*, thin => 'to take towards thinness'

¹⁷⁸⁷ **Malcontent:** (adj) dissatisfied with his current circumstances.

Origin: mal-, not + content

¹⁷⁸⁸ **Utopia:** (n) an ideal place, where all is perfect.

Origin: Gk *eu-*, good + *topos*, place

☐ In the following song, a father paints the picture of a **utopia** for his son:

Aa chal ke tujhe main le ke chalun, ikk aise gagan ke tale

Jahaan gamm bhi na hon, aansoo bhi na hon

Bas pyaar hi pyaar pale.

The opposite of **Utopia** is **Dystopia**.

The way one contains himself is called his **countenance**¹⁷⁸⁹. Imagine putting a plateful of chocolates before Chocoo-zoo, who you know loves chocolates, and then strictly forbidding him to have any. The poor guy! The rich...soooooo richly brown...smooth...looking-so-yummy...**delectable**...sweet...chocolatesaretherebeforehimand...he-can-NOT-eat-them... “*Look away!*” he **admonishes** himself...he cannot have them...oh, why, why, why...*why* can he not have them? What if he has just one tiny little piece? Just one! No one will come to know, just one, promise! “*No, look away!*” the strict inner voice **chides** him again.

So, the poor Chocoozoo has contained himself but only with great difficulty. This is easily apparent to anyone who is observing him. His face, his twitching body betrays his strong craving. That is why the word **countenance** means one’s face or the facial expressions that betray his state of mind or his **demeanour**¹⁷⁹⁰.



Madan Lal cannot **countenance** any insult to his family. This means that he cannot contain himself, cannot hold himself quiet, when somebody is saying bad things about his family. No sir, sorry, he will not tolerate it! Everyone wonders how then can he **countenance** his **ruffian**¹⁷⁹¹ son’s **misdemeanours**? Do *they* not harm his good name? Well, he asks his friends laughingly, which rich young man does not do such things? It’s all right, he tells them.



To ‘retain’ something is to hold it back. After the braces on someone’s teeth have been removed, the **orthodontist**¹⁷⁹² makes him wear ‘retainers’ for a few months, in order to hold back the teeth in their new position. The word ‘retainer’ is also used for a servant who was so faithful and sincere that the family did not let him go; they held him back, and he has been serving them ever since, for all these years. A train of such retainers is called a ‘retinue’. Only a queen or a *neta* or a *seth* can usually afford one.

A **retentive**¹⁷⁹³ mind is good at remembering; it holds back everything that passes through it once.

When you **abstain**¹⁷⁹⁴ from a lecture, you hold yourself away from it. The noun form of **abstain** is **abstinence**¹⁷⁹⁵, obviously meaning ‘holding yourself away from something’. This ‘something’ is usually taken to be meat or alcohol. A guy who has taken a vow of total **abstinence** will not touch liquor no matter how much his friends pressurize him¹⁷⁹⁶.

Dystopia: (n) a place where life is extremely bad and full of miseries, disease, want, poverty, filth, oppression, etc.

Origin: Gk *dys-*, bad + *topos*, place

¹⁷⁸⁹ **Countenance:** (n) face or facial expressions that betray one’s state of mind; (v) to tolerate.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *tenere*, to hold => ‘the ability to hold oneself together’

☐ A jealous man cannot **countenance** the success and happiness of others.

¹⁷⁹⁰ **Demeanour:** (n) manner of conduct.

¹⁷⁹¹ **Ruffian:** (n) a violent, lawless person.

¹⁷⁹² **Orthodontist:** (n) a doctor who sets teeth straight.

Origin: Gk *ortho-*, straight + *dontos*, teeth

¹⁷⁹³ **Retentive:** (adj) capable of retaining, that is, holding back; having good memory.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *tenere*, to hold

☐ The term water **retention** means an abnormal accumulation of water in the body.

¹⁷⁹⁴ **Abstain:** (v) to stay away from.

Origin: L *abs-*, away + *tenere*, hold => ‘to hold away from oneself’

¹⁷⁹⁵ **Abstinence:** (n) staying away from meat, alcohol or other temptations; self-restraint.

Origin: from **abstain**

¹⁷⁹⁶ **Abstemious:** (adj) one who eats or drinks very little.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *temetum*, alcohol.

Then, there are the *brahmacharis* and the nuns who ‘hold themselves together’ in the face of sexual temptations. This especially difficult form of **abstinence** is called **continence**¹⁷⁹⁷, and the **continent** nuns have just begun telling us their experience on the matter when Europe and Asia and their five **siblings**¹⁷⁹⁸ wail out, “But *we* are continents too!” Oh, they are feeling jealous and left out! “Of course, *of course* you are continents too!” We **placate** them, “In fact, the moment anyone says ‘continent’, it is you all that everybody thinks of. Where would we be without you?” Ah, they are grinning once more.

But between us, let me tell you that they are called ‘continents’ only out of laziness by people. The proper Latin term for them was *terra continens* meaning ‘continuous land’¹⁷⁹⁹. But who would say two words each time? So, people just kept *terra* aside and made do with continent.

Continence also refers to the ability to hold oneself back when one cannot see any toilet around. The poor guy who cannot do that is suffering from **incontinence**¹⁸⁰⁰. Fearing a public accident, he has stopped going out. His friends are puzzled; why is he suddenly avoiding them all? They do not know; he has not been able to tell anybody, even the thought **mortifies** him.



A ‘tenant’ holds a property; he does not own it, just holds it for a certain time period, by paying rent to the owner. That time period is called the **tenure**¹⁸⁰¹ of his tenancy. Senjil is now thinking of buying his own flat in the city, because he has been granted permanent **tenure** in the university. He had been working as a lecture-on-contract before, but with his hard-work and sincerity, he won the approval of the department head. In fact, Mr Chawla, the department head, so trusts him now, that he often sends him as his **lieutenant**¹⁸⁰² wherever he cannot go himself.

Not every man achieves his goals. Success requires **tenacity**,¹⁸⁰³ the ability to hold fast to your goal no matter how strong the storms that try to wash you away.

Notice that **abstemious** contains all the vowels in alphabetical order.

¹⁷⁹⁷ **Continence:** (n) staying away from sexual intercourse.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *tenere*, to hold => ‘to hold oneself together’

These three words all relate with the idea of restraining from sexual intercourse: **continent**, **celibate**, **chaste**.

Continent: The word just tells you that the person is not sexually active currently. It does not mean that he never was. A married person who gives up family life and takes *sanyas* will be called a **continent**.

Celibate: This word implies that the person has taken a vow to never marry or have sexual relations.

Chaste: This means that the person is not indulging in any immoral sexual activity. The society frowns upon premarital sexual relations. So, when applied to an unmarried person, the word means that he or she has not had sexual intercourse ever. But this word can also be applied to a married person. In this context, it means that the person has stayed faithful to his spouse.

¹⁷⁹⁸ **Sibling:** (n) a brother or sister.

❑ What are the five other **siblings** of Europe and Asia? Africa, Antarctica, Australia, North America, and South America.

¹⁷⁹⁹ Yes, continuous is a ten- word too.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *tenere*, to hold => ‘to hold together’

¹⁸⁰⁰ **Incontinence:** (n) lack of self-control, especially while indulging one’s desires; unable to control the discharge of urine and feces.

Origin: in-, not + **continence**

¹⁸⁰¹ **Tenure:** (n) holding of a property or a job, etc.; a permanent job, and not a contractual one; the time period for which that property or job is held.

Origin: L *tenere*, to hold

¹⁸⁰² **Lieutenant:** (n) a subordinate who acts as a substitute when needed.

Origin: L *locum*-> Fr *lieu*, place + L *tenere* -> Fr *tenens*, to hold

¹⁸⁰³ **Tenacity:** (n) quality of sticking to something no matter what; holding firmly.

Origin: L *tenere*, to hold

❑ A **tenacious** memory is that which firmly holds everything that was ever entered into it and doesn’t let anything slip out. Such a memory can also be called **retentive** memory.

A **tenacious** grip is just **tenacious**, but a **tenacious** young man can also be called **pertinacious**¹⁸⁰⁴.



The **pertinacious** salesman had been eagerly flooding the Motwanis—the chubby Champak and the **luscious** Leela—with saris, despite their high-nosed rejection of each. “Look at this one madam,” he said, unwrapping a particularly transparent one in soft yellow, “this one is made just for you. It will make you look even sexier.”

Two things happened at the same time. Leela smiled flirtatiously at him, and Champak got up and grabbed his collar, shouting that he will teach him how not to be **impertinent**¹⁸⁰⁵ with his customers. He did not stop fuming till the Store Manager agreed to suspend the salesman. The poor salesman kept pleading to him to not take away his only means of **sustenance**¹⁸⁰⁶ but Champak Motwani was not moved.

Another word that **pertains**¹⁸⁰⁷ to the root *tenere* is **appurtenance**¹⁸⁰⁸. An excited Hansika joined the running club and within a single shopping **jaunt**¹⁸⁰⁹, was fully equipped with the running gear—three tee-shirts, a pair of running shorts (for summers) and two pairs of track-pants (for winters), running shoes, goggles, a cap, a wrist band, a pedometer, *et al*—all branded. Her father was not impressed. A runner is made not by such **appurtenances**, he said, but by his sincerity. He was proved right the very next morning; she failed to get up for her first run.

A **tenable**¹⁸¹⁰ explanation, an **untenable**¹⁸¹¹ one and the **tenets**¹⁸¹² of Jainism all have the same root.

¹⁸⁰⁴ **Pertinacious:** (adj) a person who sticks to something no matter what.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *tenere*, to hold

¹⁸⁰⁵ **Impertinent:** (adj) rude; not **pertinent**.

Origin: L *im-*, not + **pertinent**

¹⁸⁰⁶ **Sustenance:** (n) means of livelihood, means of supporting life; (v) **sustain:** to support

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *tenere*, to hold => ‘to hold from under’ => ‘to support’

☐ Around 60% people of India depend on agriculture for **sustenance**.

☐ Agriculture **sustains** the majority population of India.

¹⁸⁰⁷ **Pertain:** (v) to relate to, to be relevant; (Adj) **pertinent:** relevant.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *tenere*, to hold => ‘to hold through.’

¹⁸⁰⁸ **Appurtenance:** (n) something that comes attached to another, more important thing; (in plural) the tools, clothes and other equipment needed for a particular task.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *per-*, through + *tenere*, to hold => ‘to belong to’

¹⁸⁰⁹ **Jaunt:** (n) a short pleasure trip.

¹⁸¹⁰ **Tenable:** (adj) that which can be supported or defended.

☐ Many recent cases of theft and dacoity in the state had been **imputed** to migrant labourers. The general public was, therefore, **clamouring** for a ban on the entry of more labourers into the state. However, the chief minister of the state knew that such a ban was not **tenable**, or even correct.

¹⁸¹¹ **Untenable:** (adj) that which cannot be supported or defended.

Origin: un-, not + **tenable**

☐ When a corruption case was registered against a senior IPS officer, the Government decided to not award him a service medal on the Republic Day as it had initially planned. **Bestowing** medal upon a tainted officer would have been **untenable** before the Opposition and the media.

¹⁸¹² **Tenet:** (n) beliefs held by a religion or a particular school of thought.

Origin: L *tenere*, to hold => ‘beliefs held.’

Latin	<i>pandare</i>	to spread out,
Latin	<i>patare</i>	to be open

When a nation ‘expands’ its territory, it ‘spreads out’ to a larger geographical area. An **expansive**¹⁸¹³ man ‘spreads out’ his arms in welcome the moment he sees you. He hugs you and tells you how happy he is to see you. You can see the joy dripping from his face. You think of how special he makes you feel and how different he is from the others. Most people just smile and say, “Nice to see you”, shake hands and go their own way, and you know that they said that just for saying.



The fish release a large mass of eggs, which ‘spread out’ in the water and are, therefore, called the **spawn**¹⁸¹⁴. It is **patent**¹⁸¹⁵ to everyone that the fish population all over the world is **dwindling**¹⁸¹⁶.

‘Letters **patent**’ are ‘open’ letters issued by the king or the government granting exclusive rights, title or status to a person or an organization. Anybody can read them. In contrast are ‘letters close,’ which are sealed so that only the recipient can read their contents.

The letters **patent** that grant an inventor the sole right to make, use, and sell his invention for a set period of time are more commonly known as just ‘patents.’

‘Petal’ and **patina**¹⁸¹⁷ are also from this root.

Latin	<i>flare</i>	to blow
-------	--------------	---------

Imagine Seth Motu Chand. Can you visualise his 400 metre-in-**girth**¹⁸¹⁸ stomach? Good. His feet can barely transport his **heft** these days, yet he keeps **gorging** down platefuls of rich, fatty foods at each meal. He eats so much that his insides blow up like a balloon. At this instant, all his employees tightly constrict their noses because experience has taught them that a Seth who inflates, **deflates**¹⁸¹⁹. “Peeeeeee.....” comes the sound soon after, followed by a relieved “Aah!” of the Seth. The bad smell **lingers** for a whole hour (after all, it was a fart of the great Seth ji, what less can one expect?) All that his poor employees can do about this daily torture is call him Paadmaaru. “We would never work for such a **flatulent**¹⁸²⁰ Seth,” they say, “if we had a choice.” Choice, alas, is what poor people seldom get.

¹⁸¹³ **Expansive:** (adj) very friendly, open; spread over a large area; capable of expanding.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *pandare*, to spread => ‘to spread out’

Related word: **expanse**

Expanse: (n) a large area; something spread over a large area.

❑ He loved looking out at the vast **expanse** of the Arabian Sea from his sea-facing bungalow in Mumbai.

¹⁸¹⁴ **Spawn:** (v) to lay eggs; to produce, esp. in large number.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *pandare*, to spread => ‘to spread out’

❑ The phenomenal success of *Dilwaale Dulhaniya le jaayeinge* **spawned** many Bollywood **imitations**. The theme of displaced Indians feeling **alienated** in foreign lands and longing for home has since become a common one in Bollywood films.

Imitation: (n) copy; (v) **imitate:** to copy.

¹⁸¹⁵ **Patent:** (adj) open to sight, that which can be seen by anyone.

Origin: L *patere*, to be open. Speak *patere* through the nose and you get *pandare*.

¹⁸¹⁶ **Dwindle:** (v) decrease in number or amount.

¹⁸¹⁷ **Patina:** (n) a thin green layer that forms on copper or copper alloys due to oxidation.

Origin: L *patere*, to be open

¹⁸¹⁸ **Girth:** (n) circumference, size.

¹⁸¹⁹ **Deflate:** (v) to take out air from, puncture.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *flare*, to blow

¹⁸²⁰ **Flatulent:** (adj) generating gas in the stomach.

The word 'flavour', which explains why Seth Paadmaaru eats so much in the first place, is also from the root *flare*. The Latin word *flator* meant 'that which blows,' hence, 'an odour.' *Flator* became *flaor* in French, with the meaning of 'smell, odour' and from there entered English, in 1300, as *flavour*.

The one other word from this root is **conflate**¹⁸²¹.

Latin *aperire* **to open, uncover**

The words from *aperire* are:

Aperire-1: **aperture**¹⁸²², **pert**¹⁸²³

Aperire-2: **overt**¹⁸²⁴, **overture**¹⁸²⁵

Greek *kryptein* **to hide**

The words from *kryptein* are:

Crypt¹⁸²⁶, **encrypt**¹⁸²⁷, **decrypt**¹⁸²⁸, **apocrypha**¹⁸²⁹, krypton

Origin: L *flare*, to blow

¹⁸²¹ **Conflate:** (v) to fuse together, merge.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *flare*, to blow

- ❑ The title of Kulwant Kochar's Hindi novel *Man Kurukshetra* **conflates** the mind and the battlefield of the Mahabharata.

¹⁸²² **Aperture:** (n) an opening.

Origin: L *aperire*, to open

- ❑ The Large Binocular Telescope, built in 2004 and situated at Mount Graham International Observatory, Arizona, USA is one of the largest telescopes in the world. It has an **aperture** of 11.8 m!

¹⁸²³ **Pert:** (adj) very rude; stylish; lively.

Origin: L *apertus*, open

- ❑ "Shall we order coffee?" asked the mother-in-law. "And I'm sure that's because 'coffee' is the only word you could understand in the menu," said the daughter-in-law in a **pert** tone. "It's high time you begin to act according to your son's status, ma. Get out of your middle-class past."
- ❑ When she removed her **pert** silk scarf from her head, we saw that she had colored her black color to a **pert** brown.
- ❑ The music was **pert** and lively.

¹⁸²⁴ **Overt:** (adj) open, not hidden.

Origin: L *aperire*, to open

- ❑ Though Chanda's father was disappointed when she said that she wanted to be a painter and not an engineer, he kept his feelings to himself. The girl's mother, however, was **overtly** disapproving.

Interestingly, the opposite of **overt** rhymes with it.

Covert: (adj) hidden, secret.

Origin: from 'cover'

- ❑ The terrorist dressed himself like an innocent civilian and went to the Qutab Minar, **covertly** filming every detail of it with his camera phone hidden under his coat.

¹⁸²⁵ **Overture:** (n) an offer, a first move, an introduction; (v) to make an **overture**.

Origin: from **overt** => 'to open something new'

- ❑ America made many **overtures** of friendship towards India.
- ❑ The Government of India **overtured** the hijackers through a newspaper editor who was the only person till date to whom the chief of those hijackers' terror group had given an interview.

¹⁸²⁶ **Crypt:** (n) a hiding place.

Origin: Gk *kryptein*, to hide

¹⁸²⁷ **Encrypt:** (v) to hide a message using code language.

Origin: Gk *en-*, in + *kryptein*, to hide

¹⁸²⁸ **Decrypt:** (v) to decode a hidden message.

Origin: Gk *de-*, without + *kryptein*, to hide

¹⁸²⁹ **Apocrypha:** (n) a book, statement, etc. whose authorship or authenticity is doubtful.

Latin *claudere* **to close**

The word ‘close’ itself has come from this root. ‘Inclusion’ means closing in and when you ‘exclude’ somebody from a party that you give, you close him out; that is, you let everyone else come in but when his turn comes, you shut the door in his face.

The other words from the same root are:

*Claudere-1: preclude*¹⁸³⁰, *recluse*¹⁸³¹

*Claudere-2: seclusion*¹⁸³², *cloister*¹⁸³³

*Claudere-3: disclose*¹⁸³⁴, *occlusion*¹⁸³⁵

*Claudere-4: claustrophobia*¹⁸³⁶, *cloture*¹⁸³⁷, *sluice*¹⁸³⁸

To ‘conclude’ a discussion means to close it.

Origin: Gk *apo-*, away + *kryptein*, to hide => ‘hidden away’ => ‘identity of author is hidden’

- ☐ My friend told me about a professor who was so absent-minded that he boiled his pocket—match in water white holding the egg for breakfast in his hand. I thought the story was **apocryphal**.

¹⁸³⁰ **Preclude:** (v) to prevent.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *claudere*, to close

- ☐ The boy said that he was not well educated and this **precluded** his ever hoping to get a good job.
- ☐ Persons whose social position **precluded** them from entering the *haveli* were looking in at the festivities from the road.

¹⁸³¹ **Recluse:** (n) a person who remains shut off from the world.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *claudere*, to close

- ☐ In the movie *Sholay*, Jai falls in love with Radha, the **reclusive** widow of the Thakur’s younger son.

¹⁸³² **Seclusion:** (n) isolation

Origin: L *se-*, apart + *claudere*, to close => ‘to close apart’ => ‘to shut away from everyone else.’

- ☐ Leaving the unfinished kitchen work for the next day, Claudia tiredly switched off all lights, went to her room, saw her sleeping husband, ran out into the guest room, and in its **seclusion**, cried and cried and cried. She had been waiting the whole day to be wished, but Jose had forgotten her birthday!
- ☐ It took Jose two years to come out of his self-imposed **seclusion** and tell the world without hesitation that he was HIV positive. For two years, he shunned his wife, his family, his friends, everybody; he dared not step out of his room and took to bottle, haunted by constant fear of death, and what everybody would say when they discovered.

¹⁸³³ **Cloister:** (n) a monastery, convent or other such place which offers religious seclusion; any **secluded** place.

Origin: L *claudere*, to close

- ☐ The nuns lived within the **secluded** confines of the **cloister**. When the self-sacrifice and **reticence** required for the **cloister** began to suffocate the 19-year-old Tina, who had become a nun a year ago, she broke away.
- ☐ While the women of previous centuries led a **cloistered** existence in their homes, the 20th century women stepped out of the **threshold** and participated in every public sphere.

Reticence: (n) silence, reserve, self-restraint.

¹⁸³⁴ **Disclose:** (v) to reveal.

Origin: L *dis-*, un + *claudere*, to close

- ☐ The whole class went for a self-organized trip to Shimla. Sitting around the bonfire in the night, they played ‘Truth and Dare.’ Many shocking **disclosures** were made during the game.

¹⁸³⁵ **Occlusion:** (n) closing of something.

Origin: L *ob-* + *claudere*, to close

- ☐ Deposition of cholesterol **occludes** the arteries.
- ☐ Deposition of cholesterol causes **occlusion** of the arteries.

¹⁸³⁶ **Claustrophobia:** (n) fear of closed spaces.

Origin: L *claudere*, to close + *phobia*, fear

¹⁸³⁷ **Cloture:** (n) closure of a debate by putting the issue to vote.

¹⁸³⁸ **Sluice:** (n) an artificial water channel which has a gate in its upper part which can be lowered to regulate the amount of water that passes through the sluice.

- ☐ When the **sluice** gates were closed, the water level in the dam started rising.

Latin *clavis* key

'Hum tum ik kamre mein band ho, aur chaabi kho jaaye.' Bobby and her boyfriend had sung that out of romantic desire but men of business too sometimes lock themselves together in a room; their purpose however is to hold a **conclave**¹⁸³⁹.

An **enclave**¹⁸⁴⁰ is a locked-in area, an **autoclave**¹⁸⁴¹ is a self-locking vessel and a **clavicle**¹⁸⁴² is so-called because it looks like a key.

¹⁸³⁹ **Conclave:** (n) a closed-door meeting.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *clavis*, key => 'locked together'

- ☐ The heads of all Indian states attended the two-day Chief Ministers' **Conclave** held in New Delhi.

¹⁸⁴⁰ **Enclave:** (n) a piece of land which has a unique identity from its surroundings.

Origin: L *en-*, in + *clavis*, key => 'locked-in'

- ☐ Southall is a South Asian **enclave** in London. More than 55% of its population is of Indian or Pakistani origin. The shops and restaurants here have *desi* names and most of them even accept payment in Indian rupees. The signboards by the roads are bilingual—in English and Punjabi. Roaming into its streets, one can almost tell himself that he is still in Punjab.

¹⁸⁴¹ **Autoclave:** (n) a self-locking pressure cooker in which built up steam is used to sterilize equipment or nutrient media for bacteria.

Origin: L *auto-*, self + *clavis*, key

¹⁸⁴² **Clavicle:** (n) collar bone

Origin: L *clavis*, key => 'the bone that looks like a key'

Exercise

Ten-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The movie was *hyped* to be the most memorable love story ever.
(a) portended (b) divulged (c) touted (d) distended (e) contended
2. The asbestos roof was *wrinkled in sinusoidal-wave folds*.
(a) corrugated (b) tenuous (c) pertinent (d) tenable (e) untenable
3. The signal got *weakened* over the long distance.
(a) extenuated (b) attenuated (c) distended (d) touted (e) countenanced
4. He gave a *rude* answer.
(a) a pertinacious (b) a tenacious (c) an incontinent (d) an impertinent (e) a contumacious
5. The string was *stretched tight*.
(a) distended (b) tensile (c) tenable (d) extenuated (e) taut
6. He came there *supposedly* to find his dog but actually to spy on them.
(a) ostentatiously (b) pretentiously (c) ostensibly (d) contentiously (e) continently
7. The news report was *biased*.
(a) incontinent (b) untenable (c) pertinacious (d) tendentious (e) contumacious
8. The father told his children that he would not *tolerate* any rude behavior by them.
(a) countenance (b) pertain (c) sustain (d) abstain (e) extenuate
9. He *revealed* the secret.
(a) divulged (b) portended (c) contended (d) touted (e) tended
10. He *insulted* her.
(a) corrugated (b) was retentive towards (c) was untenable with (d) slighted (e) was abstemious with

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (e) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Staying away from meat, alcohol or other temptations: A _____
2. An ideal place where all is perfect: U _____
3. Manner of conduct: D _____
4. Rebelliousness: C _____
5. Lessen the seriousness of a mistake or a crime: E _____
6. Beliefs and principles held by a religion: T _____
7. An instance of unrestrained behavior: E _____
8. A short, pleasure trip: J _____
9. A doctor who sets teeth straight: O _____
10. Prediction: P _____
11. A violent, lawless person: R _____

12. Quality of sticking to something no matter what: T _____

13. To hype: T _____

Answers:

abstinence, utopia, demeanour, contumacy, extenuate, tenets, escapade, jaunt, orthodontist, portent, ruffian, tenacity, tout

Pandare, patare, flare, aperire, kryptein, claudere, clavis:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. They held *a closed door meeting*.
(a) a conclave (b) an enclave (c) a clavicle (d) an autoclave (e) a patina
2. Some effects of global warming were latent, while the others were *easily observable*.
(a) patent (b) disclosed (c) reticent (d) decrypted (e) pert
3. His arteries were *blocked*.
(a) dwindled (b) covert (c) overt (d) cloistered (e) occluded
4. The story was *not genuine*.
(a) apocryphal (b) secluded (c) covert (d) overt (e) patent
5. He was accused of being *a hidden agent* of the enemy.
(a) an apocryphal (b) a cryptic (c) a pert (d) a covert (e) a patent
6. He *liked living alone and hardly ever met anyone*.
(a) was pert (b) was reticent (c) was reclusive (d) was cryptic (e) was secluded
7. Global warming has *produced in large number* many problems.
(a) dwindled (b) precluded (c) conflated (d) spawned (e) disclosed
8. He *talked very less*.
(a) was reticent (b) was reclusive (c) was expansive (d) was conflated (e) was pert

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (a) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. An opening: A _____
2. Closure of a debate by putting the issue to vote: C _____
3. A large area: E _____
4. A place which offers religious seclusion: C _____
5. A bounded piece of land which has a unique identity from its surroundings: E _____
6. Fear of closed spaces: C _____
7. A first move: O _____
8. A hiding place: C _____
9. A thin green layer that forms on copper or copper alloys due to oxidation: P _____
10. To produce in large numbers: S _____

Answers:

aperture, cloture, expanse, cloister, enclave, claustrophobia, overture, crypt, patina, spawn

THE GOOD AND THE BAD

IE *mel-1* false, bad, wrong

Note: You will also do roots, *met-2* and *mel-3* in Chapter 23.

The Hindi word for bodily excrements (urine, faeces, earwax, **phlegm**¹⁸⁴³, sweat etc.) is *mal*. *Maila* means dirty, impure and *malinta* is dirtiness or gloom. The English words from this IE root are:

Mel-1: **Malice**¹⁸⁴⁴, **malign**¹⁸⁴⁵

Mel-2: **malady**¹⁸⁴⁶, **malaise**¹⁸⁴⁷

¹⁸⁴³ **Phlegm:** (n) the thick mucus that stays in our throat, more so during colds.

A related word is **phlegmatic**, meaning 'calm, not easily disturbed.'

- The woman came **distraught** into the police station with her husband to lodge a complaint about their missing son. She later asked her husband how those policemen could have been so **phlegmatic** about the loss of someone's child. "Don't they have children too? Don't they know what a trauma this is? How could they have been so casual about the whole thing?" "It is their daily job," her husband explained. "They deal with blood and **gore** and rapes and thefts many times each day and that has **inured** them."

¹⁸⁴⁴ **Malice:** (n) ill-will, desire to do harm; (adj), **malicious**.

- To speak about others with **malice** is called **slander**.
- The government decided the strategy to counter the **malicious** propaganda of the opposition.
- A file containing a virus is called a **malicious** file. Viruses, Trojan horses, data-miners, etc., are called malwares, the short for **malicious** softwares. These are programmes designed to intentionally harm the normal working of a computer or to tap the personal data of a user and send it to unauthorized recipients through the Internet.

¹⁸⁴⁵ **Malign:** (v) to speak ill of, to harm the reputation of.

- The minister accused of murdering a journalist he had **illicit** relations with, said that he had not even known her and that this was just an attempt of the opposition to **malign** him.

¹⁸⁴⁶ **Malady:** (n) illness

- Love is a **malady** that no medicine can treat. As Ghalib says: *Ishq se tabiyat ne, zeest ka mazaa paayaa/ dard ki dawaa paayi, dard laa dawaa paayaa*. In love, I found all the pleasures of life, the cure for all the pains but I found a pain which is incurable.

¹⁸⁴⁷ **Malaise:** (n) vague feeling of not feeling well; feeling of discomfort or unease.

Origin: mal- + ease

- The Chamba valley suffered from the **malaise** of dacoits.
- He was a delicate little boy, **quivering** with the **malaise** of being unloved.
- Corruption is a deep-rooted **malaise** of Indian polity.

*Mel-3: malefactor*¹⁸⁴⁸, *malfeasance*¹⁸⁴⁹, *malefic*¹⁸⁵⁰

As we just saw, the prefix *mal-* means ‘bad.’ Its opposite is the prefix *bene-*. Wherever you see a word beginning with or containing *bene-* or *bon-*, you can be sure it means ‘well.’ The *bene-*, *bon-* words are presented below:

*Bene-1: benefactor*¹⁸⁵¹, *beneficent*¹⁸⁵²

*Bene-2: beneficiary*¹⁸⁵³, *benign*¹⁸⁵⁴

*Bene-3: bonny*¹⁸⁵⁵, *bonhomie*¹⁸⁵⁶, *debonair*¹⁸⁵⁷

¹⁸⁴⁸ **Malefactor:** (n) villain; evil-doer.

Origin: L *mal-*, bad + *facere*, to do

☐ Mogambo is one of the most famous **malefactors** in the Indian cinema.

¹⁸⁴⁹ **Malfeasance:** (n) evil act, wrong act.

Origin: L *mal-*, bad + *facere*, to do

☐ The Right to Information Act offers the common man to expose the **malfeasance** and wrongdoings of public officials.

¹⁸⁵⁰ **Malefic:** (adj) having an evil effect.

Origin: L *mal-*, bad + *facere*, to make

☐ The planets Mars, Ketu and Shani are considered to be **malefic** by those who believe in astrology.

☐ The family conducted a havan before moving into their new flat so that if there was any **malefic** influence on the flat, it would disappear.

¹⁸⁵¹ **Benefactor:** (n) a large hearted person who does a kind act to somebody; one who leaves money for you in his will.

Origin: L *bene-*, good + *factor*, doer

☐ In the front lawns of the college stood a statue of the **benefactor** whose generous **bequest** had allowed the college to construct its own building.

☐ In the movie *Bagban*, Salman Khan’s character is an orphan who used to be a shoe-shine boy. He could study and get a good life only through the **benefaction** of Amitabh Bachchan’s character. Amitabh not only gave him love but also the money to complete his education. In turn, Salman also remained devoted to his **benefactor** even when Amitabh’s own children started neglecting him.

¹⁸⁵² **Beneficent:** (adj) having a good effect, useful.

Origin: L *bene-*, good + *facere*, to make

☐ Great intelligence is **beneficent** only when it is accompanied with wisdom.

¹⁸⁵³ **Beneficiary:** (n) a person who receives the benefits either of a project or of a person’s will.

Beneficiaries of a government scheme, **beneficiaries** of a will.

¹⁸⁵⁴ **Benign:** (adj) harmless

☐ ‘*A life less ordinary*’ is the autobiography of Baby Halder. She is a domestic help who studied up to only the seventh standard. She started writing her life story at nights in school exercise books given by her **benign** Delhi employer, who noticed her love for books.

¹⁸⁵⁵ **Bonny:** (adj) good, pleasing, happy

☐ Even a sight of her **bonny** baby warmed the young mother’s heart.

☐ When the ghost entered the *haveli* in which she had spent her life 50 years ago, a wedding was evidently afoot, for the hall and the staircase blazed with light and bloomed with flowers. Smiling men and maids ran to and fro; opening doors showed tables beautiful with bridal white and silver; **savoury** odors filled the air; gay voices echoed above and below; and once she caught a brief glance at the **bonny** bride, standing with her father’s arm about her, while her mother gave some last, loving touch to her array; and a group of young sisters with delighted faces clustered round her.

¹⁸⁵⁶ **Bonhomie:** (n) friendliness, good-naturedness.

Origin: Fr *bonhomme*, from *bon*, good + *homme*, man

☐ From the **bonhomie** between the Indians and Pakistanis living in London, no one could tell that their countries were archenemies of one another.

¹⁸⁵⁷ **Debonair:** (adj) courteous, gracious, and having a sophisticated charm.

Origin: Old Fr *de bonne aire*, ‘of good family’. The Latin prefix *de*, means ‘of’, *bon* (or *bonne*) means ‘good’ in Latin and the Old French *aire*, means ‘nest’ or ‘family’.

☐ Her boyfriend looked unusually **debonair** that evening, and the thought of entering the party on the arm of such a personable man caused Amita’s heart to swell with pride.

Latin *vitium* **a fault, defect**

*Lalit gambled. He was a drunkard. He was a **libertine**¹⁸⁵⁸!*

Lahiri ji looked closely at the framed photograph hanging on the wall in front of him. Lalit smiling innocently on his seventh birthday. When had all this **vice**¹⁸⁵⁹ entered his house? He had been with his son all the time, had devoted his life to him. Why then did Lalit fall into these **vicious**¹⁸⁶⁰ habits?

Now what should he do? Should he arrange for Lalit's bail? Arrange lawyers for him? For his 'darling son' who had made him proud by **molesting**¹⁸⁶¹ a waitress in a casino? Lalit was drinking and gambling in Goa when he had said his company was sending him to Delhi! Lahiri ji's face tightened. The boy had **vitiated**¹⁸⁶² his trust. To get a bail for him would mean **condoning**¹⁸⁶³ his lies, his crimes. It would convince him that he could do as he pleased. No, he would not support his son in this case at all. He would not **vituperate**¹⁸⁶⁴ either. What effect would angry words have on shameless **mendacity**¹⁸⁶⁵? He would just not see the face of his disappointing son ever again.

Looking at the photograph, Lahiri ji felt sudden, extreme anger. He felt like **yanking** that seven-year-old smiling boy out of the picture and slapping him till he was dead. How dare he cheat him like that? How dare he make a mockery of his upbringing?

Lahiri ji felt his life had been a waste.

Latin *lavere* **to wash**

A 'lavatory', more often known as a bathroom, is a washing-place for humans. A '*lavanderie*' was the washing-place for clothes in medieval French homes. The word entered English as 'laundry'.

The Italians called the streams that resulted from sudden, **torrential** rains and washed away their villages, 'lava'. The people living around Mount Vesuvius, the only active volcano in Italy, also used the word for the streams of molten

¹⁸⁵⁸ **Libertine:** (n) morally or sexually unrestrained.

Origin: L *liber*, free.

The word 'liberty', meaning 'freedom' too is from the root *liber*.

¹⁸⁵⁹ **Vice:** (n) a morally wrong habit.

Origin: L *vitium*, fault

☐ Drinking alcohol excessively, gambling, **mendacity**, corruption, hypocrisy, sexual **debauchery** are some examples of **vices**.

☐ The Sikh philosophy warns against five **cardinal vices**—*kaam* (desire), *krodh* (anger), *lobh* (greed), *moh* (attachment), *ahankaar* (ego).

¹⁸⁶⁰ **Vicious:** (adj) immoral, evil, wrong.

Origin: from **vice**

☐ In the 1980s, 75,000 people were killed in El Salvador's **vicious** civil war.

☐ A pet dog who starts attacking people is said to have turned **vicious**.

¹⁸⁶¹ **Molest:** (v) to do unwanted sexual activity with somebody, usually a woman or a child, like unwanted touching, making indecent gestures, forcibly showing pornography, forced kissing, etc.

¹⁸⁶² **Vitiate:** (v) to spoil, injure, make ineffective.

Origin: L *vitium*, fault

☐ If one of the parties of a contract is found to have misrepresented facts or to have signed the contract under **duress**, the contract is **vitiated**.

¹⁸⁶³ **Condone:** (v) to remain silent about a wrongdoing and, thereby, imply **tacit** approval of the act.

Tacit: (adj) unspoken

¹⁸⁶⁴ **Vituperate:** (v) to criticize or scold in very harsh language

Origin: L *vitium*, fault + *parere*, to provide => 'to provide a list of all faults of a person in a very abusive tone'

¹⁸⁶⁵ **Mendacity:** (n) habitual dishonesty,

☐ Politicians are often **mendacious**. They will say—and say with a show of full conviction—anything that will get them votes, even if what they say is not true and they know it, even if they themselves don't believe in what they say, even if they have been saying the exact opposite till a day before.

rock that came down the mountain. This latter sense became predominant in English, when it took in the word around mid-eighteenth century.

Once upon a time, long, long ago, God became utterly **despondent**¹⁸⁶⁶ about mankind, because the man he had created in his own image had become **vile**¹⁸⁶⁷ and evil and showed no regard for Him or Nature anymore. So, He decided to wipe away all corrupt creatures and **purge** the earth by sending a great **deluge**¹⁸⁶⁸. There was only one man who was good, Noah. So, to spare him this misery, God came in Noah's dream, told him of the **looming deluge** and directed him to build a great boat. In the boat, Noah was to shelter only his family and a pair each of certain species of animals and birds. The obedient man did as he was told. Once his **titanic**¹⁸⁶⁹ triple-decker houseboat—known as Noah's Ark—was ready and all the designated creatures were safely inside it, God sent a great rain that fell non-stop and **deluged** the whole of the Earth. The water rose so high that even the peaks of the highest mountains were submerged! Only Noah's Ark survived the **cataclysm**¹⁸⁷⁰.

After forty days, the rain finally stopped. Slowly, the water levels **receded** and the humans and the animals stepped out of the **Ark**¹⁸⁷¹ to repopulate the **blighted**¹⁸⁷² earth. God promised to never again send such a great flood and placed a rainbow in the sky as a sign of this **covenant**. That is why, even today, after a rain stops, we see a rainbow. It is God's way of telling us that He still remembers His promise.

The other washer-words are:

Lava re-1: **lavish**¹⁸⁷³, **alluvium**¹⁸⁷⁴

¹⁸⁶⁶ **Despondent**: (adj) in low-spirits, gloomy.

❑ It was Bandhopadhyay's daughter's wedding. The preparations were in full swing when an old man who lived in his street became suddenly ill. Bandhopadhyay rushed him to the hospital and footed all the bill of his treatment. As a result, he could not afford to have an army band play at his daughter's wedding any more. The ladies of his house were **despondent** at this. "What kind of a wedding will it be without a band?" They asked with hung faces.

¹⁸⁶⁷ **Vile**: (adj) of very little monetary, moral or social value; evil.

Origin: L *vilis*, cheap

❑ Gabbar Singh is, perhaps, the **vilest** villain of Indian cinema. When Gabbar Singh **maims** Thakur, old Mrs Khanna **grimaces**, "How sick and **vile**! As if killing his family was not enough!" Each time she sees the movie, she says that.

¹⁸⁶⁸ **Deluge**: (n) flood; (v) to flood.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *lavere*, to wash

¹⁸⁶⁹ **Titanic**: (adj) huge in size or power.

Origin: from the Titans in the Greek mythology, who were giants who sought to rule the heaven but were ultimately defeated by the gods.

¹⁸⁷⁰ **Cataclysm**: (n) a violent flood; any violent **upheaval** that causes large-scale destruction or brings about a fundamental change

¹⁸⁷¹ The word Ark is also used generally for any place that offers shelter in a difficult time.

Origin: L *arca*, large box

Another word from this root is **arcane**.

Arcane: (adj) mysterious, understandable only by a select few.

Origin: L *arca*, large box => 'hidden in a box'

❑ To most people, technology and technical matters seem **arcane**.

❑ The philosopher used many **arcane** words to explain his theory. Needless to say, the theory remained as ununderstood as before the lecture.

¹⁸⁷² **Blight**: (v) to destroy, to cause to decay; (n) a disease, a cause of destruction.

¹⁸⁷³ **Lavish**: (adj) requiring or produced with no limit on expenditure; putting no limits in giving.

❑ *Mughal-e-Azam* was the most expensive film ever made in Indian history. Its producer, a Parsi businessman called Shapoorji Pallonji, had no experience of filmmaking and agreed to finance the **lavish** project only because of his fascination for Akbar! But the money proved worth it because everybody who saw the film was **lavish** in his praise.

¹⁸⁷⁴ **Alluvium**: (n) sand, mud and other matter deposited by a flowing river in its plain or a delta.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *lavere*, to wash

❑ The Indo-Gangetic plain spans most of Pakistan, north and east India, southern Nepal and the whole of Bangladesh. It is the world's largest stretch of **alluvial** soil. The **alluvium** is formed by the deposition of silt by the Indus and Ganges river systems.

Lava re-2: **ablution**¹⁸⁷⁵, **antediluvian**¹⁸⁷⁶

Latin *purus* pure, clean

Purus means pure; *agere* means 'to drive.' So, how do you express the idea of driving something towards purity? By combining *purus* and *agere*:

Purus + *agere* = *puragare* -> *purgare*

Thus, the root *purgare* means 'to purify.'

The words from *purus* or *purgare* are:

Purus-1: **Purge**¹⁸⁷⁷, **Purgatory**¹⁸⁷⁸, **expurgate**¹⁸⁷⁹

Purus-2: **puritan**¹⁸⁸⁰, **purblind**¹⁸⁸¹

These words are related with sanskrit words *paavanta* (purity) *pavitra* (pure) and *punya*, (clean action, pure, as in *punya bhoomi*, *punyalok*, heaven)

Latin *castus* pure

A 'caste' is a social group that maintains the purity of its blood by strictly enforcing **endogamy**¹⁸⁸². No one is allowed to marry outside his caste. But equally importantly, no one is allowed to marry within his subcaste. All the people

¹⁸⁷⁵ **Ablution:** (n) washing the body, hands, etc., especially as a part of a religious ritual.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *lavere*, to wash

- ❑ In the traditional Indian families, women got up before their men in order to finish their **ablution** and keep themselves free to fetch water for them, help them get ready, prepare and serve their food.

¹⁸⁷⁶ **Antediluvian:** (adj) very, very old.

Origin: L *ante-*, before + **deluge** => 'before the Great Flood mentioned in the Bible'

- ❑ An ambassador car and a rotary dial telephone are considered **antediluvian** today.

¹⁸⁷⁷ **Purge:** (v) to purify

Origin: L *purgare*, to purify.

- ❑ After the chain smoker left her house, she opened the windows so that her sitting room was aired and **purged** of his presence.
- ❑ The Mahatma encouraged the **congregation** to **purge** their hearts and minds of all ill-thoughts and greed and let the light and love of God enter in.

¹⁸⁷⁸ **Purgatory:** (n) according to Roman Catholic **theology**, a place where the souls who have done some wrongs in their life are sent to purify themselves so that they can then be united with God in heaven. The souls who sinned terribly in their lifetime are not sent to the Purgatory but to Hell.

Origin: L *purgare*, to purify

¹⁸⁷⁹ **Expurgate:** (v) to make changes to the words, text or other material which is considered objectionable.

- ❑ The song *Sexy, sexy sexy mujhe log bolein* was **expurgated** into *baby, baby baby mujhe log bolein*.

¹⁸⁸⁰ **Puritan:** (n) a person who is extremely particular about moral and religious matters.

Origin: L *purus*, pure

- ❑ The Muslims who do not do anything the Quran tells them not to do are **puritans**.

¹⁸⁸¹ **Purblind:** (adj) almost blind.

Origin: L *purus*, pure + blind. The word initially had a sense of 'purely blind' but slowly came to mean 'almost purely blind.'

- ❑ The **purblind** day was **feebly** struggling with the fog.

¹⁸⁸² **Endogamy:** (n) marriage within a socially distinct group of people.

Origin: Gk *endo-*, in + *gamos*, marriage.

The opposite of **endogamy** is **exogamy**.

Other words from *gamos*:

Polygamy: (n) state having many marriages

Bigamy: (n) state of having two marriages

Monogamy: (n) state of having only one marriage

who are born into the same subcaste are considered brothers and sisters and so, marriage between them is considered **incestuous**¹⁸⁸³. A couple who violates either of these two rules is severely punished and many a times, especially in the countryside, killed. Brutally.

Izzat's parents were not so **boorish**¹⁸⁸⁴ though. They were very educated and sophisticated. So, when they discovered that their daughter was going around with a lower caste guy, they did not **hack**¹⁸⁸⁵ her to pieces. They just **castigated**¹⁸⁸⁶ her verbally. "Are you out of your mind?" her father shouted, feeling proud to be so modern that he was actually discussing this matter with his daughter—who did that, everybody else just slapped their girls into obedience. He continued, "Can you not see how the world will laugh at us if they come to know of this?" His wife added fearfully that if the world got even a **whiff**¹⁸⁸⁷ of Izzat's affair, of the fact that she had been with an untouchable, no one would marry her. Startled by the 'touch' in 'untouchable', she looked in alarm first at her husband, then at her daughter and then asked the girl sharply, "Are you still **chaste**¹⁸⁸⁸?"

Izzat felt too **indignant** to say anything. How dare her mother ask her such a thing, that too in front of her father! She looked with fiery eyes at her mother, her father slapped her. "Tell your mother how far you went with him," he thundered.

Izzat ran into her room. Her father locked it from outside and told his wife to give her no food till she apologized. The girl had grown wings, he said, she needed to be **chastised**¹⁸⁸⁹.

After three days of foodlessness, Izzat banged at her door. Her parents had been waiting for that. They unlocked the door and found her standing, her head hung down. Sorry papa, sorry mama, she said, without looking up. The parents looked satisfied. Their rebellious daughter had been suitably **chastened**¹⁸⁹⁰. The mother brought food to her.

Two days later, they found her gone, with all her degree certificates and bank documents. They immediately vowed to never see her face again.

Very slowly however, over the years, they started wondering if they had done right. Apart from that one 'wrong' step, Izzat had been an ideal daughter. They had worried about the people, about what people would say. People had indeed said **nasty** things when Izzat ran away. But what surprised the old couple was that they survived that **opprobrium**! They could actually live through it! It had not killed them! And what surprised them even more was that people's talk **abated** after some days. People's interest in their domestic tragedy **waned**; it passed on to other things! If public

¹⁸⁸³ **Incest:** (n) sexual relationship with a close blood relative.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *castus*, pure

¹⁸⁸⁴ **Boor:** (n) a rude-mannered, unsophisticated person; a peasant.

Origin: G *bauer*, farmer

□ "Love makes gentlemen even of **boors**." Henry Adams

The word 'neighbour' has the same root as boor.

Neighbour = nigh, near + *bauer*, farmer => 'a farmer whose farm is near yours'

¹⁸⁸⁵ **Hack:** (v) to cut down.

¹⁸⁸⁶ **Castigate:** (v) to criticize very strongly for a wrongdoing; to punish in order to correct.

Origin: L *castus*, pure => 'to make pure'

□ The child went to his father and said that he didn't want to go to school anymore because one of his teachers had made him stand in the hot sun for one hour, with a bag on his head, for not doing his homework. "Tell me the name of the **castigator**," his father demanded.

¹⁸⁸⁷ **Whiff:** (n) a slight blow of air; a slight smell.

¹⁸⁸⁸ **Chaste:** (adj) pure, especially sexually.

□ Seeta gave an *agni pariksha* to prove her **chastity** after her long confinement by Ravana. However, when Rama realized that some subjects of his still believed that she was **unchaste**, he asked Lakshmana to leave her at Rishi Valmiki's ashram.

Also see, **continent**.

¹⁸⁸⁹ **Chastise:** (v) to beat or give other physical punishment to a wrongdoer in order to correct him; to criticize very strongly.

Origin: L *castus*, pure => 'to make pure'

¹⁸⁹⁰ **Chasten:** (v) to correct by physical punishment; to criticize strongly; to restrain; to purify.

Origin: L *castus*, pure

memory was so short, the old, lonely parents started wondering, should they have sacrificed their only child for the people? None of those people were with them today. They were battling their old age alone. Could things not have been any other way?

Latin *probus* good

The word from *probus* is simple- **probity**¹⁸⁹¹.

Also developed from *probus* is the Latin word *probare* which means ‘to prove good, to test.’ The verb ‘prove’ and its noun form ‘proof’ are both derived from *probare*. ‘Probable’ means provable, that is, capable of standing a test. The other words from *probare* are:

*Probare-1: Probe*¹⁸⁹², *disprove*¹⁸⁹³

*Probare-2: approbation*¹⁸⁹⁴, *disapprobation*¹⁸⁹⁵

*Probare-3: reprove*¹⁸⁹⁶, *reprobate*¹⁸⁹⁷

¹⁸⁹¹ **Probity:** (n) honesty; uprightness.

Origin: L *probus*, good

❑ **Probity** in governance is an absolute essential for efficient governance.

❑ The Prime Minister expressed disgust at the lack of **probity** in many bureaucrats and announced the launch of a nationwide Corruption Weeding Mission.

Opposite: **improbity** (rarely used)

¹⁸⁹² **Probe:** (n) an exploration; a device used for exploration; (v) to explore, to explore with a probe.

Origin: L *probare*, to test

❑ NASA has sent **probes** to Mars and Moon.

¹⁸⁹³ **Disprove:** (v) to prove false.

Origin: L *dis-* + *probare*, to test, to prove

❑ The best way to counter an argument is to **disprove** it. Many people, however, start attacking the person who made the argument rather than the argument itself.

❑ In a divorce case, if conflicting claims are made about a husband’s income—the **alimony** is decided based on that income—the wife’s statement is accepted by the court and the **onus** is on the husband to **disprove** it.

¹⁸⁹⁴ **Approbation:** (n) approval, official approval.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *probare*, to test if something is good => ‘to find upon testing that something is good indeed.’ The word ‘approval’ has the same etymology.

❑ The child’s drawing won the **approbation** of his teacher.

❑ It was very easy to see that the husband had complete hold over his wife, for she continually glanced at him as she talked as if seeking **approbation** for what she said.

¹⁸⁹⁵ **Disapprobation:** (n) disapproval.

❑ The lovers agreed to wait till their families’ **disapprobation** turned into **approbation**.

¹⁸⁹⁶ **Reprove:** (v) to express disapproval of something.

Origin: L *re-*, opposite of + *probare*, to prove to be good

❑ In his anger, Jeevan had shouted at his mother and told her to get out of his room. He was soon **reproved** for his bad behaviour, by seeing her face turn pale, and tears course down her wrinkled cheeks, while she fixed upon him a look of such pain that it might have softened a far harder heart than his.

❑ His aunt **reproved** him for setting a wrong role model for his siblings.

¹⁸⁹⁷ **Reprobate:** (adj) hardened in sin or evil ways, with no hope of improvement.

Origin: L *re-*, opposite of + *probare*, to prove to be good => ‘hopelessly bad’

❑ The **reprobate** husband came home **oddering** drunk each day and beat his wife and children. When he came to his senses the next morning, he would feel so sorry and **solicitous** about their bruises and **contusions** that they could not help forgiving him. They became a happy family for a few hours. Yet, in the evening, he would start getting ready to join his friends for a **carousal**. The wife would plead with him to not go, would even shed tears and show him her still not healed arms and face. At such a moment, he would feel like a **reprobate** standing before heaven, hardened, insensible, and unmoved. He could not, not answer the call of the bottle. He just had to. He would guiltily step out of the house and the daily drama would be repeated all over again.

Contusion: (n) a bruise.

Carousal: (n) noisy, drunken party.

Latin *verus* **true**

“I love your daughter very much and will keep her very happy.” The rich businessman who had come to ask for Dhaani’s hand told her father. The old man said that he would think and let him know. He then hired a detective to verify all the facts about the wannabe-groom. Two days later, when the aspirant came to him again, he gave his verdict—“No! Never! Not in my seven lifetimes!” The old man’s detective had reported that this man could vanish at will! Dhaani was sent to America the very next day to live with her brother for a few months; her father hoped **fervently** that *bhoots* could not travel that far and that their loves were as **evanescent** as they were.

‘Very’ started as meaning ‘truly’; somewhere along the way, it acquired the sense of ‘greatly’. A lover feels that ‘I love you’ falls too short in expressing his emotion. So he says **emphatically**¹⁸⁹⁸, “I truly love you” and then “I truly, truly love you” and finally, “I love you very much”

To ‘verify’ somebody’s statements means to test their truth. After the verification is complete, you give your ‘verdict, that is, you speak what the truth is (*verus* +L. *dict-*, to say).

The other words from this root are:

Verily, truly-1: **veracity**¹⁸⁹⁹, **verity**¹⁹⁰⁰,
Verily, truly-2: **veritable**¹⁹⁰¹, **verisimilitude**¹⁹⁰²
Verily, truly-3: **veridical**¹⁹⁰³, **aver**¹⁹⁰⁴

¹⁸⁹⁸ **Emphatically**: (adv) placing a lot of emphasis on one’s words

¹⁸⁹⁹ **Veracity**: (n) truthfulness

Origin: *verus*, true

- ☐ “I don’t know whether I ought to tell it or not, but for the sake of **veracity** I will.” Thus began another gossip session between the neighbourhood aunties.
- ☐ The son came home after midnight and told his waiting mother that he got late because a friend’s mother was ill and they had to hospitalize her. When she asked about which friend he was, where he lived, where his mother had been admitted, what the doctors said and if she could go and see her, he became irritated and asked, “Is this a cross-examination? Do you doubt my **veracity**?”

¹⁹⁰⁰ **Verity**: (n) truth

Origin: L *verus*, true

- ☐ It is an **eternal verity** that we reap what we sow.

¹⁹⁰¹ **Veritable**: (adj) true

- ☐ The jeweller took one real ruby and two exactly similar, fake ones. He then mixed them all together and asked the customer to pick up the **veritable** stone.
- ☐ He was a **veritable** genius.

¹⁹⁰² **Verisimilitude**: (n) likeness to truth.

Origin: L *verus*, true + *similis*, similar

- ☐ The youth film was much praised for its **verisimilitude**. The characters looked, dressed, talked, behaved, thought like normal college students and, for a change, the college too seemed real, not an overly stylized, fairy-tale picnic spot.

¹⁹⁰³ **Veridical**: (adj) truthful

Origin: L *verus*, truth + *dicere*, to say

- ☐ Science teachers often teach theories to their students as if they are **veridical** facts—whereas in reality, they are merely explanations.

¹⁹⁰⁴ **Aver**: (v) to declare positively and confidently.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *vertus*, true

- ☐ The newly elected Prime Minister **averred** that he would fulfil all the promises that his party had made to the people before the elections.

Exercise

mel-1, vitium, lavere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. His mother *silently approved* his thefts.
(a) vitiated (b) blighted (c) lavished (d) condoned (e) deluged
2. His opponents tried to *harm his reputation*.
(a) vitiate him (b) malign him (c) be malefic to him (d) be phlegmatic to him (e) vituperate him
3. He *felt quite sad and hopeless*.
(a) felt antediluvian (b) was despondent (c) was blighted (d) felt arcane (e) was deluged
4. There was *friendliness* between the team members.
(a) viciousness (b) vileness (c) mendacity (d) bonhomie (e) vituperation
5. Scooby was *not an easily disturbed dog*.
(a) a phlegmatic (b) a condoned (c) a tacit (d) a vile (e) a libertine
6. There was *an unspoken* commitment of marriage between them.
(a) a mendacious (b) a condoned (c) a tacit (d) an arcane (e) a lavish
7. He looked *quite stylish, elegant and charming*.
(a) debonair (b) titanic (c) cataclysmic (d) vile (e) libertine
8. Poverty seems to have become an incurable *disease* of India.
(a) malaise (b) vituperation (c) malady (d) cataclysm (e) despondence

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (b) 4. (d) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (a) 8. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Washing the body, hands etc. especially as a part of a religious ritual: A _____
2. Evil-doer: M _____
3. A person who receives property or money from somebody's will: B _____
4. Flood: D _____
5. A morally unrestrained person: L _____
6. A morally wrong habit: V _____
7. Habitual dishonesty: M _____
8. A violent upheaval that causes large scale destruction: C _____
9. To scold harshly: V _____
10. Ill-will: M _____

Answers:

ablution, malefactor, beneficiary, deluge, libertine, vice, mendacity, cataclysm, vituperate, malice

Purus, castus, probus, verus:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The *truth* of his statement was easily proved.
(a) incest (b) chastity (c) verity (d) approbation (e) probity

2. He *proved wrong* their claims.
(a) disproved (b) reproved (c) averred (d) castigated (e) chastened
3. The publisher *removed objectionable parts from* the book.
(a) purged (b) expurgated (c) chastised (d) made chaste (e) chastened
4. The young politician was *severely criticized* by all political parties for his irresponsible statement.
(a) caroused (b) hacked (c) purged (d) made purblind (e) chastised
5. He got a *whiff* of coffee.
(a) a cup (b) a sip (c) a slight smell (d) an addiction (e) a small plant
6. He did his job with *honesty*.
(a) verity (b) verisimilitude (c) castigation (d) probity (e) reprobation

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (e) 5. (c) 6. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A rude-mannered, unsophisticated person: B_____
2. A person hardened in sin: R_____
3. A bruise: C_____
4. A slight blow of air: W_____
5. Sexually pure: C_____
6. Honesty: P_____
7. Noisy, drunken party: C_____
8. One who is extremely particular about moral and religious matters: P_____
9. Marriage within a socially distinct group of people: E_____
10. Likeness to truth: V_____
11. Sexual relationship with a close blood relative: I_____

Answers:

boor, reprobate, contusion, whiff, chaste, probity, carousal, puritan, endogamy, verisimilitude, incest

LIGHT AND DARK

<i>Lumen</i>	light
<i>Lux</i>	light
<i>Luc-ere</i>	to shine
<i>Lustr-are</i>	to illuminate
<i>Luna</i>	moon

We **illuminate**¹⁹⁰⁵ our homes on Diwali. On that night, the Earth **flaunts**¹⁹⁰⁶ its billion *diyas* to the sky and its stars. “Look,” she beams proudly, “today, I am brighter than you!”

The stars are **luminous**¹⁹⁰⁷ bodies. People who shine similarly are called **luminaries**¹⁹⁰⁸.

In the ancient times, books were hand-written. A few special books were decorated with **ornate** initial letters, **arabesque**¹⁹⁰⁹ page borders or paintings illustrating the text. Some of them were even **embellished**¹⁹¹⁰ with gold and silver! These books were called ‘illuminated’ manuscripts. Only the rich could afford them. The job of illuminating a book was called **limning**¹⁹¹¹ and the **painstaking**¹⁹¹² artists who did it were called ‘limners’.

A person who loves collecting matchboxes is called ‘phillumensist’ (*phil-*, love). Rachit used to be one. Just the sight of a matchbox would bring such **luster**¹⁹¹³ to his eyes that most people could not help smiling. But then, something

¹⁹⁰⁵ **Illuminate:** (v) to light up; to decorate with lights, or in the case of manuscripts, with bright colours or gold and silver.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *lumen*, light

¹⁹⁰⁶ **Flaunt:** (v) to show-off.

¹⁹⁰⁷ **Luminous:** (adj) emitting or reflecting light, shining.

Origin: L *lumen*, light

¹⁹⁰⁸ **Luminary:** (n) a person who has achieved eminence in a specific field.

Origin: L *lumen*, light => ‘person who is a source of light (inspiration) to others’

¹⁹⁰⁹ **Arabesque:** (adj) decorated richly with patterns of flowers, leaves and geometric figures; (n) a ballet pose in which the dancer stands on one leg, her upper body parallel to the ground, her arm extended in the front and her other arm and other leg extended fully backward.

Origin: Arab + -esque => ‘decorated in the style of Islamic art’

¹⁹¹⁰ **Embellish:** (v) to decorate, make more beautiful.

¹⁹¹¹ **Limn:** (v) to draw, outline, paint or decorate (a manuscript).

Origin: L *luminen*, to illuminate (manuscripts).

¹⁹¹² **Painstaking:** (adj) very, very careful and hardworking; taking pains or trouble.

Origin: Pains+ taking

¹⁹¹³ **Luster:** (n) shine; soft reflected light; sheen. The thing that has **lustre** is called **lustrous**.

Origin: L *lustrare*, to make shiny

happened—nobody knows what—but he has **morphed**¹⁹¹⁴ into a tired-looking man with **lackluster**¹⁹¹⁵ eyes, dead voice and zero excitability even towards a matchbox.



Venus, seen just before dawn, is said to be ‘Lucifer’, the ‘light-bringer’ (*ferre*, to carry). The poor student who is **fumbling** in the darkness of his subject wishes he too had a Lucifer to **elucidate**¹⁹¹⁶ the **obscure**¹⁹¹⁷ concepts. He **imputes**¹⁹¹⁸ his **plight** to his bad teachers. They do not give **lucid**¹⁹¹⁹ explanations, he says, either because they are not so sure themselves, and so try to get away by **babbling**¹⁹²⁰ some mumbo-jumbo, or because they think that ‘difficult looks brainy’. Had his teachers not been so **unintelligible**, he would not have had to **lucubrate**¹⁹²¹ all the night through.

The best communicators are those who say what they want in a **pellucid**,¹⁹²² **translucent**¹⁹²³ manner. Real genius lies in simplicity.

IE *dyeu* to shine

The Sun is called *divakar* in Sanskrit, and a day, *divas* (*din* is its simplified form). *Diya* (also, *diva*) and *Diwali* too got their names from the light associated with them.

The Latin **counterpart** of *divas* is *dies* (pronounced as DEE-uhs), and is found in the following words:

Dies-1: diary, **diurnal**¹⁹²⁴, journal

¹⁹¹⁴ **Morph**: (v) transform

Origin: Shortening of **metamorphose**

¹⁹¹⁵ **Lacklustre**: (adj) lacking brilliance, shine or enthusiasm; dull.

Origin: lack + **luster**

¹⁹¹⁶ **Elucidate**: (v) throw light upon, to make clear.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *lucere*, to shine => ‘to make shine out’ => ‘to throw light upon’

¹⁹¹⁷ **Knotty**: (adj) full of knots; difficult to understand or solve; **intricate**.

¹⁹¹⁸ **Impute**: (v) to say ‘it is caused by’ or ‘it is a quality of’

- ❑ It is illogical to **impute** criminality to a race. No person is a criminal by birth or because he was born in a particular race.
- ❑ The newspaper **imputed** corruption and dictatorship to the president of XYZ political party.

¹⁹¹⁹ **Lucid**: (adj) clear, see-through; easily understood.

Origin: L *lucere*, to shine

¹⁹²⁰ **Babble**: (v) to talk meaninglessly.

¹⁹²¹ **Lucubrate**: (v) to study or write, especially in the night; to write with great knowledge

Origin: L *lucubrare*, to work by lamplight, usually at night

¹⁹²² **Pellucid**: (adj) clear, transparent.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *lucere* => ‘allowing light to shine through’

- ❑ R.K. Narayan’s prose is as clear as a **pellucid** lake.
- ❑ Her motives for the murder were not **pellucid** to the murdered man’s family.

¹⁹²³ **Translucent**: (adj) partially allowing light to pass through.

Origin: L *trans-*, through + *lucere*.

- ❑ A frosted window glass is not transparent, but **translucent**.

¹⁹²⁴ **Diurnal**: (adj) related with a day or with daytime; active during the day.

Origin: L *dies*, day -> *diurnus*, day

- ❑ Cows and buffalos are **diurnal** animals. Wolves and Owls are **nocturnal**.
- ❑ During the curfew, the citizens could not do even their normal **diurnal** activities like going to the office or going for a walk or to the market or visiting friends.

Dies -2: journey, **sojourn**¹⁹²⁵, **adjourn**¹⁹²⁶

Dies -3: **quotidian**¹⁹²⁷, **meridian**¹⁹²⁸, **dismal**¹⁹²⁹

A 'journey' originally meant a day's work, or a day's travel. That sense is still preserved in the word 'journeyman', used for a workman hired on a per-day basis. A 'diary' and a 'journal' keeps a record of each day. Newspapers also do that. That is why they are called journals, and the people who work for them, journalists.

Now, let me ask you two questions.

- The Sanskrit word *divya* has dual meanings. One, brilliant, and two, heavenly, **celestial**¹⁹³⁰. Is the second meaning related with the first?
- The Sanskrit words *devah*, *devta* (god), *devi* (goddess), *daivi* (meaning **divine**) and *daiya*, as found in the "Hai Daiya!" (Oh God) exclaimed by many Indians, are very close to the Sanskrit words for the day. Can you explain why?

Pause and think.

We believe that gods are **paragons** of goodness and that they live in the sky. Sky is also the source of daylight. We usually represent the good, the gods and the Heaven with shiny **immaculate**¹⁹³¹ whites. We use Hindi words like *tej*

¹⁹²⁵ **Sojourn**: (n) a temporary stay; (v) to stay temporarily at some place.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *diurnus*, day => 'to spend under a day' => 'to spend only some time at a place'

- ❑ The warden was a woman of system with children. Even the **feral** ones went home tamed enough, after **sojourning** for a few months beneath her roof.
- ❑ He had heard much about Paris being the city of art and love. So, he hoped to meet the woman of his dreams during his **sojourn** in Paris.
- ❑ Mr Pathak returned to his home in the United States after a week-long **sojourn** in India where he had been on a pilgrimage.

¹⁹²⁶ **Adjourn**: (v) to postpone further proceedings to a later date or indefinitely.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *diurnus*, day => 'to another day'

- ❑ The Lok Sabha was **adjourned** for the **day**, barely 30 minutes after being convened, due to the **ruckus** created by the Opposition over a recent price hike by the Government.

Ruckus: (n) noisy situation.

¹⁹²⁷ **Quotidian**: (adj) daily, everyday, ordinary.

Origin: L *quot*, every + *dies*, day

- ❑ Real love is that which survives **quotidian** married life.
- ❑ Writing a *masaala* story is not difficult. It needs talent however to **depict** the **quotidian** in an interesting manner.
- ❑ The common man votes not on the basis of **abstract** ideologies but on **quotidian** issues like the price of wheat, pulses and fuel, the availability of power or transport etc. He votes for anyone who makes his daily living a bit easier.

¹⁹²⁸ **Meridian**: (n) an imaginary circle passing through the two poles and any given point on earth; mid-day, noon.

Origin: L *medius*, middle + *dies*, day

- ❑ We say 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. What does 'a.m.' or 'p.m.' mean? A.M. stands for **ante-meridiem**. The Latin prefix *ante-* means 'before'. So, ante-meridian means 'before noon.' P.M. stands for **post-meridiem**, that is 'after noon.'

¹⁹²⁹ **Dismal**: (adj) cheerless, dull; causing gloom.

Origin: L *dies*, day + *malus*, bad => 'bad day' => 'unlucky day when everything goes wrong'

- ❑ The parents were disappointed by the **dismal** performance of their son in the board exams.
- ❑ The environmentalist painted a **dismal** picture of the future if pollution and **unjudicious** use of natural resources continued **unabated**.

¹⁹³⁰ **Celestial**: (adj) related with the sky or the heaven.

- ❑ The science of astronomy took a huge leap forward into the modern era with the invention of the optical telescope and its use to study the night sky and discover new **celestial** objects.

¹⁹³¹ **Immaculate**: (adj) with not a single spot or stain or mistake.

Origin: L *im-*, not + *macula*, spot => 'spotless'

- ❑ It was wondrous for the Mehras to see their maid speaking **immaculate** English on the telephone. Seeing them stunned, she told them that she was taking English speaking classes for the past six months.
- ❑ The Principal of the school retired with an **immaculate** service record. Not once in his teaching career of 32 years had anyone pointed a single finger at him.

and *noor* for them. Both mean ‘radiance’. On the other hand, we associate the evil, the devil and the Hell with black, the color of the night.

In Latin too, the root for god is quite near to the root for day. It is *deus* and is found in:

Hai Daiya!: **adieu**¹⁹³², **deity**¹⁹³³, **deify**¹⁹³⁴

Devi Ma: **divine**¹⁹³⁵, **diva**¹⁹³⁶.

IE **kand-** to shine

“*Yeh chaand sa roshan chehra, zulfon ka rang sunahra...*” sings the hero to woo the heroine. *Chaand* is called ‘*chaand*’ because it shines; a candle is a candle for the same reason.

The people of Norway used to write candle as *kindill*. The idea of setting something on fire with a *kindill* led to the English verb **kindle**¹⁹³⁷.

The root of candle is the Latin word *candere*. It means ‘to shine’ (obviously). It also means ‘white’, because that is the colour associated with intense shine. For example, an **incandescent**¹⁹³⁸ bulb shines because its tungsten filament becomes white hot.

In ancient Rome, the citizens who **aspired**¹⁹³⁹ for an office wore white **togas**¹⁹⁴⁰ and so were called ‘candidates’. White symbolizes honesty; that was why they wore white, and that was why we have the word **candour**¹⁹⁴¹.

¹⁹³² **Adieu**: (n) goodbye, farewell.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *deus*, god -> ‘I commend you to god’

- ❑ Thousands of people poured into the streets to bid a tearful **adieu** to the brave soldiers who lost their lives in a terror attack on their city.

¹⁹³³ **Deity**: (n) god or goddess

Origin: L *deus*, god

- ❑ It is **hyperbolic** to say that India is a land of 33 crore **deities**. Yes, Indians worship many gods and goddesses but not 33 crore!

¹⁹³⁴ **Deify**: (v) to elevate to godhood.

Origin: L *deus*, god deity.

- ❑ It is a cruel **paradox** that the Indians **deify** women as Shakti and yet kill their girl children.

¹⁹³⁵ **Divine**: (adj) related with god; (v) to be able to know something that is either hidden or in the future; to guess.

Origin: L *deus*, god -> *divus*, god

- ❑ Great artists and writers **divine** the most secret impulses of the soul, scent out what is buried in the subconscious, and bring it up to the surface.
- ❑ Tarot cards, horoscopes, omens and crystal balls are some of the methods used to **divine** the future.
- ❑ Tarot cards, horoscopes, omens and crystal balls are some of the methods used for **divination** of the future.

¹⁹³⁶ **Diva**: (n) **prima donna**

Origin: L *divus*, god -> *diva*, goddess

¹⁹³⁷ **Kindle**: (v) to light a fire, to light up; to spark.

- ❑ The teacher **kindled** a love for science in all his students.

¹⁹³⁸ **Incandescent**: (adj) white with heat; brilliant.

Origin: L *in-*, within + *candere*, to glow => ‘to glow from within’ => ‘to give off one’s own light when hot’

¹⁹³⁹ **Aspire**: (v) to desire strongly; to see as one’s ultimate goal.

¹⁹⁴⁰ **Toga**: (n) a flowing robe worn above the other clothes by male citizens in ancient Rome.

¹⁹⁴¹ **Candor**: (n) honesty, frankness; (adj): **candid**.

Origin: L *candere*, white => ‘honesty’

- ❑ Rishi called Sara for a walk and confided to her that he loved Rhythm, her best friend. She **candidly** told him that the probability of Rhythm’s ever reciprocating his feelings was **zilch** because she already had a boyfriend. He thanked her for her **candour** and gloomily went home.

Zilch: (n) zero

The Latin word *incendere*, derived from *candere*, means ‘to set on fire’ because a burning thing shines. This is the root of **incendiary**¹⁹⁴² and **incense**¹⁹⁴³.

IE *ghel-* to shine

All that glitters, wise old people say, is not gold. Glitter. Gold. Did you ever notice that English has a large number of words beginning from ‘gl’ which are related to the idea of shining? They all belong to the *ghel-* family.

Glittering gl-1: Glow, **glower**¹⁹⁴⁴, **gloaming**¹⁹⁴⁵

Glittering gl -2: gleam, glimpse, glint, **gilded**¹⁹⁴⁶

Glittering gl -3: **glimmer**¹⁹⁴⁷, glitz, glisten

Glittering gl -4: glister, glass, glaze

Glittering gl -5: **glare**¹⁹⁴⁸, **gloss**¹⁹⁴⁹, **gloss over**¹⁹⁵⁰

Glittering gl-6: glance, glad (face shining with joy)

¹⁹⁴² **Incendiary:** (adj) that which sets something on fire; (n) a person who deliberately sets something on fire.

Origin: L *in*, in + *candere*, to shine

- ❑ An **incendiary** speech sets people’s emotions on fire. That is, it **incites** them violently against another group of people.
- ❑ Though the police could establish that the fire in the crowded *kapdaa bazaar* was not accidental, it failed to find out the **incendiary**.

¹⁹⁴³ **Incense:** (n) an aromatic substance which is burnt in temples, etc., for the fragrance it produces upon burning; the fragrance of an **incense**; (v) to make someone extremely angry.

Origin: L *in*, in + *candere*, to shine => ‘to set something or someone on fire’ => ‘to make someone so angry that he burns red-hot as if he was on fire.’

- ❑ The **vernacular** name for **incense** is *dhoop* or *agarbatti*.
- ❑ When Vijay Togad introduced his eldest daughter to wrestling, his village of Ludki in Haryana was up in arms: the elders were **incensed** at the idea of a local girl slugging it out in the mud.

¹⁹⁴⁴ **Glower:** (v) to look with extreme anger or dislike.

- ❑ Twelve-year-old Ramu’s mother **glowered** at him when, instead of thanking his aunt for the t-shirt that she had brought for him, he refused to accept it saying that his friends would laugh at him if he wore an unbranded t-shirt like that one.

¹⁹⁴⁵ **Gloaming:** (n) twilight

- ❑ The child never came out of the house in the twilight because his mother had told him that ghosts roamed in the **gloaming**. The **gloaming** was the time of the ghosts, his mother had said, because just like ghosts who were hung in the zone between life and nothingness, neither fully here nor fully there, the **gloaming** was hung between the day and the night.

¹⁹⁴⁶ **Gilded:** (adj) covered with gold or gold-coloured layer; looking very shiny and attractive on the surface but having little value underneath.

- ❑ The bride and the groom were seated on **gilded** chairs that seemed royal enough to befit a king and a queen.

¹⁹⁴⁷ **Glimmer:** (v) to shine intermittently.

- ❑ In the moonlight, the sequins on her sari **glimmered** like little stars.

¹⁹⁴⁸ **Glare:** (n) a very harsh light; (v) to look very angrily at someone.

- ❑ When Ramu’s mother **glared** at him, he immediately realized that he had said something wrong.
- ❑ He wore sunglasses to shield his eyes from the **glaring** sunlight.

¹⁹⁴⁹ **Gloss:** (n) a shine on the surface; something that makes a surface shine.

- ❑ Lip **gloss** is used to make lips shiny.
- ❑ Photographs are usually printed out on **glossy** paper and text on matte paper.

¹⁹⁵⁰ **Gloss over:** (v) overlook, neglect.

- ❑ The army chief **glossed over** the killing of ten civilians in a crossfire between the army and the militants by saying that a few innocents are always killed in a war.

*Glittering gl-7: gloat*¹⁹⁵¹, glide, glissade, glib

Today's 'yellow' is a changed version of the Old English word *geolu*, which, of course, came from *ghel-*.



The passengers were waiting for their flight. "Hello ji, what is your name?" Santa Singh asked his neighbour. "Yash-want Sinha." Santa's eyes **dilated**¹⁹⁵² to the size of a dinosaur's egg and he got up and pulled Sinha from his seat and hugged him tightly. "My brother!" he kept saying. His voice dripped so much with love that there was soon a puddle around them. The **Smothered**¹⁹⁵³ Sinha was almost dead by the time Santa released him and beamed, "*Singh-Sinha, bhai-bhai!*"

Both 'Singh' and 'Sinha' are derived from the Sanskrit *sinh*, lion. A similar 'gh'- 'h' interchange happened in the *ghel-* root too; that is how we got our word *Hari*, which we use so **adoringly** for Krishna. The IE 'l' usually becomes an 'r' in Sanskrit, so that explains the second part of Hari. A diamond is called a *hira* probably because of its shine. The Sanskrit word for gold, *hiranya*, too is from this root. The Hindu Purnas tell the story of Prahlad. His father, who was ultimately **slain**¹⁹⁵⁴ by Narsimha (the man-lion), was Hiranyakashap, meaning 'the golden-haired one.' The Sanskrit word for a deer is *hira*n because of its golden skin.

Latin *fulgere* to flash

There is a whole family of 'fl-' words which convey the idea of shining or burning. Let us start from the *fulgere* words:

*The fl-that flames and flashes-1: Refulgent*¹⁹⁵⁵, **effulgent**¹⁹⁵⁶

*The fl-that flames and flashes-2: fulminate*¹⁹⁵⁷

Fulgere meant a flash of light, and hence the image we saw in our mind was that of lightning or a thunderbolt. Other words close to it convey more continuous light. They are *flagrare*, 'to burn' and *flamma*, 'a flame.' These roots are found in the words below:

*The fl-that flames and flashes-3: flagrant*¹⁹⁵⁸, **conflagration**¹⁹⁵⁹

¹⁹⁵¹ **Gloat**: (v) to look at something with an evil smile on one's face; to feel such an evil satisfaction over something.

- ☐ The killers **gloated** as the stabbed man struggled to reach the telephone. They had cut the telephone line before entering the house and were content that nothing would happen even if the man managed to wriggle to the phone.

¹⁹⁵² **Dilate**: (v) to cause to expand.

¹⁹⁵³ **Smother**: (v) to suffocate.

¹⁹⁵⁴ **Slain**: (v) killed.

¹⁹⁵⁵ **Refulgent**: (adj) shining brightly.

- ☐ The song *Yeh chaand sa roshan chehraa* is sung in the praise of a girl whose face is as **refulgent** as the moon.

¹⁹⁵⁶ **Effulgent**: (adj) shining brightly.

- ☐ The sky was filled with numerous kites in green, red, blue, yellow and other **effulgent** colours.

¹⁹⁵⁷ **Fulminate**: (v) explode

- ☐ "Who are they to decide what we should watch or not? Are we kids?" The angry students **fulminated** against the Vice Chancellor's decision to restrict all websites with adult content on the university campus.
- ☐ Newspaper articles **fulminated** about the government's move to restrict freedom of the press.

¹⁹⁵⁸ **Flagrant**: (adj) open; **glaring**.

- ☐ The police dared not touch the minister's son though he had built his factory in **flagrant** violation of the laws.

¹⁹⁵⁹ **Conflagration**: (n) great fire.

- ☐ A fire broke out in an oil well. The fire engines soon reached the spot but the oil burned with great fury and it was impossible to arrest the **conflagration** until the oil in the well had been entirely consumed.

The fl-that flames and flashes-4: **Flamboyant**¹⁹⁶⁰, flambeau, **inflammation**¹⁹⁶¹

Latin *ardere* to burn

Love's **ardour**¹⁹⁶² burns some

Some are burnt by **arson**¹⁹⁶³

The **arid**¹⁹⁶⁴ earth is burnt too

It's **scorched**¹⁹⁶⁵ by the **sultry**¹⁹⁶⁶ sun

Qadum Bey burnt each day, each moment in the separation of his wife. She had been kidnapped by an evil magician and Qadum had been wandering in search of her ever since. One day, he reached a land that was absolutely **arid**. It seemed so thirsty for water that **fissures** had cracked open everywhere, hoping to get at least some drops of water. The trees too were **singed**¹⁹⁶⁷. Not a single leaf remained on any tree. The **bleak**¹⁹⁶⁸ landscape reflected the state of his mind, Qadum thought. He was beginning to feel dizzy under the **scorching** sun. Just then, two monstrous **serpents**¹⁹⁶⁹ swooped upon him from the sky. Those serpents were more than twenty feet long each and horror of horrors, exhaled fire!

Greek *kaustos* burning, burnt

¹⁹⁶⁰ **Flamboyant**: (adj) showy; stylish; very noticeable.

- She coloured her hair a **flamboyant** red.
- The **flamboyant** flowers in the garden brightened the day and the spirit of everybody who passed by them.

¹⁹⁶¹ **Inflammation**: (n) state of being on fire.

- He was arrested for his **inflammatory** speeches against the minority communities.
- Oil is an **inflammable** liquid.
- Hepatitis is also known as 'liver **inflammation**.' An **inflammation** that occurs in the joint is called arthritis.

¹⁹⁶² **Ardent**: (adj) very pasonate.

Origin: *α ardere*, to burn.

- Damodar was a Maharashtrian but he wrote his poems and short stories in Gujarati, and was so **ardent** about the language he wrote in that the Gujaratis proudly called him "Savai Gujarati," or "One-and-a-quarter-times Gujarati," more Gujarati than the Gujaratis.

¹⁹⁶³ **Arson**: (n) act of setting things on fire.

Origin: *α ardere*, to burn.

- Hundreds of labourers went on **rampage** and resorted to **arson** when a fellow-labourer, who had been arrested a day before on charges of dacoity, died in police custody. They burnt three public roadways buses and a police jeep.

¹⁹⁶⁴ **Arid**: (adj) extremely dry.

Origin: *α ardere*, to burn.

¹⁹⁶⁵ **Scorch**: (v) to burn.

- A glass of plain, cold water is the first thing we reach for after being out in the **scorching** summer sun. We can replace 'scorching summer sun' with 'searing summer sun' in the sentence above.

¹⁹⁶⁶ **Sultry**: (adj) very hot and humid.

¹⁹⁶⁷ **Singe**: (v) to burn slightly, or only on the surface.

¹⁹⁶⁸ **Bleak**: (adj) dull, colourless, hopeless

Origin: Germanic *blanc*, white. The other words from the root *blanc* are 'blank', 'bleach' and 'blanch'

¹⁹⁶⁹ **Serpent**: (n) snake; (adj): **serpentine**: snake-like

Origin: Related with the Sanskrit *sarp*, snake.

- The **serpentine** queue at the bill counter crawled forward very slowly.

The words **caustic**¹⁹⁷⁰, **holocaust**¹⁹⁷¹ and **cauterize**¹⁹⁷² are from this root.

Latin *calor* **heat**

Chilled, Arpit **chafed**¹⁹⁷³ his hands. The stiff collar of his shirt **chafed** his neck, but he felt more **chafed** at the delay caused by the snowstorm. He grumbled and grunted and **groused**¹⁹⁷⁴ all over the room, hoping to attract his wife's sympathy, but she kept on knitting contentedly and hardly looked up. Her **nonchalance**¹⁹⁷⁵ **infuriated** him. *Did she not bother about him at all?* He felt like shaking her up and asking. But he did not do that. Because, the answer would have **abashed**¹⁹⁷⁶ him—'No'. He had married her despite her unwillingness, believing that the heat of his passion would **ignite**¹⁹⁷⁷ her; it had been four years and she had not even warmed.



Heat is measured in 'calories'. One calorie is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water by 1°C at 1 atm. pressure.

Hell is always **depicted** as a very hot place, where fires rage and water bubbles ferociously in huge **caldrons**¹⁹⁷⁸, waiting to **scald**¹⁹⁷⁹ the sinners' bodies. Urgh!

Latin *fervere* **to boil**

¹⁹⁷⁰ **Caustic:** (adj) capable of causing burns.

- ☐ Stung by his *bhabhi's* **caustic** remarks, the unemployed young man stormed out of the house, and vowed to himself that he would not set his foot in the house again till he got a better job than his elder brother- her husband.

¹⁹⁷¹ **Holocaust:** (n) large scale destruction by fire; large scale destruction.

- ☐ Should the world be plunged into nuclear **holocaust**, the only one to survive it would be the cockroach.

¹⁹⁷² **Cauterize:** (v) to burn a tissue.

- ☐ In places where medical treatment is not available, people **cauterize** their wounds to stop bleeding and prevent infection. A flat metal instrument, such as a knife, is cleaned and heated over fire (but not so much that it becomes red) and then, is pressed against the wound while taking care not to burn the healthy tissue around it.

¹⁹⁷³ **Chafe:** (v) to wear away by rubbing; to annoy or irritate.

Origin: L *cal facere*, to make hot => 'to heat, rub'

¹⁹⁷⁴ **Grouse:** (v) complain.

¹⁹⁷⁵ **Nonchalance:** (n) indifference; lack of concern or care.

Origin: L *calere*, to be warm → Fr *chaloir*. So, Fr *nonchaloir* ment 'lack of warmth'

¹⁹⁷⁶ **Abash:** (v) embarrass

Related with **bashful**, shy.

¹⁹⁷⁷ **Ignite:** (v) to set on fire.

¹⁹⁷⁸ **Caldron:** (n) a huge vessel used for boiling water, etc.

Origin: L *calidus*, warm → *caldarium*, hot bath.

¹⁹⁷⁹ **Scald:** (v) to burn by pouring out boiling water over.

Origin: L *ex-* + *caldarium*, hot bath => 'to bathe in hot water.'

This root leaps towards you the moment you look at **fervent**¹⁹⁸⁰, **fervid**¹⁹⁸¹, **feravour**¹⁹⁸² and **effervescent**¹⁹⁸³. So, you enthusiastically lead them to the special place you had reserved for this root in your notebook. Poor **fermentation**¹⁹⁸⁴ keeps standing in the crowd, neglected, and wondering if it looks too different from its **siblings**.



Foment¹⁹⁸⁵ looks related to **ferment**. So do their roots, not only in appearance but also in meaning. *Fervere* is to boil and *fovere* is to keep warm. Quite close, isn't it? Actually, no. *Fovere* is related, not to *fervere*, but to *febris*, the root that gives us the words fever and **febrile**¹⁹⁸⁶.

Latin *bullā* **bubble**

The Hindi word for bubble is a cousin of *bullā*. Meet *Bulbula*, the happy little creature that you can sometimes find **wafting** in the air, singing joyfully:

Bulbula, bulbula array main toh bulbula

The English cousins of *bulbula* are equally bubbly. They are:

Ebullient¹⁹⁸⁷, **bullion**¹⁹⁸⁸, **bouillon**¹⁹⁸⁹

¹⁹⁸⁰ **Fervent**: (adj) wildly enthusiastic.

- The two long-separated friends **fervently** embraced each other.
- The boy's letter to his uncle—who was also his role model—was a **fervent** and grateful one, narrating all the good effects that had resulted from his following his uncle's advice.

¹⁹⁸¹ **Fervid**: (adj) highly enthusiastic; very hot.

- "Welcome! Welcome!" The host of the party extended his hand **fervidly**.
- His **fervid** love for cars led him to a degree in automobile engineering.

¹⁹⁸² **Fervor**: (n) great enthusiasm.

- In India, the festivals of all religions are celebrated with equal **feravour**.
- The couple forgot the whole world in the **feravour** of love.

¹⁹⁸³ **Effervescent**: (adj) bubbly

- She was a bubbly, **effervescent** girl.
- Pepsi and Coke are **effervescent** drinks.
- An **effervescent** tablet is that which produces gas bubbles on dissolving in water.

¹⁹⁸⁴ **Fermentation**: (n) the conversion of sugars to carbon dioxide and alcohol by yeast in the absence of oxygen.

¹⁹⁸⁵ **Foment**: (v) to stir up, to **instigate**.

Origin: L *fovere*, to warm, heat

- The political party tried to **foment** trouble in the country by pitting one religion against the other.

¹⁹⁸⁶ **Febrile**: (adj) related with, characterized by or causing fever.

- Dengue and Malaria are **febrile** diseases.
- Out of the 1000 patients who reported to the government hospital with **febrile** illness, 104 tested positive for Malaria.

¹⁹⁸⁷ **Ebullient**: (adj) overflowing with excitement.

Origin: α *ex-*, out + *bullire*, to boil ⇒ 'bubbling forth'

- She was in an **ebullient** mood the day she finally finished her book.

¹⁹⁸⁸ **Bullion**: (n) bars of metal, like gold and silver.

Origin: L *bullire*, to boil ⇒ 'melted mass of gold and silver'

- The **bullion** reserve of a country is the indicator of the amount of wealth a country possesses.
- Trading of gold and silver is known as **bullion** trading. Newspapers and business channels on TV publish information about the latest **bullion** rates. An example is: Bar silver (one kg) 7,595; Retail (one gm) 7.80; 24ct gold **bullion** (10 gm) 4,318; 22-carat retail (one gm) 396.

¹⁹⁸⁹ **Bouillon**: (n) soup made of beef.

Origin: L *bullire*, to boil, to boil → fr. *bouillir*, to boil → fr. *bouillon*.

IE ters- to dry

Your throat has dried up totally. Even saliva is no longer there. Your tongue is cracking up like **parched** earth. What are you?

Thirsty.

The English word ‘thirst’ and the Sanskrit ‘*tarsh*’ and ‘*trishna*’ are brothers. The word *tarsana* is a simpler form of *trishna*.



Dried up land is called *terra* in Latin. It is the root of the following words:

Terra-1: Terrace, **terrain**¹⁹⁹⁰, **terrestrial**¹⁹⁹¹

Terra-2: **tureen**¹⁹⁹², **inter**¹⁹⁹³, **disinter**¹⁹⁹⁴

The part of the *haldi* plant that we consume is its root. The root is boiled, dried and ground before use. That is why *haldi* is called ‘turmeric’ in English.

A slice of bread that has been dried to crispness is called a ‘toast’.

The **Torrid**¹⁹⁹⁵ Zone of the earth and **torrential**¹⁹⁹⁶ rains too belong to the *ters-* family.

Latin umbra shade

An ‘umbrella’ shades us from the merciless sun in the summers. It also casts a shadow on Mr Rajinder Sahni’s face and puts him in a **somber**¹⁹⁹⁷ mood. His father used to carry a black umbrella with him to work. One day, as he was

☐ “Having your book turned into a movie is like seeing your oxen turned into **bouillon** cubes”.—John le Carré

¹⁹⁹⁰ **Terrain**: (n) ground, land.

☐ The road sign read: Drive slowly. Rocky **terrain** ahead.

¹⁹⁹¹ **Terrestrial**: (adj) related with earth.

☐ Monkey is a **terrestrial** animal.

☐ Jaadu in the movie *Koi Mil Gaya* is an **extraterrestrial** creature as is ET in the Hollywood movie ‘*ET the Extra-Terrestrial*’

¹⁹⁹² **Tureen**: (n) a soup bowl.

Origin: L *terra*, earth ⇒ ‘a vessel made of earth’

☐ The waiter placed a large **tureen** of mutton soup, spiced with herbs, in front of him.

¹⁹⁹³ **Inter**: (v) to bury.

Origin: L *in-*, into + *terra*, earth.

☐ Funeral was not even the correct word; it was an **interment** which Ridah Fazil’s in-laws arranged at indecent speed as soon as she died. All the neighbours murmured darkly that it did not seem to be a natural death.

¹⁹⁹⁴ **Disinter**: (v) to dig out from under the ground.

☐ *Gadhe murde ukhaadne ka kya faaydaa?* Translates into “why **disinter** old skeletons?”

See also the sentence for **exhume**.

¹⁹⁹⁵ **Torrid**: (adj) very hot, very passionate.

Origin: L *torrere*, to make dry, burn.

☐ The English players found it challenging to play in the **torrid** heat of the Indian summer.

☐ A **torrid** love affair is that with a lot of passion and heat.

¹⁹⁹⁶ **Torrential**: (adj) Pouring or flowing violently fast.

Origin: L *torrere*, to burn → *torrens*, burning ⇒ ‘boiling, roaring’

☐ Ten persons were washed away as **torrential** rains lashed Mumbai.

¹⁹⁹⁷ **Somber**: (adj) dark and depressing; very serious.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *umbra* => ‘under shade.’

walking homewards, a street **urchin** snatched his umbrella and ran across the road. The old man, in trying to chase him, was run over by a speeding car.



A shadow is always darker inside than on the **periphery**. That is, the **umbra**¹⁹⁹⁸ looks more **sinister**¹⁹⁹⁹ than the **penumbra**²⁰⁰⁰.

When I give **umbrage**²⁰⁰¹ to someone, I give him a shadow on his previously-beaming face, that is, I make him upset and angry. Of course, I succeed only because the other person does take **umbrage** at my remarks.

This root comes from the IE root *andho-*, meaning ‘blind, dark.’ So, our words *andha* and *andhera* are cousins of *umbra*.

IE *nekw-t-* night

The Sanskrit word for night is *nakti*. *Nakshatra*, meaning a star or a constellation, is probably derived from here.

The word ‘night’ too developed from *nekw-t-*. And, night is black. The Latin word *niger*, a **sibling** of ‘night’, means black. That is why, black-skinned people were called ‘Negroes’ (the term is now **archaic** and has been replaced by the word Black in almost contexts). The word **denigrate**²⁰⁰² is also from *niger*.

The Latin word for night is *nox* (*noct-*) and is found in **nocturnal**²⁰⁰³ and **equinox**²⁰⁰⁴.

¹⁹⁹⁸ **Umbra:** (n) the darkest part of a shadow.

¹⁹⁹⁹ **Sinister:** (adj) evil or threatening
Origin: α *sinister*, on the left hand => ‘unfavorable.’

²⁰⁰⁰ **Penumbra:** (n) the semi-dark region of a shadow that surrounds the umbra.
Origin: L *pen-*, almost + *umbra* => ‘almost shaded’

²⁰⁰¹ **Umbrage:** (n) anger; offence; sense of injury, insult or being overshadowed.
The Prime Minister of Pakistan had come to India for a much-vaunted four-day ‘Peace Parley’. But on the second day, he took sudden umbrage and walked out of a joint conference with India’s Prime Minister and immediately went back to Islamabad. It was a diplomatic scandal!
Define parley, parliament, unparliamentary, parlor, all in 1 sentence each.

²⁰⁰² **Denigrate:** (v) to belittle, defame or blacken.
Origin: α *de-*, intensive + *negate* to blacken.
 The arrogant husband denigrated his stay-at-home wife’s role in the family by saying that even a servant could do all that she did.
 Her colleagues denigrated her character by saying that she had slept with the boss to get the promotion.

²⁰⁰³ **Nocturnal:** (adj) related to night; active in night.
 A *chaukidaar* keeps **nocturnal** vigil.
 The owl is a **nocturnal** bird.

²⁰⁰⁴ **Equinox:** (n) the time of the year when night and day are of equal length.
Origin: α *aequus*, equal + *nox*, night ⇒ ‘equality of night (and day)’ compare with **solstice**.

Exercise

Lumen, lux, lucere, lustrare, luna, dyeu, kand-, ghel-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *showed off* his new car to all his relatives.
(a) illuminated (b) flaunted (c) gloated (d) glimmered (e) lucubrated
2. The teacher *explained in such a manner that all the students understood* the difficult poem.
(a) elucidated (b) glossed (c) glossed over (d) gilded (e) kindled
3. Sitting by the lake, they saw the *faintly shining* lights of the houses on the distant mountain.
(a) glaring (b) kindled (c) glimmering (d) glossed (e) gilded
4. The situation of government schools is *saddening*.
(a) dismal (b) incensing (c) glowering (d) gilded (e) lackluster
5. She *decorated* her doll's clothes with sequins and stars.
(a) limned (b) dilated (c) gloated (d) embellished (e) sojourned
6. They talked about *ordinary, everyday* matters.
(a) diurnal (b) arabesque (c) smothering (d) dilated (e) quotidian
7. The stream that ran through the village was *so clear that you could see the pebbles lying at its bottom*.
(a) lucid (b) pellucid (c) immaculate (d) celestial (e) glossy
8. Her remarks *made him extremely angry*.
(a) aroused his candor (b) made him glare (c) incensed him (d) kindled him (e) imputed him
9. The *harsh light* of the car coming from the other side blinded him for a moment.
(a) gloaming (b) glimmer (c) incense (d) incandescence (e) glare
10. They created *a noisy situation* at the bus stop.
(a) a lucubration (b) a babble (c) a sojourn (d) a ruckus (e) an adjournment

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (d) 6. (e) 7. (b) 8. (c) 9. (e) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Active during the day: D_____
2. To overlook: G_____
3. Decorated richly with patterns of flowers, leaves and geometric figures: A_____
4. With not a single spot or stain or mistake: I_____
5. A person who has achieved eminence in a specific field: L_____
6. A temporary stay: S_____
7. Mid-day: M_____
8. Elevate to godhood: D_____
9. To look at something with an evil smile on one's face: G_____
10. To suffocate: S_____
11. A flowing robe worn above the other clothes by male citizens in ancient Rome: T_____
12. A person who deliberately sets something on fire: I_____
13. Covered with gold or gold-colored layer: G_____
14. Honesty: C_____

Answers:

diurnal, gloss over, arabesque, immaculate, luminary, sojourn, meridian, deify, gloat, smother, toga, incendiary, gilded, candour

Fulgere, ardere, kaustos, calor, fervere, bulla, ters-, umbra, nekw-t-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. She was *highly enthusiastic*.
(a) febrile (b) ebullient (c) sinister (d) arid (e) torrential
2. The earth was *hot and totally dry*.
(a) sultry (b) arid (c) bleak (d) caustic (e) abashed
3. They *stirred up* trouble by making provocative remarks against the minority community.
(a) singed (b) groused (c) ignited (d) cauterized (e) fomented
4. Her handwriting was *very stylish*.
(a) flamboyant (b) flagrant (c) refulgent (d) effulgent (e) ardent
5. He was *burnt by hot water*.
(a) ignited (b) scalded (c) scorched (d) abashed (e) singed
6. He *burst out in anger against* his rival political party.
(a) scorched (b) scalded (c) spoke ardently against (d) was bleak about (e) fulminated against
7. He made a *passionate* appeal to the people to stop fighting with each other.
(a) a flagrant (b) a flamboyant (c) an ardent (d) an arid (e) an effervescent
8. He *belittled* her hard work.
(a) denigrated (b) interred (c) disinterred (d) abashed (e) was somber about
9. Her leg-pulling *irritated* him.
(a) chafed (b) cauterized (c) singed (d) scorched (e) abashed
10. He was *just not bothered* about the bad law and order situation.
(a) fervid (b) effervescent (c) nonchalant (d) scalding (e) chafed

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (e) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A huge vessel used for boiling water etc : C _____
2. The darkest part of a shadow: U _____
3. Shining brightly: R _____
4. The time of the year when the day and night are of equal length: E _____
5. To dig out from the ground: D _____
6. Bars of metal: B _____
7. The act of setting things on fire: A _____
8. A soup bowl: T _____
9. Large scale destruction by fire: H _____
10. Soup made of beef: B _____
11. The conversion of sugars to carbon dioxide and alcohol by yeast in the absence of oxygen: F _____
12. A great fire: C _____

Answers:

cauldron, umbra, refulgent, equinox, disinter, bullion, arson, tureen, holocaust, bouillon, fermentation, conflagration

ONESELF AND THE OTHERS

Latin *ego* **I**

The English word ‘I’ is a cousin of ‘ego.’ The following words have ‘ego’ in them:

Egoist²⁰⁰⁵, **egotist**²⁰⁰⁶, **egocentric**²⁰⁰⁷, **alter ego**²⁰⁰⁸

Read this adaptation of Russian writer Ivan Turgenev’s short story ‘The **Egoist**.’ It tells the life story of a man who thought he was the centre of the world.

“He had been born healthy, he had been born rich and during the whole course of his long life, he remained healthy and rich.

He never committed a single crime; he never made a single slip of the tongue; he never told a single lie. At least he believed so.

Since he believed that his own self was so **exemplary**, he was genuinely **indignant** if others did not salute it too. Not being conscious of a single failing in himself, he did not understand, he did not permit, a weakness in any one else.

He looked at himself in the mirror often and in a firm, clear voice said: “Yes. I am a good man, unlike most others!

He lived in this self-satisfied manner and one day, died. All his life, he had not understood a single person because he had been completely surrounded by himself on all sides, above and below, behind and before.”

IE *s(w)e-* **self**

The English word ‘self’ and the Sanskrit word *swayam* are both descendants of this root. Both mean the same.

²⁰⁰⁵ **Egoist:** (n) self- centered person.

²⁰⁰⁶ **Egotist:** (n) a person who thinks he is God’s gift to mankind; a self-centred person.

☐ “As each man is to himself the most important thing in the world, each man is an **egotist** in his thoughts, in his desires, in his fears. It does not, however, follow that each man must be an **egotist**—as the word is popularly understood—in his speech.” Hamilton Wright Mabie

²⁰⁰⁷ **Egocentric:** (n) self-centered person

☐ After her neighbour aunty had gone away, Sumi rolled her eyes and said to her mother, “What an **egocentric** she is! Does she ever talk about anyone other than herself?”

²⁰⁰⁸ **Alter ego:** (n) a person who is exactly like oneself, either in terms of characteristics, or in terms of rank and responsibility.

Origin: L *alter*, other + *ego*, I => ‘the other me’

Being by ourselves means being alone. The Latin word *solus*, which is from this IE root, means ‘by (one) self, alone.’ A ‘solo’ performance is given by one artist alone. The ‘sole’ reason for visiting one’s grandmother is the only reason for doing so. A ‘solitaire’ is a card game that can be played by one person, or it is a single diamond set into an ornament.



The gate of the big village house opened. The old woman sitting on a cot in the courtyard turned to see who had come. “Swyam!” She got up with **alacrity**²⁰⁰⁹, put on her chappals and rushed to her 14-year-old grandson. He touched her feet in greeting. She blessed him, kissed him and asked how had he come so suddenly?

“I’ve come here for my summer vacation, *daadi*,” Swyam said.

“Really? And you’ve come alone!” She was impressed. “My little boy has grown up!” She beamed and patted his head. “But I could not have imagined!”

“Yes *daadi*. I’ve always been so **sullen**²⁰¹⁰ about coming here, haven’t I? I was a child then. I only worried that my friends would call me a **rustic** if they discovered that I belong to a village. I never thought about your **solitude**²⁰¹¹. This time, I am going to stay with you for the whole month.”

Daadi was just so happy! “My grandson has come to end my **desolation**²⁰¹²,” she ran to tell the women in her neighbourhood. “He cares so much for me! See! My family cares for me!” She felt so rich, so loved!



To repeat, being with your self means being alone, away from the crowd. Therefore, the prefix *se-* means ‘apart, without.’ For example, the word *secure* means ‘without cares’ (Latin *cura*, care).

Now, the IE ‘s’ always disappears in Greek. So, the Greek root in the family is *ethnos*, meaning ‘people like one’s own self.’ It is found in the words **ethnic**²⁰¹³, **ethnology**²⁰¹⁴ and **ethos**²⁰¹⁵.

²⁰⁰⁹ **Alacrity:** (n) speed; cheerful promptness.

- ❑ Mita was considering applying to Oxford for her Masters but was not sure about how much scholarship she could get. She sent a query mail to the Admissions Office of the department she was considering, and was pleasantly surprised when the Admissions Office replied to her mail with **alacrity**. She got a detailed and personalized answer within five hours of sending her question.

²⁰¹⁰ **Sullen:** (adj) looking silent or reserved because of anger, irritation or bad mood.

Origin: L *solus*, by oneself

- ❑ From the **sullen** look of his mother, Rajiv knew that she was still angry with him. “My dearest ma!” He tried to talk to her but she kept cutting the vegetables without even looking up.

²⁰¹¹ **Solitude:** (n) aloneness; a place with hardly any humans.

Origin: L *solus*, alone

²⁰¹² **Desolation:** (n) loneliness; devastation, ruin.

Origin: L *de-*, + *solare*, to make lonely => ‘to make lonely’

- ❑ The movie had a song which lamented the destruction and **desolation** brought about by wars.
- ❑ Cemeteries look **desolate**.

²⁰¹³ **Ethnic:** (adj) related to a group of people with common religion, culture, language, etc., who are simultaneously distinct from all other population groups on these parameters.

Origin: Gk *ethnos*, people

- ❑ **Ethnic** tensions suddenly broke out in the state when within 10 days, five tribals were killed over **petty** reasons by unknown **assailants**.
- ❑ **ethnic** jewellery, **ethnic** clothes

²⁰¹⁴ **Ethnology:** (n) a study of human cultures, with emphasis on how they originated and their similarities and dissimilarities with each other.

Origin: Gk *ethnos*, people + *-ology*, study

²⁰¹⁵ **Ethos:** (n) the fundamental belief system or character of an **ethnic** group.

Origin: Gk *ethnos*, people => ‘the customs and habits of a particular group of people’

- ❑ Family is a greatly valued institution in the Indian **ethos**.

Latin *privus* **single, alone**

What do you call something which is yours alone?

‘Private’. Similarly, a right or advantage that is enjoyed by you alone is called a ‘privilege’. The word **privy**²⁰¹⁶ developed from ‘private’.

What do you call the act of taking somebody’s private possessions away?

‘Deprivation’. The resulting state of deprivation is also called **privation**²⁰¹⁷ (deprivation minus the ‘de’).

Latin *proprius* **one’s own**

“Bimal, did you see that?” Old Lalita *mausi*—who was visiting her nephew—exclaimed. “Did you just see your daughter jump merrily into that boy’s car—in the front seat!—and shake hands and go away with him?”

“He is her friend, *mausi*. I know him. It’s all right.” Her middle-aged nephew calmly replied, without even looking up from his newspaper.

“How can it be all right? A young girl **cavorting**²⁰¹⁸ with a young boy under the very eyes of her father! And the father being so **phlegmatic** about it!” The old village woman’s sense of **propriety**²⁰¹⁹ was scandalized. “This city culture is really very shameless!”

The Latin root *proprius* is derived from the Latin phrase ‘*pro privo*’ which means ‘for the individual.’ The most obvious word from *proprius* is of course proper. Notice that the word ‘proper’ is used in two senses. One, the sense of ‘what is fit, acceptable or right.’ This is the meaning which Lalita *mausi* has in mind when she tells Bimal ji’s daughter to behave ‘properly’. The word **propriety** too developed from this sense.

The other sense of proper is ‘belonging to an individual.’ Your name is a ‘proper’ noun because it belongs to you. The possessions that you have are your ‘property’. The owner of property is called a **proprietor**²⁰²⁰. And, to make something your property is to **appropriate**²⁰²¹ or **expropriate**²⁰²² it.

²⁰¹⁶ **Privy**: (adj) private; in the knowledge of or a participant in a private, secret matter.

Origin: L *privus*, private

- ❑ Harry Potter’s eager fans said that they were jealous of the employees of Bloomsbury, the publisher of the Harry Potter books. Those lucky people were **privy** to the contents of each book so much before the general public.
- ❑ The newspaper report read: ‘a source **privy** to the internal discussions at the ministry has told us that...’

²⁰¹⁷ **Privation**: (n) deprivation; hardship.

Origin: L *privare*, to take away

- ❑ The heroine of Tagore’s novel ‘*Binodini*’ is a widow. She rebels against the unjust **privations** to which as a widow she is **condemned** for life and **asserts** her right to love and happiness.

²⁰¹⁸ **Cavort**: (v) to move or jump about playfully.

²⁰¹⁹ **Propriety**: (n) proper conduct; appropriateness.

Origin: L *proprius*, proper.

²⁰²⁰ **Proprietary**: (adj) related with property or ownership of property.

Origin: L *proprius*, one’s own

- ❑ “Isn’t that a view worth looking at?” said the young man with a loving, **proprietary** pride as he showed the roof-top of his new house to his friend. “Nice and far from all the crowds and the noise, isn’t it?”

²⁰²¹ **Appropriate**: (v) to set aside as somebody’s or something’s share; to take or use for oneself.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *proprius*, one’s own => ‘to make one’s own’

- ❑ After a great fight with his elder brother, the young boy finally regained the two chocolates that were **appropriated** to him and that had been snatched away by the older boy.
- ❑ She **appropriated** a large portion of her salary to her own use and contributed only a little part to the family fund.
- ❑ The clerk was suspended on the charges of **misappropriation** of funds.

Misappropriate: (v) to take for oneself illegally or wrongfully.

²⁰²² **Expropriate**: (v) to take property of someone by the exercise of state authority.



“Dear me!” Mrs Laxmi Chopra stared at the man who had rung her door bell. “Is that Rishabh Agarwal?”

“At your service, ma’am,” smiled Mr Agarwal and made a mock-bow. She clapped her hands in delight. She was seeing her best friend after 10 years! “Oh, come in! Come in! After so long!” She chirped and led him in.

Rishabh closed the door behind him. Laxmi was surprised at the **dilemma**²⁰²³ this innocent action put her into.

He was the same Rishu with whom she used to be so frank in college. They used to zip through the city on Rishu’s bike. They went for evening **strolls**²⁰²⁴. They sat talking together for hours. They had shared all their secrets, had never felt the need of any other friend, had never felt self-conscious about their friendship even when their classmates teased them about it. And yet, now she was debating whether there would be any **impropriety**²⁰²⁵ in meeting him with the doors closed! How the times had changed! She had become a typical married woman, worrying about what the neighbours or her husband may say if they came in just then!

Rishabh, who was not yet married himself, remained totally **oblivious** of her **quandary**²⁰²⁶ and found nothing **amiss** with her suggestion that they go and chat over coffee in a café. She took him to a café far away from her neighbourhood.

IE *sem-* **one, together with**

Ai mere hamsafar, ik zara intzaar...

Thus sing the **earnest**²⁰²⁷ lovers in *Qayamat Se Qayamat Tak*. But, who is your *hamsafar*? He or she is the person who will be ‘together (with you) in the journey (of life)’. In the same fashion, you can get to the meaning of other *ham-* words. Your *hamdard* is the person who is together with you in your pain; your *hamkhyaal* has the same ideas or views as you; your *hammazhab* shares your religion, and your *hamnaam*, your name. A very poetic word for neighbour is *hamsaaya*. And then, of course, is the *hamshakl* whom you have never found but whom the heroes and heroines in Bollywood movies and television serials seem to find with such ease and regularity!

Are you looking at the root in the heading and wondering why I am going on about *ham-* when I should be talking about *sem-*? Well, *ham-* belongs to the family. Remember that the IE ‘s’ changes into ‘h’ in Greek and Persian.

The word ‘Sanskrit’ itself is derived from this root! It is a compound of *sam-* and (*s*)*kar-*, ‘to do, make’ and so *sam-skrta* means ‘put together, completely formed, refined.’ Sanskrit always prided itself as the ‘sophisticated language’, the language of the scholars, and totally dissociated itself from the language of the masses by giving it a different name altogether- Prakrit.

Sanskrit **abounds** in words beginning with the prefix *sam-*. A few examples are *sambahu* or *sambhuj*, meaning ‘equilateral’, *samdarshi*, **equitable**²⁰²⁸, *samkalin*, **contemporary** and *samlingi*, homosexual.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *proprius*, one’s own => ‘to separate from one’s own.’

□ The government **expropriated** the agricultural land of village Saanar to build a car factory.

²⁰²³ **Dilemma:** (n) indecisiveness about what to choose in a situation when choosing one excludes all other options.

□ Sheena was in a **dilemma** about whether she ought to do MS or MBA.

²⁰²⁴ **Stroll:** (n) a casual, leisurely walk; (v) to walk in a casual, leisurely manner.

²⁰²⁵ **Impropriety:** (n) improper conduct; inappropriateness.

²⁰²⁶ **Quandary:** (n) **dilemma**

□ He was in a **quandary** whether to go for masters or take the well-paying MNC job he had been offered.

²⁰²⁷ **Earnest:** (adj) sincere; serious.

□ The two lovers were discussing about what to do now that both their families had disapproved of their desire to marry each other. “Let’s get married,” the boy said with a twinkle in his eye. “No **levity**, Jai!” Sia responded. “This is a serious matter.” “This is not **levity** Sia,” Jai said. “I am speaking in **earnest**.”

²⁰²⁸ **Equitable:** (adj) just, impartial, fair; (n) **equity**.

Now, have a look at the words in modern English from this family.

Sem-1: same, similar, **simile**²⁰²⁹

Sem-2: **simulate**²⁰³⁰, **assimilate**²⁰³¹, **dissimulate**²⁰³²

Sem-3: **semblance**²⁰³³, **dissemble**²⁰³⁴, **facsimile**²⁰³⁵

Origin: L *aequus*, equal, even

- ❑ That the legal system is **equitable** was established when the son of a minister was sentenced to life imprisonment for murdering a servant girl.
- ❑ Law is based on the principle of **equity**—it treats all citizens exactly alike and punishments are decided strictly on the basis of what a convict did, with no **heed** paid to who he is.

The opposite of **equity** is **inequity**.

Inequity: (n) partiality, unfairness

- ❑ After Independence, the government of India took determined steps to remove social **inequities** based on gender or caste.

²⁰²⁹ **Simile:** (n) a statement that compares two unsimilar things usually using the words ‘as’ or ‘like’.

Origin: L *similis*, like

- ❑ ‘As white as snow’ and ‘as busy as a bee’ are both **similies**.

²⁰³⁰ **Simulate:** (v) to create a likeness of; to pretend.

Origin: L *similis*, like => ‘to make like something’

- ❑ The scientists are trying to **simulate** in the laboratory the conditions that existed just after the Big Bang.
- ❑ The teacher’s boring and ill-prepared lectures failed to stimulate me. Yet, I had to **simulate** interest because I was a front-bencher and wanted to be in her good books so as to get good marks in the internal assessment.

²⁰³¹ **Assimilate:** (v) absorb

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *similis*, like => ‘to take towards likeness’ => ‘to make like the others’

- ❑ People who migrate to a new country take time, sometimes spanning generations, to **assimilate** the culture and traditions of that country. Similarly, that country takes time to **assimilate** the migrants. Full **assimilation** occurs when the migrant population becomes indistinguishable from the **native** population.
- ❑ When her blushing sister told Kriya that her (the sister’s) marriage had been fixed, Kriya spent a moment or two in **assimilating** the astonishing news; then she broke out into excited congratulation. If she had had a more emotional **temperament**, she would have probably have kissed her sister.
- ❑ Mr Devesh Verma was a popular lecturer. He had the merit of knowing how to **assimilate** the ideas of other men, and to pass them on in a way which was **intelligible** and interesting to the lay public, with a happy knack of being funny about the most unlikely objects, so that the division of a cell or the formation of a vertebrate became a highly humorous process as treated by him.

²⁰³² **Dissimulate:** (v) to disguise, to hide under a false appearance.

Origin: L *dis-* + *similis*, like => ‘to make unlike something’

- ❑ She **dissimulated** her nervousness with a show of anger.

²⁰³³ **Semblance:** (n) similarity; appearance.

Origin: L *similis*, like -> *simulate*, to make like -> *sembler*, to seem like

- ❑ Walking home all alone after watching a horror film, every object before him, substance or shadow, still or moving, took the **semblance** of some fearful thing.
- ❑ Against the red curtain of sunset his dark form and outstretched arms gave him the **semblance** of a cross.

²⁰³⁴ **Dissemble:** (v) to disguise, to put on a false appearance in order to hide the real face.

Origin: L *dis-*, + *sembler*, to seem like => ‘to seem not like’ => ‘to seem different’

- ❑ “Why do we **dissemble** our feelings? Why do any of us try to do that? It’s only self-protection or false pride.” Sally Beauman, Rebecca’s Tale.

Dissemble and **dissimulate** are synonyms.

²⁰³⁵ **Facsimile:** (n) an exact copy.

Origin: L *facere*, to make + *similis*, like

- ❑ **Facsimilie** is **colloquially** known as **fax**.

Sem-4: **sempiternal**, **simultaneous**²⁰³⁶, **ensemble**²⁰³⁷

Sem-5: **homogenize**²⁰³⁸, **homily**²⁰³⁹, **anomalous**²⁰⁴⁰

Greek *allos* **Latin** *alius, alter* **other**

Nandan Sen's wife opened the door and a crowd of reporters **barge**²⁰⁴¹ in. **Addled**²⁰⁴², she told them that they had come to a wrong address. They said they had not; this was where Mr **Altruist**²⁰⁴³, who had just won an international literary prize of 50,000 dollars, lived.

Mr Altruist? No, it could not be; her husband was a **subaltern**²⁰⁴⁴ in the army. She was still telling them that when her husband came out, smiled at her, went to the reporters, asked them to sit down and started tackling their questions.

²⁰³⁶ **Simultaneous**: (adj) happening at the same time.

Origin: L *similis*, like -> *simul*, 'at like time' => 'at same time'

❑ The friends smiled when both of them said the same thing **simultaneously**.

²⁰³⁷ **Ensemble**: (n) the whole made by the coordination of many individual components.

Origin: L *in-* + *simul*, at the same time => 'different parts acting at the same time in coordination'

❑ The song '*mile sur mera tumhara*' is an **ensemble** of the finest musicians of late twentieth century India. This means that this song is the product of coordination and collaboration between many musicians.

❑ A bride's wedding **ensemble** means her wedding costume. An **ensemble** is a coordinated costume.

²⁰³⁸ **Homogenize**: (v) to make the composition same throughout.

Origin: Gk *homo*, same + *genos*, kind

❑ Put a spoon of sugar in a glass of water. You will find that you can **homogenize** the sugar by stirring.

❑ Sand can never be **homogenized** in water.

❑ A mixture whose composition is same throughout is called **homogeneous**.

²⁰³⁹ **Homily**: (n) a moral lecture; an inspirational saying.

Origin: Gk *homou*, together -> *homilos*, crowd -> 'gathering' -> 'a lecture to a gathering'

❑ In his New Year's **homily**, the priest called upon the **congregation** to take more responsibility for what happened around them instead of merely blaming the government and the police.

²⁰⁴⁰ **Anomalous**: (adj) out of the normal, inconsistent; (n) **anomaly**.

Origin: Gk *homos*, same -> *homalos*, balanced. So, Gk *an-*, not + *homalos*, balanced => 'unbalanced, uneven' => 'irregular'

❑ A girl clad in a mini skirt would look **anomalous** in an Indian village, just as a dhoti-clad man wearing only a vest on his chest and a **rustic** turban on his head would be an **anomaly** in a mall.

❑ "An **anomaly** which often struck me in the character of my friend Sherlock Holmes was that, although in his methods of thought he was the neatest and most methodical of mankind, and although he also **affected** a certain quiet **primness** of dress, he was nonetheless in his personal habits one of the most untidy men that ever drove a fellow-lodger to distraction." Dr Watson in A Musgrave Ritual

Prim: (adj) formally proper and neat.

²⁰⁴¹ **Barge**: (v) (+in/ into) to enter rudely; (n) a large flatbottom boat which needs to be towed by a ship or towed because it is unpropelled and which is used either to transport cargo or for pleasure rides.

❑ Becoming aware of a great **barge** advancing toward him, the fisherman guided his boat aside.

²⁰⁴² **Addle**: (v) to confuse; to become confused; to rot.

❑ His brain was **addled** by cocaine.

❑ '**Addled** eggs' means 'rotten eggs.'

A similar word is **muddled**. **Addled** means 'showing mental confusion'; **muddled** is anything confused or in a mess.

²⁰⁴³ **Altruist**: (n) a person who is concerned more about the welfare of others than his own personal good.

Origin: L *alter*, other

❑ The dying man **altruistically** decided to donate his cornea, heart and liver upon death.

❑ Organ donation is an **altruistic** action.

²⁰⁴⁴ **Subaltern**: (n) a rank of the British army just below the rank of captain; a subordinate.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *alternus*, alternate

So...he had, indeed, been writing all these years...*so many* years...under the **alias**²⁰⁴⁵ ‘Mr Altruist’...and she had not even known! She felt bitter, betrayed.

‘Mr Altruist’ told the reporters that he would set up a primary school in his village with the prize money. *Hah!* She thought in rage...caring for the whole world...for everyone except his wife, keeping secrets from her, and she...she had so foolishly tried to think what he thought, like what he liked, dislike what he disliked...had tried to be his **alter ego**...*hah!*

Their **altercation**²⁰⁴⁶ that evening was much worse than usual.

Three months later...

Nandan Sen was found dead in his room, with a stab in his stomach and a knife close by.

His wife had an **irrefutable**²⁰⁴⁷ **alibi**²⁰⁴⁸. She had been visiting her parents, a hundred kilometres away, and had come back only upon hearing the dreadful news. He had been alone for the last two days, the gatekeeper **vouched** for that. Nothing was missing from the house either. In the absence of any **alternative**²⁰⁴⁹ explanation, the police decided that he had killed himself.

His wife *knew* he had. That was all that that **craven** man could do, she thought. He only knew how to run away. Not once had he tried to **alter**²⁰⁵⁰ the situation. Not once had he tried to find out what had actually **alienated**²⁰⁵¹ her from him. Instead, he had accused her of having an **adulterous**²⁰⁵² relationship with their neighbour! It was this last charge

²⁰⁴⁵ **Alias:** (n) the other name of a person.

Origin: L *alius*, other

- ❑ When the police reports a criminal’s name as Rajesh Kumar **alias** Goli **alias** Bittu, it means that the man named Rajesh Kumar has also been known as Goli and Bittu.

²⁰⁴⁶ **Altercation:** (n) heated dispute.

Origin: L *alter*, other => ‘to fight with another’

- ❑ The two slum women **altercated** over whose turn it was to wash the clothes at the common municipal tap. Such **altercations** are a common feature of the slum life.

²⁰⁴⁷ **Irrefutable:** (adj) that which cannot be proved wrong or denied.

²⁰⁴⁸ **Alibi:** (n) a defense given by an accused that he was at another place when the crime in question was committed.

Origin: L *alibi*, at another place

²⁰⁴⁹ **Alternative:** (n) a choice between two things where you can take either one or the other; either of the two things which are offered as a choice.

Origin: L *alter*, other

- ❑ He had the **alternative** of facing an inquiry or leaving the job.
- ❑ The **alternative** to facing an inquiry was leaving the job.
- ❑ He chose to face the inquiry and told the investigation committee that he had had no **alternative** but to do what he did.

²⁰⁵⁰ **Alter:** (v) to change.

Origin: L *alter*, other => ‘to take the other option’

²⁰⁵¹ **Alienate:** (v) to estrange, to make distant, to increase the distance.

Origin: alien + -ate

An **alien** is a stranger, a foreigner. Etymologically, it means ‘the other.’ When you **alienate** somebody, you make a stranger out of someone who was previously very near and dear to you.

Another related word is **inalienable**. It means ‘that which cannot be taken away from you, which cannot be transferred to anybody else.’

- ❑ The right to freedom is an **inalienable** right of every citizen of India.
- ❑ “Accept certain **inalienable** truths: Prices will rise. Politicians will philander. You, too, will get old. And when you do, you’ll fantasize that when you were young, prices were reasonable, politicians were noble and children respected their elders.” Kurt Vonnegut

²⁰⁵² **Adulterous:** (adj) having extra-marital affairs; (n) **adultery**.

Origin: L *ad alterum* => ‘going towards another (unlawfully)’

- ❑ All religions regard **adultery** as a sin.

that had finished their marriage. She had immediately packed her bags and left for her parents' home. But this that he had done behind her was even more **deplorable**²⁰⁵³. She never forgave him for his suicide.

IE sol- whole

'Solid' means whole, that is, with no internal cavity. To 'consolidate' an empire is to bring all its fragments together into a united whole. **Solder**²⁰⁵⁴ and **solidarity**²⁰⁵⁵ are the other 'solid' words.

Then, we come to the Latin root *sollus* which means 'whole.' It is the parent of:

Solicit²⁰⁵⁶, **solicitous**²⁰⁵⁷, **solicitude**²⁰⁵⁸, **insouciant**²⁰⁵⁹, **solemn**²⁰⁶⁰

²⁰⁵³ **Deplore:** (v) to criticize very strongly; to feel grief or regret over something.

Origin: L *de-*, + *plorare*, to cry, weep

❑ The educationist **deplored** the **apathy** of the government towards education. He said that the government schools, which were the only avenue of education for the poor, were in a state of great neglect all over the country.

The other words from the root *plorare* are 'explore' and '**implore**.' As per its etymology, the word 'explore' means 'to cry out.' This word was initially used by hunters whenever they saw new game. Later on, the word started being used in the sense of 'going in search of something.'

Implore: (v) to beg for something.

Origin: L *im-*, upon + *plorare*, to cry

❑ As soon as her brother entered the park, Neha ran up to him and hugging him, started crying. The surprised boy seated her on a nearby bench and asked her what had happened. When, instead of replying, she started crying even more, he grew worried and said, "Neha, Neha, what is the matter? Please tell me! I **implore** you to tell me what the matter is!"

²⁰⁵⁴ **Solder:** (n) an alloy which is applied in molten state to two metallic objects in order to join them; (v) to join things with a solder.

Origin: L *solidus*, solid -> *solidare*, to make solid

²⁰⁵⁵ **Solidarity:** (n) oneness of a group.

Origin: L *solidus*, solid, whole, one

❑ People lit candles at the India Gate to show their **solidarity** to the soldiers who were fighting on the border.

²⁰⁵⁶ **Solicit:** (v) to ask for.

Origin: L *sollus*, whole + *citus*, roused into action

❑ The boss **solicited** his employee's views on the company performance and how to improve it.

²⁰⁵⁷ **Solicitous:** (adj) anxious, showing concern or care.

❑ The wife saw that the husband was being extra **solicitous** to her since the morning, going even as far as suggesting that they would order food from outside if she was too tired to cook it. Finally in the evening, she said, "Come on, out with it. What is it you want me to do?" He acted innocent as if he didn't understand the question but finally, after some insistence, told her that his aunt from the village was coming to stay with them for a month.

²⁰⁵⁸ **Solicitude:** (n) anxiety, concern.

❑ Mr Prem Prakash had been brought up, from infancy to the confines of middle age, by a fond mother whose chief **solicitude** had been to keep her fatherless son screened from what she called the coarser realities of life.

❑ Ramia came home after a busy day in office. Her mother-in-law said with **solicitude**, "You must be very tired. Go and have some rest. I'll send Chhotu with tea in your room."

²⁰⁵⁹ **Insouciant:** (adj) carefree, unworried; (n) **insouciance**.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *solicitare*, to disturb => 'undisturbed'

❑ Despite repeated pleas by the citizens, the municipal authorities remained **insouciant** and the potholes on the roads continued to get bigger.

❑ Shivi was visiting her aunt, uncle and their daughter, Mini, who was the same age as her. Tea was brought in, along with a plate having five pieces of cake, and four small plates. The maid handed over a plate to each of them and then served the cake. "Two please," Shivi said. Her aunt **glared** at her. Shivi did not seem to notice and happily declared, "I just love cakes!" "Won't you have mine?" her aunt asked sarcastically. "Oh, thanks!" Shivi replied in delight and with the same **insouciance**, helped herself to her aunt's cake also, adding as an afterthought: "If you're sure you don't want it."

²⁰⁶⁰ **Solemn:** (adj) serious, sincere, related with religion.

Origin: L *solus*, whole

❑ The **solemn** and sad faces of his family members immediately told Raj that something bad had happened.

❑ She made a **solemn** promise to her mother that she would never do anything to hurt her.

❑ The priest **solemnized** the marriage.

The Latin root *salvus* means ‘whole, unbroken, uninjured, healthy.’ ‘Safe’ and ‘save’ are *salvus* words, as are the words below:

*Salvus-1: Salvage*²⁰⁶¹, *salvation*²⁰⁶², *salvo*²⁰⁶³

*Salvus-2: salubrious*²⁰⁶⁴, *salutary*²⁰⁶⁵

Now, the IE ‘s’ changes into ‘h’ in Greek. So the Greek root belonging to this family is *holos*, meaning ‘whole’. It is found in **holocaust**, **catholic**²⁰⁶⁶, **holistic**²⁰⁶⁷ and **hologram**²⁰⁶⁸.

The IE ‘l’ remains an ‘l’ in Latin and Greek, but often becomes an ‘r’ in Sanskrit. Think of the words for ‘sun’. The Latin root is *sol-*, found in ‘solar’ and **solstice**, the Greek root is *helios*, found in ‘Helium’ or the ‘heliocentric’ theory (the theory that Sun, and not the Earth, is the centre of the universe). The corresponding Sanskrit root is *saur-*, found in *saurmandal* and *sooraj*.

Therefore, the Sanskrit **counterpart** of the Latin *sollus* and the Greek *holos* is *sarva*. *Sarvashiksha abhiyaan* is a movement to educate everybody. *Sarvsammati* means **unanimity**. *Saara* means whole.

IE *ger-* **to gather**

Solemnize: (v) to perform a marriage as per religious rites; to do something with full rites and ceremonies.

²⁰⁶¹ **Salvage:** (v) save from destruction or loss

Origin: L *salvus*, safe

❑ He ran into the burning house to **salvage** his dead wife’s photograph.

²⁰⁶² **Salvation:** (n) the act of saving from destruction or loss; deliverance from the power of sin and punishment for sin.

❑ The guru preached that the **salvation** of mankind lay in **renouncing** all material greed and devoting itself to God’s worship.

²⁰⁶³ **Salvo:** (n) a simultaneous discharge of firearms.

❑ There was a **salvo** of artillery; and the bursting of a great shell caught the enemy soldier almost full in the body, smashing his right leg and his chest.

²⁰⁶⁴ **Salubrious:** (adj) health-giving

❑ The asthmatic young man shifted out of Delhi to the more **salubrious** air of Chandigarh.

²⁰⁶⁵ **Salutary:** (adj) beneficial to health; beneficial.

Origin: L *salus*, health => ‘health-giving’

❑ People who say ‘spare the rod and spoil the child’ believe that **corporal** punishment has a **salutary** effect on children.

❑ “You said the computer would make our child smarter,” the mother complained to the teacher. “But its effect has been far from **salutary**. All my boy does these days is play games on it.”

²⁰⁶⁶ **Catholic:** (adj) having a very wide range of interests or scope; universal.

Origin: Gk *kata-*, along + *holos*, whole

❑ The young man was a **numismatist**. His range at first was **catholic**, and it was not until he had acquired 1,547 coins of various time periods that he decided to make a speciality of Sikh coins.

Numismatist: (n) coin collector

A stamp collector is called a **philatelist**.

²⁰⁶⁷ **Holistic:** (adj) concerned with the whole system and not just some parts.

Origin: Gk *holos*, whole

❑ Conventional doctors see you just as a pair of eyes or a malfunctioning heart whereas **holistic** medicine emphasizes that healing should involve the whole body as well as the mind.

❑ **Holistic** education is that which aims at teaching a child about all spheres of life and formal subject-based syllabus is only a small part of it.

²⁰⁶⁸ **Hologram:** (n) a three-dimensional image produced on a high resolution photographic plate by exposing it to the subject in monochromatic light, like that of a laser.

Origin: Gk *holos*, whole + *gramma*, writing, picture => ‘the whole picture’ => ‘three-dimensional picture.’

In Greek, the word *ageirein* meant ‘to assemble’, and the open place where everybody assembled to discuss matters or to hear the **proclamations** of their king or the council was called ‘Agora’. Because everybody **thronged**²⁰⁶⁹ the Agora, **enterprising** merchants started putting up their stalls there and with time, the word came to be used in the sense of ‘marketplace’ also.

The whole town came to shop, or **saunter**²⁰⁷⁰, in the central marketplace. So people regularly bumped into old friends or acquaintances, and when they met, they obviously talked. But, if what was on their mind was a **taboo**²⁰⁷¹ subject, they hesitated and looked around **apprehensively**. If anybody in the crowded agora heard them and reported, the **talons**²⁰⁷² of law would tear into them! So, what they did was that they pretended to talk very innocently about ‘the other things in the marketplace’, using no **incriminating**²⁰⁷³ words at all, yet getting their message across to the listener. This was the birth of **Allegory**²⁰⁷⁴.

There are more words that grew out of agora. They are:

*Agora-1: agoraphobia*²⁰⁷⁵, *categorical*²⁰⁷⁶

*Agora-2: panegyric*²⁰⁷⁷, *phantasmagoria*²⁰⁷⁸

The other root in this IE family is the Latin *grex* means ‘a gathering, a herd.’

²⁰⁶⁹ **Throng:** (v) to gather in large numbers; (n) crowd.

- ❑ Small town aspirants **throng** the auditions of MTV Roadies and other reality shows, hoping to make it big on TV.

²⁰⁷⁰ **Saunter:** (v) to walk leisurely.

- ❑ The people **sauntered** leisurely by the river side, enjoying the cool evening breeze.
- ❑ The lovers **sauntered** among flowers and sang a happy song.

²⁰⁷¹ **Taboo:** (n) something prohibited from use or practice.

- ❑ Eating beef is a **taboo** for Hindus.

²⁰⁷² **Talon:** (n) the claw of a bird or a predatory animal.

²⁰⁷³ **Incriminate:** (v) to accuse of a crime; to provide evidence of one’s involvement in a crime; (adj) **incriminating:** something that can be used to accuse a person of a crime.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *crimen*, crime

- ❑ The police **ransacked** the murder suspect’s house but found nothing which could **incriminate** him.
- ❑ The police **ransacked** the murder suspect’s house but found no **incriminating** evidence.

²⁰⁷⁴ **Allegory:** (n) a story which is actually a symbolic representation of another story.

Origin: Gk *allos*, other + *agoreuein*, to speak publicly => ‘to speak about ‘other’ things publicly’

- ❑ Some scholars opine that the Ramayana is not simply a story of Ram’s victory over Raavan but that it is an **allegory** of North India’s conquest of the south.

²⁰⁷⁵ **Agoraphobia:** (n) fear of open spaces or public spaces.

Origin: Gk *agora* + *-phobia*

²⁰⁷⁶ **Categorical:** (adj) related to a category, arranged in categories; unconditional, with no exceptions.

Origin: Gk *kata-*, against + *agorein*, to speak publicly => ‘to speak publicly against’ => ‘to classify’

- ❑ He said **categorically** that he had never taken an undeserved rupee from his customers.
- ❑ Ram: I want to come with you, but you see, if...
Radha: No if and but please! Tell me **categorically** whether you will come or not.
Ram (after an uncomfortable pause): No.

²⁰⁷⁷ **Panegyric:** (n) a speech or writing meant to praise someone publicly; a speech or writing of great praise.

Origin: Gk *pan-*, all + *agyris*, gathering => ‘meant for the gathering’

- ❑ The hero of the movie sang a **panegyric** to the heroine’s beauty: *teri aankhon ke sivaa duniaa mein rakha kya hai...*

²⁰⁷⁸ **Phantasmagoria:** (n) a series of constantly moving images.

Origin: Gk *phantasma*, image + *agora*, gathering

- ❑ Some philosophers say that the universe is nothing but a **phantasmagoria**.
- ❑ In her last moments, a **phantasmagoria** whirled in her mind—a continuous procession of figures, of memories, of places, of words, dreams, regrets and delights.

When you herd together the marks obtained in each subject, you get the **aggregate**²⁰⁷⁹ marks. A man who cannot sit by just himself and flies with **alacrity** towards any group of people that he sees is **gregarious**²⁰⁸⁰. The people who flock together for a religious ceremony are called a **congregation**²⁰⁸¹. To separate someone from the flock is to **segregate**²⁰⁸² him and an act that makes one stand out of the flock is **egregious**²⁰⁸³.

²⁰⁷⁹ **Aggregate:** (adj) total

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *grex*, crowd => to bring all elements together

- ❑ **Aggregate** marks, **aggregate** profit

²⁰⁸⁰ **Gregarious:** (adj) crowd loving.

Origin: L *grex*, crowd

- ❑ The **gregarious** woman found it traumatic to spend a whole week without talking to or meeting anybody.
- ❑ **Gregarious** birds or **gregarious** animals are those which live together with others of the same species in large groups.

²⁰⁸¹ **Congregation:** (n) religious gathering.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *grex*, crowd => 'to gather together'

- ❑ After the prayers, *prasad* was distributed to the whole **congregation**.

²⁰⁸² **Segregate:** (v) to separate from the flock or the main body.

Origin: L *se-*, apart + *grex*, flock

- ❑ In some parts of the country, the people from the lower castes still face social **segregation** and are not allowed to sit or eat with the other people.
- ❑ Kitchen waste should be **segregated** from the household garbage and composted in pits.

²⁰⁸³ **Egregious:** (adj) outstandingly bad.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *grex*, flock => 'out of the flock'

- ❑ The bread-winning husband often taunted his wife that looking after the house was hardly difficult; anybody could do it. One Sunday morning, she challenged him to prove his claim. He took it up with **alacrity**. By dinner time, however, he admitted with an embarrassed smile, that his housekeeping was **egregious** and that he had learnt to respect his wife for the wonderful ease with which she managed everything. Define: alacrity
- ❑ **Egregious** mistake, **egregious** liar, **egregious** flirt

Exercise

Ego, s(w)e-, privus, proprius, sem-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. She *was confused* about whether to do Masters or accept her job offer.
(a) egotistic (b) in privation (c) anomalous (d) dissimulated (e) in a quandary
2. The builder bought *an area where no one ever went* and built a swank new mall there.
(a) a dissembled area (b) a desolated area (c) an anomalous area (d) a prim area (e) a misappropriated area
3. He did the work with *great speed*.
(a) dissimulation (b) primness (c) earnestness (d) alacrity (e) quandary
4. The two rabbits *jumped about playfully* in the garden.
(a) were sullen (b) appropriated (c) expropriated (d) cavorted (e) desolated
5. He spent his youth in hunger and *hardship*.
(a) solitude (b) privation (c) ethos (d) misappropriation (e) inequity
6. He *pretended to be angry*.
(a) used anger as a simile (b) dissimulated anger (c) simulated anger (d) assimilated anger (e) was sullen
7. He told his junior to *behave properly*.
(a) be a proprietor (b) appropriate (c) expropriate (d) show propriety (e) be appropriated
8. He *was so angry that he refused to talk to anyone*.
(a) was sullen (b) was earnest (c) was inequitable (d) was strolling (e) was desolate

Answers:

1. (e) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (d) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (d) 8. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. The whole made by the coordination of many individual components: E _____
2. A moral lecture: H _____
3. A study of the origin and inter-relations of human cultures: E _____
4. Formally proper and neat: P _____
5. The fundamental belief system of a culture: E _____
6. A person who is exactly like oneself: A _____
7. To take property of someone by the exercise of state authority: E _____
8. Something that is out of the normal order: A _____
9. A casual, leisurely walk: S _____
10. Just, impartial: E _____

Answers:

ensemble, homily, ethnology, prim, ethos, alter ego, expropriation, anomaly, stroll, equitable

Allos, alius, alter, sol-, ger-:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *loved being crowded with friends and well-wishers*.
(a) was egregious (b) was gregarious (c) was solemn (d) was inalienable (e) was insouciant

2. They had a *very heated fight*.
(a) an alibi (b) an alienation (c) a barge (d) a salvo (e) an altercation
3. The subject of sex was *prohibited from being talked about* in the village.
(a) sauntered (b) salvaged (c) solemnized (d) alienated (e) taboo
4. The mountain air had a *beneficial* impact on his health.
(a) a salutary (b) an insouciant (c) an allegorical (d) a categorical (e) an egregious
5. She thanked him for the *great care and anxiety* he had shown about her health.
(a) solicitude (b) solidarity (c) catholicity (d) solemnity (e) alienation
6. The *religious gathering* sang hymns.
(a) aggregation (b) segregation (c) congregation (d) altercation (e) solemn people
7. He was a *happy, carefree, never-taking-any-tensions* child.
(a) a holistic (b) an addled (c) a salubrious (d) a catholic (e) an insouciant
8. The beggar *saved from rotting* three pieces of bread from the garbage dump.
(a) thronged (b) segregated (c) aggregated (d) salvaged (e) solemnized
9. He *begged* her to tell him the truth.
(a) deplored (b) implored (c) addled (d) barged (e) solicited
10. The eagle held a snake in its *claws*.
(a) solders (b) barges (c) salvos (d) talons (e) throngs

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (e) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (e) 8. (d) 9. (b) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A series of constantly moving images: P_____
2. A man who has extra-marital love affairs: A_____
3. Coin collector: N_____
4. Something prohibited from use or practice: T_____
5. A simultaneous discharge of firearms: S_____
6. A speech or writing of great praise: P_____
7. Fear of open spaces: A_____
8. Oneness of a group: S_____
9. Crowd: T_____
10. A defense given by an accused that he was at another place when the crime in question was committed: A_____
11. Stamp collector: P_____
12. A person who is concerned more about the welfare of others than his own personal good: A_____
13. Outstandingly bad: E_____
14. Lack of worries or care: I_____

Answers:

phantasmagoria, adulterer, numismatist, taboo, salvo, panegyric, agoraphobia, solidarity, throng, alibi, philatelist, altruist, egregious, insouciance

PEOPLE AND THEIR GOVERNMENTS

Greek *demos* **people**

Abraham Lincoln famously defined democracy as ‘a government of the people, by the people, for the people.’ The word ‘democracy’ is made from *demos*, people, and *kratos*, rule.

The other members of the *demos* family are:

*Demos-1: demography*²⁰⁸⁴, *demotic*²⁰⁸⁵

*Demos-2: demagogue*²⁰⁸⁶, *demophobia*²⁰⁸⁷

*Demos-3: endemic*²⁰⁸⁸, *epidemic*²⁰⁸⁹, *pandemic*²⁰⁹⁰

²⁰⁸⁴ **Demography:** (n) the scientific study of human population, by collecting data regarding births, deaths, diseases, marriages etc.

Origin: Gk *demos* + *graphein* to write about.

- ❑ A few **demographic** goals of the country are reduction in the growth rate, the maternal mortality and infant mortality and an improvement in the sex ratio.

²⁰⁸⁵ **Demotic:** (adj) related with common people; common.

- ❑ With the arrival of the Kodak camera, photography became a **demotic** art, no longer the preserve of only the professionals.

²⁰⁸⁶ **Demagogue:** (n) a false leader of the people; a person who wins votes and comes to power not on the basis of the development work that he has done but by appealing to the emotions or insecurities of the people.

Origin: Gk *demos*, people + *agein*, to lead

- ❑ He called himself a democratic leader but proved to be a **demagogue** who was bent on dividing people along religious lines.

²⁰⁸⁷ **Demophobia:** (n) fear of crowds. This fear is also known as **ochlophobia**.

²⁰⁸⁸ **Endemic:** (adj) belonging to a particular group of people or to a particular place.

Origin: Gk *en-*, in + *demos*, people

- ❑ Shortage of teachers is **endemic** in all Indian institutions of higher education. Even the IITs report a 15 to 25 per cent shortfall in faculty.

²⁰⁸⁹ **Epidemic:** (n) a disease spreading rapidly within a population group or an area.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, upon + *demos*, people

- ❑ The plague **epidemic** in Surat left thousands dead.

²⁰⁹⁰ **Pandemic:** (n) a widespread disease.

Origin: Gk *pan-*, all + *demos*, people

- ❑ An **epidemic** which has spread to all population groups or all areas is called a **pandemic**.
- ❑ HIV/AIDS is a **pandemic**.

Greek *archaein* **to be the first**

Your ‘archrival’ is your Rival Number One. Then there are **archaic**²⁰⁹¹ words like ‘thee’ and ‘thou’, **archaeological**²⁰⁹² sites like Harappa and Mohenjodaro and **archetypal**²⁰⁹³ ill-fated lovers like Devdas and Majnu.

The Greek word *ptero* means ‘feather, wing.’ Notice its similarity to the Persian *par*. The one with *par* is called *pari*. Poor *ptero*, however, does not get to name such beautiful creatures. It names instead the ancient **pterodactyl**²⁰⁹⁴ and ‘archaeopteryx’ (‘the first bird’). **Paleontologists**²⁰⁹⁵ regard birds as the descendants of dinosaurs, and archaeopteryx is seen as the species where this shift took place, from the **terrestrial** dinosaurs to the aerial birds. It had the claws, head teeth, abdominal ribs and bony tail of a dinosaur, and the feathers and brain of a bird.

From the first birds, let us move to the First Citizens. India is a democracy and all citizens are equal, but the one who stands in front and leads us all, the head of the state, is the first citizen. He is the President (The President of course is only the **titular**²⁰⁹⁶ head of the state; most of the authority **vested** in him is actually exercised by the Prime Minister and his cabinet). It is the sense of being ‘the first citizen, the ruler’ that is found in the *archaein* words like:

*Archaien-1: matriarchy*²⁰⁹⁷, *patriarch*²⁰⁹⁸, *monarch*²⁰⁹⁹

²⁰⁹¹ **Archaic:** (adj) ancient, old; no longer applicable.

Origin: Gk *arkhe*, beginning => ‘belonging to the beginning stage’

- The Vedas are an example of **archaic** texts.
- The government tabled a bill to amend its **archaic** groundwater usage laws.

²⁰⁹² **Archaeology:** (n) study of ancient remains.

Origin: Gk *archein*, old + *-ology*, study

²⁰⁹³ **Archetypal:** (adj) model. An **archetype** is the first model of something, on which all future things of that type are based.

Origin: Gk *archein*, to be the first + *tupos*, model

- With his long beard and his flowing white robe, Rabindranath Tagore was for many the **archetype** of the Indian **sage**.
- Tulsi, the central character of the wildly popular television serial *Kyunki saas bhi kabhi bahu thi*, soon became the **archetype** of feminine perfection—a flawless wife, a flawless daughter-in-law and a flawless mother.
- A car-making company often first makes several physical **prototypes** of a new design in order to get right the features like cabin space, seat design, location of foot pedals, gear shift lever, mirrors, design of console, etc. which impact on driver comfort and convenience of driving.

Prototype: (n) **archetype**

Origin: Gk *protos*, first + *tupos*, model. Note that the Gk *protos* is related with the Sanskrit *pratham*. Both mean ‘first’.

²⁰⁹⁴ **Pterodactyl:** (n) extinct flying reptiles.

Origin: Gk *pteron*, wing + *daktylos*, finger => ‘organism whose wing was supported by a large finger’

²⁰⁹⁵ **Paleontology:** (n) study of fossils.

Origin: Gk *palaios*, old, ancient + *ontos*, being + *-ology*, study => ‘study of ancient beings’ => ‘study of the remains of the ancient beings’

²⁰⁹⁶ **Titular:** (adj) having a title but no powers, **nominal**.

²⁰⁹⁷ **Matriarch:** (n) the female head of a family.

Origin: Gk *mater*, mother + *archein*, to rule

- Sonia Gandhi is the **matriarch** of the Congress family.
- The animal societies of bees and elephants are **matriarchal**.
- There are no known examples of **matriarchal** societies at any time or place in human history.

²⁰⁹⁸ **Patriarch:** (n) the male head of a family.

Origin: Gk *pater*, father + *archein*, to rule

- India is a **patriarchal** society. This means, that in India, the families and consequently the social institutions are ruled by males.

²⁰⁹⁹ **Monarch:** (n) an absolute ruler, such as a king or a queen.

Origin: Gk *mono*, one + *archein*, to rule

- Akbar was a well-loved Indian **monarch**.
- A state ruled by a **monarch** is known as a **monarchy**. British India was a **monarchy**.

*Archein-2: oligarchy*²¹⁰⁰, *plutarchy*²¹⁰¹, *hierarchy*²¹⁰²
*Archein-3: anarchy*²¹⁰³, *anarchist*²¹⁰⁴, *archives*²¹⁰⁵.

Latin *regere* **to lead straight**

The one who leads, or is supposed to lead, his country onto the straight path is called a '*rajah*' in Sanskrit and '*regis*' in Latin. The words related to His Highness are:

*Regis is raja-1: regal*²¹⁰⁶, *regime*²¹⁰⁷

²¹⁰⁰ **Oligarchy:** (n) rule by a few individuals.

Origin: Gk *oligos*, few + *archein*, to rule

- ❑ Though Punjab remains a democracy **nominally**, it has actually become an **oligarchy**. It is ruled by a few extremely powerful families. Some of these families belong to the Akali Dal and others to the Congress. The voter has no choice but to vote for one or the other.

²¹⁰¹ **Plutarchy:** (n) rule by the wealthy. Also known as **plutocracy**.

Origin: Gk *ploutos*, wealth + *archein*, to rule

- ❑ India is fast becoming a **plutocracy**. Elections are increasingly being won with money power. Voters are lured with wads of money, television sets or free supplies of liquor. Journalists are paid to write favourable news. An honest candidate without money to campaign stands no chance in such a system. The system is making sure that only the rich get into the legislative bodies, and once there, they become richer and even more difficult to defeat.

²¹⁰² **Hierarchy:** (n) a group of people with authority; a categorization of power and rank.

Origin: Gk *hier*, high + *archein*, to rule => 'rule of a high priest' => 'rule of any person with authority'

- ❑ The **hierarchy** of the Indian Army is as follows:

Lieutenant < Captain < Major < Lieutenant Colonel < Colonel < Brigadier < Major General < Lieutenant General < General

²¹⁰³ **Anarchy:** (n) lawlessness, rulelessness.

Origin: Gk *an-*, no + *archein*, to rule => 'no rule'

- ❑ By the 18th century, the power of the Mughals was at an end, **anarchy** prevailed everywhere, and every local chief was in arms to win all he could from the ruins of the state.

²¹⁰⁴ **Anarchist:** (n) revolutionary; a person who seeks to overthrow a government.

- ❑ Mahatama Gandhi was an **anarchist**. He once said:

"The state evil is not the cause but the effect of social evil, just as the sea-waves are the effect not the cause of the storm. The only way of curing the disease is by removing the cause itself."

- ❑ Bhagat Singh too was an **anarchist**. He said:

"The ultimate goal of **Anarchism** is complete independence, according to which no one will be ... crazy for money ... There will be no chains on the body or control by the state. This means that they want to eliminate ... the state and the private property."

²¹⁰⁵ **Archives:** (n) collection of records and documents.

Origin: Gk *archein*, to rule -> *arkhe*, government => 'government records'

- ❑ Every issue of the newspaper, right from its start 153 years ago, is available in its **archives**.

²¹⁰⁶ **Regal:** (adj) royal

Origin: L *regis*, king

- ❑ The girl conducted herself with such a **regal** manner that everyone asked each other if she was a princess or something.
- ❑ After the death of their father, the two princes fought for the **regal** throne.

²¹⁰⁷ **Regime:** (n) rule

Origin: L *regis*, king

- ❑ India experienced some of the worst famines ever recorded, under the British **regime**.
- ❑ The leader of the opposition claimed in the Lok Sabha that the **regime** of the current government was not much different from the British rule.

*Regis is raja-2: regimen*²¹⁰⁸, *regicide*²¹⁰⁹

*Regis is raja-3: interregnum*²¹¹⁰, *regent*²¹¹¹, *realm*²¹¹²



Great anger **surged**²¹¹³ among the peasants of Zhaq when Rajan, their luxury-loving king, **levied** a fresh tax on them. “We will not pay it!” they shouted in **unison**. On hearing that news, the king **snarled**²¹¹⁴ that they should be shown their place.

“Rip off their skin,” he thundered. “**Flog**²¹¹⁵ them to death! Not a single **insurgent**²¹¹⁶ should be spared.”

“Sir, will strict action be wise?” The Chief Minister, who was himself (secretly) unhappy about the new tax, asked.

²¹⁰⁸ **Regimen:** (n) a system marked by strict rules.

Origin: from **regime**

- ❑ The famous model shared her beauty and hair-care **regimen** with the journalist.
- ❑ The overweight boy **diligently** followed the dietary and exercise **regimen** prescribed by his gym instructor. He really wanted to be fit before his 20th birthday.

²¹⁰⁹ **Regicide:** (n) killing of the king.

Origin: L *regis*, king + *-cide*, to kill

- ❑ The whole world was shocked when in 2001, Nepal’s Crown Prince Dipendra killed his father—the king, his mother, his sister, his younger brother and then himself in a drunken rage at a family dinner. The entire royal family was wiped off in a few minutes. The reason behind the **regicide** was said to be the queen’s staunch opposition to Dipendra’s choice of his bride.

²¹¹⁰ **Interregnum:** (n) period between successive governments.

Origin: L *inter-*, between + *regnum*, rule

- ❑ The Mughal dynasty ruled India from 1526 to 1857, with a brief **interregnum** from 1540 to 1555, in which Sher Shah Suri ruled. However, Suri’s untimely death and the **ensuing** military **chaos** enabled Humayun to get back his throne in 1555.
- ❑ The kingship in Poland was not hereditary. Rather, the Polish people elected their kings. So, when a king died, there was an **interregnum** while the next king was decided. During this period, the Polish Prime Minister served as an interrex.

²¹¹¹ **Regent:** (n) a person who rules a kingdom as a temporary substitute.

Origin: L *regere*, to rule

- ❑ The Polish Prime Minister above acts as a **regent**.
- ❑ When the Mughal emperor Humayun died, his eldest son Akbar was only 13 years old. So, Akbar was proclaimed the Emperor under the **regency** of Bairam Khan, a trusted **lieutenant** of Humayun. Bairam Khan remained the **regent** for four years after which Akbar assumed all the powers himself.

²¹¹² **Realm:** (n) kingdom; a field or sphere of activity.

Origin: L *regere*, to rule

- ❑ After Aurangzeb’s death in 1707, the **realm** of the Mughals constantly shrank.
- ❑ In the **realm** of architecture, Mughals left their unique mark. The Mughal monuments are marveled at even today, the most outstanding example being the Taj Mahal of Agra.

²¹¹³ **Surge:** (n) a strong, sweeping forward movement; (v) to move forward like a strong, sweeping wave.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *regere*, to lead straight => ‘to lead straight from under’ => ‘to rise up’

- ❑ A very strong sea **surge** flooded some sea-adjoining roads in Mumbai.
- ❑ The blood roared and **surged** to his head as though thousands of floodgates had been opened in his veins and arteries, and his brain was the common sluice in which all the torrents met.

²¹¹⁴ **Snarl:** (v) to say something in a very angry or threatening manner by baring one’s upper teeth.

²¹¹⁵ **Flog:** (v) to beat with a whip or a stick.

- ❑ The Taliban **flogged** a 17-year-old girl 100 times in a public square for being seen with a man.

A related word is **flay**, which means ‘to whip, to strip off the outer skin of.’

- ❑ The drunkard **flayed** his helpless wife as their three children **cowered**.

²¹¹⁶ **Insurgent:** (n) rebel

Origin: L *in-* + *surge* + *-ent* => ‘a person who rises up against the authorities’

“Of course!” roared the king. “If those fools have the **audacity** to rebel, they must pay its price. What did they think? That they will croak and I will **quail**²¹¹⁷? No minister, they are mistaken! I will **quash**²¹¹⁸ this **insurrection**²¹¹⁹ of theirs. I will teach them a lesson that they, and the others, will not forget in 10 lifetimes.”

The police was **bestial**²¹²⁰ to the peasants. They killed 300 with their sticks and kicks, and **tethered** another 100 to their horses, and dragged them till each of them was dead.

Such extraordinary violence **outraged** the whole kingdom. Everybody rushed out into the streets. The police, the army tried to stop them, to hold them back, but the angry mob just rolled over them and **surged** towards the royal palace. When they found that the king had already escaped, they burnt the palace in frustration.



²¹¹⁷ **Quail:** (v) to shake with fear.

□ He had maintained a brave front in front of the 10 *goondaas*, but inwardly he **quailed**.

²¹¹⁸ **Quash:** (v) to crush; to suppress completely; to declare null and void.

□ On the plea of insufficient evidence, the High Court **quashed** the case against the son of a minister who had been accused of killing three people. The Supreme Court, however, **quashed** the judgment of the High Court.

²¹¹⁹ **Insurrection:** (n) open rebellion against the authorities or the government.

Origin: from **insurgent**.

²¹²⁰ **Bestial:** (adj) beast-like

The root *regere* can tell you stories of not only such **maladroit**²¹²¹ kings as Rajan but also of **adroit**²¹²² swordsmen, **incorrigible**²¹²³ drunkards, **corrigenda**²¹²⁴ published in newspapers, **rectified**²¹²⁵ mistakes, men of **rectitude**²¹²⁶, **resurrection**²¹²⁷ of the dead and **resurgence**²¹²⁸ of a dying militant group.

²¹²¹ **Maladroit:** (adj) unskillful, tactless.

Origin: mal- + **adroit**

- ❑ The quarrel between Rita and Romi had not been so serious. It was the **maladroit** handling of the matter by their families which brought the couple close to divorce. Immediately after their fight, Rita had packed her bag and gone to her parents' house. When his anger cooled down, Romi said that he would bring his wife home but his mother forbade him from 'bending before that **insolent** girl' yet once again. Rita's mother too forbade her from going back unless Romi himself came to take her and **implored** for her forgiveness. After a few days of this **impasse**, Romi's mother called Rita, **berated** her for keeping her nose up in the sky even at the cost of Romi's happiness and declared that marrying her was the biggest mistake of Romi's life. Rita listened to the **tirade** with silent tears but soon after, her mother called Romi's mother and said some really bitter things about her and Romi. Romi's mother then pledged to not let Rita enter her house ever again. Rita's mother threatened her with police action in that case. "You go to the police only then," Romi's mother taunted and hung up the phone. That evening, Rita's angry and offended family decided that there was no point in trying to compromise with "such people." Romi's parents decided likewise and called a divorce lawyer right then.

Impasse: (n) deadlock

Origin: im + pass

Berate: (v) criticize very strongly.

²¹²² **Adroit:** (adj) skillful

Origin: L *de-*, apart + *regere*, to lead straight => 'to set straight'. This is the etymology of the Latin word *directus*. As you can see, *directus* comes from *regere*.

L *directus*, straight -> Fr *droit*, straight, right => Fr. *a droit*, according to the right. The actions that we do with our right hand are skillful while those done with left hand are not. So, *a droit* came to mean skillful.

- ❑ **Adroit** tabla player, **adroit** debater, **adroit** batsman
- ❑ The boy, with a single turn of the wrist, opened any door as **adroitly** as a master-thief.
- ❑ The politician **adroitly diverted** the attention of the journalists away from the difficult issue.

²¹²³ **Incorrigible:** (adj) uncorrectable; that which cannot be improved.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *com-* + *regere*, to lead straight + *-ible* => 'that which you cannot lead to the straight path.'

- ❑ With an **incorrigible** itch for travel, no sooner does Manu come back from one trip that he starts planning for another.
- ❑ **Incorrigible** liar, **incorrigible** addiction to poor jokes, **incorrigible** money-waster

²¹²⁴ **Corrigenda:** (n) correction notice. Singular: **corrigendum**

Origin: L *com-* + *regere*, to lead straight => 'to set a mistake straight';

²¹²⁵ **Rectified:** (adj) corrected

Origin: L *regere*, to lead straight => 'to set straight' => 'to correct'

- ❑ The editor read the manuscript and **rectified** its inaccuracies.

²¹²⁶ **Rectitude:** (n) honesty; uprightness.

Origin: L *regere*, to lead straight -> *rectus*, right.

- ❑ Lord Rama was a model of **rectitude**. However, many people are troubled by the question that how could Rama's morality have allowed him to abandon his wife who had left all the **palatial** comforts to be by his side and had happily borne all the difficulties of the jungle?

Palatial: (adj) related to palaces.

²¹²⁷ **Resurrection:** (n) rising from the dead.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *sub-*, under + *rectus*, straight => 'rise up straight from under (the earth)'

- ❑ Three days after Jesus Christ was killed and entombed by the Romans, his followers found his tomb empty. Over the next few days, he visited—in bodily form—many followers. On the 40th day of his **resurrection**, he ascended to Heaven. **Resurrection** of Jesus is a pivotal event in Christianity because, through it, Christ demonstrated that he had power over life and death, and that he, therefore, did have the power to grant **eternal** bliss to his followers.

²¹²⁸ **Resurgence:** (n) rising up again.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *surge*

- ❑ The Taliban governed Afghanistan from 1996 to late 2001, when they were overthrown by America-led forces. They, however, **resurged** in 2004 and have since been fighting a guerilla war with the Pakistan and Afghanistan governments and the American, English and other troops present in the region.

Latin *ducere* to lead

An ‘education’ leads a child out of darkness (L. *e-*, *ex-* means ‘out’). An ‘introduction’ leads the newcomer into the ongoing conversation. An **inducement**²¹²⁹ leads the babu of the government office into approving a file he otherwise would not have passed.

A **deduction**²¹³⁰ brings one’s salary down, or brings a theory down from the general to the particular (L. *de-*, down). **Induction**²¹³¹ is just the opposite. It leads you into the general from the narrow confines of the particular.

When you ‘reduce’ your expenses, you lead them backwards. The words ‘duke’ and ‘duchess’ too are from *ducere*.

The other words from this root are:

*The Duke and the Duchess lead us-1: ductile*²¹³², *duct*²¹³³

*The Duke and the Duchess lead us-2: abduction*²¹³⁴, *seduction*²¹³⁵

²¹²⁹ **Induce:** (v) to lead towards; to cause to happen.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *ducere*, to lead

- The bribe **induced** the babu to pass the file that he otherwise would not have passed.
- People usually drink warm milk at bedtime because it **induces** sleep.

²¹³⁰ **Deduction:** (n) the act of drawing conclusion from the given data or statements.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *ducere*, to lead => ‘to lead down, from the general to the specific.’

- The police inspector solved the murder mystery by **deduction**. He reasoned: the post-mortem report clearly shows that the murder was done by a man. All male servants of the house were on leave that day. So, the murder must have been done by the only remaining male in the house—the deceased man’s son.
- The child knew that the sum of the three angles of a triangle is 180 degrees. So, when he was told that two angles of a triangle were 90 degrees and 30 degrees, he **deduced** that the third angle must be 60 degrees.

²¹³¹ **Induction:** (n) the process of **inducing** something; establishing a general principle based on a number of particular observations.

- The doctor gave a 50-minute sleep **induction** audio to his **insomniac** patient and said that listening to it in a dark room will **lull** his brain into sleep.
- The child’s mother had just taught him how to measure an angle. She then drew a triangle and asked him to measure its angles and add them. He did that and reported that the sum was 180 degrees. She then drew five more triangles in his notebook and asked him to repeat the exercise with them. She then left to do some work in another room. Soon, the child came running to her, pointing to the triangles in excitement, “Mama, the sum of angles in each of the triangles is 180! Mama, the sum of angles in all triangles is 180!” This is an example of **inductive** reasoning. To conclude that because the sum of angles in six triangles is 180 degrees, the sum of angles in all triangles must be 180 degrees.

²¹³² **Ductile:** (adj) that which can be drawn into thin wires.

Origin: L *ducere*, to lead

- Gold and silver can be used for making jewellery because they are **malleable** and **ductile**.

²¹³³ **Duct:** (n) a tube or a channel through which a liquid flows.

Origin: L *ducere*, to lead

- A **duct** through which water flows is known as an **aqueduct**.
- She cried so much upon hearing the news that her friends joked that her **lachrymal duct** must have emptied.
- The house was very old, and the greater part of it was originally a castle, strongly fortified, and surrounded by a deep moat supplied with abundant water from the hills by an **aqueduct**.

²¹³⁴ **Abduction:** (n) an act of carrying away against will.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *ducere*, to lead

- Sita was **abducted** by Ravana.
- The 16-year old girl ran away with the 17-year-old boy of her village of her own free will. But, her family, in order to teach the boy’s family a lesson, made a police complaint charging the boy of **abducting** their girl.

²¹³⁵ **Seduce:** (v) to lead astray; to win over and lead into doing a desired thing.

Origin: L *se-*, apart + *ducere*, to lead

- No one could have been a prouder father than Brahmadas Sharma ji, the day his son became a Member of Parliament. The country needed just such idealistic youth, he thought; now, the change would come, to their village, to their state, to the whole country. But his son was quickly **seduced** by the promise of power and office and **defected** to the largest party, whom he had called ‘a bunch of thugs’ during his election rallies.

*The Duke and the Duchess lead us-3: adduce*²¹³⁶, *conduce*²¹³⁷

*The Duke and the Duchess lead us-4: conduit*²¹³⁸, *educue*²¹³⁹

*The Duke and the Duchess lead us-5: endue*²¹⁴⁰, *subdue*²¹⁴¹

*The Duke and the Duchess lead us-6: transduce*²¹⁴², *traduce*²¹⁴³

- The scheming young man **seduced** Ria, a young heiress, with his charms. His goal was to get married to her and enjoy his life on her wealth.

²¹³⁶ **Adduce:** (v) to quote or call into reference.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *ducere*, to lead

- “What proof can you possibly **adduce** to support your wild allegations?” Ria asked her cousin when she told Ria that Ria’s boyfriend did not love her but her money.
- The professor loved nothing better than to display his knowledge and memory by **adducing** passages from Shakespeare, Wordsworth, Kalidas, Ghalib and other poetical geniuses of both the West and the East.
- The Indian courts do not accept the statements given by a culprit or a witness to a police inspector. They believe that those statements are made under **duress** and so they should not be **adduced** as evidence.

²¹³⁷ **Conduce:** (v) lead to, contribute to. (adj) **conducive:** contributive, helpful.

Origin: L *con-* + *ducere*, to lead

- “I think that if you marry,” Shamsher’s old aunt told him, “it will **conduce** to your happiness.”
- The one single rule that most **conduces** to beauty in the human face is, “Keep smiling.”
- Regular exercise is **conducive** to health.

²¹³⁸ **Conduit:** (n) a pipe or tube for flow of a liquid.

Origin: L *con-* + *ducere*, to lead. The word ‘conductor’ has the same etymology.

- The landlord built a reservoir on his land, 80 miles away from the river, and then built a **conduit** to carry the water from the river to his reservoir.

²¹³⁹ **Educue:** (v) to draw out.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *ducere*, to lead

- The word education is from **educue**!
- In the Welcome Address to the new batch, the Director of the prestigious engineering college said, “You have come here to educate yourselves; to **educue** your own powers of perceiving, judging and reasoning...”
- After the teacher had told the story of the hare and the tortoise to her class, she asked, “Now students, tell me, what moral can we **educue** from this story?”

²¹⁴⁰ **Endue:** (v) gifted with a talent or a quality.

Origin: from **induce**

- The model was **endued** with a beautiful figure.
- The child was **endued** with a brilliant mind.

²¹⁴¹ **Subdue:** (v) to bring under control; to repress.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *ducere*, to lead

- The child made quite a scene in front of the visiting relatives—refusing to eat food and crying and lying on the floor—to make his father get him a new cycle. But after his father took him to one side and threatened to slap him in front of all his cousins and uncle and aunt if he made another noise, he was **subdued**.
- The kidnapped girl managed to make a call home when her **abductors** were sleeping. She talked in a **subdued** voice, scared of waking them up.

²¹⁴² **Transduce:** (v) to convert one form of energy into another.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *ducere*, to lead => ‘to lead across (from one form of energy to another)’

- A light bulb is a **transducer**. It converts electrical energy into light energy. Similarly, a microphone **transduces** electrical energy into sound energy. A battery **transduces** chemical energy into electric energy.

²¹⁴³ **Traduce:** (v) to slander, defame.

Origin: L *trans-*, across + *ducere*, to lead => ‘to lead across (from good name to bad)’

- There are some people who do not mind getting **traduced** because they think at least they would become famous that way. “*Badnaam hue toh kya hua, naam toh hua,*” they say.
- As Deepu walked past three of his former friends—unemployed **wastrels**, all of them—he heard them talk to one another. “Yaar, that Deepu’s sister....I can’t tell you what she looks like these days, yaar!” Another said, “And, why will she not look like that? People say that her boss is quite kind on her these days.” A third sighed, “I wish I were her boss!”
The first one said, “Nothing will happen by sighing. Let us open an office, the three of us. Then we will be her bosses and she will be our common secretary. We will shower her with our kindness, won’t we?” They all laughed. Deepu’s blood boiled to hear his sister **traduced** like that in public and he turned back to beat those filthy mouths to pulp.

Greek polis city

The words from this root are:

Police, **Polity**²¹⁴⁴, **politic**²¹⁴⁵, **impolitic**²¹⁴⁶, **cosmopolitan**²¹⁴⁷, **metropolis**²¹⁴⁸

The word *polis* is from an IE root: *pel-* (different from the *pel-* meaning 'to fill'). Now, the IE 'l' changes into 'r' in Sanskrit, so what is the word that we get in Sanskrit? *Pur!!!* Yes, that suffix of just so many Indian cities- from the **ubiquitous**²¹⁴⁹ Rampur to Kanpur to Sholapur to Sitapur to Hamirpur to Saharanpur to...- 'pur' means city. The 'pur' also flew beyond India, and landed right into Singapore. The name of that city-state is a combination of the Sanskrit *simha*, lion, and *puram*, city, and so Singapore literally means 'The Lion City.'

Latin jus, juris law
Latin jurare to swear, take an oath

Is it just a coincidence that *juris* and *jurare* sound so similar? The answer is 'No' because the idea of taking an oath is fundamental to the legal process.

A group of people who are chosen to judge a case are first made to swear that they will uphold the **tenets** of justice and will be **impartial**²¹⁵⁰ and fair. They are, thereafter, called the 'Jury'.

²¹⁴⁴ **Polity:** (n) system of government.

☐ India is a federal **polity**, that is, it has two governments- one at the central and the other at the state level. India is also a democratic **polity**.

²¹⁴⁵ **Politic:** (n) practically wise.

☐ Though he knew the politician's crimes, the security guard thought it **politic** to stay silent. He could not afford to lose his job.

²¹⁴⁶ **Impolitic:** (adj) not **politic**.

☐ Raj told his wife that they had to go to his boss' house for dinner that night. His wife had had a very tiring day at office and asked if going there was necessary. "It is, darling," Raj said. "It would be absolutely **impolitic** to not accept the boss' invitation. I mean, come on, if we don't go, he is bound to get offended. Can we afford that, tell me? Plus, this is a great chance to get into his **coterie**."

Coterie: (n) an exclusive group that hangs out together.

²¹⁴⁷ **Cosmopolitan:** (adj) belonging to the whole world; not confined to a narrow, local outlook.

Origin: Gk *kosmos*, world + *polites*, citizen => 'a citizen of the whole world.'

☐ New York, London, Paris, Mumbai, Singapore and Hong Kong are examples of **cosmopolitan** cities.

Other words that come from the root *kosmos* are '**microcosm**' and '**cosmic**'.

Microcosm: (n) a small scale representation of the world.

Origin: Gk *micro-*, small + *kosmos*, world

☐ R.K. Narayan based most of his stories in the fictional town of Malgudi. Malgudi, however, is a **microcosm** of the Indian society, with all its caste-based **hierarchies**, superstitions, beliefs, customs, traditions, routine joys, disappointments, ambitions, gossips and frustrations.

Cosmic: (adj) related with the universe.

☐ **cosmic** rays, **cosmic** energy

²¹⁴⁸ **Metropolis:** (n) a big city. Abbreviated as 'metro.'

Origin: Gk *metro-*, mother + *polis* => 'a mother city' => 'the main city'

☐ Mumbai, Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai, Bangalore and Hyderabad are a few **metropolitan** cities of India.

☐ Whether a city is **metropolitan** or not is decided by its size and number of people. Whether a city is **cosmopolitan** or not is decided by the cultural composition of its population.

☐ A **metropolis** has a population of more than one million. A **metropolis** whose population is more than 8 million is called a **megalopolis**.

²¹⁴⁹ **Ubiquitous:** (adj) present everywhere.

☐ Potatoes are a **ubiquitous** vegetable, found everywhere and in every season.

²¹⁵⁰ **Impartial:** (adj) not taking any sides, unbiased.

Origin: im-, not + partial, taking one party's side.

See also, **partisan**.

A very famous dialogue from the Hindi movies, an **integral** part of every courtroom scene, is ‘*Main Geeta ke upar haath rakh ke qasam khaata hoon ke main jo bhi kahunga, sach kahunga, aur sach ke siwa kuchh nahin kahunga.*’ If, despite that oath, the witness gives a false **testimony**, he is committing **perjury**²¹⁵¹.

“*Tumhe meri qasam hai... mujhe sach batao!*” The **maudlin**²¹⁵² mothers in **maudlin** Bollywood movies often resort to such **adjurations**²¹⁵³ to make the hero tell them the truth. And then, when the poor guy does give in to the emotional blackmail and confesses his wrongdoings, they **abjure**²¹⁵⁴ him at once, turning their face away with a decisive “*main qasam khaati hoon ke aaj ke baad tumhara chehra nahin dekhoongi!*”

An ‘injury’ means ‘an unlawful conduct’, or an injustice. But what is justice in the first place? And, what is law? What makes a law valid? Do we really need to obey the law? What is the purpose of law? What is the function of law? What is the right punishment for an act? Who has the right to make the law? A critical inquiry into all these, and more, questions is called **jurisprudence**.²¹⁵⁵

Imagine a group of men sitting around a holy fire in a dimly lit cave, chanting *mantras* and swearing together their loyalty to their common god. They are doing this because they need a favour from their god. Either they need to **exorcise**²¹⁵⁶ a ghost from somebody, or they need to summon a spirit or perform a miracle. Thus, **conjunction**²¹⁵⁷ means to call or send away or alter something, as if by magic or by supernatural powers.

²¹⁵¹ **Perjury:** (n) lying under oath.

Origin: L *per-*, through + *jurare*, to swear

- ❑ The woman filed a complaint against her husband and in-laws, **indicting** them of dowry harrasment. The case went to the court. She stood her ground. However, in the third hearing, she **perjured** herself by stating that she was quite happy with her husband and that her brothers had forced her to file the complaint. The judge, however, did not let her go away so easily. He convicted her and her two brothers—both of whom had **testified** against her husband and in-laws—of **perjury**.

²¹⁵² **Maudlin:** (adj) excessively sentimental.

²¹⁵³ **Adjuration:** (n) an appeal made to a person as if in the name of God or a binding oath. The verb form of the word is **adjure**, meaning ‘to make an adjuration.’

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *jurare*, to swear => ‘to make swear’

- ❑ “I **adjure** you in the name of God, do not ask me where I was,” the man said to his worried mother when he returned home after being missing for three days.

²¹⁵⁴ **Abjure:** (v) to give up under, or as if under, oath.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *jurare*, to swear

- ❑ Upon the birth of his child, the chain smoker resolved to **abjure** his cigarettes forever.

²¹⁵⁵ **Jurisprudence:** (n) the science or philosophy of law; a body of laws; a body of laws dealing with a particular area.

Origin: L *juris*, of law + *prudentia*, knowledge.

- ❑ Under the **jurisprudence**, a person is presumed to be innocent unless proved otherwise and convicted by a court of law.
- ❑ The development of Public Interest Litigation has been a milestone in the history of Indian **jurisprudence**.

²¹⁵⁶ **Exorcise:** (v) to free from evil spirits.

- ❑ Romesh Sinha prepared passionately for the IAS for four long years but failed. As a way of **exorcising** the feeling of failure, he started coaching other IAS aspirants and soon became a renowned teacher.

²¹⁵⁷ **Conjure:** (v) to create, or cause something to happen, as if by magic.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *jurare*, to swear => ‘to swear together’ => ‘to chant a magical mantra together’

- ❑ I was pleased to revisit my college but all the while, I was conscious that it was mine no more. I did not regret that. I smiled as my imagination **conjured** a scene- I am being offered the chance to relive my college life, and my eyes pop out in shock and I say, “No! Thank you! I do not have the energy to go through it all again!”

Conjuror: (n) a person who **conjures** things out of thin air; a magician.

- ❑ The **conjuror** took a coin from a member of the audience and asked him to which member of the audience his coin should be given to. The man **arbitrarily** pointed towards an old man sitting in the opposite half of the auditorium. The **conjuror** went to the old man, gave him the coin and asked him to close his eyes and think of any country. The old man did as told. The **conjuror** murmured some **incantations**. After a few seconds, he asked the old man to open his eyes and his palm. The man exclaimed. He had thought of England, and the coin of One Indian Rupee in his hand had become an English one pound coin.

A 'just' ruler is one who rules by law, not by his own **arbitrary**²¹⁵⁸ will or **whim**²¹⁵⁹.

The word 'judge' has come from the Latin word *judex*, which is a compound of *jus*+ *dicere*, to say, pronounce. Therefore, a judge is someone who shows or pronounces the law. The body of judges, and therefore, the overall system of justice in a country, is called its 'judiciary'. The adjective **pertaining** to the judiciary is judicial.

A **judicious**²¹⁶⁰ man shows good judgment, while a 'prejudiced' man makes his judgment about who is guilty even before listening to the actual facts of the case; the principles of justice hold little value for him. (L. *pre*, before + *judicium*, judgment).

Latin **ordo** order

The word 'order' is used in two senses. Its first meaning is 'row, arrangement, rank', as in the phrase 'the ascending order'. An ordinary thing is a part of the regular arrangement, that is, it has no quality which will make it stand out. The words based on this meaning of the root are:

Ordo-1: Ordinate²¹⁶¹, **inordinate**²¹⁶²

Ordo-2: primordial²¹⁶³, **coordinate**²¹⁶⁴

²¹⁵⁸ **Arbitrary**: (adj) determined by individual will, with no checks by law or rules.

Origin: L *arbitr*, judge -> *arbitrarius*, depending on the arbiter's judgement => 'depending on an individual's judgement'

- ❑ The Delhi government **arbitrarily** decided to ban begging with immediate effect and to send all the beggars back to their home states.

A related word is **arbitrate**.

Arbitrate: (v) to settle disputes between two parties with the binding authority of a judge. The person who does this is called an **arbiter** or **arbitrator**.

- ❑ The Supreme Court set up a tribunal to **arbitrate** the dispute about sharing of river waters between Karnataka and Tamil Nadu.
- ❑ One of the functions of a Panchayat is to **arbitrate** the village-level disputes so that minimal number of disputes reach court.

²¹⁵⁹ **Whim**: (n) a sudden, fanciful idea.

- ❑ "Loving a child doesn't mean giving in to all his **whims**; to love him is to bring out the best in him, to teach him to love what is difficult." Nadia Boulanger

²¹⁶⁰ **Judicious**: (adj) showing good judgment.

Origin: L *judicium*, judge. Here is how the word *judicium* was formed in Latin:

L *jus*, law + *dicere*, to say = *judicare*, to say according to the law => 'to judge.'

- ❑ Small business owners need to be particularly **judicious** about how they spend their income. If invested wisely, that money becomes the fuel for future growth, if not the business **flounders**.

²¹⁶¹ **Ordinate**: (n) the y-axis of a x-y graph. The x-axis is known as 'the abscissa' and the y-axis as 'the ordinate.'

Origin: L *ordo*, order -> *ordinare*, to arrange

- ❑ A point (5,6) in the x-y plane has 6 as its **ordinate**.

²¹⁶² **Inordinate**: (adj) unlimited; unregulated.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *ordo*, order => 'not in order' => 'disorderly, not regulated'

- ❑ His ambition was **inordinate**; even after becoming the richest man of the country, he was not satisfied; he now wanted to be among the 10 richest men in the world.
- ❑ After years of daily use, the addict found that he now had to take **inordinate** quantities of the drug in order to feel the slightest effect.

²¹⁶³ **Primordial**: (adj) related to the beginning or the origin of something

Origin: L *primus*, first+ *ordo*, order => 'first in the order of time'

- ❑ In the **primordial** world, man survived by hunting.
- ❑ Charles Darwin observed that the reindeer is the only species of the deer in which the female has horns. This is what he wrote about it in his book *The Descent of Man*:
"It is not probable that she can have inherited horns from some ancient **progenitor** of the family of deer, for, from the fact of the females of so many species in all quarters of the globe not having horns, we may conclude that this (the absence of horns in females) was the **primordial** character of the group.*"

²¹⁶⁴ **Coordinate**: (v) to place at the same rank or level; to bring into common action.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *ordinare*, to arrange => 'to arrange together'

Ordo-3: **subordinate**²¹⁶⁵, **insubordination**²¹⁶⁶

The other sense of ‘order’ is of a command and is found in **ordain**²¹⁶⁷, **ordinance**²¹⁶⁸ and **ordination**²¹⁶⁹.

- ❑ **Coordinate** sentences are those that consist of two equal parts which are joined by a conjunction. For example: Sita did Ram’s homework, but he did not even thank her. Here, the two parts—‘Sita did Ram’s homework’ and ‘He did not even thank her’—are **coordinate**, that is they are equal in rank.
- ❑ The dancers in the group lacked **coordination**.

²¹⁶⁵ **Subordinate**: (adj) having a lower rank in the order of authority; dependent; (n) one who has a lower rank or is dependent.

Origin: L *sub-*, below + *ordinare*, to arrange, to rank

- ❑ The District Courts of a state are **subordinate** to the High Courts.
- ❑ The boss said that he could manage his team so well because he respected his **subordinates**, involved them in the decision making and never treated them as merely a set of hands and brains bound to carry out his orders.
- ❑ Consider the sentence: When Ram did Sita’s homework, she scolded him. Here, the part ‘she scolded him’ is independent. But, the part ‘When Ram did Sita’s homework’ is dependent on the second part to tell us what happened; by itself, it is incomplete. So, we can say, that the clause ‘When Ram did Sita’s homework’ is a **subordinate** of ‘she scolded him.’

²¹⁶⁶ **Insubordination**: (n) refusal to submit to authority.

- ❑ “Mind you,” the smuggler told his junior, “that I am never without this revolver, and that on the first act of **insubordination** I shall blow out your brains!”
- ❑ Shreya was just a 21-year-old recently graduated girl with a very soft voice and zero experience in handling students. She was put in charge of the most unruly section of class tenth in the school. No wonder that the students were **insubordinate** to her. In fact, they drove her to tears in her first class. She kept saying “Please, please” to them to let her speak. They ignored her totally and kept making noise.

²¹⁶⁷ **Ordain**: (v) to order with full authority; to predestine; to do an **ordination**.

Origin: L *ordinare*, to order

- ❑ The king **ordained** that every child in his kingdom must go to school.
- ❑ The long-lost friends met **fortuitously** in a train, that too, at a point in their respective lives when they sorely needed someone to share their troubles with. They felt that their boarding the same train had been **ordained** by fate.

Fortuitous: (adj) happening by chance.

²¹⁶⁸ **Ordinance**: (n) an authoritative order.

- ❑ The music at the wedding reception was turned off at 10 pm due to an **ordinance** of the city administration which prohibited the use of loud speakers in the city after 10 pm.

²¹⁶⁹ **Ordination**: (n) the ceremony of making someone a priest and, thus, conferring holy orders upon him; the act of passing any orders.

- ❑ At his **ordination**, the bishop vowed to fulfil all his responsibilities faithfully, to deepen his knowledge of the divine truth, to preach the name of God and to work towards greater understanding, love and trust between all the children of God all over the world.

Exercise

Demos, archaein, regere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. There was no mention of a gas leak incident in the factory *records*.
(a) archives (b) corrigenda (c) impasse (d) realm (e) interregnum
2. The government launched a huge police operation in the jungle to catch the *revolutionary*.
(a) resurgent (b) demophobe (c) demagogue (d) incorrigible (e) anarchist
3. The police inspector acted with *complete honesty*.
(a) impasse (b) rectitude (c) adroitness (d) insurrection (e) regency
4. He *beat his servant with a stick*.
(a) flogged his servant (b) quashed his servant (c) berated his servant (d) was demotic towards his servant (e) snarled at his servant
5. Malaria is *found in* tropical regions.
(a) an epidemic of (b) a pandemic of (c) endemic to (d) demotic to (e) insurgent in
6. The government tried hard to curb the *rebellion* in the northern parts of the country.
(a) impasse (b) maladroitness (c) resurrection (d) insurgency (e) incorrigibility
7. Everyone lived happily in King Zaad's *rule*.
(a) regimen (b) regime (c) interregnum (d) regency (e) monarchy
8. He *quailed*.
(a) told his secret to the authorities (b) shivered with fear (c) cried loudly (d) rebelled against the authorities (e) did his work in an unskilled manner
9. 'Betwixt' in an *ancient word no longer in use* and it meant 'between.'
(a) an archaeological (b) an archaic (c) a demotic (d) an archetypal (e) paleontological

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (e) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. The first model of something: A_____
2. A widespread disease: P_____
3. A false leader of the people: D_____
4. A social system in which the father is the head of the family: P_____
5. Period between successive governments: I_____
6. Study of fossils: P_____
7. A state ruled by a king: M_____
8. A person who rules a kingdom as a temporary substitute: R_____
9. Rule by a few individuals: O_____
10. A state ruled by the wealthy: P_____

Answers:

archetype, pandemic, demagogue, patriarchy, interregnum, paleontology, monarchy, regent, oligarchy, plutarchy/plutocracy

Ducere, polis, jus, juris, jurare, ordo:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *kidnapped* the child.
(a) seduced (b) abducted (c) adduced (d) educed (e) traduced
2. He was *a magician*.
(a) an exorcist (b) a conjuror (c) an arbiter (d) a primordial (e) a cosmopolitan
3. He was *gifted* with a great sense of humor.
(a) ended (b) conjured (c) arbitrated (d) abjured (e) transduced
4. He *gave up* violence.
(a) adjured (b) abjured (c) exorcised (d) traduced (e) educed
5. The water flow through the *tube*.
(a) inducement (b) ubiquity (c) conduit (d) coterie (e) microcosm
6. He wrote *an excessively sentimental* poem for her.
(a) a maudlin (b) an educed (c) a seductive (d) an impolitic (e) an adjuring
7. He thought it *practically sensible* to keep quiet.
(a) fortuitous (b) coordinate (c) ordinate (d) politic (e) arbitrary
8. In just a few years, mobile phones have *spread to every square unit area of the country*.
(a) been abjured (b) become cosmopolitan (c) become politic (d) become ubiquitous (e) been ordained
9. She *kept his hand on her head and asked him to take an oath upon her life and* tell her the truth.
(a) adjured him to (b) abjured him to (c) exorcised him to (d) traduced him to (e) adduced him to
10. Crops need *a favorable* environment to give a good yield.
(a) an inductive (b) a deductive (c) a seductive (d) an adductive (e) a conducive

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (c) 6. (a) 7. (d) 8. (d) 9. (a) 10. (e)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. One who has the authority to settle disputes between two parties: A _____
2. An exclusive group that hangs out together: C _____
3. A sudden, fanciful idea: W _____
4. The act of drawing conclusion from the given data or statements : D _____
5. One who frees people from evil spirits: E _____
6. Refusal to submit to authority: I _____
7. Happening by chance: F _____
8. The process of establishing a general principle based on a number of particular observations: I _____
9. The science or philosophy of law: J _____
10. Lying under oath: P _____
11. A miniature representation of the world: M _____
12. The ceremony of making someone a priest: O _____
13. Related to the beginning or the origin: P _____
14. To defame: T _____

Answers:

Arbiter/ arbitrator, coterie, whim, deduction, exorcist, insubordination, fortuitous, induction, jurisprudence, perjury, microcosm, ordination, primordial, traduce

ON CUTTING AND JOINING

IE *ak-* sharp

“Oh you know my Sunny! How proud his papa and I are of him! Just 10 years of age and he solves sums that *we* have problems doing! He is really acute, I tell you!”

Sandhu aunty was **raving** about her son before Gopi’s mummy. Gopi was doing his homework nearby. When she called Sunny acute, he looked up, looked at her, and then down at the acute angles he was working on. Sunny certainly did not look like them! No, aunty did not know her words, he decided. Sunny was like a straight angle; he was not acute at all.

Gopi did not realize that Sunny’s mummy was being **figurative**. What she meant was that her son’s mind was as sharp as an acute angle. The word ‘acute’ comes from the Latin *acus*, needle. The other words from *acus* are:

Acuity²¹⁷⁰, **acumen**²¹⁷¹, **acupuncture**

The face of teenage boys and girls often becomes pockmarked by pimples. This much-**lamented** disease is called ‘acne’, from the Greek root *akme* meaning point. The pointed top of a mountain is called an **acme**²¹⁷² due to the same root.

²¹⁷⁰ **Acuity:** (n) sharpness; sensitivity to even little details.

- The old grandmother surprised everybody with her visual **acuity**—she could easily tell who was who from a mile away and had never worn glasses.
- The writer **depicted** the point of view of Ravana with great **acuity**.
- Such was the mental **acuity** of the child that he solved every puzzle in Shakuntala Devi’s book ‘*Puzzles to puzzle you*’ in a single afternoon.

The opposite of ‘acute’ is ‘obtuse’, in Maths as well as general English.

Obtuse: (adj) not sharp, not mentally sharp.

- The child was so **obtuse** that even after we had given him five big hints to solve the simple maths question, he kept scratching his head and looking at us helplessly.

²¹⁷¹ **Acumen:** (n) the ability to judge things quickly and accurately.

- The saint had the **acumen** to read people’s thoughts.
- Shifa wanted to start a business of her own. She was confident of her idea and was certain that a market existed for it. The fear that held her back, however, was her lack of business **acumen**.

²¹⁷² **Acme:** (n) the peak, the top point.

- When Ravi got All India Rank 1 in IIT-JEE, he thought that he had reached the **acme** of success. In later years, when he looked back to that moment, he realized that that had been only the beginning of the journey and that his true **acme** would come perhaps in his late 30s or early 40s.
- When the injustice and cruelty in the world had reached its **acme**, God sent an angel to fight them and make people’s lives bright and cheerful again.

Shilpa Shetty's character in the movie *Baazigar* would never have agreed to climb to an **acme**, no matter how much her lover or anybody else **goaded**²¹⁷³ her. She was **acrophobic**²¹⁷⁴.

An 'acid' is so named because it is so sharp. The Latin *acer* means sharp and bitter and is the root behind **acid**²¹⁷⁵, **acrimony**²¹⁷⁶, **acerbic**²¹⁷⁷ and **exacerbate**²¹⁷⁸.

Since 1774, the French scientist Antoine Lavoisier had been experimenting on a gas discovered two years before. Some called it the 'fire air' because it supported combustion. He called it the '**vital** air' because he discovered that it was essential not just for combustion but also for respiration. By 1777, he had determined that it was also necessary to produce acids. So he renamed it to 'oxygene' (French spelling), from the Greek roots *oxys* meaning acidic, sharp and *-gen*, producer. Later, chemists found many acids that had no oxygen but the name of the gas stayed.

Paroxysms²¹⁷⁹ of pain have the same origin as the oxygen we cannot live without, another reminder of the fact that life is no bed of roses. Sigh!

²¹⁷³ **Goad:** (n) a stick with a sharp end used to drive cattle etc.; (v) to drive forward as if by a **goad**.

- ❑ The *mahout* sat on the neck of his elephant, just back of the head, and had an elephant-**goad**.
- ❑ The government clearly seemed reluctant but the media **goaded** it into taking action against the junior minister who was accused of using his office to benefit his son.

²¹⁷⁴ **Acrophobia:** (n) fear of heights.

Origin: Gk *akros*, the top + *-phobia*, fear

²¹⁷⁵ **Acrid:** (adj) sharp or bitter.

Origin: L *acer*, sharp

- ❑ The fumes from the chimneys of the industries were **acrid**, like those from burning rubber.
- ❑ Both amla fruit and neem oil have an **acrid** taste.

²¹⁷⁶ **Acrimony:** (n) sharpness, bitterness

Origin: L *acer*, sharp + *-monia*, state => 'state of being sharp'

- ❑ For a long time, the beasts of the jungle debated with **acrimony** whether the Hare or the Tortoise could run faster. Some said the Hare was the swifter of the two because he had such long ears, and others hotly rejected that claim and said the Tortoise was the swifter because anyone with such a hard **carapace** should be able to run hard too. When the two **factions** of the animals almost came to war, a wise old monkey advised them to **resolve** the matter by actually having a race between the Hare and the Tortoise.
- ❑ Rudra tried to tell his younger brother, Sumit, that their mother loved them both equally. But Sumit cut him off **acrimoniously**: "Stop being mama's 24-hour advocate, will you? That's the reason she loves you so much."

Carapace: (n) a hard shell covering the back of some animals like tortoises or crabs.

²¹⁷⁷ **Acerbic:** (adj) sour or bitter in taste; (n) **acerbity**.

Origin: L *acer*, sharp

- ❑ Rudra was hurt by Sumit's **acerbity**. In a hurt voice, he said, "I never thought you were actually so jealous of me, Sumit. I just used to laugh your comparisons off. If you are bent on believing that mama loves me more, then keep doing so. I cannot do anything about it."
- ❑ Sumit replied with even more **acerbic** words: "And why would you do anything, indeed? You will be feeling delighted right now seeing me make a fool of myself by shouting like this while you remain the calm and composed elder brother., the poor elder brother who is a victim of his own younger brother's accusations. I am right, am I not, my dear poor elder brother?"

²¹⁷⁸ **Exacerbate:** (v) to increase the bitterness or sourness even further; to worsen an already bad situation

Origin: L *ex* + *acerbare*, to make sharp and bitter

- ❑ The tension between the Hindu and the Muslim communities of the city was **exacerbated** by the visit of an extremist Hindu leader. He said that the old mosque in the city had been built by the Mughal rulers upon the debris of a Hindu temple and that he would not rest till he had demolished that mosque and built a temple upon it.

²¹⁷⁹ **Paroxysm:** (n) a severe and sudden fit of pain or anger, etc.

Origin: L *para-*, beyond + *oxys*, sharp

- ❑ The Thakur, in a **paroxysm** of rage, seized his sword and cut off the peasant's body into two halves. It was only after he had cooled down somewhat that he became aware of the **horridity** of what he had done.
- ❑ A violent fit of coughing interrupted her, and when the **paroxysm** was over she was too exhausted to speak.

Latin *pungere* **to prick**

The Chinese relieve pain or produce regional **anesthesia**²¹⁸⁰ by inserting needles at specific points on the patient's body. This medical system is known as 'Acupuncture'. The word acupuncture is formed by compounding the Latin *acus*, needle and *pungere*, and so means 'to prick with needles.'

The small mark made by pricking was called *punctum* in Latin; by the time it reached English, it had become a 'point'. An 'appointment' takes somebody to a point, either in time or in space.

The man who arrives at the appointed time is 'punctual'. Marking a sentence with points and dots is called 'punctuation'. And what is a 'puncture'? The unfortunate pricking of the car tire when you are already running late for a date.

The other words from this root are:

Pungere-1: **pungent**²¹⁸¹, **expunge**²¹⁸², **poignant**²¹⁸³

Pungere-2: **punctilious**²¹⁸⁴, **compunction**²¹⁸⁵

D.H. Lawrence (1885-1930) was an **eminent** English novelist. Read the following excerpt from his novel '*Women in Love*'. It will paint a **vivid** image of the word 'poignant' in your mind. This novel tells the love stories of two sisters. One of them is Ursula Brangwen. The 'he' referred to in the passage below is Rupert Birkin, the lover of Ursula.

²¹⁸⁰ **Anesthesia**: (n) state of not being able to feel pain; numbness.

Origin Gk *an-*, without + *aisthesis*, feeling

- ❑ The people of our country seem to have become **anaesthetised** to oppression, corruption and poverty. Nobody objects to them anymore.

Another word from the root *aisthesis* is 'aesthetic.'

Aesthetic: (adj) related with beauty; related with feelings and emotions rather than reason.

- ❑ Being an art dealer requires the **aesthetic** ability to tell good art from bad.

²¹⁸¹ **Pungent**: (adj) biting sharp in taste or smell.

Origin: L *pungere*, to prick

- ❑ A **pungent** smelling gas, like Ethyl mercaptan or hydrogen sulphide (which smells like rotten eggs), is added to cooking gas to detect gas leakages.
- ❑ The smell of a hospital disinfectant is **pungent**.
- ❑ Sherlock Holmes left a trail of **pungent** odours from his cigar in the freezing eddies of the air behind him.

²¹⁸² **Expunge**: (v) to remove, to erase.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *pungere*, to prick

- ❑ The editor advised the author to **expunge** the detailed description of a **gory** murder from his novel and to just write that 'it happened'.
- ❑ From her mind she had **expunged** all thoughts other than that she must win the race and do her parents proud.

²¹⁸³ **Poignant**: (adj) sharp; piercing through the mind or the heart; to the point.

Origin: L *pungere*, to prick

- ❑ The film *Mother India* is the **poignant** story of a single woman's spirited survival through poverty and misfortune.
- ❑ There was a look of **poignant** discomfort in her face, as though her mother-in-law's courtesy and attention were oppressive and painful to her.

²¹⁸⁴ **Punctilious**: (adj) very strict and attentive to even small details of conduct.

Origin: L *punctum*, point => 'one who pays attention to even the smallest point'

- ❑ The Brahmin was **punctilious** in his attention to the religious rites. If even one thing was not done as prescribed by the holy books, he raised a great hue and cry.
- ❑ The old seth was exceedingly **punctilious** about the honour and reputation of the women of his family. They were not allowed to go anywhere alone and even within the house had to observe strict *purdah* and could not show their face to any male except their respective husbands, brothers or sons.
- ❑ Inter-caste marriage is fiercely opposed in India. All castes are **punctilious** about their distinct identity and rituals.

²¹⁸⁵ **Compunction**: (n) uneasiness of conscience because of the wrongs done.

Origin: L *com-* + *pungere*, to prick => 'the pricks of conscience'

- ❑ The old lady had no **compunction** about demanding a huge dowry for her son. "Didn't we give our daughters dowries too?" she asked.

*Truncare-1: truncate*²¹⁹⁰, *trench*²¹⁹¹

*Truncare-2: trenchant*²¹⁹², *trencherman*²¹⁹³

*Truncare-3: entrench*²¹⁹⁴, *retrench*²¹⁹⁵

Latin *cidere* **to cut, kill**

Sumer Pratap Singh was called **uxorious**²¹⁹⁶ by all his friends; his world seemed to start at and end with his wife. But one day, he killed her. He had come home earlier that day and so had seen her talking to Shyam Sundar Sharma, their neighbour, over the fence. He was **incensed**. How many times had he told her that he did not like her talking to other men, and especially men like this Shyam Sundar, who were **adept at glib**²¹⁹⁷ talk and charming women and still, she did not listen. Shaking with anger, he grabbed her by the elbow, and pushed her inside. Now, seeing her lifeless form on the floor, he thought **morosely** that without her, his life too had no meaning. He killed himself with the same knife. His final thoughts were: united in life, united in death.

Killing one's wife is called 'uxoricide' and oneself, 'suicide' (L. *sui-*, of oneself).

²¹⁹⁰ **Truncate:** (v) to cut short.

- ❑ What is a trapezium? It is a triangle which has been **truncated** by a line parallel to its base.
- ❑ Padmanabhan's name was so long that it took ages to pronounce. Most of the people **truncated** it to Paddu or Paddy.

²¹⁹¹ **Trench:** (n) a long, narrow ditch; (v) to make such a ditch.

- ❑ The servants killed the elephant. They then dug a mighty **trench** to bury it, so that when it became a skeleton, their master could return and secure its tusks.
- ❑ He **trenched** his fort to make it difficult for the potential attackers to advance.

²¹⁹² **Trenchant:** (adj) sharp, forceful, cutting, clear-cut.

- ❑ The soldier's **trenchant** sword had killed many enemies.
- ❑ A State owned newspaper or television channel will never be a very **trenchant** critic of the State policies.
- ❑ Everybody feared the old woman. Her **trenchant** tongue could leave even big, strong adults with bleeding cuts.

²¹⁹³ **Trencherman:** (n) a person who eats too a lot.

Origin: trencher + man. A trencher was a slice of stale bread which was cut into a square shape and used as a plate for meals. After a person was done with his eating, his trencher, which contained left-over sauces and bits of foods, was fed to either the poor or the dogs. This was a custom of the medieval times. The trencher got its name from L *truncare*, to cut, because a trencher was a slice cut off from a loaf of bread.

- ❑ Hanuman and Bheem are famous **trenchermen** from the Hindu mythology.

²¹⁹⁴ **Entrench:** (v) to establish firmly.

Origin: L *en-*, in + *truncare*, to cut => 'to cut in' => 'to take a permanent place'

- ❑ Traditionally, there was a huge gap in the literacy rates of males and females in India. This was due to **entrenched** gender norms, especially in the states of the north, where girls were married off at very young ages and exogamy in marriage meant that any benefits of investment in education of girls would be captured by her in-laws' family. This reduced parental **incentives** in the education of girls.

²¹⁹⁵ **Retrench:** (v) to cut back (expenses, etc.); to cut down.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *truncare*, to cut

- ❑ The falling profits and increased costs forced the company to **retrench** drastically. It shut off one of its two manufacturing plants and laid off half of its employees.
- ❑ The companies that employ more than 300 people cannot **retrench** their employees without government permission.
- ❑ The writer calculated that if he was to make his savings last another eight months, he must **retrench** on his expenses at once.

²¹⁹⁶ **Uxorious:** (adj) excessively fond of one's wife.

Origin: L *uxor*, wife + *locus*, place => 'one who stays at wife's place.'

- ❑ A **uxorilocal** husband is called a *ghar jamaai* in Hindi.

²¹⁹⁷ **Glib:** (adj) smooth; very fluent but usually insincere or unconcerned about the words used.

- ❑ Facts and data rolled off **glibly** from the manager's tongue and all his seniors were impressed.
- ❑ Rahul and Anjali were best friends. One day, Rahul was telling Anjali how his dream girl looked like. "Your ideal is impossible. There can be no girl like that," Anjali told him. "In that case, I'll marry you. Will you marry me Anjali dear?" Rahul said jokingly. "Don't be **glib**," Anjali **retorted**. "I don't like jokes about such matters."
- ❑ The salesman **glibly** praised the woman when she tried a gown. The woman, believing his words to be true, decided that the gown must be looking ill-fitting only in the mirror, and bought it. The truth was that the shop did not have a larger size version of that gown.

The words from this and other roots, related with the idea of cutting, are listed below:

Scissors-1: **précis**²¹⁹⁸, **precise**²¹⁹⁹, **concise**²²⁰⁰

Scissors-2: **chisel**²²⁰¹, **incisive**²²⁰², **excise**²²⁰³, scissors

Scissors-3: **abscission**²²⁰⁴, **rescind**²²⁰⁵, **schism**²²⁰⁶, **schizophrenia**²²⁰⁷

Note: The word 'scissors' belongs to the family too.

²¹⁹⁸ **Précis:** (n) a short summary.

Origin: L *pre*, in front + *cidere*, to cut => 'to cut a thing from the front, and the back and the sides till it becomes precise'

²¹⁹⁹ **Precise:** (adj) exact

Origin: same as **precis**.

- ☐ "Did you do this?" The teacher asked. The student started off with an explanation but the teacher cut him short: "I want a **precise** answer. Did you do it? Yes or no?"

²²⁰⁰ **Concise:** (adj) to the point, succinct.

Origin: L *con-* + *cidere*, to cut => 'cut short'

- ☐ **Concise** definitions of words are easier to remember than long-winded ones.
- ☐ He gave his friends a **concise** account of all that had happened since they bade him goodbye the day before.

²²⁰¹ **Chisel:** (n) a tool with a cutting edge on one end of a metal blade which is used in shaping, or working in timber, stone, metal, etc; (v) to cheat somebody out of his money; to cut or shape as if by carving with a **chisel**.

Origin: L *cidere*, to cut -> *cisellum*, a cutting tool -> Fr *cisel*, a cutting tool

- ☐ Rain has the power to cut stones and **chisel** the mountains to grand shapes.
- ☐ "You can mould a mannerism but must **chisel** a character." **Anonymous**
- ☐ "PAINTING, n. The art of protecting flat surfaces from the weather and exposing them to the critic. Formerly, painting and sculpture were combined in the same work: the ancients painted their statues. The only present alliance between the two arts is that the modern painter **chisels** his **patrons**." Ambrose Bierce

²²⁰² **Incisive:** (adj) cutting, sharp.

Origin: L *in-*, into + *cidere*, to cut

- ☐ The teeth in the front of your mouth, used for cutting or **gnawing**, are called incisors.
- ☐ To talk of someone's **incisive** mind is to compliment him on his sharpness.
- ☐ An **incisive** report is one that has penetrated into the heart of a subject and has sharp and clear expression.
- ☐ Any act of **incising** can be called an **incision**, but the word is usually used for the specific context of cutting of or into body tissues or organs (especially by a surgeon).

²²⁰³ **Excise:** (v) to cut out.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *cidere*, to cut

- ☐ A surgeon **excises** a tumour.
- ☐ A Censor Board *wallah* **excises** the hot sex scenes from movies, causing the filmmakers much heartburn.

²²⁰⁴ **Abscission:** (n) the act of cutting off; shedding off of leaves from trees.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *cidere*, to cut -> *scindere*, to divide

- ☐ Most deciduous plants drop their leaves by **abscission** before winter. On the other hand, evergreen plants continuously **abscise** and regrow their leaves.

²²⁰⁵ **Rescind:** (v) to take back; to make null and void.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *scindere*, to divide

- ☐ One party to a contract may violate it—break it, so to speak; but it requires all parties to lawfully **rescind** it.
- ☐ Mrs Sahni phoned her friend and said "I am sorry dear to have to **rescind** my invitation to tea. We have to urgently leave for Bangalore tonight. Perhaps next week, we can have a leisurely dinner together."
- ☐ Widespread protests by the general public forced the king to **rescind** the objectionable order.

²²⁰⁶ **Schism:** (n) a division into two opposing groups.

Origin: Gk *skhizein*, to split

- ☐ The dispute between the two brothers about their ancestral property led to a **schism** in the family.
- ☐ The **schism** between the rich and the poor is widening in India.

²²⁰⁷ **Schizophrenia:** (n) a mental disorder in which a person perceives or expresses reality in an abnormal way. It is marked with unfounded fears, delusions, hallucinations and haphazard speech and thinking.

Origin: Gk *skhizein*, to split + *phrenos*, mind => 'a splitting of the mind'

The etymology of the disease's name is misleading. **Schizophrenia** is not the same as 'split personality syndrome.'

Greek *tomos* **a cutting, a slice**

An 'atom' was called so because it was believed that it could not be cut further.

The cutting up of a plant or an animal in order to study its internal structure was called 'Anatomy' (Gk. *ana-*, up). Later on, the word also started being used for the structure thus studied.

*Tomos ki tukdi-1: tome*²²⁰⁸, *dichotomy*²²⁰⁹

*Tomos ki tukdi-2: epitome*²²¹⁰, *entomology*²²¹¹

Latin *frangere* **to break**

This root is also found in the un-nasalized version, *fragere*.

When a man breaks his bone, he has a 'fracture'. 'Fractions' are broken numbers. When a ray of light enters a different medium, it appears to break. This phenomenon is called 'refraction'.

Now, once upon a time, the word fraction also meant 'a **discord**'. Can you figure out why? That was because a disagreement is a 'breaking off' from the general opinion. When a person disputed with the group and insisted on doing his own thing, he was 'breaking off' from the group, at least on that point. And, what did the group call that person?

Fractious²²¹².

Mia was visiting her friend Rupali at the retail store. Rupali worked as a sales executive there. Mia had been there only five minutes when a **burly** middle-aged man came there and threw a sari on the counter. **Flourishing**²²¹³ a bill in his hand, he complained that his wife had bought the sari a day before and upon going home, had found patches of faded colour in its mid-length. Rupali apologized for the **oversight**²²¹⁴. She quickly proceeded to show him other saris so

²²⁰⁸ **Tome:** (n) a very heavy book; a volume in a series of volumes on a particular topic.

Origin: Gk *tomos*, a slice -> 'a slice of paper' -> 'a book'

- ❑ Vikram Seth's novel 'A Suitable Boy' is a 1,500 page **tome**. It is so well written, however, that one only feels sad when the pages on the right hand side of the **tome** start thinning out.
- ❑ The writer pored over many thick **tomos** of philosophy to get accurate information about his subject.

²²⁰⁹ **Dichotomy:** (n) division into two mutually exclusive categories.

Origin: Gk *dicha*, two + *tomos*, a cutting => 'a cutting into two'

- ❑ He was a man who meant what he said. There was no **dichotomy** between his words and his actions.
- ❑ The philosopher said that the **dichotomy** between science and religion was a false one. He said that actually both were creative attempts to answer the basic questions about man and the universe and throughout the history of mankind, had frequently overlapped.

²²¹⁰ **Epitome:** (n) the best example of something; a brief summary of something.

Origin: Gk *epi-*, into + *tomos*, a cutting => 'to cut into' => 'to cut short so that only the essence remains' => 'the essence of something'

- ❑ The Ellora caves are the **epitome** of Indian rock-cut architecture.
- ❑ Steven Spielberg believes that the movie 'E.T. the Extra-Terrestrial' **epitomizes** his work.
- ❑ Lord Rama is the **epitome** of **virtue**. He is the ideal son, the ideal brother, the ideal husband, the ideal king and the ideal man.

²²¹¹ **Entomology:** (n) study of insects.

Origin: Gk *entomon*, insect + *-ology*, study.

The word 'insect' has been formed from Latin as under:

L *in-*, in + *secare*, to cut => 'an organism with cuts in its body' (An insect's body is segmented into different divisions.)

The formation of the Greek *entomon* is parallel:

Gk *en-*, in + *tomos*, a cutting

²²¹² **Fractious:** (adj) irritated easily; not listening to anybody, unruly.

Origin: from 'fraction' => 'a person who is eager to make fractions, therefore, is easy to fight'

- ❑ The **fractious** horse refused to let anyone mount him.

²²¹³ **Flourish:** (v) to wave in one's hand; to display showily; to grow well.

Origin: L *florere*, to bloom, to flower

²²¹⁴ **Oversight:** (n) unintentional mistake.

Origin: over + sight => 'failing to see something'

that he could select one of them as a replacement. “Yeah, tomorrow I’ll have to come to replace these then,” the customer taunted. “You think I’m free, don’t you? Do you even know how much readjustment I had to do in my schedule to replace this stupid defective sari?” he asked **crankily**²²¹⁵. “We sincerely apologise, sir,” Rupali replied. “What will your ‘sorry’ do now?” The customer replied. “You’ve already caused the harassment that you had to. What a third-rate service your store provides and that too in today’s time of cut-throat competition! People like you can’t survive in this game, just mark my words.” Rupali packed the sari he had **gruffly** pointed to. He continued with his **tirade**²²¹⁶, “Thank your god that I am not complaining about you to the manager. Now if there is any defect in this new sari, be sure you won’t be behind this counter anymore.” Rupali replied, “Please be assured sir. Madam will love this new sari.”

When the man was finally gone, Mia rolled her eyes and said, “Oh my god, that man was as **fractious** as a teething baby! I really feel for his poor wife, who would have to bear his tantrums every day; her life would be living hell! But you tell me Rupali, how do you manage to handle such **irate**²²¹⁷ customers so calmly?”

*Frangere-1: frail*²²¹⁸

*Frangere- 2: frangible*²²¹⁹, *anfractuous*²²²⁰

*Frangere-3: infraction*²²²¹, *infringement*²²²²

²²¹⁵ **Cranky:** (adj) bad-tempered; irritable.

²²¹⁶ **Tirade:** (n) a long, strong-worded, often bitter speech.

²²¹⁷ **Irate:** (adj) angry

- ❑ “Will you ever learn to play your songs on low volume?” The **irate** mother asked her son. She had had to bang his door several times before he finally heard it over the loud music. This had **irked** her further. “There are other people too who live in this house you know, and they do not relish being forced to listen to your **raucous** music day in and day out,” she yelled after turning the music off.

Irk: (v) to irritate.

Raucous: (adj) rough-sounding, harsh.

²²¹⁸ **Frail:** (adj) very delicate, weak, easily broken

Origin: L *frangere*, to break -> *fragilis*, easily broken. The word ‘fragile’ too is from the root *fragilis*.

- ❑ The child screamed with fright as the dog seized her frock in his teeth and dragged on it till the **frail** fabric tore away.
- ❑ Those who have been tossed on the stormy waters of the ocean on a few **frail** planks can alone realize the blessings of fair weather.
- ❑ The ninety year old man could hardly stand up; he was very **frail**.

²²¹⁹ **Frangible:** (adj) breakable

Origin: L *frangere*, to break.

- ❑ Biscuits, chocolate, glass, pottery are examples of **frangible** materials.

²²²⁰ **Anfractuous:** (adj) full of twists and turns, **tortuous**.

Origin: L *am(bi)*, around + *frangere*, to break

- ❑ An **anfractuous** road in the mountains; **Anfractuous** laws; **anfractuous** explanation.

²²²¹ **Infraction:** (n) a breakage or violation of something like a law, right, etc.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *frangere*, to break

- ❑ The principal punished the slightest **infraction** of discipline with great **ruthlessness**.
- ❑ An **infraction** of the laws of nature is called a miracle.
- ❑ The **infraction** of established custom is considered to be a social crime and is punished by the society. For example, a couple who marries in violation of the caste norms often finds it difficult to gain social acceptance. This is not so true about urban India anymore but in the **hinterlands**, the primacy of tradition over individuals persists.

Hinterland: (n) (usually ‘hinterlands’) the less developed parts of a country.

Origin: Gmn *hinter*, behind + *land* => ‘the land left behind in development’. The ‘hind’ in the word ‘behind’ too is from the German word *hinter*. The ‘hind’ legs of a dog are the two legs at its back.

²²²² **Infringement:** (n) a breakage or violation of something, like a law, right, etc.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *frangere*, to break

- ❑ All his life, the son did not **infringe** a single command given by his father. His proud father **flaunted** him as an ideal son to all his relatives and friends.
- ❑ A referee punishes the players who **infringe** the laws.
- ❑ To use an excerpt from a novel without the author’s permission is an **infringement** of his copyright.
- ❑ When the police arrested the politician for making **inflammatory** speeches, he protested before the journalists: “My arrest shows the

Frangere-4: **defray**²²²³, **refrain**²²²⁴

Frangere-5: **suffrage**²²²⁵, **irrefragable**²²²⁶

Frangere-6: **fracas**²²²⁷, **refractory**²²²⁸

totalitarian nature of this government. They are **gagging** me because I spoke against them. This is an **infringement** of my right to freedom of speech and expression.”

Totalitarian: (adj) exercising total control, not giving any rights to anybody else; dictatorial.

²²²³ **Defray:** (v) to pay.

Origin: L *de-*, out + *frangere*, to break -> *fracta*, things broken -> ‘cost of things broken’ => ‘to pay out the costs of things broken.’

- The **magnanimous** landlord promised to **defray** the expenses of primary education of all the poor children whose parents were unable to do so.
- Rudra’s great desire was to go to Harvard. His father promised to support him if he succeeded in obtaining a scholarship, which would in part **defray** the cost of his residence there.
- Sheela Devi was quite worried about how she would arrange the wedding of her daughter. Her dead husband’s pension was her sole income and all the savings had already been spent on the girl’s education. Her sister, who was quite rich, sensed her worry and came to meet her with her husband, Saurabh. “Mia is my daughter too,” she said to Sheela with a smile. “Saurabh and I want to **defray** the expenses of her wedding. Please let us share the joy of marrying Mia.”

²²²⁴ **Refrain:** (v) to stop oneself from doing something; (n) a phrase in a song or poem which is repeated often and is usually sung by a chorus.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *frangere*, to break => ‘a line at which a para of a song breaks’

- It was only with supreme self-control that the girl **refrained** from shouting at the man.
- One should **refrain** from passing unnecessary comments about anybody.
- “Hum honge kamyab” was the **refrain** of all the protesting students.

²²²⁵ **Suffrage:** (n) the right to vote.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *frangere*, to break => ‘to make noise in support of someone’

- Like most countries, Iran elects its President by adult **suffrage**. However, the will of the people is **subservient** to the will of one unelected person—the supreme spiritual leader—who can veto any decision of the elected President.

Subservient: (adj) serving under somebody; inferior.

Origin: *a sub-*, under

²²²⁶ **Irrefragable:** (adj) that which cannot be disputed.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *re-*, back + *frangere*, to break => ‘opposing’

- Sherlock Holmes investigated the scene of the rich landlord’s **gory** death as the police inspector curiously watched on. After the great detective had satisfied himself, he turned to the inspector and asked her why he had arrested the dead man’s wife. “Oh because there is **irrefragable** evidence that she is indeed the murderer, sir,” the inspector replied. “Hah,” Sherlock Holmes said with **disdain**, “Don’t you see that your ‘**irrefragable** evidence’ has been placed there for this very purpose?”
- The **atheist** told the priest that he was ready to start believing in God if the priest could give him an **irrefragable** proof of God’s existence.

²²²⁷ **Fracas:** (n) noisy fight or disturbance.

Origin: L *frangere*, to break => ‘to create a crashing sound’

- A village woman with a child sparked a **fracas** in the District Magistrate’s office when the office staff did not allow her to meet the DM. She refused to leave till her request was granted. The staff had to call women police to take her away.
- There was an **unseemly fracas** on the staircase between Mr Kulkarni of flat number 202 with Mr Ramanujam of flat number 302, much to the **aggravation** of all the other residents of the building. The **brouhaha** had arisen over Mr Kulkarni’s accusation that Mr Ramanujam’s wife deliberately threw garbage into their balcony from above.

Brouhaha: (n) a very noisy situation.

- There was **brouhaha** in the Parliament when the government announced the third hike in petrol prices in four months.

²²²⁸ **Refractory:** (adj) stubborn, unmanageable.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *frangere*, to break

- The inexperienced teacher found it impossible to manage the **refractory** students of her class. They were only a few but they did not let even the rest of the class study. She had tried every trick she could think of—making them stand outside the class, giving them **punitive** homework, writing notes to their parents, reporting them to the principal, ignoring them—but they refused to be affected.
- The little boy refused to bathe at all costs. The young mother tucked up the sleeves of her kurta, scooped him up, put him into the bath tub and with her big white muscular arms, washed the **refractory** child who continued to fight against the soap and water.

Latin *crepare* to crack

‘*The Parasite*’ is a novelette by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. Its **protagonist** is Austin Gilroy, a young **physiologist**²²²⁹. He comes in contact with Miss Penclosa, a middle-aged woman with **psychic** powers. Unfortunately for him, she falls in love with him and puts him in a **trance** to make him respond to her love. When Gilroy comes back to his senses, he **rebuffs**²²³⁰ her angrily. She then starts using **occult** to trouble him. Here is an excerpt from his diary entry:

“April 16. The woman is **ingenious** in her **torments**. She knows how fond I am of my work, and how highly my lectures are thought of. So it is from that point that she now attacks me. It will end, I can see, in my losing my professorship, but I will fight to the finish. She shall not drive me out of it without a struggle.

I was not conscious of any change during my lecture this morning save that for a minute or two I had a dizziness and swimminess which rapidly passed away. On the contrary, I congratulated myself upon having made my subject (the functions of the red corpuscles) both interesting and clear. I was surprised, therefore, when a student came into my laboratory immediately after the lecture, and complained of being puzzled by the **discrepancy** between my statements and those in the text books. He showed me his note-book, in which I was reported as having in one portion of the lecture championed the most **outrageous** and unscientific **heresies**. Of course I denied it, and declared that he had misunderstood me, but on comparing his notes with those of his companions, it became clear that he was right, and that I really had made some most **preposterous** statements. Of course I shall explain it away as being the result of a moment of **aberration**, but I feel only too sure that it will be the first of a series. It is but a month now to the end of the session, and I pray that I may be able to hold out until then.”

‘Discrepancy’, as you may have seen, is a word from the root *crepare*. The *crepare* words are:

Crepare-1: **decrepit**²²³¹, **discrepancy**²²³²

Crepare-2: **craven**²²³³, **crevice**²²³⁴

Latin *pars* a share, part

The word ‘part’ itself is from this root, as are ‘particle’, ‘party’ and ‘participate’.

The other words are:

²²²⁹ **Physiologist**: (n) a person who specializes in the functions of living organisms and their body parts.

Origin: Gk *physis*, nature + *-ology*, study

²²³⁰ **Rebuff**: (v) to reject rudely or bluntly, often making fun of the one making the offer.

²²³¹ **Decrepit**: (adj) very weak, as if by old age; falling down, coming apart.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *crepare*, to crack

❑ The neglected old mosque from the Mughal era was headed for **decrepitude**.

❑ The **decrepit** old man lived in a **decrepit** house.

²²³² **Discrepancy**: (n) an inconsistency or difference.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *crepare*, to crack => ‘to crack apart’ => ‘a gap between two things’

❑ There was a **discrepancy** between the heading of the report and its content.

❑ There was a **discrepancy** between what the murdered man’s wife had said to the police and what she said in the court.

²²³³ **Craven**: (adj) cowardly

Origin: L *crepare*, to crack -> *crepantare* -> Fr *cravantar*, to crack, crush

❑ When the dacoit threatened to set all the huts of the villagers on fire and to kill all the young children, the **craven** villagers fell to his feet, pleading for mercy and agreed to fulfil all his demands. Had they shown some courage, the hundred villagers could have overpowered the six dacoits, but of course, courage was precisely what they lacked. The villagers were **craven**.

²²³⁴ **Crevice**: (n) a crack.

Origin: L *crepare*, to crack

❑ The water seeped into the sewer from the road through a **crevice**.

❑ The smuggler hid the gold biscuits in a **crevice** in the dried earth in his garden and placed flowerpots over it.

Pars-1: **Parse**²²³⁵, **partisan**²²³⁶, **partake**²²³⁷

Pars-2: **bipartite**²²³⁸, **repartee**²²³⁹, **coparcener**²²⁴⁰

IE yeug- to join

The Sanskrit words *Yoga* (union with God), *yog* (sum total, joining together), *yojak* (one that joins), *yojan* (joining), *yukt* (joined with), *sanyukt* (joint), *sanyog* (union), *sanyojak* (conjunction), *yugal* (a pair, couple), *yugum* (a pair, couple), *jod* (sum total, joint) and *Jodi* (a pair) are from this root.

Very close to *yugum* is the Latin *jugum* which is used for a yoke, because a yoke couples two bulls together ('yoke' too comes from *yeug-*). The word **conjugal**²²⁴¹ is used for people who have been yoked together for life. It makes marriage look almost tragic!

The 1965 Hindi movie *Leader* had a song that is loved till date:

*Apni aazaadi ko hum hargiz mita sakte nahin
Sar kata sakte hain lekin sar jhuka sakte nahin*

Rabindranath Tagore too wrote 'Where the mind is without fear and the head is held high...into that heaven of freedom, my Father, let my country awake.'

In both these examples, the image of a head held high **denotes** freedom, and that of a bowed head, loss of freedom. The Romans had the same symbolism.

Whenever they won a war, they held a public ceremony called **Subjugation**²²⁴² in which every defeated soldier, stripped almost naked, was made to pass under a yoke. To do so, he had to bow his head, and that is when the vic-

²²³⁵ **Parse:** (v) to break a sentence into its component parts.

²²³⁶ **Partisan:** (n) one who shows partiality or bias towards one side

- ❑ Mr Sharma was always a **partisan** of marriage and for the past two years had been advising his son to take a life partner.
- ❑ An Indo-Pak cricket match was being played at the Wankhede Stadium, Mumbai. The crowd was a **partisan** of the Indian team. It howled wildly at every little achievement of India and entirely forgot its good manners and groaned when a Pakistani cricketer did well.

²²³⁷ **Partake:** (v) to take a part of or to take a part in.

Origin: part + take

- ❑ It was her only son's wedding. Everything was going smoothly. Everyone was happy. The widowed Kuldip Kaur Kohli looked upwards and, with tears welling in her eyes, smiled at the sky. She was sure that her husband was **partaking** of their joy from above.
- ❑ The studious boy never **partook** in sports.
- ❑ Only the villagers could **partake** in the religious ceremony. No outsiders were allowed.

²²³⁸ **Bipartite:** (adj) divided into two parts, shared by two, joint.

- ❑ The Shimla Agreement was a **bipartite** agreement between India and Pakistan.

²²³⁹ **Repartee:** (n) a witty reply; a conversation marked by witty comments and replies from both sides.

- ❑ Birbal was known for his sharp wit and **repartee**. Emperor Akbar never could trap Birbal in a situation from which Birbal could not extricate himself with a clever answer.
- ❑ Every Indian wedding is livened by **repartee** between the bride's sisters and friends and the groom's brothers and friends.

²²⁴⁰ **Coparcener:** (n) a person who shares an inheritance with someone else.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *pars*, share

²²⁴¹ **Conjugal:** (adj) related with marriage.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *jugum*, yoke = 'yoked together'

- ❑ In their domestic and **conjugal** lives, most writers fare badly because they are obsessed with their work and have little time or need for anything else.
- ❑ Their dreams of **conjugal** bliss were shattered as soon as their **temperaments** clashed.

²²⁴² **Subjugation:** (n) act of bringing under control.

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *jugum*, yoke => 'under the yoke'

torious Roman soldiers would **jeer** at him and **catcall** him mercilessly. This **demeaning** ritual marked his fall from a proud warrior to a humiliated slave.

The Latin *jungere*, meaning 'to join' is the nasalized version of the IE root.

The point of joining is called a 'joint' (!) or a 'junction'. A **juncture**²²⁴³ too is a joining point, but is used mostly in the sense of a critical point in time. So, the *junct-* words in 'railway **junctions**' and '**junctures** in the life of a man' cannot be interchanged.

An 'adjoining' bathroom is joined to the bedroom. 'Conjoined' twins are joined together, at their head or an arm or their back. A word that joins two sentences together, into one bigger sentence, is called a 'conjunction', like 'and', 'but', 'because' and 'however.'

The other words from this root are:

*Jungere-1: junta*²²⁴⁴, **rejoinder**²²⁴⁵

*Jungere-2: enjoin*²²⁴⁶, **injunction**²²⁴⁷, **adjunct**²²⁴⁸.

Also from *yeug-* is the Latin word *iuxta* meaning 'close by'. It is found in **juxtapose**²²⁴⁹, **jostle**²²⁵⁰ and *adjust*. To 'adjust' a thing initially meant 'to put it close to' a system and see if it fits; it later acquired the sense of 'making a thing fit the system.'

- ❑ From their childhood, girls are taught rules that **subjugate** them. They grow up into **stereotypical** females- obedient and utterly dependent.
- ❑ The British **subjugated** India.

²²⁴³ **Juncture:** (n) a critical point in time.

Origin: L *jungere*, to join => 'a joining point between two phases'

- ❑ The star batsman got injured at a crucial **juncture** of the game and as a result, the team lost the match.

²²⁴⁴ **Junta:** (n) a group of persons that rules a country after seizing the power from the legal government.

Origin: L *jungere*, to join => 'a meeting, a council'

- ❑ Myanmar is ruled by military **junta**.

²²⁴⁵ **Rejoinder:** (n) a reply.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *jungere*, to join

- ❑ Typical Hindi movie scene. A gundaa is teasing the heroine.
Heroine: Tumhaare ghar mein kyaa maa, behen nahi hai?
Gundaa's **rejoinder:** Maa, behen to hai; lekin biwi nahi hai!

²²⁴⁶ **Enjoin:** (v) to order to do or not do something.

Origin: L *en-*, to + *jungere*, to join => 'to join to something' => 'to bind'

- ❑ Ravi was 16 when he met 19 year old Diya and struck a friendship with her. The friendship deepened. His father came to know and **enjoined** him from seeing or even corresponding with Diya until he was 21. Ravi obeyed this **injunction** to the letter.

²²⁴⁷ **Injunction:** (n) a binding order to do or not do something.

Origin: from **enjoin**

- ❑ 'Brahmi Masale' was a very successful brand owned by the Patel **Condiment** Company. However, when the owner of the company died, it went to the elder son, Jignesh. Angered by that, the younger Sarvesh started his own **condiment** company and sold his products under the brand name 'Brahma Masale.' The elder brother moved to the court and demanded an **injunction** against the use of that name by his brother. The judge accepted his argument that the similarity in trademarks caused considerable customer confusion, leading to business losses for the **plaintiff**, and **enjoined** Sarvesh Patel from using the name 'Brahma Masale' for his product.

²²⁴⁸ **Adjunct:** (n) assistant, a person who works without having permanent status in the institution; a less important attachment to a main thing.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *jungere*, to join

- ❑ An **adjunct** professor; an **adjunct** doctor

²²⁴⁹ **Juxtapose:** (v) to put side by side for comparison.

Origin: L *iuxta*, close by + *poser*, to place

- ❑ The child **juxtaposed** the childhood photographs of his mother and her twin sister and tried to find out differences between the two.

²²⁵⁰ **Jostle:** (v) to push, bump, shove against others.

IE leig- to bind

Film: Sholay

Scene: Veeru on the water-tank

The anxious villagers ask the drunk, **doddering** Veeru why he wants to commit *soosaaet*? He starts telling them his tale of woes:

Yeh Basanti hai na, iss se mera lagan hone wala tha...

‘Lagan’ is a bond, specifically a bond of love or marriage. When the *lagan* fails, we say ‘*wo dono alag ho gaye hain.*’

‘Alag’ means unbounded; on the other hand, ‘*lagaana*’ means ‘to bind’. When you feel a ‘*lagaav*’ towards someone, you feel a bond with him or her.

A social, legal or moral requirement that a man is bound to fulfill is called an ‘obligation’. For example, a land tax that all the peasants were obliged to pay was called ‘*lagaan*’.

‘Religion’ got its name from the fact that it binds the humans back to their creator(s). And, a ‘ligament’ is a band of fibrous tissue that connects two bones.

The other words from this root are:

*Leig-1: Ligature*²²⁵¹, *colligate*²²⁵²

*Leig-2: lien*²²⁵³, *liaison*²²⁵⁴

*Leig-3: liability*²²⁵⁵, *rally*²²⁵⁶, *alloy*²²⁵⁷

Origin: L *iuxta*, close by

At the railway station, the Englishman was **jostled** by the crowd.

Crews of TV channels and press photographers **jostled** with the police to take pictures of the film star.

²²⁵¹ **Ligature:** (n) bond; the act of binding; a thread or a rope used for binding.

Origin: L *ligare*, to bind

The man committed suicide by hanging himself from the fan using a **ligature**. His family tried to show that his death was normal but the **ligature** marks on his neck aroused the suspicion of a neighbour and he informed the police.

²²⁵² **Colligate:** (v) to bind together.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *ligare*, to bind

²²⁵³ **Lien:** (n) the legal right to hold the property of a debtor till he pays back his debt or to sell the property in case he is unable to repay the debt.

Origin: L *ligare*, to bind -> *ligamen*, a bond

A bank has a **lien** over the land whose title deed was submitted to it by the farmer as security at the time of taking a loan.

The Supreme Court ruled that an advocate has no **lien** for his unpaid fees over the case files and other relevant papers entrusted to him by his former client.

²²⁵⁴ **Liaison:** (n) a contact between two organizations for improved communication or cooperation; a secret love affair.

Origin: L *ligare*, to bind

When the man discovered his wife’s **liaison** with his best friend, he felt utterly cheated and never could trust anybody again.

The retired colonel acted as a **liaison** between the hijackers of an Indian Airlines plane and the government.

²²⁵⁵ **Liability:** (n) a disadvantage; a debt.

Origin: L *ligare*, to bind -> Fr *lier*, to bind => ‘something that you are legally bound to do, for example, pay a debt.’

The widow desperately tried to find a job but her lack of a graduation degree was a huge **liability**.

²²⁵⁶ **Rally:** (v) to draw together; to come together.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *ad-*, towards + *ligare*, to bind

The politician **rallied** all his supporters to show his strength to the government.

All of Subodh’s friends **rallied** behind him in his hour of need.

²²⁵⁷ **Alloy:** (n) a substance formed by melting or fusing two or more metals into one.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *ligare*, to bind => ‘to bind together’

IE **syu-** **to bind, sew**

In Hindi, *sutra* means a thread and the act of using the *sutras* to stitch the cloth is called *silna* or *seena*. The line formed by the stitched thread on the cloth is called *seen* in Hindi and seam in English. The lady who puts that seam there, that is the one who sews the cloth, is therefore called a seamstress. The **seamy**²²⁵⁸ side, of cloth and of life, is always unpleasant to look at.

The following words too are from this root:

Suture²²⁵⁹, **couture**²²⁶⁰, **accouter**²²⁶¹

The ‘hymen’ is a thin membrane that covers the entrance to a woman’s vagina. Most cultures demand, or at least assume, that their brides are **virgins** and so, they associate the rupturing of hymen with the wedding night. You can now understand why, in Greek mythology, the god of marriage was called Hymen. And, by the way, have you understood how hymen, which sounds so different from *syu-* could be from this root? Remember, that in Greek and Persian, the Indo European ‘s’ changes into ‘h’.

IE **ned-** **to tie, bind**

What do you call the cotton string with which you tie your *pajama* or *salwar*? ‘*Naada*’ (the ‘d’ here has the same sound as in *naadi*, meaning nerve).

The knot that you tie with the *naada* is called *nodus* in Latin. The words from *nodus* are:

Node²²⁶², **noose**²²⁶³, **denouement**²²⁶⁴

The act of tying a *naada* is **depicted** by the Latin word *nectire*.

When you tie two things together, you are said to ‘connect’ them. The British prefer to spell connection as connexion. As you can see, replacing *nect-* into *nex-* makes no difference to the pronunciation of the word. *Nect-* and *nex-* are the two forms of the same root. So, let me now present the other words from *nectire*:

²²⁵⁸ **Seamy**: (adj) unpleasant, dirty.

Origin: from ‘seam.’ The underside of a garment, where the seams show, is not attractive to look at. That is why, we hide it from the view.

❑ The movie ‘Fashion’ depicts the **seamy** side of the fashion world.

²²⁵⁹ **Suture**: (v) to stitch the edges of a wound together; (n) such a stitching.

Origin: L *suere*, to sew

❑ The surgeon **sutured** the **incisions** he had made for the surgery.

²²⁶⁰ **Couture**: (n) dress designing; the dresses designed by a fashion designer.

Origin: L *con-*, together + *suere*, to sew

❑ The fashion designer was well known for his **couture** sensibility. The collection that he put forth at the India Fashion Week ranged from t-shirts and jeans to trendier, sexier **couture** like gowns and skirts.

²²⁶¹ **Accouter**: (v) to equip with the required clothes, equipment, etc.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + **couture**

❑ A traveller through the rough terrains of high mountains needs to be well **accoutred** both physically and mentally.

²²⁶² **Node**: (n) a knot, a centre point.

❑ The lymph **nodes** are small knot-like structures distributed throughout our body, which host various immune cells.

❑ The town was made as a **nodal** point for providing government services to all surrounding villages.

²²⁶³ **Noose**: (n) a loop formed in a rope by a running knot which slides downwards and thus binds tighter as the rope is pulled.

Origin: L *nodus*, knot -> Fr *nous*, knot

❑ The hangman put the **noose** in the convict’s neck and pulled the rope.

²²⁶⁴ **Denouement**: (n) the final resolution of the plot of a story.

Origin: L *de-*, undo + *nodus*, knot => ‘to untie the knotted and tangled plot’

❑ In the movie *Hum Aapke Hain Kaun*, the viewers feel sad when the heroine and the hero **renounce** their love for the sake of the hero’s elder brother to whom the heroine is **betroted**. However, in the end, due to the **intervention** of the hero’s pet dog, everybody realizes the love of the hero and the heroine and marries them. The audience too feels glad at this happy **denouement**.

Nexus²²⁶⁵, **annexation**²²⁶⁶, **annexure**²²⁶⁷

Latin *stringere* **to bind, draw tight**

A strong thread that is used to bind a bundle of sticks is called a ‘string’. A **subdued** bahu of a rich family looks all around to see if anyone is listening and then tells us with **dismay**, “*humein koi aazadi nahin hai. Hamari saas humein baandh ke rakhti hai.*” She is being **figurative** of course. Such a mother-in-law who binds her *bahus* to unbending Do’s and Don’ts is ‘strict’.

The other words from this root are:

*Stringere-1: stringent*²²⁶⁸, *astrigent*²²⁶⁹

*Stringere-2: strangle*²²⁷⁰, *stricture*²²⁷¹, restriction

*Stringere-3: restrain, constraint*²²⁷², *strait*²²⁷³

²²⁶⁵ **Nexus:** (n) link, connection.

❑ The sting operation carried out by a newspaper revealed the nexus between the police and the drug mafia.

²²⁶⁶ **Annexation:** (n) making a territory a part of another.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *nectare*, to bind

❑ The sting operation carried out by a newspaper revealed the nexus between the police and the drug mafia.

❑ The Mughals **annexed** South India.

❑ The British defeated the Nawab of Bengal and **annexed** Bengal.

²²⁶⁷ **Annexure:** (n) an additional document attached to a main document; an **appendix**.

²²⁶⁸ **Stringent:** (adj) very strict; tight.

Origin: L *stringere*, to draw tight

❑ “The character of every act depends upon the circumstances in which it is done. The most **stringent** protection of free speech would not protect a man in falsely shouting fire in a theatre, and causing a panic.” Justice Oliver Wendell Holmes, US Supreme Court

²²⁶⁹ **Astringent:** (adj) a medicinal substance that tends to draw the tissue together; very strict or severe.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *stringere*, to draw tight

²²⁷⁰ **Strangle:** (v) to kill by pressing the throat so tightly that the air supply is cut off.

Origin: L *stringere*, to draw tight

²²⁷¹ **Stricture:** (n) a restriction; a severe criticism.

Origin: L *stringere*, to draw tight -> *strictus*, tight

❑ She could not tolerate the many **strictures** of her hostel and decided to live as a paying guest somewhere near the college. “At least there will be no one to tell me when to come and when to go and what to eat and what to wear,” she remarked.

²²⁷² **Constraint:** (n) restriction

Origin: L *con-*, + *stringere*, to bind => ‘something that binds’

❑ The English teacher gave the class a fun task. She wrote the word ‘INTELLIGENT’ on the blackboard and asked them to make as many words as they could from the alphabets occurring in the word but with two **constraints**—1) The word must be at least three letters long. 2) Any alphabet could be used only as many number of times as it occurred in ‘intelligent.’

²²⁷³ **Strait:** (n) (usually straits) a condition of great difficulty.

Origin: L *stringere*, to bind -> *strictus*

❑ After the death of her husband, who was the sole breadwinner of the family, the widow was in desperate **straits**. She had no income and three children to feed. Not finding any other solution to the **predicament**, she decided to give her children for adoption, thinking that that way, they would at least have a good education and future.

Exercise

ak-, pungere, truncare, cidere, tomos, frangere:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He knew how to handle *angry* customers.
(a) irate (b) irksome (c) raucous (d) cranky (e) refractory
2. His *sharp and bitter* words stayed in her mind for long afterwards.
(a) trenchant (b) darted (c) punctilious (d) poignant (e) acerbic
3. The politician *talked very smoothly but insincerely*.
(a) was a trencherman (b) talked irrefragably (c) was poignant (d) was glib (e) was obtuse
4. The lawyer filed a petition that the offensive word be *removed* from the court's judgment.
(a) truncated (b) retrenched (c) infringed (d) defrayed (e) expunged
5. He had the *ability* to handle establish a business single-handedly.
(a) acuity (b) obtuseness (c) acumen (d) infraction (e) incisiveness
6. There is a *big difference* between theory and practice.
(a) a tirade (b) a trench (c) an epitome (d) a fracas (e) a dichotomy
7. He *cheated* his customers.
(a) chiseled (b) defrayed (c) goaded (d) anesthetized (e) expunged
8. He lied to his parents without *feeling any uneasiness about doing a wrong thing*.
(a) compunction (b) infraction (c) suffrage (d) fracas (e) dichotomy
9. He was arrested for *breaking* the traffic rules.
(a) infringing (b) defraying (c) entrenching (d) retrenching (e) rescinding
10. The profit *exceeded* the businessman's expectations.
(a) flourished (b) rescinded (c) chiseled (d) surpassed (e) truncated
11. He *cut short* his name.
(a) trenched (b) truncated (c) entrenched (d) expunged (e) rescinded
12. The fruit had a *bitter* taste.
(a) an acrimonious (b) an acute (c) an anfractuious (d) an acrid (e) a trenchant
13. He was *the perfect example* of confidence.
(a) the totalitarian (b) the refrain (c) the oversight (d) the epitome (e) the trencherman
14. There was a *split* between the two families.
(a) a schism (b) a fracas (c) a brouhaha (d) an abscission (e) a tirade
15. He *worsened* the situation by picking up a fight with the only man who could have helped him out of it.
(a) exacerbated (b) entrenched (c) darted (d) goaded (e) truncated

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (e) 3. (d) 4. (e) 5. (c) 6. (e) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (d) 11. (b) 12. (d) 13. (d) 14. (a) 15. (a)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Excessively fond of one's wife: U_____
2. Shedding off of leaves from plants: A_____
3. Fear of heights: A_____
4. A severe and sudden fit of pain or anger etc.: P_____

5. A hard shell covering the back of a tortoise: C _____
6. A long, strong-worded, bitter speech: T _____
7. A stick with a sharp end used to drive cattle etc: G _____
8. The less developed parts of a country: H _____
9. Study of insects: E _____
10. The peak: A _____
11. Very strict and attentive to even small details of conduct: P _____
12. The best example or embodiment of something: Q _____
13. Loss of ability to feel pain: A _____
14. The right to vote: S _____
15. A person who eats a lot: T _____

Answers:

uxorious, abscission, acrophobia, paroxysm, carapace, tirade, goad, hinterlands, entomology, acme, punctilious, quintessence, anesthesia, suffrage, trencherman

Crepare, pars, yeug-, leig-, syu-, ned-, stringere:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. He had no *debts*.
(a) injunctions (b) ligature (c) lien (d) liabilities (e) rejoinders
2. The *link* between the politicians and the criminals was well-known.
(a) juncture (b) nexus (c) annexure (d) stricture (e) noose
3. The newspaper story revealed the *dirty* side of cricket.
(a) sutured (b) stringent (c) partaken (d) craven (e) seamy
4. The Supreme Court judge *made a severe criticism of* the police force.
(a) issued a repartee against (b) passed a stricture against (c) parsed (d) rebuffed (e) subjugated
5. The people in the crowd *pushed each other* to catch a glimpse of the film star.
(a) rallied (b) colligated (c) jostled (d) enjoined (e) juxtaposed
6. They enjoyed a *happy, married life*.
(a) injunctions (b) an enjoined life (c) juxtaposition (d) liaison (e) conjugal happiness
7. He *made the small state a part of his own kingdom*.
(a) accoutered the small state (b) juxtaposed the small state (c) colligated the small state (d) annexed the small state (e) accoutered the small state
8. He *gathered* all his strength to face the crowd.
(a) rallied (b) juxtaposed (c) jostled (d) rebuffed (e) parsed
9. The government took *strict* action against the lawbreakers.
(a) stringent (b) bipartite (c) seamy (d) accoutered (e) strangling
10. He was a *coward*.
(a) partisan (b) adjunct (c) seamy (d) craven (e) accoutered

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (e) 4. (b) 5. (c) 6. (e) 7. (d) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A group of persons that rules a country after seizing the power from the legal government: J_____
2. A medicinal substance that tends to draw the tissue together : A_____
3. A binding order to do or not do something: I_____
4. The legal right to hold the property of a debtor till he pays back his debt: L_____
5. To stitch the edges of a wound together: S_____
6. A person who shares an inheritance with someone else: C_____
7. A contact between two organizations for improved communication or cooperation: L_____
8. A reply: R_____
9. The final resolution of the plot of a story: D_____
10. To put side by side for comparison: J_____

Answers:

junta, astringent, injunction, lien, suture, coparcener, liaison, rejoinder, denouement, juxtapose

QUANTITIES AND VALUES

Latin *modus* **measure, size, limit**

Something that is kept within limits is ‘moderate’; when things—whether praise or expenses—get excessive, the word ‘immoderate’ is used. A man who shows a moderate estimate of his own abilities or talents is called ‘modest’; the one who lacks this endearing quality, who thinks that he is God’s gift to the mankind for whose creation the whole world should thank the Almighty every day, is definitely ‘immodest’.

The ‘modulus’ of 8 as well as -8 is 8; modulus is a measure of just the absolute size of a quantity. When somebody calls you their role ‘model’, they mean that they look up to you as the measure or standard for their own achievements. The other words from this root are:

*Modus-1: Mode*²²⁷⁴, *modulate*²²⁷⁵, *modicum*²²⁷⁶

*Modus-2: modish*²²⁷⁷, *outmoded*²²⁷⁸

²²⁷⁴ **Mode:** (n) a way of doing something; a state.

Origin: L *modus*, measure => ‘measure of tone in music’ => ‘manner in which music is played’ => ‘manner’

- Modes** of transportation
- The cell phone is in silent **mode**.

²²⁷⁵ **Modulate:** (v) to control the amount of.

Origin: L *modus*, measure -> *modulare*, to measure, to control the amount of

- A speaker who does not **modulate** his voice according to his content sounds very boring and **monotonous**.
- Scientists discovered that Green tea can **modulate** the effect that cigarette smoking has on the lungs.

²²⁷⁶ **Modicum:** (n) a small amount.

Origin: L *modus*, measure => ‘some measure’

- “If you have even a **modicum** of self-respect, then hand me your resignation right now!” The manager of a private company told the clerk who had been caught taking bribe from a rival company.
- Once he achieved a **modicum** of success, his head started floating above the clouds.

²²⁷⁷ **Modish:** (adj) stylish, in current fashion.

Origin: mode + *-ish* => ‘one who keeps up with the current state (of fashion)’

- The model looked fabulous in a **modish** yellow sari teamed with designer dark glasses, high heels and a silver handbag.

²²⁷⁸ **Outmoded:** (adj) out of fashion, outdated; (v) to make outmoded.

Origin: out + mode => ‘no longer the way of doing things’

- ‘Spare the rod and spoil the child’ is an **outmoded** philosophy.
- Dressing styles that are in **vogue** today become **outmoded** tomorrow and after some years, come in **vogue** again, only to be **outmoded** yet again.

*Modus-3: commodious*²²⁷⁹, *accommodate*²²⁸⁰

Latin *pendere* to weigh, hang

Latin *ponderare* to weigh

Can you think of why the same Latin word would **denote** both weighing and hanging? Think before you jump to the next line (the answer is not there anyway).

The ‘pendulum’ that we see in clocks and study in Physics derives its name from **pendulous**²²⁸¹. A ‘pending’ decision hangs in the air as does a ‘pendant’. An **impending**²²⁸² danger hangs over one’s head. An **appendage**²²⁸³ is an extra thing hung to the main body, like the human organ ‘appendix’.

Imagine a middle-aged, middle-class man standing with his arms outstretched. Treating his arms like the branch of a tree, two naughty kids are hanging down from each. (Such is the **plight** of a family man!) His four kids are ‘dependent’ on him (L. *de-*, down).

So, could you find the answer? It lies in the process of weighing. We suspend a weighing balance from the centre of the horizontal beam. Both its pans are empty and hang at the same level. Then, we put a known weight in one pan, and start putting the thing-to-be-weighed in the other pan, continuing till both the pans hang in balance once more. Thus, we weigh by hanging.

The words from the ‘weight’ sense of the root are:

²²⁷⁹ **Commodious:** (adj) having lot of space.

Origin: L *com-* + *modus*, manner => ‘suitable manner’ => ‘convenient’

- A **commodious** car, a **commodious** flat, a **commodious** auditorium, a **commodious** handbag

²²⁸⁰ **Accommodate:** (v) to make space for, to do a favour, adapt.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *com-* + *modus* => ‘to make the manner suitable’

- The car can **accommodate** upto seven people.
- Normally all the four friends used the common PC for an equal number of hours. However, when one of them needed to prepare a presentation or a report, the others **accommodated** and let her have the PC to herself.
- The old woman could not **accommodate** to the new technology.

²²⁸¹ **Pendulous:** (adj) hanging down loosely, oscillating between two choices.

Origin: L *pendere*, to hang

- The **pendulous** wind chimes made sweet music as the breeze swayed them to and fro.
- Chandeliers are usually **pendulous**.
- Mango trees have **pendulous** fruit.

²²⁸² **Impending:** (adj) going to happen, threatening to happen.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *pendere*, to hang => ‘to hang over’

- The girl and the boy met at their standard meeting place. Her marriage had been fixed elsewhere. This was their last meeting. They promised not to **blight** these last moments of togetherness with thoughts of their **impending** separation and tried to fill in as much happiness in these finite moments as they could.
- Everyone filled the fuel tanks of all their automobiles to the **brim** when they heard news of an **impending** hike in petrol and diesel prices.
- Another way of saying the above sentence: Everyone filled the fuel tanks of all their automobiles to the **brim** when they heard that a hike in petrol and diesel prices was **imminent**.

Brim: (n) the top edge of a hollow container.

²²⁸³ **Append:** (v) to attach as a supplement. A thing which is **appended** to the main body is called an **appendage**.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *pendere*, to hang => ‘to hang on’

- The candidate **appended** two letters of recommendation to his resume.
- An **appendix** at the end of a book contains extra text which supplements the subject matter of the book.

*Hanging weights 1: compendium*²²⁸⁴, *compensate*²²⁸⁵, *recompense*²²⁸⁶

*Hanging weights 2: spendthrift*²²⁸⁷, *dispense*²²⁸⁸, *indispensable*²²⁸⁹

²²⁸⁴ **Compendium:** (n) a summary of a lengthy subject which, despite being short, covers all the main topics; a list of various things.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *pendere*, to weigh => 'to put all the weighty topics together'

- An encyclopedia is a **compendium** of knowledge.
- The NCERT History book of Class X is a **compendium** of Indian history under the British rule.
- The professor of English prepared a **compendium** of commonly misused English words.

²²⁸⁵ **Compensate:** (v) to recompense.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *pendere*, to weigh => 'to weigh two things together' => 'to make two things equivalent in weight or value.'

- An employer **compensates** the hard work of his employees by paying them an equivalent amount of money. The more work, or the more important work, that one does, the more money he gets as **compensation**.

²²⁸⁶ **Recompense:** (v) to repay; (n) a repayment.

Origin: L *re-* + *com-*, together + *pendere*, to weigh => 'to weigh two things together' => 'to make two things equivalent in weight or value.'

- Roohi agreed to marry Shraavan because she felt that he deserved a **recompense** for his years of devoted love. Her friends, however, were divided on the issue. A few said she would be happy with Shraavan but the others felt that marrying just to **recompense** somebody was not right.
- The villagers demanded **recompense** from the cold drink factory located just outside their village, for polluting the river that they drew water from and for contaminating their soil.
- The company **recompensed** its employees for work-related calls that they made from their personal phones.
- Twenty-three people were killed in a **stampede** at the Jagannath Puri temple. The Chief Minister of Orissa announced a **compensation** of ₹ 2 lakh to the **kin** of the dead and ₹ 1 lakh to the **grievously** injured. However, an angry mother fumed, "They think they can **recompense** my son's death with 2 lakh? How dare they put a price tag on somebody's life?"

Stampede: (n) a sudden panicky rush of a crowd of people or a herd of animals.

Grievously: (adv) causing great grief or pain.

²²⁸⁷ **Spendthrift:** (n) a person who spends money wastefully.

Origin: spend + thrift. Etymology of spend:

L *ex-*, out + *pendere*, weigh => 'to weigh out (money)'. 'Spend' is an alternate form of 'expend'. This is why, 'spending' and 'expenditure' are synonyms.

Thrift: (n) the habit of spending money wisely and trying to save as much as possible. **Frugality** also means the same. A person who shows **thrift** or **frugality** is called **thrifty** or **frugal**.

²²⁸⁸ **Dispense:** (v) to hand out, to distribute.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *pendere*, to weigh => 'to weigh apart each man's share' => 'to distribute each man's share'

- A **dispensary** was traditionally a place where medicines were weighed out.
- Only chemists have the right to **dispense** medicines.
- "Be careful whose advice you buy, but be patient with those who supply it. Advice is a form of **nostalgia**. **Dispensing** it is a way of fishing the past from the disposal, wiping it off, painting over the ugly parts and recycling it for more than it's worth." Kurt Vonnegut
- Only 24% respondents in a survey agreed that India should **dispense** with death penalty. The phrase 'to **dispense** with' means 'to do away with.'

²²⁸⁹ **Indispensable:** (adj) absolutely necessary, that which you cannot do without.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *dispensable* => 'that which cannot be handed out to others'

- When Shraavan went to his boss and told him that he wanted to quit, his boss almost **genuflected** before him and begged him to stay. He was **indispensable!** His salary was doubled with immediate effect and he stayed, feeling quite proud to be so valued. However, after some time, he started realizing that because he was so **indispensable**, he would never get promoted—there was simply no one else who could fill the void he would leave!

Hanging weights 3: **stipend**²²⁹⁰, **pensive**²²⁹¹, **counterpoise**²²⁹²

Hanging weights 4: **equipoise**²²⁹³, **propensity**²²⁹⁴, **penchant**²²⁹⁵

Now we come to the *ponderare* words. The most common among them is **pound**, a unit of weight. The other *ponderare* words are:

²²⁹⁰ **Stipend:** (n) an allowance given to a student or an intern in an organization.

Origin: L *stips*, coin + *pendere*, to weigh => 'to weigh out coins'

❑ The Research Fellows of IIM Bangalore get a monthly **stipend** of ₹ 22,000.

²²⁹¹ **Pensive:** (adj) lost in thought or a dream, usually with a slightly sad look on the face.

Origin: L *pendere*, to weigh => 'to weigh out different options' => 'to think'

❑ Watching the four-year-old photographs of her college farewell made Shruti **pensive**. How detached she had become from most of her friends, friends who she had thought were "forever" at the time those photographs were clicked! The four years since college had made her realize that no one really had the time to bother about anyone else. All were busy in their own lives. She knew this, yet, at some level, she still hadn't accepted it. It still hurt to think that her best friends didn't have time for her, that she was alone. She **pensively** began humming the Mukesh song:

*Kal koi mujhko yaad kare kyun koi mujhko yaad kare?
Masroof zamaana mere liye kyun waqt apnaa barbaad karey?
Main pal do pal ka shaayar hoon, pal do pal meri kahaani hai.
Pa do pal meri hasti hai, pal do pal meri jawaani hai.*

²²⁹² **Counterpoise:** (n) a counterbalancing weight; (v) to put an equal weight in the opposite scale of a weighing balance.

Origin: L *contra-*, opposite + *pensum*, weight

²²⁹³ **Equipoise:** (n) state of having equal weights on both scales of a weighing balance; a weight which causes the state of equipoise.

Origin: L *equi-*, equal + *pensum*, weight

❑ A **counterpoise** is also called an **equipoise** because it is the weight which brings about the state of **equipoise**.

❑ In India, there is an institutional **equipoise** between the executive (that is, the government), the legislature (the Parliament and state legislatures) and the judiciary (the courts). This means, that all the three institutions are equally important and powerful. No one has more powers than the other two.

²²⁹⁴ **Propensity:** (n) natural inclination, tendency.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *pendere*, to hang => 'to hang forward' => 'to tilt to one side' => 'a natural tilt towards something'

❑ Girls usually have a **propensity** to play with dolls. Boys usually have a **propensity** to play with cars and guns.

❑ When the pampered prince Salim showed a **propensity** to wine and women, his father, Emperor Akbar, **banished** the young man to the battlefield so that by enduring hardships, the prince would become responsible.

²²⁹⁵ **Penchant:** (n) strong liking for something.

Origin: L *pendere*, to hang -> *pendicare*, to hang => 'to tilt to one side'

❑ I have a **penchant** for words.

❑ The Chief Minister of Purva Pradesh had a **penchant** for erecting stone statues of herself and her politica **mentor**. In her five years in office, she got erected 2,000 statues made and installed all over the state. This averages to more than one statue per day!

Ponder²²⁹⁶, **ponderous**²²⁹⁷, **preponderance**²²⁹⁸ and **imponderable**²²⁹⁹

Have you heard of Tarzan? Chances are you have. Tarzan was a **feral**²³⁰⁰ child who was raised in the jungles of Africa by wild apes. The following passage is taken from the novel ‘*Tarzan the Untamed*.’ It features two animals—Numa, a lion and Sheeta, a panther. Just before this scene, Sheeta was planning to attack Tarzan, who was lying head down in a dusty track. Numa saw Sheeta making his plans and became **livid** because he thought that only he, the king of the jungle, had the right to hunt an ape-man. What happened next?

“Numa had not felt like fighting; but the daring of Sheeta **kindled** his ferocious brain to sudden fire. How dare he try to touch his master’s food? That was a direct challenge to his, Numa’s, authority! Numa’s eyes **glared** with rage, his **undulating** tail **snapped**²³⁰¹ to stiff erectness as, with a frightful roar, he charged at the **presuming** panther!

Numa’s attack came so suddenly and from so short a distance that Sheeta had no chance to turn and **flee**. So he tried to fight Numa with his **talons** and jaws; but the odds were all against him. Numa had larger **fangs**²³⁰², more powerful jaws and huge **talons**. Then, there was the **preponderance** of the lion’s great weight. Sheeta was crushed at the first clash. Numa closed his jaws upon Sheeta’s throat.

²²⁹⁶ **Ponder:** (v) to think over something very deeply.

Origin: L *ponderere*, to weigh => ‘to weigh the different aspects of some issue’ => ‘to think deeply’

- ❑ The husband came home with the news that he had lost his job. His company was suffering losses and so had suddenly decided to **retrench**. His wife gave him a glass of water, consoled him and then together, they both **pondered** over what to do next.
- ❑ “What do you want to be when you grow up Mili?” Eight-year-old Mili’s uncle asked her at the dinner table. Mili began thinking. “Mili, you haven’t thought till now?” Her uncle joked. “Everyone knows what they want to be by the time they are five!” “Uncle, I’ll tell you tomorrow,” Mili declared confidently. She **pondered** over the question the whole night and the next morning, and then, went to her Uncle and told him, “I want to be a teacher.”

²²⁹⁷ **Ponderous:** (adj) very heavy (for the body or the mind).

Origin: L *ponderere*, to weigh => ‘having a lot of weight’

- ❑ Every morning, little children drag themselves to school with **ponderous** schoolbags on their back.
- ❑ During the swyamvara of Sita, her father King Janak placed a large, **ponderous** bow of Lord Shiva in the centre of the hall and declared that any man who strung the bow would be chosen as Sita’s husband. Many **valorous** princes were present there but they were much shocked and **dismayed** to find that they could not even lift the bow! Then, they all tried to lift it together but it proved too **ponderous** even for their collective strength. Then, Rama stepped forward, said a prayer, lifted the bow and strung it. Everyone was **astounded**.
- ❑ The story was boring. It was too **ponderous**. It used unnecessary heavy words (and too many of them) and long, complex sentences and was full of philosophy. Reading it seemed as if someone had put a huge stone on the brain.

²²⁹⁸ **Preponderance:** (n) state of having greater weight, numbers, power or importance than others.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *ponderere*, to weigh => ‘before others in weight’ => ‘Number 1 in weight’ => ‘having the greatest power or importance’

- ❑ Zhaq’s **preponderance** of manpower and war equipment led to its victory against its neighbouring kingdom, Aundh.
- ❑ There is a **preponderance** of males (60%) in the Indians who travelled abroad in 2009.
- ❑ Most Indian parents and teachers believe Science and Maths to be **preponderant** over other subjects. An ‘A’ grade in English or Arts or History is often not considered to be as special as an ‘A’ in Maths or Science.

²²⁹⁹ **Imponderable:** (adj) that which cannot be accurately measured or evaluated.

Origin: L *im-*, not + *ponderare*, to weigh => ‘that which cannot be weighed’

- ❑ The full impact of the use of computers, laptops and cell phones on our body is **imponderable**.
- ❑ “Which party will win how many seats in an election?” This is an **imponderable** question. Many media organizations conduct sample surveys before elections and based on those, predict election results, but they are often wrong.
- ❑ Hearts are **imponderable**. No one can know what lies in someone’s heart.

²³⁰⁰ **Feral:** (adj) wild

- ❑ There are two types of animals—domesticated and **feral**.
- ❑ Mowgli too was a **feral** child. In fact, the character of Tarzan was based on Mowgli.

²³⁰¹ **Snap:** (v) to move with a sudden sharp sound, to speak quickly or sharply.

- ❑ The door **snapped** shut.
- ❑ As soon as Rachna Mathur came home, her two children started complaining about each other to her. “Oh shut up!” she **snapped**.

²³⁰² **Fang:** (n) the tooth of a venomous snake by which it injects poison; (here) a long, sharp tooth of a carnivorous animal with which it tears apart the flesh of its prey.

The lion rose, shaking himself, and stood above the torn and **mutilated**²³⁰³ body of Sheeta. He **glared** down at the dead panther and then, in a fit of rage, he seized and **mauled** the body only to drop it in a moment, lower his head, voice a single terrific roar, and turn toward the ape-man.”

Latin *par* equal

Two students who are at ‘par’ have equal academic achievement. They are comparable. The word ‘compare’ comes from L. *com-*, with + *par*. When we compare two things, we see if they are equal to each other.

A man always hangs out with his equals. That is why, they are called his **peers**²³⁰⁴. After a young man’s **peers** bring him a surprise birthday cake and he cuts it, they all **partake** of it.

A ‘pair’ too is formed of equal objects. Parvati’s father refused to pair her with Sarvit, saying that she should, at least, have seen the **disparity**²³⁰⁵ in their status before falling in love. But Parvati remained **adamant**. She married Sarvit. Her father disowned her.

To marry someone below one’s rank in the society was considered to be **disparaging**.²³⁰⁶

Latin *minor* less, small

A ‘minor’ is a person whose age is lesser than the legal age of responsibility. Minor matters are the matters of lesser importance. When we do six ‘minus’ five, we make six smaller by five units.

The Hindu mythology tells the story of a **diminutive**²³⁰⁷ saint called Agastya. Once two demons hid at the bottom of the ocean and thus were beyond the reach of the gods. So, Indra, the king of the gods, appealed to Saint Agastya to help them. The tiny **savant** drank the entire ocean and held it within him till the demons were destroyed. Then, in order to save the sea animals who were dying too, he urinated the entire ocean. The mythology says that this is the reason why the sea water is **brackish**²³⁰⁸.

²³⁰³ **Mutilate:** (v) to remove or damage body parts.

- ❑ **Colossal** statues of Buddha stood in Bamiyan, Afghanistan. In March 2001, the Taliban tried to destroy them by firing at them with anti-aircraft guns. This **mutilated** the statues but did not **obliterate** them. So, then they blew them off with dynamite.

²³⁰⁴ **Peer:** (n) one’s equal in age, rank or qualification.

Origin: L *par*, equal

- ❑ Most young people are introduced to drugs and alcohol by their **peers**. They feel **peer-pressure** to drink and smoke and worry that if they don’t do it, they will not be considered cool enough.

A related word is **peerless**.

Peerless: (adj) he who has no equals.

- ❑ It is an ultimate compliment to call someone a **peerless** writer or sportsman or painter or actor or whatever he is.

²³⁰⁵ **Disparity:** (n) inequality, difference.

Origin: L *dis-*, not + *parity*

Parity: (n) equality

Origin: L *par*, equal

- ❑ There is a huge **disparity** in the developmental status of urban and rural India.
- ❑ The Union of Private Schools Teachers demanded salary **parity** with the teachers of government schools.

²³⁰⁶ **Disparage:** (v) to lower the rank or reputation of; to speak in a belittling manner.

Origin: L *dis-*, away + *par*, equality => ‘to marry away from an equal status’ => ‘to lower one’s rank’

- ❑ The critics **disparaged** the movie saying that it was boring, preachy and badly made. One reviewer even called it ‘torturous’! These **disparaging** remarks shook the confidence of the director of that movie. It was his first movie.
- ❑ The advertisement of the detergent soap SuperWash **disparaged** its rival brand Bubble.

²³⁰⁷ **Diminutive:** (adj) small in size; (n) small thing or person; (n) **diminution**; (v) **diminish**.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *minuere*, make small => ‘to take down in size and make smaller’

- ❑ Mother Teresa was a **diminutive** but remarkable woman.
- ❑ Cutting down of jungles by humans has led to a **diminution** of the natural habitat of many wild animals.

²³⁰⁸ **Brackish:** (adj) somewhat salty.

The other words from this root are:

Minor-1: **minute**²³⁰⁹, **minutiae**²³¹⁰, **comminute**²³¹¹

Minor-2: **minuscule**²³¹², **mince**²³¹³, **miniature**²³¹⁴

IE *pau* few, little

The words **paucity**²³¹⁵, **pauper**²³¹⁶, ‘poor’, ‘poverty’, ‘impoverished’ and **pusillanimous**²³¹⁷ have come from this root as have our words *pau* or *payiyaa* (one-fourth of a measure, hence very small), *paai* (the smallest Indian coin, equivalent to one-third of the paisa), and in the ‘ph’ variant of the root, *phuar* (little rain) and *pheni* (small vermicelli).

The Indians call their little one their *put* (found in Rajput as well), and their still little one their *pota* (grandson). In Latin and Greek too, the root *pau* has yielded words for children. Like **puerile**²³¹⁸. Or like the following words.

²³⁰⁹ **Minute:** (adj) extremely small in size or importance, related with fine details.

Origin: L *minutus*, small.

- The unit of time called ‘minute’ is so called because it is an extremely small unit of time.
- Bacteria are **minute** organisms that can be seen only under a microscope.
- The tear in the sari was minor. It could be detected only on **minute** examination.

²³¹⁰ **Minutiae:** (n) small details.

Origin: L *minutus*, small

- The film magazines, and now even national newspapers, eagerly report on even the **minutiae** of the film star’s lives.

²³¹¹ **Comminute:** (v) to powder into minute particles; (adj) powdered.

Origin: L *com-* + *minuere*, to make small

- Nanoparticles are produced by small scale mills that can **comminute** solids to sizes below 20 nanometer.

²³¹² **Minuscule:** (adj) very small.

Origin: L *minus*, less -> *minisculus*, very less

- A survey found that the number of men who shaved their chests was **miniscule**—a mere 2% of all the respondents.

²³¹³ **Mince:** (v) to cut (meat etc) into very small pieces, to say something difficult in softer words so that it doesn’t sound too harsh; to walk with very short steps so as to look delicate.

Origin: L *minuere*, to make small

- “I do not **mince** words Juhi,” Juhi’s brother said. “I believe in saying things as they are and the truth is that I did not find your boyfriend trustworthy.”
- Seekh kabab is made from **minced** meat.
- The girl walked on the stage with **mincing** steps, believing that would make her look like a delicate princess.

²³¹⁴ **Miniature:** (adj) on a small scale; (n) a small scale representation of something.

Origin: L *minium*, red colored lead -> *miniare*, to paint with red lead -> It. *Miniatura*, a small painting which illustrates a manuscript. The sense of ‘small’ got attached to the word under the influence of the *minor* family words, to which the word **miniature** seems to belong.

- Bonsai is the art of growing **miniature** trees.
- The boy loved his **miniature** cars as much as his father loved his real cars.

²³¹⁵ **Paucity:** (n) the amount is lesser than required, scarcity.

Origin: L *paucus*, few

- The family could not marry off their daughter well because of a **paucity** of money.

²³¹⁶ **Pauper:** (n) a very poor person.

Origin: L *paucus*, little -> *pau-* + *parere*, to produce => ‘one who produces little’ => ‘has little income’

- Everyone was greatly inspired by the rise of the businessman from a **pauper** to a crorepati.

The other words from the root *parere* are: parents, **oviparous**, **viviparous**, **viper**.

²³¹⁷ **Pusillanimous:** (adj) becoming afraid easily, cowardly.

Origin: L *pusillus*, very small + *animus*, spirit => ‘very small-spirited’ => ‘faint- hearted’

- The **pusillanimous** travellers through the jungle started shivering the moment they heard a distant roar of a lion. They got their nerve back only when a young man in their group laughingly revealed that the sound had come from a recording in his music player.

²³¹⁸ **Puerile:** (adj) related to a child or childhood; so immature that looks childish.

Origin: L *puer*, little boy

- Shashi was a full grown 23-year-old married woman but mindwise, she was still **puerile**. She totally lacked maturity.

The Greek *paidos* means ‘child.’ This word is similar to the Hindi word *paudha* (a child plant). The phrase ‘*paidaa karna*’, giving birth, is also probably related because one just-born is always very small.

Paediatrics²³¹⁹, **paedophile**²³²⁰ and **orthopaedics**²³²¹ are some of the words from this root.

All children look up to their teachers, who lead them to knowledge and a good future. That is why teachers were called pedagogues, and the art of teaching, pedagogy. However, as the education system became more rigid, and original thought and curiosity of the children was **stifled**²³²² and the teachers began to insist that what they said and what was written in the books was true and was the only truth and began to scold or scorn the student who raised even the slightest “if” or “but”, the **prestige** of the word **pedagogue**²³²³ too declined. The word **pedant**²³²⁴ too had come from the same root, had meant the same and so, deteriorated similarly.

Latin **vanus** **empty**

To ‘vanish’ is to pass out of existence, emptying the space previously occupied. Beauty, the physical one, will vanish one day; it is **evanescent**²³²⁵, **ephemeral**²³²⁶.

The Latin phrase *vana gloria* means ‘empty pride.’ The resulting English word is **vainglory**.²³²⁷ A **vainglorious** woman **vaunts**²³²⁸ her beauty or her wealth or whatever she thinks she has and acts as if she is God’s gift to mankind. “No dear,” her **exasperated** husband finally does dare to **disabuse** her of her **delusions**, “not many people agree”. ‘Vain’ is the shorter version (only in spelling, not in attitude) of **vainglorious**, with the associated noun form ‘vanity’.

²³¹⁹ **Paediatrics**: (n) branch of medicine that deals with children. Alternate spelling: **pediatrics**. Adjective: **paediatric** or **pediatric**
Origin: Gk *paidos*, child + *-iatric*, healing

²³²⁰ **Paedophile**: (n) an adult who is sexually attracted to children. Alternate spelling: **pedophile**. Adjective: **paedophilic**.
Origin: Gk *paidos*, child + *-phile*, loving

²³²¹ **Orthopaedics**: (n) the branch of medicine that deals with bones and the tissue associated with them. A doctor who specialises in **Orthopaedics** is called an **Orthopaedist**. Alternate spelling: *-ped-* instead of *-paed-*.
Origin: Gk *ortho-*, straight + *paidos*, child

²³²² **Stifle**: (v) to suffocate or suppress.

²³²³ **Pedagogue**: (n) a teacher of children; one who teaches by strictly adhering to the books and the rules and scolds his students if they show any imagination or curiosity or question what is written in the books.
Origin: Gk *paidos*, child + *-agogue*, leader => ‘one who leads a child (towards education)’ => ‘a child’s teacher’
The word **pedagogue** has acquired a negative **connotation** with time but **pedagogy** remains neutral, and simply means ‘the art or way of teaching.’

²³²⁴ **Pedant**: (n) one who teaches by strictly adhering to the books and the rules and scolds his students if they show any imagination or curiosity or question what is written in the books. Adjective: **pedantic**
Origin: Gk *paidos*, child + *-agogue*, leader → L *paedagogantem* → It. *Pedante*

²³²⁵ **Evanescent**: (adj) vanishing or likely to vanish.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *vanescere*, to vanish

☐ The following quote from the movie ‘*Kal ho na ho*’ inspires us to live fully today because life is evanescent. We do not know whether we’ll be there tomorrow or not:

“Aajaaj ek zindagi aur jeelo, aaj ek hassi aur baant lo, aaj ek sapna aur dekhlo, aaj ek aasoon aur peelo, aaj ek dua aur maanglo ...
Aaj ...kya pata..... kal ho na ho ”

²³²⁶ **Ephemeral**: (adj) short-lived; living for only one day.

Origin: L *epi-* upon + *hemer*, day => ‘living only for one day’

☐ It is not how long you live but what you do with your life that matters. Flowers are **ephemeral**, thorns stay forever. Yet, it is flowers that people love, not thorns.

²³²⁷ **Vainglory**: (n) excessive pride in oneself or one’s achievements; (adj) **vainglorious**.

Origin: L *vana gloria*

²³²⁸ **Vaunt**: (v) to boast.

“The British were better than these Indian rulers,” little Chhotu’s grandfather would often tell him. “In vain did I go to jails! In vain did I waste my youth!” A ‘vain’ struggle for independence is one that has proved empty and ineffective. The old freedom fighter’s affection for his leaders had clearly **waned**²³²⁹. Their failure to live upto their promises and the **wanton**²³³⁰ corruption and **nepotism**²³³¹ had **disaffected** him.

Latin **cavus** **hollow**

The ‘caves’ in the mountains and the ‘cavities’ in the teeth are both from this root as are the words **cavern**²³³², ‘concave’ and **excavate**²³³³. All of them are cousins of our humble *kuaan*.

The word ‘decoy’ too is from the root *cavus*. Read on and see if you can find its meaning from the context. The passage is taken from the book ‘*The Descent of Man*’ by Charles Darwin.

“In one section of the genus Turnix, **quail**-like birds, the female is invariably larger than the male (being nearly twice as large in one of the Australian species), and this is an unusual circumstance...In Turnix taigoor of India the male, the whole tone of the **plumage** is lighter and less pronounced than that of the female. The female appears to be noisier, and is certainly much more **pugnacious** than the male; so that the females and not the males are often kept by the **natives** for fighting, like game-cocks. As male birds are exposed by the English bird-catchers for a **decoy**²³³⁴ near a trap, in order to catch other males by exciting their rivalry, so the females of this Turnix are employed in India. When thus exposed, the females soon begin their loud purring call, which can be heard a long way off, and any females within ear-shot run rapidly to the spot, and start fighting with the bird. In this way from twelve to twenty birds, all breeding females, may be caught in the course of a single day.”

IE **pel-** **to fill**

The word ‘complete’ has come from the Latin *complere*, which means ‘to fill up, fulfill.’ The ‘compliments’ that we shower on our friends and our guests or our hosts at a party are also from *complere*, and therefore signify nothing more than the fulfilment of a social duty!

The other words from *plere* are:

²³²⁹ **Wane:** (v) decrease in strength or intensity.

Origin: related to the *vanus* words.

☐ The man could never recover from his disease, and day by day, his strength **waned**.

²³³⁰ **Wanton:** (adj) reckless, unrestrained, immoral.

☐ “**Nuptial** love makes mankind; friendly love perfects it; but **wanton** love corrupts it.” Francis Bacon

²³³¹ **Nepotism:** (n) favouritism shown to one’s family or friends in business, politics, etc.

Origin: L *nepotem*, nephew, descendant. The word nephew itself is from *nepotem*. The Latin root *nepotem* is a cousin of the Sanskrit root *napat* which means ‘grandson’ and is found in the Hindi word *naati*, daughter’s son.

²³³² **Cavern:** (n) a large, usually underground, cave.

Origin: L *cavus*

☐ A fearful little child was still warning Hatimtai to go back, when the ground started shaking and a sudden duststorm almost blinded them. “He...he is c...coming...the demon...,” the child ran away mid-sentence. Soon, the demon **loomed** over Hatimtai and, revealing his **cavernous** mouth, roared, “In my kingdom, not the **minutest** trace of life can survive. You are my food of the day!”

²³³³ **Excavate:** (v) to dig out the contents of something so that only a hollow cave or pit is left behind.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *cavus*, hollow => ‘to hollow out’

☐ The **archaeologists** **excavated** many **relics** of the Harappan civilization from a small village in Punjab.

²³³⁴ **Decoy:** (n) something or someone that attracts a bird, animal or person towards a hidden trap or shooter.

Origin: L *cavus* -> *cavea*, cage -> Dutch *kooi*, cage. In Dutch, *de kooi* meant ‘the cage’ => ‘something that leads a bird to a life in the cage.’

*Plere the pool-1: complement*²³³⁵, *comply*²³³⁶, *supplement*²³³⁷, *replete*²³³⁸

*Plere the pool-2: deplete*²³³⁹, *expletive*²³⁴⁰, *implement*

'Supply' too is from *plere*. It is a combination of the prefix *sub-*, from below, and *plere*, and so means 'to fill up.'

Notice how similar the English words 'fill' and 'full' are. This closeness also holds in Latin. *Plere* means to fill and *plenus* means full.

Did you shout 'plenty' the moment you saw *plenus*? Great if you did! The other words based on this idea of fullness are:

*Plenus in plenty-1: plenary*²³⁴¹, *plenitude*²³⁴²

*Plenus in plenty-2: plenum*²³⁴³, *pleonasm*²³⁴⁴

²³³⁵ **Complement:** (v) to make complete or whole; (n) a thing that makes complete or whole.

Origin: L *com-* + *plere*, to fill => 'to make full'

❑ The husband has the qualities that the wife doesn't have and vice versa. They **complement** one another beautifully.

²³³⁶ **Comply:** (v) to fulfil all wishes or demands set before one; (adj) **compliant**.

Origin: L *com-* + *plere*, to fill => 'to ful-fill'

❑ It is the duty of every citizen to **comply** with the laws of his land.

²³³⁷ **Supplement:** (v) an addition which fills a deficiency, strengthens a thing or makes it complete. Such a thing is also called a **supplement**.

Origin: L *sub-*, up from below + *plere*, to fill => 'to fill up from below.' The word 'supply' too has the same etymology.

❑ Dietary **supplements** offer the nutrients that are otherwise missing or deficient in a person's regular diet, so that all of the body's nutritional needs are fulfilled.

²³³⁸ **Replete:** (adj) filled to the top, full.

Origin: L *re-* + *plere*, to fill => 'filled up'

❑ Every part of India is **replete** with corruption scandals.

❑ The movie was **replete** with jokes. Not a minute of the movie was without a funny one-liner.

²³³⁹ **Deplete:** (v) to empty out the reserves of.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *plere*, to fill => 'to make less full' => 'to empty out'

❑ The oil and gas reserves of the earth are being **depleted**.

²³⁴⁰ **Expletive:** (n) a word or expression that does not contribute to the meaning of the sentence but which is interjected by the speaker to express his emotion or usually, just out of habit. These are usually **profane** words and are beeped out on TV and replaced with #\$\$@ marks in print.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *plere*, to fill => 'words used to fill out a sentence.'

²³⁴¹ **Plenary:** (adj) full, absolute; having full attendance.

Origin: L *plenus*, full

❑ The laws of the school's governing body stated that the decision of a principal's appointment or removal could be taken only in a **plenary** meeting.

²³⁴² **Plenitude:** (n) state of being full or having plenty.

Origin: L *plenus*, full

❑ India is blessed with a **plenitude** of natural resources.

²³⁴³ **Plenum:** (n) a meeting which has full attendance; state of being full.

Origin: L *plenum*, full

❑ The school's governing council held a **plenum** to decide on the next principal of the school.

²³⁴⁴ **Pleonasm:** (n) use of more words than are necessary to express an idea.

Origin: Gk *poly*, many -> *pleon*, more -> *pleonasein*, more than needed

❑ 'Bright light', 'happy laughter', 'burning fire', 'completely impossible' are examples of **pleonasm**s. You don't need to say 'bright' before light, because light is always bright. Similarly, the reason why you are calling a thing 'impossible' is because it is completely undoable there is no thing which is 'Partially impossible'.

See also, **tautology**.

Plenus in plenty-3: **plenipotentiary**²³⁴⁵, **replenish**²³⁴⁶, **plethora**²³⁴⁷

Another member of the family is the Latin word *plous*, which means ‘more.’ It is found in ‘plural’, ‘plus’, **nonplussed**²³⁴⁸ and ‘surplus’.

The Greek cousin of *plous* is *polus* and it means ‘much, many’. That is where the oft-used prefix *poly-* comes from.

High society ladies and gentlemen often **contort** their noses at the common people their air-conditioned cars whizz by. And then, one of them starts telling the others about what happened on her recent **jaunt** to a fashion designer. “The clothes he was showing me were so down-market, you know, all the stuff that those Bollywood heroines and the soap queens wear and that, within days, you can see being **flaunted** by every middle-class girl and her aunty! I strictly told him, ‘Either show me something nice or I’m leaving. Don’t show me what the hoi polloi wears.’”

The Greek word *hoi* means ‘the’ and *polloi*, ‘many’, and so ‘hoi polloi’ means ‘the many’, that is the masses or the common people.

Latin too has a word for the masses derived from the *pel-* family of roots. That word is *plebs*. It is found in **plebian**²³⁴⁹ and **plebiscite**²³⁵⁰.

The IE ‘P’ often changes into ‘r’ in Sanskrit. So, the Sanskrit members of the family are *poora*, complete, *poorak*, a supplement or filler, *pooran*, act of filling and *sampooranta*, completeness, perfectness.

Latin *fluere* to flow

The ancient astrologers believed, most still do, that the destiny of humans was controlled by stars. When asked how, they explained that the stars **emanated**²³⁵¹ an **ethereal**²³⁵² fluid which streamed towards the earth and touched each individual,

²³⁴⁵ **Plenipotentiary**: (adj) having or granting full power; (n) a person who has full power to act on behalf of another.

Origin: L *plenus*, full + *potentum*, power

- ☐ The Government of India gave **plenipotentiary** power to the Ambassador of India to Afghanistan to negotiate on its behalf with the hijackers who had taken an Indian Airlines plane to Kandahar.

²³⁴⁶ **Replenish**: (v) to make full again.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *plenus*, full

- ☐ The traveller through the mountains looked for a natural spring to **replenish** his empty water bottle.

²³⁴⁷ **Plethora**: (n) overabundance, having much more than needed.

Origin: Gk *plethora*, fullness.

- ☐ Mumbai has a **plethora** of restaurants and pubs.

²³⁴⁸ **Nonplussed**: (adj) confused so much that one does not know what to say or think or do.

Origin: L *non plus* => ‘nothing more’ => ‘a state in which a person can say nothing more, cannot think of what else he might say’

- ☐ The teacher stopped in the middle of a sentence and threw a chalk at Dino. “What am I teaching?” she asked.

Dino, woken so abruptly from his daydream, stood up. “Gravity ma’am,” he said.

“What about gravity?”

He was **nonplussed**.

²³⁴⁹ **Plebian**: (n) belonging to the common people. Opposite of **patrician**.

Origin: L *plebs*, the multitudes => ‘the common people’

²³⁵⁰ **Plebiscite**: (n) a direct vote in which all the valid voters in a population vote in favour of or against a proposal. This vote is not to elect a representative of the people but to know their opinion about some important issue related to them.

Origin: L *plebs*, common people + *scire*, to know => ‘to know the opinion of the common people’

A **plebiscite** is also called a **referendum**.

- ☐ JNU held a students’ **referendum** to decide whether the university’s statute should be amended to allow a Vice-Chancellor to hold office for a second term. A total of 2,741 students cast their vote out of which 2,563 voted against the proposed amendment.

²³⁵¹ **Emanate**: (v) to flow out of something; to send out.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *manare*, to flow

²³⁵² **Ethereal**: (adj) extremely light or delicate; heavenly.

Origin: L *aether*, the upper air => ‘a hypothetical massless substance which the earlier physicists believed occupied all space and conducted electromagnetic radiations through space.’

thereby altering his state. This invisible **emanation** ‘flowing’ in to the earth from the stars above was called an ‘influence’. The word influence is still used for a power that produces an effect without itself being seen or perceived.

The disease ‘influenza’ was called so because it was **attributed**²³⁵³ to the ‘influence’ of stars.

Fluere-1: **flux**²³⁵⁴, **fluent**²³⁵⁵, **fluctuate**²³⁵⁶

Fluere-2: **mellifluous**²³⁵⁷, **superfluous**²³⁵⁸

Fluere-3: **affluence**²³⁵⁹, **confluence**²³⁶⁰, **diffluent**²³⁶¹

- ²³⁵³ **Attribute:** (v) to say ‘it is caused by’ or ‘it is made by’ or ‘it is made in’ or ‘it is a quality of’; (n) a quality or a symbol associated with a person.
- ❑ The humidity levels during the day oscillated between 13 and 37 per cent. The meteorology department **attributed** it to build up of western disturbances over the city.
 - ❑ The Ramayana is **attributed** to the poet Valmiki.
 - ❑ The Ramayana’s written form is **attributed** to the first century A.D.
 - ❑ Emotional maturity is a necessary **attribute** of good leaders.
- ²³⁵⁴ **Flux:** (n) flow; continuously changing from one state to another.
Origin: L *fluere*, to flow → *fluxus*, a flowing
- ❑ The world is in a **flux**. Every moment, many people are born and many die.
- ²³⁵⁵ **Fluent:** (adj) flowing like a stream, able to speak easily and smoothly.
Origin: L *fluere*, to flow => ‘coming out of the mouth like a flowing stream of words’
- ❑ Ram was **fluent** in French. He also spoke Persian **fluently**.
 - ❑ The dancer performed beautifully. Her spins, jumps and lifts were so **fluent** that it seemed that her body seemed like a flowing stream.
- ²³⁵⁶ **Fluctuate:** (v) to rise and fall like a wave; to be unstable
Origin: α *fluefe*, to flow → *fluctus*, a wave => ‘to be like a wave’
- ❑ A UPS (Uninterrupted Power Supply) saves a computer from damage due to voltage **fluctuations**.
- ²³⁵⁷ **Mellifluous:** (adj) flowing with honey; so sweet-sounding that it seems as if honey is flowing out of the speaker’s mouth
Origin: L *mel*, honey + *fluere*, to flow
- ❑ Her **mellifluous** words charmed the audience.
- Another word from the root *mel* is **molasses**.
Molasses: (n) the thick brown syrup that remains after sugar crystallizes out of sugarcane juice.
- ²³⁵⁸ **Superfluous:** (adj) more than needed.
Origin: L *super-*, over + *fluere*, to flow => ‘that which flows over the brim of a container’ => ‘the extra liquid which was not needed’
- ❑ The definition of the word ‘**chaff**’ is ‘to tease in a good-natured way with no intention to offend.’ Here the phrase ‘with no intention to offend’ is **superfluous** because that is what ‘good-natured way’ means too.
- ²³⁵⁹ **Affluence:** (n) extreme wealth. An extremely rich person is called **affluent**.
Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *fluere*, to flow => ‘towards whom money flows in a stream’
- ²³⁶⁰ **Confluence:** (n) flowing together of two or more streams; the place where two or more streams coming from different directions **converge**.
Origin: L *con-*, together + *fluere*, to flow
- ❑ The Triveni Sangam in Allahabad is a **confluence** of three rivers—Ganga, Yamuna and the **mythical** Saraswati.
- ²³⁶¹ **Diffluent:** (adj) tending to flow away.
Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *fluere*, to flow
- ❑ A **diffluent** glacier is a small flow of ice which breaks away from a large glaciers.

Fluere-4: **effluent**²³⁶², **influx**²³⁶³, **reflux**²³⁶⁴, **fluvial**²³⁶⁵

IE *teu-* **to swell**

Do you know why a thumb is called a 'thumb'? Because it is the swollen finger! Similarly, the swollen part of the leg is called a 'thigh'. 'Thousand' is a swollen hundred (how imaginative!). A swollen tissue is called a 'tumour'.

The other swollen-up words are:

Tumid²³⁶⁶, **detumescence**²³⁶⁷, **protuberance**²³⁶⁸

Latin *satis* **enough, sufficient**

'Satisfy' is the most common word from this root. Then, we have **satiare**²³⁶⁹ and **satiety**²³⁷⁰.

Three more words, not from this root, but related to it are:

²³⁶² **Effluent:** (n) that which flows out; (adj) flowing out.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *fluere*, to flow

- ☐ The cold drink factory dumped its **effluents** in the fresh water stream flowing nearby, thus **rendering** the stream's water too polluted for human or animal consumption.

²³⁶³ **Influx:** (n) inflow

Origin: L *in-*, in + *fluere*, to flow => 'to flow in'

- ☐ The **influx** of Bangladeshi migrants from the porous Indo-Bangladesh border worried the security agencies.

Opposite: **outflux**

²³⁶⁴ **Refluent:** (adj) flowing back; ebbing; (n) **reflux**.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *fluere*, to flow

- ☐ The shells that were swept onto the beach by the **surging** tide were not taken back by the **refluent** tide.

²³⁶⁵ **Fluvial:** (adj) related with a river.

Origin: L *fluere*, to flow -> *fluvius*, that which flows, that is, a river

- ☐ **Fluvial** god, **fluvial** transport

²³⁶⁶ **Tumid:** (adj) swollen body part; inflated language.

Origin: L *tumere*, to swell

- ☐ If you put a cell from a living organism in a water solution, water will move into the cell and the cell will become **tumid**.

²³⁶⁷ **Detumescence:** (n) reduction of swelling in a body part.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *tumere*, to swell => 'swelling coming down'

- ☐ The king spent his last days in a shrinking empire and a correspondingly **detumescent** glory.

²³⁶⁸ **Protuberance:** (n) something that is swollen and is bulging out beyond the surrounding surface; (v) **protuberate**.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *tumere*, to swell

- ☐ One should get any lump or **protuberance** that one notices in any part of the body checked immediately. It might be cancer!

²³⁶⁹ **Satiare:** (v) to satisfy fully; to satisfy even more than fully; (adj) **satiated:** whose appetite is fully satisfied

Origin: L *satis*, enough

- ☐ The bride's side served such a **sumptuous** meal to the *baaraatis* that even the most **gluttonous** among them were **satiated**.

²³⁷⁰ **Satiety:** (n) the state of being full beyond satisfaction.

Origin: noun form of **satiare**.

- ☐ The speed at which a person consumes food has an effect on his feeling of **satiety**. If he is hurriedly gobbling up his food, he is likely to eat more than needed, before he feels **sated**.

Sate²³⁷¹, saturate²³⁷², satire²³⁷³

Latin *merx* goods, wares

Since the Latin *merx* meant goods, the trader of goods was called *mercatans* in **Vulgar** Latin. That word became *marcheant* in Old French, then *merchaunt* in Old English, and so we got our ‘merchant’.

The French played the game the other way. They had the word *marcheant* for Mr Trader, and so, they called the goods he traded his *marcheandise*. This word became ‘merchandise’ in English. So, this stylish word is what we use for the traded goods, not the Latin *merx* or any direct derivative of it.

The act of exchanging, or buying and selling, of goods is called ‘commerce’ (L. *com-*, together), and the bustling place where this is done is called the ‘market’. Not everyone can be a good trader though, not everyone has **mercantile**²³⁷⁴ talents, or as some people would rather say, not everyone has the blessings of Goddess Lakshmi. Her **counterpart** in the Roman mythology was ‘Mercury’, the god of trade, profit, invention and knowledge.

Mercury was also the messenger god. He communicated messages from different gods to the mortals. He was very swift, as a messenger should be. That is why, the Romans named the fastest planet of the solar system after him. Mercury takes only 88 days to revolve around the sun. It is for the same qualities of eager mobility that the only liquid metal was also named mercury.

Someone whose mind flies as quickly between moods as Mercury flew between places is **mercurial**²³⁷⁵. Just a few minutes ago, Guddo had called Laado her best friend. Laadi had been **chaffing**²³⁷⁶ her and she had been laughing. Suddenly, Laado did not even know over what, Guddo told her to shut up and go away, and said **petulantly** that Laado would never understand her. A **baffled** Laado tried to ask her what had happened but Guddo **glowered** at her with such **fury** that she just left quietly. She knew that Guddo would apologize on her own after some time. It was nothing new. She had borne the **brunt**²³⁷⁷ of her best friend’s **volatility**²³⁷⁸ so many times by then that she was almost an expert on Guddo’s mood swings.

²³⁷¹ **Sate:** (v) to **satiate**.

Origin: Sate is not from L *satis* but is a Germanic cousin of this root.

²³⁷² **Saturate:** (v) to make totally full.

Origin: L *satur*, full

☐ A sponge is said to be **saturated** when it can hold no more water.

²³⁷³ **Satire:** (n) an artistic creation which makes fun of human vices, weaknesses or beliefs.

Origin: L *satis*, full => ‘a dish which is filled with different types of fruit’ => ‘a work which playfully attacks different types of **vices**’

☐ The movie *Jaane Bhi Do Yaaron* is a **satire** on the **collusion** of the building mafia and municipal officials of Mumbai in the 1980s.

²³⁷⁴ **Mercantile:** (adj) of or related to merchants or trade.

Origin: adjective form of ‘merchant’

☐ Though Raju was a businessman’s son, he had no **mercantile** abilities at all. He was made for poetry and literature instead.

²³⁷⁵ **Mercurial:** (adj) that which changes very fast.

Origin: L *mercurialis*, of the god Mercury

The world of glamour is **mercurial**. Some one who is a star today may be down in the dust tomorrow and vice versa.

²³⁷⁶ **Chaff:** (v) to tease playfully in a good-natured way.

²³⁷⁷ **Brunt:** (n) the main impact of a blow.

²³⁷⁸ **Volatile:** (adj) that which evaporates rapidly, that which changes state rapidly.

In direct contrast to Laado's **fickle**²³⁷⁹ Guddo are the *jihadi* suicide bombers, who seem so **steadfast**²³⁸⁰ to their **ideology**²³⁸¹ that they do not **flinch**²³⁸² from even killing themselves. That is not the whole truth though. Quite a few of the *jihadi* soldiers are actually **mercenaries**²³⁸³, who are paid to fight and kill. For them, fighting is a job like any other, and in most cases, the only one they could get.

The Greeks and the Egyptians knew the god **Mercury** as **Hermes**. They regarded Hermes as the inventor of all knowledge—be it mathematics, geometry, astrology, astronomy, alphabet, poetry or literature. The **Alchemists**²³⁸⁴, who tried to convert base metals into gold and find a **remedy** for mortality, called themselves 'the sons of Hermes', and **alchemy**, a **hermetic**²³⁸⁵ art.

The **alchemists** had great hopes from mercury (the metal). They believed that when it attained complete purity, mercury acquired **transmutive** powers. The name they gave to that magical pure powder of mercury was the **Elixir**²³⁸⁶ or the **Panacea**²³⁸⁷ (How wonderful indeed if such a magical substance could be found!). The challenge, however, was to purify mercury to that state of perfection.

The solution they found was a **distillation**²³⁸⁸ chamber, in which the condensed liquid was continually channeled again to the boiler, so that the purification continued uninterrupted. This process could succeed only if the vessel was made air-tight, so that no vapors could escape from it. This all-crucial sealing of the vessel was called **Hermetic sealing**²³⁸⁹.

Despite all their **diligence**, the alchemists failed to produce a true **elixir of life**. Instead, **ironically**, many emperors in ancient China were killed by mercury over dosage from the **elixirs** their alchemists had **concocted** for them.

²³⁷⁹ **Fickle**: (adj) that which changes just like that, has no sense of loyalty, and is therefore, not at all reliable or stable.

²³⁸⁰ **Steadfast**: (adj) standing firmly no matter what, unchanging, unmoving.
Origin: Old Eng *stead*, stand + *fast*, firm

²³⁸¹ **Ideology**: (n) system of beliefs that define a group of people or a culture.
Origin: Greek *idea*, idea + *-ology*, study

²³⁸² **Flinch**: (v) to shrink or withdraw from.

²³⁸³ **Mercenary**: (n) a professional, especially a soldier, who works only for money; (adj) motivated solely by money.
Origin: L *merces*, money, wages

The word 'soldier' has a parallel etymology to '**mercenary**'. It is derived from the Latin root *solidus*, meaning 'a gold coin' and so, meant 'one who works for gold coins.'

²³⁸⁴ **Alchemy**: (n) an ancient form of chemistry which aimed to turn ordinary metals into gold and to find a medicine which could cure all diseases and make man immortal. The men who practiced alchemy were called **Alchemists**.
From the specific definition above, **alchemy** slowly started being used for any, seemingly magical, process which **transmuted** an object of little value into an object of great value.
Chemistry derives its name from **alchemy**.

²³⁸⁵ **Hermetic**: (adj) related with Hermes.

²³⁸⁶ **Elixir**: (n) a substance believed to cure all diseases, prolong life indefinitely and to **transmute** base metals into gold. It is also known as the philosopher's stone.

☐ In the Hindu mythology, the Sanjeevni plant is **depicted** as an **elixir**.

²³⁸⁷ **Panacea**: (n) a universal remedy, that is, a medicine that cures all diseases. The key word in this definition is 'universal'. A **panacea** is the cure of *all* woes. A medicine that cures merely one or two problems cannot be called a **panacea**.

Origin: Gk *pan-*, all + *akos*, cure => 'a cure-all'

²³⁸⁸ **Distillation**: (n) purification or concentration of a substance by boiling it, collecting its vapours in a separate vessel and then condensing them. The concentrated solution obtained when the vapours are condensed is called the **distillate**.

²³⁸⁹ **Hermetic seal**: (n) an airtight seal.

Origin: named after Hermes, the god whom Alchemists worshipped

☐ The precious handwritten letter of the Mughal emperor was kept in a **hermetically sealed** glass case in the museum.

☐ The jam that we buy from markets usually comes in **hermetically sealed** glass bottles.

Latin *pretium* **price**

A **uxorious** husband bows before every **whim** and **fancy** of his wife, saying “Yes, my precious! Your wish will be done.” He calls her ‘precious’ because he prices her very highly. It is interesting to note that the word ‘praise’ (another tool of **uxorious** husbands) too is from the same root, and so are the words below:

Appraise²³⁹⁰, **appreciate**²³⁹¹, **depreciate**²³⁹², **misprize**²³⁹³

By the way, the word ‘price’ itself has come from *pretium*.

Latin *damnum* **loss**

The most common word from this root is ‘damage’. Damage is the loss that results from an injury to a person, his **reputation** or his property.

When you shout an angry “‘Damn’ you!” at someone, you are actually cursing him to get lost forever, or to put it in other words, you wish his **damnation**²³⁹⁴.

Now, when you cause the loss of another man’s goods, you pay for them, so as to undo his loss. That is, you are **indemnifying**²³⁹⁵ him.

The word **condemn**²³⁹⁶ too has arisen from this sense of paying a **penalty**.

Greek *poine* **fine, payment**

To ‘punish’ somebody is to make him pay for his misdeeds. Interestingly, the word ‘pain’ too is from the same root, thereby giving the idea that pain is a punishment, a divine **retribution**²³⁹⁷ for the wrongs one has done. ‘But I’ve done

²³⁹⁰ **Appraise:** (v) to determine the worth of.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *pretium*, price => ‘to find out the price of’

☐ “Most people can look back over the years and identify a time and place at which their lives changed significantly. Whether by accident or design, these are the moments when, because of a readiness within us and a **collaboration** with events occurring around us, we are forced to seriously **reappraise** ourselves and the conditions under which we live and to make certain choices that will affect the rest of our lives.” Frederick F. Flack

²³⁹¹ **Appreciate:** (v) to value highly; to raise the price of.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *pretium*, price => ‘to set a high price to’

☐ The value of gold **appreciated** by 20% within a year.

²³⁹² **Depreciate:** (v) to lessen the value or price of.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *pretium*, price => ‘to lower the price of’

☐ Ram had bought his car at ₹ 4 lakh. Within a year, its price had **depreciated** to ₹ 2 lakh.

²³⁹³ **Misprize:** (v) to value very little; hate.

Origin: L *mis-*, not + *prize*, value => ‘to not value’ => ‘to look down upon, hate’

☐ Many famous authors were **misprized** during their lifetimes and achieved respect and recognition only after their death.

²³⁹⁴ **Damnation:** (n) condemnation to hell by God; to judge as bad or harmful or worthy of being sent to hell; state of being ruined forever; (v) **damn**.

Origin: L *damnum*, damage, fine

☐ “May I be **damned** if I lie before you,” the son said to his old father. What he meant was: “May I be sent to hell if I lie before you.”

²³⁹⁵ **Indemnify:** (v) compensate for loss; insure against possible loss.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *damnum*, damage => ‘undo the damage’

☐ The factory **indemnified** the worker who had lost his hand while working on a faulty machine in the factory.

²³⁹⁶ **Condemn:** (v) to pass an unfavorable judgment on, to assign to a punishment

Origin: L *con-* + *damnum*, fine, damage => ‘to fine’ => ‘to punish’ => ‘to declare guilty’

☐ The Opposition **condemned** the government’s decision to hike the price of LPG cylinders.

²³⁹⁷ **Retribution:** (n) repayment, especially for a wrong done to one.

☐ The hero of the movie killed the villain in **retribution** for the murder of his wife and little child by the villain.

no wrongs!’ a young cancer patient teased the pandit *ji* his mother had taken him to. ‘Then, it must be the wrongs of your previous birth,’ the pandit replied philosophically.

The Indian **Penal**²³⁹⁸ Code, a Laila **pinning**²³⁹⁹ for her Majnu, a *saas repining*²⁴⁰⁰ about her good-for-nothing *bahu*, the ministers’ sons who **flout**²⁴⁰¹ rules with **impunity**²⁴⁰² as well as the **subpoena**²⁴⁰³ served by a court all share this root.

Latin *munus* **duty, gift**

A strange event became the talking point of Meilan, a small fishing village. A never seen before, urban looking man entered a poor fisherman’s hut and spent more than an hour in inquiring after persons who had either been dead or gone away for more than 15 or 16 years. The following day, the family from whom all these particulars had been asked received a **munificent**²⁴⁰⁴ gift, consisting of an entirely new fishing-boat, with two **seines**²⁴⁰⁵! The delighted recipients of the unexpected **munificence** talked non-stop of how they wanted to pour out their thanks to their generous **bene-**

²³⁹⁸ **Penal**: (adj) related with punishment.

Origin: Gk *poine*, fine

- ❑ The Indian **Penal** Code is a document which covers all the actions which are considered as crimes in India and prescribes the punishments for each of them.
- ❑ Asking for dowry is a **penal** offence. This means, it is an offence for which one can get punished by court.
- ❑ The Electricity Board **penalizes** late payment of bills by **accruing** a fine to the pending bill.

²³⁹⁹ **Pine**: (v) to long painfully for something; to long so painfully for something that one withers away.

Origin: Gk *poine*, punishment => ‘pain’ => ‘be in pain about something’

- ❑ “We look before and after, and **pine** for what is not;
Our sincerest laughter with some pain is **fraught**;
- ❑ Our sweetest songs are those that tell of saddest thought.”—Percy Bysshe Shelley
- ❑ The girl **pined** for her dead mother.
- ❑ Unable to bear the loss of her mother, the girl **pined** away.

²⁴⁰⁰ **Repine**: (v) to complain about something.

Origin: Gk *re-* + **pine**. Here *re-* is an intensive.

- ❑ The farmers **repined** about their hardships before the minister.
- ❑ Do not waste time **repining** about the way things are. Do something to improve the situation.

²⁴⁰¹ **Flout**: (v) to disregard contemptuously.

- ❑ The young man **flouted** traffic rules by driving when drunk and jumping the red lights.
- ❑ The builder **flouted** safety norms in the residential apartments he built.
- ❑ Many government school teachers **flouted** the ‘no private tuitions’ ban.

²⁴⁰² **Impunity**: (n) lack of punishment.

Origin: L *im-*, not + *poena*, punishment => ‘no punishment’

- ❑ The landlord’s men harassed the villagers with **impunity**. Even the police hesitated to interfere with them.

²⁴⁰³ **Subpoena**: (n) a writ served to a witness in a case asking him to appear before the court and give testimony; (v) to issue a subpoena to.

Origin: L *sub poena*, the first two words of the writ. *Sub*, under + *poena*, punishment => ‘you will be under punishment if you fail to do as directed.’

- ❑ Two brothers were fighting a court case regarding the ownership of a plot. The judge issued a **subpoena** to the land development officer of their city and asked him to present all the documents that he had in his records about the disputed plot.
- ❑ The police sought a **subpoena** to call the psychiatrist of the accused’s wife to court but the judge requested their request.

²⁴⁰⁴ **Munificent**: (adj) very generous, big-hearted.

Origin: L *munus*, gift + *facere*, to make => ‘one who has the generosity to give gifts to others’

- ❑ The Maharaja gave **munificent** grants for setting up of art schools all over his kingdom.
- ❑ When the family was checking out of the hotel, the mother suddenly remembered and called the waiter who had served them through their stay. She thanked him for his service and gave him one thousand rupees as a token of appreciation. He was so bowled over by her **munificence** that he didn’t know what to say!

²⁴⁰⁵ **Seine**: (n) a large fishing net; (v) to catch fish with a seine.

factor. No one knew where he went, or where he had come from, why he had asked all those questions or why he had given such a big gift for such a small service.

The other words from this root are:

Gift for Chunnu Munus-1: **commune**²⁴⁰⁶, **excommunicate**²⁴⁰⁷, **incommunicado**²⁴⁰⁸

Gift for Chunnu Munus -2: **remunerate**²⁴⁰⁹, **immune**²⁴¹⁰

Latin *dignus* **worthy, deserving, fitting**

The most common word from this root is ‘dignity’. A man of dignity is someone who is worthy of respect. Some people forget that the poor have dignity too.

One female entered Jugnu’s life. Another walked out.

Jugnu was the youngest daughter-in-law of the Shahi family and had just given birth to her first child, a daughter. Everybody welcomed the pretty baby with gifts for her and her mother. Aarti—the sister of Jugnu’s husband—came too, with a silver bracelet. Aarti’s husband had recently suffered huge losses in his business. Jugnu viewed the bracelet with **disdain**²⁴¹¹ and told Aarti that if she could not afford at least gold, she should rather have come empty-handed;

²⁴⁰⁶ **Commune:** (n) a small group of people living together; communication; (v) to communicate with.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *munus*, duty => ‘sharing duties’. The words ‘common’ and ‘community’ have the same etymology and, as per etymology, ‘communicate’ means ‘to make common.’

- ❑ The village Preet Nagar, set up near Amritsar by Punjabi writer Gurbaksh Singh Preetlari, became a **commune** of artists and writers.
- ❑ People living in villages are in close **commune** with nature.

²⁴⁰⁷ **Excommunicate:** (v) to take away the membership of a community.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *commune* => ‘to throw out of the **commune**’

- ❑ The Roman Catholic Church threatened to **excommunicate** the doctors who prescribed the abortion pill to women.
- ❑ A *khap panchayat* in Haryana **excommunicated** a family for marrying their boy to a girl from the same sub-caste. Such a marriage was **incestuous**, the *khap* said.
- ❑ Sunidhi promised to ‘try to come’ for the Reunion. Her college friends said they would **excommunicate** her if she didn’t turn up.

²⁴⁰⁸ **Incommunicado:** (adj) not allowed to or able to communicate with others.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *communicate* => ‘the one to whom communication is denied.’

- ❑ The assassin of the country’s Home Minister was kept **incommunicado** in an isolated prison cell for five years.
- ❑ The terrorists stormed into the hotel auditorium, fired two muffled shots and declared to the staff and the guests that they were being taken hostages and should not stir from their position if they did not want to be shot. Next, they seized the cameras and the cellphones from everyone present, thus holding them **incommunicado**.

²⁴⁰⁹ **Remunerate:** (v) to make payment for services or work; (n) **remuneration**.

Origin: L *munus*, gift (‘gift’ means ‘that which is given’) -> *munerare*, to give. So, *re-*, back + *munerare* => ‘to give back.’

- ❑ IT companies **remunerate** their employees well.
- ❑ The **remuneration** of some Bollywood stars is even higher than ₹ 10 crore.

²⁴¹⁰ **Immune:** (adj) protected from disease or punishment; not affected by. Noun: **immunity**

Origin: L *im-*, not + *munus*, duty => ‘having no duty’ => ‘exempt’

- ❑ During the hearing of a case about acceptance of a bribe by a district court judge, a Supreme Court judge remarked, “Judges have not descended from heaven. They too are **fallible** like other humans and when they do make mistakes, they are subject to the same laws as everyone else. Judges are not **immune** to arrest. No citizen of India, whatever his rank may be, is above the law and he must face the **penal** consequences of **infraction** of law.”
- ❑ The people of Zhaq had seen so much corruption for so long that became **immune** to it.

²⁴¹¹ **Disdain:** (v) to think beneath oneself; (n) a feeling of contempt for something that one thinks is below one’s status.

Origin: L *dis-*, not + *deign* => ‘not think worthy’

- ❑ Anjali and Laajo were both 10 years old but they were not friends because Laajo was the daughter of Anjali’s maid. Anjali **disdained** Laajo’s care for her and slapped her every now and then, just to show her that she was the boss. Laajo bore the humiliation quietly. One day, Anjali’s mother saw her speaking rudely to Laajo. She immediately **reproached** Anjali and asked her to say sorry to Laajo. “I do not bow before my servants,” Anjali replied with **disdain**. “How dare you say such a thing to my daughter, baby ji?” Laajo’s mother who had just entered the room asked **indignantly**. “Laajo is not your servant. I am working myself to death to send my daughter to school so that she can escape my fate. Tell me, in which field is

her daughter was not born to **indigents**²⁴¹² that she should wear such worthless **trinkets**²⁴¹³. An **indignant**²⁴¹⁴ Aarti walked out of the room and her former home and never forgot or forgave her *bhabhi*'s **barbs**²⁴¹⁵.

The other words from this root are:

Dainty²⁴¹⁶, **deign**²⁴¹⁷, **condign**²⁴¹⁸

she any lesser than you that you treat her with such **disdain**? My daughter helps you in your homework and instead of thanking her, you insult her!"

"Calm down Saraswati," Anjali's mother put her hand on the maid's shoulder. "From today, Laajo, you will not give any help to Anjali, in studies or otherwise. This is a **condign** punishment for someone who does not appreciate your help."

²⁴¹² **Indigent**: (adj) poor. An **indigent** person is also called an **indigent**. His poverty is his **indigence**.

❑ India is a country of large scale **indigence**; 37.2% of the Indian population, that is, one out of every three Indians, lives below the poverty line.

❑ In principle, the Indian law is accessible to all—the **opulent** and the **indigent**. The high costs of litigation however make justice unaffordable for the poor.

²⁴¹³ **Trinket**: (n) a piece of jewellery having little value.

²⁴¹⁴ **Indignant**: (adj) feeling angry because one thinks that one's dignity has been compromised, or that one has been insulted.

Origin: L *in-*, not + *dignus*, worthy => 'feeling that he has not been treated in the manner he was worthy of'

²⁴¹⁵ **Barb**: (n) a cutting remark; a sharp part projecting from a wire or a fishhook, etc.

²⁴¹⁶ **Dainty**: (adj) delicate; overly particular.

Origin: L *dignus*, worthy => 'beautiful' => 'delicate'

❑ Cinderella wore **dainty** glass slippers with her blue gown.

❑ Caterpillars evolve into **dainty**, beautiful butterflies.

²⁴¹⁷ **Deign**: (v) to think worthy or suited to one's dignity.

Origin: L *dignus*, worthy

❑ Anjali would not **deign** to say sorry to a mere servant's daughter.

❑ Aarti's doorbell rang one day. She opened the door and lo, Jugnu was standing there! Aarti was still bitter about the bracelet incident which had happened months ago. So, she couldn't help saying: "It's my great fortune that the **denizens** of palaces **deigned** to visit my poor hut."

²⁴¹⁸ **Condign**: (adj) well-deserved; fitting.

Origin: L *con-* + *dignus*, worthy => 'worthy'

Exercise

Modus, pendere, ponderare, par, minor, pau:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The bank accepted *damaged* currency notes.
(a) mutilated (b) stifled (c) commodious (d) outmoded (e) grievous
2. The manager worked very hard but the company *paid for* his labours poorly.
(a) dispensed (b) gave stipend for (c) counterpoised (d) pondered (e) recompensed
3. His presence at the function was *absolutely necessary*.
(a) indispensable (b) appended (c) imponderable (d) preponderant (e) ponderous
4. He *had absolutely no money*.
(a) was a spendthrift (b) was frugal (c) was a pedant (d) was grievous (e) was a pauper.
5. He looked *lost in some serious thought*.
(a) feral (b) ponderous (c) pensive (d) imponderable (e) disparaged
6. People who show *an inclination* to suicide need counselling from psychologists.
(a) a preponderance (b) a disparity (c) a pusillanimity (d) an equipoise (e) a propensity
7. The school sent its teachers to training camps in *teaching* every year.
(a) pedantry (b) pediatrics (c) puerility (d) pedagogy (e) pusillanimity
8. She did not have even *a small amount* of strength left in her.
(a) a modicum (b) a mode (c) a pauper (d) a miniscule (e) a brim
9. The dress designer turned the traditional silk saree into *a fashionable* ghagra-choli.
(a) a modern (b) a modish (c) a preponderant (d) a feral (e) a peerless
10. He *belittled* her achievement, saying that "it was no big deal."
(a) mutilated (b) recompensed (c) counterpoised (d) dispensed (e) disparaged
11. She was *a woman of small height*.
(a) a disparaged woman (b) a diminutive woman (c) a puerile woman (d) a pedantic woman (e) a pedagogue
12. There was *a shortage* of resources.
(a) a paucity (b) a diminution (c) a pusillanimity (d) a pedagogy (e) a frugality
13. Bunches of the fragrant white flowers *hung down from the tree*.
(a) were pensive (b) were ponderous (c) were pendulous (d) were appended (e) were dispensed
14. He *analyzed seriously* her words.
(a) stifled (b) pondered over (c) was thrifty about (d) made a compendium of (e) appended

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (e) 3. (a) 4. (e) 5. (c) 6. (e) 7. (d) 8. (a) 9. (b) 10. (e) 11. (b) 12. (a) 13. (c) 14. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Small details: M _____
2. Out of fashion: O _____
3. To walk with very short steps so as to look delicate: M _____
4. The branch of medicine that deals with bones and the tissue associated with them: O _____
5. Wild: F _____

6. A sudden panicky rush of a crowd of people: S _____
7. A comprehensive summary of a lengthy subject: C _____
8. The habit of spending money wisely and trying to save as much as possible: F _____
9. Branch of medicine that deals with children : P _____
10. To put an equal weight in the opposite scale of a weighing balance: C _____
11. State of having greater importance: P _____
12. To lower the rank or reputation of: D _____
13. A person who spends money wastefully: S _____
14. One who has no equals: P _____
15. A long, sharp tooth of a carnivorous animal with which it tears apart the flesh of its prey: F _____

Answers:

minutiae, outmoded, mince, orthopedics, feral, stampede, compendium, frugality, pediatrics, counterpoise, preponderance, disparage, spendthrift, peerless, fang

Vanus, cavus, pel-, fluere, teu-, satis:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. Thick smoke *came out* from the back of the house.
(a) was effluent (b) was diffluent (c) was tumid (d) emanated (e) protuberated
2. His strength *decreased*.
(a) waned (b) vaunted (c) became evanescent (d) was nonplussed (e) emanated
3. The country shared *a river* border with Egypt.
(a) an effluent (b) a plenary (c) a fluent (d) a replete (e) a fluvial
4. He was *absolutely confused about what to say*.
(a) nonplussed (b) refluent (c) plebian (d) protuberated (e) tumid
5. His hunger for money was not *satisfied* even after earning crores.
(a) saturated (b) satiated (c) complied (d) complemented (e) replete
6. There was *an overabundance* of problems in the country.
(a) an affluence (b) a satiety (c) a protuberance (d) a plethora (e) a flux
7. The *waste water discharged by* the mill had many harmful chemicals.
(a) refluent of (b) effluent of (c) diffluent of (d) molasses of (e) pleonasm of
8. She had *a honey-like* voice.
(a) molasses (b) superfluous (c) confluent (d) diffluent (e) mellifluous
9. Fame is *short-lived*.
(a) nonplussed (b) ethereal (c) fluctuating (d) ephemeral (e) diffluent
10. He *took excessive pride in himself*.
(a) vaunted (b) was ephemeral (c) was vainglorious (d) was wanton (e) waned

Answers:

1. (d) 2. (a) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (d) 7. (b) 8. (e) 9. (d) 10. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Extreme wealth: A _____
2. Favoritism shown to one's family or friends in business, politics etc: N _____

3. An artistic creation which makes fun of human vices, weaknesses or beliefs: S _____
4. A direct vote in which all the valid voters in a population vote in favor of or against a proposal : P _____
5. A meeting which has full attendance: P _____
6. A quality or a symbol associated with a person: A _____
7. The place where two or more streams coming from different directions converge: C _____
8. Extremely light or delicate: E _____
9. A person who has full power to act on behalf of another: P _____
10. A word that is used in speech to convey one's emotion at that time rather than to add to the meaning of what one is saying:
E _____
11. Use of more words than are necessary to express an idea: P _____
12. Related with a river: F _____
13. Something that is swollen and is bulging out beyond the surrounding surface: P _____
14. Something or someone that attracts a bird, animal or person towards a hidden trap or shooter: D _____
15. Immoral: W _____

Answers:

affluence, nepotism, satire, plebiscite, plenum, attribute, confluence, ethereal, plenipotentiary, expletive, pleonasm, fluvial, protuberance, decoy, wanton

Merx, pretium, damnum, poine, munus, dignus:**Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:**

1. He *felt angry and insulted* by her remarks.
(a) was indignant at (b) felt like an indigent due to (c) was dainty about (d) disdained (e) misprized
2. He *shrank* from telling her the truth.
(a) seined (b) flinched (c) chaffed (d) depreciated (e) misprized
3. He *showed contemptuous disregard* to the rules.
(a) seined (b) repined about (c) had impunity about (d) indemnified (e) flouted
4. His love *could evaporate at any time*.
(a) flinched (b) was mercantile (c) was hermetic (d) was fickle (e) was misprized
5. He got *well-deserved* punishment for his inhuman behaviour.
(a) deigned (b) condign (c) dainty (d) mercenary (e) appraised
6. He sought *repayment for the wrongs done to him*.
(a) remuneration (b) damnation (c) subpoena (d) impunity (e) retribution
7. He chose the multinational company because it offered a higher *salary*.
(a) indigence (b) seine (c) remuneration (d) indemnification (e) elixir
8. He did whatever he wanted *with no checks by the law or the police*.
(a) with subpoena (b) with impunity (c) with munificence (d) with indemnification (e) steadfastly

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (e) 4. (d) 5. (b) 6. (e) 7. (c) 8. (b)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. State of being ruined forever: D _____
2. A process by which an inferior metal turns into gold: A _____

3. Insure against possible loss : I _____
4. A writ served to a witness in a case asking him to appear before the court and give testimony : S _____
5. A large fishing net: S _____
6. A universal remedy: P _____
7. To increase the price of something: A _____
8. Delicate: D _____
9. To take away the membership of a community: E _____
10. A cutting remark: B _____
11. Poverty: I _____
12. Payment for services or work: R _____
13. A feeling of contempt for something that one thinks is below one's status: D _____

Answers:

damnation, alchemy, indemnify, subpoena, seine, panacea, appreciate, dainty, excommunicate, barb, indigence, remuneration, disdain

MISCELLANY

Latin *miscere* **to mix**

If I were to tell you that there is a very commonly used Hindi word, which looks similar, means the same and is from the same IE root as *miscere*, can you guess it? Try, try!

Meanwhile, let me list the English words that derive from this root. ‘Mix’ and ‘mixture’ are the first in the list, followed by the ‘miscible’ liquids like milk and water and ‘immiscible’ ones like oil and water.

‘Miscegenation’ means the mixing of *genus*, race, and so applies to the marriage or **cohabitation**²⁴¹⁹ of a man and a woman of different races. This term first appeared in the U.S. while the American Civil War was going on. The Republican Party, led by Abraham Lincoln, had strongly campaigned against slavery during the presidential election of 1860, and when it won, seven states of Southern America declared their **secession** from the Union, kick starting the Civil War. In December 1863, a pamphlet created shock waves all through the country. It was entitled: *Miscegenation: The Theory of the Blending of the Races, Applied to the American White Man and Negro*. In it, the Republicans **asserted**²⁴²⁰ that they supported intermarriage between the blacks and the whites, and that they wanted the **denizens**²⁴²¹ of America to be of a mixed breed that was neither white nor black. This was a shocking vision! It offended even those people who otherwise supported the end of slavery; it was totally against their **mores**²⁴²²! It was only in November 1864 that the pamphlet was proved to be a **hoax**. By then, it had done good damage to the Republican Party.

Before this pamphlet, the word **amalgamation** had been used for **ethnic** and racial intermixing.

Have you been able to guess the Hindi word? It is *mishran*. And, the remaining *miscere* words are:

²⁴¹⁹ **Cohabitation:** (n) living together.

Origin: L *co-*, together + *habitare*, to live

The other words from *habitare* are ‘habitat’, ‘inhabit’ and ‘**rehabilitation**’. A ‘habitat’ of an organism is the place where it lives. To ‘inhabit’ a place is to live in it. See, **rehabilitate**.

²⁴²⁰ **Assert:** (v) to say with a lot of force; to defend one’s rights or statements.

²⁴²¹ **Denizen:** (n) one who stays at or frequently visits a place.

²⁴²² **Mores:** (n) accepted moral values and customs of a society.

*Mishran-1: miscellaneous*²⁴²³, *promiscuous*²⁴²⁴, *meddle*²⁴²⁵, *medley*²⁴²⁶

*Mishran-2: melee*²⁴²⁷, *pell-mell*²⁴²⁸, *melange*²⁴²⁹

Two thousand people were waiting for the Bihar-bound Vikramshila Express on Platform No 12 of the New Delhi Railway Station. Ten minutes before the train was due, it was announced that it would now come at Platform No. 13 and that Rajdhani Express, which was also due to arrive in five minutes, would arrive at Platform No. 12 instead of Platform No. 14. Thus, 3,000 people were told all of a sudden that they were standing on the wrong platform. They panicked and ran **pell-mell** towards the right platform. People **jostled** and **shoved**²⁴³⁰ through the crowd with their luggage and children, trying to somehow cross the suffocating sea of humanity they were trapped in. The trains arrived. The passengers who were still far away from their platform became **frantic** and started pushing the people in front of them. A **stampede** resulted. Two women and a child were trampled over by the **frenzied** crowd. Two children and an old woman got lost in the **melee**. The trains left the station at the scheduled time, leaving hundreds of passengers **stranded** on the platform. The Railways, however, refused to accept **culpability**²⁴³¹ for the incident, saying that they could not be held responsible for people's reactions. The Railways minister too **exculpated**²⁴³² the Railways likewise. Everything continued like before. Two years later, a similar incident recurred.

²⁴²³ **Miscellaneous:** (adj) having a mixture of different kinds of elements.

Origin: L *miscere*, to mix

❑ This chapter is titled '**Miscellany**' because it contains roots denoting absolutely different and unrelated ideas.

²⁴²⁴ **Promiscuous:** (adj) having casual sexual relations with many partners; (n) **promiscuity**.

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *miscere*, to mix => 'one who mixes enthusiastically with people of opposite sex'

❑ The Mughal emperors were highly **promiscuous**. For example, Emperor Jahangir had a harem of 300 wives and 5000 **concubines**!

❑ Another way of saying this: **Promiscuity** was a way of life for Mughal emperors.

²⁴²⁵ **Meddle:** (v) to interfere unwantedly.

Origin: L *miscere* -> Fr *mesler*, *meddler*, to mix => 'one who mixes himself in others' affairs uninvited'

❑ Kushal's neighbours had the habit of **meddling** in other people's lives. They considered it their right to know the full details about what was happening or not happening to whom and to give their advice on even the most personal problems. She was shocked when her landlord aunty asked her how much she earned and if she would like to consider a boy that she had looked for her. "Imagine! My landlord is hunting boys for me!" Kushal exclaimed to her colleagues that day. "Really, I am tired of these **meddlesome** neighbours."

²⁴²⁶ **Medley:** (n) mixture of different types of elements.

Origin: L *miscere* -> Fr *mesler*, *meddler*, to mix => 'a mixture'

❑ The DJ at the dance party played a **medley** of hit Hindi, Punjabi and English songs.

²⁴²⁷ **Melee:** (n) confusion created by a group of people fighting or by the simultaneous movement of a crowd.

Origin: L *miscere* -> Fr *mesler*, to mix => 'a mixture of people'

❑ An argument over parking space between two neighbours—Kuber Sharma and Alok Shrivastva—escalated into a major **melee** when the brothers of Sharma joined him and physically roughed up Alok. Alok then called his friends who came **brandishing** hockey sticks and shattered the windows of Sharma's car. Fearing further violence, the neighbours called the police.

²⁴²⁸ **Pell mell:** (adv) in a confused, crowded rush.

Origin: Fr *pesle mesle*, *pesle* is written just to rhyme with *mesle*, a derivative of *mesler*, to mix

²⁴²⁹ **Melange:** (n) a mixture.

Origin: Fr *mesler*, to mix

❑ The musical CD was a **mélange** of folk music, hip hop, blues and jazz.

Just like in Hindi, the word '*milaanaa*'- to mix- is a derivative of *mishran*, similarly, **mélange** and **melee** are derivatives of *miscere*.

²⁴³⁰ **Shove:** (v) push

²⁴³¹ **Culpability:** (n) blame

Origin: L *culpa*, blame

A person who is blamed for a crime is called a 'culprit'.

²⁴³² **Exculpate:** (v) to free from blame.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *culpa*, blame

Latin *medius* **middle**

The Sanskrit words *madhya* and *madhyam* are **cognates** of *medius*. *Medius* is the root of middle, **mediocre**²⁴³³, **mediate**²⁴³⁴, **intermediate**²⁴³⁵ and **medium**²⁴³⁶.

Latin *post* **after**

We all know that ‘post’ means after, don’t we? ‘Postgraduate’ studies are those that you do after graduating from college. Your father’s ‘post-retirement’ plans are his ideas about what he will do after he retires.

The words which have the root *post* are:

Posterior²⁴³⁷, **posterity**²⁴³⁸ and **preposterous**²⁴³⁹**Latin** *radix* **root**

The root of the plant *Raphanus sativus* is highly **pungent**. People all over Europe and Asia eat it raw and very often. What do you think do they call it? *Raphanus sativus*’ root? Nah, our tongue would trip over such a **convoluted** name. They simply call it radish, meaning ‘the root’. What do we call a radish in Hindi? *Mooli*. *Mooli* has come from *mool*, which also means ‘base, root.’

The word ‘eradicate’ literally translates into the Hindi idiom *jadh se ukhaad dena*. (L. *e-*, out). The other words from this root are:

²⁴³³ **Mediocre:** (adj) neither good nor bad; one whose performance lies on the middle of the scale.

Origin: L *medius*, middle

²⁴³⁴ **Mediate:** (v) to act between two parties and try to bring them to agreement; (n) **mediation**, **mediator**.

Origin: L *medius*, middle => ‘to come in the middle’

❑ India has repeatedly rejected USA’s offer of **mediation** in the Indo-Pak dispute over Kashmir.

❑ India says it needs no **mediators** for the Indo-Pak dispute over Kashmir.

²⁴³⁵ **Intermediate:** (adj) coming in between.

Origin: L *inter-*, between + *medius*, middle => ‘coming in the middle, between two things.’

❑ **Intermediate** school is that which comes between primary school and high school. In India, classes 4-6 are considered **intermediate** school.

❑ A person who acts as a go-between for two parties is called an **intermediary**.

²⁴³⁶ **Medium:** (n) something that lies in between; a means of communication; liquid or solid nutrient material in which microbes can grow.

Origin: L *medius*, middle

²⁴³⁷ **Posterior:** (n) the buttocks; (adj) coming after in time or order; placed at the back.

Origin: L *post*, after -> *posterus*, coming after

❑ Is the heart **posterior** to the spinal cord? No. It is **anterior** to the spinal cord.

Anterior: (adj) coming before in time or order.

Origin: L *ante*, before

❑ The front side of an animal’s body is called its **anterior**, and the back side is called its **posterior**.

²⁴³⁸ **Posterity:** (n) future generations.

Origin: L *post*, after -> L *posterus*, coming after => ‘those who will come after you’

²⁴³⁹ **Preposterous:** (adj) extremely stupid.

Origin: L *pre-*, before+ *posterus*, coming behind => ‘that which should come behind is coming before’ => ‘contrary to common sense, ridiculous.’

❑ In the Hindi movie *Bunty aur Babli*, Bunty and Babli con the seventh richest man of the world by selling the Taj Mahal to him. “I can’t believe that someone is selling the Taj Mahal,” the foolish rich man exclaims. “I can’t believe that someone is actually buying,” quips Bunty. About 170 years ago, The East India Company too had got the idea of selling the Taj Mahal. And, do you know the **preposterous** manner in which they decided to do it? They planned to **dismantle** the Taj Mahal and auction its marble! Luckily for us, that auction did not take place and the Taj was saved for **posterity**.

Dismantle: (v) to take apart, take to pieces; strip of covering, furniture or equipment.

Radical²⁴⁴⁰, **irradicable**²⁴⁴¹, **deracinate**²⁴⁴²

Latin *cadere* to fall

The West is called the ‘**Occident**’, waterfalls are called **cascades**²⁴⁴³ and some trees are called **deciduous**²⁴⁴⁴ because of this root.

Cadence²⁴⁴⁵ is the rise and *fall* of music. People too rise and then, after many years, fall down and become **cadavers**²⁴⁴⁶. **Feeble**, falling old men fondly remember how strong they used to be and **lament** their present **caducity**²⁴⁴⁷ which has **rendered**²⁴⁴⁸ them dependent on sticks and supports.

²⁴⁴⁰ **Radical**: (adj) related to the root or origin, fundamental; advocating fundamental change; extreme; (n) a person who advocates fundamental change.

Origin: L *radix*, root => ‘related with the root’

- The Human Resources Minister brought **radical** changes in the education system of India, like abolishing Board exams for class 10th.
- The **radical** student leader declared that his organization rebelled against all forms of authority. The university authorities banned the **radicals** from holding any protests on the university campus.

²⁴⁴¹ **Irradicable**: (adj) ineradicable, that which cannot be uprooted.

Origin: L *ir-*, *im-*, not + *radix*, root + *-able*

- Poverty seems to be **irradicable** in India. Politicians have been promising to eradicate it since Independence but the tree of poverty remains as **robust** as ever.

²⁴⁴² **Deracinate**: (v) to uproot; to take away someone from the culture in which his roots lie.

Origin: L *radix*, root -> Fr. *racine*, root. So, *de-*, *dis-*, away + *racine*, root => ‘to pull out from the roots.’

- The American NRI worried that his children, who had come to the US very young, would grow up into **deracinated** individuals who had no idea about the culture they belonged to.

²⁴⁴³ **Cascade**: (n) a waterfall, a series of small, step-like waterfalls; (v) to fall like a waterfall.

Origin: L *cadere*, to fall -> *casicare*, to fall-> It. *Cascata*, waterfall -> Fr. *cascade*

- When Shrimati saw water **cascading** down the stairs, she realized that the water tank on the terrace was overflowing.
- An artificial **cascade** was built by the driveway of the hotel.

²⁴⁴⁴ **Deciduous**: (adj) trees which shed their leaves in a particular season or at a particular point of their growth.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *cadere*, to fall => ‘trees whose leaves fall down’

²⁴⁴⁵ **Cadence**: (n) rhythm

Origin: L *cadere*, to fall => ‘rise and fall’ => ‘rhythm’

- The easy **cadence** with which the boatman rowed the boat and the **concomitant** rippling of the water inspired a poem in the mind of the poet who was sitting in the boat.
- A runner has an average **cadence** of 180 steps per minute.
- Cadence** is what separates a poem from prose. The rhythmic quality of a poem is called its **cadence**.

²⁴⁴⁶ **Cadaver**: (n) dead body; (adj) **cadaverous**.

Origin: L *cadere*, to fall down => ‘to die’

Synonym: corpse

- The **frail, cadaverous** man lived alone in the mansion.

²⁴⁴⁷ **Caducity**: (n) mental and physical weakness resulting from old age.

Origin: L *cadere*, to fall => ‘tendency to fall down’

²⁴⁴⁸ **Render**: (v) to give, to make.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *dare*, to give => ‘to give back’

- A violent storm killed 80 people in east Bihar and **rendered** thousands homeless. Many NGOs and independent volunteers **rendered** aid to the storm victims.

The word ‘surrender’ too has ‘render’ in it. It is made of L *sub-* + render => ‘to give up’

Another related word is **rendition**, the noun form of ‘render.’

Rendition: (n) the act of delivering something; one’s own version of an artistic work; a translation.

- The Muslims do not use instruments to accompany a recitation of the Quran. They also respect solo **rendition** of the Quran more than a group **rendition**.
- The contestant of the musical talent hunt show sang a superhit song which had been originally sung by one of the show’s judges. At the end of his performance, that judge got up from his seat and saluted the contestant, saying: “Boss, your **rendition** was better than mine!”

The **decadence**²⁴⁴⁹ of the modern society was **exemplified** when a drug-addict killed his own parents after they refused to give him more money. He then **hewed**²⁴⁵⁰ their bodies into small pieces, tied those in a sack and threw the sack into a gutter.

Criminals like him really deserve the harshest punishments possible, and they often get them too. However, one day, the convict will complete his sentence and come out. Then what? Statistics say that most probably he will 'fall back in crime'. The rate of **recidivism**²⁴⁵¹ is very high in our country. This indicates the failure of the prisons to reform and **rehabilitate**²⁴⁵² the prisoners.

Latin *petere* **to fall, seek**

'To fall' and 'to seek' seem two entirely different actions. Are you wondering how can they be represented by the same word? Imagine a group of children who have *fallen* together *upon* a cake, each *seeking* to have the most of it himself. So, there you are! You fall upon a thing you seek badly. All those children are 'competitors' (L. *com-*, together).

To fall upon something once again is a 'repetition'.

And, what is a 'petition'? It is the act of falling at the feet of an authority seeking some favor or mercy. The Emperor²⁴⁵³ got so offended by the **jocular** remark of the court **jester**²⁴⁵⁴ that he ordered him to be **immured**²⁴⁵⁵ immediately and beheaded the next morning. As soon as she heard the news, the **jester's** poor wife came running to the court and

²⁴⁴⁹ **Decadence:** (n) decay of morals, self-control, arts, etc.

Origin: L *de-*, down + *cadere*, to fall => 'a falling down' => 'a decay'. The word 'decay' too has the same etymology.

- ❑ It is **decadent** to irresponsibly **lavish** your money on self-centred **transitory** pleasures like ridiculously expensive clothes or drinks or foods or cars or holidays when you are surrounded by **acute** poverty and can use your money to help the poor.
- ❑ We can also say that the rich people we talked about in the above sense lead a **decadent** life. This is because their life is about unrestrained, self-centred pleasure seeking.

²⁴⁵⁰ **Hew:** (v) to cut with an axe, sword, etc.

- ❑ The woodcutter's axe fell down in water. He prayed to the goddess of the lake to return his sole means of livelihood to him. The goddess knew that he was a good man. Thinking that here was a chance to reward him for living his life with **probity**, she appeared before him with an axe made of gold. The woodcutter however sadly declined it. He said: "My job is to **hew** wood, mother. This **dainty** axe of gold will not be able to **hew** even one branch. Mother, please give me my iron axe! I can earn the gold myself."

We can also use the word **hack** instead of **hew**.

²⁴⁵¹ **Recidivism:** (n) falling back in crime. A criminal who does that is called a **recidivist**.

Origin: L *re-*, back + *cadere*, to fall => 'to fall back (into crime)'

²⁴⁵² **Rehabilitate:** (v) to restore to good condition.

²⁴⁵³ The word 'emperor' is from the Latin root *imperare*, which means 'to command.' Three related words are:

Imperial: (adj) related to an emperor or his empire

Imperious: (adj) acting like an emperor, dictatorial

Imperative: (n) command of an emperor. Everyone was bound to follow the command of an emperor. So **imperative** also means 'a duty you are bound to do.'

²⁴⁵⁴ **Jester:** (n) a person who is in the habit of cracking jokes or playing pranks; a professional clown employed by a king.

Origin: jest+ er

Jest: (n) a joke, a good-natured teasing, a non-serious talk to have fun.

²⁴⁵⁵ **Immure:** (v) to imprison.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *murus*, wall => 'to confine within walls'

The other word from the root *murus* is '**mural**.'

Mural: (n) an artwork painted on a wall or a ceiling; a very large picture or painting that covers most of a wall; (adj) related with, done on or or put on a wall.

- ❑ The caves of Ajanta have colourful **murals** which **depict** the stories of various lives of Buddha. The **murals** of Ajanta are **frescoes**. This means that these paintings were done not with oil-based colours on a canvas but with water-dissolved pigments on fresh, moist plaster. The word **fresco** means 'fresh' in Italian.

genuflected²⁴⁵⁶ before the emperor, **beseeching**²⁴⁵⁷ him to please forgive her husband. Her moving petition, her miserable tears seemed to **propitiate**²⁴⁵⁸ the emperor. He asked her to get up, and asked his minister to release the **jester**.

What is the word that we can use for the emperor? **Petulant**,²⁴⁵⁹ someone who (or more descriptively, whose **wrath**) comes ‘falling’ upon others at the slightest **provocation**.

‘Look before you leap,’ the wise say. Hardly anyone listens, the young least of all. They fall right into an action, without giving it even a moment’s thought. That is why the phrase ‘**impetuous**²⁴⁶⁰ youth’ is so common. Associated with **impetuous** is the word **impetus**²⁴⁶¹.

Looking up in the sky, you notice the absence of clouds and reflect that the weather seems **propitious**²⁴⁶² for the farmers this year. Untimely storms had destroyed the standing crops last year.

‘Perpetual’ rains are those that keep falling throughout the year (L. *per-*, throughout). Thus, the word **perpetual**²⁴⁶³ is used in the sense of ‘everlasting, never-ending.’ And, to ‘perpetuate’ something is to make it last forever.

Savitri Devi already had eight granddaughters. When the exhausted Lajwanti got pregnant again, the doctor advised her to abort the child. Savitri flared up. *How dare he say that? She was yet to get her grandson! Poor health or not, Lajwanti could not stop before giving to her, her grandson.* After all, one needed to **perpetuate**²⁴⁶⁴ one’s family name, or not? What did these doctors know? Swearing under her breath, she showed him the door.

²⁴⁵⁶ **Genuflect:** (v) to stand on bent knees, as a mark of respect or worship.

Origin: L *genu*, knee + *flectere*, to bend

²⁴⁵⁷ **Beseech:** (v) to request someone very humbly, saying “please! Please! Please!”

❑ Three-year-old Fateh and his mom had stopped their car at the traffic lights. A beggar woman came to them and, putting her bowl through the open window, **beseached** them to give her something so that she and her baby could eat something. His mom shook her head and said ‘no’. The beggar waited and walked away. Then, Fateh asked his mother, “Mama, mama, why didn’t you take the bowl she was giving to you??”

²⁴⁵⁸ **Propitiate:** (v) to calm down someone angry.

Origin: See **propitious**

²⁴⁵⁹ **Petulant:** (adj) one who gets irritated over the slightest things; (n) **petulance**.

Origin: L *petere*, fall => ‘one who rushes at things’ => ‘one who rushes into anger’

❑ Mahendra was 22 years old but behaved like a **petulant** child of two. He had to be constantly humoured and fussed over by his mother.

²⁴⁶⁰ **Impetuous:** (adj) superfast, one who rushes into things without giving them a thought first.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *petere*, to fall => ‘one who dives straight into something without thinking about it first’ => ‘one who rushes at things’

❑ The cricketer’s bowling was **impetuous** and so was he. He was always in a hurry to make statements, most of which he had to **retract** later with apologies.

²⁴⁶¹ **Impetus:** (n) the force with which a body falls into something else.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *petere*, to fall

❑ Imagine throwing a ball up in the sky. It will come back with a thud, creating a little crater where it will land, before bouncing up again. That thud is the ball’s **impetus**. However, Physics tells us that the force with which the ball lands is only a **manifestation** of the force that you applied to send the ball up in the first place. This is why the word **impetus** is also used for any force that sets a body into motion.

²⁴⁶² **Propitious:** (adj) favourable

Origin: L *pro-*, forwards + *petere*, to fall => ‘falling towards you’ => ‘falling in favour’

Origin: L *pro-*, forward + *petere*, to seek, to go to => ‘the one to whom you go to’ => ‘favourable, kind’ so **propitiate** means ‘to make favourable.’

²⁴⁶³ **Perpetual:** (adj) lasting forever.

Origin: L *per-*, throughout + *petere*, to fall => ‘falling throughout a given time period’ => ‘never stopping’

❑ **Perpetual** happiness gets boring.

❑ Wealth is **ephemeral**, knowledge **perpetual**.

²⁴⁶⁴ **Perpetuate:** (v) to make everlasting, to save from extinction.

Origin: verb form of **perpetual**

Now, that we know *petere* quite well, let me spill the beans. It is a cousin of Hindi words *patta* (leaf, because leaves fall), *paat* (a falling, e.g. *garbhpaat*, miscarriage), *patan* (downfall, decline), *patit* (a fallen, **depraved** person), *paataal* (the place where the *patit* go post death), *patak* (a fall), *patakna* (to throw down, to enforce a fall), *pataak* (the crashing sound that such a fall produces) and *pataaka* (a cracker which makes a sound quite like *pataak*).

Latin *gratus* **pleasing, thankful**

When we ‘congratulate’ somebody, we tell him that we are together with him in his moment of pleasure. The word ‘agree’ is formed from the Latin phrase *a gre* which means ‘to (one’s) pleasure.’ When you agree to do something, the etymology suggests that you will be pleased to do it. An ‘agreeable’ fellow is the one who is pleasant to have around. The word ‘grace’ too has the same root. A ‘graceful’ lady has a pleasing way of talking and moving.

A grateful man is thankful to you and ‘gratitude’ is thankfulness.

Gratus-1: **gratuitous**²⁴⁶⁵, **gratuity**²⁴⁶⁶, **gratis**²⁴⁶⁷

Gratus-2: **gratify**²⁴⁶⁸, **ingrate**²⁴⁶⁹, **ingrati**²⁴⁷⁰

Latin *placare* **to please**

The word ‘please’ itself is formed from this root, as are:

Placare pleases-1: pleasant, pleasure, **placid**²⁴⁷¹

²⁴⁶⁵ **Gratuitous**: (adj) free, without payment; done without any cause or justification.

Origin: L *gratus*, thankful -> *gratuitus*, that which makes one thankful => ‘that which is freely given’

- ❑ The **gratuitous** violence in the movie made me sick. The movie was about two trigger-happy gangsters who went around shooting people **gratuitously** and then bragged about their murder count in bars and dance clubs.
- ❑ The buses in India often display this board to warn **gratuitous** passengers: *Bina ticket sawaari karne pe 10 guna zurmaana.* (The passengers found travelling without ticket will be fined upto 10 times the fare.)

²⁴⁶⁶ **Gratuity**: (n) a gift, usually in the form of money, given to appreciate a service received. It is over and above the billed payment.

Origin: L *gratuitus*, freely given => ‘gift’

- ❑ The tip given to a waiter in a restaurant is an example of **gratuity**.

²⁴⁶⁷ **Gratis**: (adv) without charge.

Origin: L *gratus*, thankful -> *gratia*, kindness, favor

- ❑ A team of doctors from the big hospital held a medical camp in the nearby slums and treated the patients there **gratis**.

²⁴⁶⁸ **Gratify**: (v) please, satisfy.

Origin: L *gratus*, pleasing

- ❑ “I was **gratified** to be able to answer promptly. I said ‘I don’t know.’” Mark Twain
- ❑ The restaurant offered many options to **gratify** one’s sweet tooth—*rabdi, phirnee, rasmalai, halwa, gulab jamun, kulfi* and many flavours of ice cream.
- ❑ Some people believe in instant-**gratification**. They bother little about saving or investing and say ‘*kal kisne dekha hai. Aaj maza loot lo.*’ The wiser people however delay **gratification** in the short term in order to enjoy greater rewards in the long term.

²⁴⁶⁹ **Ingrate**: (adj) an ungrateful person.

Origin: L *in-*, not + grateful

- ❑ Some people regard the IITians who settle abroad as **ingrates** who leave the country after receiving a subsidized higher education.
- ❑ Old age homes are a **refuge** for aged men and women who are abandoned by **ingrate** families.

²⁴⁷⁰ **Ingratiate**: (v) to make someone like you by using charm, flattery, etc.

Origin: L *in gratiam*, in favour => ‘to bring yourself into favor of someone’

- ❑ Though Kanav wished to be liked by Peehu, he did not **ingratiate** himself by prefiguring what she would like to hear and saying just that.
- ❑ Rishi too liked Peehu and he tried to **ingratiate** himself to her by helping her with her plans to organize financial aid for the students of the blind school near their college.

²⁴⁷¹ **Placid**: (adj) calm, undisturbed.

Origin: L *placare*, to please => ‘pleasant’ => ‘gentle’

- ❑ Peehu looked **placid**. That was why people thought she was fine. They never knew she carried a broken heart inside.

Placare pleases-2: **placebo**²⁴⁷², **complacent**²⁴⁷³, **complaisant**²⁴⁷⁴

When we try to calm someone who is very angry at us, by doing things that we know will please him, we are trying to **placate**²⁴⁷⁵ him. One who refuses to be thus **placated** is **implacable**²⁴⁷⁶.

IE **gwer-** **heavy**

The Sanskrit prefix *guru-* means heavy, **venerable**²⁴⁷⁷. The man who is heavy with knowledge and with spiritual wisdom is called a 'Guru'. The heaviness, the weight that all things feel, due to Earth's attraction, is called *gurutva*.

The Latin member of the family is *gravis*, meaning heavy, weighty. *Gravis* is the root of 'grief', a heaviness of heart, and 'gravity', the English counterpart of *gurutva*.

The other words from this heavy root are:

Grave²⁴⁷⁸, **gravid**²⁴⁷⁹, **aggravate**²⁴⁸⁰

☐ The setting sun was reflected in the **placid** waters of the lake. The scene was beautiful, **serene**, like a poem was being gently hummed by nature.

²⁴⁷² **Placebo:** (n) a substance which is not actually a medicine but which is given to a patient because he believes very strongly that it will cure him. **Origin:** L *placebo*, I will please => 'I will do you good.' Compare, **nocebo**

²⁴⁷³ **Complacent:** (adj) too pleased with oneself or one's situation, self-satisfied.

Origin: L *com-* + *placere*, to please => 'pleased'

☐ It is said that it is easier to reach the top than to stay there. People often become **complacent** after success and stop working as hard as they did before. Then, one day, they realize with a shock that the Number 1 position has been **yanked** away from them by someone who had been **assiduously** improving himself while they were busy **basking** in their success.

²⁴⁷⁴ **Complaisant:** (adj) eager to please; someone who happily does what you tell him to because he wants to please you.

Origin: L *com-* + *placere*, to please

☐ The groom's family dictated their conditions to the **complaisant** bride's family.
☐ The **complaisant** newspaper did not report any anti-government news.

²⁴⁷⁵ **Placate:** (v) to calm down an angry person, especially by doing something which you know will please him.

Origin: L *placare*, to please

☐ The villagers were protesting against the local police inspector who had beaten a young boy to death in custody. In order to **placate** them, the State Minister of Home Affairs suspended the inspector and instituted an enquiry into the matter. He assured them that if found **culpable**, the inspector would be punished severely.

²⁴⁷⁶ **Implacable:** (adj) impossible to **placate**.

Origin: L *im-*, not + *placate* + *able*

☐ Rajeev was not sure that his **implacable** stepbrother would help him in any way.
☐ Thakur Gajendra Singh's brother loved Thakur Surya Pratap's sister but refused to marry her. **Distraught**, the girl killed herself. Surya Pratap's younger brother **avenged** her by killing her **recreant** lover. Ever since then, the two families were **implacable** enemies.

²⁴⁷⁷ **Venerable:** (adj) commanding great respect. The great respect that you feel for such a person is called **veneration**. **Reverence** is a synonym of **veneration**.

☐ **Venerable** old man, **venerable** *sadhu*, **venerable** Bhagwad Gita

²⁴⁷⁸ **Grave:** (adj) serious

Origin: L *gravis*, heavy => 'not light' => 'serious'

☐ After the medical examination, the doctor looked **grave**. "I am sorry," he told the patient. "You have stomach cancer and have only three months to live."
☐ The increasing cost of fighting an election is a **grave** issue and needs to be tackled immediately. Otherwise, soon only the rich will be able to fight elections and so, only they will get elected to the Parliament and India will effectively become a **plutocracy**.

²⁴⁷⁹ **Gravid:** (adj) pregnant

Origin: L *gravis*, heavy

☐ The sky was black with pited-up clouds **gravid** with ran.

²⁴⁸⁰ **Aggravate:** (v) to make worse or more serious, to irritate.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *gravis*, heavy => 'to take towards heaviness' => 'to add to the weight of'

IE *leg^wh-* **light**

The ancient Hindu yogis meditated in the jungles or the high mountains. After **eons** of **austerities** and strict control over all their desires, the gods rewarded them with *siddhis*, **psychic** powers. One of these *siddhis* was the *laghima siddhi*, which enabled the yogi to become so light-weight that he could **waft**²⁴⁸¹ in the air like a feather.

Do you know the Hindi version of LCM, the least common multiple? It is '*laghutam samaapvartya*'. '*Laghu*' *udyog* means small scale industry.

Laghu means light, little. In fact, the word 'light' itself is from the same root. As are 'lungs' (say *leg^wh-* through your nose) because they are so light-weight. The Latin cousin of these words is *levis* which means 'light'. The root *levare* is derived from *levis*, and originally meant 'to lighten.' Since a lighter thing automatically rises upwards, the sense of 'lifting up' also became associated with *levare*.

A 'lever' is a simple machine that lifts up heavy weight. To 'elevate' something is to lift it up. In fact, we all use the words elevator and lift interchangeably for the machine that takes us up in high-rise buildings.

The other words from this root are listed below:

*The light levare 1: levitate*²⁴⁸², *alleviate*²⁴⁸³, *leaven*²⁴⁸⁴

*The light levare 2: levity*²⁴⁸⁵, *levy*²⁴⁸⁶, *levee*²⁴⁸⁷

Latin *jocus* **play, merriment**

- ❑ The four-hour drive on the bumpy roads of the undeveloped state **aggravated** the film star's back pain. He was further **aggravated** to discover that the village where his film's shooting was to take place had no electricity and mobile or internet connectivity.

²⁴⁸¹ **Waft:** (v) float

- ❑ The fragrance of the roses **wafted** across the lawn.
- ❑ As the girls walked towards the *mandap*, a few petals of marigold **wafted** down on them from somewhere.

²⁴⁸² **Levitate:** (v) to float in the air, seemingly through magic; (n) **levitation**.

Origin: L *levis*, light

- ❑ During the magic show, the magician **levitated** a girl to five feet above the ground.
- ❑ *Laghima siddhi* enabled a yogi to **levitate**.

²⁴⁸³ **Alleviate:** (v) lessen

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *levis*, light => 'take towards lightness' => 'lighten'

- ❑ He went to his village in the vacations hoping that the fresh air would **alleviate** the persistent cough he had developed.

²⁴⁸⁴ **Leaven:** (v) to cause to rise, esp. through fermentation; (n) a substance, like yeast, which causes fermentation in dough or batter and causes it to rise.

Origin: L *levis*, light -> *levare*, to raise

- ❑ Baking Powder is used to **leaven** breads, cakes and muffins.

²⁴⁸⁵ **Levity:** (n) lightness of mind, behaviour or weight.

Origin: L *levis*, light

- ❑ In the **eponymous** movie *Anand*, the **protagonist**, played by Rajesh Khanna, is a very **ebullient** character, whose cheerfulness is very infectious and leaves none unaffected. His best friend, Dr. Bhaskar Banerjee, just cannot understand how somebody whose remaining lifespan can be measured in weeks can show such **levity**.

²⁴⁸⁶ **Levy:** (v) to impose a tax or fine or war; to conscript into wartime service.

Origin: L *levis*, light -> *levare*, to raise => 'to raise funds or resources'

- ❑ The school **levied** a fine of ₹ 100 on all the students who had missed the annual day function.

²⁴⁸⁷ **Levee:** (n) a sloping boundary wall of a river which is built so as to make sure the river does not overflow and flood the adjacent lands.

Origin: L *levare*, to raise => 'to raise the level of a river's boundary'

- ❑ The village was **inundated** when the **abutting** river **breached** its **levee**.

A levee is also called a **dyke**.

‘Joke’ obviously comes from this root as does the ‘joker’ who makes us laugh with his **zany**²⁴⁸⁸ **antics**²⁴⁸⁹. The (comparatively) less common words from this root are:

Jocose²⁴⁹⁰, **jocular**²⁴⁹¹, **jeopardy**²⁴⁹²

From its look and meaning, the word **jocund**²⁴⁹³ seems related to the words above, but well, it isn't. Its closeness to ‘joke’ serves as a good **mnemonic** though.

In the year 1494 in Italy, a 15-year-old girl called Lisa Gherardini married a silk and cloth merchant named Francesco del Giocondo and became Lisa del Giocondo. When their second son was born, her husband commissioned a painter to do a portrait of her. The painter **lingered**²⁴⁹⁴ over the painting for years, often diverting his attention to other, more immediate and **lucrative** commissions. Frustrated, Francesco cancelled the commission. Years later, shortly before his death, the painter finally completed the unfinished painting and **bequeathed** it to his assistant. Can you guess which painting it was?

In Italian, *ma donna* means ‘my lady’, just like the English word ‘madam’. Madam comes from the Old French *ma dame*. And, just like madam is shortened into ma’am, *madonna* is contracted into *mona*. So, what did the painter call that painting? *Mona Lisa*! It is also known as *La Jaconde* in French and *La Gioconda* in Italian, because Lisa del Giocondo was nicknamed Gioconda—the Italian word for **jocund**- as a **pun**²⁴⁹⁵ on the feminine form of her married name Giocondo and her cheerful nature.

Latin ***ludere*** **to play**

Remember ‘Ludo’? That easy little board game is named after the Latin *ludus*, play.

²⁴⁸⁸ **Zany**: (adj) clownish

²⁴⁸⁹ **Antics**: (n) playful or funny gestures.

²⁴⁹⁰ **Jocose**: (adj) joking

Origin: L *jocus*, joke

- ☐ Everyone loved him for his **jocose** manner. He was the life of every get-together and had a funny line ready for every person and every thing.

²⁴⁹¹ **Jocular**: (adj) joking, in the habit of joking.

Origin: L *jocus*, joke -> *joculus*, little joke. *Joculus* is a **diminutive** of *jocus*

²⁴⁹² **Jeopardy**: (n) risk; (v) **jeopardize**.

Origin: L *jocus*, play, game + *partir*, to divide into parts => ‘a divided game’ => ‘both sides are equal’ => ‘both chances are equally- can win, can lose’ => ‘risky situation, whose outcome is uncertain.’

- ☐ The smoker was told that smoking one more cigarette would put his life in **jeopardy**.
- ☐ The minister **jeopardized** his life by going to negotiate with the terrorists without any security cover, as they had demanded.

²⁴⁹³ **Jocund**: (adj) cheerful, happy.

- ☐ Following the victory of India in the cricket World Cup, every street of the city was filled with **jocund revelers** dancing to the beats of drums and bursting firecrackers.

²⁴⁹⁴ **Linger**: (v) to be slow in doing or leaving.

Origin: related with ‘longer’ => ‘to take longer’

- ☐ Ravi, who used to live in Rupa’s neighbouring flat, was gone but his memory **lingered**. Why? She often remembered her last sight of him. His family had already said their goodbyes and gone downstairs but he had **lingered**, had stopped at the staircase and then, had looked back at her with wet eyes. He had been crying! She had been crying too. Why? Rupa still did not understand.

²⁴⁹⁵ **Pun**: (n) a play on words, utilizing the fact that two words have the same sound or that one word has two, totally different meanings.

- ☐ Here’s a pun on the word ‘Principle’:

During the **alumni** meet of the school, an **alumnus** who was now a very successful businessman said this in his speech: “School had taught us to never forget our principles. So, Puri sir, I dutifully remembered you because you were the only principal I ever had.” The name of the school’s principal was Mr Romesh Puri.

The word ‘play’, and hence the root *ludere*, is used in two senses. First, there is the play we go to watch in a theatre; associated to it are the words **prelude**²⁴⁹⁶, **interlude**²⁴⁹⁷ and **ludicrous**²⁴⁹⁸. The second sense—the games that people play or that are played upon people— leads to the words below.

A woman who is playing the game of ‘catch me if you can’ with you is being **elusive**²⁴⁹⁹.

Suresh was **nonplussed**. He ought to gift something on Tapan’s—his best friend’s—wedding, but what? He had spent hours, yet the answer **eluded** him. His wife laughed. “Oh darling, there is one gift for which his wife will really thank you!” “What?” Suresh eagerly asked. “Tell me fast!” “Give him deodorants,” she winked, **alluding**²⁵⁰⁰ to Tapan’s problem of bad **odour**.

In another city, Om Prakash Verma was **overwrought**. His plot, which he had spent his life’s savings to purchase, had been **usurped** by a local builder whose goons now did not let him even come near it. He went to the police station and complained to the inspector. The inspector soothed him and then...advised him to pay five lakh rupees. “Oh, it’s not only ours. I’ve included the builder’s share too,” the inspector clarified, thinking that was why the old man looked so shocked. “So, you are all together in this!” Verma ji felt like screaming. “Together, you play games with unsuspecting people. The police **colluding**²⁵⁰¹ with the criminals!” He left in disgust, worrying about his plot and his country and how anyone could ever get justice in such a system.

The other words that have these playful origins are:

²⁴⁹⁶ **Prelude:** (n) an introduction to the main performance or work.

Origin: L *pre-*, before + *ludere*, to play => ‘that which is played before the main act’

- ❑ The clash between groups of Hindu and Muslim boys was a **prelude** to the full-scale riots which happened two weeks later and left a hundred people dead.

²⁴⁹⁷ **Interlude:** (n) a performance which is presented in between two acts of a play.

Origin: L *inter-*, between + *ludere*, to play => ‘in between the play’

- ❑ The young singer’s first big scale public performance was during a play staged at the National Theater Festival in which he presented his songs as an **interlude**.

²⁴⁹⁸ **Ludicrous:** (adj) ridiculous; laughable, nonsensical.

Origin: L *ludere*, to play => ‘playful’ => ‘funny’

- ❑ “Where were you?” the father demanded.

“When I was coming home from the fields, I saw a stone **levitating** right in front of my eyes. When I went closer to it to investigate, a spirit flew out of the stone and tried to get into me. I got so afraid that I just ran. I happened to run towards the fields. The spirit could not run as fast. When I had gained a good distance from it, I climbed up a tree, saw it pass by and only after waiting for some more time did I get down. I have come back home by the longer route because I was afraid that I would find the spirit again on the shorter route. That’s why I got so late.”

“Your story is **ludicrous**,” his father **snapped**. “Tell me honestly where you were.”

²⁴⁹⁹ **Elusive:** (adj) hard to grasp; verb **elude**.

Origin: L *e-*, *ex-*, away + *ludere*, to play => ‘to playfully run away’ => ‘difficult to catch’

- ❑ Despite decades of poverty **alleviation** schemes by the government, freedom from poverty has **eluded** most Indians.
- ❑ Despite decades of government schemes, poverty **alleviation** has proved **elusive**.

²⁵⁰⁰ **Allude:** (v) to make an indirect reference to. Such an indirect reference is called an **allusion**.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *ludere*, to play => ‘to make a playful reference to something’

²⁵⁰¹ **Collude:** (v) to be secret partners in doing something wrong; noun **collusion**.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *ludere*, to play => ‘to play together’.

Ludere-1: **illusion**²⁵⁰², **illusory**²⁵⁰³, **illusiv**²⁵⁰⁴

Ludere-2: **delude**²⁵⁰⁵, **delusion**²⁵⁰⁶

Latin *durus* **hard, lasting**

Do you remember the Duracell bunny in TV ads? While all the other bunnies in the ad fall down exhausted one after the other, he keeps going on and on and on. “Duracell battery—lasts longer, much longer,” the voice-over announces.

‘Duracell’ is **purported** to be a battery that lasts. That is why, it is such a good name for that product. ‘Durable’ goods, like a television, a car or a brick, last a long time too. In contrast are the ‘soft goods’, like cosmetics and **comestibles**, which come with an expiry date.

The ‘duration’ of an event is the time for which it lasts. When you tell your friends what happened ‘during’ the movie, you tell them what happened while it lasted.

Tough times never last but tough people do. This quality of lasting through tough times is called **endurance**²⁵⁰⁷.

Your best friend is abnormally silent; he is either angry or depressed about something, but which, and why? You will ask after his **dour**²⁵⁰⁸ expression melts somewhat; touching him just now might cause explosions!

²⁵⁰² **Illusion:** (n) a false impression of reality.

Origin: L *in-*, with + *ludere*, to play => ‘your mind is being played with’ => ‘your mind is being made to believe things which actually do not exist.’

- ❑ “When you go to war as a boy you have a great **illusion** of **immortality**. Other people get killed; not you ... Then when you are badly wounded the first time you lose that **illusion** and you know it can happen to you.” Ernest Hemingway.
- ❑ *Maya Moh* is a novel by Bengali writer Sunil Gangopadhyay. The title **alludes** to our attachment (*moh*) for the shifting **illusion** that this world is (*maya*).
- ❑ Twenty four-hour news channels are skilled in recycling the same old news every half an hour with an **illusion** of **novelty**.

²⁵⁰³ **Illusory:** (adj) causing **illusion**; misleading.

Origin: adjective form of **illusion**

- ❑ It is **illusory** to believe that reservations in education and jobs will end the social prejudices against the Dalits.

²⁵⁰⁴ **Illusive:** (adj) **illusory**.

²⁵⁰⁵ **Delude:** (v) mislead

Origin: L *de-* + *ludere*, to play => ‘to play with (mind or judgement) for some motive’

- ❑ Australian cricket team won the seventh consecutive international Test match series. This is what the captain of the team said to his mates in their first practice session after the win: “Let us not **delude** ourselves into believing that we are **invincible**. Let our victory inspire us to work harder at our game than to make us complacent.”
- ❑ The **deluded** woman thought that she was God’s angel who had been sent to Earth to establish a kingdom of God.

²⁵⁰⁶ **Delusion:** (n) a false belief.

Origin: noun form of **delude**

- ❑ The child suffered from **delusions** that someone was trying to kill him.

²⁵⁰⁷ **Endurance:** (n) ability to bear difficulties or pain; last; verb **endure**; (adj). **enduring:** means lasting

Origin: L *en-*, in + *durus*, hard => ‘to harden oneself against difficulties’

- ❑ A marathon is a run of 42 km. One needs **endurance** to finish it.
- ❑ The young man **endured** great difficulties on his way to success.
- ❑ Love and war are two **enduring** themes of literature.

²⁵⁰⁸ **Dour:** (adj) extremely serious, unsmiling.

Origin: L *durus*, hard => ‘with a hard look on face’

- ❑ Many students consider History to be a **dour** subject—a boring **roster** of dates and events—but it will begin to seem interesting if they view it as a story, with good guys and bad guys and action and drama.

Indurate²⁵⁰⁹, **obdurate**²⁵¹⁰ and **duress**²⁵¹¹ are the other words from this root.

The Sanskrit word *daru* is related to *durus*. It means wood and is found in *deodar* (the wood of the gods), *dram* (tree), *dramnakh* (thorn) and *dramaalay* (forest). The Persian *drakht* meaning tree too is a **cognate**.

All these words **stem from**²⁵¹² the IE root *deru-*, meaning ‘firm, solid, hard.’

Replace the ‘d’ of *daru* with ‘t’. What happens? You get *teru-* and which word of English is it similar to? Tree! Yes. The English words ‘tree’ and ‘true’ also belong to the *deru-* family. Had you ever wondered before at the similar spellings of tree and true? They both have the idea of firmness.

Now, the state of being true is called ‘truth’, and the promise of truthfulness and loyalty is ‘troth’. The one whom you have made your own with your troth is your **betroted**²⁵¹³.

Truce²⁵¹⁴ and **trysts**²⁵¹⁵ too have the same trustworthy origins.

²⁵⁰⁹ **Indurate**: (v) make hard.

Origin: L *in-*, in + *durus*, hard => ‘to harden’

❑ The **perfidy** of his lover **indurated** his heart. He never could trust a woman again.

²⁵¹⁰ **Obdurate**: (adj) stubborn

Origin: L *ob-* + *durus*, hard => ‘hard-hearted’

❑ “He was cruel enough to **inflict** the severest punishment and **obdurate** enough to be insensible to the voice of a **reproving** conscience.”
Narrative of the Life of Frederick Douglass, an American Slave

❑ There is no worse torture in the world than listening to a song by someone who cannot sing but **obdurately** does so anyway.

²⁵¹¹ **Duress**: (n) state of being pushed into doing something by use of force, threats or imprisonment.

Origin: L *durus*, hard => ‘hardness’

❑ People admit their crimes to police because they are under **duress**.

❑ A bank **heist** cannot be successful without guns. The bank robbers use the guns to threaten the bank staff. It is only under **duress** that the bank employees give them access to the money vaults.

Heist: (n) robbery

²⁵¹² **Stem from**: (v) to originate from.

There is a **homonym** of the above stem.

Stem: (v) to stop the flow.

❑ With alert patrolling, the city police **stemmed** the rise of thefts.

❑ The government **stemmed** the flow of its highly educated professionals to the western countries by offering them great **incentives** for working within the country.

²⁵¹³ **Betrothed**: (n) one with whom one is engaged to be married; verb: **betrot**: to engage to be married.

Origin: be + troth => ‘with troth’

❑ In *Dilwale Dulhaniya Le Jayenge*, Simran is **betroted** to Kuljeet from her birth.

²⁵¹⁴ **Truce**: (n) a cease-fire.

Origin: Old Eng *treow*, pledge

❑ India and Pakistan fought their first war over the Kashmir issue in 1949 but then a **truce** was arranged through the **mediation** of the United Nations.

²⁵¹⁵ **Tryst**: (n) an appointment for a meeting, especially for a secret meeting between lovers; a place where such a meeting takes place.

Origin: related with ‘trust’

❑ Shabbir, the goon of the Bombay underworld whom everyone feared, went for a **tryst** with his lover, who was the sister of a rival goon. He met her, spent time with her, and then, as he was walking back to his car, humming a song, somebody fired bullets after bullets at him from behind a wall. He died on the spot.

❑ The speech that Jawahar Lal Nehru gave at 12 am of 15th August 1947 is popularly known as ‘The **Tryst** of Destiny speech.’ It started with these lines:

“Long years ago, we made a **tryst** with destiny, and now the time comes when we shall **redeem** our pledge, not wholly or in full measure, but very **substantially**. At the stroke of the midnight hour, when the world sleeps, India will awake to life and freedom. A moment comes, which comes but rarely in history, when we step out from the old to the new, when an age ends, and when the soul of a nation, long suppressed, finds utterance. It is fitting that at this **solemn** moment we take the pledge of dedication to the service of India and her people and to the still larger cause of humanity.”

IE *mel-2* **soft**

The Sanskrit words *mulayam*, *malai* and *maluk* are the **cognates** of the common English words ‘melt’ and ‘mild’, and of all the words below:

Mollify²⁵¹⁶, **emollient**²⁵¹⁷, **amalgam**²⁵¹⁸, **smelting**²⁵¹⁹

The Latin word *blandus* also has come from the same IE root. How, are you wondering? Say *meladus* through your nose. You’ll get *melandus*, which became *blandus* with time.

Somebody’s **bland**²⁵²⁰ manner means his pleasantly gentle way of talking and doing things. A **bland** breeze is a softly blowing breeze.

Bland food is not so much fun though. It is mild, and to make it so, no **condiments**, and not much salt, is added to it. It does not excite the taste buds at all! When Rashi called the movie she had been to, **bland**, it was not in the sense of ‘soothing.’ Rather, she had implied that it was dull and **insipid** and had failed to arouse her emotions or interest.

To ‘blandish’ somebody is to soften his heart towards you by saying words and doing things that you know he will like. Seth Sitaram Sudhram Chaubey was very rough and tough with everybody, but before his wife’s **blandishments**²⁵²¹, he melted like ice. She could make him do anything; she was the only one who could.

IE *mel-3* **to crush, grind**

A machine that grinds or **pulverizes**²⁵²² any solid substance, like grains, is called a ‘mill’. The 12 broad-surfaced teeth in our mouth, with which we grind down the food, are called ‘molars.’ We call the crushed remnants of a building, *malba*. The process of rubbing or grinding is called *malan* in Sanskrit. The Hindi word for a wrestler is *mall* probably

²⁵¹⁶ **Mollify:** (v) to soothe.

Origin: L *mollis*, soft

- ☐ Little Ami knew that mama was really, really angry with her. She gently went to her mother, took her hand and kissed it. Her mother pushed her away. Instead, Ami embraced her and kissed her cheek and stroked her hair and kept saying sorry till her mama was finally **mollified** and smiled.

²⁵¹⁷ **Emollient:** (n) an ointment that **allays** irritation and soreness of skin and softens it; (adj) soft, making less harsh.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *mollis*, soft => ‘to soften’

The Indian word for **emollient**- *malham*- is from the same Indo-European root but it has entered our vocabulary through Arabic.

- ☐ Emollients/moisturizers prevent the skin from becoming dry by forming an oily layer on the skin which traps the moisture in the skin.
- ☐ Sujata had been brought up liberally by her widowed mother but now, when she wanted to marry a Christian boy, her mother refused. Sujata fought with her, accusing her of double standards and of caring less about her happiness than about what people may say. Her normally short-tempered mother remained **emollient**, “Sujata my dear,” she said in a tone full of soft, **maternal** love, “it is not people that I am worried about, it’s you.”

²⁵¹⁸ **Amalgam:** (n) a mercury alloy; any well-fused mixture of two or more things.

Origin: Gk *malagma*, a soft mass.

- ☐ Other than iron and platinum, all the metals dissolve in mercury, and the resulting soft mass is called an **amalgam**.
- ☐ India is an **amalgam** of diverse cultures, religions, languages and cuisines.

²⁵¹⁹ **Smelting:** (n) separation of metal from impurities by melting the metal ore.

Origin: from ‘melt’

²⁵²⁰ **Bland:** (adj) without any flavour, dull.

- ☐ The unremarkable voice of the actor completely suited the **bland** personality of the character he played.

²⁵²¹ **Blandishment:** (n) a flattering statement made to make the other person do something desirable.

☐ Here’s a **blandishment** taken from the movie *Andaaz apna apna*:

“Aap mahaan hai! Aap shaktimaan hai! Balki mein to kehta hu ki... aap purush hi nahi hai!” “Kyaa ?????!!!” “Mera matlab, aap mahapurush hai!”

²⁵²² **Pulverize:** (v) to grind into small particles.

- ☐ “Muscle *dekhe hai na mere, MUSSAL ke rakh doonga!*” This dialogue is again from the movie *Andaaz Apna Apna*. The phrase ‘*mussal ke rakh doonga*’ translates into “I will **pulverize** you.”

because it is his job to grind down his opponent. When someone tells his enemy, “*Main tera maliamet kar doonga*,” he is threatening to grind him to dust. The other words from this root are:

*Mel-1: malleable*²⁵²³, *mallet*²⁵²⁴

*Mel-2: maul*²⁵²⁵, *maelstrom*²⁵²⁶

*Mel-3: moulder*²⁵²⁷, *emolument*²⁵²⁸, *immolate*²⁵²⁹

Latin *trit*us **to rub away, thresh, to wear out**

Two lovers were sitting by the lake. The girl suddenly stopped talking, looked seriously at the boy and asked how much he loved her. The boy smiled and said, “*Main tumhaare liye apni jaan de sakta hoon!*” The girl was disappointed. “I had not expected such a **trite**²⁵³⁰ dialogue from you,” she said.

The other words from this root are:

*Tritus-1: detritus*²⁵³¹, *triturate*²⁵³²

²⁵²³ **Malleable:** (adj) capable of being hammered into sheets.

Origin: L *molere*, to grind -> *malleus*, hammer

☐ Kids’ hearts are **malleable**, but once they get set in a shape, it’s hard to get them back the way they were.

²⁵²⁴ **Mallet:** (n) a wooden hammer.

Origin: L *malleus*, hammer

²⁵²⁵ **Maul:** (v) to beat badly.

Origin: L *molere*, to grind

☐ A violent tornado **mauled** east Bihar, killing 80 people, besides **rendering** thousands homeless.

²⁵²⁶ **Maelstrom:** (n) a whirlpool.

Origin: Dutch *malen*, to grind + *strom*, stream

☐ The innocent boy was drawn into the **maelstrom** of crime.

²⁵²⁷ **Moulder:** (v) to decay.

☐ My running shoes **mouldered** in the back of my store-room.

²⁵²⁸ **Emolument:** (n) payment or rewards for work done.

Origin: L *e-*, out + *molere*, to grind

☐ The company extracted very hard work out of all its employees but the **emoluments** they received were also very handsome.

²⁵²⁹ **Immolate:** (v) to sacrifice.

Origin: L *im-*, in + *molare*, to grind

☐ One of the students protesting against the government’s reservation policy **immolated** himself for their cause by setting himself on fire.

☐ The woman who did not have any child **immolated** the son of her neighbour because an **occult** practitioner—a *taantrik*—had told her that blood of a child would **appease** the gods who were angry with her.

²⁵³⁰ **Trite:** (adj) overused, dull, unimaginative.

Origin: L *trit*us, to wear away => ‘an expression that has become worn out through overuse.’

The Hindi phrase ‘*ghisa pita*’ captures the exact meaning of **trite**.

²⁵³¹ **Detritus:** (n) eroded material from rocks, etc.; any debris, including those formed from the decay of organisms

Origin: L *de-*, down + *trit*us, to wear => ‘to wear down’ => ‘to erode’

☐ Electrical and electronic gadgets are not biodegradable. So, the rich western countries dispose off their electronic **detritus** by simply dumping it in the poor countries of Asia and Africa.

²⁵³² **Triturate:** (v) to **pulverize**.

Origin: L *trit*us, to rub down

☐ The crisp toast was **trituated** by the teeth.

☐ The royal **apothecary** prescribed a **concoction** made of **trituated** ruby for the ailing queen.

Tritus-2: **attrition**²⁵³³, **detriment**²⁵³⁴, **contrite**²⁵³⁵

Tribulation²⁵³⁶ and **diatribe**²⁵³⁷ are close cousins of the above words.

Latin *plicare* **to fold**

‘Multiplication’ means ‘to make **manifold**²⁵³⁸’. To ‘duplicate’ is to make twofold.

Duplicity²⁵³⁹ means a twofold, a double, take on an issue. The Pakistani premier Nawaz Sharif was being **duplicious** when he welcomed the Indian Prime Minister Atal Bihari Vajpayee to Lahore in February 1999 and talked of friendship and peace. According to the Kargil Review Committee Report, he was fully aware at that time of his Army’s plan to **infiltrate**²⁵⁴⁰ into the Kargil area.

The folds on a skirt are called ‘pleats’ or **plaits**²⁵⁴¹. The easily foldable bodies of gymnasts or ballerinas are **supple**²⁵⁴². The men who offer no resistance at all to the force of their ruler and bend quietly are **pliable**²⁵⁴³ and **pliant**²⁵⁴⁴. If they

²⁵³³ **Attrition**: (n) a reduction of resources.

Origin: L *ad-*, to + *tritius*, to wear down

- ❑ The **attrition** rate of the BPO company (Call Center) was 40%. This meant that 40% of all employees who joined the company left it within a year. This led to heavy losses to the company because it had to continuously spend money to train new employees but soon after the employees were trained and had become useful for the company, they left.

²⁵³⁴ **Detriment**: (n) damage or harm; (adj). **detrimental**.

Origin: same as **detritus**.

- ❑ The parents had thought that sending their child to the hostel would be good for his education and development. But the move clearly worked to his **detriment**. The child felt lonelier and more unloved at the hostel than he ever had before.
- ❑ The increasing pollution in the river had a **detrimental** effect on its fish population.

²⁵³⁵ **Contrite**: (adj) feeling very guilty and sorry about the wrongs done.

Origin: L *con-*, + *tritius*, crushed down => ‘crushed down by the weight of guilt’

- ❑ The phrase ‘*ab pachhtaaye kya hot jab chidiya chug gayi khet*’ says that ‘**contrition** is **fruitless** after a wrong has been done.’ Most religions, however, preach that even after committing a sin, if a person feels **contrite** and does **penance** for it, he can be forgiven.

²⁵³⁶ **Tribulation**: (n) great suffering.

Origin: L *terere*, to crush, grind

- ❑ When Ram defeated Ravan and came before Sita, she thought her **tribulation** had passed. Little did she know that another **tribulation** lay in wait for her. People, and consequently Ram, questioned her **chastity** because she had lived in Ravan’s palace and even after giving an *agnipariksha*, their doubts were not silenced.

²⁵³⁷ **Diatribe**: (n) a lengthy, usually angry, criticism.

Origin: Gk *dia-*, away + *tribein*, to rub

- ❑ At the slightest mention of their father, whom they missed badly, the two children would get a **diatribe** from their mother who hated the very name of the husband who had left her for another woman.

²⁵³⁸ **Manifold**: (adv) many-times

²⁵³⁹ **Duplicity**: (n) double-speak, double-dealing.

²⁵⁴⁰ **Infiltrate**: (v) to filter into; to move through a border, into a territory, secretly and with a mission to do harm

²⁵⁴¹ **Plait**: (n) a braid of hair; a fold of cloth.

Origin: L *plicare*, to fold

²⁵⁴² **Supple**: (adj) flexible

Origin: L *sub-*, under + *plicare*, to fold => ‘folding under’ => ‘flexible’

- ❑ The **supple** movements of the ballet dancer **awed** the audience. It seemed to them that her body was made of soft rubber.

²⁵⁴³ **Pliable**: (adj) flexible; easily influenced.

- ❑ The kingdom of Turfaad, which used to be one of Zhaq’s most **pliable** allies, slowly turned its back and became one of its strongest critics.

²⁵⁴⁴ **Pliant**: (adj) flexible

must say something to His Highness, they say it on their knees—they **supplicate**²⁵⁴⁵. A ‘supplicant’ is also called a **suppliant**²⁵⁴⁶.

Fold your arms, or if you are sitting, your legs. They become intertwined. This image of intertwining can be found in some of the *plicare* words listed below:

Plicare-1: application, **complicity**²⁵⁴⁷, **accomplice**²⁵⁴⁸

Plicare-2: **explicit**²⁵⁴⁹, **explicate**²⁵⁵⁰, **implicit**²⁵⁵¹

Plicare-3: **implicate**²⁵⁵², implication, imply

Plicare-4: **deploy**²⁵⁵³, **replicate**²⁵⁵⁴, **plight**²⁵⁵⁵

²⁵⁴⁵ **Supplicate**: (v) to request very humbly, like a prayer to a God.

Origin: L *sub-*, down + *plicare*, to fold => ‘to bend down on one’s knees to ask for something’

❑ The beggar **supplicated** to the men in the car for a few coins so that he could feed himself.

²⁵⁴⁶ **Suppliant**: (adj) **supplicating**; (n) one who **supplicates**.

❑ The kingdom of Zhaq offered financial aid to its neighbouring kingdom of Draft, which had recently suffered from a great earthquake, but on the condition that Draft would support it in a war against the kingdom of Turfaad. The king of Draft angrily rejected the insulting offer saying that his kingdom was no **suppliant** for anybody’s help and could take care of itself and would not, under any circumstances, let anyone dictate terms to it.

²⁵⁴⁷ **Complicity**: (n) partnership in crime.

Origin: L *com-*, together + *plicare*, to fold

❑ The state government was allegedly **complicit** in the massacre of around 2000 Muslims in Gujarat in 2002.

❑ The state government’s **complicity** was alleged in the 2002 **pogrom**.

²⁵⁴⁸ **Accomplice**: (n) a partner in a crime.

Origin: from **complicity**

❑ The police determined that the businessman had been murdered by his younger brother and the dead man’s wife was his **accomplice**.

²⁵⁴⁹ **Explicit**: (adj) clearly and openly expressed.

Origin: L *ex-*, out + *plicare*, to fold => ‘to fold outwards’

❑ The movies which have **explicit** sex scenes are deemed unfit to be viewed by children.

²⁵⁵⁰ **Explicate**: (v) to make plain and clear; to explain.

❑ The philosopher **explicated** his theories in simple language in his lecture tours.

²⁵⁵¹ **Implicit**: (adj) unstated but understood.

❑ “Were you not happy with your job?” Gena’s friend asked her.

“I think the answer is **implicit** in the fact that I left the job,” Gena smiled.

²⁵⁵² **Implicate**: (v) to imply; to imply involvement, usually in a crime.

❑ The discovery that the dead man’s wife had made a phone call to his murderer an evening before the crime **implicated** her. The police asked her why the record of that call was missing from her cell phone’s memory though the **roster** at the cellular network providing company clearly showed that a call had been made from her number. Her great nervousness, stammering and inability to answer seemed to **implicate** her role in the murder.

²⁵⁵³ **Deploy**: (v) to position soldiers in ready mode.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *plicare*, to fold => ‘to unfold’ => ‘to spread apart’

❑ Despite the **deployment** of tens of thousands of troops, the Maoist violence got worse.

²⁵⁵⁴ **Replicate**: (v) to copy.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *plicare*, to fold

❑ Many dancers try to **replicate** the famous MoonWalk of Michael Jackson but no one can do it as well.

²⁵⁵⁵ **Plight**: (n) sad or miserable condition.

Origin: L *plicare*, to fold -> ‘wrinkled state’

❑ “I am in a sad **plight**,” King Dasaratha told his *guru*, **Sage** Vasishta. ‘I am getting old but I have no child. It **torments** me night and day to think that my dynasty will end with me. Please tell me what to do!” By the **sage’s** advice, the king held an year-long yagna. After some time, each of his three wives bore sons.

IE *ne-* not

“*Nahin! Ye nahin ho sakta!*”

How many times have you heard the heroes and heroines and their mothers in the Hindi movies close their ears in **anguish**²⁵⁵⁶ and give out this **maudlin** cry, or have sung this standard song in an Antakshri, to corner your opponent by giving them a tough ‘th’ to start their song from: *na na karte pyaar tum hi se kar baithe?*

Our *na* and *nahin* are **cognates** of the basketful of words below:

Na: No, never, neither, none, nil, **annul**²⁵⁵⁷, **nullify**²⁵⁵⁸, nor, not, naught

Na na: **nefarious**²⁵⁵⁹, **nihilism**²⁵⁶⁰, **annihilate**²⁵⁶¹, **negate**²⁵⁶²

Na na na: **abnegate**²⁵⁶³, deny, **renegade**²⁵⁶⁴, **renege**²⁵⁶⁵

²⁵⁵⁶ **Anguish**: (n) great pain.

²⁵⁵⁷ **Annul**: (v) to declare invalid, cancel.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *nullare*, to make null

- ❑ The khap panchayat at Rumanda village in Haryana **annulled** the marriage of Sunder Lal and Lilawati because both were of the same caste, and directed Lilawati to tie a *rakhi* on Sunder Lal's wrist. However, in a rare show of personal courage, Lilawati refused to accept the panchayat's **fiat** saying that she preferred death to accepting Sunder as her brother. Then, Sunder's family too stood up in her support and said they were disgusted by the decision.

²⁵⁵⁸ **Nullify**: (v) to declare or make invalid or ineffective.

Origin: null + *-fy*, to make => 'to make null'

- ❑ When it was proved beyond doubt that the marriage had been forced upon the bride by the groom and his family, the court **nullified** the marriage.

²⁵⁵⁹ **Nefarious**: (adj) extremely wicked, villainous.

Origin: L *ne-*, not + *fas*, right => 'against the law, against God's law'

- ❑ Ram initially became friends with Sunder and Jagmohan but when he heard of all their **nefarious** deeds, he quickly **snapped** all ties with them.

²⁵⁶⁰ **Nihilism**: (n) the belief that nothing holds any value or truth, and that nothing can be known.

Origin: L *nihil*, nothing

²⁵⁶¹ **Annihilate**: (v) to destroy completely; to reduce to nothingness.

Origin: L *ad-*, towards + *nihil*, nothing

- ❑ In the movie *Paap ko jala kar raakh kar doongaa*, the hero promises that he will himself that he will **annihilate** all evil from the world.

²⁵⁶² **Negate**: (v) to deny, to **nullify**.

Origin: L *negare*, to deny

- ❑ The minister was accused of taking bribes from big industrialists to pass land development projects, but he **negated** the charges.

²⁵⁶³ **Abnegate**: (v) to give up, **renounce**.

Origin: L *ab-*, away + *negare*, to deny

- ❑ Mothers are by nature self-**abnegating**. If there is a **paucity** of food, they go hungry themselves so that their children can **sate** themselves.

²⁵⁶⁴ **Renegade**: (n) traitor

Origin: L *re-*, back + *negare*, to deny

- ❑ Shah Daaman had been **ousted** from power by his brother, Taaman, with the help of some of his ministers and friends. However, Daaman did not accept the back-stabbing so easily. He **rallied** all his supporters and attacked Taaman. Taaman was defeated in the war and Daaman became the king again. The first thing that he did was to put all his **renegade** ministers and friends to death.

²⁵⁶⁵ **Reneger**: (v) to go back on one's words.

Origin: L *re-*, again + *negare*, to deny

- ❑ Little children are often taught the rhyme: promise-breakers are shoe-makers. Another way of saying the same thing: those who **renege** on their promise are shoe-makers.

The word 'naughty' has come from naught. It meant 'having nothing, that is, no goodness' and was used for evil or immoral acts or persons. It has remarkably **mellowed** down since and is used for merely mischievous or disobedient kids today.

Now, the things get more interesting. You've heard people **chanting** *Om Namah Shivay*, haven't you? The Sanskrit *namah* means 'to bow, to offer a **deferential**²⁵⁶⁶ salutation.' It is a compound of *na* and *mah*, self, and therefore denotes a rejection of ego, a submission. *Namaste* is from *namah+ te*. *Te* means you- it's a cousin of *tu* in today's Hindi and *thee* in the English of old- and so *Namaste* means 'I bow before you.' A greeting of great humility indeed! *Namaskar* is made from *namas+ kar* and so means 'an act of bowing.' *Namaz* is the Persian **counterpart** of these words.

Latin *cernere* **to separate, sift**

You can associate this root with the Hindi word *chhaan* found in *chhannana* and *chhantna*. It looks similar and means the same.

The *cernere* words are:

Cernere-1: secretion, **secrete**²⁵⁶⁷, **ascertain**²⁵⁶⁸

Cernere-2: **concert**²⁵⁶⁹, **disconcert**²⁵⁷⁰

²⁵⁶⁶ **Deferential**: (adj) respectful; noun **deference**: meaning respect.

²⁵⁶⁷ **Secrete**: (v) to release a discharge; to hide.

- The stomach **secretes** gastric juices which help in the digestion of food.
- He **secreted** the precious documents in an old trunk in the store room of his house.
- A secretary is one who can keep your secrets!

²⁵⁶⁸ **Ascertain**: (v) to make sure.

Origin: L *ad-,to* + *certain*, sure. The etymology of 'certain' is as under:

L *cernere*, to decide -> *certus*, decided, sure

- The widow's role in her husband's death is yet to be **ascertained**.

²⁵⁶⁹ **Concert**: (n) harmony

Origin: L *con-*, together + *cernere*, to sift

- Though the husband and the wife disagreed on most issues, they were in **concert** on the choice of a school for their young child.

²⁵⁷⁰ **Disconcert**: (v) to disturb greatly.

- Everyone was **disconcerted** by his crazy behaviour. He seemed to have lost his sanity!

Cernere-3: **discern**²⁵⁷¹, **discreet**²⁵⁷², **decree**²⁵⁷³

Latin *unguere* **to smear**

Look back at the root *pungere*, to prick. One of the words that came out of that root was a totally-different looking 'point'. Similarly, *jungere* meant to join and it gave us 'joint'. So, please do not look very shocked when I tell you that *unguere* gave us *ointment*.

Aunty *Unguere* is also the mother of the following words:

Anoint²⁵⁷⁴, **unction**²⁵⁷⁵, **unctuous**²⁵⁷⁶

Latin *usus* **to use**

Of course the word 'use' has come from this root. The other words from 'use' are:

Useful words-1: usage, **usurp**

Useful words-2: disuse, misuse

Useful words-3: **abuse**²⁵⁷⁷, **disabuse**²⁵⁷⁸

²⁵⁷¹ **Discern**: (v) to distinguish something.; to recognize something as different from others; to understand.

Origin: L *dis-*, apart + *cernare*, to sift

- ❑ "If you want to **discern** a man and know his soul, you must look, not at how he keeps silent, or how he speaks, or how he weeps, or even how he is stirred by the noblest ideas, but you had better look at him when he laughs. If a man has a good laugh, it means he's a good man." Fyodor Dostoevsky

²⁵⁷² **Discreet**: (adj) showing good judgment in speech or conduct.

- ❑ They lived in a pleasant house, with a garden, and they had **discreet** servants, and felt themselves superior to anyone in the neighbourhood.
- ❑ Shahzaada Salim was so besotted with Anarkali that he promised to make her the queen of Hindustan one day. When emperor Akbar learnt of his son's **indiscretion**, he was furious and ordered immediate **incarceration** of Anarkali.
- ❑ "It has been alleged that the cause of a very famous husband-poisoning with arsenic, was nothing less than a series of constant **indiscretions** like these that the wife had to bear in society. This husband used to give his wife, public little taps on her shoulder, he would startle her by a resounding kiss, he dishonoured her by a conspicuous tenderness, seasoned by those **impertinent** attentions the secret of which belongs to the French **savages** who **dwell** in the depths of the provinces, and whose manners are very little known. It was, it is said, this shocking situation,—one perfectly appreciated by a **discerning** jury,—which won the prisoner a verdict softened by the **extenuating** circumstances.
The jurymen said to themselves:
"For a wife to murder her husband for these **conjugal** offences, is certainly going rather far; but then a woman is very excusable, when she is so harassed!" Petty Troubles of Married Life, by Honore de Balzac
Indiscretion (n) the state of not being **discreet**

²⁵⁷³ **Decree**: (n) authoritative order; (v) pass such an order.

- ❑ Shih Huang Ti, the first Emperor of China, the man who unified the five kingdoms and built the Great Wall, **decreed** that every book written before he was born should be destroyed.

²⁵⁷⁴ **Anoint**: (v) to make sacred in a ceremony by rubbing oil; to rub oil or an ointment.

- ❑ The prince was **anointed** as a king in a huge ceremony which was attended by people from all over the kingdom.

²⁵⁷⁵ **Unction**: (n) an act of **anointing**; the use of oil in religious ceremonies; a soothing balm.

- ❑ In christianity, a priest rubs olive oil or another pure plant oil on the forehead and hands of a dying man while reciting prayers. This **anointing** is said to bless the patient, forgive his sins and strengthen his soul to face the coming death. This ceremony is known as **unction** or extreme **unction**.

²⁵⁷⁶ **Unctuous**: (adj) oily

- ❑ David Copperfield did not like the **unctuous** manner in which Uriah Heep talked. He wished he would talk naturally and honestly.

²⁵⁷⁷ **Abuse**: (v) to use wrongfully or exploitatively.

- ❑ Sundar **abused** the trust that his friend Shaam had placed in him and told everybody of Shaam's secrets.

²⁵⁷⁸ **Disabuse**: (v) to clear a misconception of.

- ❑ Rabi **disabused** his son of the belief that the sun revolved around the earth.

Miscere, medius, post, radix, cadere, petere

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He was quite *a rash* fellow.
(a) a petulant (b) an impetuous (c) propitious (d) rehabilitated (e) radical
2. His *way of singing* the old song was superb.
(a) genuflection of (b) immuring of (c) rendition of (d) propitiation of (e) perpetuation of
3. The judge *freed him from all charges*.
(a) exculpated him (b) declared him to be decadent (c) shoved him (d) hewed him (e) deracinated him
4. It was *an extremely stupid* suggestion.
(a) an irradicable (b) a posterior (c) an anterior (d) a meddlesome (e) a preposterous
5. He *begged* her to forgive him.
(a) propitiated (b) perpetuated (c) deracinated (d) beseeched (e) genuflected
6. His manner was *king-like*.
(a) perpetual (b) beseeching (c) petulant (d) impetuous (e) imperial
7. The priest told them *a favorable* date for their son's marriage.
(a) propitious (b) perpetual (c) recidivistic (d) petulant (e) perpetuating
8. A *dead body* was found under the snow.
(a) cadaver (b) cascade (c) decadence (d) recidivist (e) jester
9. In the *disorder created by the panicked crowd*, two children were trampled to death.
(a) melee (b) medley (c) melange (d) shoving (e) promiscuity
10. He proposed *a fundamental* change.
(a) a decadent (b) a deciduous (c) a cadence of (d) a radical (e) a cascade of

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (e) 5. (d) 6. (e) 7. (a) 8. (a) 9. (a) 10. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. A series of small, step-like waterfalls: C _____
2. Future generations: P _____
3. Decay of morals: D _____
4. To stand on bent knees, as a mark of respect or worship: G _____
5. Favourable: P _____
6. To imprison: I _____
7. Lasting forever: P _____
8. Command of an emperor: I _____
9. The force with which a body falls into something else: I _____
10. To cut with an axe: H _____
11. Mental and physical weakness resulting from old age : C _____
12. Accepted moral values and customs of a society : M _____
13. The state of having casual sexual relations with many partners: P _____

14. An artwork painted on a wall or a ceiling: M _____
 15. Falling back in crime: R _____

Answers:

cascade, posterity, decadence, genuflect, propitious, immure, perpetual, imperative, impetus, hack/hew, caducity, mores, promiscuity, mural, recidivism

Gratus, placare, gwer-, leg^h-, jocus, ludere, durus:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. He *referred indirectly* to her poor performance in the past.
 (a) eluded (b) alluded (c) deluded (d) colluded (e) lingered
2. The officer's remarks were *unasked for and unjustified*.
 (a) gratuitous (b) gratis (c) obdurate (d) dour (e) deluded
3. He was a *worthy of great respect* old man.
 (a) placid (b) complacent (c) gratuitous (d) venerable (e) grave
4. A light plastic bag *floated* in the air.
 (a) levitated (b) aggravated (c) wafted (d) leavened (e) lingered
5. He *soothed her anger* by saying that he will teach her enemies a lesson.
 (a) made her complacent (b) made her complaisant (c) placated her (d) ingratiated himself to her (e) venerated her
6. His suggestion *was laughable*.
 (a) had levity (b) was ludicrous (c) was elusive (d) was jocular (e) was illusory
7. He *worsened* her pain by rubbing salt into her wounds.
 (a) placated (b) levitated (c) alleviated (d) colluded (e) aggravated
8. He *pretended to be very caring and loving and thus got himself into the good books of his wealthy uncle*.
 (a) ingratiated himself to (b) stemmed (c) indurated (d) betrothed (e) endured
9. He *risked* his life.
 (a) aggravated (b) ingratiated (c) deluded (d) jeopardized (e) endured

Answers:

1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (d) 4. (c) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (e) 8. (a) 9. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. Great respect: V _____
2. A sloping boundary wall of a river: L _____
3. Self- satisfied: C _____
4. Playful or funny gestures: A _____
5. Lightness of mind or behavior: L _____
6. A cease-fire: T _____
7. A play on words, utilizing the fact that two words have the same sound or that one word has two, totally different meanings:
 P _____
8. A non-medicinal substance given to a patient because he believes it can cure him: P _____
9. To float in the air, seemingly through magic: L _____
10. To be secret partners in doing something wrong: C _____

11. State of being pushed into doing something by use of force, threats or imprisonment: D _____
12. Robbery: H _____
13. An ungrateful person: I _____
14. Ability to bear difficulties or pain: E _____

Answers:

eneration, levee, complacent, antics, levity, truce, pun, placebo, levitate, collude, duress, heist, ingrate, endurance

mel-2, mel-3, tritus, plicare:

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

- The movie had *the same, commonplace dialogues that you hear in almost every movie*.
(a) trite dialogues (b) triturated dialogues (c) emollient dialogues (d) detrimental dialogues (e) contrite dialogues
- He *felt really sorry for his wrongs*.
(a) was in a maelstrom (b) was bland (c) was amalgamated (d) was contrite (e) was emollient
- He *prayed* before the king to give him a job.
(a) supplicated (b) triturated (c) immolated (d) moldered (e) mauled
- The old buildings *decay* and crumble and new ones come up in their place.
(a) maul (b) triturate (c) pulverize (d) mollify (e) moulede
- He received handsome *payment* for his work.
(a) pulverization (b) emoluments (c) deployment (d) diatribe (e) immolation
- Muscles are *flexible*.
(a) duplicitous (b) trite (c) contrite (d) malleable (e) supple
- She was moved by the orphan's *misery and suffering*.
(a) diatribe (b) plight (c) plait (d) complicity (e) supplication
- He *crushed* the self-confidence of his younger brother.
(a) mollified (b) smelted (c) blandished (d) pulverized (e) mauled
- The lecture was *dull, uninteresting*.
(a) bland (b) emollient (c) duplicitous (d) pliant (e) implicit
- She *sacrificed* her desires for the happiness of her family.
(a) mauled (b) moldered (c) immolated (d) triturated (e) infiltrated

Answers:

1. (a) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (e) 5. (b) 6. (e) 7. (b) 8. (d) 9. (a) 10. (c)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

- A wooden hammer: M _____
- A mercury alloy: A _____
- Partnership in crime: C _____
- A reduction of resources: A _____
- An ointment that removes irritation and soreness of skin and softens it: E _____
- Great suffering: T _____
- A lengthy, angry criticism: D _____
- Separation of metal from impurities by melting the metal ore: S _____

9. To position soldiers in ready mode: D _____
10. A flattering statement made to make the other person do something desirable: B _____

Answers:

mallet, amalgam, complicity, attrition, emollient, tribulation, diatribe, smelting, deploy, blandishment

ne-, cernere, unguere, usus, velle

Select the word or phrase that can replace the italicized part of each sentence:

1. The servant showered *oily* praise upon his master.
(a) nefarious (b) discreet (c) unctuous (d) discerning (e) disabusing
2. He came here by his own *will*.
(a) negation (b) deference (c) concert (d) volition (e) discretion
3. The government *failed to carry out* the promise it had made to the voters.
(a) was indiscreet about (b) reneged on (c) abnegated (d) negated (e) annulled
4. The servant *showed good judgment in how much to tell about his master to whom and what not to tell at all*.
(a) was a renegade (b) was nefarious (c) was not discerning (d) was malevolent (e) was discreet
5. He lent money at *overcharging* rates of interest, ranging from 45 to 60 percent.
(a) usurious (b) utilitarian (c) malevolent (d) annihilating (e) nefarious
6. He was *greatly disturbed* by her accusations.
(a) discerned (b) decreed (c) secreted (d) disconcerted (e) disabused

Answers:

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (e) 5. (a) 6. (d)

Write down the words against the given meanings:

1. An authoritative order: D _____
2. To make sacred in a ceremony by rubbing oil : A _____
3. Desire to harm others: M _____
4. To destroy completely: A _____
5. Overcharging of interest: U _____
6. Respect: D _____
7. To give up one's rights on something: A _____
8. Traitor: R _____
9. To read thoroughly: P _____
10. The belief that nothing holds any value or truth, and that nothing can be known: N _____

Answers:

decree, anoint, malevolence, annihilate, usury, deference, abnegate, renegade, peruse, nihilism

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language, Fourth Edition
English and Sanskrit—A Common Heritage of Words, by Dr G.S. Rayall, Publication Bureau, Punjabi University,
Patiala
Troublesome Words, Bill Bryson
Word Power Made Easy, Norman Lewis
Allied Chambers Transliterated Hindi-Hindi-English Dictionary
Dictionary of Word Origins, by Joseph T. Shipley
Origins: an Etymological Dictionary of Modern English by Eric Partridge
Wikipedia
<http://wordinfo.info>
www.dictionary.com
<http://www.indo-european.nl/>
<http://www.utexas.edu/cola/centers/lrc/ielex/PokornyMaster-X.html>

This page is intentionally left blank.

INDEX

A

- abash, 312
- abate, 87
- abdicate, 130
- abduction, 337
- aberrant, 222
- abhor, 263
- abject, 274
- abjure, 340
- ablution, 299
- abnegate, 403
- abominable, 212
- abominate, 212
- abomination, 212
- aborigine, 29
- abortive, 30
- abound, 13
- abrogate, 134
- abscission, 350
- abscond, 265
- abstain, 286
- abstemious, 286
- abstinence, 286
- abstract, 272
- abstruse, 273
- abundant, 13
- abuse, 405
- abut, 58
- accede, 214
- accentuate, 137
- acclaim, 134
- acclivity, 244
- accolade, 177
- accommodate, 364
- accomplice, 402
- accord, 77
- accouter, 358
- accretion, 30
- accrue, 30
- acerbic, 346
- acme, 345
- acquaint, 93
- acquiesce, 247
- acquit, 247
- acrid, 346
- acrimony, 346
- acrophobia, 346
- actuary, 208
- actuate, 207
- acuity, 345
- acumen, 345
- acupuncture, 345, 347
- acute, 345
- adage, 136
- adamant, 184
- adapt, 199
- addle, 323
- adduce, 338
- adept, 199
- adhere, 57
- adhesive, 57
- adieu, 308
- adjacent, 274
- adjourn, 307
- adjunct, 356
- adjuration, 340
- admonish, 75
- admonition, 75
- adore, 120
- adorn, 199
- adroit, 336
- adulation, 129
- adulterous, 324
- advent, 218
- adventitious, 218
- adversary, 237
- adverse, 237
- adversity, 237
- advert, 237
- advocate, 135
- aeon, 46
- aesthetic, 347
- affable, 125
- affect, 191
- affiance, 82
- affidavit, 82
- affiliate, 4
- affluence, 374
- affront, 264
- agendum, 208
- aggravate, 393
- aggregate, 328
- aggress, 211
- aghost, 128
- agile, 20
- agnostic, 93
- agony, 209
- agora, 327
- agoraphobia, 327
- agraphia, 102
- agreeable, 392
- alacrity, 319
- alchemist, 153
- alcove, 172
- alias, 324
- alibi, 324
- alien, 324
- alienate, 324
- aliment, 33
- alimentary, 33
- alimony, 33
- allay, 217
- allegory, 327
- alleviate, 394
- alliteration, 278
- alloy, 357
- allude, 396
- allure, 31
- alluvium, 297
- alma mater, 33
- alter, 324
- alter ego, 318
- altercation, 324
- alternative, 324
- altruist, 32
- alumnus, 33
- amalgam, 399
- amateur, 84
- amatory, 84
- Amazon, 259
- ambidextrous, 150
- ambient, 213
- ambivalence, 259
- ambrosia, 66
- ameliorate, 122
- amenable, 12
- amentia, 73
- amiable, 85
- amicable, 85
- amity, 85
- amnesia, 74
- amnesty, 74
- amoral, 50–51
- amorous, 84
- amortize, 66
- ample, 197
- amplify, 197
- amputate, 49
- anachronism, 59
- anagram, 103
- analgesic, 59
- analogous, 140
- anarchist, 333
- anarchy, 333
- anathema, 251

- anatomy, 351
Andrew, 13
anecdote, 57
anesthesia, 347
anfractuous, 352
anguish, 403
animadversion, 237
animate, 49
animation, 49
animosity, 50
animus, 50
annals, 61
annexation, 359
annexure, 359
annihilate, 403
annotate, 94
annuity, 61
annul, 403
anodyne, 174
anoint, 405
anomalous, 323
anonymous, 16
antagonist, 209
antecede, 214
antecessor, 214
antediluvian, 299
anterior, 388
anterograde, 209
anthem, 126
anthropoid, 14
anthropology, 14
anthropomorphic, 14
anticipate, 266
antics, 395
antipathy, 164
antipodean, 153
antithesis, 251
apathy, 164
aperture, 290
apex, 211
aphasia, 125
aplomb, 104
apocrypha, 290
apologist, 141
apologue, 141
apology, 141
apostasy, 253
apothecary, 6
apothecosis, 2
appall, 165
appendage, 364
apposite, 249
appraise, 378
appreciate, 378
apprehend, 267
apprehensive, 268
apprentice, 269
apprise, 268
approbation, 301
appropriate, 320
approximate, 59
appurtenance, 288
apropos, 249
aquiline, 158
arabesque, 305
arbiter, 341
arbitrary, 341
arbitrate, 341
arcane, 298
archaeology, 332
archaeopteryx, 332
archaic, 332
archetype, 332
archives, 333
archrival, 332
ardent, 311
argot, 127
arid, 311
ark, 298
armada, 86
armament, 86
armistice, 86
armor, 86
arraign, 97
arrogance, 133
arrogate, 133
arson, 311
artful, 24
articulate, 5
artifact, 195
artifice, 193
artless, 24
ascertain, 404
ascetic, 31
ascribe, 101
asperity, 161
aspire, 308
assail, 235
assault, 235
assay, 208
assent, 163
assert, 386
assiduous, 248
assimilate, 322
assonance, 148
assuage, 178
astral, 9
astringent, 359
astronomical, 9
astronomy, 9
astute, 50
asunder, 130
atheist, 2
attenuate, 285
attest, 254
attribute, 374
attrition, 401
audacity, 19
auspicious, 110
austere, 31
authoritarian, 132
autoclave, 292
autopsy, 108
avarice, 25
avenge, 131
aver, 302
averse, 236
aversion, 236
avert, 236
avid, 126
avocation, 135
avowal, 135
avuncular, 192
awe, 52
axiom, 254–255
azote, 48
- B**
- babble, 306
badger, 49
baleful, 200
ballistics, 276
banal, 124
bane, 53
banish, 124
banns, 124
barb, 381
barge, 323
barrage, 261
bask, 4
bate, 87
beatific, 192
befuddle, 101
beget, 37
beguile, 192
behoove, 24
beleaguer, 248
belie, 178
bellicose, 87
belligerent, , 87
benediction, 132
benefactor, 296
beneficent, 296
beneficiary, 296
benevolence, 406
benign, 296
benison, 132
bequeath, 255
bequest, 255
berate, 336
bereaved, 275
beseech, 391
beset, 248
bestial, 335–336
betrothed, 398
beverage, 175
bevy, 13–14
bewitch, 210
biannual, 60
bible, 40
bibliography, 411
bibliomancy, 74
bibliophile, 40
bibulous, 175
biennial, 60
bigamy, 299
binocular, 108
bipartite, 355
bisect, 160–161
blabber, 120
blanch, 123
bland, 399
blandish, 399
blandishment, 399
blaspheme, 125
blather, 112
bleak, 311
blight, 298
bode, 97
boisterous, 199
bolster, 81
bolt, 149
bonhomie, 7
bonny, 296
boon, 53
boorish, 37
bough, 66
bouillon, 313
bounty, 19
bovine, 19
brackish, 368
braggadocio, 6
braggart, 6
bragging, 6
brandish, 172
breach, 193
brim, 364
brink, 5
broach, 193
brouhaha, 353
browbeat, 207
brunt, 376
brusque, 221
bucolic, 19

- bugle, 19
bullion, 313
burly, 221
burrow, 49
- C**
- cacophony, 126
cadaver, 389
cadence, 389
caducity, 389
caitiff, 266
calamity, 261
caldron, 312
callous, 85
candor, 308
canny, 93
canorous, 138
cant, 137
cantabile, 137
cantankerous, 162
cantata, 137
cantillate, 137
canto, 137
capacious, 266
caparison, 19
capillary, 72
capitulation, 72
capitulate, 72
caprice, 217
capsize, 72
captious, 266
captivating, 265
captive, 265
carapace, 346
cardiac, 78
career, 220
caricature, 220
carnage, 159
carnal, 158
carnassials, 159
carnation, 158
carousal, 301
carrion, 158
cartographer, 102
cascade, 389
castigate, 300
cataclysm, 298
categorical, 327
catholic, 326
caustic, 312
cauterize, 312
cavalcade, 18
cavalier, 18
cavalry, 18
cavern, 371
cavort, 320
- cede, 214
celerity, 263
celestial, 307
celibate, 287
centrifugal, 221
cephalic, 73
cessation, 215
chafe, 312
chaff, 376
chant, 137
chantey, 138
char, 10
charlatan, 11
chary, 167
chaste, 287
chasten, 300
chastise, 300
chattel, 73
chequered, 221
cherub, 32
chide, 121
chiromancy, 74
chisel, 350
chivalry, 18
chronic, 59
chronicle, 56
churl, 37
churlish, 37
circuitous, 212
circumlocution, 127
circumscribe, 101
circumspect, 109
circumvent, 218
cite, 210
clairvoyance, 115
clamant, 134
clamber, 244
clamor, 134
claustrophobia, 291
clavicle, 292
cleave, 17
cliché, 124
climax, 245
clime, 245
clique, 15
cloister, 291
cloture, 291
cloy, 138
coagulate, 208
coalesce, 33
coalition, 33
coddle, 221
codicil, 255
coeval, 46
cogent, 208
cogitate, 208
- cognate, 29
cognition, 94
cognizance, 94
cognoscenti, 94
cohabitation, 386
cohere, 57
coherent, 57
cohesion, 57
collaborate, 189
collate, 226
collation, 226
colligate, 357
colloquialism, 126
colloquium, 127
colloquy, 127
collude, 396
colossal, 51
combat, 87
comestible, 174
commandeer, 150
commemorate, 77
comminute, 369
commiserate, 283
commodious, 364
commotion, 206
commune, 380
commute, 61
compendium, 365
compensate, 365
complacent, 393
complaisant, 393
complement, 372
complicity, 402
comply, 372
component, 249
comport, 224
composure, 249
comprehensive, 268
comprise, 268
compunction, 347
concede, 214
conceit, 267
conceive, 266
conception, 266
concert, 404
concise, 350
conclave, 292
concoct, 173
concomitant, 212
concord, 78
concupine, 245
concurrence, 219
concurrent, 219
condemn, 378
condescend, 236
condign, 381
- condole, 165
condone, 297
conduce, 338
conduit, 338
confabulation, 125
confer, 64
confidant, 82
confiscate, 100
conflagration, 310
conflate, 290
confluence, 374
congenial, 37
congenital, 34
congregation, 328
conjecture, 275
conjugal, 355
conjunction, 356
conjuror, 340
connive, 55
connoisseur, 94
connotation, 94
connubial, 25
consanguinity, 79
conscience, 26
conscientious, 96
conscribe, 101
consecration, 3
consensus, 163
consent, 163
consequential, 240
consign, 241
consolidate, 57
consonance, 147
conspicuous, 109
constellation, 315
constituent, 252
constraint, 359
contagion, 161
contaminant, 161
contemporary, 59
contend, 284
contention, 284
contest, 254
contiguous, 161
continence, 287
contort, 278
contraband, 124
contraindication, 131
contravene, 219
contretemps, 54
contrite, 401
contronym, 17
controvert, 237
contumacy, 284
contusion, 301
convalesce, 258

- convection, 223
convene, 218
convention, 218
conventional, 218
converge, 239
conversant, 238
converse, 238
convert, 238
convex, 223
conveyance, 223
convince, 262
convivial, 47
convoke, 136
convoluted, 227
convoy, 224
coordinate, 341
coparcener, 355
copious, 190
cordial, 77
cordon, 214
coriaceous, 159
cornucopia, 190
coronation, 79
corporal, 157
corpse, 157
corpulence, 157
corpuscle, 157
correlation, 264
corrigen^{da}, 336
corroborate, 81
corset, 157
corybantic, 1
cosmic, 339
cosmopolitan, 339
coterie, 339
countenance, 286
countermand, 150
counterpoise, 366
courier, 220
couture, 358
covenant, 219
covert, 290
cow, 87
cower, 10
coy, 247
cranky, 352
craven, 354
credence, 83
credible, 83
credo, 83
credulous, 83
crescendo, 30
crescent, 30
crevice, 354
crone, 158
crony, 58
crypt, 290
cubicle, 245
cuckold, 51
culinary, 173
culpability, 387
cumbersome, 34
cumbrous, 34
cupidity, 85
curator, 166
current, 220
cursive, 220
cursory, 219
- D**
- dabbler, 172
dainty, 381
damnation, 378
dapper, 36
dappled, 79
dart, 348
daunt, 184
dauntless, 184
debase, 85
debauched, 235
debility, 258
debonair, 296
decadence, 390
decapitate, 72
decease, 215
deceit, 267
deciduous, 389
declaim, 134
declivity, 244
decoction, 173
decollate, 177
décolleté, 177
decompose, 250
decorum, 75
decoy, 371
decree, 405
decrepit, 354
decrypt, 290
deduction, 337
deface, 197
defame, 126
defection, 196
deference, 404
defiant, 82
deflate, 289
defray, 353
defunct, 191
defy, 82
degenerate, 34
deglutition, 175
degrade, 211
degree, 210
deify, 308
deign, 381
deity, 308
déjà vu, 115
deject, 274
delectable, 172
delineate, 111
delinquent, 217
delirium, 217
delude, 397
deluge, 298
delusion, 397
delve, 57
demagogue, 331
demean, 12
dementia, 73
demise, 122
democracy, 331
demographic, 331
demon, 6
demonic, 6
demophobia, 331
demotic, 331
demur, 25
denigrate, 315
denizen, 386
denotation, 94
denouement, 358
denounce, 128
depict, 84
deplete, 372
deploy, 402
deported, 224
deportment, 224
depose, 250
deposition, 250
deprecate, 132
depreciate, 378
deracinate, 389
deranged, 130
dereliction, 216
deride, 62
desecration, 3
desert, 78
desist, 254
desolation, 319
despair, 30
despicable, 109
despondent, 298
despot, 183
destitute, 253
desultory, 235
detestable, 15
detract, 272
detriment, 401
detritus, 400
detumescence, 375
deviate, 223
devious, 223
devise, 73
devolve, 227
devoured, 121
dexterous, 150
dextrorotatory, 150
diabolical, 179
diadem, 78
diagnose, 93
dialect, 140
dialectical, 140
diaphanous, 111
diatribe, 401
dichotomy, 351
dictum, 128
diffluent, 374
digress, 161
dilapidated, 216
dilate, 226
dilatory, 226
dilemma, 321
dilettante, 172
diligent, 139
diminutive, 368
din, 135
disabuse, 405
disaffect, 194
disapprobation, 301
disavow, 135
discern, 405
disclaimer, 134
disclose, 291
discombobulate, 259
discomfiture, 195
disconcert, 404
discord, 78
discourse, 220
discreet, 405
discrepancy, 354
discursive, 220
disdain, 380
disembark, 166
disfigure, 199
disgorge, 176
disguise, 116
disheveled, 129
disinclination, 244
disinter, 314
dismal, 307
dismantle, 388
dismay, 207
dismiss, 173
disparage, 368
disparate, 160

- disparity, 368
 dispel, 274
 dispense, 365
 disport, 224
 disposition, 250
 disprove, 301
 disquiet, 247
 dissect, 160
 dissemble, 322
 disseminate, 26
 dissent, 163
 dissident, 249
 dissimulate, 322
 dissonance, 147
 dissuade, 178
 distend, 284
 distillate, 377
 distillation, 377
 distort, 278
 distrait, 272
 distraught, 272
 dither, 122
 diurnal, 306
 diva, 308
 diverge, 239
 diversity, 237
 divert, 224
 divest, 391
 divine, 308
 divulgence, 285
 docile, 100
 docket, 76
 doctrinaire, 100
 doctrine, 100
 dodder, 86
 doff, 113
 doggerel, 139
 dogma, 99
 dogmatic, 99
 doleful, 165
 dolor, 165
 domain, 39
 domicile, 182
 domineer, 183
 dominion, 183
 don, 133
 donna, 183
 dormant, 246
 dormer, 246
 dormitory, 246
 dorsal, 148
 dossier, 148
 dour, 397
 douse, 10
 dowdy, 178
 downcast, 130
 draft, 101
 draught, 175
 drivel, 139
 droop, 4
 dubiety, 9
 dubious, 9
 duct, 337
 ductile, 337
 dulcet, 31
 dungeon, 183
 duplicity, 401
 durable, 397
 duress, 398
 dwelling, 181
 dwindle, 289
 dyke, 394
 dysfunctional, 191
 dyslexia, 140
 dyspepsia, 173
 dystopia, 286
- E**
- earnest, 321
 eavesdropper, 64
 ebb, 1
 ebullient, 313
 echelon, 236
 eclectic, 139
 ecology, 182
 economy, 182
 ecstasy, 253
 ecumenical, 182
 edict, 128
 edifice, 196
 edify, 196
 educe, 338
 efface, 197
 effervescent, 313
 efficacy, 196
 effigy, 198
 effluent, 375
 effrontery, 264
 effulgent, 310
 egocentric, 318
 egoist, 318
 egotist, 318
 egregious, 328
 egress, 211
 eidetic, 116
 ejaculation, 275
 elaborate, 189
 elation, 226
 elite, 140
 elixir, 377
 eloquence, 128
 elucidate, 306
 elude, 396
 elusive, 396
 emanate, 373
 emancipate, 149
 embark, 166
 embellish, 305
 embroider, 6
 eminent, 12
 emollient, 399
 emolument, 400
 empathy, 164
 enamored, 84
 enclave, 292
 encomium, 52
 encrypt, 290
 encumber, 34
 endemic, 331
 endogamy, 299
 endorsement, 148
 endow, 31
 endowment, 31
 endue, 338
 endurance, 397
 enervate, 263
 engender, 34
 engorge, 176
 enigma, 121
 enjoin, 356
 ennui, 86
 enrapture, 264
 ensanguined, 79
 ensemble, 323
 ensue, 240
 enterprise, 269
 entice, 24
 entomology, 351
 entrance, 31
 entreat, 31
 entreat, 122
 entrench, 349
 entrepreneur, 269
 enunciate, 128
 envisage, 115
 envoy, 224
 eon, 46
 ephemeral, 370
 epic, 137
 epidemic, 331
 epigram, 103
 epigraph, 102
 epilogue, 141
 epiphany, 112
 epistemology, 253
 epithet, 251
 epitome, 351
 eponym, 17
 equanimity, 50
 equestrian, 18
 equine, 18
 equinox, 315
 equipoise, 366
 equitable, 321
 equivocate, 135
 eradicate, 388
 ergonomics, 188
 erotic, 85
 errant, 222
 erratic, 222
 erratum, 222
 erroneous, 222
 ersatz, 248
 erudite, 200
 escapade, 285
 espionage, 110
 ethereal, 373
 ethnic, 319
 ethnology, 319
 ethos, 319
 eugenics, 35
 eupepsia, 173
 euphemism, 125
 euphony, 126
 euthanasia, 35
 evanescent, 370
 evict, 262
 evident, 115
 evince, 262
 evoke, 136
 exacerbate, 346
 exacting, 206
 exactitude, 206
 exalt, 34
 exasperate, 161
 excavate, 371
 exceptionable, 265
 excise, 350
 excommunicate, 380
 excoriate, 159
 excrescence, 30
 exculpate, 387
 execrable, 3
 execrate, 3
 exemplary, 269
 exemplify, 269
 exempt, 269
 exhort, 136
 exhume, 8
 exigent, 207
 exiguous, 20
 exile, 158
 exogamy, 349
 exonerate, 201

exorcise, 340
 exotic, 95
 expanse, 289
 expansive, 289
 expatriate, 27
 expedient, 152
 expedite, 152
 expletive, 372
 explicate, 402
 explicit, 42
 exposition, 250
 expostulate, 133
 expound, 250
 expropriate, 320
 expunge, 347
 expurgate, 299
 extant, 252
 extempore, 55
 extenuate, 285
 extradition, 151
 extricate, 221
 extrovert, 237
 extrude, 273
 exude, 172
 exultant, 234

F

fable, 125
 façade, 197
 facet, 197
 facile, 192
 facsimile, 322
 faction, 195
 factious, 195
 factitious, 191
 factotum, 195
 faculty, 195
 fallacious, 95
 fallacy, 95
 fallible, 153
 fancier, 111
 fanciful, 112
 fancy, 111
 fang, 367
 fantastic, 112
 fantasy, 111
 fatalism, 123
 fathom, 148
 fatuous, 278
 fealty, 81
 feasible, 195
 febrile, 313
 feckless, 193
 feeble, 389
 feign, 198
 feint, 198
 felon, 122

feral, 367
 fermentation, 313
 fervent, 313
 fervid, 313
 fervor, 313
 fiat, 193
 fickle, 377
 fictitious, 198
 fidelity, 81
 fiduciary, 81
 fiend, 75
 fiery, 63
 figment, 198
 figurative, 199
 figurine, 199
 filch, 222
 filial, 4
 filigree, 171
 fiscal, 100
 fissure, 216
 flag, 81
 flagellate, 206
 flagellum, 206
 flagrant, 310
 flamboyant, 311
 flatulent, 289
 flaunt, 305
 flay, 334
 fledge, 51
 fledgling, 51
 flinch, 377
 flippant, 112
 floe, 275
 flog, 334
 flop, 1
 flotsam, 275
 flounder, 275
 flourish, 351
 flout, 379
 fluctuate, 374
 fluent, 374
 flummox, 6
 fluvial, 375
 flux, 374
 fodder, 7
 foible, 98
 foist, 85
 foment, 313
 forage, 7
 foray, 7
 ford, 225
 foreboding, 97
 forfeit, 18
 forsake, 32
 forte, 260
 fortify, 260
 fortitude, 260

fortuitous, 342
 foster, 32
 fracas, 353
 fractious, 35
 frail, 352
 frangible, 352
 frantic, 275
 fraternal, 4
 fraternity, 4
 fratricide, 4
 fraught, 31
 forward, 238
 fructify, 193
 frugality, 365
 fugitive, 220
 fulminate, 310
 furious, 75
 furrow, 200
 fury, 75
 fusillade, 261
 futile, 53

G

gag, 150
 gale, 275
 gall, 130
 gambit, 31
 gambol, 31
 gamut, 131
 gape, 136
 gargantuan, 177
 gargoyles, 177
 garner, 171
 gasp, 52
 gaunt, 244
 genealogy, 35
 generalities, 40
 generic, 40
 genesis, 40
 genial, 37
 genius, 38
 genocide, 35
 genre, 40
 genteel, 36
 gentile, 36
 gentility, 36
 gentry, 35–36
 genuflect, 391
 genus, 39
 geriatrics, 63
 germane, 41
 germinal, 40
 germination, 40
 gerontocracy, 63
 gesture, 29
 gilded, 309
 girth, 289
 glare, 309
 glean, 207
 glen, 176
 glib, 349
 glimmer, 309
 gloaming, 309
 gloat, 310
 gloss, 309
 gloss over, 309
 glower, 309
 glut, 175
 glutton, 175
 gnome, 93
 goaded, 346
 gorge, 176
 gory, 97
 gouge, 123
 graduate, 210
 graffiti, 102
 granary, 171
 grandeur, 189
 grandiloquence, 128
 granite, 171
 granule, 171
 graphic, 102
 graphology, 102
 gratify, 392
 grating, 52
 gratis, 392
 gratuitous, 392
 gratuity, 392
 grave, 393
 gravid, 393
 gregarious, 328
 grimace, 124
 grime, 80
 groped, 245
 grouse, 312
 grovel, 133
 grueling, 129
 gruffness, 159
 guffaw, 75
 guile, 192
 guise, 116
 gull, 176
 gullet, 176
 gullible, 176
 gully, 176
 gurgle, 177
 gust, 275
 guy, 116

H

habitat, 386
 hack, 300
 hag, 183
 hagiography, 102

- hallucination, 161
 hanker, 268
 haphazard, 57
 harangue, 194
 harp, 162
 harry, 51
 hatch, 51
 haughty, 34
 haven, 4
 hawser, 34
 hedonism, 178
 heed, 5
 heedful, 5
 heedless, 5
 hefty, 167
 hegemony, 87
 heinous, 121
 heist, 398
 hermetic, 377
 heterodoxy, 99
 heterogeneous, 40
 hew, 390
 hideous, 166
 hierarchy, 333
 hinterland, 352
 hoary, 178
 hoi polloi, 373
 holistic, 32
 holocaust, 312
 hologram, 326
 homage, 7
 homicide, 7
 homily, 323
 homogeneous, 40
 homogenize, 323
 homograph, 17
 homologous, 140
 homonym, 17
 homophone
 hooligan, 63
 horde, 263
 horoscope, 110
 horrendous, 207
 horrid, 263
 human, 7
 humane, 6
 humble, 8
 humility, 8
 humor, 8
 hunch, 52
 hurl, 261
 hurtle, 261
 hymen, 351
 hyperbole, 276
 hypermetropia, 107
 hypotenuse, 284
 hypothesis, 251
- I**
- ideology, 377
 idol, 116
 idyll, 116
 ignite, 312
 ignoble, 92
 ignominy, 16
 ignorant, 96
 illegible, 139
 illuminate, 305
 illusion, 397
 illusive, 397
 illusory, 397
 imbibe, 175
 imbrue, 175
 imbue, 175
 imitation, 289
 immaculate, 307
 immanent, 181
 imminent, 12
 immiscible, 386
 immoderate, 363
 immodest, 363
 immolate, 400
 immoral, 50
 immortal, 65
 immune, 380
 immure, 390
 impair, 153
 impale, 129
 impalpable, 160
 impartial, 339
 impasse, 336
 impeach, 152
 impeccable, 153
 impecunious, 18
 impede, 152
 impediment, 152
 impel, 274
 impending, 364
 imperative, 390
 imperial, 390
 imperious, 390
 impertinent, 288
 impervious, 224
 impetuous, 391
 impetus, 391
 implacable, 393
 implicate, 402
 implicit, 402
 implore, 325
 impolitic, 339
 imponderable, 367
 import, 225
 importune, 225
 imposture, 250
- imprecate, 132
 improbity, 301
 impromptu, 270
 impropriety, 321
 improvident, 113
 improvise, 113
 imprudent, 114
 impugn, 151
 impuissant, 260
 impulse, 274
 impunity, 379
 impute, 306
 inalienable, 324
 inamorata, 84
 inamorato, 84
 inanimate, 49
 inanity, 217
 inarticulate, 5
 incandescent, 308
 incantation, 137
 incarcerate, 53
 incarnation, 158
 incendiary, 309
 incense, 309
 incentive, 137
 inception, 266
 incessant, 215
 incest, 300
 incidental, 219
 incipient, 266
 incisive, 350
 incite, 210
 incognito, 94
 incoherent, 575
 incommunicado, 380
 incontinence, 287
 incontrovertible, 237
 incorrigible, 336
 incredulous, 83
 incriminate, 327
 incubate, 245
 incubus, 245
 inculcate, 154
 incumbent, 245
 incur, 220
 incursive, 220
 indefatigable, 172
 indemnify, 378
 index, 131
 indict, 130
 indigenous, 35
 indigent, 381
 indignant, 381
 indiscretion, 405
 indispensable, 365
 indite, 131
 indoctrinate, 100
- indolence, 165
 indomitable, 184
 induction, 337
 indurate, 398
 industrious, 56
 inebriated, 121
 ineffable, 125
 ineffectual, 194
 ineluctable, 123
 inept, 199
 inequity, 322
 inerrancy, 222
 inexorable, 122
 infallible, 153
 infamy, 126
 infantry, 124
 infatuate, 278
 infidel, 82
 infidelity, 82
 infiltrate, 401
 inflammation, 311
 inflict, 26
 influx, 375
 infraction, 352
 infringement, 352
 infuriate, 75
 ingenious, 38
 ingenuity, 38
 ingenuous, 38
 ingrate, 392
 ingratiate, 392
 ingurgitate, 177
 inhumane, 7
 inimical, 85
 injunction, 356
 innate, 29
 innocuous, 64
 inoculation, 108
 inopportune, 225
 inordinate, 341
 insensate, 162
 insensible, 162
 insidious, 249
 insignia, 241
 insinuation, 51
 insipid, 179
 insolent, 276
 insomnia, 246
 insouciant, 325
 insubordination, 342
 insubstantial, 252
 insuperable, 11
 insurgent, 334
 insurmountable, 11
 insurrection, 335
 intangible, 161
 integral, 162

- integrate, 162
integrity, 162
intellect, 139
intelligentsia, 140
intelligible, 140
intemperate, 56
inter, 314
intercede, 214
intercept, 266
interdict, 131
interlude, 396
intermediate, 388
internecine, 63
interpose, 250
interregnum, 334
interstice, 254
intervene, 218
intestate, 255
intimidate, 211
intractable, 271
intransigent, 207
intricate, 221
intrigue, 221
introspect, 109
introvert, 237
intruder, 273
intuition, 28
inundate, 13
inure, 190
invective, 223
inveigh, 223
inveigle, 108
inveterate, 35
invidious, 114
invincible, 262
invoke, 136
iota, 95
irate, 352
irk, 352
irradicable, 389
irrational, 348
irrefragable, 353
irrefutable, 324
irreproachable, 32
irrevocable, 136
irritable, 235
itinerant, 212
itinerary, 212
- J**
- jaded, 56
jargon, 177
jaundiced, 166
jaunt, 288
jaunty, 36
jeer, 62
jeopardy, 395
jest, 390
jester, 390
jetsam, 275
jettison, 275
jocose, 395
jocular, 395
jocund, 395
jostle, 356
jot, 57
journeyman, 307
judiciary, 341
judicious, 341
junction, 356
junta, 356
jurisdiction, 132
jurisprudence, 340
jury, 339
juxtapose, 356
- K**
- kaleidoscope, 116
keg, 194
ken, 93
kiln, 173
kin, 41
kindle, 30
kindred, 41
knave, 207
krypton, 53
- L**
- laborious, 189
lacerate, 263
lachrymal, 172
lachrymose, 172
lackey, 214
laity, 189
lambaste, 221
lament, 25
languish, 192
lanky, 262
larceny, 18
lavish, 298
lax, 206
lean, 244
leaven, 394
legacy, 216
legend, 139
legerdemain, 148
leitmotif, 205
leonine, 259
levee, 394
levitate, 394
levity, 394
levy, 394
lexicon, 140
liability, 357
liaison, 357
libertine, 297
libretto, 120
lien, 357
lieutenant, 287
ligament, 357
ligature, 357
limn, 305
linger, 395
lionize, 259
lithium, 11
lithosphere, 10
litigation, 207
liturgy, 189
livid, 149
logomachy, 141
longanimity, 50
loom, 172
loquacious, 126
lucid, 306
lucifer, 306
lucrative, 225
lucubrate, 30
ludicrous, 396
lull, 66
lullaby, 66
luminary, 305
luminous, 305
lunge, 259
lurch, 28
lurk, 130
luster, 305
- M**
- madrigal, 28
maelstrom, 400
magnanimous, 50
magniloquence, 12
magnum opus, 189
maiden, 149
maim, 49
majestic, 79
majesty, 79
major-domo, 182
maladroit, 336
malady, 395
malaise, 295
malapropism, 249
malcontent, 285
malediction, 130
malefactor, 296
malefic, 296
malevolence, 406
malfeasance, 296
malice, 295
malign, 295
malleable, 400
mallet, 400
malodorous, 180
manacles, 150
mandarin, 74
mandate, 150
maneuver, 190
mangle, 261
manifest, 148
manifesto, 149
manifold, 401
manipulate, 149
mannered, 150
manor, 181
mantic, 74
manticore, 65
manumission, 149
mar, 220
marine, 228
marital, 77
maritime, 228
marsh, 228
maternal, 28
matriculate, 28
matrimony, 28
matrix, 28
maudlin, 340
maul, 400
mayhem, 49
measly, 132
meddle, 387
meddlesome, 387
mediate, 388
medieval, 297, 349
mediocre, 388
medium, 388
medley, 387
meek, 82
melancholy, 127
mélange, 387
melee, 387
mellifluous, 374
mellow, 161
melody, 138
memento, 74
memorandum, 77
memorialize, 76
menace, 12
ménage, 181
menagerie, 181
mendacity, 297
menial, 181
mentor, 74
mercantile, 376

- mercenary, 377
 merchandise, 376
 mercurial, 376
 meridian, 307
 mesmerize, 126
 metallurgy, 188
 metamorphose, 262
 metaphor, 95
 metathesis, 110
 mete, 128
 metropolis, 339
 microcosm, 339
 millennium, 60
 minatory, 12
 mince, 369
 miniature, 369
 minuscule, 369
 minute, 369
 minutiae, 369
 mire, 228
 mirth, 172
 misadventure, 218
 misanthrope, 14
 misapprehension, 268
 misappropriate, 320
 miscegenation, 386
 miscellaneous, 387
 miscible, 386
 misconstrue, 13
 miscreant, 83
 misdemeanor, 122
 misnomer, 16
 misogyny, 15
 misprize, 378
 mnemonic, 74
 mob, 149
 mock, 62, 321
 mode, 363
 modest, 363
 modicum, 363
 modish, 363
 modulate, 363
 modulus, 363
 molasses, 374
 molest, 297
 mollify, 299
 mollicoddle, 221
 momentous, 205
 monarch, 322
 monocle, 108
 monogamy, 299
 monolith, 10
 monolithic, 11
 monotheism, 2
 monotonous, 175
 monumental, 75
 morass, 228
 moratorium, 25
 morbid, 66
 mordant, 65
 mores, 386
 moribund, 65
 morph, 306
 morsel, 65
 mortal, 65
 mortician, 65
 mortify, 65
 mortuary, 65
 motif, 205
 motility, 206
 mountebank, 11
 muddle, 38
 mull, 78
 mundane, 84
 munificent, 379
 munitions, 26
 mural, 390
 muse, 74
 muster, 76
 mutate, 61
 mutilate, 368
 mutter, 217
 mutual, 61
 myopia, 107
 myriad, 267
- N**
- naïve, 29
 nascent, 28
 notation, 227
 natatorium, 227
 native, 29
 nausea, 228
 nautical, 228
 necromancy, 63
 necropsy, 108
 necrosis, 63
 nefarious, 403
 negate, 403
 negligent, 13
 neologism, 54
 neophyte, 54
 nepotism, 371
 nescient, 96
 nexus, 359
 nicety, 97
 niche, 249
 niggly, 25
 nihilism, 403
 nocebo, 64
 nocturnal, 315
 node, 358
 noisome, 86
 nomad, 7
 nomenclature, 16
 nominal, 16
 nonchalance, 312
 noose, 358
 nostalgia, 59
 nostrum, 11
 notorious, 52
 novelty, 53
 novice, 53
 noxious, 64
 nuance, 266
 nubile, 24
 nullify, 403
 numismatist, 326
 nuptial, 25
- O**
- oaf, 81
 obdurate, 398
 obeisance, 251
 obese, 174
 obituary, 213
 objective, 275
 oblate, 226
 obliterate, 278
 oblivion, 129
 oblivious, 129
 obloquy, 127
 obnoxious, 64
 obscene, 111
 obsequious, 240
 obstetric, 252
 obstinate, 253
 obtrude, 273
 obtuse, 345
 obverse, 239
 obviate, 223
 occident, 29
 occlusion, 291
 oculist, 108
 ode, 138
 odious, 86
 odium, 86
 odor, 86
 oeuvre, 190
 officious, 192
 ogle, 108
 olfactory, 180
 oligarchy, 333
 ombudsman, 97
 omen, 76
 omnipotent, 260
 omniscient, 96
 onerous, 201
 onomatopoeia, 15
 onslaught, 129
 onus, 201
 oomancy, 74
 opera, 190
 operose, 190
 ophthalmologist, 10
 opportune, 225
 opprobrium, 235
 optician, 108
 optimism, 190
 optimum, 190
 optometrist, 107
 opulent, 190
 opus magnum, 189
 oracle, 121
 orator, 120
 oratorio, 120
 ordain, 342
 ordinance, 342
 ordinate, 341
 ordination, 342
 orgy, 189
 orient, 29
 orifice, 123
 ornate, 199
 ornithomancy, 74
 rotund, 226
 orthodontist, 286
 orthodox, 99
 orthography, 102
 osseous, 157
 ossify, 157
 ostensible, 284
 ostentatious, 284
 ostracism, 158
 oust, 252
 outflux, 375
 outmoded, 363
 outrage, 13
 outwit, 117
 oversight, 351
 overt, 290
 overture, 290
 overwrought, 75
 oviparous, 47
- P**
- paediatrics, 370
 paedophile, 370
 painstaking, 305
 palatable, 175
 palatial, 336
 palaver, 277
 paleontologist, 332
 pall, 166

- pallid, 165
palpable, 160
palpation, 159
palpitation, 169
panacea, 377
pandemic, 331
panegyric, 327
pantheism, 21
pantheon, 2
parable, 276
parabola, 277
paradigm, 132
paradox, 99
paragon, 52
paramount, 11
paramour, 84
parenthesis, 251
parish, 182
Parity, 368
parlance, 277
parley, 277
parliament, 125, 277
parochial, 182
parody, 138
paroxysm, 346
parse, 355
partake, 355, 368
partisan, 355
parvenu, 219, 232
pastoral, 7
pasture, 7
patent, 289
paternoster, 27
pathology, 164
pathos, 163, 164
patina, 289
patriarch, 232
patrician, 27, 373
patrimony, 27
patriotism, 126
patron, 27
patronize, 27
paucity, 369, 403
pauper, 369
pawn, 153
peccadillo, 122, 153
peculation, 18
peculiar, 17, 18
pecuniary, 18
pedagogue, 370
pedagogy, 370
pedant, 370
pedestrian, 152
pedigree, 152
peer, 368
peerless, 368
pejorative, 153
pell-mell, 387
pellucid, 306
pelt, 10
penal, 379
penchant, 366
pendulous, 364
penitent, 267
pensive, 366
penumbra, 315
penury, 164
peon, 153
peregrination, 96
peremptory, 270
perennial, 61
perfidy, 82
perfunctory, 192
periscope, 111
perjury, 340
permutation, 61
pernicious, 63
peroration, 123
perpetrate, 27
perpetual, 391
perpetuate, 391
persecute, 240
perspective, 108
perspicacious, 110
perspicuous, 110
pert, 290
pertain, 288
pertinacious, 293
peruse, 406
pervert, 238
pervious, 224
pessimism, 153
pestilence, 122
petition, 390
petrify, 10
petulant, 391
phantasm, 112
phantasmagoria, 327
phantom, 112
phenomenon, 351
philanderer, 13
philanthropist, 14
philatelist, 326
phillumenist, 305
phlegm, 295
phlegmatic, 295
physiognomy, 93
physiologist, 354
pine, 279
pinnacle, 1
pioneer, 153
pitfalls, 77
placate, 393
placebo, 393
placid, 392, 393
plait, 401
plausible, 160
plebian, 373
plebian, 373
plebiscite, 373
plenary, 372
plenipotentiary, 373
plenitude, 372
plenum, 372
pleonasm, 372
plethora, 373
pliable, 401
pliant, 401
plight, 402
plumb, 104
plummet, 104
plunder, 264
plunge, 104
pluperfect, 192
plutarchy, 333
podiatrist, 153
podium, 152
pogrom, 201
poignant, 347, 348
politic, 339
polity, 339
polyandry, 15
polygamy, 299
polyglot, 176
polygyny, 15
polymath, 176
ponder, 367
ponderous, 367
portend, 285
porter, 225
portfolio, 225
portly, 224, 225
poseur, 250
posterior, 388
posterity, 388
posthumous, 8
postulate, 133
posture, 240
potable, 174
potent, 260
potentate, 260
potion, 174
prandial, 174
prattle, 126
precarious, 132
precede, 214
precedent, 214
precept, 267
precincts, 151
precipice, 72
precipitate, 72
precipitous, 72
précis, 350
precise, 350
preclude, 291
precursor, 220
predecessor, 215, 245
predicament, 132
predilection, 139
predispose, 250
preeminent, 12, 213
preempt, 270
preface, 125
pregnable, 268
prehensile, 267
prejudiced, 166
prelate, 226
prelude, 396
premonition, 76
prenatal, 28
prenuptial, 25, 26
preponderance, 367
prepossessing, 248
preposterous, 388
prepotent, 260
prerogative, 133
prescient, 96
presentiment, 163
presumptive, 271
presumptuous, 271
pretentious, 284
preternatural, 29, 61
prevail, 259
prim, 323
prima donna, 183, 308
primeval, 46
primogeniture, 37
primordial, 341
privation, 320
privilege, 320
privy, 320
prize, 269
probe, 301
probity, 301, 390
problematic, 277
proclaim, 134
proclivity, 244
procreate, 30
procure, 166
prodigal, 276
prodigious, 96
profess, 85
profligate, 207
progenitor, 34

- progeny, 34, 228
 progeria, 63
 prognosis, 93
 prognosticate, 93
 progress, 208, 212
 prohibitive, 261
 projectile, 275
 prolate, 226
 proletarian, 33
 Proletariat, 33
 prolicide, 33
 proliferate, 33
 prolific, 33
 prologue, 141
 promenade, 12
 prominent, 12, 79
 promiscuous, 387
 promontory, 12
 prompt, 270
 promulgate, 263
 pronto, 270
 propel, 274
 propensity, 366
 prophecy, 125
 prophesy, 122, 125
 prophet, 122, 125
 prophetic, 125
 propinquity, 59
 propitiate, 391
 propitious, 391
 proponent, 250
 propound, 250
 proprietor, 329
 propriety, 320
 prosaic, 238
 proscribe, 100
 proscription, 99, 100
 prosecute, 240
 proselyte, 263
 proselytise, 263
 prosody, 138
 prosthesis, 251
 protagonist, 209
 protégé, 27
 prototype, 332
 protozoan, 48
 protract, 272
 protrude, 273
 protuberance, 375
 provenance, 219
 providence, 113
 provident, 113, 114
 providential, 113
 provisional, 114
 proviso, 114
 provocative, 135
 prowess, 37
 proximity, 59
 proxy, 167
 prudent, 114
 prurient, 112
 pseudonym, 16
 psyche, 73
 psychiatry, 73
 psychic, 73, 354, 394
 psychology, 73
 psychosis, 73
 pterodactyl, 332
 puerile, 369
 pugilist, 151
 pugnacious, 151
 puissant, 260
 pulchritude, 58
 pulverize, 399, 400
 pun, 395
 punctilious, 347
 pungent, 347
 purblind, 299
 purgatory, 299
 purge, 299
 puritan, 299
 purport, 225
 purported, 225, 394
 purveyor, 114
 pusillanimous, 369
 putative, 236
 putrefaction, 196
 putrid, 196
- Q**
- quack, 11
 quadruped, 152
 quagmire, 228
 quail, 335
 quaint, 93
 qualify, 197
 qualms, 51
 quandary, 321
 quarry, 159
 quash, 120, 335
 quaver, 84
 quell, 149
 quiescent, 247
 quietude, 247
 quinquennium, 60
 quintessence, 348
 quip, 112
 quiver, 84
 quizzical, 112
 quorum, 158
 quotidian, 307
- R**
- raconteur, 71, 120
 radical, 389
 rakish, 4
 rally, 357
 ramble, 71
 rambunctious, 80
 ramification, 197
 ramify, 197
 rampant, 182
 rankle, 121, 194
 rankling, 121
 ransack, 10
 rapacious, 264
 rapine, 264
 rapport, 225
 rapt, 264
 rapture, 264
 rarefy, 196
 rash, 26
 raspy, 52
 ratify, 98
 ratiocination, 98
 rationale, 98
 rationalize, 98
 raucous, 352
 ravage, 265
 rave, 58
 ravenous, 265
 ravine, 265
 ravish, 265
 reactionary, 208
 realm, 334
 rebate, 87
 rebuff, 354
 recalcitrant, 154
 recant, 137
 recapitulate, 72
 recede, 215
 recess, 215
 recidivism, 390
 reckless, 276, 371
 reckon, 216, 276
 reclaim, 134
 recline, 244
 recluse, 291
 recoil, 160
 recompense, 365
 reconnaissance, 94
 reconnoiter, 94
 recount, 120
 recourse, 219
 recreant, 82
 rectified, 336
 rectitude, 336
 recumbent, 246
 recuperate, 267
 recurrent, 219
 redact, 209
 redemption, 270
 redolent, 180
 redress, 85
 redundant, 13
 refectory, 196
 referendum, 373
 reflux, 375
 refractory, 353
 refrain, 353
 refuge, 220
 refulgent, 310
 regal, 333
 regeneration, 39
 regent, 334
 regicide, 334
 regime, 333, 334
 regimen, 334
 regress, 212
 regurgitate, 177
 rehabilitate, 386, 390
 reincarnation, 158
 reiterate, 130
 rejoinder, 356
 relent, 274
 relentless, 274
 relic, 217
 relinquish, 216
 remedy, 103
 reminiscence, 74
 remnant, 181
 remonstrate, 76
 remorse, 65
 remote, 206
 remunerate, 380
 renaissance, 28
 render, 389
 rendition, 389
 renegade, 403
 renege, 403
 renounce, 128, 403
 renovate, 54
 renown, 16
 repartee, 355
 repast, 7
 repine, 379
 replenish, 373
 replete, 372
 replicate, 402
 repository, 250
 reprehend, 268
 reprehensible, 268
 reprimand, 274

- reprisal, 268
reprise, 268
reproach, 32, 59
reprobate, 301
reprove, 301
repugnant, 151
requiem, 247
rescind, 350
resent, 163
residue, 248
resignation, 363
resilient, 234
resonate, 147
respite, 110
restitute, 254
restive, 252
resumption, 271
resurgence, 336
resurrection, 336
resuscitate, 210
retainer, 286
retaliate, 149
retentive, 286, 287
reticence, 291
retinue, 286
retort, 278
retract, 272
retreat, 272
retrench, 349
retribution, 378
retroactive, 209
retrograde, 211
retrogress, 211
retrospect, 109
revel, 87
reverberate, 223
reverent, 1
revitalize, 48
revoke, 136
rhapsody, 138
rickety, 216
rile, 263
robust, 81
rogue, 211
roster, 57
rote, 158
rotund, 226
rotunda, 226
rove, 216
rubefacient, 80
rubicund, 80
rubric, 80
ruckus, 307
ruddy, 80
rudimentary, 200
rudiments, 200
rue, 10
ruffian, 286
rummage, 47
ruse, 210
rustic, 55, 319
rusticate, 55
ruth, 10
ruthless, 10
- S**
- sacrilege, 3
sacrosanct, 4
saddle, 248
sagacious, 179
sage, 31, 179
salacious, 235
salient, 234
sally, 235
salubrious, 326
salutary, 326
salvage, 326
salvation, 326
salvo, 326
sanctify, 3
sanctimonious, 5, 6
sanctimony, 5
sanction, 3
sanctity, 5
sanctuary, 4
sangfroid, 78
sanguinary, 80
sanguine, 78
sanguivore, 78
sapid, 179
sapient, 178
sartorial, 111
sate, 376
satiare, 375
satiety, 375
satire, 376
saturate, 376
saunter, 327
savant, 178
savvy, 179
scald, 312
scavenge, 163, 164
schism, 350
schizophrenia, 350
scion, 24
scoff, 82
scorch, 311
scotched, 35
scour, 167
scowl, 164
scruple, 26
scrupulous, 26
scurry, 200
seam, 358
seamstress, 358
seamy, 358
séance, 249
sear, 262
seasoned, 149
secant, 160
secede, 215
seclusion, 291
secrete, 404
sect, 240
secular, 54, 182
sedate, 248
sedentary, 248
sedition, 213
seduction, 337
seemly, 194
seethe, 150
segregate, 328
seine, 379
semblance, 322
seminal, 26
seminary, 26
senate, 62
senectitude, 62
senescence, 62
senile, 62
senor, 62
senora, 62
senorita, 62
sensitize, 162
sensual, 163
sensuous, 173
sententious, 163
sentient, 163
sentinel, 163
sepia, 58
sequel, 240
sequester, 240
serene, 3
serpent, 311
servitude, 239
shard, 157
shear, 159
shove, 387
shrew, 100
sibling, 287
sidereal, 9
siege, 248
sigil, 241
signor, 62
signora, 62
signorina, 62
simile, 322
simulate, 322
simultaneous, 219, 323, 326
sinecure, 166
singe, 311
sire, 62
skeptic, 111
skulk, 200
slain, 310
slang, 126, 127
slaughter, 129
slight, 283
sluice, 291
slumber, 262
slunk, 129
smelting, 399
smirk, 77
smolder, 283
smother, 310
snap, 367
snarl, 334
snivel, 32
sojourn, 307
solder, 325
solemn, 325
solemnize, 326
solicit, 325
solicitous, 325
solicitude, 325
solidarity, 325
soliloquy, 127
solitaire, 319
solitude, 319
solstice, 254
somber, 314
somersault, 234
sommambulist, 246
somniaquy, 246
sommolent, 246
sonnet, 148
sonorous, 147
sophist, 95
sophisticated, 95, 300
sophistry, 95
sophomore, 95
soporific, 246
sortilege, 140
souvenir, 219
spasm, 263
spasmodic, 263
spate, 178
spawn, 289
specious, 109
speck, 9
spectacle, 108
specter, 109
spectral, 109
spectrum, 109

- speculate, 109
 spendthrift, 362
 sphinx, 121
 spite, 52
 sporadic, 210
 sprawl, 262
 squander, 276
 squash, 120
 squat, 209
 squeamish, 65
 stalwart, 253
 stamped, 365
 stance, 252
 stanch, 252
 start, 59
 statute, 252
 statutory, 252
 steadfast, 377
 stealth, 50
 stellar, 8
 stifle, 370
 stilted, 140
 stipend, 366
 stipulation, 25
 stoic, 253
 strait, 359
 strand, 83
 strangle, 359
 stratagem, 209
 strewn, 261
 stricture, 359
 stringent, 359
 stroll, 321
 stupefy, 196
 stupor, 196
 suave, 178
 subaltern, 323
 subdue, 338
 subjective, 275
 Subjugation, 355
 submarine, 228
 subordinate, 342
 suborn, 200
 subpoena, 379
 subsequent, 240
 subservient, 359
 subsidiary, 248
 subsidy, 248
 subsistence, 254
 substantial, 252
 substantiate, 252
 substantive, 252
 subsume, 271
 subterfuge, 221
 subtile, 6
 subtle, 6
 subversion, 239
 succor, 219
 succubus, 245
 succumb, 246
 sudorific, 192, 193
 suffrage, 353
 sullen, 319
 sultry, 311
 summit, 80
 sumptuary, 280
 sumptuous, 270, 375
 sunder, 403
 superannuate, 61
 supererogatory, 133
 superficial, 191, 219
 superfluous, 374
 superimpose, 251
 superlative, 226
 supernatant, 227
 supersede, 248
 superstition, 254
 supple, 401
 supplement, 372
 suppliant, 402
 supplicate, 402
 supposititious, 251
 surfeit, 196
 surge, 334
 surly, 62, 63
 surmise, 236
 surmount, 11
 surpass, 236, 248
 surreptitious, 265
 surrogate, 134
 susceptible, 267
 suture, 358
 suzerainty, 239
 swagger, 274
 sycophant, 111
 syllogism, 141
 symbiosis, 49
 sympathy, 164
 symphony, 126
 symposium, 174
 synagogue, 209
 synchronize, 58
 synchronous, 58
 syncretism, 106
 synergy, 188
 synopsis, 108
T
 taboo, 327
 tacit, 297
 tactile, 168
 talon, 327
 tangential, 161
 tangible, 161
 tatterdemalion, 129
 taut, 293
 tautology, 77
 tawny, 158
 taxonomy, 39
 temerity, 130
 temper, 56, 161
 temperament, 56
 temperance, 56
 temperate, 56
 tempest, 56
 tempo, 55
 temporal, 54
 temporized, 55
 tenable, 288
 tenacity, 287
 tendentious, 284
 tender, 284
 tenet, 288
 tensile, 283, 284
 tenuous, 285
 tenure, 287
 tergiversate, 239
 termagant, 100
 terrain, 314
 terrestrial, 314, 351
 testator, 255
 testify, 254
 testimony, 255
 tether, 183
 thanatopsy, 108
 theist, 2, 93
 theocracy, 2
 theology, 2
 thesis, 251
 thrift, 365
 throng, 327
 thwart, 32
 timid, 258
 timorous, 206, 258
 tirade, 352
 titanic, 59, 298
 tithe, 133
 titular, 332
 toga, 308
 toil, 161
 tome, 351
 topography, 102
 torque, 277
 torrential, 314
 torrid, 314
 tort, 278
 tortuous, 277
 totalitarian, 353
 totter, 77
 tout, 285
 tract, 271
 tractable, 271
 traduce, 338
 trait, 272
 traitor, 129, 403
 trance, 1
 transcend, 236
 transcribe, 101
 transducer, 338
 transfigure, 199
 transgression, 211
 transhumance, 7
 transient, 213
 transition, 213
 transitory, 213
 translate, 348
 translucent, 306
 transmute, 61
 transport, 224
 transvestite, 261
 traverse, 238
 travesty, 180
 treason, 151
 treatise, 272
 trek, 278
 trench, 349
 trenchant, 349
 trencherman, 349
 trepidation, 206
 tribulation, 401
 triceps, 73
 trifle, 3
 trinket, 381
 trite, 400
 triturate, 400
 triumvirate, 15
 trivial, 3, 224
 trope, 199
 troth, 398
 truce, 398
 truncate, 349
 tryst, 398
 tumid, 375
 tureen, 314
 turpitude, 5
 tutelage, 37
 tutelary, 37
 twig, 261
 typhoon, 81
 tyro, 53
U
 ubiquitous, 339
 ulterior, 14

- umbra, 314, 315
umbrage, 315
umpteenth, 27
unanimous, 49
unassailable, 236
unassuming, 271
uncanny, 93
unconscionable, 96
unction, 405
unctuous, 405
undermine, 98
undulate, 13
unequivocal, 135
unexceptionable, 265
unfathomable, 148
unfeigned, 198
unfledged, 51
unfounded, 81
unimpeachable, 152
unison, 147
universal, 237
unkempt, 163
unobtrusive, 273
unparliamentary, 277
unscrupulous, 26
unseemly, 194
untenable, 288
untoward, 238
unwitting, 117
uproarious, 124
urge, 189
usurp, 265, 405
usury, 406
utilitarian, 406
utopia, 285
utterly, 113
uxoricide, 349
uxorious, 349, 378
- V**
- vagabond, 216
vagrant, 216
vainglory, 370
- valediction, 259
valetudinarian, 258
valiant, 259
validate, 259
vandalise, 20
vanquish, 262
vassal, 19
vaunt, 370
vector, 222
vehement, 223
vendetta, 131
venerable, 393
venerate, 408
vengeance, 131
ventriloquist, 127
venture, 218
venturesome, 218
veracity, 302
verbatim, 141
verbiage, 141
verbose, 141
verge, 5
veridical, 302
verisimilitude, 302
veritable, 302
verity, 302
vernacular, 64
versatile, 239
vertebrate, 236
vertex, 238
vertigo, 238
veteran, 35
veto, 98
vex, 222
viable, 47
viand, 47
vice, 297
vicenary, 60
vicennial, 60
vicinity, 182
vicious, 297
victual, 47
vile, 298
- vilify, 194
vindicate, 131
vindictive, 131
vineyard, 270
vintage, 270
vintner, 270
vipera, 48
virile, 15
virtue, 15
virtuoso, 15
visage, 115
visceral, 100
visionary, 115
vista, 115
vital, 48
vitiating, 297
vituperate, 297
vivacious, 47
vivid, 47
viviparous, 47, 48
vivisection, 47
vixen, 235
vocation, 135
vociferous, 135
vogue, 224
volatility, 376
volition, 406
volley, 261
vulnerable, 227
voracious, 122
vortex, 238
vouch, 135
voyeur, 115
vulgar, 71
- W**
- wade, 139
waft, 394
wake, 3
wan, 165
wane, 371
wanton, 371
warble, 51
- warp, 283
waver, 211
wayward, 238
whiff, 300
whim, 341
whit, 95
wile, 5
wily, 5
wince, 263
windfall, 221
winsome, 31
wiseacre, 117
wistful, 59
wit, 117
witticism, 117
wizardry, 217
wizened, 122
woe, 50
woebegone, 50
wont, 244
woof, 283
wrangle, 193
wrench, 159
wrest, 258
- X**
- xenon, 53
xenophobia, 53
- Y**
- Yacht, 178
yank, 10
yeomanry, 36
yield, 154
yoke, 355
- Z**
- zany, 395
zealot, 154
zilch, 308
Zodiac, 48
Zoology, 48